Google

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/

A 950,983

THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
LIBRARIES
THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
1817

MACMILLAN & CO.'S

Selected List of

Educational Books

for

11791-5

Secondary Schools

Macmillan and Co., Limited

St. Martin's Street, London, W.C.

1901

Z
5817
.M17
1901

CONTENTS

ENGLISH.

	PAGE
A First Poetry Book. Compiled by M. A. Woods. 2s. 6d.,	1
A Second Poetry Book. Compiled by M. A. Woods. 4s. 6d.,	4
A Third Poetry Book. Compiled by M. A. Woods. 4s. 6d.,	7
Poet's Walk, an Introduction to English Poetry. Arranged by Mowbray Morris. 2s. 6d. net, - - - -	11
Macmillan's Recitation Cards, - - - - -	14
The English Method of Teaching to Read. By A. Sonnenschein and J. M. D. Meiklejohn, - - -	15
Macmillan's New Literary Readers, - - - -	29
Macmillan's Advanced Reader. 2s., - - - -	40
Macmillan's English Classics, - - - - -	43
A History of English Literature. By E. J. Mathew. 4s. 6d.,	46
A Short History of English Literature. By George Saintsbury. 8s. 6d., - - - - - -	49
A Method of English for Secondary Schools. By Rev. J. Gow. 2s., - - - - - - -	52
Principles of English Composition. By P. Goyen. 4s. net,	54
Historical English Grammar. By the late Rev. R. Morris. Revised by Henry Bradley. 2s. 6d., - - -	56
The Parts of Speech and their Uses. By H. W. Household. 1s. 6d., - - - - - - -	58
Graduated Series of English Grammars. By J. C. Nesfield, - - - - - - - -	62
The Uses of the Parts of Speech. By J. C. Nesfield. 6d.,	63
Outline of English Grammar. By J. C. Nesfield. 1s. 6d.,	65
Manual of English Grammar and Composition. By J. C. Nesfield. 2s. 6d., - - - - -	69

PAGE

English Grammar, Past and Present. By J. C. Nesfield. 4s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - 73
Historical English and Derivation. By J. C. Nesfield. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - 77
Elements of Rhetoric and English Composition. By G. R. Carpenter. 4s. 6d., - - - - - 80
Exercises in Rhetoric and English Composition, Advanced Course. By G. R. Carpenter. 4s. 6d., - - - 82
A First Book in Writing English. By E. H. Lewis. 3s. 6d., 85
Word Building, Transcription and Composition. By Robert S. Wood. In two volumes. 1s. and 2s., - 87
Civil Service Works. By T. Evan Jacob, - - - 95
Macmillan's "Official" Copy Books. 2d. each, - - 97

FRENCH.

Scenes of Child Life in Colloquial French. By Mrs. J. G. Frazer. 1s. 6d., - - - - - - 100
Scenes of Familiar Life in Colloquial French. By Mrs. J. G. Frazer. 1s. 6d., - - - - - - 102
French Plays for Schools. By Mrs. J. G. Frazer. 1s. 6d., 104
The Study of French. By Eugène and Duriaux. 3s. 6d., 106
French Course, First Year. By A. C. Poiré. 1s., - 122
Macmillan's Progressive French Course. By G. E. Fasnacht, 130
Macmillan's Course of French Composition. By G. E. Fasnacht, - - - - - - - - 136
Macmillan's Progressive French Reader. By G. E. Fasnacht, - - - - - - - - 141
An Elementary French Grammar. By G. E. Fasnacht. 1s. 6d., 144
Abridged French Grammar. By G. E. Fasnacht. 2s. 6d., 146
A French Grammar for Schools. By G. E. Fasnacht. 3s. 6d., 148
French Lessons for Middle Forms. By G. E. Fasnacht. 4s. 6d., 150
An Historical French Grammar. By A. Darmesteter. 12s. 6d., 154

PAGE

Selection of French Idioms. Compiled by Mme. Ph. Plan. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 158
Macmillan's French Reading Books. Edited by G. Eugène Fasnacht, - - - - - - - - 161
Macmillan's Foreign School Classics. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht, - - - - - - - - 162
Siepmann's French Series, - - - - - - 163

GERMAN.

Macmillan's Progressive German Course. By G. E. Fasnacht, - - - - - - - - 197
Macmillan's Course of German Composition. By G. E. Fasnacht. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - 202
Macmillan's Progressive German Reader. By G. E. Fasnacht. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - 205
A Public School German Primer. By Otto Siepmann. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 208
Macmillan's Primary Series of German Reading Books. Edited by G. Eugène Fasnacht, - - - - 218
Macmillan's Foreign School Classics. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht, - - - - - - - - 219
Siepmann's German Series, - - - - - - 220
Macmillan's German Idioms. By Myra Taker. 3s. 6d., 244
Three Volumes of German Poetry. By C. A. Buchheim, 247

LATIN.

Macmillan's Elementary Latin-English Dictionary. By Rev. G. H. Nall. 3s. 6d., - - - - - 254
A Phraseological English-Latin Dictionary. By Charles Duke Yonge. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - 257
A Phraseological Latin-English Dictionary. By Charles Duke Yonge. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - 259

PAGE

Macmillan's Shorter Latin Course. By Cook and Pantin, 261
Macmillan's Shorter Latin Course. Part I. By A. M. Cook. 1s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 262
Macmillan's Shorter Latin Course. Part II. By Cook and Pantin. 2s., - - - - - - - - 267
Macmillan's Latin Course. By Cook and Pantin, - - 272
Macmillan's Latin Course. First Part. By A. M. Cook. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 273
Macmillan's Latin Course. Second Part. By Cook and Pantin. 4s. 6d., - - - - - - - 277
Macmillan's Latin Course. Third Part. By W. E. P. Pantin. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - 281
First Steps to Latin Prose Composition. By George Rust. 1s. 6d., - - - - - - - 285
Short Exercises in Latin Prose Composition. By H. Belcher. 1s. 6d., - - - - - - 287
Macmillan's Elementary Classics, - - - - - 289
Macmillan's Classical Series, - - - - - 299
A Latin Reader for the Lower Form in Schools. By H. J. Hardy. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - 301
A First Latin Verse Book. By W. E. P. Pantin. 1s. 6d., 303
The Æneid of Virgil. Books VII.-XII. 5s. - - 307
Works edited by T. E. Page, M.A., - - - - 310
Latin Elegiac Verse Composition. By J. H. Lupton. 2s. 6d., 311
Latin Phrase-Book. By C. Meissner. 4s. 6d., - - 313

GREEK.

Macmillan's Elementary Classics, - - - - - 316
Macmillan's Classical Series, - - - - - - 321
Macmillan's Greek Course—
First Greek Grammar Accidence. By W. Gunion Rutherford. 2s., - - - - - - - - 323

PAGE

Macmillan's Greek Course—*continued.*

First Greek Grammar Syntax. By W. Gunion Rutherford. 2s., - - - - - - - - - 326

Easy Exercises in Greek Accidence. By H. G. Underhill. 2s., - - - - - - - - 328

Second Greek Exercise Book. By W. A. Heard. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - - 330

Easy Exercises in Greek Syntax. By G. H. Nall. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - 332

Stories and Legends. A First Greek Reader. By F. H. Colson. 3s., - - - - - - - - 334

Introduction to Greek Prose Composition. By H. Pitman. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 336

A School Greek Grammar. By W. W. Goodwin. 3s. 6d., 344

PHILOLOGY.

A Short Manual of Comparative Philology. By P. Giles. 14s., - - - - - - - - - - 347

MATHEMATICS.

An Elementary Course of Mathematics. By Hall and Stevens. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 349

Elementary Practical Mathematics. By Frank Castle. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - - 353

A School Arithmetic. By R. F. Macdonald. 2s. 6d., - 356

Arithmetic for Schools. By Rev. J. B. Lock. 4s. 6d., - 364

An Arithmetic for Schools. By S. L. Loney. 4s. 6d., - 369

Arithmetic in Theory and Practice. By J. Brooksmith. 4s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - - 380

Arithmetic for Schools. By Barnard Smith. 4s. 6d., - 384

A Course of Arithmetical Examples for Beginners. By J. G. Bradshaw. 2s., - - - - - - - 388

Arithmetical Exercises and Examination Papers. By Hall and Knight. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - 390

PAGE
Algebra for Beginners. By Hall and Knight. 2s., - 394
Elementary Algebra for Schools. By Hall and Knight, - 402
Solutions of the Examples in Elementary Algebra. By Hall and Knight. 8s. 6d., - - - - - 418
Higher Algebra. By Hall and Knight. 7s. 6d., - - 419
Solutions of the Examples in Higher Algebra. By Hall and Knight. 10s. 6d., - - - - - - 426
Algebraical Exercises and Examination Papers. By Hall and Knight. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - 427
Algebra for Beginners. By Todhunter and Loney. 3s. 6d., 431
Elementary Algebra. By Charles Smith. 4s. 6d., . - 438
Euclid's Elements. By Hall and Stevens. 4s. 6d., - 446
Elements of Euclid. By Todhunter and Loney. 4s. 6d., 454
Euclid's Elements of Geometry. By Smith and Bryant, - 462
Exercises in Euclid. By William Weeks. 3s., - - 470
Mensuration for Beginners. By F. H. Stevens. 1s. 6d., 472
Elementary Mensuration. By F. H. Stevens. 3s. 6d., - 475
Trigonometry of One Angle. By Rev. J. B. Lock. 2s. 6d., 477
Trigonometry for Beginners. By Rev. J. B. Lock. 2s. 6d., 481
Elementary Trigonometry. By Rev. J. B. Lock. 4s. 6d., 484
Elementary Trigonometry. By Hall and Knight. 4s. 6d., 487
Mechanics for Beginners. By W. Gallatly. 2s. 6d., - 493
Elementary Dynamics. By H. A. Roberts. 4s. 6d., - 494
Elementary Mechanics of Solids. By W. T. A. Emtage. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - - 497

SCIENCE.

Elementary Physics and Chemistry. By Gregory and Simmons. 1s. 6d. each, - - - - - 500
Exercises in Practical Physics. By Gregory and Simmons. 505
Elementary Course of Practical Science. By Hugh Gordon. 1s., - - - - - - - 508
Elementary General Science. By Simmons and Jones. 3s. 6d., 510

PAGE
Elementary Practical Physics. By R. A. Gregory. 2s. 6d., 514
A Manual of Elementary Science. By Gregory and Simmons. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - 516
An Introduction to Practical Physics. By D. Rintoul. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - - 517
An Elementary Course of Physics. By J. C. P. Aldous. 7s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - - 525
Heat, Light, and Sound. By D. E. Jones. 2s. 6d., - 530
Heat for Advanced Students. By Edwin Edser. 4s. 6d., 532
Magnetism and Electricity for Beginners. By H. E. Hadley. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 535
Chemistry for Organised Schools of Science. By S. Parrish. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 538
Lessons in Elementary Chemistry. By Sir H. E. Roscoe. 4s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - 540
Inorganic Chemistry. By Prof. Ira Remsen. 6s. 6d., - 542
Inorganic Chemistry for Beginners. By Roscoe and Lunt. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 544
Inorganic Chemistry for Advanced Students. By Roscoe and Harden. 4s. 6d., - - - - - - - 546
The Study of Chemistry. By Perkin and Lean. 2s. 6d., 548
Practical Inorganic Chemistry. By G. S. Turpin. 2s. 6d., 550
Practical Organic Chemistry. By Julius B. Cohen. 3s. 6d., 551
Physiology for Beginners. By Foster and Shore. 2s. 6d., 555
Botany for Beginners. By Ernest Evans. 2s. 6d., - 557
Practical Botany for Beginners. By Prof. Bower. 3s. 6d., 560
The Principles of Agriculture. By Henry Tanner, - 562
Round the Year, Short Nature Studies. By L. C. Miall. 5s., 563
Natural History of Aquatic Insects. By L. C. Miall. 6s., 565
Nature Study. By Lucy Langdon Williams Wilson. 3s. 6d., 566
Physiography for Beginners. By A. T. Simmons. 2s. 6d., 569
Physiography for Advanced Students. By A. T. Simmons. 4s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - 573

PAGE

Elementary Lessons in Physical Geography. By Sir Archibald Geikie. 4s. 6d., - - - - - 577
Geology for Beginners. By W. W. Watts. 2s. 6d., - 579
Class Book of Geology. By Sir Archibald Geikie. 4s. 6d., 582

GEOGRAPHY.

Macmillan's Geography Readers, - - - - - 584
Macmillan's Geographical Series. Edited by Sir Archibald Geikie, - - - - - - - - 592
The Teaching of Geography. By Sir A. Geikie. 2s., - 593
Elementary Class-Book of Geography. By H. R. Mill. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - 594
Geography of the British Colonies. By Dawson and Sutherland. 2s., - - - - - - - 596
Geography of the British Isles. By Sir A. Geikie. 1s., 598
Maps and Map Drawing. By W. A. Elderton. 1s., - 599
Elementary Geography of India, Burma, and Ceylon. By H. F. Blanford. 1s. 9d., - - - - - 600
Geography of Europe. By James Sime. 2s., - - 602
Geography of Africa. By Edward Heawood. 2s. 6d., 604
Man and his Markets. By Lionel W. Lyde. 2s., - 606

COMMERCE.

Works on Book-keeping. By J. Thornton, - - - 610
Book-keeping for Elementary Schools. 9d., - - 611
Students' Manual of Book-keeping. 7s. 6d., - - 622
Advanced Examination Papers in Book-keeping. 1s., 623
Manuscript Exercise Books, - - - - - 623
Thornton's A B C D Series of Book-keeping Exercise Books. 1s. the set, - - - - - - 626
Book-keeping for Business Men. By J. and S. W. Thornton. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - 628
A B C Automatic Balancing Charts. 1s. the set, - 630

PAGE
A Text-Book of Book-keeping. By Frank Ireson. 4s. 6d., 631
Macmillan's Book-keeping Exercise Books, Set A. 10d., 632
Macmillan's Book-keeping Exercise Books, Set B. 1s., - 633
Macmillan's Commercial Series. Edited by Rev. J. Gow—
History of Commerce in Europe. By H. de B. Gibbins. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - 634
Commercial Geography. By E. C. K. Gonner. 3s., - 635
Commercial Arithmetic. By S. Jackson. 3s. 6d., - 637
Introduction to Commercial German. By E. Coverley Smith. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - 641
Commercial Spanish. By Leon Delbos. 3s. 6d., - 643
Commercial Law. By J. E. C. Munro. 3s. 6d., - 645
Manual of Book-keeping. By J. Thornton. 7s. 6d., - 647
Marine Insurance. By William Gow. 4s. 6d., - - 648
Modern Business Methods. The Home Trade. By Hooper and Graham. 2s. 6d., - - - - 649
Modern Business Methods. Import and Export Trade. By Hooper and Graham. 3s. 6d., - - - - 651
Hints on the Conduct of Business. By Sir Courtenay Boyle. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - 653

HISTORY.

Macmillan's History Readers, - - - - - 654
Macmillan's New History Readers, - - - - 662
A First Sketch of English History. By E. J. Mathew, - 664
History of England. By Edith Thompson. 2s. 6d., - 668
History of England for Beginners. By Arabella B. Buckley. 3s., - - - - - - - 669
Cameos from English History. By C. M. Yonge. 5s. each, 671
French History for Schools. By Katharine Stephen. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 675
A Handbook of European History. By Arthur Hassall. 8s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 677

PAGE

A History of Rome for Beginners. By E. S. Shuckburgh. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - 681
History of Rome to the Battle of Actium. By E. S. Shuckburgh. 8s. 6d., - - - - - - 682
The History of the Roman Republic. Abridged by C. Bryans and F. J. R. Hendy. 7s. 6d., - - - 683
A History of Greece. By J. B. Bury. 8s. 6d., - - 686

DRAWING.

Macmillan's "Official" Drawing Books,- - - - 689
Geometrical Drawing. By E. C. Plant. Volume I., - 690
Practical Geometry. By Harrison and Baxandall,- - 692
Black-Board Drawing. By M. Swannell. 4s. 6d.,- - 694
A Graduated Course of Drawing for Infants. By C. H. Fowler.- 4s. 6d., - - - - - - - 696
Observation Lessons correlated with Drawing. By Ricks and Wilkinson. 1s. 6d. each, - - - - 698
Macmillan's Brush Work Copy Books. By Cartwright and Proctor, - - - - - - - - 701
A Perspective Course. By J. Humphrey Spanton. 5s., 702

MANUAL TRAINING.

Woodwork. By George Ricks. 7s. 6d., - - - 704

PHYSICAL TRAINING.

Girls' Physical Training. By Alice R. James. 7s. 6d., - 708

EDUCATION.

The School World. 6d., - - - - - - 711
Thirty Years of Teaching. By L. C. Miall. 3s. 6d., - 717
On Teaching. By Henry Calderwood. 2s. 6d., - - 718

PAGE

The Teaching of Elementary Mathematics. By D. E. Smith. 4s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 719
Leaves from the Note-Books of Frances M. Buss. 3s. 6d., 720
The Training of Girls for Work. By Edith A. Barnett. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - - 722
Macmillan's Manual for Teachers. Edited by O. Browning and Fletcher,- - - - - - - - - 724
School Management. By Collar and Crook. 3s. 6d., 725
The Logical Bases of Education. By J. Welton. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - 727
The Study of Children. By Francis Warner. 4s. 6d. net, 731
The Nervous System of the Child. By Francis Warner. 4s. 6d. net, - - - - - - - - - 733
The Meaning of Education. By N. M. Butler. 4s. 6d., 734
The Development of the Child. By N. Oppenheim. 5s. net, - - - - - - - - - - 735
Social Phases of Education. By S. T. Dutton. 5s. - 736
Educational Aims and Values. P. H. Hanus. 4s. 6d., - 738
Handbook of Universities. By Isabel Maddison. 3s., - 740
The Physical Nature of the Child. By S. H. Rowe. 4s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - 742
A Primer of Psychology. By E. B. Titchener. 4s. 6d., 744
Religious Teaching in Secondary Schools. By Rev. G. C. Bell. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 745
God's Garden. By Rev. W. J. Foxell. 3s. 6d., - - 747
In a Plain Path, Addresses to Boys. By Rev. W. J. Foxell. 3s. 6d., - - - - - - - - 748
Curiosities of Natural History. By F. T. Buckland, - 749

THEOLOGY.

A Class Book of Old Testament History. By Rev. G. F. Maclear. 4s. 6d., - - - - - - - 753

PAGE

A Shilling Book of Old Testament History. By Rev. G. F. Maclear, - - - - - - - - - 754

A Class Book of New Testament History. By Rev. G. F. Maclear. 5s. 6d., - - - - - - - 755

A Shilling Book of New Testament History. By Rev. G. F. Maclear, - - - - - - - - 756

An Elementary Introduction to the Book of Common Prayer. By Rev. F. Proctor and Rev. G. F. Maclear. 2s. 6d., - - - - - - - - - 757

Class Book of the Catechism of the Church of England. By Rev. G. F. Maclear, - - - - - - - 758

An Introduction to the Creeds. By Rev. G. F. Maclear. 3s. 6d.

Greek-English Lexicon to the New Testament. By W. J. Hickie. 3s.

Essentials of New Testament Greek. By J. H. Huddilston. 3s.

Greek Testament. Edited by Bishop Westcott and Dr. Hort.

The Gospel according to St. Matthew, Greek Text. With Notes by Rev. A. Sloman. 2s. 6d.

School Readings in the Greek Testament. Arranged by Rev. A. Calvert. 2s. 6d.

The Gospel according to St. Luke, Greek Text. With Notes by Rev. John Bond. 2s. 6d.

The Acts of the Apostles, Greek Text. With Notes by T. E. Page. 3s. 6d.

The Acts of the Apostles, the Authorized Version. With Notes by T. E. Page and Rev. A. S. Walpole. 2s. 6d.

Macmillan's Half-Crown Prize Library, - - - - 759

Macmillan's List of Books Suitable for Prizes, - - 762

PRESENTATION COPIES.

MESSRS. MACMILLAN & Co. will be happy to consider applications for Presentation Copies of any of the more elementary books named in these Catalogues. Teachers are requested to keep the Publishers informed of permanent changes of address.

It is requested that books which there seems upon examination to be no likelihood of adopting may be returned to the Publishers.

THE TEACHERS' GUILD.

Copies of the more elementary books in this Selected Catalogue are on view in the Libraries of the several branches of the Teachers' Guild.

It is suggested that Teachers should avail themselves of these Libraries where they are accessible.

LENDING LIBRARY FOR TEACHERS.

The Publishers beg to call attention to their Lending Library of School publications, the object of which is to assist Teachers in the selection of Text-Books. They are prepared to lend copies of certain of their School Publications, forwarding them post free on condition that the books are returned, postage paid, within fourteen days.

The Publishers beg to say that they do not open retail accounts, and hope that orders for their books will be given to the retail booksellers, and not to the Publishers.

MESSRS. MACMILLAN & CO. beg to inform the public that they do no retail business whatever, and hope that all orders will be given direct to the local booksellers.

*** *The following Catalogues will be sent post free on application:—*

A Complete Alphabetical Catalogue.
A Complete Classified Catalogue.
A Catalogue of Theological Works.
A Catalogue of Books for Medical Students and Practitioners.
List of Books on Engineering.
List of Works on Political and Social Economy.
List of Books on Agriculture, Horticulture, and Forestry.
A Catalogue of Educational Books.
Select List for Secondary Schools.
Select List for Secondary Schools (with specimen pages).

1. **A Select List of Works on English.**
2. **A Select List of Works on French and German.**
3. **A Select List of Works on Latin and Greek.**
4. **A Select List of Works on Mathematics.**
5. **A Select List of Works on Science.**
6. **A Select List of Works on Geography, Commerce, History, Drawing, Manual Training and Physical Exercises.**
7. **A Select List of Works on Education.**

Select List of Books for Classical Students.
List of Books for Schools of Science and Technology.
List of Books for Elementary Schools.
List of Books for Elementary Schools (with specimen pages).
A Catalogue of Belles Lettres.
A Selection of Works of Fiction.
A Popular Selection.
Macmillan's Half-Crown Prize Library.
A Selection of Illustrated Books for the Young.
An Illustrated Catalogue of Books suitable for Presentation.

MACMILLAN & COMPANY, LTD., LONDON.

30. 6. 01.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Pott 8vo. 277 Pages. Price, 2s. 6d.

A FIRST POETRY BOOK

COMPILED BY

M. A. WOODS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE.

My apology for adding another school poetry book to the many in existence must be the usual one, that I have found nothing quite suited to my purpose. The best are too ambitious, or, at least, contain too much that is difficult, to be really fitted for little children fresh from the nursery or kindergarten, craving food, but quite unable to assimilate strong meat. It may be a mistake to "write down" to them, but it is, I think, a still

greater mistake to force good things upon them prematurely, and so create a disgust which it is difficult, in after years, to remove. Poetry intended for their use should appeal to their childish fancies, their fondness for flowers and animals, their delight in story, their mingled love of sentiment and fun. It should be simple in form, and simple in what I may call outward meaning. Some of it will unfold deeper meanings as the years go on; some will be discarded as the mind outgrows it; but all may be good of its kind, and all possess something of that quality of suggestiveness which makes it, in the best sense of the word, educational.

Trial alone can show how far the present selection fulfils the conditions I have laid down. It is intended for children from seven to ten or eleven, *i.e.* for those comprised in the Lower or Preparatory Division of High Schools. It will be found to contain (as every selection must that does not sacrifice soundness to novelty) a large number of familiar pieces, but also, I think, an unusually large number that are unfamiliar. The parts are graduated, and intended to be used simultaneously, the second being specially adapted to class reading and recitation. I may add that, though compiled in the first instance for Girls' Schools, there is nothing in the volume to unfit it for use in a Preparatory Boys' School or private school-room.

CONTENTS

PART I.—Grace for a Child, *R. Herrick.* Birdie and Baby, *Lord Tennyson.* The Lamb, *W. Blake.* A Child's Prayer, *M. Betham-Edwards.* Dolly and Dick, *E. Coxhead.* Little White Lily, *G. MacDonald.* What became of them, *Anon.* Sympathy, *M. Johnson.* What does it matter, *G. C. Boase.* Seven Times One, *J. Ingelow.* The Yellow Fly, *J. H. Ewing.* Rimes from Shakspeare, *W. Shakspeare.* The Walrus and the Carpenter, *Lewis Carroll.* A Winter Window, "*A.*" The Spider and the Fly, *M. Howitt.* The Song of the Wood, *F. E. Weatherly.* Flopsy, *Anon.* The Bluebell of Scotland, *Old Song.* Daisy's Lesson, *Anon.* Answer to a Child's Question, *S. T. Coleridge.* Robin Redbreast, *W. Allingham.* The Lost Doll, *C. Kingsley.* Spring, *T. Nash.* The Echoing Green, *W. Blake.* Baby, *G. MacDonald.* Going a-Maying, *J. H. Ewing.* The Pond, *Jane Taylor.* The Little Boats, "*A.*" The Child's Wish in June, *Gilman.* A Night with a Wolf, *Bayard Taylor.* Willow the King, *E. E. Bowen.* The Fairies of the Caldon-Low, *M. Howitt.* Infant Joy *W. Blake.* September, *M. Howitt.* Lullaby of an Infant Chief, *Sir W. Scott.* The Gray Doves' Answer, *F. E. Weatherly.* Rocking and Talking, *A. Keary.* A Winter's Tale, *F. E. Weatherly.* My Dove, *J. Keats.*

The Fairies, *W. Allingham.* The Coming of Spring, *M. Howitt.* The Useful Plough, *Old Song.* Sweet and Low, *Lord Tennyson.* Away from Home, *S. T. Coleridge.* Fairy Men, *A. Keary.* Nurse's Song, *W. Blake.* We are Seven, *W. Wordsworth.* Ophelia's Songs, *W. Shakspeare.* Meg Merrilies, *J. Keats.* A Slumber Song, *E. O. Cooke.* The Court of Fairy, *M. Drayton.* The Mountain and the Squirrel, *R. W. Emerson.* The Last Day of Flowers, *A. Keary.* The Owl, *Lord Tennyson.* The Dead Bird's Song, *F. E. Weatherly.* The Broom Flower, *M. Howitt.* False Friends-like, *W. Barnes.* The Cow and the Ass, *Jane Taylor.* The Fairy Queen, *Old Ballad.* Three Worlds, *Anon.* A Hunting-Song, *Sir W. Scott.* My Baby, *F. E. Weatherly.* Sister and Brother, *Anon.* A Dream, *W. Blake.* A Song of "Willow," *W. Shakspeare.* Lucy Gray: or, Solitude, *W. Wordsworth.* The Horned Owl, *Barry Cornwall.* The Fiftieth Birthday of Agassiz, *H. W. Longfellow.* London River, *F. E. Weatherly.* The Lark's Grave, *Westwood.* A Spring Song, *R. Burns.* The Child's First Grief, *F. Hemans.* The Little Bird's Complaint to his Mistress, *Jane Taylor.* The Pet Lamb, *W. Wordsworth.* A Winter Song, *R. Burns.* Casabianca, *F. Hemans.* My Heart's in the Highlands, *R. Burns.* The Village Blacksmith, *H. W. Longfellow.* The Little Black Boy, *W. Blake.* To a Bee, *R. Southey.* The Wreck of the *Hesperus*, *H. W. Longfellow.* Good-Morrow, *T. Heywood.* Ariel's Songs, *W. Shakspeare.* Twilight, *H. W. Longfellow.* The Fairies' Nest, "*A.*" The Use of Flowers, *M. Howitt.* The Night-piece, *R. Herrick.* The Fountain, *J. R. Lowell.* Flower Fancies, *Anon.* Private Wealth, *R. Herrick.* How's my Boy, *S. Dobell.* Barthram's Dirge, *R. Surtees.* A Storm Song, *Bayard Taylor.* Robin Good-Fellow, *Old Ballad.* Nose and Eyes, *W. Cowper.* Ye Mariners of England, *T. Campbell.* Bonnie George Campbell, *Old Ballad.* July, *S. H. Swett.* A Fairy Song, *Michael Field.* The Knight's Leap, *C. Kingsley.* Walter von der Vogelweide, *H. W. Longfellow.* Gathering Song of Donald the Black, *Sir W. Scott.* Violets, *R. Herrick.* The Loss of the *Royal George*, *W. Cowper.* The Nightingale, *R. Barnefield.* The Charge of the Light Brigade, *Lord Tennyson.* A Gipsy Song, *Ben Jonson.* The Lark and the Nightingale, *Hartley Coleridge.* The Sands of Dee, *C. Kingsley.* The Poet's Song, *Lord Tennyson.* Don José's Mule, Jacintha, *M. Betham-Edwards.* The Redbreast and the Butterfly, *W. Wordsworth.* Ye Carpette Knyghte, *Lewis Carroll.* After the Accident, *Bret Harte.* The Burial of Sir John Moore, *C. Wolfe.* There's nae Luck about the House, *W. J. Mickle.* The Boy and the Angel, *R. Browning.* A Farewell, *C. Kingsley.*

PART II.—Mabel on Midsummer Day, *M. Howitt.* The Diverting History of John Gilpin, *W. Cowper.* Hynd Horn, *Old Ballad.* Stories from Hiawatha, *H. W. Longfellow.* The Children in the Wood, *Old Ballad.* The Pied Piper of Hamelin, *R. Browning.* The Angel's Story, *A. Proctor.* The *Golden Bee*, *M. Betham-Edwards.* Scenes from Fairyland, *W. Shakspeare.* Noah's Ark, *M. Drayton.*

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Pott 8vo, 478 Pages,, 4s. 6d.; or in Two Parts, 2s. 6d. each.

A SECOND POETRY BOOK

COMPILED BY

M. A. WOODS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

THE following poems have been compiled, on the same plan as those in the preceding volume, with a view to the Middle Forms of High Schools, *i.e.* to Girls from eleven to fourteen or fifteen. If any of them should seem too simple for eleven, my excuse must be the pleasure they have afforded to readers long past fourteen. Some favourites that will be missed have been reserved for a later volume.

I have assumed that, in the Forms contemplated, lessons in literature will be given apart from the poetry learnt by heart, and have therefore included no extracts from the plays of Shakspeare, nor (with one exception) from the longer poems of Longfellow or Scott.

CONTENTS

PART I. (Shorter Poems)—The Shepherd, *W. Blake.* My Garden, *T. Moore.* The Fishing-Boat, *M. Howitt.* Fairies in Winter, *T. H. Bayly.* Robert of Lincoln, *W. C. Bryant.* Paris and Œnone, *G. Peele.* The Voyage with the Nautilus, *M. Howitt.* The Passionate Shepherd to his Love, *C. Marlowe.* The Knight's Tomb, *S. T. Coleridge.* Beggar's Song, *R. Brome.* Albert Græme, *Sir W. Scott.* Song to Pan, *J. Fletcher.* Lilies, *Leigh Hunt.* The Wee Wee Man, *Old Ballad.* The Sea, *Barry Cornwall.* The Vision of Belshazzar, *Lord Byron.* To the Queen of the May, *T. Watson.* Our Gudeman, *Old Ballad.* A Wish, *A. Pope.* To the Small Celandine, *W. Wordsworth.* O my Luve's like a Red, Red Rose, *R. Burns.* Lady Clare, *Lord Tennyson.* The Greenwood, *W. L. Bowles.* Upon a Child that died, *R. Herrick.* Lord Ullin's Daughter, *T. Campbell.* The Master of the House, *J. Dennis.* An Epitaph on a Robin Redbreast, *S. Rogers.* Jock of Hazeldean, *Sir W. Scott.* The Fly, *Barnabe Googe.* A Voyage among the Stars, *W. Wordsworth.* Orpheus, *W. Shakspeare.* A Thanksgiving to God for His House, *R. Herrick.* Night, *W. Blake.* Home they brought her Warrior Dead, *Lord Tennyson.* The Ivy Green, *C. Dickens.* The Ungentle Guest, *R. Herrick.* Silvia, *W. Shakspeare.* Kallundborg Church, *J. G. Whittier.* Hark, Hark! the Lark, *W. Shakspeare.* Can I See Another's Woe, *W. Blake.* O wert Thou in the Cauld Blast, *R. Burns.* Alice Brand, *Sir W. Scott.* The Death of Adonis, *W. Browne.* Tyrolese Evening Hymn, *F. Hemans.* Cupid and the Bee, *Old Madrigal.* The Funeral at Sea, *H. J. Finn.* Soldier, Rest, *Sir W. Scott.* The Land o' the Leal, *Lady Nairn.* The Romance of the Swan's Nest, *E. B. Browning.* Sweet Content, *T. Dekker.* Telling the Bees, *J. G. Whittier.* The Birks of Aberfeldy, *R. Burns.* Amiens' Songs, *W. Shakspeare.* The Destruction of Sennacherib, *Lord Byron.* The Triumph of Charis, *Ben Jonson.* The Builders, *H. W. Longfellow.* Our Village, *T. Hood.* How Sleep the Brave, *W. Collins.* The Bells, *E. A. Poe.* The Soldier's Dream, *T. Campbell.* The Lord of Burleigh, *Lord Tennyson.* Song on May Morning, *J. Milton.* To Fidele, *W. Shakspeare.* King Volmer and Elsie, *J. G. Whittier.* An Easter Song, *G. Herbert.* Lord Ronald, *Old Ballad.* Fancy, *W. Shakspeare.* The Mother's Dream, *W. Barnes.* Hohenlinden, *T. Campbell.* The Three Fishers, *C. Kingsley.* Shepherds' Songs, *J. Fletcher.* To Daffodils. *R. Herrick.* Elsie's Ghosts: or, Asleep over Lessons, *Anon.* To his Love, *J. Grahame* (*Marquis of Montrose*). Upon a Bank with Roses, *M. Drayton.* How they brought the Good News from Ghent to Aix, *R. Browning.* An Enigma, *W. M. Praed.* The Singing Leaves, *J. R. Lowell.* A Bridal Song, *W. Shakspeare.* Shelter, *C. S. Calverley.* To Althea, *R. Lovelace.* The Owl Critic, *J. Fields.* Ca' the Yowes to the Knowes, *R. Burns.* To Flush, my Dog, *E. B. Browning.* In Volhynia, *L. Morris.* A Dirge, *T. Chatterton.* The Forsaken Merman, *M. Arnold.* Home Thoughts from Abroad, *R. Browning.* Annabel Lee, *E. A. Poe.* The Captive Knight and the Blackbird, *J. G. Lockhart.* Lock the Door, Lariston, *J. Hogg.* The Slave's Dream, *H.*

W. Longfellow. Song of Hesperus, *Ben Jonson.* Sir Patrick Spens, *Old Ballad.* Dirge for the Year, *P. B. Shelley.* The Aged Stranger, *Bret Harte.* Clear and Cool, *C. Kingsley.* A Sweet Pastoral, *N. Breton.* Drink to Me only, *Ben Jonson.* The Cid's Funeral Procession, *F. Hemans.* John Anderson, *R. Burns.* The Child Lost, *W. Barnes.* The Revenge, *Lord Tennyson.* The Poet, *J. Keats.* The Changeling, *J. R. Lowell.* Coyote, *Bret Harte.* Hervé Riel, *R. Browning.* The Starlings, *C. Kingsley.* Rosabelle, *Sir W. Scott.* The Death of the Flowers, *W. C. Bryant.* The Solitary Reaper, *W. Wordsworth.* The Requital, *A. A. Proctor.* As Through the Land at Eve we went, *Lord Tennyson.* A Map of England, *G. Wither.* The First Snow-Fall, *J. R. Lowell.* Girls' Names, *C. Lamb.* Song of the Brook, *Lord Tennyson.* The Ox Tamer, *Walt Whitman.* The Wonderful "One-Hoss Shay," *O. W. Holmes.* To the Cuckoo, *W. Wordsworth.* Poetry, *G. Wither.* Peace, *H. Vaughan.* The Rider and the Bodensee, *Anon.* Amantium Iræ Amoris Redintegratio, *R. Edwards.* The Aziola, *P. B. Shelley.* Yussouf, *J. R. Lowell.* Virtue, *G. Herbert.* On the Death of President Lincoln, *Walt Whitman.* To Meadows, *R. Herrick.* Art's Martyr, *A. Lang.* The Lawlands o' Holland, *Old Ballad.* The Dog of Irus, *C. Lamb.* To His Mistress, the Queen of Bohemia, *H. Wotton.* Tasso's Coronation, *F. Hemans.* A Widow Bird, *P. B. Shelley.* The Happy Shepherd, *G. Wither.* A Grave in Virginia, *Walt Whitman.* La Belle Dame Sans Merci, *J. Keats.* Midnight, *T. Sackville.* Song of the Emigrants in Bermuda, *A. Marvell.* A Death-Bed, *T. Hood.* The Monk Felix, *H. W. Longfellow.* The Tiger, *W. Blake.* The Oak and Brere, *E. Spenser.* To a Cat, *J. Keats.* Grandmother Tenterden, *Bret Harte.* The Poet's Burial-Place, *Anon.* The Kitten and the Falling Leaves, *W. Wordsworth.* Fate, *J. Shirley.* The Beleaguered City, *H. W. Longfellow.* I wandered Lonely as a Cloud, *W. Wordsworth.* The Fairy Oak of Corriewater, *Allan Cunningham.* To Music, to Becalm his Fever, *R. Herrick.* My Fawn, *A. Marvell.* I Remember, I Remember, *T. Hood.* Pegasus in Pound, *H. W. Longfellow.* Break, break, break, *Lord Tennyson.* To a Skylark, *P. B. Shelley.* The Pulley, *G. Herbert.* The Dying Swan, *Lord Tennyson.* The Demon Ship, *T. Hood.* Song of Pan, *P. B. Shelley.* It is not Growing like a Tree, *Ben Jonson.* A Greyport Legend, *Bret Harte.* Man and Nature, *W. Wordsworth.* The Dragon-Fly, *W. S. Landor.* An Incident of the Fire at Hamburg, *J. R. Lowell.* Song to Sabrina, *J. Milton.* The Eve of St. Mark, *J. Keats.* A First Walk in Spring, *H. Howard* (*Earl of Surrey*). Kubla Khan, *S. T. Coleridge.* The Rainbow, *W. Wordsworth.* Under the Violets, *O. W. Holmes.* To Spring, *T. Carew.* They are all gone, *H. Vaughan.* The Grasshopper and the Cricket, *J. Keats.* Come into the Garden, Maud, *Lord Tennyson.* Sleeping, *Old Madrigal.* Aspiration, *Anon.* To the Gnat, *S. Rogers.* Three Years she grew, *W. Wordsworth.* The Oubit, *C. Kingsley,* The Crooked Footpath, *O. W. Holmes.* Good Night, *Anon.* Man's Medley, *G. Herbert.* The Courtin', *J. R. Lowell.* The Ebb Tide, *R. Southey.* The Patriot, *R. Browning.* To a Mouse, *R. Burns.* The Old Familiar Faces, *C. Lamb.* Bach's Fugues, *T. E. Brown.* To Autumn, *J. Keats.* The Retreat, *H. Vaughan.* The Cloud, *P. B. Shelley.* The Soul, *J. Davies.* The Night Bird, *C. Kingsley.* Elegy written in a Country Churchyard, *T. Gray.* Shed no Tear, *J. Keats.* A Christmas Carol, *C. Kingsley.* Auld Lang Syne, *R. Burns.*

PART II. (Longer Poems)—The Defeat of the Spanish Armada, *T. Deloney.* The High Tide on the Coast of Lincolnshire, *J. Ingelow.* The Ancient Mariner, *S. T. Coleridge.* The Skeleton in Armour, *H. W. Longfellow.* Horatius, *Lord Macaulay.* Goblin Market, *C. G. Rossetti.* The Prisoner of Chillon, *Lord Byron.* Kilmeny, *J. Hogg.* The Birds of Killingworth, *H. W. Longfellow.* The Day-Dream, *Lord Tennyson.* Poor Matthias, *M. Arnold.* Pictures from the Faery Queene, *E. Spenser.*

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Pott 8vo. 518 *pp.* *Price* 4*s.* 6*d.*

A THIRD POETRY BOOK

COMPILED BY

M. A. WOODS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

THIS third volume of my poetical series is intended primarily for the Upper Forms of High Schools; but I hope it may prove useful to students who have left school, and are now reading for themselves. I have assumed that, in either case, the masterpieces of English Literature will be read independently, and have included no extracts from the *Plays* of Shakspeare, the *Canterbury Tales*, *Paradise Lost*, or the first two books of the *Faery Queene*. Poems from Spenser onwards I have, with some reluctance, given in modern spelling; chiefly because it seemed unreasonable to do for the

contemporaries and successors of Shakspeare what no one does for Shakspeare himself. But earlier poems, Scottish Poems, and those written in dialect, I have given as they stand, confident that my readers will find them very well worth the trouble of mastering.

In this last volume I have allowed myself somewhat more freedom of choice, as regards both subject and language, than in the earlier ones. Every piece, however, has been carefully selected, and some omissions necessarily made. Where these are small, I have not in all cases called attention to them; where they are large, I have described the piece as an extract.

I need scarcely say that I have made no attempt to secure anything like a *consensus* of opinion or sentiment. These will differ in Poems as in people, and we must all learn to make allowance for such differences, and to recognise the common inspiration that underlies them.

CONTENTS

PART I.—To Poets, *J. Keats.* The Splendour Falls, *Lord Tennyson.* Madrigals, *Various Authors.* A Wish, *A. Cowley.* A Praise of his Lady, *J. Heywood.* Come away, come away, Death, *W. Shakspeare.* The Vengeance of Bacchus, *T. L. Peacock.* Earine, *Ben Jonson.* To Lucasta, on Going to the Wars, *R. Lovelace.* On the Receipt of my Mother's Picture, *W. Cowper.* O that we two were Maying, *C. Kingsley.* The Scholar, *R. Southey.* The Ship o' the Fiend, *Old Ballad.* The Man of Life Upright, *Lord Bacon.* Weep no More, *J. Fletcher.* L'Allegro, *J. Milton.* Song in Absence, *Allan Cunningham.* A Quiet Mind, *Lord Vaux.* To a Child in Heaven, *J. Norris.* The Eve of the Battle of Quatre Bras, *Lord Byron.* Proud Maisie, *Sir W. Scott.* An English Landscape, *G. Wither.* Drowned in Yarrow, *Old Ballad.* Song to Stella, *Sir P. Sidney.* Prayer of Columbus, *Walt Whitman.* As in a Picture, *L. Morris.* Dark Rosaleen, *J. C. Mangan.* The Shepherd's Estate Happiest, *P. Fletcher.* Il Penseroso, *J. Milton.* Flush or Faunus, *E. B. Browning.* The Wife of Usher's Well, *Old Ballad.* Epitaph on a Child, *G. Wither.* To Anthea, who may command him anything, *R. Herrick.* "All the World's a Stage," *Sir W. Raleigh.* Hester, *C. Lamb.* On a Day, alack the Day, *W. Shakspeare.* A Fragment, *Allan Cunningham.* Golden Apples, *R. Herrick.* His Mistress' Face, *P. Rosseter.* Song for Saint Cecilia's Day, *J. Dryden.* Glen-Almain; or the Narrow Glen, *W. Wordsworth.* The Virgin of the Rocks, *C. Lamb.* To his Wife, *H. King.* Of a' the Airts the Wind can blaw, *R. Burns.* Tears, Idle Tears, *Lord Tennyson.* Astrophel, *Various Authors.* After the Battle, *T. Moore.* Astrology, *F. Beaumont.* I saw my Lady weep, *Anon.* (*16th century*). The twa Cats and the Cheese, *Allan Ramsay.* The Question, *P. B. Shelley.* A Ballad upon a Wedding, *J. Suckling.* A Country Parson, *O. Goldsmith.* A Dream, *W. Allingham.* The Praise of Virtue, *G. Wither.* Two Songs of Parting, *Anon.* (*17th century*). The Dance of Death, *Austin Dobson.* A Man's a Man for a' that, *R. Burns.* Charge of Ariel to the Sylphs, *A. Pope.* The Garden, *A. Marvell.* To Time, *A. W.* (*cir.* 1600). The Armada, *Lord Macaulay.* November in London, *T. Hood.* How do I love thee, *E. B. Browning.* The Picture of Little T. C., *A. Marvell.* Parted, *Old Song.* High Communings, *W. Cowper.* A. Wood Path, *P. B. Shelley.* The Praise of Dancing, *J.*

Davies. On Como, *Anon.* To a Dead Friend, *W. Habington.* Cupid and Campaspe, *J. Lyly.* Sonnets, *J. Milton.* The Banks o' Doon, *R. Burns.* The Kingdom of Pluto, *T. Sackville.* The Poet in War-Time, *J. R. Lowell.* Love's Growth, *J. Donne.* Flowers for the Wedding of Thame and Isis, *M. Drayton.* When thou must Home, *T. Campion.* Ballade of Sleep, *A. Lang.* The Praise of Letters, *S. Daniel.* Auld Robin Gray, *Lady A. Lindsay.* The Land of Drowsihead, *J. Thomson.* Rosalynde's Madrigal, *T. Lodge.* Cynthia, *Sir W. Raleigh.* Waly, Waly, *Old Ballad.* Amoretti, *E. Spenser.* To the Rose, *E. Waller.* My Love is Past, *T. Watson.* A Northern Spring, *J. R. Lowell.* To Echo, *J. Milton.* Song of Callicles, *Matthew Arnold.* To Helen, *E. A. Poe.* Sonnets, *Sir P. Sidney.* Youth and Age, *S. T. Coleridge.* Elegy on the Death of a Parrot, *C. Marlowe.* Employment, *G. Herbert.* Love's Deathbed, *M. Drayton.* The Warbling of Blackbirds, *J. Ingelow.* A Vigil in the East, *E. Judson.* Sonnets, *W. Wordsworth.* Sir David Græme, *J. Hogg.* Courage, *G. Chapman.* Passages from "In Memoriam," *Lord Tennyson.* A Scholar and his Dog, *J. Marston.* The Garmond of Gud Ladies, *R. Henryson.* The "Ave Maria," *Lord Byron.* In a far Country, *M. Ryan.* Youth in Age, *O. W. Holmes.* May Margaret, *Old Ballad.* To Light, *A. Cowley.* Sir Galahad, *Lord Tennyson.* To Darkness, *J. Norris.* To a Mountain Daisy, *R. Burns.* At a Solemn Music, *J. Milton.* By the Sea, *Christina Rossetti.* The Praise of Beauty, *E. Spenser.* Snow-Flakes, *H. W. Longfellow.* To the Lady Margaret, *S. Daniel.* Ask me no More, *T. Carew.* A Spring Morning, *James I. (of Scotland).* Passages from "In Memoriam," *Lord Tennyson.* Unexpressed, *C. Marlowe.* Meditation of Lord Strafford in the Tower, *Anon.* Sonnets, *W. Wordsworth.* To Primroses filled with Morning Dew, *R. Herrick.* Ode to Evening, *W. Collins.* The Anniversary, *J. Donne.* The Lotos-Eaters, *Lord Tennyson.* Estrangement, *J. R. Lowell.* Sonnets, *W. Shakspeare.* Stanzas, *D. G. Rossetti.* Description of Spring, *Lord Surrey.* Ode to Duty, *W. Wordsworth* A Vision upon this Conceit of the Faery Queen, *Sir W. Raleigh.* Extreme Unction, *J. R. Lowell.* Sonnets, *J. Keats.* A Dirge, *Lord Tennyson.* Man, *H. Vaughan.* The Bridge of Sighs, *T. Hood.* Sonnets, *W. Drummond.* A Lament for Flodden, *Jane Elliott.* Ode to a Nightingale, *J. Keats.* Stanzas written in dejection near Naples, *P. B. Shelley.* A Marriage Song, *E. Spenser.* To Groves, *R. Herrick.* Sonnets, *W. Shakspeare.* Meäken up a Miff, *W. Barnes.* The Progress of Poesy, *T. Gray.* The Dirge of Marcello. *J. Webster.* Two Songs for St. Theresa, *R. Crashaw.* The Challenge of May, *W. Dunbar.* A Rondeau, *Leigh Hunt.* Tintern Abbey, *W. Wordsworth.* Take, O Take those Lips away, *W. Shakspeare.* Elegy on Elizabeth Drury, *J. Donne.* A Moon-Rainbow, *R. Browning.* The Songs of David, *C. Smart.* Life a Shadow, *W. Drummond.* Sonnets, *W. Shakespeare.* On the Tombs in Westminster, *F. Beaumont.* Rudel to the Lady of Tripoli, *R. Browning.* On a Poet's Lips I Slept, *P. B. Shelley.* Ode on a Grecian Urn, *J. Keats.* Morality, *Matthew Arnold.* How it strikes a Contemporary, *R. Browning.* The Fire of Driftwood, *H. W. Longfellow.* Good Counseil, *G. Chaucer.* The Sleeper, *E. A. Poe.* Sonnets, *D. G. Rossetti.* A Slumber did my Spirit Seal, *W. Wordsworth.* Dejection, *S. T. Coleridge.* Prospice, *R. Browning.* Sonnets, *W. Shakspeare.* Shemuel, *E. E. Bowen.* To Night, *J. Blanco White.* As Ships Becalmed, *A. H. Clough.* Ode to the West Wind, *P. B. Shelley.* A Valediction, *E. B. Browning.* The One Hope, *D. G. Rossetti.*

PART II.—Passages from "Endymion," *J. Keats.* The Spinster's Sweet-arts, *Lord Tennyson.* Italian Pictures, *Lord Byron.* Christabel. *S. T. Coleridge.* Hymn on the Nativity, *J. Milton.* Morte d'Arthur, *Lord Tennyson.* The Raven, *E. A. Poe.* Lycidas, *J, Milton.* The Vision of Sir Launfal, *J. R. Lowell.* Laodamía, *W. Wordsworth.* The Schoolmasters, *T. E. Brown.* Passages from "Hyperion," *J. Keats.* Sea Drift, *Walt Whitman.* Adonais, *P. B. Shelley.* Ode on Intimations of Immortality, *W. Wordsworth.* Pictures from the "Faery Queene," *E. Spenser.*

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

A First Poetry Book.

Athenæum.—"It is a rare thing to meet with a poetry book for children so exactly adapted to their capacity and likings as that of Miss Woods. The selection of pieces shows excellent taste and judgment. The little folks for whom they were compiled cannot fail to readily apprehend and heartily enjoy them, while they are at the same time favourably influenced by the healthy tone of feeling pervading them, and the sound instruction which is all the more likely to have effect through being gently instilled rather than forcibly obtruded. It is much to be desired that the success of the work may be such as to induce the compiler to carry out her intention of publishing selections on a similar plan for the middle and upper divisions of high schools."

Journal of Education.—"Four-fifths of the poems are, in our judgment, thoroughly fitted for boys and girls from the ages of seven to ten. Moreover, the collection is not in the least hackneyed, and we have to thank Miss Woods for introducing us to a number of perfect little gems which we had never met with before. Not only has Miss Woods enjoyed the advantage of applying to her pieces the touchstone of school experience, but she has ranged far afield and gathered from the rich store that lies buried in the rubbish of journals and magazines, and trusted to her own poetic instinct to discover the gold amongst the dross. More than half the poems are anonymous, or by comparatively unknown authors."

A Second Poetry Book.

Spectator.—"One notable feature of this selection is its originality. Miss Woods does not follow the common track of compilers. Some of the most popular of English poems—poems that generally take their place in books of this class as it were by natural right—are not to be found here. . . . On the other hand there are lyrics from poets whose names are probably unknown to the general reader, and will certainly be unknown to the children for whom this volume is designed. . . . In her selection from the writings of living poets—some well known, and others familiar only to voracious readers of verse—Miss Woods displays excellent judgment. The book is intended, as the title-page shows, for schools, but the dainty little volume will prove an excellent companion during the vacation season to any reader who loves good poetry."

Athenæum.—"Encouraged by the success of her *First Poetry Book*, Miss Woods has compiled *A Second Poetry Book*, as to which, in the main, the praise given to the former work applies. Lest any readers should regret the absence of some favourite pieces, the preface states that these are reserved for another volume. The present compilation is intended for girls from eleven to fourteen or fifteen, and the very sensible lines laid down in the preface are well adhered to. Some originality is shown in the selection, a number of poems by living writers being included which are not to be found in other anthologies."

Journal of Education.—"There is a great variety in the selections, and we notice some admirable poems of their kind, which will be new to the general reader, as well as to teachers, to whom we heartily commend the book. . . . Teachers of upper grade schools, as well as of elementary ones, will do well to procure this series."

Academy.—"It is just a year ago since we welcomed the *First Poetry Book*, which Miss Woods, of Clifton, had compiled for the lower forms of high schools for girls. We are not surprised that its success has induced her to publish a similar volume for middle forms, and also to promise yet a third in the future. As before, we found a sound judgment and a catholic taste, the number of selections from American authors other than Longfellow being unusually large."

A Third Poetry Book.

Spectator.—"Miss Woods takes the widest range in her anthology, and gathers some of her flowers in fields but slightly known. . . . Delightful from its variety and freshness. A lover of poetry must be well read in English who will not find in it poems with which he is unacquainted, and he will find little indeed that he can afford to pass by with indifference."

Saturday Review.—"Carefully and wisely prepared. . . . We are not sure whether it will not be more prized when school-days are over for ever than even in the 'Upper Forms' of the compiler's modest design."

Athenæum.—"Contains a great deal of fine poetry carefully selected."

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Now Ready. Pott 8vo. Price 2s. 6d. net

Golden Treasury Series

POET'S WALK

AN INTRODUCTION TO ENGLISH POETRY

CHOSEN AND ARRANGED BY

MOWBRAY MORRIS

NEW AND REVISED EDITION

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

PREFACE

BOOK THE FIRST

W. Shakespeare, A Morning Song
T. Heywood, A Greeting
G. Wither, The Consolations of Poetry
E. Spenser, Fairyland
C. Marlowe, The Shepherd to his Love
Sir W. Raleigh, The Nymph's Reply
G. Wither, The Manly Heart
T. Carew, True Beauty
R. Herrick, The Country Life
R. Barnefield, True Friends and False
W. Shakespeare, Advice to a Young Man
J. Milton, The Assembling of the Hosts of Hell
W. Shakespeare, England's Danger
W. Shakespeare, The Triumph of Bolingbroke
W. Shakespeare, Prince Henry
Unknown, Sir Patrick Spens
J. Milton, Lycidas
A. Marvell, Ode upon Cromwell's Return from Ireland
W. Shakespeare, England Arming for War
R. Lovelace, To Lucasta, on Going to the Wars
W. Shakespeare, St. Crispin's Day
W. Shakespeare, King Henry's Prayer
M. Drayton, The Battle of Agincourt

Unknown, Brave Lord Willoughby
J. Shirley, Death the Leveller
B. Jonson, To Master William Shakespeare
Lord Brooke, On the Death of Sir Philip Sidney
E. Spenser, To the Countess of Pembroke
B. Jonson, Epitaph on the Same
F. Beaumont, On the Tombs of Westminster Abbey
J. Milton, L'Allegro
B. Jonson, Hymn to Diana
E. Spenser, Sunrise
G. Fletcher, Morning Song
R. Herrick, May-day
W. Shakespeare, The Forester's Song
W. Shakespeare, A Cry of Hounds
G. Fletcher, Evening Song
R. Herrick, A Night-Piece; to Julia
W. Shakespeare, Silvia
Marquis of Montrose, My dear and only Love
Sir H. Wotton, Elizabeth of Bohemia
W. Shakespeare, Winter
G. Wither, A Christmas Carol
J. Milton, Il Penseroso
Unknown, Fair Helen
Unknown, Forsaken
B. Jonson, Truth
J. Milton, The Spirit's Song
W. Shakespeare, A Dirge
Sir W. Raleigh, Last Lines
R. Herrick, The White Island

Book the Second

T. Gray, The Progress of Poesy
J. Dryden, Alexander's Feast
A. Pope, The Triumph of Dulness
S. Johnson, The Fortune of War
A. Pope, To Lord Bolingbroke
J. Dryden, The Duke of Buckingham
A. Pope, The Death of the Same
O. Goldsmith, The Village Clergyman
T. Gray, Elegy Written in a Country Churchyard
A. Pope, Epitaph on Sir Isaac Newton
S. Johnson, On the Death of Robert Levet
A. Pope, Atticus
A. Pope, His own Character
O. Goldsmith, My Friends
T. Gray, The Bard
T. Chatterton, The Minstrel's Roundelay
W. Cowper, Boadicea
T. Gray, The Triumphs of Owen
A. Pope, Belinda
M. Prior, Miss Mary
R. Graham, The Lover's Plea
Unknown, Lizzie Lindsay
O. Goldsmith, The Village Schoolmaster
T. Gray, Ode on a Distant Prospect of Eton College
S. Johnson, The English Theatre
W. Cowper, On the Loss of the *Royal George*
Miss Elliot, The Flowers of the Forest
W. Collins, Ode
S. T. Coleridge, The Knight's Tomb
R. Burns, Address of Bruce to his Troops before Bannockburn
Allan Ramsay, The Soldier's Farewell
James Thomson, Rule Britannia
W. Wordsworth, The Good Lord Clifford
S. T. Coleridge, Kubla Khan
R. Burns, John Anderson
S. T. Coleridge, The Quarrel
S. T. Coleridge, The Reconciliation
R. Burns, My Love
W. Blake, The Piper
M. Bruce, The Cuckoo
W. Wordsworth, A Perfect Woman
S. T. Coleridge, Genevieve
T. Campbell, Glenara
R. Burns, A Bard's Epitaph
W. Wordsworth, On the Loss of Friends
T. Campbell, The Last Man
Mrs. Barbauld, Life and Death

Book the Third

Lord Byron, Comrades
P. B. Shelley, The Spirit of Delight
W. Wordsworth, The Reaper
Sir W. Scott, The Gathering Song of Black Donald
T. Moore, Before the Battle
Sir W. Scott, The Red Harlaw
Lord Byron, The Assault
T. Campbell, The Battle of the Baltic
Sir W. Scott, Flodden Field
T. Campbell, Hohenlinden
Lord Byron, Waterloo
C. Wolfe, The Burial of Sir John Moore
J. Keats, On first looking into Chapman's Homer
R. Southey, The Scholar

W. Wordsworth, The Tables Turned
P. B. Shelley, The Invitation
Sir W. Scott, Hunting Song
Lord Byron, The Sea
Leigh Hunt, The River Nile
P. B. Shelley, The Cloud
Lord Byron, Sunset
Sir W. Scott, A Serenade
Lord Byron, The Corsair's Life
Allan Cunningham, A Song of the Sea
Sir W. Scott, Rosabelle
P. B. Shelley, The Skylark
W. Wordsworth, Tite Cuckoo
J. Keats, The Nightingale
Sir W. Scott, The Rising of the Clans
T. Campbell, Lochiel's Warning
Lord Byron, The Song of Saul before his Last Battle
Lord Byron, The Destruction of Sennacherib
T. Campbell, The Mariners of England
W. Wordsworth, England's Duty
Sir W. Scott, Bonny Dundee
P. B. Shelley, The Golden Age
Lord Byron, The Isles of Greece
P. B. Shelley, Arethusa
J. Keats, Ode to a Grecian Urn
W. Wordsworth, London
Lord Byron, Venice
P. B. Shelley, The Same
Sir W. Scott, Edinburgh
Lord Byron, The Coliseum
Lord Byron, The Land of the Sun
W. Wordsworth, Merry England
Sir W. Scott, Lochinvar
P. B. Shelley, The Fugitives
Sir W. Scott, Jock o' Hazeldean
Sir W. Scott, The Outlaw
J. Keats, Robin Hood
Sir W. Scott, Coronach
W. Wordsworth, To Sir Walter Scott
Lord Byron, Ode to Napoleon Buonaparte

Book the Fourth

Lord Tennyson, Ode on the Death of the Duke of Wellington
Lord Macaulay, The Armada
R. Browning, Home Thoughts from the Sea
Sir F. Doyle, The Red Thread of Honour
Lord Macaulay, The Triumph of Arms
M. Arnold, The Triumph of the Lyre
W. Morris, The Song of Orpheus to the Argonauts
T. Hood, Ruth
W. S. Landor, Rose Aylmer
H. W. Longfellow, Children of Nature
M. Arnold, Memorial Verses
Mrs. Browning, The Poets of Ancient Greece
R. Browning, Home Thoughts from Abroad
M. Arnold, The Sweet of the Year
C. Kingsley, Ode to the North-East Wind
H. W. Longfellow, The Skeleton in Armour
Lord Macaulay, The Last Buccaneer
C. Kingsley, The Knight's Leap
W. E. Aytoun, Killiecrankie
Lord Macaulay, The Charge of the Romans
H. W. Longfellow, The Belfry of Bruges
C. S. Calverley, The Picture Gallerie at Munich
R. W. Emerson, The Master Builder
E. A. Poe, Helen
C. Kingsley, The Swan-Neck
T. Hood, Fair Ines
Sir F. Doyle, How Lord Nairn was Saved
W. E. Aytoun, Culloden
Lord Macaulay, Epitaph on a Jacobite
H. W. Longfellow, The Burial of the Minnesink
R. Browning, How they Brought the Good News from Ghent to Aix
C. Kingsley, The Old Buccaneer
Sir F. Doyle, The Return of the Guards
E. FitsGerald, The End of All
R. Browning, Spring
C. Kingsley, The Tide-River
M. Arnold, Old Favourites
W. M. Praed, The Vicar
T. Hood, The Girl I left behind me
Leigh Hunt, Jenny
W. M. Praed, School and School-Fellows
C. Kingsley, Youth and Age
W. M. Thackeray, The Garret
T. Hood, Night and Morning
H. W. Longfellow, A Day of Suns
A. H. Clough, The Meeting
C. Kingsley, A Farewell

Notes
Index of Authors
Index of First Lines

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Please name the card or book required.

Macmillan's Recitation Cards & Books

A SELECTION OF COPYRIGHT POETRY.

Standard I.—1. Grasmere (*C. G. Rossetti*); 2. The Fountain (*F. H. Doyle*); 3. The Sands of Dee (*Kingsley*); 4. The Sailor Boy (*Tennyson*); 5. Earl Haldan's Daughter (*Kingsley*); 6. A Green Cornfield (*C. G. Rossetti*) and The City Child (*Tennyson*); 43. Little White Lily (*G. MacDonald*); 44. Wynken, Blynken, and Nod (*E. Field*); 45. Sweet and Low, and Minnie and Winnie (*Tennyson*); 46. The Worm (*T. Gisborne*) and A Wish (*Mrs. Craik*); 47. The Harper (*T. Campbell*); 48. Robin Redbreast (*W. Allingham*).

Standard II.—7. A Farm Walk (*C. G. Rossetti*); 8. The Death of the Old Year (*Tennyson*); 9. The Mango Tree (*Kingsley*); 10. The Goose (*Tennyson*); 11. Child's Talk in April (*C. G. Rossetti*); 12. The May Queen (*Tennyson*) and May (*C. G. Rossetti*); 49. The Fountain (*J. R. Lowell*) and The Use of Flowers (*Mary Howitt*); 50. Baby (*G. MacDonald*), The Bee and the Flower (*Tennyson*), and Boats sail on the Rivers (*C. G. Rossetti*); 51. The Coming of Spring (*Mary Howitt*); 52. The Orphan Children (*Anon.*); 53. The Fairy Shoemaker (*W. Allingham*) and The Wind (*C. G. Rossetti*); 54. Running after the Rainbow (*Mrs. Craik*) and The Owl (*Tennyson*).

Standard III.—13. Brother Bruin and Golden Glories (*C. G. Rossetti*); 14. A New Forest Ballad (*Kingsley*); 15. Twilight Calm (*C. G. Rossetti*); 16. The Fusiliers' Dog (*F. H. Doyle*); 17. Johnny (*C. G. Rossetti*); 18. The Captain (*Tennyson*); 55. Spring (*Thomas Nash*) A Storm Song (*Bayard Taylor*) and The Song of the Western Men (*R. S. Hawker*); 56. Creeping Jenny (*Emily H. Hickey*); 57. The Little Mushroom-Girl (*Mrs. Craik*), Willie's Robin (*Mrs. Craik*), and A Farewell (*Charles Kingsley*).

Standard IV.—19. The Victim (*Tennyson*); 20. Balaclava (*F. H. Doyle*); 21. The May Queen (*Tennyson*); 22. A Bird's-Eye View (*C. G. Rossetti*); 23. The Old Cavalier (*F. H Doyle*) and Young and Old (*Kingsley*); 24. A Year's Windfalls (*C. G. Rossetti*); 58. The Honour of Bristol (*Anon.*); 59. In the Children's Hospital (*Tennyson*), The Three Fishers (*Charles Kingsley*), and Ring Out, Wild Bells (*Tennyson*); 60. The Pipes of Lucknow (*Whittier*) and A Wet Sheet and a Flowing Sea (*A. Cunningham*).

Standard V.—25. The Sleeping Beauty (*Tennyson*); 26. The Forsaken Merman (*M. Arnold*); 27. The Mother and Daughter (*F. H. Doyle*); 28. A Royal Princess (*C. G. Rossetti*); 29. Excalibur (*Tennyson*); 30. The Revenge (*Tennyson*); 61. Ye Mariners of England (*Campbell*), The Loss of "The Royal George" (*Cowper*), and Rule Britannia (*Thomson*); 62. A Welcome (*Charles Kingsley*) and The Song of Night (*Felicia Hemans*); 63. The Church of Brou (*Matthew Arnold*).

Standard VI.-VII.—(*Selections from Tennyson.*) 31. Recollections of the Arabian Nights; 32. The Tournament; 33. The Voyage of Maeldune and The Deserted House; 34. The Passing of Arthur; 35. Dora; 36. The Lady of Shalott; 37. Ode on the Death of the Duke of Wellington; 38. The Brook; 39. The Dying Swan and Songs from The Princess; 40. Sir Galahad and Mariana; 41. The Lotos Eaters; 42. The Defence of Lucknow and The Charge of the Light Brigade; 64. The Charge of the Heavy Brigade, The Pilgrim (*J. Bunyan*), True Greatness (*Lady E. Carew*), and Edwin and Paulinus (*Unknown*); 65. The High Tide on the Coast of Lincolnshire (*Jean Ingelow*) and The Omnipotent (*Scott*); 66. A Dream of Fair Women (*Tennyson*).

Nos. 1-42 in Thumb Case, 3/6; Nos. 43-66 in Thumb Case, 2/6

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Please name the book required.

HOW TO LEARN TO READ

THE ENGLISH METHOD OF TEACHING TO READ

BY

A. SONNENSCHEIN AND J. M. D. MEIKLEJOHN

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

The Nursery Book, 3d.; Sewed, 1d.

Reading Sheets on Roller, size 39 × 26, 6s. The First Course, 7d.; The Second Course, 7d.; The Third and Fourth Courses, 7d.

J. R. BLAKISTON, Esq., H.M. Chief Inspector of Schools, in his book, *The Teacher*, says: "One of the most successful teachers of reading to infants attributes her wonderful results to the following system. She takes a class of four-year old children and makes them sound accurately after her all the voices or powers of each vowel regularly used in English. . . . The teacher referred to uses Sonnenschein and Meiklejohn's *English Method of Teaching to Read.*"

Another H.M.I. writes: "Results surprising. I consider it the only method of securing fluent reading."

HOW TO LEARN TO READ.

THE ONLY TRUE METHOD.—"A most interesting lecture was given on Wednesday afternoon at the Sesame Club by Mr. A. Sonnenschein on the proper method for teaching to read English; and so convincing was the exposition that it is nothing short of astounding to learn that, although this method was known thirty years ago to Mr. W. E. Forster, who fully admitted its claim on the most serious attention of the educational authorities of the country, yet it is to-day only known to comparatively few, instead of being, as it unquestionably should be, the accepted method in every elementary school in the country. For Mr. Sonnenschein not only claims, but has himself proved experimentally that the claim is well founded, that by it the process of learning to read fluently should occupy some five or six months only, whereas it commonly takes not less than three or four years.

"METHOD DETERMINED BY LANGUAGE.—The lecturer began by explaining that there are three ways of teaching reading:—(1) the 'Literal,' or reading by spelling the whole word; (2) the 'Syllabic' or 'phonic' method; (3) the 'Verbal,' or 'look-and-say' method in which the complete words are learned by sight. The question which of these is the proper one to adopt is determined by the language of the learner. Thus Italian, the spelling of which is practically phonetic, or German, which is largely phonetic, is best taught by the 'literal' method, because the individual letters being the true elements of the words, represent sounds derived from and based upon the child's own speech. The teacher of Italian, for example, may show the pupil a picture of a donkey, and ask its name. The child answers 'asino.' By slow, deliberate pronunciation and analysis of sounds, the teacher can resolve the word into its elemental sounds *a*, *s*, *i*, *n*, *o*. The child has now learnt the symbols of three of the five vowels and of two consonants. And now the teacher can build up the familar Italian words:—Si, no, io, sino, sano, sono, naso, &c., and even short sentences such as 'Io non so,' 'Nina non sa.' Although German is not equally simple, the same principle governs the teaching—the principle being the gradual introduction of words by which the whole alphabet is taught first functionally, and not till afterwards by the names of the letters. Italian children, as a matter of fact, learn to read in about three months, and German children in less than eight.

"THE ENGLISH METHOD IS SYLLABIC.—In a language like English or French, where simple sounds are often represented by combinations of letters, the true elements of words so far as the spelling is concerned are syllables; and the 'Syllabic' method is indispensable. Mr. Sonnenschein showed by examples that the French child has a harder task

than the English in learning to read, yet he accomplishes the task to which we devote three or four years at least, in twelve months. It is a great mistake to suppose that English spelling is exceptionally full of anomalies. They are much more numerous in French. English presents a large mass of phenomena, but they fall easily into classification, the exception to rule being in reality rare. To teach the English child to read, the teacher must present to the learner in systematic and graduated sequence all the phenomena of English reading and spelling.

"How to Teach the Alphabet.—The old-fashioned way of teaching the alphabet is a fundamental mistake. The names of the letters are essentially misleading. 'Ay tea' (A.T.) cannot rationally be made to coalesce into 'At'; nor 'Aitch ay tea' into 'Hat.' Phonetically these combinations would make 'Ate' and 'Hate.' But the chief objection to the current method is the impossibility of distinguishing the sounds of our English vowels without an accompanying consonant. As, therefore, the functions of the vowels can only be taught when joined to consonants, we are driven to accept the 'syllabic method' in teaching English reading.

"In order to present a graduated course of study in which the phenomena of the language are classified, Mr. Sonnenschein divides the subject into four well-defined sections or courses. The first of these consists of *short vowels* with only one consonant after on or both sides of it, as in 'at,' 'cat,' &c. In this first course the child learns some six hundred monosyllabic words with only very few anomalies, and these few can be arranged in categories. Thus in the series '*at, et, it, ot, ut*,' the child becomes acquainted with fifty-one complete words and forty-seven syllables forming parts of other words to be learnt afterwards; and in all these ninety-eight combinations of letters there is only a single anomaly of pronunciation, viz., '*put*,' and this anomaly itself takes its place in a further classification with such words as *push, pull, bull, full*, &c. Moreover, the child is made acquainted with that peculiar English feature, the influence of letters on their neighbours. Thus the 'w' and 'qu' regularly alter the sound of an 'a' and sometimes of an 'o' following them. Compare, for instance, the sound of '*bar*' with '*war*,' '*harm*' with '*warm*,' and '*lash*' with '*wash*' and '*quash*.'

"The Next Step.—Then comes a second course, still of short vowels with *combinations of consonants* on either or both sides of it, *e.g.*, '*flat*,' '*grip*,' '*sent*,' '*spent*,' '*stand*,' '*strand*,' &c. This course makes the child acquainted with from six to seven hundred words, with only about sixteen anomalies. Up to this point the young reader has mastered some fifteen hundred words with not more than two per cent. of deviations from regularity.

"The third course introduces the learner to *long vowels*. Here the teacher points out that *if the vowel precedes the consonant it is always short*, as the 'a' in 'absent'; while *if it follows it, it is almost always long*, as the 'a' in 'basin.' If the vowel preceding the consonant is intended to be long, this is indicated by a mute 'e' after the consonant: cf. '*hat*,' '*hate*'; '*met*,' '*mete*'; '*pin*,' '*pine*.' In five hundred words coming under this category there are only fifteen exceptions. The sum

total so far for two thousand words gives no more than three per cent. of exceptions. So much for the supposed irregularity of English.

"The fourth and last course deals with double vowels and diphthongs, and it is here that the chief difficulty is met. But even here classification, which means simplification, is possible; and children who have mastered the first three courses, generally get over this last course in about a month or six weeks. When they have done so, they have learnt to read. There remain a certain number of anomalous words coming under no rule, *e.g.*, 'beauty,' 'aisle,' 'choir, 'lieutenant,' 'colonel.' These have to be learnt when they occur, just like proper names. The number of them is not large.

"READING AND WRITING.—Like all scientific educationists, Mr. Sonnenschein insists on the necessity of teaching reading and writing concurrently. They are complementary processes. The child should in the first instance use the printed characters; and since the syllabic method necessitates the training of the child to pronounce clearly every component syllable of each word, it has the enormous incidental advantage of producing distinctness of speech.

"WORD-BUILDING AND ANALYSIS.—When children engage in promiscuous reading—as they quickly do when taught by this method—they come across long words of many syllables. These present little difficulty if the learners have been trained in word-building and word-analysis—*i.e.*, breaking up words into their component syllables. Thus having mastered at an early stage such a word as '*point*,' the child finds no difficulty in building up successively 'appoint,' 'dis-ap-point,' 'dis-ap-point-ment.' Or, to take a more difficult example, he has learnt the elementary sounds 'ar' and 'arc'; he has also learnt that an 'e' added to this has the effect of softening the 'c' and modifying the sound of the 'a,' and he is thus easily led to 'scarce' and 'scarcely.'

"VERY SIMPLE IN PRACTICE.—This may all look complicated and difficult when formally described; but in actual practice it is simplicity itself. And, after all, the proof of the pudding is in the eating. Mr. Sonnenschein lately showed the work of a boy taught by this method to Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Schools at the Education Office, and this high educational official, amazed at the results exhibited, was utterly incredulous when assured that the boy in question was by no means a pupil of exceptional ability. This child began to learn to read on February 14th of the present year, with the first course described above—at, et, it, ot, ut. By the end of the month he could read, and *write from dictation* (not copying) such sentences as 'Do not push my kid into the bush.' After two months' teaching he could similarly write correctly from dictation a sentence of such questionable accuracy as 'From London to Chatham and Dover is a quick run and quickly over.' On May 3rd he spontaneously produced an original composition in the shape of a little story; and by the middle of June—*i.e.*, after four months from commencing his lessons in reading, he was able to take up and read with ease any page of a distinctly advanced collection of stories which included selections from Grimm's *Tales*.

"Mr. Sonnenschein insists that this is no exceptional case in his experience. No average English boy, if taught by the proper method, should take more than five or six months in learning to read with complete fluency up to the standard of his thought-capacity. Yet our

public elementary schools go blundering on with teaching that takes years to produce inferior results; and the School Board spends its energy in fighting for extension of the school age, or for continuation classes for children whose years have been stupidly wasted by labouring to acquire the elements through unscientific and obsolete methods of learning."

A WORD TO SCHOOL BOARD ELECTORS

"The lecture delivered at the Sesame Club by Mr. Sonnenschein, reported in another column, comes at an opportune moment on the eve of the elections for the London School Board. We commend it to the serious attention of that numerous body of electors who sincerely desire to obtain a Board that will do something for the furtherance of efficient elementary education, but who are at a loss to discover any clear-cut principle making for that end in the professions of candidates of either party, or in the purposeless wrangling that forms the staple of School Board electioneering. Whatever else Progressives and Moderates may dispute about, it is, by the common consent of all, the first duty of the Board Schools to teach the children to read and write. At present the art of reading is only acquired after some three or four years of schooling, and even then it is often imperfectly and unintelligently mastered. The contrast presented by the Continent in this respect is not creditable to English intelligence. Italian children learn to read easily in three or four months, and French and German children in less than a year. English is not a more difficult language for a native to learn to read than German, and is distinctly less difficult than French. Why do our boys and girls take three or four times longer to learn than the children of the Continent? Simply because our method of teaching is utterly unscientific. Mr. Sonnenschein has elaborated a system which is scientific; in which simplification is the result of classification; and he has found by experience that average English children taught by his method can learn to read in six or seven months with greater ease and fluency than the Board School pupil in three or four years. This is not a matter that can be dismissed as the theory of a faddist. It is a simple fact proved by experiment. And in view of the experience of the Continent it is not surprising. The length of time consumed in learning to read in this country requires explanation. Why, then, has Mr. Sonnenschein's method not been adopted long ago in every elementary school? When an inventor makes a contrivance for hastening locomotion or improving lighting it is taken in hand and applied to those purposes. When we are shown how to save time and labour in educa-

tion we let year after year pass without taking any notice. We debate the question of raising the school age, or of doing this, that, and the other for the sake of giving some education beyond the elements to the children of the country. And all the time we might if we chose solve half the problems of elementary education by exercising a small amount of intelligence. The exceedingly simple method propounded by Mr. Sonnenschein has been procurable for years past in a little series of cheap primers published by Messrs. Macmillan. It is perfectly well known at the Education Office, and has been approved—as, indeed, it could not fail to be by any person who had given the matter a moments serious attention—by the leading educational authorities. Why does the Education Office not recommend these primers for use in Board Schools? Simply because our culpably timid authorities shrink from giving the weight of their sanction to books produced by any particular firm of publishers. Rather than do so they waste the money of every ratepayer in the kingdom and the time and labour of every child in the schools. We have no hesitation in asserting that if the London School Board were to insist on the general adoption of the Sonnenschein method of teaching reading, they would introduce one of the most important educational reforms brought about since the Act of 1870. Those electors, therefore, who seek some practical and useful aim to guide them in the coming election could not do better than refuse support to candidates of either party who are unwilling to give a promise that this reform shall be at any rate given a fair examination and trial by the new Board."

THE NURSERY BOOK.

[THE NAMES OF THE LETTERS MUST *not* BE TAUGHT.]

LESSON 1.

(To be read first across, then down, till known; then teacher to point at words here and there.)

A	a	I
a	A	I
I	a	A
A	I	a
a	I	A
I	A	a

[2 words.

LESSON 2.

(To be read first across, then down, till known; then teacher to point at words here and there.)

O!

go,	so;
so,	go.

[5 words.

Exercise 1.

1. O! I go. 2. I go so. 3. so I go.
4. go I so? 5. so go I.

Lesson 3.

(*To be read first across, then down, till known; then* etc.)

lo	no	ho
ho	lo	no
no	lo	ho
lo	ho	no
ho	no	lo
no	ho	lo

[8 words.

Lesson 4.

(*Recap.*)

(*To be read first across, then down, till known; then* etc.)

go	no	so	lo	ho
no	go	lo	ho	so
so	ho	go	no	lo
lo	so	ho	go	no
ho	lo	no	so	go

[8 words.

Exercise 2.

1. lo I go so.
2. lo so I go.
3. go I so?
4. no. O no!

LESSON 10.

(*All the syllables in* l *to be practised first, then those in* m ; *and then both alternately. To be read first across,* etc.)

lat	let	lit	lot	lut
mat	met	mit	mot	mut
let	lat	lot	lut	lit
met	mat	mot	mut	mit
lit	lut	lat	let	lot
mit	mut	mat	met	mot
lot	lit	lut	lat	let
mot	mit	mut	mat	met
lut	lot	let	lit	lat
mut	mot	met	mit	mat

19 words.] [40 syllables

EXERCISE 5.

1. he met me on the mat.
2. she let the ox go up on the hut.
3. I let the lot go.
4. we met a shy ox.
5. it is on the mat, is it to go?
6. Let me in.
7. the hat is on the mat.
8. the fat ox is let into the hut.
9. we met the fat ox.
10. he lit up the hut.
11. hit the fat ox.
12. let me go.

LESSON 11.

(*All the syllables in* n *to be practised first, then those in* m, *then those in* p; *and then together. To be read first across, etc.*)

mat	met	mit	mot	mut
nat	net	nit	not	nut
met	mat	mot	mut	mit
net	nat	not	nut	nit
pet	pat	pot	*put* *	pit
mit	mut	mat	met	mot
nit	nut	nat	net	not
pit	*put* *	pat	pet	pot
mot	mit	mut	mat	met
not	nit	nut	nat	net
pot	pit	*put* *	pat	pet
mut	mot	met	mit	mat
nut	not	net	nit	nat
put *	pot	pet	pit	pat

27 words.] [50 syllables.

EXERCISE 6.

1. it is a nut.
2. no, it is not a nut.
3. the net is on the ox.
4. is she the pet?

* The Teacher will be so good as to call attention to this exception—as it will by-and-by justify *push*, *pull*, *puss*, etc. etc.

3. This girth is longer than I want.
4. Did he go north?
5. This bird is not worth very much.
6. He got very swarthy by sitting so much in the sun.
7. You will not find swarthy men in the north; black men dwell in hot lands.
8. The firth of Forth is in Scot-land.
9. Scot-land is the land of his birth.
10. Sum-mer is full of mirth.
11. The sun is hot, the birds sing, and the lambs run on the grassy sward.
12. Win-ter al-so is full of mirth, when we all sit together and chat or sing.

Practice XVI.

ark	erk	irk	ork	urk
erk	ark	ork	urk	irk
irk	urk	ark	erk	ork
ork	irk	urk	ark	erk
urk	ork	erk	irk	ark

LESSON 19.

bark	cork	dark	dirk	fork
hark	jerk	lark	lurk	mark
murky	park	pork	quirk	Turk
*work	York	shark	shirk	*clerk*
spark	stark	*stork	market	

er	erf	serf	ur	urf	turf
ar	arf	wharf	dwarf*	scarf*	

EXERCISE 30.

1. Bring me the bark from the log.
2. Cork is a kind of bark.
3. We had a run in the park.
4. Hark! the pretty bird is sing-ing.
5. The lark went upwards and sang.
6. Fetch me pork from the market.
7. He is not quick at his work.
8. All sparks fly upwards.
9. Do not shirk your work.
10. It is very dark and murky in the park.
11. Dogs do not snort; pigs snort and grunt, but dogs bark.
12. Hark! the bell is ringing,
    Calling us to singing;
    Hark! the bell is ringing,
    Calling us to singing.
    Run! run along!
    Let us sing a song!
    Hark! hark! the bell is ringing!

* Contrast and see Note on *w*, p. 79, First Course.

Third Course.

Exercise 1.

1. I do not hate him at all.
2. He fell into the pond and met a sad fate.
3. Open the gate and let me in.
4. Did the kite catch the bird?
5. She can sing to the lute or to the harp.
6. Barking dogs don't bite.
7. The silent dog is the first to bite.
8. You can tell a bird by its note, and a man by his talk.
9. A crate full of boxes was standing by the waggon.
10. Bring a plate, and put it on the hob of the grate.
11. Can you skate? No, I can't.
12. He did it from spite.
13. Did you write the letter?
14. Yes, I wrote it last month.
15. I wrote it on my slate first, and then on paper
16. As you mete, so it shall be meted to you.
17. The church stands on the old site.
18. The wolf killed the pretty white lamb.
19. If he runs at such a rate, I cannot catch him.
20. A bad padlock invites a picklock.

A bad padlock invites a picklock.

Lesson 2.

en	er	est	ed	ing	ish	y
bite		fate		hate		
bit-ing		fat-ed		hat-ing		

late
lat-est

mate
mat-ed

quote
quot-ing

white
whit-ish

brute
brut-ish

flute
flut-ing

grate
grat-ing

plate
plat-ed

skate
skat-ing

smite
smit-ing

write
writ-ing

fade
fad-ed

hide
hid-ing

ride
rid-ing

wide
wid-est

shade
shad-y

con-clude
con-clud-ing

glide
glid-ed

pride
prid-ed

prude
prud-ish

Exercise 2.

1. She was singing to his fluting.
2. I cannot help concluding from what you told me that he was late.
3. When the mate of the ship got on land, he put on a white hat, and dressed himself up; then he rode to London, and walked in the Strand, as far as Temple Bar.
4. The north wind is biting, cold and dry; the west wind is soft, warm and wet.
5. You can ride with me, my little lady.

You can ride with me, my little lady.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Please name the volumes required.

MACMILLAN'S
NEW LITERARY READERS

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

Reading Sheets (17 Sheets, on Manilla. Size 37×33) . .	12s.
Primer I. (32 pp.) With Coloured Illustrations	4d.
„ II. (48 pp.) „ „	5d.
Infant Reader (72 pp.) „ „	6d.
Standard 0. (88 pp.)	8d.

Book I. (112 pp.) . .	9d.	Book IV. (208 pp.) . .	1s. 4d.
„ II. (128 pp.) . .	10d.	„ V. (240 pp.) . .	1s. 6d.
„ III. (176 pp.) . .	1s.	„ VI. (256 pp.) . .	1s. 6d.

PRESS OPINIONS.

Journal of Education.—"The editors have performed their compilation with great care and judgment, the result being that the extracts have been judiciously selected, systematically graded, and tersely, yet sufficiently annotated. The letterpress is excellent, the illustrations ample, and the general 'get up' of the books everything that could be desired."

Educational News.—"The grading of the several lessons, so as to secure safe progress and pleasant interest, is unexceptional. The extracts are skilfully varied, and, in some instances, judiciously condensed. The illustrations are artistic. The binding is bright, the type clear, the paper good, and, in every way, the books do credit to compiler and publishers. The teacher who chooses them will bring within his pupils' reach specimens of cultured thought and graceful style."

Board Teacher.—"Ably edited, these readers supply a distinct want. Their special feature is indicated in their title. The matter is copyright and of a high, yet attractive and suitable literary character. We can heartily recommend them."

Infants' Mistress.—"These little books are decidedly well got up in every detail, the illustrations—a good proportion of which are coloured—being of first-rate merit, whilst the matter and method of the lessons are both on rational lines. We believe that as much progress and interest can be got from the New Literary Readers as from any set we have seen."

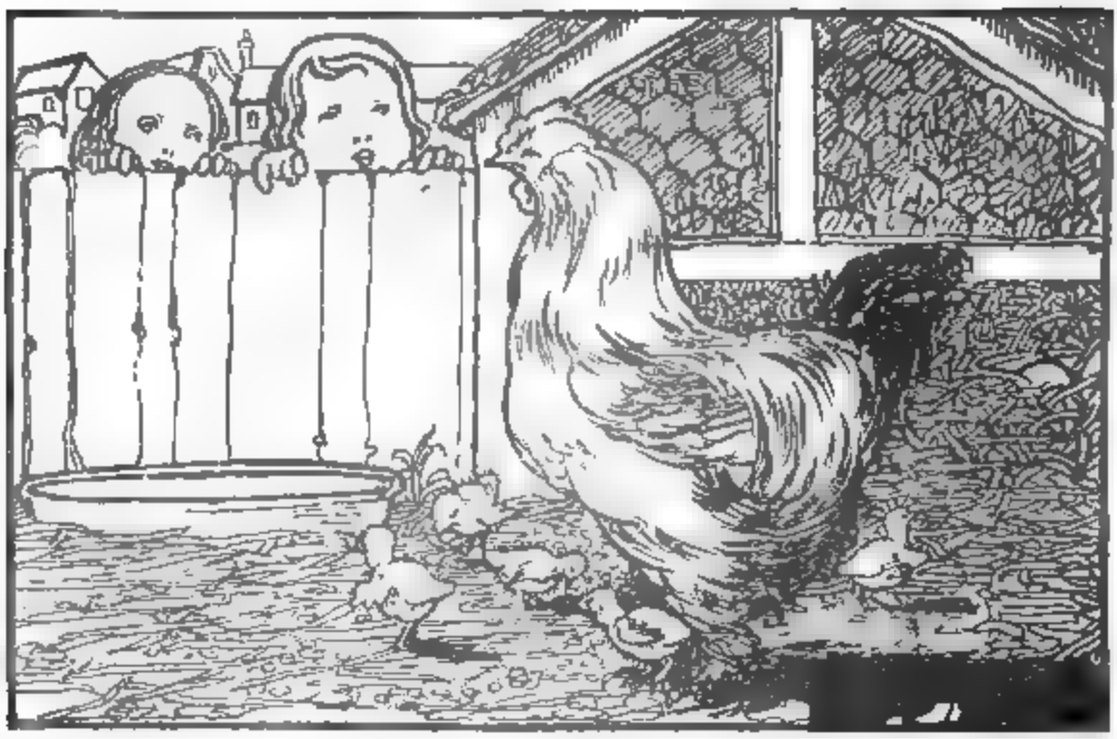
Girls' Mistress.—"We have much pleasure in strongly recommending this series of Readers. They are drawn up on correct educational lines."

at	fat	pat
bat	hat	rat
cat	mat	sat

1. Pat sat on the mat; I sat by the cat.
2. The fat cat is at the bat.
3. A rat is in my hat. Cat, go to it.
4. The cat is fat; so is the rat.
5. He is to go to pat the fat ox.
6. My hat is on. Am I to go?

old	gold	rose
bold	hold	nose
cold	sold	bone
fold	told	stone

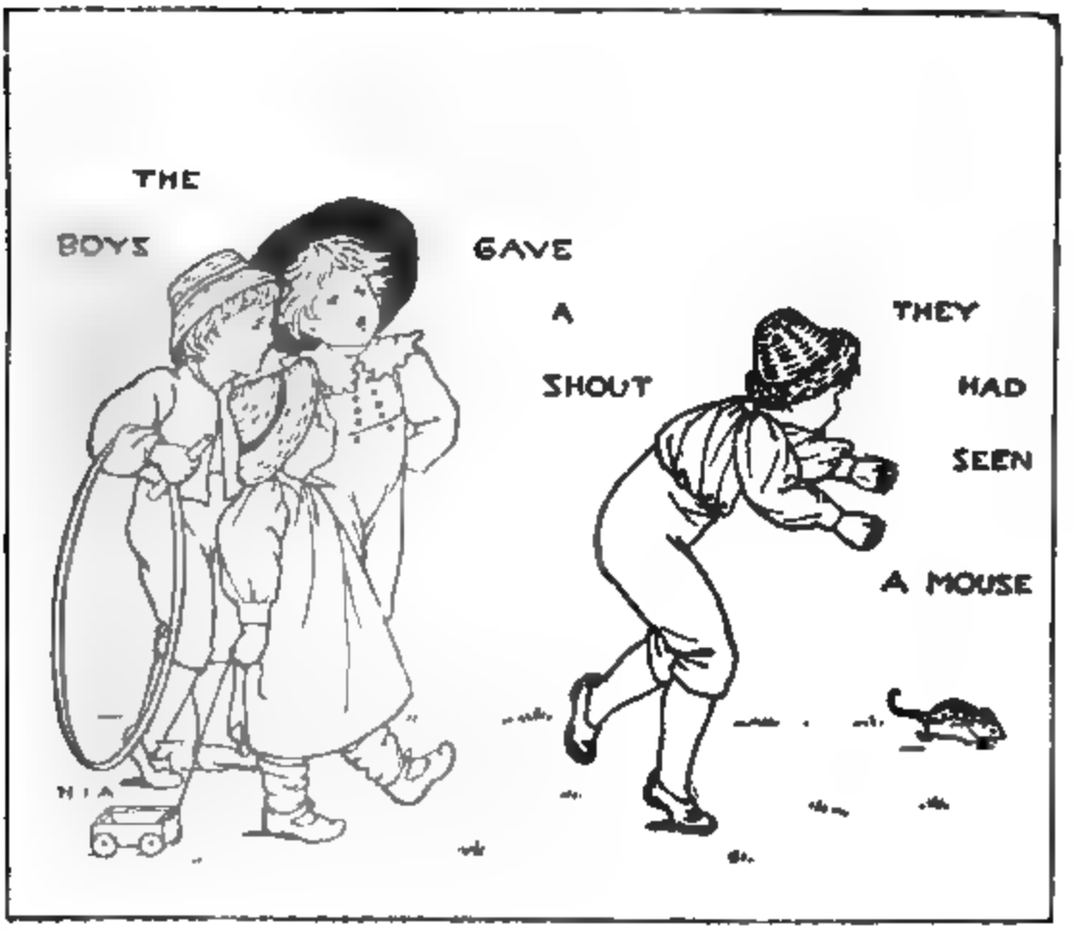
1. The old man is cold. Take him to the fire, and be kind to him.
2. Be so kind as to hold my mare, till I get on its back.
3. Tom has sold his gold pin, and he has lost his dog.



A Hen and her Chicks

brown	count	laid
white	chicks	throw

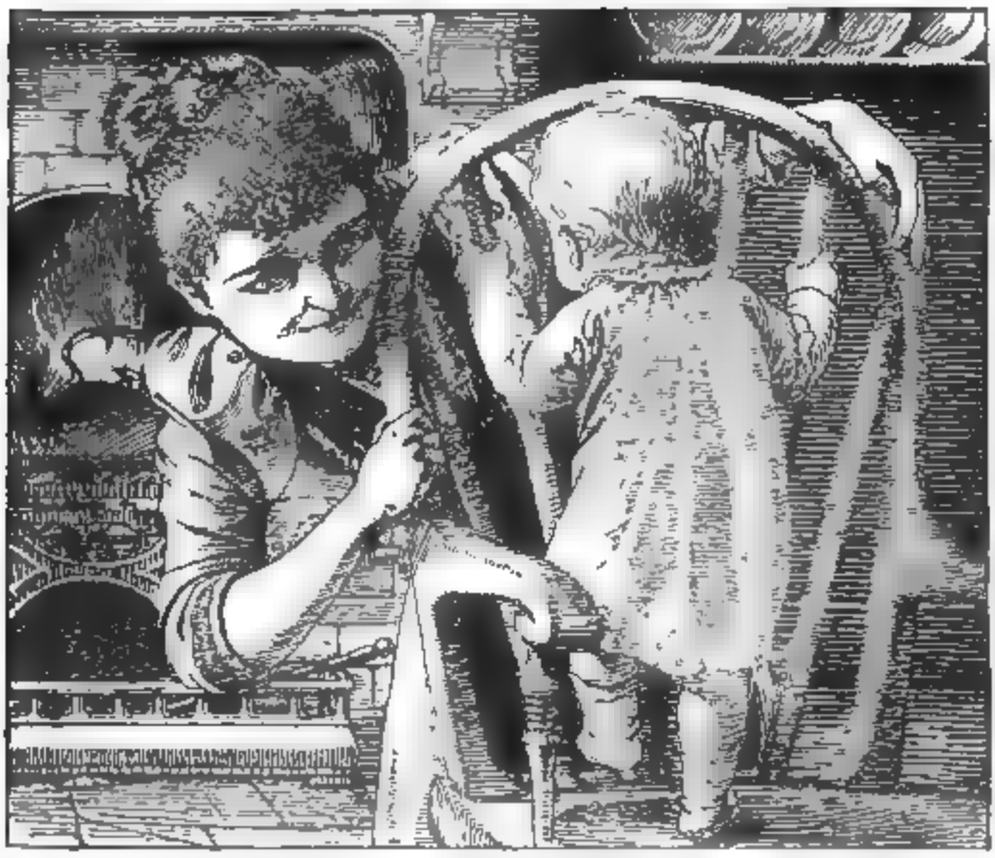
1. Here is a brown hen, with her chicks.
2. Can you count them? Yes. There are one, two, three, four, five.
3. Now we will look in the hen's nest, and see if she has laid an egg.



out	our	sound	mouse
shout	hour	round	house

1. When the boys came out to play, they gave a loud shout.

2. They had seen a mouse. It ran round the house, and went into a hole.



4.—KISSING THROUGH THE CHAIR

fun′-ny	**through**	**pok′-er**
mam-ma′	**lev′-el**	**de-cla′re**

1. Peep-bo, peep-bo!
   Kissing through the chair:
   Mamma has kissed baby
   Twice I declare!
   Like a little poker
   Stiff, baby stands:
   Stamps with his little feet,
   Pushes with his hands.

9. "They taste good," said the Wolf; "I must have more." So away he went into the kitchen; and while getting the pancakes, he upset the dish and broke it to pieces.

10. The farmer's wife heard the crash and

came running in. When she saw the Wolf, she called loudly for the farm servants, who beat him with whatever they could lay their hands on. So the Wolf came back to the Fox with two lame legs, and howling terribly.

11. "You have led me into a pretty mess,"

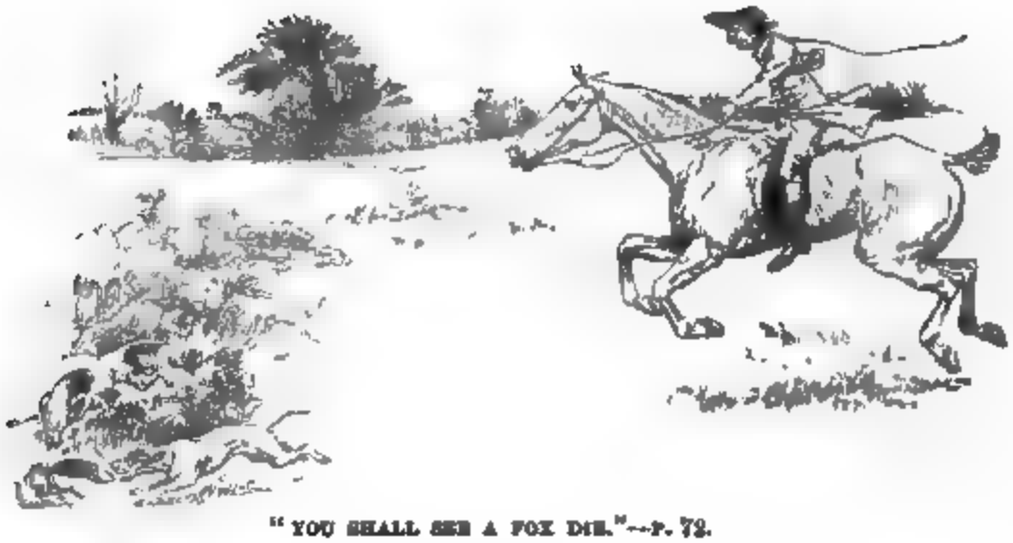
2. All our cheeks as fresh as roses,
   All our fingers as blue as our noses;
   As for our feet, we can hardly feel them,
   As for our chilblains, the snow must heal them.

Merrily, merrily, slide along;
The sun shines bright, but the ice is strong.

3. Ice so smooth, and solid, and black,
   With never a weed, or hole, or crack!
   There go the skaters, tall young men,
   Cutting our slides up. Now and then,
   Don't I like to see one of them fall,
   Just for a little harmless sprawl!

was like a new world to him. He saw great spiders there, with crowns and crosses marked on their backs, who sat in the middle of their webs, and, when they saw Tom coming, shook them so fast that they became invisible.

2. Then he saw lizards, brown, gray, and green, and thought they were snakes, and would sting him; but they were as much frightened as he, and shot away into the heath. And then, under a rock, he saw a pretty sight—a great brown, sharp-nosed creature, with a white tag to her brush, and round her four or five



"YOU SHALL SEE A FOX DIE."—P. 72.

18.—Ode to the North-East Wind

Welcome, wild North-easter!
  Shame it is to see
Odes to every zephyr;
  Ne'er a verse to thee.
Welcome, black North-easter!
  O'er the German foam;
O'er the Danish moorlands,
  From thy frozen home.
Tired we are of summer,
  Tired of gaudy glare,
Showers soft and steaming,
  Hot and breathless air.
Tired of listless dreaming,
  Through the lazy day:
Jovial wind of winter
  Turns us out to play!
Sweep the golden reed-beds;
  Crisp the lazy dyke;

said the Mock Turtle angrily: "really you are very dull!"

"You ought to be ashamed of yourself for asking

such a simple question," added the Gryphon; and then they both sat silent and looked at poor Alice, who felt ready to sink into the earth.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. 430 *pp.* *Crown* 8*vo.* *Price* 2*s.*

MACMILLAN'S
ADVANCED READER

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

PAGE

INTRODUCTORY SKETCH, - - - - - - - - - - IX

CHAUCER, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 1
The Knight; The Squire; The Parson; The Scholar and the Daisy; Truth shall Deliver Thee.

SPENSER, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 8
The Passing of the Seasons and the Months; The Tale of the Oake and the Briar.

HOOKER, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 19
The Law of Reason.

BACON, - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 22
Friendship; On Discourse.

PAGE

SHAKESPEARE, - - - - - - - - - - - 26
Mark Antony's Oration; Wolsey's Farewell; The Character of Wolsey; Human Life; Mercy; Nature's Thrift; Adversity.

TAYLOR, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 37
Anger; Insignificance of Man; Prayer.

MILTON, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 42
Freedom of the Press; A Nation in its Strength; Light; Lycidas; When the Assault was intended to the City; On his Blindness; To Cyriac Skinner.

CLARENDON, - - - - - - - - - - - - 56
Character of Lord Falkland.

BUNYAN, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 60
From "The Pilgrim's Progress."

DRYDEN, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 65
The Character of the Earl of Shaftesbury; Character of the Duke of Buckingham; Alexander's Feast.

DEFOE, - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 74
Crusoe and the Footprint; A Skirmish of Dragoons.

SWIFT, - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 80
The Spider and the Bee; The Temple of Fame.

ADDISON, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 90
The Vision of Mirza; Pedantry.

POPE, - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 99
From the "Essay on Man"; from the "Satires."

THOMSON, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 117
The Hymn of the Seasons.

GRAY, - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 122
Elegy.

STERNE, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 128
Slavery; The Story of Le Fever.

GOLDSMITH, - - - - - - - - - - - - 137
From "The Traveller"; The Deserted Village; from the "Retaliation"; City Night Piece.

JOHNSON, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 166
Cowley and his Contemporaries; Letter to the Earl of Chesterfield; The Vanity of Human Wishes.

BURKE, - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 184
Criticism of Government a Duty; The Use and Abuse of Party; American Taxation; The Spirit of Liberty in the American Colonies.

GIBBON, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 203
From "The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire."

PAGE

CRABBE, - - - - - - - - - - - - 205
Isaac Ashford, a Noble Peasant.

BURNS, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 209
The Cotter's Saturday Night; Man was Made to Mourn; To a Mountain Daisy; A Man's a Man for a' that; Devotion.

COWPER, - - - - - - - - - - - - 223
Slavery; My Mother's Picture; To Mary.

SCOTT, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 231
Old Mortality; Death of the Master of Ravenswood; The Battle of Flodden Field.

WORDSWORTH, - - - - - - - - - - - 262
Ode on the Intimations of Immortality; The Fountain: a Conversation; Upon Westminster Bridge; The World is Too Much with us; To Milton; Tintern Abbey.

COLERIDGE, - - - - - - - - - - - - 280
Hymn before Sunrise in the Vale of Chamouni.

BYRON, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 281
Stanzas for Music; My Native Land, Good-night; Rome; The Ocean; Greece; From the Drama of "Manfred."

SHELLEY, - - - - - - - - - - - - 302
To a Skylark; The Cloud.

KEATS, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 310
To Autumn; On first looking into Chapman's Homer; On the Grasshopper and Cricket.

HALLAM, - - - - - - - - - - - - 313
The English Revolution.

MACAULAY, - - - - - - - - - - - - 317
The Last Days of Argyle.

DICKENS, - - - - - - - - - - - - 324
A Shipwreck.

MAURICE, - - - - - - - - - - - - 337
The Friendship of Books.

CARLYLE, - - - - - - - - - - - - 341
Childhood; The Character of Burns.

RUSKIN, - - - - - - - - - - - - 347
Man's Use and Function.

FROUDE, - - - - - - - - - - - - 351
Queen Elizabeth at Oxford.

TENNYSON, - - - - - - - - - - - - 356
Morte d'Arthur.

NOTES, - - - - - - - - - - - - - 366

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Macmillan's English Classics

A Series of Selections from the Works of the Great English Writers. With Introduction and Notes. Globe 8vo.

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

Addison-Steele.—Selections from the "Spectator." By K. Deighton. 2*s.* 6*d.*
The Coverley Papers. By K. Deighton. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Arnold.—Poems. Selected by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Bacon.—Essays. By F. G. Selby, M.A. 3*s.*
The Advancement of Learning. By F. G. Selby, M.A. Book I., 2*s.*; Book II., 4*s.* 6*d.*
The New Atlantis. By A. T. Flux. 1*s.*
Bunyan.—Pilgrim's Progress. By John Morrison, M.A., B.D. 1*s.* 9*d.*; sewed, 1*s.* 6*d.*
The Schoolmaster—"A very pleasing and readable introduction forms a suitable preface to the text, and serviceable notes are furnished on all points likely to give trouble to the English or foreign student."
Burke.—Reflections on the French Revolution. By F. G. Selby, M.A. 5*s.*
Speech on American Taxation; Speech on Conciliation with America; Letter to the Sheriffs of Bristol. By F. G. Selby, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Byron.—Childe Harold's Pilgrimage. By Edward E. Morris, M.A. Cantos I. and II., 1*s.* 9*d.*; III. and IV., 1*s.* 9*d.*
Campbell.—Selections. By W. T. Webb, M.A. [*In preparation.*
Chaucer.—Selections from Canterbury Tales. By Hiram Corson, LL.D. 4*s.* 6*d.*
The Squire's Tale. By A. W. Pollard, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*
The Prologue. By A. W. Pollard, M.A. [*In the Press.*
The Knight's Tale. By A. W. Pollard, M.A. [*In the Press.*
Chosen English.—Selections from Wordsworth, Byron, Shelley, Lamb, Scott. With short biographies and notes by A. Ellis, B.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Cowper.—The Task, Books IV. and V. By W. T. Webb, M.A. Sewed, 1*s.* each.
The Task, Book V. Sewed, 6*d.*
Selections from Letters. Selected by W. T. Webb, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Shorter Poems. By W. T. Webb, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
The Expostulation. Sewed, 1*s.*
Dryden.—Select Satires. By J. Churton Collins, M.A. 1*s.* 9*d.*
The Hind and the Panther. By W. H. A. Williams, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
English Poetry.—From Blake to Arnold.—Selected by C. J. Brennan. M.A., J. P. Pickburn, and J. le Gay Brereton. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Goldsmith.—The Traveller, and The Deserted Village. By Arthur Barrett, B.A. 1*s.* 9*d.*—The Traveller, and The Deserted Village, separately, sewed, 1*s.* each.
The Traveller, and The Deserted Village. By Prof. J. W. Hales. 6*d.*
The Vicar of Wakefield. Edited by M. Macmillan, B.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Gray.—Poems. By John Bradshaw, LL.D. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Ode on Spring and The Bard. Sewed, 6*d.*
Elegy in a Country Churchyard and Ode on the Spring. Sewed, 6*d.*
Helps.—Essays Written in the Intervals of Business. By F. J. Rowe, M.A., and W. T. Webb, M.A. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Johnson.—Life of Milton. By K. Deighton. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Life of Dryden. By P. Peterson, D.Sc. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Life of Pope. By P. Peterson, D.Sc. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Lamb.—Essays of Elia. By N. L. Hallward, M.A., and S. C. Hill, B.A. First Series, 3*s.*; sewed, 2*s.* 6*d.* Second Series, 3*s.*
Longfellow.—The Courtship of Miles Standish. By W. Elliot, M.A. 1*s.*
Macaulay.—Lays of Ancient Rome. By W. T. Webb, M.A. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Essay on Addison. By R. F. Winch, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Essay on Lord Clive. By K. Deighton. 2*s.*
Essay on Warren Hastings. By K. Deighton. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Essay on Boswell's Life of Johnson. By R. F. Winch, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Essay on William Pitt, Earl of Chatham. By R. F. Winch, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Essay on Milton. By H. B. Cotterill, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Essay on Frederic the Great. By A. T. Flux. 1*s.* 6*d.*
Malory.—Morte D'Arthur. By A. T. Martin, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Milton.—Paradise Lost. Books I. and II. By Michael Macmillan, B.A. 1*s.* 9*d.* Books I.-IV. separately, 1*s.* 3*d.* each; sewed, 1*s.* each.
L'Allegro, Il Penseroso, Lycidas, Arcades, Sonnets, etc. By W. Bell. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Lycidas. By the same. Sewed, 6*d.*
Comus. By the same. 1*s.* 3*d.*
Lycidas and Comus. By the same. 1*s.* 6*d.*
Samson Agonistes. By H. M. Percival, M.A. 2*s.*
Tractate of Education. By Prof. E. E. Morris. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Palgrave—Golden Treasury of Songs and Lyrics. Book II. By W. Bell. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Book IV. By J. H. Fowler, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Poems of England.—A Selection of English Patriotic Poetry. With Notes. By Hereford B. George, M.A., and Arthur Sidgwick, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Pope.—Essay on Man. Epistles I.-IV. By Prof. E. E. Morris, M.A. 1*s.* 3*d.*; sewed, 1*s.*
Essay on Man. Epistle I. Sewed, 6*d.*
Essay on Criticism. By J. Churton Collins, M.A. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Scott.—The Lady of the Lake. By G. H. Stuart, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*; sewed, 2*s.*; Canto I., sewed, 9*d.*
The Lay of the Last Minstrel. By G. H. Stuart, M.A., and E. H. Elliot, B.A. 2*s.*; Canto I., sewed, 9*d.*; Cantos I.—III. and IV.—VI. separately, 1*s.* 3*d.* each; sewed, 1*s.* each.
Marmion. By Michael Macmillan, B.A. 3*s.*; sewed, 2*s.* 6*d.* Canto VI. separately, 1*s.*
Rokeby. By the same. 3*s.*; sewed, 2*s.* 6*d.*
Shakespeare.—The Tempest. By K. Deighton. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Much Ado about Nothing. By the same. 2*s.*
A Midsummer-Night's Dream. By the same. 1*s.* 9*d.*
The Merchant of Venice. By the same. 1*s.* 9*d.*
As You Like It. By the same. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Twelfth Night. By the same. 1*s.* 9*d.*
The Winter's Tale. By the same. 2*s.*
King John. By the same. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Richard II. By the same. 1*s.* 9*d.*

Henry IV. Part I. By the same. 2*s.* 6*d.*; sewed, 2*s.*
Henry IV. Part II. By the same. 2*s.* 6*d.*; sewed, 2*s*
Henry V. By the same. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Richard III. By C. H. Tawney, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*; sewed, 2*s.*
Henry VIII. By K. Deighton. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Coriolanus. By the same. 2*s.* 6*d.*; sewed, 2*s.*
Romeo and Juliet. By the same. 2*s.* 6*d.*; sewed, 2*s.*
Julius Cæsar. By the same. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Macbeth. By the same. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Hamlet. By the same. 2*s.* 6*d.*; sewed, 2*s.*
King Lear. By the same. 1*s.* 9*d.*
Othello. By the same. 2*s.*
Antony and Cleopatra. By the same. 2*s.* 6*d.*; sewed, 2*s.*
Cymbeline. By the same. 2*s.* 6*d.*; sewed, 2*s.*

Guardian—"Speaking generally of Macmillan's series, we may say that they approach more nearly than any other edition we know to the ideal school Shakespeare. The introductory remarks are not too much burdened with controversial matter; the notes are abundant and to the point, scarcely any difficulty being passed over without some explanation, either by a paraphrase or etymological and grammatical notes."

Speaker—"Few men have done more than Mr. Deighton to bring about a critical study of Shakespeare in English colleges and schools. His admirable editions of *The Tempest*, *Much Ado about Nothing*, *Macbeth*, *Henry V.*, and *The Winter's Tale* are well known to schoolmasters, as well as private students, and it is hardly too much to say that their merits as practical introductions to the plays have one general recognition."

Southey.—Life of Nelson. By Michael Macmillan, B.A. 3*s.*

Spenser.—The Faerie Queene. Book I. By H. M. Percival, M.A. 3*s.*
The Shepheard's Calender. By Prof. C. H. Herford, Litt.D. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Steele—Selections from Steele's contributions to "The Tatler." By L. E. Steele, M.A. 2*s.*

Tennyson.—Selections. By F. J. Rowe, M.A., and W. T. Webb, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Also in two Parts, 2*s.* 6*d.* each.
Part I. Recollections of the Arabian Nights, The Lady of Shalott, The Lotos-Eaters, Dora, Ulysses, Tithonus, the Lord of Burleigh, The Brook, Ode on the Death of the Duke of Wellington, The Revenge.
Part II. Œnone, The Palace of Art, A Dream of Fair Women, Morte D'Arthur, Sir Galahad, The Voyage, Demeter and Persephone.
Morte D'Arthur. By the same. Sewed, 1*s.*
Enoch Arden. By W. T. Webb, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Aylmer's Field. By W. T. Webb, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
The Princess. By P. M. Wallace, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*
The Coming of Arthur; The Passing of Arthur. By F. J. Rowe, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Gareth and Lynette. By G. C. Macaulay, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Geraint and Enid; The Marriage of Geraint. By G. C. Macaulay, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
The Holy Grail. By G. C. Macaulay, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Lancelot and Elaine. By F. J. Rowe, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Guinevere. By G. C. Macaulay, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
The Lotos Eaters, Ulysses, Ode on the Death of the Duke of Wellington, Maud, The Coming of Arthur, the Passing of Arthur. By F. J. Rowe, M.A., and W. T. Webb, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Wordsworth.—Selections. By W. T. Webb, M.A. Part I., 1*s.* 9*d.*; Part II., 1*s.* 9*d.*; Complete, 2*s.* 6*d.*

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. 536 *pages.* *Globe* 8vo. *Price* 4s. 6d.

A HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE

BY

E. J. MATHEW, M.A., LL.B.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

I. INTRODUCTION; II. The Old English Times; III. Norman Times; IV. English after the Norman Conquest; V. The Struggle with the Norman-French; VI. Chaucer; VII. The Period from Chaucer to Spenser; VIII. Edmund Spenser; IX. The Early History of the Drama; X. William Shakspere; XI. Ben Jonson; XII. Shakspere and Ben Jonson; XIII. The Drama after Shakspere and Ben Jonson; XIV. Prose and Poetry between 1590 and 1680; XV. John Milton; XVI. The Days of Dryden; XVII. The Earlier Work of the Eighteenth Century; XVIII. Alexander Pope; XIX. The Change in Poetry and the Development of Prose; XX. The Nineteenth Century; XXI. The Reign of Her Majesty Queen Victoria, Empress of India; Index of Authors; Subject Index.

few things more just or more fine than his analysis of these two poor men.

"With him there was a ploughman, was his brother— . . .
An honest labourer, and a good was he,
Living in peace and perfect charity.
God loved he best, with all his holè hertè,
At any time, though him it pleased or smertè,
And then his neighbour rightly as himself.
He oft would thresh, and also dyke and delve
For Christ His sake for every poor wight,
Withouten hire, if it lay in his might.
His tithes he ever paid full fair and well,
Both of his own labòur, and his catèl.
In a tabard, he rode upon a mare."

Herte, heart. **Smerte, displeased.**
It lay in his might, if only it was in his power. **Catel, cattle; property.**
Tabard, originally a herald's coat, then a loose blouse worn by ploughmen.
Rode upon a mare, people of quality thought this an undignified thing to do.

The Clerk of Oxford, who had not yet got a living, made a worthy companion to the Parson and the Ploughman. He was as fond of learning, and of teaching others to learn, as the Parson was of looking after his parish. The Parson and the Clerk represent the best and purest aspects of the Church that are to be found at the end of the fourteenth century.

"A Clerk there was of Oxenford also,
That unto logic had gone long ago;
As lenè was his horse as is a rake,
And he was not right fat, I undertake,
But hollow looked, and thereto soberly;
Full threadbare was his upper courtepy,
For he had got him yet no benefice,
Nor was so worldly as to take office.
For he would rather have at his bed's head,
Twenty bookès, clad in black or red,
Of Aristotle and his philosophy,
Than robes, or fiddles, or gay psaltery.
But although that he was a philosòpher,
Yet haddè he but little gold in coffer;
But all that he might of his frendès hentè,
On bokes and on lerninge he it spentè
And busily for the souls began to pray
Of them that gave him wherewith to scoleye
Of studie took he most care and most heed,
Not one word spake he morè than was need;

Lene, poor, lean. **Full, quite.**
Thereto soberly, In consequence sad.
Courtepy, a short upper coat or cloak.
Psaltery, a musical instrument something like a harp.
Hente, get. **Scoleye. study.**

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

The *Moral Essays* and the *Imitations from Horace* furnish themes not so liable to discussion. They show Pope at his best as a satirist; but they are wanting in strength of argument, and the first of them, on the *Characters of Men*, had to be entirely rearranged by Warburton. It is the weakest of the four; still it contains passages which could only have been produced by Pope. The subject of the second essay was badly chosen. In women, with perhaps one exception, Pope hardly saw anything except their faults. There is an objectionable allusion in the essay to Lady Mary Wortley Montagu, and coarse satire in the portrait of Atossa, the Duchess of Marlborough. Over the third essay, again largely altered by Warburton, Pope took great pains. Among many vigorous passages, the most notorious is the scene of the Duke of Buckingham's deathbed.

The *Imitations from Horace*, prefaced by an *Epistle to Dr. Arbuthnot*, are even more notorious for the vigour of their satire. Some of Pope's most famous dissections of character are to be found in the epistle—the attack upon Addison under the name of Atticus, the description of Lord Hervey as Sporus, and of the Duke of Marlborough as Bestia.

Atticus (Joseph Addison).

". . . But were there one whose fires
True genius kindles, and fair fame inspires;
Blest with each talent and each art to please,
And born to write, converse, and live with ease:
Should such a man, too fond to rule alone,
Bear, like the Turk, no brother near the throne,
View with him scornful, yet with jealous eyes,
And hate for arts that caused himself to rise;
Damn with faint praise, accent with civil leer,
And, without sneering, teach the rest to sneer;
Willing to wound, and yet afraid to strike,
Just hint a fault, and hesitate dislike;
Alike reserved to blame, or to commend,
A timorous foe and a suspicious friend;
Dreading ev'n fools, by flatterers besieged,
And so obliging that he ne'er obliged;
Like Cato, give his little senate laws,
And sit attentive to his own applause;
While wits and Templars every sentence raise,
And wonder with a foolish face of praise—
Who but must laugh, if such a man there be?
Who would not weep if Atticus were he?"

Pope was never in any sense a poet of the emotions. He can better be called a poet of the understanding. The one metrical form which he could control was the heroic couplet; his mastery was only over the verse belonging to his age. The

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. 838 *pp.* *Crown 8vo.* *Price* 8*s.* 6*d.*

A SHORT HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE

BY

GEORGE SAINTSBURY

PROFESSOR OF RHETORIC AND ENGLISH LITERATURE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF EDINBURGH

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PRESS OPINIONS.

Times.—"Appears to us destined to take an important place in the higher educational literature, a place to which the author's immense erudition and clearness of view undoubtedly entitle it.

Glasgow Herald.—"A careful examination of this volume leads us to the belief that it will secure a unique place for itself. The abundance of its facts and the convenience of its arrangements, the complete mastery of his subject by the author, the width of his view and his power of exposition, added to the handy size of the volume, will all tend to make it at once a useful book for high schools and colleges, and a good book for reference."

Globe.—"He achieves this task within the limits of 797 pages, into which he has managed to compress a very large amount of fact and comment. That the book is remarkably comprehensive will at once be conceded. . . The narrative has the attraction of readableness."

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE.

THE object of this book, which was undertaken more than four years ago, is to give, from the literary point of view only, and from direct reading of the literature itself, as full, as well supplied, and as conveniently arranged a storehouse of facts as the writer could provide. The substitution of bird's-eye views and sweeping generalisations for positive knowledge has been very sedulously avoided; but it is hoped that the system of Inter-chapters will provide a sufficient chain of historical summary as to general points, such as, for instance, the nature and progress of English prosody and the periods of prose style. No part of the book has been delivered as lectures; and the sections of it concerning the Elizabethan period and the Nineteenth Century are not replicas of previous work on those subjects.

CONTENTS.

BOOK I.—THE PRELIMINARIES OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.

CHAPTER I.—The Earliest Anglo-Saxon Poetry; CHAPTER II.—Cædmon, Cynewulf, and those about them; CHAPTER III.—Anglo-Saxon Prose; CHAPTER IV.—The Decadence of Anglo-Saxon. INTERCHAPTER I.

BOOK II.—THE MAKING OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.

CHAPTER I.—The Transition; CHAPTER II.—First Middle English Period—1200-1250; CHAPTER III.—Second Middle English Period—1300-1360; CHAPTER IV.—Early Romances—Metrical; CHAPTER V.—Early Romances—Alliterative. INTERCHAPTER II.

BOOK III.—CHAUCER AND HIS CONTEMPORARIES.

CHAPTER I.—Chaucer's Life and Poems; CHAPTER II.—Langland and Gower; CHAPTER III.—Chaucer's Prose—Wyclif, Trevisa, Mandeville. INTERCHAPTER III.

BOOK IV.—THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

CHAPTER I.—The English Chaucerians—Lydgate to Skelton; CHAPTER II.—The Scottish Poets—Historical, Political, and Minor; CHAPTER III.—The Four Great Scottish Poets; CHAPTER IV.—Later Romances in Prose and Verse; CHAPTER V.—Minor Poetry and Ballads; CHAPTER VI.—Miscellaneous Prose. INTERCHAPTER IV.

BOOK V.—ELIZABETHAN LITERATURE TO THE DEATH OF SPENSER.

CHAPTER I.—Preliminaries—Drama; CHAPTER II.—Preliminaries—Prose; CHAPTER III.—Preliminaries—Verse; CHAPTER IV.—Spenser and His Contemporaries; CHAPTER V.—The University Wits; CHAPTER VI.—Lyly and Hooker—The Translators, Pamphleteers, and Critics. INTERCHAPTER V.

BOOK VI.—LATER ELIZABETHAN AND JACOBEAN LITERATURE.

CHAPTER I.—Shakespeare; CHAPTER II.—Shakespeare's Contemporaries in Drama; CHAPTER III.—The Schools of Jacobean Poetry; CHAPTER IV.—Jacobean Prose—Secular; CHAPTER V.—The Golden Age of the English Pulpit—I. INTERCHAPTER VI.

BOOK VII.—CAROLINE LITERATURE.

CHAPTER I.—Blank Verse and the New Couplet; CHAPTER II.—The Metaphysicals—The Lyric Poets—The Miscellanists, etc.; CHAPTER III.—The Drama till the Closing of the Theatres; CHAPTER IV.—The Golden Age of the English Pulpit—II; CHAPTER V.—Miscellaneous Prose; CHAPTER VI.—Scots Poetry and Prose. INTERCHAPTER VII.

BOOK VIII.—THE AUGUSTAN AGES.

CHAPTER I.—The Age of Dryden—Poetry; CHAPTER II.—The Age of Dryden—Drama; CHAPTER III.—The Age of Dryden—Prose; CHAPTER IV.—Queen Anne Prose; CHAPTER V.—Pope and his Elder Contemporaries in Verse. INTERCHAPTER VIII.

BOOK IX.—MIDDLE AND LATTER EIGHTEENTH-CENTURY LITERATURE.

CHAPTER I.—The Poets from Thomson to Crabbe; CHAPTER II.—The Eighteenth-Century Novel; CHAPTER III.—Johnson, Goldsmith, and the Later Essayists; CHAPTER IV.—The Graver Prose; CHAPTER V.—Eighteenth-Century Drama; CHAPTER VI.—Miscellaneous Writers. INTERCHAPTER IX.

BOOK X.—THE TRIUMPH OF ROMANCE.

CHAPTER I.—The Poets from Coleridge to Keats; CHAPTER II.—The Novel—Scott and Miss Austen; CHAPTER III.—The New Essay; CHAPTER IV.—The Last Georgian Prose; CHAPTER V.—The Minor Poets of 1800-1830. INTERCHAPTER X.

BOOK XI.—VICTORIAN LITERATURE.

CHAPTER I.—Tennyson and Browning; CHAPTER II.—The Victorian Novel; CHAPTER III.—History and Criticism; CHAPTER IV.—Poetry Since the Middle of the Century; CHAPTER V.—Miscellaneous. Conclusion. Index.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

In Globe 8vo. Price 2s.; Key, 5s. net.

A METHOD OF ENGLISH

FOR SECONDARY SCHOOLS

BY

JAMES GOW, M.A., LITT.D.

MASTER OF THE HIGH SCHOOL, NOTTINGHAM; LATE FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

EXTRACTS FROM PREFACE

"This little book professes to be, not an English Grammar, but a course of English Lessons for the junior forms of Secondary Schools. It contains, indeed, all the grammar that is of any importance, but it contains other things too, and is written with a certain definite intention. It is intended for children who already speak and write English fairly well, and who are beginning to learn another language."

"In this book (apart from Section I., which deals with Pronunciation)

I have begun, as the nature of English requires, with the Sentence. The language has practically no accidence, and uses the same word as several parts of speech; hence, usually, we cannot parse a word without first seeing it in a sentence, and cannot parse it then without making a mental analysis of the sentence. It was essential, therefore, to deal with analysis first, and proceed to parsing afterwards."

"For the rest, I have kept continually before me the following maxims, which seem to be applicable to the compilation of any school-book whatever:

(1) The lessons are to be so arranged that each shall be intelligible without reference to a later lesson.

(2) Each lesson shall seem short, but shall be in fact very substantial.

(3) Each lesson shall be immediately followed by exercises.

(4) The exercises shall be so difficult as to command respect for the subject."

"Of course a book cannot be written on these lines without requiring energetic teaching, and I have said, in the Notes for the Teacher added at the end, that the Exercises should be done in the first instance *viva voce*."

"I am in hopes that some teachers will try Section I. I may add also that I find the exercises on spelling afford a sure test of linguistic ability, for they require a boy to search his vocabulary quickly. The Section as a whole is, no doubt, too difficult for the youngest children, but it might be taken by lower classes in small portions as an amusement, and finally taken in its entirety by the highest class that uses the book."

"The Sections generally are such that each can be easily got through in one term if two hours a week are given to English. Schools which can only give one hour a week will perhaps prefer the following arrangement:

1st Term, Section II.—Parts of Speech, Ex. 1—12.

2nd Term, Section II.—Parts of Speech, Ex. 13—III. 6.

3rd Term, Section III.—Parts of Speech (not Verb) in Detail, Ex. 7—end.

4th Term, Section IV.—The Verb in Detail, Ex. 1—12.

5th Term, Section IV.—The Verb in Detail, Ex. 13—V. 6.

6th Term, Section V.—Errors and Figures of Speech, Ex. 7—end (with revising).

7th Term, Section I.—Spelling and Pronunciation complete."

Scotsman—"Written with a praiseworthy and rare appreciation of the importance of the subject, and besides being a good practical school-book, is likely to satisfy the widespread wish to see the teaching of English set on the same level of scholarship as that of the classical languages. It may be heartily recommended to teachers of English."

Modern Language Monthly—"The method of this book is new and good. . . . The opening of the subject by the study of phonetics is quite new in an elementary book, and is much to be commended."

Lyceum—"This is one of the most remarkable books on the teaching of English which has appeared for some time."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Globe 8vo. Price 2s. KEY. *Price 4s. net.*

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH COMPOSITION THROUGH ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS

A TEXT-BOOK FOR THE SENIOR CLASSES OF ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS AND FOR PUPIL-TEACHERS

BY

P. GOYEN

INSPECTOR OF SCHOOLS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS:—Part I. *The Simple Sentence:* Logical Analysis; Grammatical Analysis—Subject, Predicate, Object; Concord of Subject and Predicate; The Function of the Adjective; Kinds of Adjuncts to the Noun; Placement of Adjuncts to the Noun; Pronouns and Pronominal Couples; Adverbial Adjuncts; Placement of Adverbial Adjuncts; Order and Distribution of Adverbial Adjuncts; Usual Placement of Subject, Predicate, and Object; Departure from the Usual Order for the sake of Emphasis and Energy; Analysis; Synthesis.

Part II. *The Complex Sentence of Two Clauses:* The Noun Clause—its Place and its Equivalents; The Adjective (Relative) Clause and its Equivalents; The Adverbial Clause and its Equivalents; Interchange of Adverb with Adverbial Phrase; Placement of the Relative Clause; Note on the Relative Clause; Syntax of the Relative Pronouns; Placement of the Adverbial Clause; Note on "Do" and "So"; Note on the Comparisons; Analysis; Synthesis; An Important Participial Construction—its Place and its Equivalents; Absolute Phrases—their Place and their Equivalents.

Part III. *The Compound Sentence:* The Copulative or Cumulative Relation; The Disjunctive Relation; The Compound Subordinate Clause; Mixed Sentences.

Part IV. *The Complex Sentence of more than Two Clauses:* Analysis of Complex Sentences of more than two Clauses; Synthesis of Complex Sentences of more than two Clauses.

Part V. *Punctuation:* Length of the Sentence; Unity of the Sentence. Paragraph Analysis. Figures of Speech.

tion, as in (*c*), (*d*), (*e*), are called **collateral** clauses. The relation is cumulative. Notice the fine effect of the ellipsis of the conjunction.

(*f*) 'The troops had never fought so well, nor had the genius of their chief ever been so conspicuous.'

Here 'nor' = 'and not,' and the relation is cumulative. Notice how 'nor' attracts the verb.

(*g*) 'He was diligent, therefore he succeeded.'

The word 'therefore' is strictly an adverb and does not join the clauses, which may be regarded as collateral, the conjunction 'and' being understood. When the second clause states a result or consequence of the first clause, it is sometimes said to be in *illative* (inferential) relation to the first. The relation is really cumulative, like that of the other examples.

(*h*) 1. 'Man is man and master of his fate.'
2. 'The water is nought and the ground barren.'

Here 'and' = 'and therefore,' 'and consequently.'

(*i*) 'I am a true Englishman; I felt to the quick for the disgrace of England.'
= I am a true Englishman, *and therefore* I felt, etc.

The second clause states a consequence of the first, and the ellipsis of 'and therefore' makes the statement specially energetic.

II. The opposition or contrast of what the clauses express: the **disjunctive relation.**

EXAMPLES

(*a*) 'Either you must get another watch, or I must get another secretary.'

The one statement is *opposed* to the other. This is sometimes called the **alternative relation,** because there is a choice between two statements.

(*b*) 'John was brave, but James was a coward.'

Here the character of John is contrasted with that of James.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

New Edition. *Pott* 8vo. *Price* 2s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR

CONTAINING ACCIDENCE AND WORD FORMATION

BY

THE LATE REV. R. MORRIS, LL.D.

REVISED BY

HENRY BRADLEY, M.A.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

56

PRESS OPINIONS

Academy.—"All through the book is up to the latest points. It is written by the best of our early English scholars, who is at the same time a long-practised and skilful teacher. It is very clearly printed, and well arranged, and as it costs only half-a-crown it ought to find its way into every school and family in the kingdom, if only to correct the mistakes and supply the defects of the ordinary popular grammars so far as their accidence is concerned."

British Quarterly Review.—"This is one of the best and most comprehensive English Grammars we have met with."

Scotsman.—"By the use of a book like this, Grammar may be made, even for young pupils, a far more pleasant, as well as more profitable, study than under the old method of cut-and-dried rules, the reasons for which the learner was left to find out for himself."

School Guardian.—"Dr. Morris's little book is not a mere abridgment of his larger work, the *Historical Outlines of English Accidence*. It is an entirely independent work, with many peculiarities of arrangement; and the illustrative examples are for the most part new, very few of them having been quoted elsewhere. The part relating to the history of the language is particularly interesting; but it is in the portion which deals with the processes by which the language assumed its present form, that we find the greatest amount of new matter. Grimm's Law of the Permutation of Consonants is explained with a clearness and fulness such as we do not remember to have met with in any other elementary treatise, and the remembering of the law is greatly facilitated by some easy mnemonics, for which students will be deeply grateful. . . . The Etymology is very full, and contains all the information needed for most of the public ordeals in which English is one of the subjects of examination. The method of the book is excellent. Everywhere we see indications that the author is not a mere philologist, but a teacher."

PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By the late Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D. Revised by H. BRADLEY, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1*s.*

EXERCISES ON DR. MORRIS'S PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By J. WETHERELL, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1*s.*

ENGLISH GRAMMAR EXERCISES. By the late Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D., and H. C. BOWEN, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1*s.*

HISTORICAL OUTLINES OF ENGLISH ACCIDENCE, comprising Chapters on the History and Development of the Language, and on Word-Formation. By the late Rev. RICHARD MORRIS, M.A., LL.D. Revised by L. KELLNER, Ph.D., with the assistance of HENRY BRADLEY, M.A. Globe 8vo. 6*s.*

HISTORICAL OUTLINES OF ENGLISH SYNTAX. By Dr. L. KELLNER. Ex. fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 1s. 6d.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH AND THEIR USES

AN EASY METHOD OF ENGLISH ANALYSIS

BY

H. W. HOUSEHOLD, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER, CLIFTON COLLEGE

WITH A PREFACE BY THE

REV. CANON GLAZEBROOK, M.A.

HEAD MASTER OF CLIFTON COLLEGE

London

MACMILLAN & CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

Educational News.—"The principles are right, the method is simple, the essentials are all here, and the author has not made the mistake of overcrowding his pages. . . . Teachers will do well to give Mr. Household's attempt a full consideration."

Guardian.—"Mr. Household has done his work remarkably well, and we know of no book so well suited for schools where only so much grammar is taught to junior forms as will prepare them for the study of Latin and Greek."

PREFACE.

SOME twelve years ago I began to search for a book on English Grammar which should be fairly correct and yet simple enough for children; but more than once I abandoned the search in despair. Meanwhile, the reasons which suggested the enquiry have remained as strong as ever. Common sense urges that the right way to learn grammar is through the mother tongue: the example of France and Germany shows that it can be done; while our too frequent failures to teach Latin in England can often be traced to the fact that our pupils have never really understood the structure of an English sentence.

It is therefore with great pleasure that I welcome Mr. Household's little book, which is a practical attempt to deal with the problem, based upon several years of varied experience. I venture to commend it to teachers mainly on three grounds.—It is extremely simple and bright without being childish. The examples are easy, varied, and appropriate. And whereas the fetish of completeness has been the ruin of many grammars, Mr. Household has had the courage to omit what is not necessary for his purpose.

M. G. GLAZEBROOK.

In fact they are only handles to a tool, and never can be of any use unless they are added to a blade.

NOTE. You may object that

He was running *past*
They were coming *near*
I was sitting *below*

do make quite good sense. That is true. But *past*, *near*, and *below* here answer the question *where?* and are therefore Adverbs.

As is so often the case in English, the same word may do the work of more than one Part of Speech.

31. Again, look at the following:

(*a*) The train ^ Bristol was very late.

(*b*) The book ^ table is mine.

Here we want some words to join the **Nouns** *Bristol* and *table* to the **Nouns** *train* and *book*, so as to show **which** *train* and **which** *book* we are speaking of.

We have again the blade without the handle. Let us put in a handle here also:

(*a*)

The train { from / to } Bristol was very late.

(*b*)

The book { on / under / below / beneath / close to / near / above } the table is mine.

Now we have a complete tool.

Jones, come (you) here.
Jones, I saw your father yesterday.
Jones, are you listening?

Jones is used here almost like an Interjection (see above, Section 36). It is not a part of the Statement, Question, or Command, which would not be altered in the least degree if we left out the name *Jones*. In fact we almost certainly should leave it out if we were quite sure that Jones would know that we were speaking to him.

This use of a Noun (and occasionally of a Pronoun) to call attention we may describe as the **Vocative Use** (i.e. *Calling Use*. *Voco* = I call).

In Latin we translate it by the Vocative Case.

In analysing Commands be careful not to mistake the Vocative Use of a Noun for the Subject.

Notice that it is always separated from the rest of the Sentence by a comma (,): *e.g.*

Soldiers, follow me.

Analyse as follows: *e.g.*

Soldiers, follow me through the river.

Word or Phrase.	Modified Word.	Description.
Follow		Transitive Verb.
(*you*)		*Pronoun. Subject.*
soldiers		*Noun. Vocative Use.*
me		Pronoun. Obj. of follow.
through ... river	follow	Adv. Phrase of Place.
the	river	Definite Article.

GRADUATED SERIES
OF
ENGLISH GRAMMARS

By J. C. NESFIELD, M.A.

For use in Secondary Schools.

---

1. THE USES OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH. 6d.

A general outline with a large number of exercises, showing the main purpose or purposes for which each part of speech is used in the construction of a sentence. For the use of students up to the age of ten or thereabouts.

2. OUTLINES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. 1s. 6d.

A short and easy guide to Accidence, Parsing, Analysis of Sentences, Conversion of Sentences from one form to another, Sequence of Tenses, Analysis of Words, the Sounds, Symbols, and Spellings in present use, the origin and history of the chief inflections and of words in common grammatical use. With copious and carefully graded exercises, drawn largely from the Oxford, Cambridge, and Preceptors' Local Examinations.

3. MANUAL OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION. 2s. 6d.

A guide to Parsing and Analysis, Composition, the Figures of Speech, Enlargement of the Vocabulary by affixes and metaphors, the main divisions of Prose Composition, the peculiarities of Poetic diction, and an outline of the History of the Language. With copious and carefully graded exercises.

KEY TO MANUAL OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION 2s. 6d. net.

4. ENGLISH GRAMMAR PAST AND PRESENT. 4s. 6d.

A full account of modern English Grammar, some peculiarities of Idiom and Construction, the Origin and Growth of Engish, a History of Sounds, Symbols, Spellings, and Accents, the growth of Accidence from Anglo-Saxon and other sources, the origin and use of Prefixes and Suffixes. With appendices on Prosody, Synonyms, the Changed Meanings of Words, and other outlying subjects. With copious and carefully graded questions selected from the London Matriculation Examinations.

KEY TO ENGLISH GRAMMAR PAST AND PRESENT. 2s. 6d. net.

5. HISTORICAL ENGLISH AND DERIVATION. 3s. 6d.

A reprint of the Historical portion of the above, with an additional chapter on Historical Syntax, and an increased number of examples on Prefixes and Suffixes. With a large Collecion of questions on Historical English.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 6d.

THE USES OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH

AS SHOWN BY EXAMPLES

BY

J. C. NESFIELD, M.A., OXON

AUTHOR OF "ENGLISH GRAMMAR PAST AND PRESENT," "HISTORICAL ENGLISH AND DERIVATION," ETC.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I. Verb and Subject—Exercises 1-5; II. Verb and Object—Exercises 6-8; III. Noun and Pronoun—Exercises 9-12; IV. Noun and Adjective—Exercises 13, 14; V. Preposition and Object—Exercises 15, 16; VI. Adverb in Relation to other Words—Exercises 17, 18; VII. Verb and Complement—Exercise 19; VIII. Conjunctions—Exercise 20; IX. Interjections—Exercise 21; Revision of Chapters I. to IX. in the form of Question and Answer; XI. A Summing up of the Uses of the Parts of Speech as shown by Examples—Exercises 22-27; XII. How the same Word may be of more than one part of speech—Exercises 28-34.

Educational News.—"That this grammar is the work of Mr. Nesfield is sufficient guarantee of its excellence. It is a collection of examples showing the purpose for which each part of speech is used in the construction of a sentence. The answers required of the pupil always demand thought, and the book should form a splendid antidote to the 'look-and-say' style of parsing and analysis."

Schoolmistress.—"Unlike most other little books on the subject of grammar, this one consists of a large number of well-selected exercises illustrating the purpose or purposes for which each part of speech is used in making a complete sentence. It is an original and carefully compiled little treatise."

Exercise 20.

Insert appropriate Conjunctions in the places left blank :—

1. Either you —— I must write that letter; —— it must be sent within the next two hours. 2. You need not leave your bed —— the sun rises. 3. You must get up —— the sun rises. 4. A man must do his best, —— he may not always succeed. 5. Tell me, —— you can, —— the clock has struck six. 6. I could not find out —— he lived. 7. I did not know —— far away he was, or —— he started. 8. I am so vexed with you, —— I hardly know what to say. 9. You worked hard last year, —— this year you have been very lazy. 10. I wish to know —— you have been so lazy this year. 11. You are much more idle —— you used to be. 12. Many years have passed, —— I last saw you. 13. I hope I shall see you again this year; —— we are old friends, —— true friends are scarce. 14. You should not give up all hope, —— you have failed once. 15. He who has failed once might succeed the second time, —— he tries hard. 16. You have neglected your work, —— you knew —— you were doing wrong. 17. Wait here —— I return. 18. I was afraid —— he would not recover from that sickness. 19. Take care —— you should fall.

CHAPTER IX.—INTERJECTIONS.

15. Interjection. — Sometimes, instead of expressing our feelings by a sentence, we express them by a single word or sound, as *ah!* Such words or sounds are called **In-ter-jec-tions.**

Remember then—

An Interjection is a word or sound thrown into a sentence to express some feeling of the mind.

Exercise 21.

Point out the Interjections in the following sentences :—

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 1*s.* 6*d.*

OUTLINE OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

IN FIVE PARTS

I.—NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS

II.—VERBS AND THEIR INFLECTIONS

III.—PARSING AND SYNTAX

IV.—ANALYSIS AND CONVERSION OF SENTENCES: SEQUENCE OF TENSES

V.—ANALYSIS AND DERIVATION OF WORDS: SOUNDS AND SPELLINGS.

BY

J. C. NESFIELD, M.A., Oxon

AUTHOR OF "ENGLISH GRAMMAR PAST AND PRESENT," "HISTORICAL ENGLISH AND DERIVATION," ETC.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., Limited

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS.

PART I.—NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS.

CHAPTER 1. How to tell the Parts of Speech; 2. Forms and Kinds of Nouns—(1) Number, (2) Gender, (3) Case, (4) Kinds of Nouns; 3. Forms and Kinds of Adjectives—(1) Kinds of Adjectives, (2) Comparison of Adjectives; 4. Forms and Kinds of Pronouns—(1) Personal Pronouns, (2) Demonstrative Pronouns, (3) Relative or Conjunctive Pronouns, (4) Interrogative Pronouns; 5. Forms and Kinds of Adverbs—(1) Kinds of Adverbs, (2) Comparison of Adverbs, (3) Forms of Adverbs; 6. Preposition; 7. Conjunctions. Exercises 1-8.

PART II.—VERBS AND THEIR INFLECTIONS.

CHAPTER 8. The Kinds of Verbs; 9. Parts of a Finite Verb; 10. Parts of a Verb not Finite; 11. Strong and Weak Verbs; 12. Auxiliary Verbs; 13. Defective and Impersonal verbs. Exercises 9-14.

PART III.—PARSING AND SYNTAX.

CHAPTER 14. The Parsing of Nouns; 15. The Parsing of Pronouns; 16. Cases of Nouns and Pronouns; 17. Verb and Object; 18. The Parsing of Adjectives; 19. Finite Verb and subject; 20. The Parsing of Infinitives; 21. The Parsing of Participles; 22. The Parsing of Gerunds and Verbal Nouns; 23. The Parsing of Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions. Oxford and Cambridge Preliminary Examinations, 1896-1899. Central Welsh Board Junior Certificate Examinations, 1898, 1899. Preceptors' Third-Class Examinations, 1897, 1898. Exercises 15-24.

PART IV.—ANALYSIS AND CONVERSION OF SENTENCES: SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

CHAPTER 24. Sentences Simple, Compound, and Complex; 25. The Method of Analysis; 26. Compound Sentences; 27. Complex and Mixed Sentences; 28. Conversion of Sentences—(1) From Simple to Compound, (2) From Compound to Simple, (3) From Simple to Complex, (4) From Complex to Simple, (5) From Compound to Complex, (6) From Complex to Compound; 29. Sequence of Tenses: Direct and Indirect Speech. Exercises 25-39.

PART V.—ANALYSIS AND DERIVATION OF WORDS; SOUNDS AND SPELLINGS.

CHAPTER 30. Compound Words; 31. Derivatives—(1) Suffixes: Teutonic, Romanic, Greek, (2) Prefixes: Teutonic, Romanic, Greek; 32. Sounds, Symbols, and Spellings—(1) Letters, Accents, Syllables; (2) Vowels: Sounds, Symbols, and Spellings, (3) Consonants: Sounds, Symbols, and Spellings; 33. Peculiar Plurals: Origin and Uses; 34. Gender of Nouns: Origin and History; 35. Origin and Use of Certain Endings; 36. Origin and History of Certain Words. Exercises 40-42 (selected from Oxford, Cambridge, and College of Preceptors).

PRESS OPINIONS.

BOOKSELLER.—"The author's previous works on English Grammar have gained the favourable opinion of English teachers, and the short outline of the subject here provided, which naturally proceeds along the same lines, is equally deserving of commendation. The book is particularly designed for pupils in secondary schools, who will find it excellently adapted to meet their special needs.'

HEAD TEACHER.—"We have seen many more pretentious volumes than this which are much less complete, and far less clear . . . There is no doubt that a thorough mastery of the twenty pages on parsing and syntax would give the student a more comprehensive grasp of this section of the science of words than is ordinarily possessed. The other chapters are equally good."

SCHOOLMASTER—"We have examined this book with some care and can speak well of it. A pupil who has intelligently worked through the five parts of the book will have made very considerable progress in this study. Mr. Nesfield is evidently master of his subject."

EDUCATIONAL NEWS.—"Any new grammar by Mr. Nesfield is welcome. His text-books are 'boons and blessings' to teachers. The present work is an outline of English grammar in five parts, and deals with the parts of speech, parsing, syntax, analysis, sequence of tenses, and derivation of words. It has copious and graded exercises throughout. Although ostensibly an outline, it contains matter sufficient for the requirements of scholars entering for the Leaving Certificate and for Pupil Teachers. It is easily the best work of its kind, and we give it our heartiest recommendation."

GIRLS' AND INFANTS' MISTRESS.—"The work promises to do for the pupil in the ordinary school what the author's larger treatise has done for the student in higher schools and colleges, and that is saying as much as can be said for any educational treatise. Its treatment is on the same scientific lines; its discipline is, therefore, of the same order. Most educationists regret the intellectually-useless simplification attempted of recent years in the subject of our mother tongue. Whatever may have been its result, it cannot be said to have endowed the pupil with *power*. Here the agent is restored to its proper function, and the process of restoration is effected in a style as pleasant and satisfactory as can ever hope to be attained."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Exercise 27.

Pick out the Adverb-clause or clauses in the following. Show what word or phrase is qualified by every such clause, and what Adverbial relation is denoted thereby :—

1. He will succeed, because he has worked hard.
2. Men engage in some work, that they may earn a living.
3. He threatened to beat him, unless he confessed.
4. He was always honest, although he was poor.
5. This is not true, so far as I can tell.
6. He likes you as much as I do.
7. He tried for a long time before he succeeded.
8. Let us go to bed, as it is now late.
9. He walked with care, lest he should stumble.
10. I agree to this, provided you sign your name.
11. Though he punish me, yet will I trust in him.
12. He returned home, after he had finished the work.
13. Prove a friend, before you trust him.
14. When the cat's away, the mice play.
15. He persevered so steadily, that he succeeded at last.
16. I will let off this man, who has been well punished already.
17. He sees very well, considering that he is sixty years of age.
18. I gave him a prize, that he might work harder next year.
19. They deserted their former associate, who had become poor and unfortunate.
20. As the tree falls, so will it lie.
21. Ever since we left the house, it has not ceased raining.
22. I should be glad to lend you that money, if I had as much in my own pocket.
23. Murder, though it have no tongue, will yet speak.
24. Unless you leave the house at once, I will send for a policeman.
25. A jackal, while prowling about the suburbs of a town, slipped into an indigo tank ; and not being able to get out he laid himself down, so that he might be taken for dead.
26. Ambassadors were sent from Sparta, who should sue for peace.

CHAPTER XXV.—THE METHOD OF ANALYSIS.

119. Form of Analysis.—The following form will be sufficient for the purposes of this chapter. The fourth example is a Complex sentence ; the other three are Simple sentences :—

A man convinced against his will is of the same opinion still.

He made himself mean and of no reputation.

The second master of the school has been teaching my sons Euclid since Thursday last.

Whom the gods love die young.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

MANUAL OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR & COMPOSITION

IN FIVE PARTS

I.—PARSING AND ANALYSIS

II.—COMPOSITION: FORCE AND PROPRIETY OF DICTION

III.—ENLARGEMENT OF VOCABULARY: FIGURES OF SPEECH

IV.—PROSE AND POETRY

V.—HISTORY OF THE LANGUAGE

BY

J. C. NESFIELD, M.A.

AUTHOR OF "ENGLISH GRAMMAR PAST AND PRESENT," "HISTORICAL ENGLISH AND DERIVATION," ETC.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

69

CONTENTS.

PART I.—PARSING AND ANALYSIS.

CHAPTER 1. Analysis in Outline; 2. The Parts of Speech in Outline: Phrases—(1) The Parts of Speech, (2) Classification of Phrases; 3. Nouns—(1) The kinds of Nouns, (2) Gender, (3) Number, (4) Case; 4. Adjectives—(1) The kinds of Adjectives, (2) The Two Uses of Adjectives, (3) Comparison of Adjectives; 5. Pronouns—(1) Personal Pronouns, (2) Demonstrative Pronouns, (3) Relative or Conjunctive Pronouns, (4) Interrogative Pronouns; 6. Verbs—(1) The kinds of Verbs, (2) Transitive Verbs, (3) Intransitive Verbs, (4) Auxiliary Verbs, (5) Active and Passive Voices, (6) Complete Conjugation of a Verb in the Finite Moods, (7) Indicative Mood, (8) Imperative Mood, (9) Subjunctive Mood, (10) Infinitive Mood, (11) Participles, (12) Gerunds and Verbal Nouns, (13) The Strong and Weak Conjugations, (14) Defective, Irregular, and Impersonal Verbs; 7. Adverbs—(1) The Functions of Adverbs, (2) The kinds of Adverbs, (3) Comparison of Adverbs, (4) Verbs compounded with Adverbs, (5) The Two Uses of Adverbs; 8. Prepositions; 9. Conjunctions—(1) Co-ordinative Conjunctions, (2) Subordinative Conjunctions; 10. Interjections; 11. The Same Word as Different Parts of Speech; 12. Syntax and Parsing; 13. Analysis in Detail—(1) Sentences Simple, Compound, and Complex, (2) Scheme of Analysis in Detail, (3) Degrees of Subordination. Examples in Parsing and Analysis. Examples in Direct and Indirect Narration.

PART II.—COMPOSITION: FORCE AND PROPRIETY OF DICTION.

CHAPTER 14. Punctuation, or the Right Use of Stops; 15. The Normal Order of Words; 16. Inversion of the Normal Order: Emphasis; 17. Structure of Sentences; 18. Purity of Diction; 19. Propriety of Diction—(1) Common Errors in the Use of Common Words, (2) Words used in Wrong Senses or Wrong Connections; 20. Perspicuity or Clearness of Diction—(1) Grammatical Precautions, (2) The Obscure, (3) The Double Meaning; 21. Simplicity or Ease of Diction; 22. Brevity or Terseness of Diction; 23. Elegance of Diction.

PART III.—ENLARGEMENT OF VOCABULARY: FIGURES OF SPEECH.

CHAPTER 24. Enlargement by Composition—(1) Unrelated or Juxtapositional Compounds, (2) Related or Syntactical Compounds; 25. Enlargement by Prefixes and Suffixes—(1) Teutonic Prefixes, (2) Teutonic Suffixes, (3) Romanic Prefixes, (4) Romanic Suffixes, (5) Greek Prefixes, (6) Greek Suffixes, (7) Some General Results, with Questions; 26. Figures of Rhetoric; 27. Enlargement of Vocabulary by Metaphor and Metonymy.

PART IV.—PROSE AND POETRY.

CHAPTER 28. Main Divisions of Prose Composition—(1) Classification according to Matter, (2) Classification according to Form; 29. Prosody and Poetic Diction — (1) Prosody, (2) Poetic Diction; 30. Main Divisions of Poetry.

PART V.—HISTORY OF THE LANGUAGE.

CHAPTER 31. General Outline of the Growth of English—(1) English and Cognate Languages, (2) Old English, (3) Middle English, (4) Modern English; 32. Borrowings—(1) Celtic, (2) Danish or Later Scandian, (3) Dutch, (4) Latin, (5) French, (6) Greek, (7) Modern Borrowings; Miscellaneous; 33. Notes on Affixes and Accidence—(1) Origin of Teutonic Affixes, (2) Noun Forms, (3) Adjective Forms, (4) Pronoun Forms, (5) Verb Forms; Index of Subjects and Selected Words.

OPINIONS.

A HEAD MASTER writes:—"It meets fully the needs of all ordinary students. The arrangement and treatment are unique, adequate, and scholarly. I intend introducing it at once."

A HEAD TEACHER writes:—"I have carefully examined Nesfield's *Manual of English Grammar and Composition* with special reference to its use by Pupil Teachers, and I am exceedingly pleased with it. It is an ideal book for teachers. It is clear, simple, and comprehensive."

A HEAD MASTER writes:—"It is completely up to date, and one of the very best books I have ever seen on the subject."

A HEAD MASTER writes:—"I have carefully examined the book, and am convinced that a better manual in English Grammar for Pupil Teachers and the King's Scholarship Examination cannot be found. The sections on 'Propriety of Diction' and 'Enlargement of Vocabulary by Metaphor and Metonymy' are especially valuable features. I hope to adopt the work in this centre as soon as possible, and intend also to recommend it to my Certificate Students."

ONE OF H.M. INSPECTORS writes:—"I shall have much pleasure in recommending it—when consulted—as the best book I know for Pupil Teachers and Candidates for the First Year's Certificate Examination."

BOARD TEACHER.—"This scholarly and well-written work is the product of much thought and of a nice discrimination. It will prove of the greatest service to young students, and, indeed, to all lovers of our Mother-Tongue."

SCHOOL WORLD.—"Deserves to be widely used."

GUARDIAN.—"The whole of Mr. Nesfield's work is stamped with the impress of individual thought, and with the earnest desire to remove those absurdities of grammatical classification and terminology which are the despair of the teacher and one of the chief drawbacks to the attainment of English grammar and literature of that high place in the school *curriculum* which should naturally be its due."

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.—"It is very carefully written; the illustrations are numerous and well chosen, and there are plenty of exercises."

LITERATURE.—"The book is one that should be of great service."

daughter to an indigent man of merit, or to a worthless man of wealth, replied: "I would prefer a man without wealth to wealth without a man."—*Spectator*, No. 372.

Antithesis should not be sacrificed to brevity. Compare the following, and see which of the two is the more pointed :—

(*a*) The *posthumous* fame of Buddha is far greater than what accrued to him during his life.

(*b*) The fame *which has gathered round the name of Buddha since his death* far exceeds that which accrued to him during his life.

Observe that in (*b*) not only is one clause balanced against another, but the Present Perfect tense "has gathered" is contrasted with the Past Indefinite "accrued."

355. Epigram: lit. an inscription (a Greek word, *epigramma*), the name given by the Greeks to a short piece of verse inscribed on a public monument. Brevity is still one of the distinguishing marks of epigram. But the word has been made to denote any kind of pointed saying, and especially one in which the words appear to be contrasted, or at least to contain some kind of incongruity. It is therefore based upon the perception of difference, and is closely allied to Antithesis.

"The epigram is an apparent contradiction in language, which, by causing a temporary shock, rouses our attention to some important meaning underneath" (Bain).

The *child* is *father* to the man.—*Proverb.*
By *merit* raised to that *bad* eminence.—MILTON.
Language is the art of *concealing* thought.—ROCHEFOUCAULD.
Natural beauty, when *unadorned*, is *adorned* the most.—THOMSON.
Conspicuous by its *absence.*—DISRAELI.
In the midst of *life* we are in *death.*—*Proverb.*
He lived a life of *active idleness.*
'Tis all thy *business*, *business* how to shun.—POPE.
Art lies in concealing *art.*—*Latin Proverb.*
Fame is the spur that the clear spirit doth raise
(That last *infirmity* of *noble* minds)
To scorn delights and live laborious days.—MILTON.
Ambition first sprung from your blest abodes,
The *glorious fault* of angels and of gods.—POPE.
He who lives *without folly* is not so *wise* as he imagines.—*Proverb.*
Affected *simplicity* is refined *artfulness.*—*Proverb.*
A *workless workman* (a man seeking for work and not finding it).
To *damn* with faint *praise.*
Indecision is sometimes a *decisive* kind of action.—*Review of Reviews.*
Another such *victory*, and we are *undone.*—*Saying of Pyrrhus.*
Beware the *fury* of a *patient* man.—DRYDEN.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

PAST AND PRESENT

IN THREE PARTS

PART I.—MODERN ENGLISH GRAMMAR
PART II.—IDIOM AND CONSTRUCTION
PART III.—HISTORICAL ENGLISH: WORD BUILDING AND DERIVATION

BY

J. C. NESFIELD, M.A.

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

73

CONTENTS

PART I.—MODERN ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

CHAPTER 1. Analytical Outline—General Definitions; 2. Nouns—Section (1) The kinds of Nouns, (2) Substitutes for a Noun; (3) Gender, (4) Case, (5) Number; 3. Adjectives—Section (1) The kinds of Adjectives, (2) The two Uses of Adjectives, (3) Substitutes for Adjectives, (4) Comparison of Adjectives; 4. Pronouns—Section (1) Personal Pronouns, (2) Demonstrative Pronouns, (3) Relative or Conjunctive Pronouns, (4) Interrogative Pronouns; 5. Verbs—Section (1) The kinds of Verbs, (2) Transitive Verbs, (3) Intransitive Verbs, (4) Auxiliary Verbs, (5) Active and Passive Voices, (6) Mood, Tense, Number and Person, (7) Indicative Mood, (8) Imperative Mood, (9) Subjunctive Mood, (10) Infinitive Mood, (11) Participles, (12) Gerunds and Verbal Nouns, (13) The Conjugation of Verbs, (14) Auxiliary, Defective and Anomalous Verbs; 6. Adverbs—Section (1) The Functions of Adverbs, (2) The kinds of Adverbs, (3) Comparison of Adverbs, (4) Verbs compounded with Adverbs, (5) The two Uses of Adverbs; 7. Prepositions; 8. Conjunctions—Section (1) Co-ordinative Conjunctions, (2) Subordinative Conjunctions; 9. Interjections; 10. Analysis of Sentences—Section (1) Analysis of Simple Sentences, (2) Analysis of Compound Sentences, (3) Analysis of Complex Sentences; 11. The Same Word used as Different Parts of Speech; 12. Syntax; 13. Punctuation, or the Right Use of Stops.

Questions from London Matriculation Papers.

PART II.—IDIOM AND CONSTRUCTION.

CHAPTER 14. Nouns and Pronouns—Section (1) Cases of Nouns and Pronouns, (2) Uses of Pronouns, Past and Present; 15. Adjectives—Section (1) Uses of the Various kinds of Adjectives, (2) The Use of Articles, (3) Adjectives used as Nouns, (4) Degrees of Comparison; 16. Verbs—Section (1) Uses of Tenses, (2) Further uses of the Infinitive, (3) Sequences of Tenses; 17. Adverbs—Section (1) Position of Adverbs, (2) Adverbs qualifying Prepositions; 18. Prepositions; 19. Conjunctions and Conjunctional Phrases; 20. Miscellaneous Words, Phrases, and Constructions. Notes on Certain Grammatical Terms. Questions from London Matriculation Papers.

PART III.—HISTORICAL ENGLISH: WORD BUILDING AND DERIVATION.

CHAPTER 21. Historical Outline—Section (1) English and Cognate Languages, (2) Old English, (3) Middle English, (4) Modern English; 22. Borrowings—Section (1) Celtic, (2) Danish or Later Scandian, (3) Dutch, (4) Latin, (5) French, (6) Greek, (7) Modern Borrowings, Miscellaneous; 23. Sounds and Symbols—Section (1) Alphabet, Pre-

sent and Past, (2) Consonants, (3) Vowels and Diphthongs; 24. Spelling—Section (1) History of English Spelling, (2) Summary of English Spellings; 25. Accentuation, Syllabic Division—Section (1) Words of Native or Teutonic Origin, (2) Words of French or Latin Origin, (3) Syllabic Divisions; 26. Accidence—Section (1) The Forms of Nouns, (2) The Forms of Adjectives, (3) The Forms of Pronouns, (4) The Forms of Verbs, (5) The Forms of Adverbs, (6) The Forms of Prepositions, (7) The Forms of Conjunctions; 27. Compound Words—Section (1) Unrelated or Juxtapositional Compounds, (2) Related or Syntactical Compounds, (3) Disguised Compounds, (4) Mistaken or Apparent Compounds, (5) Hybrid Compounds; 28. Teutonic Prefixes and Suffixes—Section (1) Teutonic Prefixes, (2) Suffixes; 29. Secondary Derivatives, Romanic—Section (1) Prefixes, (2) Suffixes; 30. Greek Prefixes and Suffixes—Section (1) Prefixes, (2) Suffixes; 31. Summary of Results in Prefixes and Suffixes; 32. Bilingualism, Doublets, Grimm's Law, Verner's Law. Questions from London Matriculation Papers. Appendix I. Prosody and Poetry; II. Note on Vocalic Sounds by Professor Skeat; III. Figures of Rhetoric; IV. Synonyms; V. Changes of Meaning.

PRESS OPINIONS

GUARDIAN.—"Mr. Nesfield is no mere follower in the footsteps of others; he is a thinker, an investigator, and an experimenter; and though we cannot agree with all his conclusions, yet we feel assured that some of them will be generally accepted as marking a distinct advance on older nomenclature, classification, and definition."

LITERATURE.—"Animated by a praiseworthy and human desire to make English grammar interesting through its culminating stages of expression and literature. . . . For thoroughness, accuracy, and facility of reference Mr. Nesfield's is a book we can unreservedly recommend. It is well stocked with examples, exercises, and questions."

SPEAKER.—"It aims at covering the whole ground, and it apparently does so very efficiently. . . . Matriculation candidates will probably find this book admirably suited to their wants. . . . The student who uses the book will be taught to think."

SCHOOL GUARDIAN.—"Entitled to considerable praise and a hearty welcome."

JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.—"This may be described as an attempt to combine in a single volume Mason, Morris, and Kellner, and it has much to commend it."

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.—"There is much that is good in Mr. Nesfield's Grammar. . . . His book gives evidence of good judgment and experience in teaching."

SCHOOLMASTER.—"The valuable appendices on prosody, synonyms, and other outlying subjects which the student has often had to travel far afield to collect, make

it indispensable to examinees. The whole production is marked by ripe experience, fulness, scholarly treatment, clever arrangement and much freshness. The twenty years' questions, so aptly collated and scattered throughout the book, are gathered from the examination papers of the London University. It is unnecessary to say how much this adds to the value of such a student's hand-book. The teacher looking forward a year hence for London honours should make himself acquainted with this aid."

EDUCATIONAL NEWS.—"Most satisfactory in plan, wise and informing in matter, and meritorious in execution, style, method, and get-up. Within its limits (470 pages) we know of no English grammar—although we have some on our shelves exceeding a thousand pages—so complete, so clear, and so unexceptionable as this. It must be specially useful in the higher classes of secondary schools, and to students of systematic English in colleges, or persons studying for Civil Service, London University, and other professional examinations, and, as it seems to us, indispensable to teachers who wish to understand what to teach and how to teach it."

PUPIL TEACHER.—"Students who require a thorough reliable text-book on English grammar should procure *English Grammar, Past and Present.* It is just the text-book for such examinations as the London University Matriculation Examination, being a very practical and well-arranged book, and Mr. Nesfield has done his work in a manner to command approval."

TEACHERS' AID.—"The book throughout bears the impress of learning and skill on the part of the author, who has here presented an immense amount of matter, so arranged that the student begins with what is fairly familiar, and then goes into the more abstruse and unknown parts of the subject. It seems to be specially adapted to the Matriculation Examination of the London University, and is certainly the best grammar we have seen for that purpose."

SCHOOLMISTRESS.—"Each section of the book has been most thoroughly and ably treated, and the author claims that there is scarcely any question relating to the three branches of English grammar of which the book treats, viz., 'Modern English Grammar,' 'Idiom and Construction,' and 'Historical English and Derivation,' which cannot be answered from information which the book supplies. Test questions, drawn largely from those given in the London Matriculation Examinations, are given at the end of each part. The printing and general arrangement of the book are excellent."

EDUCATIONAL NEWS OF SOUTH AFRICA.—"Among the numerous Compendiums of Grammar we do not know any that so combines the higher aspects of the subjects with the ordinary simple elements."

QUEENSLAND EDUCATIONAL JOURNAL.—"The book is to be recommended for the simplicity and clearness of style and explanation."

SCOTSMAN.—"May be heartily recommended to the attention of teachers."

GLASGOW HERALD.—"A very complete manual. . . . The subject is dealt with in a strikingly fresh way. . . . The information is remarkably well put and illustrated; the appendices in particular will be found very useful for examination purposes. The same remark applies to the copious sets of questions collected by the author on the three sections of the work."

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book
from their Lending Library for Teachers

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

HISTORICAL ENGLISH

AND

DERIVATION

BY

J. C. NESFIELD, M.A.

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
77

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1. Historical Outline—Section (1) English and Cognate Languages, (2) Old English, (3) Middle English, (4) Modern English; 2. Borrowings—Section, (1) Celtic, (2) Danish or Later Scandian, (3) Dutch, (4) Latin, (5) French, (6) Greek, (7) Modern Borrowings, Miscellaneous; 3. Sounds and Symbols—Section (1) Alphabet, Present and Past, (2) Consonants, (3) Vowels and Diphthongs; 4. Spellings—Section (1) History of English Spelling, (2) Summary of English Spellings; 5. Accentuation, Syllabic Division—Section (1) Words of Native or Teutonic Origin, (2) Words of French or Latin Origin, (3) Syllabic Division; 6. Accidence—Section (1) The Forms of Nouns, (2) The Forms of Adjectives, (3) The Forms of Pronouns, (4) The Forms of Verbs, (5) The Forms of Adverbs, (6) The Forms of Prepositions, (7) The Forms of Conjunctions; 7. Syntax—Section (1) Syntax of Cases, (2) Syntax of Adjectives, (3) Syntax of Pronouns, (4) Syntax of Verbs, (5) The Complex Sentence; 8. Compound Words—Section (1) Unrelated or Juxtapositional Compounds, (2) Related or Syntactical Compounds, (3) Disguised Compounds, (4) Mistaken or Apparent Compounds, (5) Hybrid Compounds; 9. Teutonic Prefixes and Suffixes—Section (1) Prefixes, (2) Suffixes; 10. Romanic Prefixes and Suffixes—Section (1) Prefixes, (2) Suffixes; 11. Greek Prefixes and Suffixes—Section (1) Prefixes, (2) Suffixes; 12. Summary of Results in Prefixes and Suffixes; 13. Bilingualism, Doublets, Grimm's Law, Verner's Law.

APPENDIX I. Note on Vocalic Sounds by Prof. Skeat; II. List of Doublets.

QUESTIONS on Historical English and Derivation.

INDEX I. Of Subjects; II. Of Selected Words and Phrases.

PRESS OPINIONS

EDUCATIONAL NEWS.—"In the higher classes of Schools, Colleges, Seminaries, and University Extension Centres it will form an interesting, useful, and pleasant course of studies in Classical English, ancient and modern."

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.—"In Mr. Nesfield's carefully written volume of 284 pages we have a practical introduction to historical etymology and syntax, based on good authorities (Skeat, Murray, and others), but affording ample evidence of direct deduction and comparison. It is well calculated for an advanced study of English, and is, on the whole, very clearly and systematically arranged. We may cite the chapters on 'Borrowings,' 'Sounds and Symbols,' and 'Compound Words' as ex-

ceptionally valuable. There is an excellent 'Note on Vocalic Sounds' contributed by Professor Skeat. Altogether, we have formed a high opinion of Mr. Nesfield's concise historical treatment of the English language."

LITERATURE.—"The best handbook of historical English, in clearness of arrangement, avoidance of error, and in practical worth, that we have hitherto met with. . . . The book seems destined to become the standard for universities or the higher forms of schools."

SCHOOLMISTRESS.—"It is the product of infinite research, yet its pages are everywhere lightened by the teacher's art. We shall be surprised if it does not become widely popular as a student's guide to the history of our language."

PUPIL TEACHER.—"This book is fascinating in its fulness and simplicity. The author has done his work well, and his efforts have produced a valuable text-book for the general student, and especially suitable for the candidate preparing for the London Matriculation Examination. The excellence of the plan and illustrations, and its completeness will guarantee the success of this work."

SCHOOLMASTER.—"Mr. Nesfield's book shows considerable knowledge of a wide and important subject, a clear view of its several parts, and great industry and skill in the treatment of each. As a book of reference and a working text-book, the volume will prove of great service to the English student. The examination questions and indexes add much to the practical utility of the book."

TEACHERS' AID.—"This is a splendid text-book for the student of English, and the subject has been treated with sufficient fulness to enable any diligent student to do credit to himself or herself in the London Matriculation Examination. Thoroughness is the distinctive feature of Mr. Nesfield's work, and this may be seen on every page. The chapter on sounds and symbols is very valuable indeed, and has been made, by the author's happy style, highly interesting. The section of the book dealing with derivation is very full, and contains information amply sufficient to meet all needs. The works of Professor Skeat, and the great dictionary of Dr. Murray, are frequently referred to, which shows that the writer has consulted the best authorities before commencing his task."

GLASGOW HERALD.—"Exceedingly handy for higher school purposes. It contains a large amount of well-put information on the history of the language, and on the derivation of words."

SCOTSMAN.—"It makes a minute survey of the history of English in its philological and etymological aspects, and gives a clear and interesting exposition of the scientific principles illustrated in the growth of the language as distinguished from its grammatical structure."

ACADEMY.—"It is pleasant to get from a Director of Public Instruction in India such a thoroughly good bit of work as this, and it is of good augury for the progress of education in that Empire. Mr. Nesfield has compressed into less than three hundred pages, a very excellent history both of the accidence and syntax of English. The great laws of sound-change, Grimm's and Verner's, are clearly explained and well illustrated; and the history of sounds in English itself is carefully traced. The chapters on prefixes and suffixes, with all their varied origins and applications, are specially full and minute. A couple of hundred questions, taken from London University Matriculation Papers, and a copious index, complete a very valuable book."

GUARDIAN.—"Readers of mediæval and early literature will find the book a useful companion to their texts, and students of pure philology will not refuse it an honoured place beside the works of Morris, Kellner, Sweet, and Skeat.

SATURDAY REVIEW.—"Mr. J. C. Nesfield has done a useful work in his text-book of *Historical English and Derivation*, which is crammed full of information, but is in no sense a cram-book. He covers the whole ground with great fulness, and gives all the most recent information with regard to the history of our language. As a text-book for the higher classes his work should prove very valuable."

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book from their Lending Library for Teachers.

Now Ready. First and Second High School Courses (in One Vol.). Crown 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.; separately, 3s. 6d. each.

ELEMENTS OF RHETORIC

AND

ENGLISH COMPOSITION

BY

G. R. CARPENTER

PROFESSOR OF RHETORIC AND ENGLISH COMPOSITION IN COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

LONDON: MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD.

All rights reserved.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I. Introduction; II. Compositions; III. English Usage; IV. Incorrect English; V. The Sentence; its Grammatical Structure; VI. Punctuation; VII. The Sentence: its Rhetorical Structure; VIII. The Sentence: its Rhetorical Structure (*continued*); IX. Words: Vocabulary; X. Words: too Many; too Few; XI. Kinds of Words; XII. Paragraphs; XIII. The Whole Composition; XIV. Clearness; XV. Force; XVI. Elegance.

APPENDIX I. List of Books for Home Reading; II. Words frequently misused. INDEX.

[Specimen Page of First High School Course]

and may be at any moment withdrawn by him, a kind of equality may exist among all the subjects of the despot." [Periodic.]

EXERCISE 33

In the passage quoted on pages 124-126, which sentences are loose and which periodic?

81. How to make a Loose Sentence Periodic.—The following examples will show how simple a matter it usually is to make a loose sentence periodic:—

LOOSE	PERIODIC
He had an unusually happy life, in spite of some grievous disappointments and bereavements.	In spite of some grievous disappointments and bereavements, he had an unusually happy life.
He had taught himself how to be idle elegantly, but he had never planned how to earn his own living.	Though he had taught himself how to be idle elegantly, he had never planned how to earn his own living.
I closed the door behind me softly and sped swiftly down the street.	Closing the door behind me softly, I sped swiftly down the street.
Still he pressed forward, waving his sword and cheering his soldiers to the attack, but a third shot lodged deep within his breast.	As he still pressed forward, waving his sword and cheering his soldiers to the attack, a third shot lodged deep within his breast.
Abandon your plan or comply with my wishes.	Either abandon your plan or comply with my wishes.
The soldier was brave and he was discreet.	The soldier was not only brave but discreet.

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book from their Lending Library for Teachers.

Now Ready. Extra Crown 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

EXERCISES IN RHETORIC

AND

ENGLISH COMPOSITION

ADVANCED COURSE

BY

G. R. CARPENTER

PROFESSOR OF RHETORIC AND ENGLISH COMPOSITION
IN COLUMBIA COLLEGE

FIFTH EDITION

New York
THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
LONDON: MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD.

All rights reserved

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

Two years ago I published a little book under the title of "Exercises in Rhetoric and English Composition," with the idea of presenting in a compact form (1) such theoretical matter as it seemed to me necessary for the young student of Rhetoric to have thoroughly in mind, and (2) material for practice of all sorts in applying the principles laid down in the text. That book, which was somewhat too elementary for college use, I have now

enlarged and made more advanced in character, until it represents, to my mind, a body of instruction in Rhetoric suitable for the first semester or the first two terms of the Freshman year. If any other teacher should chance to make use of my work, he will perhaps be helped by noticing several peculiarities which it shows. First, I have said very little about "style." What a Freshman needs most of all is to write correctly, clearly, and with some vigour. Attempts to lay stress on individuality of style or on the element of beauty in the pupil's writing should, I think, be deferred until later in the course. Second, I have treated Rhetoric as an art, not as a science. The other point of view is natural and reasonable, but, it seems to me, appropriate only for more advanced students than those for whom I intend this book. Third, I have attempted to broaden the pupil's interest in the art of expression by making an occasional use of Latin, French, and German illustrations. Fourth, I have endeavoured throughout, not to expound the various principles on which I think the art of Rhetoric rests, but to propose a series of questions and problems which the instructor and his pupils may together discuss and solve.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE

SCHEME OF SUBJECT-MATTER

CHAPTER I. The Art of Rhetoric; How Rhetoric may be Studied; Standards and Authorities; Exercise I.—II. Method Proposed; Words: Barbarisms; Improprieties; Exercise II.—III. Words: Vocabulary; Exercises III.—IV. Words: Too Many; Too Few; Exercise IV.—V. Long Words *versus* Short Words; Anglo-Saxon Words *versus* Latin Words; Simple Words *versus* Fine Writing; Euphemisms; Definite Words; Exercise V.—VI.—Sentences: Punctuation; Solecisms; Exercise VI.—VII. Sentences: Long and Short; Periodic and Loose; Balanced. Exercise VII.—VIII. Sentences: Unity; Exercise VIII.—IX. Sentences: Emphasis and Coherence; Exercise IX.—X. Paragraphs: Unity, Emphasis, and Coherence; Exercise X.—XI. The Whole Composition: Unity, Emphasis, and Coherence; Exercise XI.—XII. Qualities of Style: Clearness; Exercise XII.—XIII. Qualities of Style: Force; Exercise XIII.—XIV. Qualities of Style: Elegance; Exercise XIV.

DIRECTIONS FOR WRITING THEMES

ABBREVIATIONS AND SIGNS USED IN CORRECTING THEMES

INDEX TO THE SUBJECT-MATTER

INDEX TO THE PASSAGES QUOTED

From "Education."—"G. R. Carpenter, Professor of Rhetoric and English Composition in Columbia College, has prepared a work under the title of 'Exercises in Rhetoric and English Composition,' in which not so much the science of rhetoric is mapped out and defined as the practical workings of the art are furnished to the student with just enough of the principles to guide him aright. The author gives an abundance of exercises for the student to study and analyze, and this is the very best kind of help. The scheme of the subject-matter is somewhat unique and novel, but it is comprehensive and lucid. The book is almost exclusively confined to consideration of the elements of style,—words, sentences, paragraphs, whole compositions, Other than students in college will find this a very serviceable and suggestive book to read and consult."

intending to purchase to allow us the privilege of trying on a pair; *to see* and feel this Shoe upon the foot, *is* to make a customer for *us*. [Unnecessary changes of construction.]

(*d*) *Henry Smith*, attorney for the Merrimac valley navigation company, *stated* in behalf of that company the objections to the proposed buoy, and *the construction* of a fender pier *was* strenuously *advocated by him*. [Unnecessary change of subject.]

EXERCISE IX.

I. Notice, in the following extract from the preface to Arnold's "Essays in Criticism," the arrangement of words, phrases, and clauses by which emphasis is secured:

"And yet, after all, I cannot but think that the *Saturday Review* has here, for once, fallen a victim to an idea,—a beautiful but deluding idea,—and that the British nation has not yet, so entirely as the reviewer seems to imagine, found the last word of its philosophy. No, we are all seekers still! Seekers often make mistakes, and I wish mine to redound to my own discredit only, and not to touch Oxford. Beautiful city! so venerable, so lovely, so unravaged by the fierce intellectual life of our century, so serene!

"'There are our young barbarians, all at play!'

"And yet, steeped in sentiment as she lies, spreading her gardens to the moonlight, and whispering from her towers the last enchantments of the Middle Age, who will deny that Oxford, by her ineffable charm, keeps ever calling us nearer to the true goal of all of us, to the ideal, to perfection,—to beauty, in a word, which is only truth seen from

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book from their Lending Library for Teachers.

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

A FIRST BOOK IN WRITING ENGLISH

BY

EDWIN HERBERT LEWIS, PH.D.

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH IN LEWIS INSTITUTE AND IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS.

Preface; Introductory Explanations; I. The Art of Writing English; II. On Reading Aloud, and on Spelling; III. A Review of Punctuation: IV. Grammatical Phases of Writing English; V. On Dividing a Paragraph into Sentences; VI. On Well-knit Sentences; VII. On Organizing the Theme. VIII. On Correctness in Choice of Words; IX. Sources of the English Vocabulary; X. The Mastery of a

Writing Vocabulary; XI. Right Number and Skilful Choice of Words; XII. Letter-Writing; XIII. Reproduction, Abstract, Summary, Abridgment; XIV. Narration and Description; XV. Exposition and Argument; Index.

PRESS OPINIONS.

Spectator.—"We especially welcome this little handbook. . . . The author's remarks on punctuation strike us as being particularly sound. . . . Punctuation is, as the author points out, merely a system of signalling, necessary as much for smoothness as for anything, and should not degenerate into a practice at once violent and exasperating. This little book has been the easier to read for the many delightful passages which are scattered through it from the best prose writers. If rules and technicalities are to be taught, it is as well that they should be illustrated in a manner that is pleasant and memorable."

Guardian.—"His method of instruction is analytical rather than dogmatic; his reasoning is logical and his conclusions generally sound; his rules are practical and his examples interesting. . . . The book is suggestive, brightly written, exceedingly well got up, and should be constantly in the hand of every teacher of literature and composition."

Educational News.—"The book is full of usefully suggestive matter, and will be found helpful to both teacher and student. The chapters on punctuation, on well-knit sentences, and on mastery of a writing vocabulary, are especially noteworthy. Numerous exercises and examples are given throughout. We have pleasure in recommending it as the best junior text-book on the principles of composition that has come under our notice."

Scotsman.—"The book is a thoroughly practical school book, and the instruction it conveys will not only enable those who profit by it to avoid the ordinary pitfalls of the English language, but will also help them in writing correctly, vigorously, and clearly."

Glasgow Herald.—"The freshness of its method and the copiousness of its exercises and illustrations cannot fail to supply a good many useful wrinkles to British teachers."

MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD.
ST. MARTIN'S STREET, LONDON, W.C.
86

Specimen Copies will be presented on application.
Please name Number or Part required.

Now Ready. In two Volumes. Globe 8vo.
Vol. I, Parts I to IV, 1s. *Vol. II, Parts V to VII*, 2s.
Or separately in Parts

Word-Building

Transcription and Composition

BY

ROBERT S. WOOD

AUTHOR OF "ENGLISH COMPOSITION AND HOW TO TEACH IT," AND THE "ANALYTIC MODEL ESSAYS"

EDITOR OF "POEMS FOR THE SCHOOLROOM AND THE SCHOLAR"

IN TWO VOLUMES

London
MACMILLAN AND CO. LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
87

LESSON II

A—WORD-BUILDING

-ar/ (short a)	
*b*ar/	*t*ar/
*c*ar/	[1]*sc*ar/
*f*ar/	*sp*ar/
*j*ar/	*st*ar/

-ā-re (long a)	
*b*āre	*r*āre
*c*āre	[8]*sc*āre
[2]*d*āre	[7]*sh*āre
[6]*f*āre	[4]*sp*āre
*m*āre	[5]*st*āre
[3]*p*āre	*squ*āre

B—TRANSCRIPTION based upon A

1. Father brought a **bar** of steel and a **jar** of **tar** upon the **car**.
2. The stone left a deep **scar** on Sam's forehead.
3. The little **stars** are **far, far** away from our earth.
4. I do not **care** to run about **bare**-footed and **bare**-headed.
5. The noise of the cannon will **scare** the young **mare**.
6. We use set **squares** in our drawing lessons.

C—ELLIPSIS

Supply the missing word from **A**

1. The [1]qu— man always [2]sn—s at our cheers.
2. We all like to live with [3]ch— people.
3. The little squirrel [4]p—s through the trees.
4. The red-deer got quite [5]cl— of the hunters.
5. The farmers [6]sh— their sheep in warm weather.
6. Near the end of the [7]y— comes Christmas.
7. We soon [8]w— of dull and [9]dr— November.

D—BUILDING AND BINDING

1. in leap year February extra day.
2. poor washerwoman weary hard day's work.
3. fear boys steer boat on rocks.
4. beer made malt and hops.
5. spear struck soldier near heart.
6. fear we cannot hear scholars' cheers.

In leap **year** February has an extra day.
The poor washerwoman is **weary** after her day's work.
I **fear** the boys will **steer** the boat on the rocks.

E—ADDITIONAL WORDS built upon A for Composition and Transcription

-eer		-ear	
cheer*less*	dear*est*	wear*ied*	hear*er*
sneer*ing*	fear*ful.*	year*ly*	clear*er*
steer*ing*	*ap*pear*ed*	rear*ed*	wear*ily*
queer*est*	ear-*ring*	hear*ing*	wear*iness*

A—WORD-BUILDING RULES

IV.—*Dropping final* l *in adding* -full, all, -fill, well

al.

al.most
al.together
al.ready
al.though
al.mighty
al.ways
al.so

ful.

wil*ful*.
wil*ful*.ly
[1]care*ful*.
care*ful*.ly
[11]skil*ful*
use*ful*.
aw*ful*.
[12]piti*ful*.
[2]dread*ful*.
fruit*ful*.
[6]thought*ful*.
[9]bag*ful*.
[10]b*ul*.rushes
[4]peace*ful*.
beauti*ful*.
plenti*ful*.
[5]merci*ful*.
fright*ful*.
[3]pain*ful*.
[8]faith*ful*.
faith*ful*.ly
ful.fil.
ful.filled
pocket*ful*.
ful.ly
ful.ness
d*ul*.ness

el.

el.bow
w*el*.fare
[7]w*el*.come

il.

unt*il*.
st*il*.ly
h*il*.ly
ch*il*.blains
dr*ol*.ly

B—TRANSCRIPTION based upon A

1. **Although** Sam is the tallest of the three he is the weakest.
2. I **almost** caught the ball with one hand.
3. John **always** calls for me on the road to school.
4. "Are you all right?" cried the driver.
5. We were left all **alone** in the room **until** dusk.
6. Tom **fulfilled** his promise **faithfully**.
7. We were made very **welcome** by the **beautiful** lady.
8. Be **careful** to **welcome** your old friends.
9. The **thoughtful** boy brought a **plentiful** supply of food.
10. Mary's **chilblains** were very **painful**.
11. The **hilly** country looks very **beautiful**.

C—ELLIPSIS—Seeking and Finding

Supply the missing word from **A**

1. On my master's recommendation I obtained the [1]sit—.
2. My brother died of [2]inflamm— of the lungs.
3. We had permission to carry provisions on the [3]excur—.
4. Great [4]con— followed the explosion at the foundry.
5. We had [5]per— to join the procession on this occasion.
6. There is good accommodation for visitors to the [6]exhib—.
7. After the rebellion there was a restor— of property.
8. He had no permission to take [8]possess— of the house.
9. The missionary gave a [9]descrip— of his [10]recep— by the Indians.
10. In the Artic [11]reg—s the cold is intense.

D—BUILDING AND BINDING

Fit these words together to make sense

1. profession of doctor needs careful preparation
2. no one gained admission except my companion
3. excursionists at railway stations found confusion
4. destruction of city caused sensation
5. dog's affection for master
6. collection made for restoration of old church

The **profession** of a doctor needs careful **preparation.**
No one gained **admission** to the **exhibition** except my **companion.**
The **excursionists** at the **station** found all in **confusion.**

E—ADDITIONAL WORDS—Noun-makers in -tion. *First miss out the* e *and then add the following to*

-ion		-ation		-ition
I	II	III	IV	V
relate′	accom′modate	starve′	ci′vilise	propose′
reg′ulate	commu′nicate	perspire′	col′onise	impose′
dictate′	mod′erate	restore′	or′ganise	compose′
im′itate	des′perate	explore′	accuse′	transpose′
ag′gravate	de′corate	recite′	imag′ine	oppose′
complete′	ed′ucate	examine′	prepare′	compete′

ORAL EXERCISE—*Make Sentences containing each new word, as,*

Here is good **accommodation** for travellers.
Communication with India by **telegraph** is now open.

Exercise III.

Re-write correctly the following, using Capitals and Stops where needed :—

1. charles dickens lord macaulay sir walter scott and robert burns were great writers. The most interesting magazines are —.
2. Some favourite poems are john gilpin the wreck of the hesperus we are seven the may queen and the skylark
3. in our school library are westward ho robinson crusoe the pilgrim's progress by john bunyan esop's fables and uncle tom's cabin. My favourite pictures are — .
4. the times the standard the chronicle the daily graphic and the daily telegraph are well-known london papers
5. the germans dutch and spaniards are european nations
6. the hindoos chinese and turks are asiatic peoples
7. edward the III. king of england and his son the black prince led the english army at crecy in france
8. I have read and like best these books —.
9. My favourite writers are —. My favourite poems are — .
10. My favourite poets are —. My historical favourites are —

Exercise IV.—Building and Binding.

Make sentences using correctly the following words :—

the english	a shetland pony	the dutch
scotch wool	irish butter	an englishman
a frenchman	a bengal tiger	an arabian horse
an indian chief	a spanish officer	the welsh

Exercise V.—Building and Binding.

Introduce the following into sentences :—

Sunday	November	Christmas	February	Easter
Monday	Wednesday	Friday	August	October
May-day	Ascension day	January	Saturday	Tuesday
July	Whit-Sunday	April	December	March

Exercise VI.—Building and Binding.

Make sentences containing the following historical names :—

Gunpowder Plot	The Battle of Trafalgar
The Resurrection	The Death of Nelson
Crossing the Red Sea	The Crucifixion
The Civil War	The Flood
The Norman Conquest	The Crusades
The Indian Mutiny	The Discovery of America

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE OF AUTOBIOGRAPHICAL METHOD.

Objects or Substance to be examined and Questioned upon, and Oral Answers given by the Pupils in three Stages before writing out.

First, place a familiar object, or a picture of it, before the class, such as "Blowing Bubbles," an Umbrella, a Kite, a Chair, a Doll, or a Top; or, let **one child** personate the **object** and answer, in complete sentences, **some** of the following oral questions put to it by a **second scholar**, who stands up before the class and acts as **questioner** or cross-examiner. Ask **other children** to supply any suitable question omitted which they think suitable for eliciting a fitting reply.

In this way enthusiasm, attention, and intelligence, will be aroused and sustained even in the lower classes, where the plan may be introduced with advantage in securing answers in **complete statements.**

STEP I.—Oral Questions on the following:

(a) An Umbrella. (b) Father's Pipe.
(c) A Soap Bubble.

1. What are you?
2. How did you get your name?
3. Who uses you?
4. What were you once?
5. What were you like then?
6. Where were you obtained or found?
7. Of what stuff or materials are you made?
8. From what sources do you come?
9. What are your parts?
10. Are you made, grown, or fitted together?
11. How were you fitted together, or prepared for use?
12. Who made you? Where?
13. What is your appearance now? What is your size, shape, or colour? Qualities or nature?
14. How are you used? By whom are you needed? When are you needed? For what purpose are you used?
15. Where are you kept? How are you treated by others?
16. Are you the only kind?
17. What value or advantage to others are you in the world?
18. What is known of your life, experience, and adventures of interest to these scholars?

STEP II.—Oral Answers to some of the Questions.

1. I am an umbrella, and am used by many people, young and old.
2. I get my name from a word which means a shade.
3. My parts are a frame and a cover. My frame consists of a stick, about a yard long, wires, and a sliding metal band. At the lower end of the stick is a steel ferrule or ring. This keeps the end from wearing away when I am used in walking.

SECTION IX.

HELPFUL CLASS CRITICISM AND REVISION.

I.—The Detection, Class Criticism, Correction, Anticipation, Prevention, and Classification of Common Faults in Structure, etc.

It is a real aid to a young composer to have a right standard of correctness ever before his mind to which to silently appeal when improving or finally revising his exercises. He is thus able to understand not only **where,** but **how** and **why** he has violated some vital rule in writing clearly and pleasantly. Thus many errors due to haste and carelessness are reduced, and much labour saved the teacher. (See Chapter, "Errors in English.")

When criticising, polishing up, commenting upon, and comparing good and bad essays, narratives, or biographies previously written in class or at home, you should ask yourself such questions as the following, and try to give sensible and satisfactory answers, and also reasons for them, *e.g.* varying the form, position, and length of clause, etc. :—

1. **Is this the best arrangement of the words? Does it look right?**
2. **Does it sound right, like book English, when read aloud?**
3. **Where lies the fault? What does it spring from?** (See Scheme and large Charts.)
4. **What rule is violated in the 1st, 2nd, 3rd sentences, etc.** (See Danger Signal Scheme and Exercises, pages 88-91.)
5. **How can I improve it—by (1) adding, (2) subtracting, or (3) substituting a word or a phrase—which?**
6. **Why does the new form, when read aloud, satisfy me?**
7. **How could I express it more neatly and forcibly in yet another form?** *Read it aloud and rearrange the explanatory words.*
8. **How could I say it in fewer, better, or more expressive words?** (Synonyms.) *E.g.* By expressing a phrase or a clause in one word.
9. **Why does Tom Brown's paper give more pleasure than others?**
10. **Which of his sentences show better structure? Why is this?**

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered.

WORKS BY

T. EVAN JACOB, B.A.

LATE SCHOLAR OF ST. CATHERINE'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

THE CIVIL SERVICE ESSAY WRITER.

1*s.*

COMPANION TO THE CIVIL SERVICE ESSAY WRITER. 1*s.* 6*d.*

(*This book cannot be presented*).

THE CIVIL SERVICE READER. 2*s.*

Schoolmaster.—"These three books have been prepared specially for students proposing to enter the Civil Service and to enable them to do the composition paper with confidence and success. The author shows how the ideas which they have collected should be arranged and how they can be presented in the best form. There are valuable hints on common mistakes in grammar, and very clear and concise directions for

punctuation and the use of capital letters. The Companion, in addition to serving as a key to the exerciser, contains a good collection of specimen essays. As an aid to enable the student to acquire a good style, by the study of the best authors, the Civil Service Reader has been compiled. It contains selections from the works of some of our best writers of recognised repute, and the choice of extracts has been made with much care and discretion."

Journal of Education.—"These four books are sure to become popular among Civil Service candidates."

Educational News.—"We can thoroughly commend these books as excellent aids to Civil Service students."

University Correspondent.—"We can recommend both books to junior students as well as the Companion to the Civil Service Essay Writer by the same author."

Head Teacher.—"They are well arranged, and should prove of great utility to all who wish to pass the examination successfully."

School Guardian.—"Three handy little aids towards the art of essay writing."

Educational Review (Madras).—"These books may be very strongly recommended to students who are desirous of attaining proficiency in the art of English Composition. . . . Furnishes very practical and valuable hints on Essay Writing. . . . The Companion, if judiciously used, will still further materially improve the conscientious student's powers of composition. It contains materials for Essays on some dozen carefully selected subjects; Exercises on Grammar, Diction, Synonyms, Paragraphing and Punctuation; and a few specimen Essays."

INDEXING AND PRÉCIS WRITING FOR CIVIL SERVICE CANDIDATES.

2s. 6d..

Teacher's Aid.—"Candidates for Civil Service honours, of whom not a few usually belong to the scholastic profession, will find the assistance so lucidly given by Mr. Jacob in the book before us upon an important branch of the examination of a very helpful nature. The average student, working carefully through his manual and bearing in mind the writer's rules and injunctions, should score heavily in the Indexing and Précis Writing Papers."

Educational News.—"These hints for guidance and cautions against errors are clear, terse, and judicious. The specimens and models painstakingly wrought-out are really valuable and informing. . . . Must be useful to candidates and beneficial to the service."

Scotsman.—"A practical and useful book."

Glasgow Herald.—"A useful manual for Civil Service candidates."

Head Teacher.—"Students going in for these examinations will find this book a great help."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

MACMILLAN'S "OFFICIAL" COPY BOOKS

A NEW SERIES OF COPY BOOKS

UPRIGHT, BOLD, LEGIBLE, GRACEFUL, RUNNING HAND

PRICE TWOPENCE EACH.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

The Publishers beg to announce that an entirely New Series under the above title is now ready. The New Series has received the approval of the majority of the Educational authorities.

The Series has been specially designed to teach an Upright, Bold, Legible, and Graceful Running Hand. The Series is not *old fashioned*, not *new fangled*, but the most perfect style of Writing ever produced. The most natural characters, without meaningless flourishes, have been introduced in Macmillan's "Official" Copy Books.

The paper upon which the Copy Books have been printed is specially selected, and is of superior quality.

Standard I.—1. Large Hand—Elements and Combinations; 2. Large Hand—Long Letters, Combinations; 3. Examination Book and Figures.

Standard II.—4. Large Hand and Text Hand—Capitals, Long Words, Figures; 5. Examination Book, including Arithmetic.

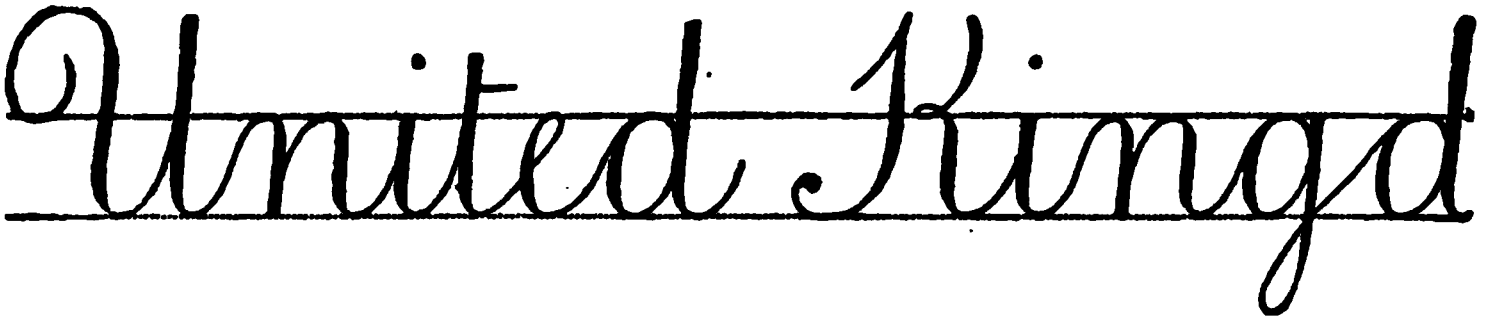
Standard III.—6. Half Text—Long Words, Sentences, Whole Page Transcription, and Arithmetic; 7. Examination Book, including Arithmetic and Parsing Models.

Standard IV.—8. Small Hand (double lines)—Geography and History; 9. Examination Book, including Whole Page Transcription and Arithmetic.

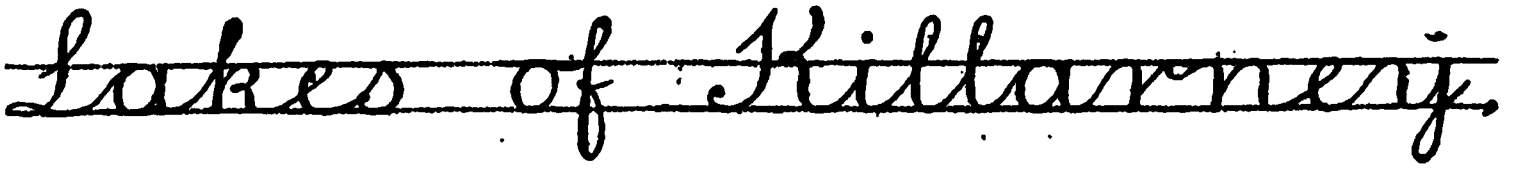
Standard V.—10. Small Hand (single lines)—Word-Building; 11. Examination Book, including Geography, History, and Whole Page Transcription.

Standards VI.-VII.—12. Commercial Definitions; 13. Commercial Forms in common use.

Specimen from No. 4 Book.



Specimen from No. 8 Book.



Charts for Above. Price 2s. 6d. each.

No. 1. Small Letters.	No. 3. Capital Letters.
No. 2. Do., Difficult Joinings.	No. 4. Capitals and Joinings.

Teacher's Aid—"If good writers are not produced by the use of these excellent Copy Books, it will not be the fault of the series."

Publishers' Circular—"For scholars desiring to attain a legible and pretty commercial hand these Copy Books are excellent."

Educational News—"There can be no doubt that the pupil who goes through this series will be benefited largely by such a training."

MACMILLAN'S
OFFICIAL WRITING CHARTS
No. 1

MACMILLAN'S
OFFICIAL WRITING CHARTS
No. 3

MACMILLAN'S
OFFICIAL WRITING CHARTS
No. 2

MACMILLAN'S
OFFICIAL WRITING CHARTS
No. 4

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready, Globe 8vo. Price 1s. 6d.

SCENES OF CHILD LIFE

IN

COLLOQUIAL FRENCH

BY

MRS. J. G. FRAZER

(LILLY GROVE)

ILLUSTRATED BY H. M. BROCK

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PRESS OPINIONS

Teacher's Aid—"The result of Mrs. Frazer's efforts has been most successful. There is not a dull line in the book, and the language used is so simple that the youngest learner will understand and appreciate the writer's meaning. It is one of the best books of the kind that we have yet seen."

Educational News—"Cannot fail to interest and instruct young children in French."

Times—"A charming little volume . . . Mrs. Frazer's dialogues are admirably adapted for beginners in French, and Bébé may perhaps become as familiar to the small boys and girls in nurseries and preparatory schools as Balbus and his wall are to their bigger brothers."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

... bien... ne prenez pas un air aussi sérieux... bien... parfait. Ah! mais il ne faut pas froncer les sourcils.

Bébé (*yawns*). Est-ce fini?

Le Photographe (*impatient*). Nous n'avons pas encore commencé.

Le Grand'maman. Voyons, Bébé, faites donc tout ce que Monsieur le photographe vous dit.

Bébé (*very cross*). Je fais tout ce qu'on me dit. Mais je ne sais plus si je dois ouvrir ou fermer la bouche.

Le Photographe. Allons, Monsieur, souriez... encore un peu... bien... pas tant... Ne clignotez pas... bien...

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 1s. 6d.

SCENES OF FAMILIAR LIFE

ARRANGED PROGRESSIVELY FOR STUDENTS OF

COLLOQUIAL FRENCH

BY

MRS. J. G. FRAZER
(LILLY GROVE)

WITH AN INTRODUCTION BY MISS E. P. HUGHES

ILLUSTRATED

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PRESS OPINIONS

SCHOOLMASTER.—"It is not too much to say that the thorough acquisition of the contents of these two little volumes would make any pupil thoroughly proficient in ordinary French conversation."

SATURDAY REVIEW.—"A quite charming school-book . . . We congratulate Mrs. Frazer; and still more the children who are lucky enough to be taught out of her book."

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.—"Instructive and amusing to the full . . . We can fully recommend this volume to teachers who wish to make French classes a serious preparation for pleasant trips on the Continent, and a sound mental gymnastic for the quick attainment of facility of speech in the Gallic idiom."

SCENES OF FAMILIAR LIFE

SCÈNE I

AU PREMIER DÉJEUNER

MONSIEUR GROUVEL, (*old gentleman* in dressing-gown, a silk handkerchief round his head).
MADAME PUISEUX, (*his housekeeper* in cap and apron)

MONSIEUR GROUVEL. Sept heures vont sonner, et le café n'est pas sur la table ; c'est trop fort.

(*He rings.*)

MADAME PUISEUX. Monsieur a sonné ?

MONSIEUR GROUVEL. Mai oui, où est le café ?

MADAME PUISEUX. Je l'apporte à l'instant ; il n'est pas encore sept heures.

MONSIEUR GROUVEL. Voyons, dépêchez-vous, s'il vous plait.

MADAME PUISEUX. J'allais l'apporter quand monsieur a sonné et m'a empêchée de monter le déjeuner.

MONSIEUR GROUVEL. C'est bien. Donnez moi mon journal, s'il vous plait.

MADAME PUISEUX. Le voici, monsieur (*hands him the newspaper and goes out*).

MONSIEUR GROUVEL (*alone*). Ma gouvernante devient inexacte et raisonneuse. Hm ! Hm ! Deux grandes imperfections. Je ne puis pas supporter le manque de ponctualité ; quant aux caquetages, j'en ai horreur ! (*The clock strikes seven ; on the seventh stroke Madame Puiseux arrives with a tray.*)

MADAME PUISEUX. Voilà, monsieur, le café est prêt. Monsieur mangera-t-il un œuf ce matin ?

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. Pott 8vo. Price 1s. 6d.

FRENCH PLAYS FOR SCHOOLS

BY

MRS. J. G. FRAZER
(LILLY GROVE)

WITH AN INTRODUCTION BY MISS E. P. HUGHES
AND EXPLANATORY NOTES BY THE AUTHOR

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PRESS OPINIONS

EDUCATIONAL NEWS.—"These plays we praise highly, on every point, for school use."

CAMBRIDGE REVIEW.—"This neat little book supplies a long-felt want. . . . We can confidently say that they will be of the greatest help towards that mastery of colloquial French which is so lamentably wanting in the average learner."

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.—"Readable throughout, entertaining, and instructive. They supply, indeed, as is claimed for them, a much and long-felt want. The notes are all that can be desired."

HATEZ-VOUS LENTEMENT

SCÈNE I

M. Legrand (*va et vient dans le salon, dérange les meubles, en ayant l'air de chercher quelquechose; il appelle*) Virginie! (*il regarde la pendule puis le cartel*) Virginie! (*il regarde sa montre*) Virginie!

Mme. Legrand (*arrive très lentement et parle avec une lenteur affectée*). Qu'y a-t-il? On dirait que le feu est à la maison. Tu cries comme un aigle, tu m'écorches les oreilles avec ton Virginie! Virginie!

M. Legrand (*qui pendant ce discours a de nouveau consulté la pendule et sa montre, en essayant d'interrompre sa femme*). Je suis excessivement pressé, Virginie, tu sais bien qu'aujourd'hui il y a séance à la société d'entomologie.

Mme. Legrand. Aujourd'hui c'est la société d'entomologie, demain c'est la société de conchyologie, après-demain c'est la société d'une autre "*logie.*" Que sais-je? Mais vois-tu, Anatole! avec toutes tes "*logies*" tu te rends insupportable dans ton propre *logis*. Et moi j'en ai par-dessus la tête.

M. Legrand (*à part, pendant que Mme. Legrand s'installe dans un fauteuil en déployant un journal*). La voilà partie—impossible d'arrêter ce moulin à paroles! Elle a des qualités, ma femme, je l'avoue, mais elle ne peut pas comprendre qu'on soit pressé—elle ne se rend pas compte qu'une minute et une minute font deux minutes;—c'est comme un sens qui lui manque! (*Il tire sa montre.*) Mais je cherchais quelquechose? (*Se frappant le front*) Ah oui! c'est mon chapeau. (*Il regarde sous les meubles.*)

Mme. Legrand (*relevant sa robe*). Aurais-tu par hasard encore laissé échapper une de tes araignées? Que cherches-tu?

M. Legrand. Je ne peux trouver mon chapeau, et il faut absolument que je parte pour assister à la séance.

Mme. Legrand. Ton chapeau—malheureux! mais il est sur ta tête.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD., LONDON

Applications for Specimen Copies of the Parts will be considered

Exercise Books in 8 parts, for use of Pupils. Crown 8vo. Sewed. 6d. each.

The same, complete in one volume, with Introduction, for the use of Teachers. Cloth. 3s. 6d.

LIVING METHOD OF LEARNING LANGUAGES

The Study of French

ACCORDING TO THE

BEST AND NEWEST SYSTEMS

BY

ALFRED F. EUGÈNE

(PROFESSEUR OFFICIEL DE L'ENSEIGNEMENT SECONDAIRE, UNIVERSITÉ DE FRANCE)

AND

H. E. DURIAUX

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

106

PRESS OPINIONS

Educational Times.—"The book before us seems, at all points, to be an advance on similar books previously published—more complete, more varied, more interesting, more in keeping, in its general outline and treatment, with the requirements of the classroom, the equipment to be furnished to the pupil. . . . The subjects are practical, varied, and well graduated, embracing, as they do, all that may well come in one's way in general conversation. Certainly, the study of French, with such a book, can never be tedious to the pupils, unless, indeed, the teachers make it so. . . . It is thoroughly well got up, and free from errors."

University Correspondent.—"It is hard to see how the English schoolboy of to-day can help learning French thoroughly, so many are the excellent guides at the disposal of his teachers. Of these, the present work is a good example. The book claims to teach the language in a living and natural way, and, if the British boy will only consent to learn it so, all will be well. The arrangement of the book is good and clear; the most useful kinds of phrases are selected. . . . At any rate, if the teaching of the language depended only upon the book used, this kind of book would ensure wonderful success."

Saturday Review.—"That it is a rapid and effective method of teaching languages, experience has already proved. MM. Eugène and Duriaux have done their work well, and their book can be recommended to all those who have seen reason to be dissatisfied with the method of teaching French at present in vogue."

Oxford Magazine.—"We are of opinion that a master or a mistress, who is sympathetic and full of resource, will find the present work most suggestive, and that pupils taught in the manner indicated will make sound and rapid progress, provided that the classes are sufficiently small."

Cambridge Review.—"We hope that what is said here is enough to make everyone who wishes to teach those who can't speak French or understand spoken French try the method. It certainly begins in exactly the right way."

South African Educator.—"The book is likely to be a useful help to the teaching of French."

Scotsman.—"The system has much to recommend it, and deserves the attention of teachers."

Glasgow Herald.—"Those who favour this system will find the authors have provided good material for its application."

Natural and rational method.

To acquire a language, you must hear it spoken, not in its poetical form, but in the simple expressions of every-day life, and it is only by hearing these expressions often enough that you can become sufficiently familiar with them to employ them with ease and fluency in your conversation. In a word, you must assimilate them, not learn them. "*Les plus sûr moyen d'apprendre une langue, c'est de la vivre.*"

In the lessons we put before you, you will find that the most common events of our daily life are placed first. These are the things about which you must be able to express your thoughts and feelings; they form the topics of every-day conversation. You may often want to say that you are hungry, but you may never be called upon to write the description of a sunset.

How these exercises are conceived.

Our exercises represent simple scenes taken from every-day life, and each exercise consists of a series of complete sentences related one to the other. Each sentence describes one part of the scene, but not at random: all the sentences are connected; each one is the natural consequence of the preceding one, so that the lesson becomes a lesson not of *words* but of *things*, and of things in their natural order. The actions are the most familiar; and instead of it being a task to remember the order, it is difficult to forget it. Let us illustrate. We venture to give in English a lesson out of the Elementary Course:

I START FOR SCHOOL.

I put on my overcoat, hat, and gloves;
I take my books;
I also take my exercise books and my pencil-box;
I put them in my satchel.

Then I take my satchel
I sling it over my shoulder,
and I go out of the house.

I go towards the school;
I walk quickly,
and I soon arrive at the school.

You will notice that there is nothing haphazard in the selection of sentences and words. All the ordinary expressions connected with the idea under consideration, viz., "My starting for school," are given. We have taught in this lesson all the simplest forms of the language connected with that one act of the child's life.

Try to make your pupils imagine the scene, and for this purpose describe it fully in English.

As soon as you have succeeded in giving them a clear mental picture of the scene, repeat the verbs of the first paragraph in *English*, and you will see by the look of intelligence on the faces of your pupils that the simple enunciation of the actions has enabled them to recall the whole scene. Now proceed to give the verbs in *French*—say each one several times, speaking slowly and distinctly, and insist upon the pupils connecting the new sound with the actions they have in mind, and not with the English word.

Having thus gone through the verbs, and given any explanation which you deem necessary, repeat each verb

Repetition.

again several times without any comment: finally repeat the verbs once. As regards the number of repetitions the teacher must be guided by his pupils' faces. Bright eyes, eager faces, will show that the pupil is ready to try what he can do. Puckered brows show, as plainly as possible, that the pupil does not see clearly what is required of him. At first, be content to go slowly, and above all be patient. Durable buildings must rest on firm foundations.

Now let the pupils repeat, each one taking a verb. At once the great value of this principle of Association of ideas, about which we have already spoken, will become apparent, for the pupils will be able to recall the actions in their proper order.

We find it an excellent plan to adopt simultaneous repetition during these initial stages. It does away with that shyness and confusion often experienced by pupils when they hear their own voices uttering strange sounds; in addition to this, it makes every pupil work.

When the verbs are assimilated, the teacher should write them on the black board, and have them read through; then the black board should be reversed whilst the teacher, taking each verb separately, groups the words of the sentence around it. The *verb*, the action, is the important part of the sentence. An action demands some one to perform it, and usually requires a complement. So take the first verb, "*mets.*" Describe the subject. Who puts? "*Je* mets." Describe the garment. "Je mets" what? "Je mets *mon pardessus*,' etc. Each word—verb, noun, adjective—is to be fully

described, so that every one may be connected with a mental picture of the object or idea, and not with the written word. Deal with the sentences in the same manner and in the same order as you dealt with the verbs, and let all needful explanations be given with the first repetitions.

The final repetition given by the teacher should be unaccompanied by any comments, and thus the pupils should be left free to concentrate their attention entirely upon the foreign sounds. As in the case of the verbs, the pupils must now be required to say the sentences through, and afterwards to read them from the board.

The first book, containing short, simple lessons of from four to eight sentences, is suitable for very young pupils. After that, the exercises become longer and more difficult, care being taken to use only the language of every-day conversation. In the last two books, the lessons are drawn up in a literary style, and are intended to carry the student on to the writing of composition and the study of literature.

We would advise teachers to make each lesson of Book VIII. the subject of French conversation in class, bringing out and explaining the different points of the lesson, and encouraging the pupils to discuss these points, draw their own conclusions, and give their opinions in their own words. This having been done, the pupils should be requested to read the text and compare their way of expressing their ideas with that of the author. The lesson should afterwards become the subject of an essay. At the end of each exercise we

have prepared sentences which only require to be completed, thus showing the pupil how, and in what order, he should express his thoughts.

A glance at the subjoined list will give an idea of the subjects treated in the following pages:—

FIRST PART. [*Cours préparatoire.*]

Book I.

Les parties du corps.
Les cinq sens.
Impressions et sensations.
Petites scènes de la vie courante.
Récitations et chansonnettes.

SECOND PART. [*Cours élementaire.*]

Books II. and III.

L'enfant dans la famille.
Vie scolaire.
Récréations.
Le ménage.
Les mois et les saisons.
Initiation à la conjugaison des verbes.
Récitations et chansons.

THIRD PART. [*Cours moyen.*]

Books IV., V., and VI.

Travaux d'intérieur.
Relations extérieures.
Usages du monde.
Les magasins.
Sport et passe-temps (chasse, pêche, etc.).
Excursions.

Étude des verbes réguliers.
Grammaire.
Morceaux choisis.

FOURTH PART. [*Cours supérieur.*]

Books VII. and VIII.

La lutte pour la vie.
L'agriculture et les récoltes.
L'industrie ; usines et manufactures.
Le commerce et les affaires.
Un voyage ; le paquebot et le chemin de fer.
Paris.
Mœurs et coutumes françaises.
Institutions politiques.
La Presse.
Étude des verbes irréguliers.
Grammaire et syntaxe.
Composition.
Morceaux choisis.

It will be found that nearly every lesson is on a different subject, so as to bring into the class with each lesson, fresh interest and a new vocabulary. This book furnishes ample material for pupils of every age, children, or adults. The lessons may be taught easily and effectively. We have proved this in our own classes. Teachers who wish to visit these classes and see for themselves what can be done by this method are cordially invited to communicate with us. It is impossible to do the system justice by theory only : it should be seen in actual practice.

DIX-NEUVIÈME LEÇON.

Les parties du corps

1. Je **prends** un crayon ;
2. je **dessine** un bonhomme ;
3. je **dessine** les trois parties de son **corps** :
   la tête, le tronc, les membres.

VINGTIÈME LEÇON.

La tête.

1. Je **dessine** la tête ;
2. je **dessine** le front ;
3. je **dessine** les cheveux ;
4. je **dessine** les deux yeux ;
5. je **dessine** les deux oreilles ;
6. je **dessine** les deux joues ;
7. je **dessine** le nez ;
8. je **dessine** la bouche ;
9. je **dessine** le menton ;
10. je **dessine** le cou.

CONVERSATION.

Révision de la leçon précédente.

1st P. Sais-tu pourquoi X. . . . a été retenu ce soir?

2nd P. Je crois qu'il n'a pas su sa leçon.

1st P. Cela lui arrive souvent d'être puni.

2nd P. Ce n'est pas étonnant; c'est un paresseux.

1st P. Le maître est sévère pour lui.

2nd P. Non, il n'est que juste.

QUINZIÈME LEÇON.

LA CUISINE.

Scene.—The cook gets the stove ready, prepares the dinner, sends it up to the dining-room.

1. La cuisinière **allume** son fourneau;
2. elle **prépare** la viande;
3. elle **épluche** les légumes;
4. elle **prépare** l'entremets (pudding, crême, etc.)
5. La cuisinière **fait rôtir** la viande au four;
6. elle **met** les légumes sur le feu;
7. elle **fait cuire** l'entremets.
8. Quand le dîner **est** cuit,
9. la cuisinière **place** les mets sur des plats,
10. et les **tient** prêts pour le service de la table.

Entretien au cours de la leçon.

M. N'hésitez pas, cette fois.

. . . . . .

M. Vous n'avez fait que deux fautes.

P. Oh ! je vois où je me suis trompé.

M. Ce n'est pas une grosse affaire.

LEÇONS PRÉLIMINAIRES.

I. LA LEÇON DE GRAMMAIRE.

Scene.—A class-room. The master explains to his pupils the three great divisions of time : present, past, and future.

§ I.

1. Le maître donne une leçon de grammaire ;
2. Écoutons-le.

3. Il parle du temps dans les verbes ;
4. il dit :
5. Nous **avons commencé** une leçon hier ;
6. **continuons**-la aujourd'hui ;
7. nous l'**achèverons** peut-être demain.

8. Car toute action a trois phases :
9. commencer—continuer—achever,
10. qui correspondent à trois temps :
11. le passé—le présent—le futur.

§ II.

12. **Hier**, c'est le PASSÉ,
13. qui ne nous appartient plus.
14. **Aujourd'hui**, c'est le PRÉSENT,
15. qui se dérobe sous nos pieds
16. et s'éloigne de nous sans retour.
17. Profitons-en ;
18. car nous ne savons pas
19. si **demain**, qui est l'avenir,—le FUTUR—
20. nous appartiendra.

To be learnt by heart.

Le Temps a trois doigts dans sa main :
Aujourd'hui, le présent qui passe ;
Hier, le passé qui s'efface ;
Demain, l'avenir incertain.

DIX-NEUVIÈME LEÇON. [CONVERSATION.]

L'HEURE QU'IL EST.

MASTER. X. . . ., regardez la pendule; quelle heure est-il?
1ST PUPIL. Je ne sais pas dire l'heure, Monsieur.
M. Quelqu'un sait-il dire l'heure en français? . . . Comment! personne ne sait? Z. . . ., vous voyez bien les aiguilles?
2ND P. Oui, Monsieur, je les vois.
M. Sur quel chiffre est la petite aiguille?
2ND P. Elle est sur le chiffre onze.
M. Et la grande aiguille?
1ST P. Elle est sur le chiffre douze.
M. Eh bien, il est onze heures. La pendule va sonner; vous compterez les coups.
PUPILS. Un, deux, trois, quatre, cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix, onze!

Grammatical Questions.

25. *How many kinds of numeral adjectives are there in French?*
Two: the cardinal and the ordinal.

	CARDINAL.			ORDINAL.	
Ex.	1, 'un.'	11, 'onze.'	'premier,'	*first.*
	2, 'deux.'	12, 'douze.'	'deuxième,'	*second.*
	3, 'trois.'	13, 'treize.'	'troisième,'	*third.*
	4, 'quatre.'	14, 'quatorze.'	'quatrième,'	*fourth.*
	5, 'cinq.'	15, 'quinze.'	'cinquième,'	*fifth.*
	6, 'six.'	16, 'seize.'	'sixième,'	*sixth.*
	7, 'sept.'	17, 'dix-sept.'	'septième,'	*seventh.*
	8, 'huit.'	18, 'dix-huit.'	'huitième,'	*eighth.*
	9, 'neuf.'	19, 'dix-neuf.'	'neuvième,'	*ninth.*
	10, 'dix.'	20, 'vingt.'	'dixième,'	*tenth.*

In French, cardinal numbers are used in mentioning dates and names of sovereigns.

Ex. 'le premier mai,' *May the 1st.* 'Charles premier,' *Charles I.*
'le cinq mai,' *May the 5th.* 'Charles sept,' *Charles VII.*

Written Exercise.

Write in French: *Will you kindly tell me the time? Certainly; it is five minutes to twelve; you will soon hear the clock strike.*
Write in full: *On the 3rd of September*, 1896.—*June the 1st.*—*George the Third and Charles I. were kings of England.*

TRENTE-QUATRIÈME LEÇON.

LA CHASSE (LE DÉPART).

Scene.—The huntsman gets ready, shoulders his gun, and goes with his dogs to meet the other sportsmen.

1. Le *chasseur* **est** debout avant l'aube;
2. *il* **met** son costume de chasse;
3. *il* **examine** son fusil avec précaution
4. et le **passe** en bandoulière;
5. *il* **se munit** de sa gibecière et d'une provision de cartouches;
6. *il* **a** soin de ne pas **oublier** son permis de chasse.

7. Le *chasseur* **va ouvrir** le chenil;
8. les *chiens* **aboient** et **bondissent**;
9. leur *maître* leur **passe** une petite chaîne au collier
10. et **va**, avec ses chiens, **rejoindre** d'autres chasseurs.

11. Les *chasseurs* **sont rassemblés**;
12. *ils* **confient** la meute à un piqueur;
13. ce *dernier* **tient** les chiens en laisse.
14. *Tout le monde* **part** en campagne.

Entretien au cours de la leçon.

M. Vous ne paraissez pas très attentif, X. . ., me faudra-t-il vous rappeler à l'ordre?

P. Pardon, Monsieur, j'écoute.

M. Cependant, on dirait que votre esprit bat la campagne.

. . . . . .

M. Allons, vous récitez à qui mieux mieux.

Written Exercise.

Write the first paragraph in the *subjonctif présent*, beginning each sentence with **il faut que . . .**

Find *infinitif*, *participe présent*, and *participe passé* of all the verbs in the lesson.

CINQUIÈME LEÇON.

L'INDUSTRIE.—(1) LA FONDERIE.

Scène.—Le fer : comment on l'obtient, et comment on le prépare. Ses usages.

1. Le fer **est** le plus utile des métaux.
2. On le **trouve** dans la terre à l'état de minerai.
3. Ce minerai **est extrait** de la mine
4. par des ouvriers **appelés** mineurs.

5. On **transporte** le minerai à la fonderie.
6. Là, on le **broie**,
7. et on le **met** dans les hauts-fourneaux.

8. Sous l'action d'un feu intense, le métal **fond**
9. et **se sépare** de sa gangue ;
10. mais, comme il y **reste** des impuretés,
11. on le **fond** de nouveau,
12. jusqu'à ce qu'il **soit épuré**.

13. Ce traitement du minerai de fer **donne** le fer, la fonte et l'acier,
14. suivant la proportion de carbone qui s'y **trouve** incorporée.

15. Le fer et l'acier, ainsi obtenus, **sont passés** au laminoir
16. et **livrés** au commerce en lames ou en barres ;
17. la fonte **est coulée** dans des moules.

Entretien au cours de la leçon.

M. Nous avons une tâche à remplir, essayons de nous en tirer honorablement. Qui ouvrira le feu ? Sera-ce vous, X. . . . ?

1st P. Pardon, Monsieur, Y. . . . est plus avancé que moi ; donc c'est à lui. À tout seigneur tout honneur.

M. Non, je ne l'entends pas de cette oreille. Que chacun récite à son tour.

. . . . . .

M. Encore une ou deux répétitions, et vous saurez cela sur le bout du doigt.

Written Exercise.

Translate the first three paragraphs into English.

Find homonyms of *fer, terre, mine, haut, sous, fond, des, soit, lames, moule.*

Find synonyms of *il se trouve, appelé, met, broie, est extrait, de nouveau.*

TROISIÈME LEÇON.

EN CHEMIN DE FER.

Ordre des idées.—**Le départ du train. La route. Les arrêts. Au buffet. La gare d'arrivée.**

À Dieppe, un train omnibus attend les voyageurs sur le quai de débarquement et les transporte à Paris en quatre heures. On fait le trajet en moins de temps par train express et par train rapide. Nous passons à Rouen, une vieille ville très intéressante qui vit naître les deux Corneille.—"Rouen, 10 minutes d'arrêt, buffet!" crie un employé quand le train entre en gare.

Nous voudrions bien visiter la ville, elle en vaut la peine; mais nous allons directement à Paris où nous appellent nos affaires. Nous entrons cependant au buffet de la gare et nous nous faisons servir, sur le comptoir, une tranche de jambon, un petit pain et un carafon de vin.

Nous n'avons pas fini notre modeste déjeuner que nous entendons le cri: "Voyageurs pour Paris, en voiture, s'il vous plaît!" Nous regagnons à la hâte notre wagon; le train se remet en marche et traverse à toute vitesse les riantes vallées et les gras pâturages de la Normandie.

Il y a dans notre compartiment des personnes qui lisent des journaux ou des romans plutôt que d'admirer les sites ravissants qui s'offrent à la vue; pour ma part, je ne puis me résoudre à les imiter. Mes yeux se fixent sur les campagnes verdoyantes et les jolis villages qui se succèdent jusqu'aux faubourgs de la capitale, annoncés par les innombrables cheminées d'usine dont les hautes silhouettes se dressent à l'horizon.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. First Year. Crown 8vo. *Price* 1s.

FRENCH COURSE

FIRST YEAR

BY

A. C. POIRÉ

PRINCIPAL OF THE NORTHERN INSTITUTE OF LANGUAGES
LEEDS AND BRADFORD

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

122

HOW TO STUDY THE EXERCISES

ONE'S purpose in learning a language is fourfold :—

1. To **understand** the spoken language.
2. To **speak** fluently.
3. To **read** easily.
4. To **write** correctly.

To obtain the best results it is desirable to allow the pupils to *see* the spelling *only after* they have heard, understood, and repeated the sounds. Then, *but only then*, should they read, and afterwards write, the exercise.

This is how the work should proceed to give satisfactory results :—

1. Learning

Exercises are divided in steps of five or six sentences each.

1. The teacher reads the first step slowly in *English*.
2. He next states the first sentence in English, and then teaches orally each French word of the sentence, commencing with the basic word (generally the verb).
3. This sentence must be repeated three or four times. Details are necessary to help the student in forming a clear picture—the teacher can help a great deal by gestures.
4. The pupil is then allowed to repeat the sentence.
5. Each sentence of the step should be taught in the same manner.
6. Finally the teacher repeats the whole step at least four times, previously calling out the basic word of each sentence in English, to recall the picture.
7. Now the pupils repeat the whole step, and, should they hesitate, the teacher may help them with a gesture likely to recall the action.

Each step in the exercise to be treated in the same manner.

When the exercise is finished (in about thirty minutes), the teacher repeats the whole exercise once through, and then the students repeat *the whole* exercise of twenty to twenty-five sentences (without having yet seen the spelling).

2. Reading

Now that the exercise has been learnt by the ear and repeated, the students open their books. The teacher reads one sentence and the students repeat from their books; and thus through the exercise, sentence by sentence. Then the teacher reads slowly through *the whole* exercise alone; and lastly the pupils read the whole exercise alone.

3. Writing

The pupils write the exercise at home in a different form of the verb (past, future, etc.) as directed. (Pupils anxious to do good work copy the exercise once, and then, to make sure that they know the exercise by heart, they write it from memory in order to test their spelling.)

Grammar

The rules and examples set for each lesson must be read twice by the teacher in French and the French learnt by the student as home-lesson.

Verbs

Only one tense of the verb should be learnt in one lesson; but it must be learnt thoroughly. Here again, the teacher should teach the pronunciation thoroughly before the students learn the verbs. While learning the verbs, the pupil should always endeavour to have present in his mind (1) the action being performed, (2) the time when the action is performed, (3) the person performing the action. Otherwise it is mere parrot work.

Remarks about Health, the Weather, Meals, etc.

Ten minutes should be devoted (beginning of lesson) to the *oral* teaching of these sentences which must aiso be *written* and learnt by the pupils at home.

THE NOUN

9. The neuter gender does not exist in French. A French noun is either masculine or feminine. (The gender of nouns is to be learnt by the practice of conversation; by the ear, and not by the eye.)

Formation of the Plural

10. *General Rule.*—The plural of nouns is formed by adding **s** to the singular:

the boy	the girl	the pencil	the slate
the boys	the girls	the pencils	the slates

There are numerous exceptions to that general rule; we give the principal ones:—

11. (1) Nouns ending in **s, x, z** remain *unchanged*:

the son	the voice	the nose	the walnut
the sons	the voices	the noses	the walnuts, etc.

12. (2) Nouns ending in **au, eu, œu, ou** take **x**:

the hat	the game	the vow	the cabbage
the hats	the games	the vows	the cabbages

13. (2*a*) The following nouns follow the general rule:

the landeau	the nail	the cuckoo	the cheat	the madman
the halter	the hole	the halfpenny	the bolt	

14. (3) Nouns ending in **al** or **ail** change al or ail into **aux**:

the canal	the horse	the work	the coral, etc.

15. (3*a*) A few nouns ending in **al** or in **ail** follow the general rule and take **s** for the plural:

ball	carnival	jackal	treat
detail	fan	rudder	porch (church)

LE NOM

Le genre neutre n'existe pas en français. Un nom français est ou masculin ou féminin. (Le genre des noms doit être appris par la pratique de la conversation ; par l'oreille et non par les yeux.)

Formation du Pluriel

Règle générale.—On forme le pluriel des noms en ajoutant **s** au singulier :

le garçon	la fille	le crayon	l' ardoise
les garçons	les filles	les crayons	les ardoises

Il y a de nombreuses exceptions à cette règle générale ; nous donnons les principales :—

(1) Les noms se terminant en **s, x, z** restent *invariables* :

le fils	la voix	le nez	la noix
les fils	les voix	les nez	les noix, etc.

(2) Les noms se terminant en **au, eu, œu, ou** prennent **x** :

le chapeau	le jeu	le vœu	le chou
les chapeaux	les jeux	les vœux	les choux

(2 *bis*) Les noms suivants suivent la règle générale :

le landeau	le clou	le coucou	le filou	le fou
les landeaus	les clous	les coucous	les filous	les fous
le licou	le trou	le sou	le verrou	
les licous	les trous	les sous	les verrous	

(3) Les noms se terminant en **al** ou **ail** changent **al** ou ail en **aux** :

le canal	le cheval	le travail	le corail
les canaux	les chevaux	les travaux	les coraux, etc.

(3 *bis*) Quelques noms se terminant en **al** ou en **ail** suivent la règle générale et prennent **s** au pluriel :

un bal	un carnaval	un chacal	un régal
des bals	des carnavals	des chacals	des régals
un détail	un éventail	un gouvernail	un portail
des détails	des éventails	des gouvernails	des portails

74. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

My book and **that** of my brother	My pen and **that** of my sister
My pencils and **those** of my friend	My oranges and **those** of my cousin
Here are two books; take **this one** and give me **that one**	Here are two pens; take **this one** and give me **that one**

INDEFINITE FORM (when no noun is expressed)

Take this and leave that

75. **he is, she is, it is, they are** are expressed in French by **c'est** or **ce sont** before a **noun, pronoun,** or **superlative**:

it is I **it is we** **it is you** **it is they**
he is my brother **they are my sisters**
they are the best children in the school

76. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

who	I know that man **who** is singing
to whom	You know the child **to whom** I was speaking
from whom	**From whom** have you received all this money?
whom	A lady **whom** you know has come
of whom	The gentleman **of whom** you speak is here
of what	**Of what** were you speaking this morning?
to what	Pray, **what** are you thinking of?
(where) in which	This is the house **in which** I live

77. which (*m.s.*)	The arm-chair in **which** you are
which (*f.s.*)	**Which** of these pens will you have?
which (*m.pl.*)	**Which** of these pencils are the best?
which (*f.pl.*)	**Which** of these pens are the best?

78. The words **le, la, les** of the above pronouns are of course subject to the same modifications as the article, and become **du, de la, des** or **au, à la, aux,** according to the sense.

LE PRONOM DÉMONSTRATIF

Mon livre et **celui** de mon frère	Ma plume et **celle** de ma sœur
Mes crayons et **ceux** de mon ami	Mes oranges et **celles** de ma cousine
Voici deux livres ; prenez **celui-ci** et donnez-moi **celui-là**	Voici deux plumes ; prenez **celle-ci** et donnez-moi **celle-là**

FORME INDÉFINIE (aucun nom exprimé)

Prenez **ceci** et laissez **cela**

he is, she is, it is, they are sont exprimés par **c'est** ou **ce sont** devant un **nom**, un **pronom**, un **superlatif**.

c'est moi — **c'est** nous — **c'est** vous — **ce sont** eux
c'est mon frère — **ce sont** mes sœurs
ce sont les meilleurs enfants **de** l'école

LE PRONOM RELATIF

qui	Je connais cet homme **qui** chante
à qui	Vous connaissez l'enfant **à qui** je parlais
de qui	**De qui** avez-vous reçu tout cet argent ?
que	Une dame **que** vous connaissez est venue
dont	Le monsieur **dont** vous parlez est ici
de quoi	**De quoi** parliez-vous ce matin ?
à quoi	**A quoi** pensez-vous donc !
où	Voici la maison **où** je demeure
lequel	Le fauteuil dans **lequel** vous êtes
laquelle	**Laquelle** de ces plumes voulez-vous ?
lesquels	**Lesquels** de ces crayons sont les meilleurs ?
lesquelles	**Lesquelles** de ces plumes sont les meilleures ?

Les mots **le, la, les** des pronoms précédents sont naturellement soumis aux mêmes modifications que l'article, et deviennent **du, de la, des** ou **au, à la, aux**, selon le sens.

Lesson 21. Bicyclette. 1. Le Départ.

1. Le cycliste **sort** sa bicyclette de la remise ;
2. il **huile** sa bicyclette avec une burette ;
3 il **gonfle** les caoutchoucs pneumatiques ;
4. il **s'assure** que tout **est bien en ordre** ;
5. il **vérifie** les écrous avec la vis de serrage.

6. Il prend les deux **poignées** du guidon ;
7. il met le **pied gauche** sur le marchepied ;
8. il **s'élance** (prend un élan) du pied droit ;
9. il **saute** (se met) légèrement **en selle** ;
10. il **pose** les pieds sur les pédales.

11. Le vélocipédiste **pédale** vigoureusement ;
12. les pédales **font mouvoir** le pignon ;
13. le pignon met **la chaîne** en mouvement ;
14. la chaîne **fait mouvoir la roue d'arrière** ;
15. la bicyclette **roule** rapidement **sur la chaussée**.

16. Dans les **rues encombrées**, le cycliste va lentement ;
17. il **dévie à** chaque instant de la ligne droite
18. pour **éviter** piétons, voitures, tramways, etc.
19. Fréquemment il **fait sonner** son timbre
20. pour **avertir** les passants de **son approche**.
21. (**En Angleterre** on se dérange **à gauche** ;
22. **en France**, on se dérange **à droite**).

Home Work.—Revise verbs 114 to 117.—Write the above exercise : Demain, **nous sortirons**..., etc.—Learn rules 98 to 102.—Revise exercises 10 to 15.—Phonétique : 13, 14.

---

1. Je me porte à merveille ?—Moi pas...
2. Quelle date avons-nous aujourd'hui ?...
3. Pouvez-vous me dire l'heure ?...
4. Vous êtes-vous promené aujourd'hui ?...
5. Est-ce qu'il fait clair de lune ce soir ?—Oui...

A Specimen Copy of the First, Second and Third Year will be presented on application

Please name the Book required

Crown 8*vo*. *First Year*, 1*s*. *Supplementary Exercises*, 1*s*.
Second Year, 2*s*. *Third Year*, 2*s*. 6*d*.

MACMILLAN'S
PROGRESSIVE FRENCH COURSE

BY

G. E. FASNACHT

FORMERLY ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL

I. FIRST YEAR. Containing Easy Lessons on Regular Accidence. 1s.

Supplementary Exercises to Macmillan's Progressive French Course. First Year. 1s.

II. SECOND YEAR. Containing an Elementary Grammar with copious Exercises, Notes, and Vocabularies. 2s.

III. THIRD YEAR. Containing a Systematic Syntax and Lessons in Composition. 2s. 6d.

Teacher's Companion to First, Second and Third Year's Course. 4s. 6d. net each.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

130

30th Lesson. Trentième Leçon.

RULE 16.—*If a Noun is taken in a* **partitive sense**, *that is, if a certain* **part, quantity, number,** *or* **fraction** *of a whole is to be expressed,* **du, de la, de l', des** *must be used* :—

			Singular.	
m.	le papier,	*the paper.*	du papier,	*some (any) paper ; paper.**
	l'argent,	*the money.*	de l'argent,	*some (any) money ; money, silver.**
f.	la toile,	*the cloth.*	de la toile,	*some (any) cloth ; cloth.**
	l'huile,	*the oil.*	de l'huile,	*some (any) oil ; oil.**
			Plural.	
m.	les ciseaux,	*the scissors.*	des ciseaux,	*some (any) scissors ; scissors.*
	les abricots,	*the apricots.*	des abricots,	*some (any) apricots; apricots.*
f.	les prunes,	*the plums.*	des prunes,	*some (any) plums ; plums.*
	les oranges,	*the oranges.*	des oranges,	*some (any) oranges ; oranges.*

* CAUTION.—In English, *some* and *any* are in many cases not expressed ; but in French the *Partitive Article* is strictly required before a Noun used in a Partitive sense :—

What is this—wine *or* water?	Qu'est-ce que c'est—du vin ou de l'eau?
We have friends.	Nous avons des amis.

le vinaigre	*the vinegar.*	la pomme de terre	*potato.*
le poivre	*the pepper.*	la nouvelle	*the news.*
la moutarde	*the mustard.*	le timbre-poste	*the postage-stamp.*
la salade	*the salad.*	l'Américain	*the American.*
le glacier	*the glacier.*	le Russe	*the Russian.*
l'ardoise (*f.*)	*the slate.*	ou (conj.) *or.*	où (adv.) *where.*

A. 1. Avez-vous du vinaigre, de l'huile, du poivre, et du sel ?—Oui, et nous avons aussi de la moutarde. 2. La Suisse est-elle un pays intéressant ?—Oui, il y a des montagnes, des lacs, des cascades, et des glaciers. 3. Dans les montagnes du pays de Galles il y a du plomb, de l'étain, et des ardoises. 4. Nous aurions mangé du jambon et de la salade. 5. Nous avons reçu des nouvelles du théâtre de la guerre. 6. Voici du papier, de l'encre, des crayons, et des plumes. 7. Voilà des timbres-poste.

B. 1. Shall we have coffee or tea ?—Tea and sugar. 2. Had you any bread ?—Yes, bread and butter. 3. If we had money, we should have some wine, for we are thirsty. 4. If you were hungry, should you not have bread and meat ? 5. Has the waiter brought any beer ?—Yes, and he has also brought some water for you. 6. Are there any Englishmen in Paris ?—Yes, and there are also Russians and Americans. 7. Here is butter.

17. Present Perfect (Passé Indéfini) of avoir and être.

le voyageur	*the traveller.*	le perroquet	*the parrot.*
la nouvelle	*the news, tidings.*	la maisonnette	*the cottage.*
la médaille	*the medal.*	le nain	*the dwarf.*
la personne	*the person.*	l'os (*m.*)	*the bone.*
personne . . . ne	*no one ; nobody ; not anybody.*	le mouton	*the sheep, mutton.*
		souvent	*often.*
le lit	*the bed.*	le (la) moindre	*the least.*
le lit de mort	*the deathbed.*	manger	*to eat.*
la connaissance	*the acquaintance, knowledge.*	ronger	*to gnaw, pick.*
		affamé	*famished, hungry.*

A. 1. Votre jeune ami a-t-il été à la campagne aujourd'hui ?
2. Notre voisin a-t-il eu le plaisir de rencontrer son frère ?
3. Leur nièce n'a-t-elle pas été récompensée ?
4. Sa tante n'a-t-elle pas eu patience ?
(a) *In the sentences above put the subject and verb in the plural.*
(b) *Construe the sentences above by using* **Est-ce que . . . ?** *instead of inversion.*
5. Combien de temps le voyageur a-t-il été en Espagne ?
6. Je n'ai jamais été si heureux qu'aujourd'hui ; j'ai reçu la nouvelle que mon frère a reçu une médaille d'or.
7. Les voyageurs n'ont-ils pas eu bien froid en Russie ? *
8. Ils ont eu froid et faim ; souvent ils n'ont pas eu le moindre petit morceau de pain sec à manger.
9. "Personne n'a eu pitié de moi," dit le loup à son lit de mort.
10. N'auraient-ils pas envie de rester ici ?
11. "Où es-tu, Robinson Crusoé ; où as-tu été ?" dit le perroquet.

* *In French the Past Perfect is often used instead of the English Preterite.*

B. 1. "This morning I have had the pleasure of 'meeting' (*say* meet) your mother," said the wolf to the lamb. 2. "As I was hungry, I was very glad 'to make' (**de faire**) her acquaintance." 3. If these lazy pupils had worked, they would be ready now. 4. Has our gardener been in the garden this afternoon ? 5. Have these travellers been in (**en**) Switzerland ?—They have been in Italy and Spain. 6. How long have you 'been working' (*say* worked) ? 7. "Who has been in our cottage ?" said the dwarfs. 8. "Have you not a mind to eat a little bit of mutton ?" asked the fox. 9. "I have not had the least little bone to (à) gnaw," said the hungry [2] wolf [1].

Learn the Past (Prétérit) of Auxiliary and Regular Verbs, pp. 4, 6, 8, 9.

A. 1. Où *fûtes*-vous lundi dernier ?
Je *fus* au Palais de Cristal, où je m'*amusai* beaucoup.

2. Quand *eûtes*-vous treize ans ?
J'*eus* treize ans avant-hier.

3. Où les Romains *attaquèrent*-ils les Gaulois ?
Ils les *attaquèrent* dans leur camp retranché.

4. Quand les Athéniens *bannirent*-ils Thémistocle ?
Ils l'*envoyèrent* en exil en 472 avant J.C. (*sounded* = Jésu-kri).

5. Pourquoi les troupes romaines *rompirent*-elles leurs rangs ?
Parce que la cavalerie ennemie *fondit* sur elles à l'improviste.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) Yesterday I was at home (§ 31, 5); (2) Last week I had a reply; (3) On that occasion I did not find him; (4) I lost my way in the maze.

The IMPARFAIT is used to describe actions usually or repeatedly done, or *actions which have already been going on at the time spoken of* (*Ex.* 5):—

J'étais très malade quand il arriva.
I was (already) very ill when he arrived.

Les Romains brûlaient leurs morts.
The Romans used to burn their dead.

Quand j'étais à Brighton, je **visitais** l'Aquarium tous les soirs.

Nous attaquâmes les ennemis qui **se retiraient.**
We attacked the enemy whilst they were retreating.

The PRÉTÉRIT is used to relate single historical events, without any reference to their duration, or to their relation with other actions:—

A mon retour, je **fus** très malade.
On my return I was taken very ill (just then, but not before).

Les Romains **brûlèrent** Carthage.
The Romans burnt Carthage.

Hier je **fus** à Brighton, et je **visitai** l'Aquarium.

Nous attaquâmes les ennemis, qui **se retirèrent.**
We attacked the enemy, who thereupon retreated.

B. 1. I lost my way in this great forest, but at last I found a footpath. 2. (The) Queen Dido founded Carthage. 3. Columbus discovered America. 4. Yesterday I found a beautiful necklace. 5. The lion being ill, invited his friends to enter his cavern. 6. The gladiators used to fight in the arena. 7. I came down stairs at half-past six. 8. When I was at the seaside, I used to come down stairs at seven, and I was wont to breakfast at a quarter to eight. 9. *Having* (= *when I had*) replied to his letters, I dined. 10. They were playing, whilst we were working. 11. God created the world.

La peau de l'ours.

A. Un chasseur d'Amérique *raconta* un jour l'anecdote suivante :—L'hiver passé j'*entendis* dire que, dans une des grandes forêts à l'ouest, il y *avait* des ours d'une grandeur extraordinaire. Je *partis* aussitôt pour cette forêt, accompagné d'un de mes amis. Nous ne *rencontrâmes* aucun des ours, et nous *dûmes* le soir rentrer à l'auberge les mains vides. Plusieurs jours après, l'aubergiste *rappela* à mon ami que notre dépense *était* déjà bien grande ; nous *répondîmes :* "Nous vous payerons avec la peau d'un de ces ours."

Enfin, un jour, nous *aperçûmes* deux ours dans la forêt. Ils *marchaient* dans notre direction. Nous *perdîmes* courage ; moi, je *jetai* mon fusil et je *grimpai* sur un arbre ; mais mon ami se *jeta* par terre, retenant l'haleine. Il *avait* entendu dire que les ours ne touchent pas aux cadavres.

Les deux bêtes *approchèrent*, *flairèrent* la bouche, le nez et les oreilles de mon ami, *grommelèrent* comme si elles se *parlaient*, et *s'en allèrent*. Quand elles *furent* bien loin, je *descendis* de l'arbre, et je *dis* à mon ami : Quel secret les ours t'ont-ils confié ?—"Il ne faut pas vendre la peau de l'ours avant d'avoir tué la bête."

In the above story, account for the use of the *Tenses* (in *Italics*)—either *Imperfect* or *Preterite*.

B. 1. Last winter my friends related to-me a pretty story. 2. They were hunting bears in-order-to sell their skins (sing.) 3. For a long time, however, they met no bears (§ 12, 2). 4. At last, one morning, they perceived two bears that were walking in their direction. 5. They lost courage, and threw [away] their guns. 6. One of them climbed a tree, and the other threw *himself* (**se**, *before the Verb* *) on the ground. 7. When the two beasts approached, they grumbled as if they were speaking *to one another* (**se**, *before the Verb* †). 8. When they had gone, *the one* (**celui**) who had climbed the tree, came down. 9. And asked *the* (say—*to-the*) other what secret the bears had confided to him. 10. "First kill the bear, and then sell his skin."

* See p. 20. † See Ex. 28.

18. Dix-huitième Leçon : Pronoms et Adjectifs possessifs.—Syntaxe, §§ 37, 38.

THÈME.

1. The rose has its beauty, its freshness, and its fragrance; but it has also its thorns. 2. A general must always be cool-headed and warm-hearted. 3. Have you heard from him?—Yes; but his letters to me are not edifying in the least. 4. Why have you changed your mind about that project of yours?—Because its success is very doubtful. 5. Our feet are cold; let us draw near the fire. 6. Why fear death if one has lived so as not to dread its consequences? 7. "What is the strength of the army of your king?" a general asked a captured soldier.—"That of steel and iron." 8. Henry the Fourth said one day to his soldiers: "I am your king; you are Frenchmen; there is our enemy." 9. Cheerfulness is the health of the soul; sadness is its poison. 10. Tired of awaiting our enemy behind our retrenchments, we went to meet him. 11. An acquaintance of ours is just now in Switzerland; if you see him, remember us to him, and remind him that he has promised to let us hear from him. 12. Everything in the situation that we covet seems beautiful to us; we see its flowers, but we do not feel its thorns.

GALLICISMES DIALOGUÉS

1. Pourquoi n'êtes-vous pas allé à leur rencontre?—Parce que j'ai mal à la tête.

2. Est-ce votre migraine qui vous reprend?—Oui, et pour comble de malheur, les yeux me cuisent.

3. Je vous plains; mais je vous conseille de ne pas trop vous écouter.—Grand merci; je vous suis on ne saurait plus reconnaissant de vos touchantes consolations.

4. Ainsi vous ne serez pas des nôtres ce soir?—Mais si, votre excellent conseil m'a fait changer d'avis; comptez sur moi.—A la bonne heure!

COMPOSITION.

1. *The Wolf and the Crane.*—A wolf swallowed a bone, which stuck fast in his throat. Suffering great pain, he begged a crane to extract this bone from his throat, and promised him a reward. The latter, thanks to his long neck, successfully performed the operation. But when he asked him for the promised reward: "Thou art an ungrateful [one], my dear gossip," he said to him; "what! thou hast withdrawn thy neck safe and sound from my jaws, and thou darest to claim a reward!"

A Specimen Copy of First and Second Course will be presented on application.

Crown 8vo. First Course, 2s. 6d. Second Course, 5s.

MACMILLAN'S COURSE

OF

FRENCH COMPOSITION

BY

G. E. FASNACHT

FORMERLY ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL

First Course. Parallel French-English Extracts and Parallel English-French Syntax. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Second Course. For Advanced Students. Parallel French-English Passages and Classified French Model Extracts. 5*s.*

Parts I. and II. Containing Parallel French-English Passages. *Separately*, 3*s.* 6*d.*

Teacher's Companion to First Course, 4*s.* 6*d.* net; Second Course, 5*s.* net.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

demandèrent seulement d'être les ministres de ce temple et de ne pas mourir l'un sans l'autre. Leurs souhaits furent accomplis: la garde du temple leur fut confiée, et parvenus à une extrême vieillesse, ils furent métamorphosés dans le même instant, Baucis en tilleul, et Philémon en chêne.

17. Mercure et le Bûcheron.

Un pauvre bûcheron coupait un arbre au bord d'une rivière. Par malheur, sa cognée tomba dans l'eau ; il la chercha longtemps, mais il ne put la retrouver.

Mercure lui apparut. 'Est-ce là ta cognée, brave homme ?' dit-il, en lui en montrant une d'or. 'Non, cette cognée n'est pas la mienne.'—'C'est peut-être celle-ci ?' dit Mercure, en lui en présentant une d'argent. 'Non, ce n'est point encore celle qui m'appartient.'—'C'est donc celle-ci ?' dit le dieu, en lui en montrant une de fer qui était réellement celle qu'il avait perdue. 'Voici vraiment la cognée dont la perte m'afflige.'—'Prends celle-ci, et encore les deux premières que je t'ai montrées: reçois-les pour prix de ta bonne foi.'

18. Phaéton.

Phaéton ne cessait de se vanter de ses grands aïeux, de son père le Soleil, de son aïeul Jupiter; mais ses camarades se moquaient de sa prétention. Voyant que personne ne voulait croire à son illustre origine, il alla se plaindre à son père ; il lui demanda pour preuve de sa naissance la grâce de conduire un jour son char. Le dieu du jour la lui refusa longtemps, mais enfin il se laissa fléchir. Les chevaux sentirent bientôt que c'était une main novice qui les conduisait : ils s'écartèrent de leur route, et embrasèrent le ciel et la terre. Cybèle, la déesse protectrice de la terre, voyant ses fontaines taries, ses moissons brûlées, ses arbres desséchés avec leurs fruits, et la mer elle-même retirée loin de ses rivages, fit monter ses plaintes vers Jupiter. Le maître des dieux, indigné qu'un orgueilleux jeune homme bouleversât ainsi l'univers, le frappa d'un coup de foudre, qui le précipita dans l'Eridan, fleuve d'Italie que l'on nomme aujourd'hui le Pô.

the measure of their years was full (*quand ils eurent fourni leur carrière*) transformed Philemon into an oak, and, at the same instant, Baucis into a lime-tree.

17. Mercury and the Woodcutter.

There was once upon a time a poor peasant who was crying and lamenting in the thick of a forest. Mercury appeared before him and asked him (§ 36) what (§ 113) *was the matter* (= *he had*). 'I was cutting (§ 10) wood on the bank of a river, and accidentally *dropped* (= *let fall*) my good axe into the water.'—'Is this the axe that thou hast lost?' said the god, showing him (§ 39, *a*) a gold axe. 'Oh dear, no! (Oh, que non!) mine was not so fine as this!'—'Well, here is another (§ 7), perhaps (that) it is thine.'—'That is not mine either; the one (§ 111) that I have lost, is an iron axe (§ 83), and not a silver axe like this.'—'Oh!' exclaimed Mercury, 'no doubt (that) this is yours,' showing him one (§ 7) of iron. 'It is (§ 3) indeed!'—'Then take it, and in reward for (§ 89) thy honesty, I give thee (§ 42) also the other two.'

18. Phaeton.

Phaeton, the son (§ 84) of Apollo, and the grandson of Jupiter, was very proud of his ancestors. As he continually boasted (§ 17) of his high descent, people (§ 108) made fun of his pretensions. Enraged at (§ 49) the jeers of his playmates, he went to (*alla trouver*) his father and asked him (§ 36) to give them a proof of his high parentage. The sun-god would not at first allow himself to be moved (§ 18). At last, however, he gave him permission to drive his chariot. But the horses, feeling that they were driven by an inexperienced hand, rushed out of their usual track, and well-nigh (§ 76) set heaven and earth on fire; the wells were dried up, the crops were burned, the fruits on the trees were parched, and the flowers were withered. When the king of the gods *heard* (= *learnt*) that his presumptuous grandson was upsetting the world, he was so indignant that he struck him with (§ 58) a flash of lightning, and hurled him into the Eridanus, which is supposed to be (§ 62) the same river as the Po.

28. Le Vent de Minuit.

Le vent du nord s'était levé dans la soirée, et vers onze heures il était devenu furieux; il remplissait les airs d'aboiements funèbres; c'était une rage qui ne se peut dire. Les girouettes grinçaient, les tuiles frottaient les unes contre les autres, les poutres des toitures tremblaient dans leurs mortaises, les murailles trésaillaient sur leurs fondements. D'instant en instant, une rafale se précipitait sur ma fenêtre avec des hurlements sauvages, et de mon lit je croyais apercevoir à travers la vitre les yeux sanglants d'une bande de loups affamés. Dans les courts intervalles où ce grand vacarme du dehors s'apaisait, des murmures étranges partaient de l'intérieur du château; les boiseries faisaient entendre de lugubres craquements; il n'était ni fente dans les cloisons, ni fissures aux plafonds d'où ne sortît un soupir ou de rauques gémissements. Et parfois tout cela se taisait, et j'entendais seulement à l'extrémité des corridors comme un léger chuchotement de fantômes qui babillaient dans l'ombre en frôlant les murailles; puis tout à coup, ils prenaient leur élan, les planchers tremblaient sous leur piétinement saccadé; ils gravissaient en tumulte l'escalier qui conduit à ma chambre, et venaient s'abattre sur le seuil de ma porte en poussant des lamentations indicibles.

V. CHERBULIEZ, *Comte Kostia.*

28 (a). En ce moment, un coup de vent furieux, un de ces souffles puissants qui poussent la moitié des mers sur l'autre, et qui rasent les montagnes, pareil au premier cri de la tempête qui s'avançait, emplit le château de tumulte, d'angoisses et de craquements intenses.

Les feuilles arrachées aux branches, les branches arrachées aux arbres, les statues arrachées à leurs bases, une longue et immense clameur, un mugissement lugubre et infini courant dans les galeries et dans les corridors du château, composèrent en ce moment la plus sauvage et la plus lugubre harmonie qui ait jamais vibrée aux oreilles humaines.

A. DUMAS, *Balsamo.*

28. The Night-Wind.

The night-wind has a dismal *trick* of wandering round and round churches, and moaning *as it goes*; and of *trying*, with its unseen hand, the windows and the doors, and seeking out some crevices by which to enter. And *when it has got in, as one not finding* what it seeks, whatever that may be, it wails and howls to issue forth again: and not content with stalking through the aisles, and gliding round and round the pillars, and *tempting* the deep organ, soars up to the roof, and strives to rend the rafters; then flings itself despairingly upon the *stones below*, and *passes*, muttering, *into* the vaults. *Anon* it comes up stealthily, and creeps along the walls, *seeming to* read, in whispers, the inscriptions sacred to the dead. *At* some *of these*, it breaks out shrilly, as *with laughter*; and at others, moans and cries as if it were lamenting. It has a ghostly sound too, lingering within the altar, where it seems *to chaunt*, in its wild way, of wrong and murder *done*, and false gods worshipped, in defiance of the tables of the law, which look so fair and smooth, but are so flawed and broken. Ugh! It has an awful voice, that wind at midnight, singing in a church!

But high up in the steeple! *There* the foul blast roars and whistles! High up in the steeple! There *it is free to come and go* through many an airy arch and loophole, and to twist and twine itself about the giddy stairs, and twirl the groaning weathercock, and make the very tower shake and shiver!

CHARLES DICKENS.

1. *trick*, here = *habit* or *manner*.
2. *as it goes*, say *on the* (**en**) *way*, or turn by *whilst* (**tout en**) *moaning*.
—. *to try*, here **tâter**.
4. say *once entered* . . .
5. say *as if it had not found* . . .
8. *tempting* . . . *organ*, say *to awake the deep sounds of the organ*.
10. **les dalles**, or **le parvis**.
—. *to pass into*, here **s'engouffrer sous** . . .
11. **d'autres fois**.
12. **comme pour**.
13. *at some of these*, here *before some* . . .
14. **par dérision**.
16. *to chaunt* . . . *of* (lit. **psalmodier**), **chanter le récit de** . . .
17. say *committed*.
21. say *it is there that* . . .
22. *to be free*, **se donner carrière**, or **avoir ses entrées**.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Crown 8vo. First Year, 2s. 6d. Second Year, 2s. 6d.

MACMILLAN'S
PROGRESSIVE FRENCH READER

BY

G. E. FASNACHT

FORMERLY ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL.

I. **First Year.**—Containing Tales, Historical Extracts, Letters, Dialogues, Fables, Ballads, Nursery Songs, etc. With two Vocabularies: I. In the order of Subjects; II. In Alphabetical order. 2s. 6d.

II. **Second Year.**—Containing Fiction in Prose and Verse, Historical and Descriptive Extracts, Essays, Letters, Dialogues, etc. 2s. 6d.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK; THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

bien surpris de voir que les deux tas étaient toujours pareils; ni l'un ni l'autre ne pouvait intérieurement se rendre compte de ce prodige. Ils firent de même pendant plusieurs nuits de suite; mais comme chacun d'eux portait au tas de son frère le même nombre de gerbes, les tas demeuraient toujours égaux, jusqu'à ce qu'une nuit, ils se rencontrèrent portant chacun les gerbes qu'ils se destinaient mutuellement.

Or, le lieu où une si bonne pensée était venue à la fois si persévéramment à deux hommes, devait être une place agréable à Dieu, et les hommes la bénirent et la choisirent pour y bâtir une maison de Dieu. A. DE LAMARTINE.

2.—Le Fleuve tari.

Il y avait un berger qui gardait les chameaux d'un village au bord d'un lac. Un jour, en abreuvant son troupeau, il s'aperçut que l'eau du lac fuyait par une issue souterraine et il la ferma avec une grosse pierre, mais il y laissa tomber son bâton de berger. Quelque temps après, un fleuve tarit dans une des provinces de la Perse. Le sultan, voyant son pays menacé de la famine par le manque d'eau pour les irrigations, consulta les sages de son empire; et sur leur avis, il envoya des émissaires dans tous les royaumes environnants pour découvrir comment la source de son fleuve avait été détournée ou tarie. Ces ambassadeurs portaient le bâton du berger que le fleuve avait apporté. Le berger se trouvait à Damas, quand ces envoyés y parurent; il se souvint de son bâton tombé dans le lac; il s'approcha et le reconnut entre leurs mains; il comprit que son lac était la source du fleuve, et que la richesse et la vie d'un peuple étaient entre ses mains. — "Que fera le sultan pour celui qui lui rendra son fleuve?" demanda-t-il aux envoyés. — "Il lui donnera," répondirent-ils, "sa fille et la moitié de son royaume." — "Allez donc," répliqua-t-il, "et avant que vous soyez de retour, le fleuve perdu arrosera la Perse et réjouira le cœur du sultan."

Le berger ôta la grosse pierre, et les eaux, reprenant leur cours par ce canal souterrain, allèrent remplir de nouveau le lit du fleuve. Le sultan envoya de nouveaux ambassadeurs avec sa fille à l'heureux berger, et lui donna la moitié de ses provinces. A. DE LAMARTINE.

5.—Une Aventure en Calabre.

Un jour je voyageais en Calabre. C'est un pays de méchantes gens, qui, je crois, n'aiment personne, et en veulent surtout aux Français. De vous dire pourquoi, cela serait long; suffit qu'ils nous haïssent à mort, et qu'on passe fort mal son temps lorsqu'on tombe entre leurs mains. J'avais pour compagnon un jeune homme. Dans ces montagnes, les chemins sont des précipices, nos chevaux marchaient avec beaucoup de peine; mon camarade allant devant, un sentier qui lui parut plus praticable et plus court nous égara. Ce fut ma faute; devais-je me fier à une tête de vingt ans? Nous cherchâmes, tant qu'il fit jour, notre chemin à travers ces bois, mais plus nous cherchions, plus nous nous perdions, et il était nuit noire quand nous arrivâmes près d'une maison fort noire. Nous y entrâmes, non sans soupçon, mais comment faire? Là nous trouvons toute une famille de charbonniers à table, où du premier mot on nous invita. Mon jeune homme ne se fit pas prier: nous voilà mangeant et buvant, lui du moins; car pour moi, j'examinais le lieu et la mine de nos hôtes. Nos hôtes avaient bien mine de charbonniers, mais la maison, vous l'eussiez prise pour un arsenal. Ce n'étaient que fusils, pistolets, sabres, couteaux, coutelas. Tout me déplut, et je vis bien que je déplaisais aussi. Mon camarade, au contraire, il était de la famille, il riait, il causait avec eux: et, par une imprudence que j'aurais dû prévoir, il dit d'abord d'où nous venions, où nous allions, qui nous étions: Français, imaginez un peu! chez nos plus mortels ennemis, seuls, égarés, si loin de tout secours humain! et puis, pour ne rien omettre de ce qui pouvait nous perdre, il fit le riche, promit à ces gens, pour la dépense et pour nos guides le lendemain, ce qu'ils voulurent. Enfin il parla de sa valise, priant fort qu'on en eût grand soin, qu'on la mît au chevet de son lit; il ne voulait point, disait-il, d'autre traversin. Ah! jeunesse, jeunesse! que votre âge est à plaindre! Cousine, on crut que nous portions les diamants de la couronne .... c'étaient les lettres de sa fiancée!

Le souper fini, on nous laisse; nos hôtes couchaient en bas; nous, dans la chambre haute où nous avions mangé; une soupente élevée de sept à huit pieds, où l'on montait

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 1s. 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY
FRENCH GRAMMAR

BY

G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT

FORMERLY ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

144

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

(3) Verbs marked † are *anomalous*; *i.e.* the derived Tenses are not formed regularly according to § 88.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.	IMPERATIVE.
je **vais**, *I go, etc.* tu **vas**, il **va**, n. all-ons, v. all-ez, ils **vont**.	j' **aill-e**, *I go, etc.* tu **aill-es**, il **aill-e**, n. all-ions, v. all-iez, ils **aill-ent**.	1. —, **allons**, *let us go.* 2. **va**,* *go.* **allez**, *go* (*ye*). * **vas-**, before **en** or **y**:— **vas-en** chercher, *go and fetch some.* **vas-y**, *go there* (*thither*).
I am going away. je **m' en vais**, tu **t' en vas**, il **s' en va**, n. **nous en allons**, v. **vous en allez**, ils **s' en vont**.	je **m' en aille**, tu **t' en ailles**, il **s' en aille**, n. **nous en allions**, v. **vous en alliez**, ils **s' en aillent**.	**va-t' en**, *go* (*thou*) *away.* **allons-nous-en**, *let us go away.* **allez-vous-en**, *go* (*ye*) *away.*
FORM. *I am not going away, etc.* je **ne m' en vais pas**, tu **ne t' en vas pas**, il **ne s' en va pas**, n. **ne nous en allons pas**, v. **ne vous en allez pas**, ils **ne s' en vont pas**.	je **ne m' en aille pas**, etc.	*Do not go away*:— **ne t' en va pas.** *Let us not go away*:— **ne nous en allons pas.** *Do not* (*ye*) *go away*:— **ne vous en allez pas.**

FORM. INDICATIVE PRESENT.

m' en vais-je ? *Am I going away?*
t' en vas-tu ?
s' en va-t-il ?
nous en allons-nous ?
vous en allez-vous ?
s' en vont-ils ?

FORMS COMBINED.

ne m' en vais-je pas ? *Am I not going away?*
ne t' en vas-tu pas ?
ne s' en va-t-il pas ?
ne nous en allons-nous pas ?
ne vous en allez-vous pas ?
ne s' en vont-ils pas ?

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

ABRIDGED
FRENCH GRAMMAR

BY

G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT

FORMERLY ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL

AN ABRIDGED AND REVISED EDITION
OF THE AUTHOR'S SYNTHETIC FRENCH GRAMMAR

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved
146

Use of Moods in Dependent Clauses.

§ 149. Introductory.—Either the *Indicative*, the *Conditional*, or the *Subjunctive* may be used in Dependent Clauses :—

Indic.	Il est certain qu'il le **sait.**	Je **sais** qu'il **viendra.**
Condit.	Quand même il le **saurait**, il ne le dirait pas.	Je savais qu'il **viendrait.**
Subj.	Il importe qu'il le **sache.**	Je désire qu'il **vienne.**

The use of one or the other depends entirely on the *meaning either expressed or implied in the Chief Clause:* thus the verb of the Dependent Clause is put—

(*a*) in the *Indicative*, if the Chief Clause implies (*indicates*) that the statement expressed in the Dependent Clause is considered as a *matter of fact*. The fact itself may be true or not, but anyhow it is stated as true.

(*b*) in the *Subjunctive*, if the Chief Clause implies that what is expressed in the Dependent Clause is *contemplated*, *expected*, or *conceived in the mind* of the speaker.

As the term *Subjunctive* implies, the action is represented as being *subjoined to* (under the yoke of) *some leading thought* contained in the Chief Clause—be it a *wish*, an *emotion*, a *doubt*, or any *notion* as distinguished from *fact*.

This mental attitude which a speaker or writer in French assumes towards the action or event spoken of, and subject to which he uses the Verb denoting that action in the *Subjunctive*, may manifest itself either as—

(*a*) a *Wish*, *Command*, *Consent*, *Concession*, or their opposites—a Wish or Command that something may *not* occur, *i.e. Fear* or *Prohibition*;

(*b*) an *Emotion*, as—*Joy*, *Sorrow*, *Shame*, *Indignation*, *Surprise*, etc., or

(*c*) *a Doubt*, *Uncertainty*, *Denial*; under this head must be classed *Result* expected, *Purpose* intended, *i.e. Contingency* or *Anticipation*, in contradistinction to *Accomplished Fact.*

To sum up :—When the Principal Clause of a Complex Sentence contains any idea of *Wish*, *Emotion*, or *Doubt* (either expressed by a Verb, an adverbial Adjunct, or simply understood) in respect of the action described in the Dependent Clause, the Verb expressing that action is put in the *Subjunctive* :—

	Chief Clause :—	*Dependent Substantive Clause*, introduced by **que** :—
(1) (*a*) *Wish* :—	Nous **désirons**	qu'ils **viennent** demain.
(*b*) *Emotion* :—	Je **suis bien aise**	qu'ils **viennent** déjà.
(*c*) *Doubt* :—	Nous **doutons**	qu'ils **viennent** ici.
	Nous **ne croyons pas**	qu'ils **viennent** si tard.

	Chief Clause :—	*Adjective Clause*, introduced by a Relat. Pron. :—
(2) (*a*) *Purpose* :—	Je **cherche** un domestique	qui me **convienne.**
(*b*) *Denial* :—	Il **n'y a personne**	qui en **convienne.**
(*c*) *Assertion* :—	C'est **le seul** tort	dont il **convienne.**

	Chief Clause :—	*Adverbial* Clause, *introduced* by a Conj. :—
(3) (*a*) *Concession* :—	Il est malheureux,	**quoiqu'il soit** riche.
(*b*) *Apprehension*:—	Tenez-vous tranquille,	**de crainte qu'il ne revienne.**
(*c*) *Anticipation* :—	Je me reposerai,	**en attendant qu'il revienne.**

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

A FRENCH GRAMMAR

FOR SCHOOLS.

BY

G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT

FORMERLY ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

148

123 **II.—Place of Adjectives.**

Introductory, and General Rule.—It is a characteristic feature of the French language to place the qualifying (limiting) term *after* the term qualified, as—

la plume **d'acier**, the *steel* pen ; la salle **à manger**, the *dining* room, etc.

Thus also French Adjectives are generally placed *after* the Noun they qualify ; only a few are invariably placed *before ;* nearly all, however, admit of being placed either *before or after*, according as *meaning, emphasis, diction*, or *euphony* may direct ; in other words— the very same Adjective which in the language of *reason, judgment*, or *experience*, is regularly placed *after* the Noun, will, in the diction of *poetry, imagination*, or *emotion*, take its place *before* the Noun.

Accordingly an Adjective is put—

(*a*) *after the Noun*, if used as an *Attribute necessary* for limiting the meaning of a Noun in the particular instance in question, and denoting an *accidental* or *accessory* quality which does not pertain to the whole class of beings expressed by the Noun ;

(*b*) *before the Noun*, if used as an *ornamental Epithet*, intended for picturesque effect, and denoting a quality naturally associated or cognate with the whole class of persons or things spoken of. Compare :—

La couleur **verte.**	Sous la **verte** feuillée.
Un chemin **étroit.**	Une **étroite** liaison (*alliance*).
Un homme **cruel.**	Le **cruel** tyran.
Une couleur **sombre.**	Le **sombre** désespoir.
Une action **criminelle.**	Ce **criminel** attentat.

Thus again, when we say— the *virtuous* man, the *retired* captain, the Adjectives *virtuous, retired*, limit the Nouns *man, captain*, to *distinguish* them from those to which that attribute does not belong, hence— l'homme **vertueux** ; le capitaine **réformé.** But in— *Virtuous* Aristides, the *gallant* captain, the Adjectives are not used to distinguish Aristides or captain from other men of that name, but simply to *characterise* the men, hence—

le **vertueux** Aristide ; le **vaillant** capitaine.

Compare also— L'Arabie **heureuse** (as distinguished from l'Arabie **pétrée**, or **déserte**), with— **Heureuse** enfance ! (not to distinguish it from any other childhood—for childhood is *the* happy age—but expressing as it does an essential quality originating in the very nature of that age). On that principle we may correctly render—

Un ami **fidèle**, by— *a friend that is faithful.*
Un **fidèle** ami, by— *a trusty friend, indeed !*

The Adjective in the latter case denoting a quality ascribed from a *subjective* point of view, *i.e.* as the expression of our *personal emotion, love, admiration.*

Observation.—Compare also—J'ai reçu une nouvelle **affligeante**, with—La ville de Carracas a été détruite par un tremblement de terre ; l'**affligeante** nouvelle se répar[illegible] bientôt dans tout le pays ; in the latter case the Adjective, on account of the al[illegible] well-known intelligence, becomes a mere ornamental epithet.

Crown 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

FRENCH LESSONS

FOR

MIDDLE FORMS

CONTAINING AN ELEMENTARY ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX, WITH COPIOUS EXERCISES, CONVERSATIONS & READINGS

BY

G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT

FORMERLY ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

150

124 SPECIAL RULES.—Subject to the general laws laid down above, an Adjective in French is placed—

(*a*) as a Rule, *after* the Noun :—

(1) if derived from a *Proper Noun :* as,

La langue **grecque.**
Le monde **parisien.**
Le parti **bonapartiste.**
L'église **anglicane,** etc.

(2) if *Participial :* as,

Une nouvelle **alarmante.**
Une raison **concluante.**
L'ordre **accoutumé.**
Le pont **suspendu.**
Un refuge **assuré.**

(3) if originally a *Substantive :* as,

Un poète **philosophe.**
Les hirondelles sont des oiseaux **voyageurs.**

(4) if denoting *Physical* or *Accidental* qualities, *i.e. Colour, Shape, Taste,* etc. : as,

Des cheveux **blonds.**
Une boîte **carrée.**
Une table **ronde.**
De l'encre **noire.**
Des amandes **amères.**
Un fruit **mûr.**
Une poire **molle.**

(5) if *followed by a Complement :* as,

Une proposition **digne de considération.**
De l'eau **bonne à boire.**

(*b*) exceptionally, *before* the Noun :—

(1) in *poetic diction :*—

Témoin nous que punit la **romaine** avarice.
La **grecque** beauté (Lafontaine).

Here notice the use of a Noun used adjectively with a Genit. in apposition :—

Quel **chien de** commerce !
Notre grand **flandrin de** vicomte.

(4) if used *figuratively,* or for picturesque effect :—

Et nous baisions ses **blonds** cheveux . . . (Chateaubriand).
Une **verte** réprimande.
De **noirs** pressentiments.
D'**amères** regrets.
De **mûres** réflexions.
Une **molle** indulgence.

(5) if qualified by a *short Adverb :* as,

Un **si beau** spectacle.
(or—un spectacle **si beau**).
Cette viande a un **très bon** c

Simple Tenses: **Se défendre,** *to defend one's self.*

Je	**me défends**	*I defend myself*
tu	**te défends**	*thou defendest thyself*
il	**se défend**	*he (it) defends himself (itself)*
on	**se défend**	*one defends one's self*
elle	**se défend**	*she defends herself*
nous	**nous défendons**	*we defend ourselves*
vous	**vous défendez**	*you defend yourselves (yourself)*
ils (elles)	**se défendent**	*they defend themselves*

And thus in all *Simple Tenses:*—**Je me défendais (défendis, défendrai).**

Interrogative: **Se défend-il?** *or* **Est-ce qu'il se défend?** *Does he defend himself? Is he defending himself?*

Negative: **Je ne me défends pas,** *I do not defend myself.*

Interrog. and Neg.: **Ne se défend-il pas?** *Does he not defend himself?*

Imperative: **Défends-toi! Défendez-vous!** *Defend yourself.*
Ne te défends pas! *Do not defend yourself.*

Caution.—Numerous Verbs, Reflexive in French, are not at all, or only seldom, used reflexively in English; most of these are best rendered by the *Passive Voice* (cf. Ex. 23), or by an Active Verb used intransitively:—

Je m'appelle,	*I am called.*	**Je me chausse,**	*I put on my boots.*
Je me trompe,	*I am mistaken.*	**Je me gante,**	*I put on my gloves.*
Je m'étonne,	*I am surprised.*	**Je m'habille,**	*I dress.*
Je me réveille, / **Je m'éveille,**	*I am awaking.*	**Je me lève,**	*I get up, rise.*
		Je me couche,	*I lie down, go to bed.*
Je me porte,	*I am (feel); I do.*	**Je me moque de,**	*I laugh at, make fun of.*

se vendre,	*to be sold, to sell.*	**s'éclaircir,**	*to clear up.*
se comprendre, / **s'entendre,**	*to be understood.*	**s'élever,**	*to rise, arise.*
		s'employer,	*to be used, etc.*
s'enrhumer,	*to catch a cold.*	**se composer de,**	*to be composed of.*
se promener,	*to go for a walk.*	**se reposer,**	*to take rest.*
se parler,	*to be spoken.*	**se repentir (de),**	*to repent, to rue.*

A. 1. Comment *vous portez*-vous?—Je *me porte* très bien, je vous remercie; et vous?

2. Moi, je *me porte* sur mes deux jambes!—Je *me réjouis* de vous voir en si bonne santé.

3. Quand *vous lèverez*-vous enfin, fainéant que vous êtes?—Je *me lèverai* dès que je *me serai* assez *reposé.*

4. *Dépêchez-vous* donc de *vous débarbouiller* et de *vous habiller*, paresseux!—Ne *vous fâchez* pas, je vais *me lever* dans un quart d'heure.

5. Comment *vous appelez*-vous?—Nous *nous appelons* comme nos parents. [comme nous.

6. Et comment donc *s'appelaient* vos parents?—Nos parents *s'appelaient*

7. N'allez pas *vous égarer* dans cette sombre forêt, mes gentils enfants!—Pourquoi pas?—Parce qu'elle est infestée par des ogres, qui vous croqueraient à belles dents. [des choux.

8. Comment *vous occupez*-vous à la campagne?—Je *m'amuse* à planter

B. 1. Les heures *s'envolent* sur l'aile du temps.
2. Les médecins *se porteraient* mal, si tout le monde *se portait* bien.
3. La pelle *se moque* du fourgon (Proverbe).
4. La lumière *se répand* beaucoup plus vite que le son.
5. Qui s'acquitte *s'enrichit.* 6. Qui *s'excuse s'accuse* (Proverbe).
7. La vertu *s'éprouve* et se perfectionne dans l'adversité comme l'or dans le creuset.
8. Le mal arrive avec des ailes et *s'en retourne* en boitant.
9. Ces gens *s'accordaient* comme chiens et chats.
10. L'horizon des connaissances humaines *s'agrandira* de jour en jour.
11. L'origine de cet usage *se perd* dans la nuit des temps.
12. *Aide-toi*, et le ciel t'aidera (Proverbe). 13. *Connais-toi* toi-même.
14. Qui *s'attend* à l'écuelle d'autrui a souvent mal dîné (Proverbe).

C. 1. When shall you go to bed?—We shall go to bed at ten o'clock. 2. They are mistaken. 3. The besieged troops defended themselves like lions. 4. You will catch a cold, if you expose yourself to the draught. 5. How is he?—He is not very well. 6. We don't agree. 7. Butter sells [at] two francs a (*say*, the) pound. 8. The little boy would wash himself, if the water were not so cold. 9. Several verbs are used with a reflexive pronoun (*pronom réfléchi*) for [their] object. 10. The weather was clearing up when we awoke. 11. Yesterday the sun rose at five o'clock, and set at seven. 12. Get up and dress yourselves. 13. The pots called the kettles grimy.

D. *La fourmi et la colombe.*—Une fourmi, étant allée *se désaltérer* au bord d'une fontaine, fut entraînée par le courant et allait *se noyer*, quand une colombe, qui *s'en aperçut*, lui jeta dans l'eau une petite branche d'arbre. La fourmi *s'y posa* et parvint à *se sauver*. Bientôt après arriva un oiseleur qui marchait pieds-nus. Voyant la colombe, il *se préparait* à la tuer; mais soudain la fourmi le piqua au talon. La douleur qu'il ressentit fut si vive qu'il tourna la tête et donna ainsi à la colombe le temps de *se sauver* à tire d'aile.

Imitez la fourmi et soyez reconnaissants envers vos bienfaiteurs.

L'aigle, la corneille et le berger.—Un aigle planait dans l'air; il vit un agneau, fondit sur lui et l'enleva dans ses serres. Une corneille, plus faible, mais non moins gloutonne, vit cet exploit et entreprit de l'imiter; elle fondit donc sur un bélier couvert de laine et voulut *s'en saisir;* mais ses griffes *s'embarrassèrent* tellement dans la toison qu'elle ne put *s'échapper*. "Ah! ah!" dit le berger, "je vous tiens: vous avez beau tâcher de *vous débarrasser:* vos efforts sont inutiles; vous servirez de jouet à mes enfants. Cela apprendra à toute votre race à ne pas imiter l'aigle et à ne rien entreprendre au-dessus de vos forces."

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book
from their Lending Library for Teachers

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. pp. xlviii., 936. Price 12s. 6d.

AN HISTORICAL
FRENCH GRAMMAR

BY

ARSÈNE DARMESTETER

LATE PROFESSOR OF THE HISTORY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE
AND OF MEDIAEVAL FRENCH LITERATURE AT THE SORBONNE

*TO WHICH WAS AWARDED THE PRIX SAINTOUR
BY THE FRENCH ACADEMY, 1897*

EDITED BY

ERNEST MURET
PROFESSOR AT THE
UNIVERSITY OF GENEVA

AND

LÉOPOLD SUDRE
PROFESSOR AT THE
COLLEGE STANISLAS, PARIS

AUTHORIZED ENGLISH EDITION

BY

ALPHONSE HARTOG
PROFESSOR OF FRENCH AT THE ROYAL ACADEMY OF MUSIC

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

154

NOTICE TO ENGLISH EDITION

THIS book, originally intended for schools, and enlarged so as to be used also in colleges, presents for the first time a complete picture of the French language on a relatively small scale. While designed primarily for students, by its broad treatment of the general problems of language, it offers much of interest to a wider public. In the General Introduction the author explains and justifies the scheme which he has adopted. The first sixty pages of the work itself are devoted to a brief survey of the history of the French language as a whole; and the remainder is divided into four books:

Book I., on the Study of the Sounds (or Phonetics); Book II., on Morphology (or Accidence); Book III., on (1) Word-Formation and (2) the Life of Words (or Semantics); Book IV., on Syntax. The object of the author is to explain the forms and usages of Modern French by means of their history. While an elementary knowledge of French is assumed, it is hoped that the translation removes the very real (and often unsuspected) difficulties that the original presents, especially in the Syntax, to the average English student. The text has been carefully revised under the supervision of the French editors, so that this is not only a translation but also a new edition of the book, already a classic in France. Indexes containing references to some 6500 words and phrases, and to 600 prefixes and suffixes have been added; and dates of birth and death of authors quoted, etc., have been introduced. Finally, it should be pointed out that in accordance with the author's intention the book remains accessible to students with no previous knowledge of Latin.

In reviewing the first part of this Grammar in the *Journal des Debats*, M. GASTON PARIS, of the French Academy, wrote:

"Comme introduction générale à son œuvre, . . . Arsène Darmesteter a écrit une courte histoire de la langue française qui est un vrai petit chef d'œuvre, et qui joint au mérite d'une exécution parfaite, celui d'une complète nouveauté. . . . Le tout remplit cinquante cinq petites pages et contient plus de faits et d'idées qu'on n'en dégagerait de presque tous les livres écrits jusqu'à présent sur la langue française. . .

"L'essentiel est que le tableau général soit vrai, que les plans en soient bien disposés, que les masses en soient groupées dans leurs justes proportions et dessinées dans leurs formes réelles. . . . Or, ces exigences sont parfaitement réalisées et même dépassées dans l'œuvre vraiment magistral de Darmesteter. . . . Ce petit livre sera désormais le manuel de tous ceux qui s'occuperont de l'histoire du français."

From an article by A. R. RISOP (K. Vollmöller's *Kritisches Jahresbericht über die Fortschritte der Romanischen Philologie*, ii., 132):

"The individuality of Darmesteter's teaching lies in the happy union of rigorous scientific investigation with the art of lucid exposition. It would be vain to look for any other book in which serious problems of science have been made intelligible in so marvellous a fashion to what seems to have been but an ill-prepared audience . . . it is by its foremost representatives alone, that the attempt to popularize science can be undertaken and carried out with real and satisfactory success. And if some day a higher value comes to be placed by school authorities in Germany on a knowledge of the transformation and growth of language than has been the case hitherto, Darmesteter's method would have to be taken as a model in the new text-books that would be required."

PRESS OPINIONS.

Academy.—"The book is one of admirable lucidity and profound learning, pleasantly conveyed. The growth of the language. . . . is traced with the firm hand of real genius through every step, from the rough speech of the Roman settlers in Gaul to the polished, copious, and elegant language of modern France."

Spectator.—"We cannot pretend to give here an adequate appreciation of this admirable book. It must suffice to mention its completeness on the one hand, and the vivid interest which the author contrived to give to details which might easily have become tedious. . . . This is a book of vast learning, expressed with admirable lucidity."

Daily Chronicle.—"Darmesteter's book has been admirably translated, and we know of none better calculated to ensure a thorough and scholarly familiarity with the origin and development of French."

Public School Magazine.—"Throughout we cannot help noticing the studious simplicity of the language in which the various statements are made. It would be impossible to misunderstand a single sentence in this book. . . . We believe that an enthusiastic teacher might impart almost the whole of this book . . . to a class of say Fourth Form boys, and that without loss of time. . . . We are entirely confident that it may be made a valuable educational instrument in Public Schools. There is inspiration in every page."

Educational Times.—"The chapters on the formation of words and the life of words are exceptionally interesting, but indeed the volume in its entirety is more interesting and more significant than any recent work on French philology."

Literature.—" . . . There is little else to be said except that it is as complete and thorough as a work of the kind could be expected to be. . . . In addition to its other virtues, it is admirably indexed."

Cambridge Review.—"To this book we can only give unqualified praise. It must serve as a model for all future books of the kind. Few, if any, faults can be found in it under any of such various headings as arrangement, indexes, translation, and finally subject-matter. In other words, the contents of the book are as good as the arrangement, which is a marvel of convenience."

Oxford Magazine.—"When we pass to the work itself, we have nothing but praise for all who have shared in its production. . . . An experienced and popular lecturer, Prof. Darmesteter succeeded in making his work a model of clearness and arrangement. Pedantry is conspicuously absent. . . . Of the translation, we can only say that it is worthy of the book. We have found nothing to criticise."

Manchester Guardian.—"This book is at once the monument of a great departed scholar, and the record of a notable new step in French education. . . . Arsène Darmesteter was indeed a born teacher of language as well as a born explorer and discoverer of its hidden ways; for him, as the title of his best known book sufficiently attests, words were living things, and his rare gift of exposition made them alive for others. . . . Ninety (pages) are occupied by a series of valuable indexes. . . . The translation is throughout excellent."

Educational Review.—"The publishers are to be congratulated on the technical skill with which they have compressed more than a thousand pages of closely printed matter into a volume, that tires neither the eye nor the hand. The book . . . will also render a solid service to the mere schoolmaster, engaged year in year out in teaching French, by methods traditional or reformed, to boys who are not particularly anxious to learn."

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book from their Lending Library for Teachers.

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

MACMILLAN'S

SELECTION OF FRENCH IDIOMS

COMPILED BY

MME. PH. PLAN

WITH A PREFACE BY

F. F. ROGET

LECTURER ON THE FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE AND ON ROMANCE PHILOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF ST. ANDREWS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

158

PREFACE

THIS collection of French idioms does not require a lengthy introduction to the student of the French language.

It was prepared, at my request, for the use of candidates for the L.L.A. title of the University of St. Andrews. Its principal features are:

1. That it contains only such idioms as belong to the spoken language, and as are current in literature, to the exclusion of really obsolete phrases and of slang properly so called.

2. The corresponding idiom in English is *not* given, the meaning of the French phrase being explained, instead, by a synonymous French phrase. This is supported, as the case may be, by an apt quotation, a note on the origin of the idiom, a phrase of a less idiomatic form, or by a circumlocution.

Thus this book is not for beginners who are ignorant of the rudiments of the language, or unacquainted with its ordinary grammatical processes. In this little volume the omission of the English corresponding idiom is deliberate, the purpose being to prevent the learning of idioms by rote, to reserve some occupation for the teacher and for the mind of the learner, and to accumulate in the head of the latter a quantity of synonymous expressions mutually defining each other, and leading the student to the point of speaking, reading, and writing with greater ease.

By this method, it is expected that the student will in every way fare better than if the English idioms, as is usually done, were arranged in columns opposite the French ones. Compilers who are content to do this are like a grocer exhibiting cases of oranges and apples side by side, and who should say, of the former: "These are the apples of Sevilla," and of the latter: Those are the oranges of Normandy."

The knowledge of a French idiom, like that of any other, must be gathered from the stock whence it grew: it has to be compared with, and distinguished from, other French idioms, or synonymic terms, or ordinary non-idiomatic phrases. It has to be traced back to its French origin and shown in its French associations. What does an inexperienced student know about *Il n'y a que le premier pas qui coûte* when he reads in the opposite column: "In for a penny, in for a pound?" The mental images evoked do not correspond. The meaning of neither phrase covers the meaning of the other. Their respective applications are the outcome of different associations.

Of course, in this little volume, no attempt is made at finality and completeness. Considerations of the practical order, such as price, size, and utility forbid. But it claims to be on the right lines. It contains as much as may be needed by boys and girls preparing for examination, and by private students who are not expert French scholars.

F. F. ROGET.

Educational Times—"Mme. Plan has performed her task conscientiously and well, and has produced a work of real value."

School Guardian—"Must prove of great service to all students of French. It is practically exhaustive, and its value is increased by giving the explanations of the idioms in French."

Tête (*suite*).

En faire à sa tête. — Agir d'après sa propre volonté sans écouter les conseils.

Perdre la tête. — Voir *perdre*.

Avoir de la tête. — Etre intelligent ; avoir l'esprit d'organisation.

Avoir la tête chaude. — Se fâcher facilement.

Ex. "Ma femme bien souvent a la tête un peu chaude." (Molière, *Les Femmes savantes.*)

Avoir la tête dure. — Avoir peu d'intelligence.

Tenir la tête. — Occuper la première place.

Tenir tête. — Résister.

Ex. "Mais ce jeune homme connaissait trop le prince pour lui tenir tête en ce moment." (Bourget.)

Faire tête (*à quelqu'un*). — Lui résister ouvertement.

Etre à la tête de. — Etre celui qui dirige.

Se jeter à la tête de quelqu'un. / **Jeter à la tête.** — Voir *jeter*.

Crier à tue-tête. — Voir *tuer*.

Se faire une tête. — Se donner une expression, une apparence voulue.

Ex. "C'est le public qui fait la tête des gens plus qu'ils ne se la font eux-mêmes." (Th. Gautier.)

Faire sa tête. — Prendre de grands airs.

Faire une tête. — Avoir l'air confus ou mécontent.

Une tête de linotte. — Voir *linotte*.

Théâtre.

Coup de théâtre. — Voir *coup*.

Tiers.

Le tiers et le quart. — Les premiers venus ; les uns et les autres.

Ex. "S'il me faut essuyer les objections du tiers et du quart, il n'y a pas moyen de rien faire."

Timbre.

Avoir le timbre fêlé. / **Etre timbré.** / **Avoir le timbre brouillé.** — Avoir l'esprit dérangé.

(*Le timbre est une cloche sans battant frappée en dehors par un marteau ; quand la cloche est fêlée, le son devient faux.*)

Ex. "Et je lui crois, pour moi, le timbre un peu fêlé." (Molière, *Les Femmes savantes.*)

"Il a si bien veillé
Et si bien fait qu'on dit que son timbre est brouillé." (Racine, *Les Plaideurs.*)

"Le brave homme est un peu timbré, c'est le malheur et le chagrin." (Mérimée.)

Specimen Copies will be presented on application.

Please name the volumes required.

With Illustrations. Globe 8vo.

MACMILLAN'S PRIMARY SERIES OF

FRENCH READING BOOKS

EDITED BY

G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CORNAZ.—NOS ENFANTS ET LEURS AMIS. Edited by Edith Harvey. 1*s.* 6*d.*

D'ALISSAS.—STORIES FROM LES HISTOIRES DE TANTE. Edited by F. F. Roget. 1*s.* 6*d.*

DE MAISTRE.—LA JEUNE SIBÉRIENNE ET LE LÉPREUX DE LA CITÉ D'AOSTE. Edited by S. Barlet, B.Sc. 1*s.* 6*d.*

DE MAISTRE.—VOYAGE AUTOUR DE MA CHAMBRE. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht. 1*s.* 6*d.*

FASNACHT.—FRENCH READINGS FOR CHILDREN. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht. Illustrated. 1*s.* 6*d.*

FLORIAN.—SELECT FABLES. Edited by Charles Yeld, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

FONTAINE.—FABLES. A selection by L. M. Moriarty, M.A. With illustrations by Randolph Caldecott. 2*s.* 6*d.*

FRAZER.—SCENES FROM FAMILIAR LIFE. By Mrs. J. G. Frazer. 1*s.* 6*d.*

FRAZER.—SCENES FROM CHILD LIFE IN COLLOQUIAL FRENCH. 1*s.* 6*d.*

MOLESWORTH.—FRENCH LIFE IN LETTERS. By Mrs. Molesworth. 1*s.* 6*d.*

OGER.—FRENCH POETRY FOR THE YOUNG. Edited by V. Oger. 1*s.* 6*d.*

PERRAULT.—CONTES DE FÉES. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht. 1*s.* 6*d.*

PERRAULT.—CONTES DE FÉES. Edited by Mrs. J. G. Frazer. 1*s.* 6*d.*

RICHEBOURG.—LES VIOLETTES BLANCHES. Edited by F. Julien. 1*s.* 6*d.*

SOUVESTRE.—UN PHILOSOPHE SOUS LES TOITS. Edited by L. M. Moriarty, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

SOUVESTRE.—LE SERF. Edited by H. E. Berthon, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

SOUVESTRE.—LE CHEVRIER DE LORRAINE. Edited by H. E. Berthon, B.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Specimen Copies will be presented on application

Please name the volumes required.

Pott 8vo.

MACMILLAN'S

FOREIGN SCHOOL CLASSICS

EDITED BY

G. E. FASNACHT

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

FRENCH.

CORNEILLE.—LE CID. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht. 1*s.*

DUMAS.—LES DEMOISELLES DE ST. CYR. Edited by Victor Oger. 1*s.* 6*d.*

DUMAS.—LES TROIS MOUSQUETAIRES. Abridged with Notes by J. H. T. Goodwin, B.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

FRAZER.—FRENCH PLAYS FOR SCHOOLS. By Mrs. J. G. Frazer. 1*s.* 6*d.*

FRENCH READINGS FROM ROMAN HISTORY. Selected from various authors. Edited by C. Colbeck, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

MERIMÉE.—COLOMBA. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht. 2*s.*

MODERN FRENCH VERSE. By H. E. Berthon, B.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

MODERN FRENCH PROSE. By H. E. Berthon, B.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

MOLIÈRE.—LES FEMMES SAVANTES. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht. 1*s.*

MOLIÈRE.—LE MALADE IMAGINAIRE. By the same. 1*s.* 6*d.*

MOLIÈRE.—LE MISANTHROPE. By the same. 1*s.*

MOLIÈRE.—LE MÉDECIN MALGRÉ LUI. By the same. 1*s.*

MOLIÈRE.—LES PRECIEUSES RIDICULES. By the same. 1*s.* 6*d.*

MOLIÈRE.—L'AVARE. Edited by L. M. Moriarty. 1*s.*

MOLIÈRE.—LE BOURGEOIS GENTILHOMME. By the same. 1*s.* 6*d.*

RACINE.—BRITANNICUS. Edited by Eugène Pellissier. 2*s.*

SAND (GEORGE).—LA MARE AU DIABLE. Edited by W. E. Russell, M.A. 1*s.*

SANDEAU (JULES)—MADEMOISELLE DE LA SEIGLIÈRE. Edited by H. C. Steel. 1*s.* 6*d.*

SCRIBE.—LE VERRE D'EAU. By F. F. Roget, B.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

VOLTAIRE.—CHARLES XII. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Applications for Specimen Copies of any of these books (with the exception of the Keys and Word and Phrase Books) will be considered

SIEPMANN'S

FRENCH SERIES

EDITED BY

OTTO SIEPMANN

HEAD OF THE MODERN LANGUAGE DEPARTMENT AT CLIFTON COLLEGE

AND

EUGÈNE PELLISSIER

PROFESSEUR AGRÉGÉ AU LYCÉE DU HAVRE, FORMERLY ASSISTANT MASTER AT CLIFTON COLLEGE, AND LECTURER IN FRENCH AT THE UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, BRISTOL

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

163

SIEPMANN'S FRENCH SERIES

PRESS OPINIONS

I.—Of the Series as a whole.

"The editorial conception is at once high and thorough:—(1) Each work contains sufficient matter for one or two terms' study, is interesting in its matter, literary in style, practical and useful in its vocabulary, and instructive regarding the life and manners of the country to which it relates; (2) each 'Introduction' furnishes a short account of the author and his works; (3) the 'Notes' give, in a clear and concise form, such explanations as may aid in overcoming textual difficulties, and in elucidating allusions—literary, historical, geographical, and idiomatical; and (4) an 'Appendix' contains word and phrase lists drawn from the reading, and to be used in drill; *vivâ voce* exercises in syntax, founded on and involving the vocabulary of the text; composition, and a chapter on word-formation. Linguistic knowledge, conversational utility, and general culture may thus introduce life and interest to the work of the class-room. The several special editors have implemented loyally, and to the full, this ideal in their selected volumes, which are intellectually refreshing, educationally worked out, and effective in every scholarly appliance skilfully put to use. They are all men of well-merited professional repute."—*Educational News*, June 4th, 1898.

"The four appendices claim especial notice, notably Appendix I., which contains lists of words and phrases for *vivâ voce* drill, each word or phrase having previously become familiar to the pupil in the pages of the story. We can think of no plan more likely to help a beginner to the acquisition of a good vocabulary than a careful use of this Appendix."—*Guardian*, April 27th, 1898.

"For the use of elementary and advanced students we have seen nothing to equal Siepmann's Series, published by Messrs. Macmillan and Co., Ltd. In the first place the authors selected are modern and popular, producing in the style of to-day matter interesting to present-day readers. Next the notes are not intended to display the editor's grammatical and philological learning so much as to help the reader to grasp the author's meaning, and this result is achieved with marked success. The elementary books have also a full vocabulary, and both elementary and advanced are supplied with appendices containing lists of words and phrases for *vivâ voce* drill, sentences on syntax and idioms for *vivâ voce* practice, and passages for translation from English, the lists and passages being based throughout upon the foregoing text. The advanced books, moreover, contain a chapter on word-formation and etymology. It will be seen that the system aims first at ensuring that the reader is placed in possession of all the materials required to enable him to understand what he reads, and secondly at furnishing him with the helps needed for making the vocabulary and phraseology thoroughly his own. One of Siepmann's series honestly worked through will impart greater knowledge of the language and facility in its use than the perusal of half-a-dozen works edited on the common plan. We can heartily recommend the series for its sensible and business-like plan, and for the thoroughness with which each editor has done his work."—*Worcester Herald*.

II.—Of individual volumes.

Just Published.

ELEMENTARY.

Une Année de Collège à Paris par ANDRÉ LAURIE. Adapted and Edited by FABIAN WARE, B. ès Sc. Notes and Vocabulary by C. H. S. BRERETON, M.A. (Cantab.), Lic. ès L. Authorised Edition. First Edition, January, 1901.

"This text is happily chosen; it tells in an attractive form and in good French the experiences of some French schoolboys. . . . Has been carefully annotated."—*School World.*

"Needless to say, the notes are extremely good and very helpful."—*Educational News.*

"Will make an excellent reader for an advanced class. The story is one of schoolboy life in France, excellent in tone, and delightfully told in pure, modern French."—*Schoolmaster.*

"Cannot fail to instruct and entertain the young student. We heartily recommend it to the notice of teachers."—*Teachers' Aid.*

Au Pôle en Ballon par VICTOR PATRICE. Adapted and Edited by P. SHAW JEFFREY, M.A., Headmaster of the Royal Grammar School, Colchester. Authorised Edition. First Edition, February, 1901.

"A more exciting and interesting narrative of adventure the heart of youth could not desire. . . . The notes are numerous and extremely good. . . . The volume is one of the best of an excellent series."—*Educational News.*

"Will appeal to boys who love adventure. . . . The tales may be safely recommended to teachers in search of fresh and attractive matter for class reading and language study."—*Guardian.*

"Another volume of the excellent set of French books in Siepmann's Elementary French Series. . . . It is sufficient to say that this volume keeps up the standard, and will serve excellently as a moderately difficult reader."—*Schoolmaster.*

"A capital story of moderate difficulty. There is plenty of incident and some humour in the narrative of this first visit to the North Pole, and we are sure that boys will be delighted with it. The notes are excellently worded, and supply all that is necessary."—*School World.*

Voyage du Novice Jean-Paul à Travers la France d'Amerique. par GEORGE LAMY. Ouvrage couronné par l'Institut (Académie des Sciences Morales et Politiques). Adapted and edited by D. DEVAUX, B. ès L., Senior Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. First Edition, May, 1901.

ADVANCED.

Tartarin de Tarascon par ALPHONSE DAUDET, adapted and edited by OTTO SIEPMANN, Head of the Modern Language Department at Clifton College. Authorised Edition. First Edition, September, 1900.

"Daudet's immortal tale of *Tartarin de Tarascon* has been adapted and edited for schools by Mr. Otto Siepmann. . . . The book is carefully edited and annotated, and will be heartily welcomed by students of French who can enjoy the delightful humour of the French Dickens." —*Scotsman.*

"To edit the humorous tales of Tartarin's adventures was evidently a congenial task for Mr. Siepmann, to whose series this volume makes a valuable addition. From a teacher of so much experience we expect a good introduction, and in the notes just as much information as the schoolboy will find useful; and we are not disappointed. The fourth appendix contains an interesting chapter on word-formation. The book is well and carefully printed. The 'Word and Phrasebook' and the teacher's 'Key to the Appendices' have also been issued."—*School World.*

ELEMENTARY.

L'Âme de Beethoven par PIERRE COUER, adapted and edited by De V. PAYEN-PAYNE, Principal of Kensington Coaching College, formerly Assistant Master at King's College, London. First Edition, September, 1900.

"Messrs. Macmillan & Co. have added to 'Siepmann's Elementary French Series' an adaptation of Pierre Couer's story, *L'Ame de Beethoven*, made and edited by Mr. De V. Payen-Payne. It has good notes and a full vocabulary; and makes an admirable reading book for French classes."—*Scotsman.*

"This volume is the latest addition to 'Siepmann's French Series,' and is provided with all those accessories of words and phrases, sentences on syntax and idioms, and passages for retranslation into French, which are the distinctive features of an excellent collection of Readers. The text chosen for the present one is exceedingly interesting; and the necessary cutting down seems to have been done with care."—*Glasgow Herald.*

Word- and Phrase-Books (Price 6d.) intended to be used by pupils for Home Work are ready. If they are learnt regularly *pari passu* with the reading of the text they cannot fail to increase the Vocabulary of the pupils in the easiest and most effective way possible.

The "Keys" for the use of teachers only have also appeared.

La Tour des Maures par ERNEST DAUDET, adapted and edited by A. H. WALL, M.A., Assistant Master at Marlborough College. Authorised Edition. First Edition, March, 1900; Reprinted, October, 1900.

"This interesting little story is by Ernest Daudet, elder brother to the more famous Alphonse. It tells how a young lady in the south of France was carried off from the stage-coach one stormy night by her three brothers, and imprisoned in a lonely chateau. Her faithful steward endeavours to bring about her release, but the other passengers have been so terrorised by the brothers that one and all deny that any incident of the kind has taken place. It all works out well in the end, however. The lady is rescued from her dungeon, and her captors, whose object was to deprive her of her means, meet with their deserts. Mr. Wall gives a sufficiency of notes elucidating the text, and clearing up difficulties in connection with the grammar and pronunciation. A great feature of the book is that it is both a reader and a composition book. Constant repetition of words and phrases occurring in the story, and given in a list at the end, secures that the pupil shall have them as a permanent possession. The power to use them is obtained by working through the copious idiomatic sentences and prose passages based on the text. Intelligently used, this work cannot fail to leave the pupil with a very considerable knowledge of French, as well as some ability to write and speak it. This tastefully bound little volume deserves the highest commendation."—*Educational News.*

"The story is of rather an exciting nature, and is well suited for rapid reading. The notes are brief, but sufficient."—*Educational Times.*

"Mr. A. H. Wall has 'adapted and edited' Daudet's La Tour des Maures (Macmillan 2*s*) in Siepmann's Elementary French Series, which we have already noticed. It has the same merits as the others; brevity, clearness, and abundant aids to teaching. The print is good."—*Literature.*

"There is plenty of movement in the short story, which only takes up fifty-eight pages of large type, and can easily be read in half a term. The notes are good."—*School World.*

"The 'Word- and Phrase-Books' give the English and French (in parallel columns) of the lists of words and phrases for *viva voce* drill which are given in an appendix to the above-mentioned reading books. The Keys contain these also, and renderings of the 'Sentences on Syntax and Idioms' and of the 'Passages for Translation.' They appear to have been carefully translated, and will be very welcome to teachers who use the books in question."—*School World*, March, 1899.

L'Émeraude des Incas par CHARLES NORMAND, adapted and edited by the late F. ASTON BINNS, M.A., Balliol College, Oxford, sometime Taylorian Scholar and Exhibitioner, and Assistant Master in Sherborne School. Authorised Edition. First edition, March, 1900; reprinted December, 1900.

"This is one of the 'elementary texts' in Mr. Siepmann's popular series, and it is well suited for, say, a fourth form. The story will be new to most teachers; it is full of incident, partly humorous, partly sensational. Both the notes and vocabulary show careful work on the part of Mr. Aston Binns and Mr. T. H. Bayley, of Loretto, who undertook to finish the work left incomplete by Mr. Binn's death."—*Educational Times.*

"A text which boys will find of thrilling interest. It is rich in vocabulary and not overweighted with difficult constructions. We have been disappointed in no single instance in either notes or vocabulary, and the extensive aids to the acquisition of a stock of words and of facility in composition, which characterise this series, seem quite up to the usual level of excellence."—*Guardian.*

"The story is full of incident, and is suitable for rapid reading. The notes are thoroughly satisfactory, and the vocabulary has been compiled with commendable care. There are appendices for retranslation."—*School World.*

"Quite worthy of being introduced in this way to the knowledge of young English students. The short introductions, and the notes, vocabularies and appendices fully maintain their high standard."—*Bookseller.*

The 'Word- and Phrase-books,' price 6d., give the English and French (in parallel columns) of the list of words and phrases for *vivâ voce* drill which are given in the first appendix to the editions belonging to this Series. They are intended to be used by the pupils for Home Work, and cannot fail to increase their vocabulary in the easiest and most effective way possible.

The Keys, price 2s. 6d. net each, contain these also, and besides renderings of the 'Sentences on Syntax and Idioms' (Appendix II) and of the 'Passages for Translation' (Appendix III). Alternate renderings are given in foot-notes.

Le Tour du Monde en Quatre-Vingts Jours par JULES VERNE, adapted and edited by LOUIS A. BARBÉ, B.A., Head Master of the Modern Language Department in the Glasgow Academy. Authorised Edition. First edition, October, 1899; reprinted September, 1900.

"This is an extremely happy addition to the elementary French series issued under the general editorship of MM. Siepmann and Pellissier The story is one which boys will readily read for its own sake. The text has been skilfully reduced so as to bring the entire story of the adventures of Phileas Fogg within the limits of a school text. The introduction gives as good and sympathetic an account of Jules Verne as boys can desire to have. The notes, which contain, besides the usual explanations of reasonable difficulties, a large amount of solid grammatical teaching, show that with M. Barbé the teaching of French means a great deal more than the mere superficial reading of the text. The addition of the vocabulary, the list of the irregular verbs occurring in the story, and the special appendices for *viva-voce* drill and the writing of French, make the book in all respects an excellent one for teaching purposes."—*Glasgow Herald.*

"This is a volume in the same series, and also deserves praise. The tale is well known, and will be eagerly read, for there is enough action to satisfy the most high-spirited boy. He will be grateful that the editor has written brief notes and supplied a vocabulary, from which he can get all the help he is likely to require."—*Educational Times.*

"Jules Verne's *Le Tour du Monde en Quatre-vingts Jours*, cut down to probably a quarter of its length, by Mr. L. A. Barbé for Siepmann's Elementary Texts, will be useful for third or fourth form students. The vocabulary appears to be complete . . . the notes on the whole are good."—*Guardian.*

"Siepmann's Elementary French Series will be found useful. Jules Verne's *Tour du Monde en Quatre-vingts Jours* has been compressed into less than a hundred pages, and furnished with all possible aids—brief notes, vocabulary, exercises in composition based on the book, and tables of English words and phrases for retranslation in class."—*Literature.*

"The other volume is one of Siepmann's French Series, on which we have more than once expressed a favourable opinion. The well-known standard and method are maintained, and a vocabulary is provided to meet the almost universal demand."—*Oxford Magazine.*

"Of Jules Verne's work, which, in its English dress, is so well known, there is no need to speak, and indeed, the whole series may be most heartily commended to all who have charge of the modern language teaching in our public and grammar schools."—*Bookseller.*

Contes Choisis par FRANÇOIS COPPÉE, de l'Académie Française, edited by MARGARET F. SKEAT, late Student of Newnham College; Junior Lecturer in Modern Languages at the Royal Holloway College. Authorised edition. First edition, September, 1899.

"The delightful stories contained in this volume are carefully annotated and supplied with an exhaustive vocabulary of difficult words."—*Daily Express* (*Dublin*).

"Any list of the best writers of short stories, in any language, would undoubtedly contain the names of François Coppée, and that not many places down. Just as certainly, any collection of the best of his own short stories could not help including 'Un Accident,' 'La Vieille Tunique,' 'Le Remplaçant,' and 'Les Vices du Capitaine,' and those are four out of the six which Miss Skeat has selected for the volume which she contributes to 'Siepmann's French Series.' The other two, 'La Medaille' and 'Le Parrain,' hardly reach the same high level of interest and pathos, but they are admirable specimens of French style, and by no means unworthy of the position assigned them. Taken together they constitute an admirable text, but a difficult one, too, and one to which even advanced classes will hardly do justice without a considerable amount of help. That is where Miss Skeat's notes come in. They could hardly be bettered. Not only do they deal with points that really require explanation, but they do so clearly, though concisely, and in a way which bears testimony to practical experience."—*Glasgow Herald.*

"Both these volumes (Contes Choisis and Le Tour du Monde) are well adapted for reading books on account of their intrinsic merit. The vocabulary and notes and the appendices by the general editors will be found most practical and useful."—*Educational Review.*

"Miss Skeat is to be congratulated on what we believe is her second venture in educational literature. She has chosen her stories well, and given infinite pains to rendering the notes complete, and the vocabulary helpful. In a short introduction the essential facts about Coppée's life and work are clearly given. The texts themselves, it need hardly be remarked, are only suitable for advanced classes, owing to the colloquial flavour of the language; but for these they will be found very valuable, especially as the pupils will incidentally acquire some knowledge of French life and ways, and of the topography of Paris (there is a serviceable map of the part of Paris referred to in several of the tales). . . . The vocabulary is an excellent piece of work . . . The last appendix treats of the formation of verbs. A 'word and phrase book' and a key have also been published."—*Educational Times.*

"We have already expressed our satisfaction with the general plan of this series. The stories in this volume have been well chosen and edited. For advanced classes and private students they are admirable. They will help to familiarise the English student with one of the most delicate of modern French prose styles."—*Schoolmaster.*

"Miss Skeat, who, if we remember rightly, took a high place at Cambridge, has prepared an excellent school edition of Coppée's tales for the advanced section of Siepmann's French Series of Reading Books, the main features of which are by this time fairly well known to teachers. Miss Skeat gives an excellent biographical sketch of her author and her notes are all that can be wished."—*Bookseller.*

"'Contes Choisis' differs from the other volumes of the series in containing a vocabularly of uncommon words. The appendices of each volume of this series, containing *vivâ voce* exercises, passages for translation in French, and notes on word-formation, add materially to its utility."—*Literature.*

Cœurs Russes par le Vte. E.-M. DE VOGÜÉ, de l'Académie Française, edited by EUGÈNE PELLISSIER, Professor Agrégé au Lycée du Havre, formerly Assistant Master at Clifton College, and Lecturer at University College, Bristol. Authorised Edition. First edition, September, 1899.

"Messrs. Siepmann and Pellissier have done well to add to their advanced French Series, the Vicomte de Vogüé's charming little work 'Cœurs Russes.' It is supplied with notes which convey much information, whilst they escape wearying young readers by being too purely philological. The stories are admirable reading, though Varvara Afanasiévna seems almost too sad to be included in a book intended for the young. They are written in a style of the highest order, and throw much light on Russian life and temperament. These characteristics show them to be of distinct educational value. Here and there a trait of Russian character is laid bare in a short incisive phrase likely to sink into the reader's mind; whilst the modern note that pervades all the stories but the last, is likely to be attractive to young students."—*Cambridge Review.*

"M. de Vogüé is classical in his tastes as in his style; his readers will not learn from him the language or the ideas of the boulevard or the music-hall. He is a traveller; he will entertain them with charming pictures of Egypt, Palestine, Russia; he is a philosopher, and he will open to them new views of the literary, social and economic movements of our time; he is a Christian, and he will lay before them his schemes for harmonising Christianity with a world which would fain get rid of it. To those for whom such themes, discussed in the language of an accomplished master of French, have an interest, M. de Vogüé will be one of the most engaging of writers. For the young readers of our schools and colleges his works, or rather selections from them such as Messrs. Macmillan have here begun to publish, are specially suitable."—*New Ireland Review.*

"The idea with which this series originated—namely, the introduction of works by distinguished French authors, who are prominent in their own country, but whose books have not yet received that recognition among our school classics which is their due—is being carried out with discrimination."—*Literature.*

"The tales here collected are illustrative of the life of a great nation, and the experiences of 'Russian hearts,' which the Vicomte details under various aspects, bring home to other hearts the sense of the brotherhood of man in all countries, in doing, suffering, living, and loving. The work of the editor is sympathetic, scholarly, and informing."—*Educational News.*

"The text chosen for this new volume of Siepmann's French Series is an excellent one. It has the distinguishing merit of introducing a writer whose works, though they have received the highest recognition in France, have never yet been drawn upon for school purposes; and

whose polished and picturesque style is well calculated to make even learners appreciate the beauties of the French language. In addition to that, the stories selected are exceedingly interesting in themselves. . . . The editor's contribution to the volume also deserves great praise. His introduction does justice to the author both biographically and critically, and his notes do justice to the text. Though numerous, they are not superfluous; and they are clearly, though tersely, drawn up. Taking it all in all, the book is one of the best that could be put into the hands of an advanced form."—*Glasgow Herald.*

"This pleasant book gives an instructive view of the pathos and beauty as well as of the mental chaos of the great Russian people. The notes are adequate."—*Academy.*

"The class books of which this one will introduce middle and upper forms to specimens of good modern French Literature. We are glad of it, for many of the texts now used have been worked through *ad nauseam*, while a wealth of literature useful for school purposes has been left untouched. The book is got up in the most thorough fashion. Besides the usual notes, schemes of words and phrases, of idioms and exercises in syntax, have been prepared, and suitable extracts translated into English ready to be used as test re-translations into French. The text thus supplies in itself a pleasant reading book and a course of words, grammar, and composition, all got, as they should be, in and from the reading itself. We wish the series well."—*Schoolmaster.*

"As far as style is concerned, nothing could be better than these short stories . . . The notes have been compiled with care . . . Candidates preparing themselves for examinations will find many good tips . . . The fourth appendix deals with 'adjectives formed by suffixes from adjectives and particles,' and is clearly put together."—*School World.*

"Mr. Pellissier's notes almost realise our ideal of what notes to a school text should be, and Miss Skeat's, though occasionally unnecessary, are in quality almost as good. To the *Cœurs Russes* there is no vocabularly, but Miss Skeat gives thirty pages of selected words, explaining important derivations and distinctions of meaning, and pointing out idioms which every advanced students ought to make sure of knowing."—*Guardian.*

"M. Pellissier's notes are above the average, and M. de Vogüé's sketches are pleasantly written, and may interest intelligent boys in the upper forms."—*Athenæum.*

"Will be found well worthy of the place which the editors have assigned to it. In both cases the editorial duties have been admirably performed, and public schoolboys may be congratulated upon the greatly improved and much more interesting character of the books they now have to read."—*Bookseller.*

Le Roi des Montagnes par EDMOND ABOUT, adapted and edited by ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A., late Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge, Professor of French at the University College, Nottingham. First edition, July, 1899; reprinted September, 1900.

"'Le Roi des Montagnes' depends for its interest on the author's abundant wit and his exquisite power of presenting ludicrous situations. The School Editions of this book already in existence are too long to be read in class in a term or two, here it is condensed to ninety-nine pages of text."

"The use of this entertaining romance in the class-room is certainly calculated to make French lessons more popular than they were in the days when the favourite text-books were Madame de Staël's 'Dix Années d'Exil,' Scribe's 'Bertrand et Raton,' and Emile Souvestre's 'Le Philosophe sous les Toits.' . . . The work, on the whole, is admirably done."—*Literature.*

"The book is provided with a good set of the sort of exercises which have made the earlier numbers of Siepmann's series so well known and popular. Professor Weekley's notes show the hand of the scholar and the teacher, and his introduction is commendably brief and to the point."—*Guardian.*

"This highly entertaining story loses none of its charm by appearing among Siepmann's excellent French series. The book is intended for advanced students. Though there is no vocabulary, the concise notes furnish sufficient help to the thoughtful reader. The list of English words for *vivâ voce* drill also afford some clue. The appendix contains passages and idioms for retranslation into French. The general plan of the series is calculated to make the very most of the material at hand." —*Educational Review.*

"The notes are good, and the appendices by the general editors still better."—*Cambridge Review.*

"It would be hard to find a more entertaining or a more useful class reading book than About's celebrated story. Prof. Weekley here edits it for Siepmann's Series. He has curtailed the story somewhat, adding in English explanatory connecting matter where necessary. The introduction gives an account of About's life and work, together with sufficient of the history of modern Greece to make the story intelligible. The notes are good; just enough and not too much. They are, too, written with judgment, and are calculated to lead to habits of observation in the pupils. The volume closes with the usual exercises written by the general editors of the series,—viz., practice in words and phrases, in sentences, and, finally, in continuous English passages (founded on the French text) to be turned into French."—*Schoolmaster.*

"'Le Roi des Montagnes' was produced as a Romance of Grecian Life at the time of the Crimean War; full of incidents of brigandage, satire of the Administration, and sketches of humour spiced with wit, it attracted much attention—and even yet retains its adroit *esprit* and sharpness of phrase. Here it is adapted for the use of schools, with excellent skill and with suitable Notes."—*Educational News.*

Cinq-Mars par ALFRED DE VIGNY, adapted and edited by G. G. LOANE, M.A., Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. First edition, 1899.

"Mr. Loane's adaptation of Alfred de Vigny's masterpiece for advanced pupils, maintains the high standard of excellence already set by other volumes in the series to which it belongs. The notes are good and to the point, and the story in its shortened and abbreviated form loses but little in interest. The appendices for which the general editors are responsible embody a highly important principle, too often overlooked when learning a foreign language at home, namely the need of acquiring a copious vocabulary. We have not all the prodigious memory of the Scotchman who learnt the whole of his Liddell and Scott by heart and found it very interesting, though a trifle 'disconnectit.' Learning one's vocabulary out of the reading book is a very different matter."—*Saturday Review*, April 1st, 1899.

"One of the best historical novels in the French language has been suitably condensed and carefully edited; it will, no doubt, be read with delight by hosts of boys. The hundred pages of text should not take up more than a term, as this is a book eminently suited for rapid reading. The notes are clear and to the point. We have noticed little that calls for remark."—*Educational Times*, April, 1899.

"To bring De Vigny's long romance within the limits of a school book, a considerable amount, first of omission, and, consequent on that, of arrangement and adaptation, has been necessary. In carrying out both processes, the editor has shown good judgment. He has succeeded in bringing together all the essentials of Monsieur le Grand's dramatic story, and in shaping them into consecutive and interesting narrative, which few but those who know the original would suspect of being only a fragment. The notes are well drawn up, and have been kept within such wise limits that even those teachers who like to leave a few difficulties for the learner himself to wrestle with, will have no reason to complain on the score of superfluous and indiscriminate help. But that which gives the volume its chief practical value will be found in the appendices. The passages for retranslation into French are particularly to be commended. They supply material for the only reasonable kind of 'prose' writing—that which is based on actual knowledge of words, and not on dictionary work merely. The sentences on syntax and idioms, and the words and phrases for *vivâ voce* drill, will also be found useful—directly, for the reproductory passages, and, indirectly, for conversational purposes. Indeed, from whatever point of view the book be considered, it is a thoroughly good and useful one."—*Glasgow Herald*, March 25th, 1899.

"The plan of the series is now well known, and has again been excellently carried out. *Cinq-Mars* is perhaps the very best example of the romantic school of historical fiction in France, and is a delightful story in Scott's manner. To bring it within the editor's limits, he has been obliged to give only the main story, but this has been skilfully done. The introduction, though short, gives a very good view of the historical setting of the plot, and the notes are satisfactory."—*Academy*.

Petites Âmes par **EMILE POUVILLON**, edited by **STÉPHANE BARLET**, B. ès Sc. Univ. Gall., F.C.S., Senior Master at the Mercers' School. First edition, November, 1898; reprinted, August, 1899.

"The work which has been utilised in this latest addition to *Siepmann's French Series* was published as lately as 1893. The text, consequently, is not open to the objection that it has been edited over and over again, and has become hackneyed even in schools. That is one advantage. Another is that the seven short stories comprised in the volume are fresh and interesting, and admirably suited to awaken the reader's interest and sympathy. Furthermore the style is light and thoroughly idiomatic. So much for the author, with regard to whom and to whose works—the production of the last twenty years—fuller information will be found in M. Barlet's introduction. As to the editor, he, too, has done his work well, and judiciously supplied the help which even advanced students will not find superfluous."—*Glasgow Herald*, November 17th, 1898.

"M. Barlet supplies a short introduction, in which he discusses the literary position of Pouvillon, and shows how eminently the seven short stories are suited as a reading book in schools. We fully agree with his estimate, and congratulate the several editors on their choice. The notes have been written with care, and are helpful."—*Educational Times*, December, 1898.

"*Petites Ames* is good reading for intelligent boys in the fifth form; and Mr. Barlet's notes are excellent."—*Athenæum*, January 7th, 1899.

"Pouvillon's *Petites Âmes* is a much more difficult work, demanding a wide vocabulary and no mean acquaintance with French colloquial idiom. Mr. Barlet has contributed an enthusiastic introductory notice of the writer and his works, with capable notes. Advanced students will be unanimous in thanking Mr. Barlet for bringing to their notice a collection of short stories full of racy wit and robust understanding of human nature."—*Guardian*, January 11th, 1899.

"Pouvillon's work is an interesting addition to Siepmann's admirable French Series. For the advanced student nothing could be better than this edition of *Petites Âmes*—seven stories which are not only faultless in style and interesting in plot, but full of the qualities which make a French 'Reader' of practical utility to the student. The notes and appendices, too, are excellent."—*Publishers' Circular*, January 19th, 1899.

"This volume is one of the series produced under the general editorship of Messrs. Siepmann and Pellissier. Of that series we have already spoken favourably. *Petites Âmes* is a collection of seven interesting stories, and the book has the same appendices as other volumes of the series. It is a very suitable Reader."—*University Correspondent*, March 4th, 1899.

"Pouvillon is a true artist, and a keen student of character. His provincials are drawn from life, and by a not unkindly hand. . . . M. Barlet has done his work in a thorough and conscientious manner."—*Schoolmaster*, March 4th, 1899.

Mon Oncle et mon Curé par JEAN DE LA BRÈTE, adapted and edited by E. C. GOLDBERG, M.A., Head Master of the Modern Side of Tonbridge School. First edition, November, 1898; reprinted, February, 1899; reprinted October, 1900.

"Though a 'moral tale,' it is not one of those 'goody-goody' productions which the French style a *berquinade*. There is no mawkishness, no strained sentimentality about it. But there is genuine pathos and bright humour, with the further attraction of a pure and bright style."—*Glasgow Herald*, December 14th, 1898.

"An adaptation of a well-known French novel by M. Jean de la Brète, entitled '*Mon Oncle et mon Curé*.' The story, an exceptionally bright and healthy tale, has been edited by Mr. E. C. Goldberg, who has supplied it with a short introduction. It makes an admirable reading-book for French classes."—*Scotsman*, December 8th, 1898.

"A pretty little story of the mental and moral growth of an orphaned girl, under the guardianship first of an odious aunt and then of a wise, kindly uncle. The book is a welcome addition to its series. The characters of the story are delicately drawn. The notes are good, and the system of exercises, oral and written, based on the text, makes the edition a valuable school book."—*Academy*, January 14th, 1899.

"A brightly written story of a girl's adventures, mild in plot, healthy in tone, free from mawkish sentiment, abounding in clever characterisation, and not without occasional touches of caricature. The work, which was originally published as late as 1889, and was *couronnée par l'Académie* in the following year, is a type of modern French, pure in style and matter, and may safely be recommended for middle forms in girls' schools, for which it will provide interesting and comparatively easy reading. Mr. Goldberg's notes and exercises on the text seem to us to give exactly the kind of aid that will be required."—*Guardian*, January 11th, 1899.

"This book 'may serve as a model of the good simple French of the present day. . . . It teems with delightful colloquialisms and terse phrases all imbued with that bright spirit which is so essentially French in character.'"—*Parents' Review*, April, 1899.

"The editors have made a very happy choice in including this charming work of Jean de la Brète among the selections from modern French authors, which they have introduced to English school boys and girls. It is written in a breezy interesting style, and abounds in delicate, and unforced humour. The notes are good. The sentences for *vivâ voce* practice and passages for translation into French enhance its value as a class book."—*Schoolmaster*, March 4th, 1899.

"*Mon Oncle et mon Curé* is, on the whole, easier, and we think more suitable for girls than boys. Mr. Goldberg's notes are judiciously few, but supply as much help as is needed."—*Athenæum*, January 7th, 1899.

L'Anneau d'Argent par CHARLES DE BERNARD, edited by LOUIS SERS, B. ès L., French Master at Wellington College. First edition, May, 1898; reprinted, October, 1898.

"We may say at once that it is quite the best of those that have appeared. A brief introduction tells us all that we require to know about the author. The text is clearly and correctly printed. The notes are excellent; just the right length, well expressed, and trustworthy. The appendices by Mr. Siepmann and M. Pellissier are carefully compiled. . . . The passages for translation into French are in good English. The last appendix (on Word-Formation) is very short this time—only four pages; but it contains some interesting facts, clearly arranged. The book is a welcome addition to our intermediate French reading texts."—*Educational Times*, July, 1898.

"Charles de Bernard was a royalist of whom Thackeray wrote: 'To a person inclined to study the inward thoughts and ways of his neighbours (the French), in that light and amusing fashion in which the novelist treats them, let us recommend the works of Monsieur de Bernard.' This is sufficient to commend the work as in all respects suitable for our young people."—*School Guardian*, July 9th, 1898.

"A book of the same type is *L'Anneau d'Argent*, by Charles de Bernard, of whom Thackeray remarked that he was more remarkable than any other French author for writing like a gentleman. Mr. Louis Sers has added notes which will be of great assistance to the student."—*Saturday Review*, September 17th, 1898.

"The plan of the series is comprehensive, and includes notes, an abundance of words, phrases, and sentences for *viva voce* drill, with continuous passages for translation, all founded on the text, and a few notes on word-formation. M. Sers has made an excellent provision of these aids, and has given us in the introduction a readable biographical sketch of his author."—*Guardian*, September 14th, 1898.

"*L'Anneau d'Argent* is, we think, even better suited for a boy's reading-book. The story is more stirring and adventurous, and the tragic end of the brave, simple, soldier-lover, and the way in which he was mourned, cannot fail to interest and delight every reader. The notes seem to be fuller than those to the companion volume [*L'Abbé Daniel*]. The Drill founded on the text is equally thorough and varied, and the little appendix on Word-formation—dealing with another chapter of French word-lore—is not less valuable."—*Academy*, September 10th, 1898.

"An interesting feature of the text, fully dealt with in the notes, is its abundance of allusion, literary and historical."—*Cambridge Review*, November 24th, 1898.

L'Abbé Daniel par ANDRÉ THEURIET, edited by P. DESAGES, Senior Modern Language Master at Cheltenham College. First edition, May, 1898; reprinted, September, 1898; reprinted, October, 1899.

"M. Desages has rendered good service to the study of French in this country by this edition of Theuriet's beautiful prose idyll. The author is not known among us as he deserves to be. We are too apt to think that contemporary French writers are mainly of the naturalistic school. To many English students of French literature, Theuriet comes as a revelation. He is unexcelled in his word paintings of natural scenery, and he takes for his theme only what is most noble and elevating in human life and character. M. Desages's notes are admirable, and the helps given to the student in the direction of lists of words and phrases and imitative exercises are very helpful."—*Schoolmaster*, October 29th, 1898.

"Well bound, well printed, and well selected, and a credit both to the publishers and the general editors, Messrs. Siepmann and Eugène Pellissier."—*School Guardian*, May 21st, 1898.

"The editors of this volume could not have made a better selection than Theuriet's graceful idyll, which forms an agreeable contrast to a good deal of modern French literature."—*Spectator*, September 24th, 1898.

"Mr. Siepmann has already done very good educational work for Messrs. Macmillan, and the two pretty little volumes of his Advanced French Readers now before us deserve much praise. *L'Abbé Daniel*, with its pathetic story of love, generosity, and renunciation, is a fine example of the short novel in which French writers excel. The Introduction gives a brief account of the author; in the Notes everything that might stop a somewhat advanced schoolboy is explained; and most useful Appendices, for exercises in *vivâ voce* and written translation, founded on the text of the story, with a short chapter on Word-formation, close the book."—*Academy*, September 10th, 1898.

"Such a charming story by one of the foremost French writers of the century cannot long remain unnoticed. The above edition should be in great request as a reader for upper forms."—*Educational Review*, January, 1899.

"That this charming prose idyll should have been well received is only natural. From beginning to end the story is told in simple and graceful language, which is in perfect harmony with the scenery that forms the setting."—*Parents' Review*, April, 1899.

Sacs et Parchemins par JULES SANDEAU, adapted and edited by EUGÈNE PELLISSIER, Professeur Agrégé au Lycée de Rochefort. First edition, March, 1898; reprinted, October, 1898; reprinted, December, 1899.

"The present selection is a very judicious one. Sandeau's French is correct and elegant, the characters introduced are well portrayed, and the pupil cannot but become interested in the narrative. The edition contains the usual helps found in the books belonging to this series, and is marked by the perfection and thoroughness which have distinguished other works entrusted to MM. Siepmann and Pellissier."—*Schoolmaster*, October 29th, 1898.

"The satire of *Sacs et Parchemins* is of a kind which will never lose its freshness as long as the types of purse-proud vulgarity and worldliness at which it is directed exist among us. The very good nature of the writer only makes his picture the more effective."—*Spectator*, September 24th, 1898.

"This is an adaptation of Sandeau's novel, a work which will be found especially profitable to English readers from the description of French life and manners which it contains. It is included in 'Mr. Siepmann's Advanced Series,' but the style is generally clear and flowing."—*Educational Review*, January, 1899.

"*Sacs et Parchemins*, par Sandeau, edited by E. Pellissier. 'Sandeau's chief characteristics,' says M. Pellissier, the editor, 'are the delicacy of his pictures, the refinement of his style and the sound moral tone which reigns throughout his works.' '*Sacs et Parchemins* is a masterpiece of its kind and so admirably adapted in all respects for use in the class-room that it is a wonder no English school edition of it has yet appeared. . . . The style, which is terse and polished, abounds in happy, literary reminiscences, and wit sparkles in every page.'"—*Parents' Review*, April, 1899.

"The aim of Siepmann's French and German Series has already been stated in these columns. It is therefore sufficient for us to record the maintenance of the high standard of excellence which characterized previous volumes. The annotation is judicious and the appendices are admirable."—*Oxford Magazine*, February 1st, 1899.

"The 'Word and Phrase Books' give the English and French (in parallel columns) of the lists of words and phrases for *viva voce* drill which are given in an appendix to the above-mentioned reading books. The keys contain these also, and renderings of the 'Sentences on Syntax and Idioms' and of the 'Passages for Translation.' They appear to have been carefully translated, and will be very welcome to teachers who use the books in question."—*School World*, March, 1899.

La Première Croisade par MICHAUD, edited by V. HOUGHTON, Principal of the Khedivieh College, Cairo. Published, September, 1897; reprinted, January, 1899.

"An excellent reader. Prefaced by a Life of Michaud and an *exposé* of his literary work, together with a good historical introduction, furnished with valuable historical and grammatical notes, the book presents a *tout ensemble* calculated to render it attractive and useful. The appendices by the general editors (Messrs. Otto Siepmann and Eugène Pellissier) are noteworthy. . . . These appendices greatly increase the usefulness of the book."—*Educational Times*, November, 1897.

"The story itself is entrancing, the incidents of it singularly dramatic, and the style, simple and clear as it is, throbs with emotion and stirs with enthusiasm; for it is a tale told by a poet who had felt the rush of the hot pulsations of the heart amid the throes of that crusade for freedom which was proclaimed by the French Revolutionists. It is extremely well suited for reading in class. The notes appended to this edition are grammatical, historical critical, literary, geographical, &c. They are numerous and instructive as well as explanatory. There have been added by the general editors four valuable *appendices*. . . . Everything—except perhaps an index to the matters taken up in the notes—seems to have been provided with foresight and appropriateness which could make this story of the crusades pleasant and profitable as a class-book."—*Educational News*, October 9th, 1897.

"The notes, both grammatical and explanatory, are not only well drawn up, but also bear on points of real importance. The 'words for *viva voce* drill,' and the 'phrases and idioms' systematise what every teacher knows to be indispensable for the advantageous use of any text; and, finally, the 'sentences on syntax and idioms' and 'passages for translation into French,' are an intelligent adaptation of the most rational of the numberless new methods devised for utilising the vocabulary which should be acquired by the process of translation from French into English. All these things considered, the book is a thoroughly good one."—*Glasgow Herald*, October 9th, 1897.

"It is an interesting reading-book of moderate difficulty. . . . The notes are careful, and give all necessary information regarding the subject-matter, a task too often shirked by the annotator of modern-language texts. The appendices are useful, and supply abundant matter for oral practice."—*University Correspondent*, January 8th, 1898.

"It forms a most interesting school reading-book, full of historical and instructive details. . . . A valuable feature is the series of idiomatic phrases for retranslation into French which have been taken from the text. Altogether the editor and publishers are to be commended for placing within our reach such a well-appointed text-book."—*Teachers' Aid*, January 29th, 1898.

GENERAL PREFACE TO THE SERIES

THIS series introduces a number of works by distinguished French authors, such as de Vogüé and Emile Pouvillon, who are prominent in their own country, but whose books have not yet received that recognition among our school classics which is their due; it will also include some of the best productions of Daudet, Copée, Theuriet, and others, of which no English school editions exist; and finally it will contain a few works which, although more familiar, may yet, it is hoped, be welcome in an edition framed on the plan here advocated.

The *advanced* texts are intended for pupils of the Fifth and Sixth forms, and are therefore longer (80-150 pages) and more difficult. The *elementary* texts are shorter (40-80 pages) and fairly easy, so as to suit Third and Fourth Forms; to these a complete alphabetical vocabulary will be added.

Each volume contains enough matter for *one* or *two* terms' reading. The editors, while taking care that the works selected should arouse the pupils' interest, should furnish them with a practical vocabulary and useful phraseology, and should help to cultivate literary taste, will also include in their selection such books as will enable the English reader to acquire a knowledge of France and her institutions, of French life and customs, or, as Thackeray puts it, "to study the inward thoughts and ways of his neighbours."

The *Notes* are not intended to give merely a translation of the difficult passages, nor are they meant to be a storehouse of grammatical curiosities or of philological learning. They aim rather at giving in a clear and concise form such explanations as will help the pupil to overcome all textual difficulties which are out of his reach, and at elucidating historical, geographical, and literary allusions; while reminding the reader at the same time of points of grammar and of constructions which he is apt to forget, illustrating these by parallels taken, if possible, from other parts of the text. As to renderings, the object, as a rule, is to throw out a hint for the solution of a difficulty rather than to give the solution itself,

without, however, excluding the translation of such passages as the pupil cannot be expected to render satisfactorily into good English. Comments are introduced on French life and thought whenever the text affords an opportunity for them. Lastly, information is supplied on word-formation and derivation, where such knowledge is likely to be of real help towards a complete grasp of the various meanings of words, or where it may serve as an aid to the memory.

The Introduction will in each case give a short account of the author and his works, with special reference to the text of the particular volume.

Appendices will be added to each volume by the General Editors, containing—(1) lists of words and phrases for *vivâ voce* drill, which should be learned *pari passu* with the reading; (2) exercises on syntax and idioms for *vivâ voce* practice, which will involve the vocabulary of a certain portion of the text; (3) continuous passages for translation into French, which will bring composition and construing lessons into close relation; and in the case of the advanced texts (4) some chapters on word-formation or etymology of a practical nature.

The addition of these appendices calls perhaps for explanation.

Appendix I.—The practical experience of teachers, the continually recurring verdict of examiners, any man's personal recollection of his own earlier labours in acquiring a new language—all go to prove that want of vocabularly and phraseology is one of the main difficulties with which the learner has always to contend. "Take a dictionary and learn it by heart" is idle advice; teachers and learners alike agree that the sense of a word or phrase is best grasped and most easily remembered in connexion with some context. Again, the system by which each pupil records in a note-book for subsequent revision unfamiliar words and phrases is educationally sound, and has some advantages: the pupil makes the mental effort of selection, and the words so selected are adapted to his special needs. But this system has also many drawbacks: words are often misquoted or misspelt; the revision, if left to the pupil, is often neglected, and if conducted by the master is, in a class of any size, impracticable. The present appendices are designed, not to do away with the pupil's note-book, but to make the revision of a large number of words and phrases practicable in the class-room. It is true that some of the words chosen may be already known to a portion of the class, but the repetition of a few familiar phrases does no harm; while the gain in certainty and facility of revision, and still more in point of time, is enormous. No enunciation of the English is necessary; and it is astonishing how rapidly a form or set, with the page in front of them, will run down a column, and reproduce, in correct French, words and phrases which they have been through once or twice before.

It may be mentioned that the plan is not a theoretical one. Trial has

proved its value beyond anticipation. It has also shown that the pupils themselves soon begin to like this drill, as they feel a growing and tangible addition to their knowledge from week to week.*

Appendices II. and III.—There is no need to say anything of these, as it is now generally recognized that the reading-book should form the nucleus of all instruction in languages.

Appendix IV. is necessarily not exhaustive. But "half a loaf is better than no bread." Word-formation and etymology are not usually dealt with in grammars; moreover, a complete treatment of the subject would be out of place in schools. But some knowledge of word-building and derivation is of interest and use even to schoolboys, and is constantly demanded in our military and other examinations. A short chapter has therefore been added to each of the advanced texts.

In conclusion: as is obvious from the above, it is the object of the present series that the pupil should draw from each successive book some permanent possession in the way of linguistic knowledge and general culture; that the study of each text, while partly an end in itself, should still more be treated as a means to something wider and more lasting.

If this object is to be attained, it is necessary that the pupil should not merely learn to translate the text, but that he should enter into the subject-matter and, to some extent, into the life and interests of the people whose literature he is reading; at the same time he should learn to speak in the foreign language. This result can only be obtained by treating language as a living thing, *i.e.* by such constant repetition as has been suggested of the words and phrases that occur; by regular application of what has been learnt, in *vivâ voce* practice of reproductory exercises and prose passages based on the text; moreover, by careful attention to pronunciation, and by frequent questions, asked and answered in French, upon the subject-matter of the book. It is hoped that no teacher will fail to make such conversational practice an integral part of his work.

Keys to the Appendices, for the use of Teachers only. 2s. 6d. net each.

Word and Phrase Books, with French translation, for Home Work. 6d. each.

* The lists placed at the end of the text contain the English only. Separate lists with the French added, will also be published for the benefit of masters who might wish their pupils to learn them in home-preparation.

ELEMENTARY.

Note.—Those marked * are ready; those marked † are in the press and the others are in preparation.

		Edited by
Biart	†Monsieur Pinson.	Otto Siepmann, *Clifton College.*
Pierre Cœur	*L'Âme de Beethoven.	de V. Payen-Payne, *Kensington Coaching College.* 2s.
E. Daudet	*La Tour des Maures.	A. H. Wall, *Marlborough College.* 2s
Desnoyers	†Jean-Paul Choppart.	L. von Glehn, *Merchant Taylors' School.*
Dumas	†Histoire de Napoléon.	W. W. Vaughan, *Clifton College.*
Gennevray	†Marchand d'Allumettes.	A. A. James, *Queen's College, Barbados.*
Lamy	*Voyage du Novice Jean-Paul.	D. Devaux, *St. Paul's School.* 2s.
Laurie	*Une Année de Collège à Paris.	F. Ware *and* C. S. H. Brereton. 2s.
Normand	*L'Émeraude des Incas.	F. Aston Binns. 2s.
Patrice	*Au Pôle en Ballon.	P. S. Jeffrey. 2s.
Souvestre	Le Chasseur de Chamois.	F. Vogelsang, *Seafield Technical College.*
Verne	*Le Tour du Monde.	L. Barbé, *Glasgow Academy.* 2s.

Others to follow.

ADVANCED.

About	*Le Roi des Montagnes.	E. Weekley, *University College, Nottingham.* 2s. 6d.
Bernard	*L'Anneau d Argent.	Louis Sers, *Wellington College.* 2s. 6d.
Coppée	*Contes Choisis.	Miss M. F. Skeat, *Royal Holloway College.* 2s. 6d.
Daudet	*Tartarin de Tarascon.	Otto Siepmann, *Clifton College.* 2s. 6d.
Hugo	Ruy Blas.	Prof. C. Bévenot, *Birmingham University.*
la Brète	*Mon Oncle et mon Curé.	E. Goldberg, *Tonbridge School.* 2s. 6d.
Michaud	*La Première Croisade.	V. Houghton, *Khedivieh College, Cairo.* 2s. 6d.
Pouvillon	*Petites Âmes.	S. Barlet, *Mercers' School, London.* 2s. 6d.
Sandeau	*Sacs et Parchemins.	E. Pellissier, *Lycée Rochefort.* 3s. 6d.
Theuriet	*L'Abbé Daniel.	Paul Desages, *Cheltenham College.* 2s. 6d.
Vigny	*Cinq Mars (abridged).	G. G. Loane, *St. Paul's School.* 2s. 6d.
Vogüé	*Cœurs russes.	E. Pellissier, *Lycée Le Havre.* 2s. 6d.

Others to follow.

Keys to the Appendices, for the use of Teachers only. 2s. 6d. net each.

Word and Phrase Books, with French translation, for Home Work. 6d. each.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

Siepmann's Advanced French Series.

General Editors { OTTO SIEPMANN
EUGÈNE PELLISSIER

MON ONCLE ET MON CURÉ

PAR

JEAN DE LA BRÈTE

OUVRAGE COURONNÉ PAR L'ACADÉMIE FRANÇAISE

ADAPTED AND EDITED

BY

E. C. GOLDBERG, M.A.

HEAD MASTER OF THE MODERN SIDE OF TONBRIDGE SCHOOL
LATE SCHOLAR OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, OXFORD

AUTHORISED EDITION

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

185

— Parce que la perte de sa main ne réparait pas son erreur, répondais-je, que Porsenna n'en était ni plus ni moins vivant, et que le secrétaire ne s'en portait pas mieux.

— Bien, ma petite ; mais Porsenna fut assez effrayé pour lever le siège immédiatement.

— Ceci, monsieur le curé, prouve que Porsenna n'était qu'un poltron.

— Soit ! mais Rome était délivrée, et grâce à qui ? grâce à Scévola, grâce à son action héroïque !

Et le curé, qui, frémissant à l'idée de se brûler le bout du petit doigt, n'en admirait que mieux Mucius Scévola, de s'exalter, de se démener pour me faire apprécier son héros.

— J'en tiens pour ce que j'ai dit, reprenais-je tranquillement ; ce n'était qu'un sot, et un grand sot !

Le curé, suffoqué, s'écriait :

— Quand les enfants se mêlent de raisonner, les mortels entendent bien des sottises.

— Monsieur le curé, vous m'avez appris, l'autre jour, que la raison est la plus belle faculté de l'homme.

— Sans doute, sans doute, quand il sait s'en servir. Puis, je parlais de l'homme fait, et non des petites filles.

— Monsieur le curé, le petit oiseau essaie ses forces au bord du nid.

L'excellent homme, un peu déconcerté, s'ébouriffait les cheveux avec énergie, ce qui lui donnait l'air d'une tête de loup poudrée à blanc.

— Vous avez tort de tant discuter, ma petite, me disait-il quelquefois ; c'est un péché d'orgueil. Vous ne m'aurez pas toujours pour vous répondre, et quand vous

98 Mon Oncle et mon Curé

Page LINE

7. 1. **mouchoir à carreaux**: similarly *un complet à carreaux* means 'a check suit.' *Carreau* (cf. Lat. *quadrum*, a square) has many other meanings; thus p. 22 l. 20, *sur le carreau*, 'on the floor'; p. 27 l. 3, *le carreau de papier*.

,, 6. **le plus courts possible**: why not *les* and *possibles*?

,, 26. **lui faisait ébaucher**: *faire* requires the dat. when the dependent verb has a direct object; cf. note, p. 14 l. 19. *Ébaucher*, 'to make a rough sketch of.' Transl. 'made him heave a gentle sigh.'

„ 31. **voire même**: *voire* (Lat. *verum*) and *même* are equivalents, the former being 'truly,' 'indeed.' *La voire* in Old French, 'the truth'; see note, p. 87 l. 18, *les siennes*.

8. 6. **pour ses héros**: do not sound the *s* final of *ses* before the *h* aspirate. Note: *le héros*, but *l'héroïne*.

,, 7. **les exaltait**: note that *exaltait* has a different meaning here from that of 'exciting,' which it bears in p. 9 l. 13.

,, 13. **fantaisiste**, 'whimsical.' The word implies 'comic fancy,' whereas *fantasque* (p. 38 l. 9) has the sense of 'extraordinary.'

,, 22. **avait beau pousser**: see note, p. 36 l. 6.

,, 25. **Mucius Scévola**: the story of Mucius 'the Left-handed' (*Scaevola*, dim. of *scaevus*, 'left-handed') is told in Livy ii. 12. Having failed in an attempt to assassinate Lars Porsenna, and being taken before the king, he burnt off his right hand to show how little he cared for the tortures that might be inflicted on him.

9. 9. **soit!** pronounce the *t* of this exclamation.

,, 13. **de s'exalter**: the infinitive is sometimes thus used with the preposition *de* instead of the indicative in vivid narrative, like the historic infinitive in Latin.

,, 23. **de l'homme fait**, 'of a grown-up man.'

,, 26. **l'excellent homme**: the adj., when purely descriptive and not serving to distinguish one individual from another, takes the unemphatic place before the noun. This principle, which is often exemplified throughout the book, will not be referred to in the notes again.

10. 3. **je me souciais bien de la vie!** the exclamation implies the opposite of its literal meaning; say 'life, indeed!' or 'what did I care about life?' Cf. p. 69 l. 23.

,, 7. **sa bouche, toujours souriante, se refusant**: distinguish carefully between the pres. part. which is always invariable, and the verbal adjective which agrees.

,, 12. **Tibère avec Vespasien**: Tiberius became Emperor in A.D. 14, Vespasian in A.D. 69. The former is the type of most

120 Mon Oncle et mon Curé

Page	WORDS	WORDS	PHRASES
8	to knead	to be obstinately	to play a part
	the clay	bent upon	to be fond of heroes
	all the more	to shake	if the case should arise . .
	to dabble		
9	the loss	to shudder	the end of the little finger
	thanks to . .	the wolf	a great many stupid things
	a coward, poltroon	pride	he knows how to use it
10	to tease	the nail (*finger*)	to struggle with . .
	to make an effort to . .	the next day	they weary me
	to refuse to . .	the barley-field	to cut into little bits
11	the kitchen-garden	the fist	to catch some one up
	angry, enraged	to hurt	to think fit to . .
	a spot	abruptly	to slam the door angrily
12	a boot	indeed not	to knit one's brow
	the league (*distance*)	to jump	it is not worth while talking about it
	a smile	a fly	to shrug one's shoulders
13	a pinch of snuff	to whirl round	do not talk nonsense
	the point of view	the heel	to lean against the fireplace
	to depend on	to get angry	to be dead and buried
14	the property near . .	above all	to sit down by some one's side
	astounded, flurried	to complain	I have heard her say so
		to approve of sg.	to clap one's hands
15	the fault, shortcoming	to let go, loose	it will end by my getting angry
	to pout, be sulky	stunned, astounded	you will repent of it
	a revolt	the amazement	to give some one a lecture (*scolding*)
16	a laurel-bush	a bone	to cut off some one's retreat
	a fit, paroxysm	to taste	to pretend to do sg.
	furious, raging	to fall back	to make a terrible noise
17	the proof	to recoup, indemnify	from that time
	to open one's heart	the looking-glass	to dare to open one's mouth for whole hours
	a third party	to extol	
18	the palate	to freeze	to rub one's hands
	to rain	the hail	to sit down to table
	to snow	sulphur	in my time
19	to sigh	to burst forth	not otherwise
	the temptation	suddenly	to raise one's eyes to heaven
	bitter	the wrath	to give some one a reproachful [look
20	a scoundrel	beyond	to shake one's head
	to bequeath	insufficient	to be like some one
	agent, instrument	the novel	to have nothing to do with it

23. It is in vain you try, you will not succeed.
24. He did it, which greatly surprised us all.
25. I still abide by what I have said.
26. When you are older, you will not speak like that.
27. If you had lived in their time, they would have torn out your tongue and your nails.

II

1. We had scarcely sat down when the door opened.
2. Do you think there is any one who will accept?
3. I struck the table with my fist, which hurt me a good deal.
4. What will he say, when he comes and sees that?
5. It is such a trifle that it is not worth while mentioning it.
6. I mean him to love me so much that he will not be contented when I am unhappy.
7. "How very illogical you are!" she exclaimed.
8. They have been dead for so many ages that they ought not to interest you much.
9. How should you like me to do the same?
10. You would have agreed together wonderfully well.
11. Had you never heard of him before?
12. If he does not love her, to make up for it he loves her money.
13. We have heard him say so himself.
14. I am afraid that they will guess the cause of our absence.
15. It is not certain that I shall not do so some day or other.
16. "It is evident that you are right," said she, clapping her hands.
17. Was it not you that I met this morning?
18. You ought to have arrived much earlier.
19. You must have been very tired.
20. She had placed herself in front of the door to cut off my retreat.
21. If he begins again, send him about his business.
22. She remained petrified, with her hand in the air.
23. I thought I ought to appear as if I knew a lot about him.

III

1. She silenced me before I had finished my sentence.
2. Not a single day passed without his coming to see us.
3. Can you tell me what the question is about?
4. The good man preferred the heroes of antiquity, whose enterprising spirit nobody need dread any longer.

in me rapidly, and I would enter into arguments which almost drove the poor curé out of his mind. At our lessons, things used to go on all right as long as it was a question of exercises to correct, for, while they were as short as possible, they were always carefully done. But after that we passed on to reading. Now the curé was very fond of the heroes of antiquity, and admired their physical courage. For my part, I shared neither his tastes nor his admiration, but felt a positive antipathy to the Greeks and Romans. It was in vain that the curé got annoyed and argued; I would tease, and worry, and bore him, and eventually he would say, "Miss de Lavalle, you will look over your Roman Emperors again, and you will take care not to confuse Tiberius with Vespasian"; and then he would trot off without saying another word.

CHAPTER II

III

One day the curé and I had scarcely sat down at our table when the door opened, and Perrine entered in a state of great excitement. "Is the house on fire?" my aunt asked. "No, madam, but the cow is in the barley-field, and the rabbits are in the kitchen-garden." When my aunt had rushed out after the servant, I turned to the curé and said, "Do you think there is a woman in the whole world as abominable as my aunt? Do you know what she did yesterday? She beat me! But I have found means of avenging myself." I sat down beside him. "You have heard of my uncle at le Pavol? Now my aunt fears above everything that I shall complain to M. de Pavol, and ask him to take me into his house. I will threaten to write to my uncle." At this moment my aunt came in like a whirlwind. "Reine, come here," she cried. I made a low bow, and jumping on a chair to my aunt's amazement, I slipped out of the window into the garden. In the evening, during dinner, she looked as gracious as a

la cagne, 'coward,' 'cur' (Ital. *cagna, chienne*); *le cagnard*, 'sluggard,' 'loafer,' 'coward.'
OF. *coue* (*queue*), from Lat. *cauda*, 'tail'; *le couard*, 'coward.' (In heraldry *le lion couard* is a lion *qui porte la queue basse.*)
la gueule, 'mouth,' 'jaws'; *le gueulard*, 'screamer,' 'bawler.'
la mouffle, 'muffler'; *le mouflard*, 'a person with a bloated face.'
la mouche, 'fly'; *le mouchard*, 'police-spy,' 'informer.'
la solde, 'pay'; *le soudard*, 'old blade,' i.e. 'an old soldier.'

From verbs :—

baver, 'to drivel,' 'sputter'; *le bavard*, 'gossip.'
babiller, 'to prattle,' 'chatter'; *le babillard*, 'babbler, 'twaddler.'
brailler, 'to bawl,' 'squall'; *le braillard*, 'bawler,' 'screamer.'
crier, 'to cry,' 'shout'; *le criard*, 'crier,' 'shouter.'
fuir, 'to flee,' 'fly'; *le fuyard*, 'fugitive.'
grogner, 'to growl'; *le grognard*, 'grumbler.'
pendre, 'to hang'; *le pendard*, 'scoundrel.'
piller, 'to plunder'; *le pillard*, 'plunderer.'

This suffix is without pejorative force in—

le vieillard, 'old man'; *le montagnard*, 'highlander'; *le Savoyard*, though the people of Savoy prefer to be called *Savoisiens*.

(*b*) *Animals* :—

le canard, 'gander'; *le grisard*, 'badger'; *le renard*, 'fox.'

In *la poularde*, 'a fat pullet,' this suffix is augmentative; in *le chevrillard*, 'a young roebuck,' it is diminutive.

(*c*) *Things* :—

la meule, 'millstone'; *le meulard*, 'large grindstone.'
la bombe, 'bomb'; *la bombarde*, 'bomb-vessel.'

In these two the suffix has augmentative force.

Note also—

le billard, 'billiard-table'; *le brancard*, 'stretcher'; *les épinards*, 'spinach'; *l'étendard*, 'standard'; *le poignard*, 'dagger'; *le placard*, 'placard'; *le milliard*, 'thousand millions'; *le puisard*, 'sink'; *une nasarde*, 'a fillip on the nose'; *la moutarde*, 'mustard'; *la mansarde*, 'garret,' named after the architect Mansard.

(4) -ald, -aud

This suffix is likewise of Teutonic origin, and corresponds to *-wald* in *Grimwald, Reinwald.* It is used in very much the same way as *-ard.* When applied to persons the nouns with this suffix have often both genders, and can also be used as adjectives.

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d. net each.

KEYS TO APPENDICES

OF

SIEPMANN'S FRENCH SERIES

BY

THE GENERAL EDITORS OF THE SERIES

The following are ready:

ABOUT—LE ROI DES MONTAGNES. By E. Weekley.
BERNARD—L'ANNEAU D'ARGENT. By Louis Sers.
COPPÉE—CONTES CHOISIS. By Miss M. F. Skeat.
PIERRE CŒUR—L'ÂME DE BEETHOVEN. By De V. Payen-Payne.
DAUDET—TARTARIN DE TARASCON. By Otto Siepmann.
DAUDET—LA TOUR DES MAURES. By A. H. Wall.
LA BRÈTE—MON ONCLE ET MON CURÉ. By E. Goldberg.
LAMY—VOYAGE DU NOVICE JEAN-PAUL. By D. Devaux.
LAURIE—UNE ANNÉE DE COLLEGE À PARIS. By F. Ware.
MICHAUD—LA PREMIÈRE CROISADE. By V. Houghton.
NORMAND—L'ÉMERAUDE DES INCAS. By F. Aston Binns.
PATRICE—AU PÔLE EN BALLON. By P. S. Jeffrey.
POUVILLON—PETITES ÂMES. By S. Barlet.
SANDEAU—SACS ET PARCHEMINS. By Eugène Pellissier.
THEURIET—L'ABBE DANIEL. By Paul Desages.
VIGNY—CINQ MARS. By G. G. Loane.
VOGÜÉ—CŒURS RUSSES. By E. Pellissier.

The following is in the Press:

DUMAS—NAPOLÉON. By W. W. Vaughan.

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved
192

Mon Oncle et mon Curé

8	to knead	pétrir	to be obstinately bent upon	s'entêter à
	the clay	l'argile (*f*)		
	all the more	d'autant plus	to shake	ébranler
	to dabble	barboter		
9	the loss	la perte	to shudder	frémir
	thanks to . .	grâce à . .	the wolf	le loup
	a coward, poltroon	un poltron	pride	l'orgueil (*m*)
10	to tease	taquiner	the nail (*finger*)	l'ongle (*m*)
	to make an effort to . .	s efforcer de . .	the next day	le lendemain
	to refuse to . .	[refuser de.. se refuser à . . *or*	the barley-field	le champ d'orge
11	the kitchen-garden	le potager	the fist	le poing
			to hurt	faire mal
	angry, enraged	courroucé	abruptly	brusquement
	a spot	un lieu		
12	a boot	une botte	indeed not	ma foi, non !
	the league (*distance*)	la lieue	to jump	sauter
			a fly	une mouche
	a smile	un sourire		
13	a pinch of snuff	une prise de tabac	to whirl round	pirouetter
			the heel	le talon
	the point of view	le point de vue	to get angry	se fâcher
	to depend on	dépendre de		
14	the property	la propriété	above all	par-dessus tout
	near . .	près de . .		
	astounded, flurried	ahuri	to complain	se plaindre
			to approve of sg.	approuver qc.
15	the fault, shortcoming	le défaut	to let go, loose	lâcher
			stunned, astounded	abasourdi
	to pout, be sulky	faire la moue		
	a revolt	une révolte	the amazement	l'ébahissement
16	a laurel-bush	un laurier	a bone	un os
	a fit, paroxysm	un accès	to taste	goûter
	furious, raging	furibond	to fall back	reculer
17	the proof	la preuve	to recoup, indemnify	dédommager
	to open one's heart	s'épancher		
			the looking-glass	le miroir
	a third party	un tiers	to extol	vanter
18	the palate	le palais	to freeze	geler
	to rain	pleuvoir	the hail	la grêle
	to snow	neiger	sulphur	du soufre
19	to sigh	soupirer	to burst forth	éclater
	the temptation	la tentation	suddenly	tout à coup
	bitter	amer	the wrath	le courroux
20	a scoundrel	un sacripant	beyond	au delà de
	to bequeath	léguer	insufficient	insuffisant
	agent, instrument	le suppôt	the novel	le roman

Key to Words and Phrases 5

8	to play a part	jouer un rôle
	to be fond of heroes	en tenir pour les héros
	if the case should arise . .	le cas échéant . .
9	the end of the little finger	le bout du petit doigt
	a great many stupid things	bien des sottises
	he knows how to use it	il sait s'en servir
10	to struggle with . .	être aux prises avec . .
	they weary me	ils m'ennuient
	to cut into little bits	couper en petits morceaux
11	to catch some one up	rattraper qn.
	to think fit to . .	juger à propos de . .
	to slam the door angrily	frapper la porte avec colère
12	to knit one's brow	froncer le sourcil
	it is not worth while talking about it	ce n'est pas la peine d'en parler
	to shrug one's shoulders	hausser les épaules
13	do not talk nonsense	ne dites pas de sottises
	to lean against the fireplace	s'adosser à la cheminée
	to be dead and buried	être mort et enterré
14	to sit down by some one's side	s'asseoir à côté de qn.
	I have heard her say so	je le lui ai entendu dire
	to clap one's hands	battre des mains
15	it will end by my getting angry	je finirai par me fâcher
	you will repent of it	vous vous en repentirez
	to give some one a lecture (*scolding*)	donner une semonce à qn.
16	to cut off some one's retreat	couper la retraite à qn.
	to pretend to do sg.	faire semblant de faire qc.
	to make a terrible noise	faire un tapage affreux
17	from that time	dès lors
	to dare to open one's mouth	oser ouvrir la bouche
	for whole hours	durant des heures entières
18	to rub one's hands	se frotter les mains
	to sit down to table	se mettre à table
	in my time	de mon temps
19	not otherwise	pas autrement
	to raise one's eyes to heaven	lever les yeux au ciel
	to give some one a reproachful look	regarder qn. d'un air de reproche
20	to shake one's head	hocher la tête
	to be like some one	ressembler à qn.
	to have nothing to do with it	être hors de cause

19. Elle lui souhaita la bienvenue d'un air maussade ; après quoi elle se rassit tout d'une pièce.
20. Il y avait des années qu'ils se connaissaient.[1]
21. Je me demandais ce que je ferais si j'étais à sa place.
22. Nous pouvons partir tout de suite ou attendre le prochain train, comme vous voudrez.[2]
23. Vous avez beau essayer, vous ne réussirez pas.
24. Il le fit, ce qui nous surprit tous beaucoup.
25. Je m'en tiens toujours à ce que j'ai dit.
26. Quand vous serez plus âgé, vous ne parlerez pas comme cela.[3]
27. Si vous aviez vécu de leur temps, ils vous auraient arraché la langue et les ongles.

II

1. A peine[4] nous fûmes-nous assis que la porte s'ouvrit
2. Pensez-vous qu'il y ait personne qui accepte ?
3. Je frappai la table du poing, ce qui me fit grand mal.
4. Que dira-t-il, quand il viendra et qu'il verra cela ?
5. C'est une telle bagatelle qu'il ne vaut pas la peine d'en parler.
6. Je veux qu'il m'aime assez pour ne pas être satisfait quand je suis malheureuse.
7. " Que[5] vous êtes peu logique ! " s'écria-t-elle.
8. Ils sont morts depuis si longtemps[6] qu'ils ne devraient guère vous intéresser.
9. Comment aimeriez-vous que j'en fisse autant ?[7]
10. Vous vous seriez entendus à merveille.
11. N'aviez-vous jamais entendu parler de lui auparavant ?
12. S'il ne l'aime pas, elle, en revanche il aime son argent.[8]
13. Nous le lui avons entendu dire à lui-même.
14. J'ai peur qu'ils ne devinent la cause de notre absence.
15. Il n'est pas sûr que je ne fasse pas de même[9] un jour ou l'autre.
16. " Il est évident que vous avez raison," dit-elle en battant des mains.
17. N'est-ce pas vous que j'ai rencontré ce matin ?
18. Vous auriez dû arriver bien plus tôt.[10]
19. Vous avez dû être très fatigué.

[1] Or *Ils se connaissaient depuis des années.*
[2] Or *comme il vous plaira.*
[3] Or *ainsi, de la sorte, de cette façon.*
[4] Or *Nous nous étions à peine . .*
[5] Or *Comme*, or *Combien.*
[6] Or *Il y a si longtemps qu'ils sont morts.*
[7] Or *que je fisse de même.*
[8] Or *sa fortune, ses écus.*
[9] Or *que je ne le fasse pas.*
[10] Or *de bien meilleure heure.*

ment en [1] moi, et j'entrais dans des discussions qui faisaient presque perdre l'esprit au pauvre curé.[2] Pendant nos leçons, les choses allaient bien tant qu'il s'agissait des devoirs à corriger, car, quoiqu'ils fussent aussi courts que possible,[3] ils étaient toujours soignés. Mais après cela nous passions à la lecture. Or le curé aimait beaucoup les héros de l'antiquité et admirait leur [4] courage physique. Pour ma part,[5] je ne partageais ni ses goûts ni son admiration, mais j'éprouvais une antipathie prononcée pour les Grecs et les Romains. Le curé avait beau se fâcher et raisonner, je le taquinais, je l'ennuyais et le harcelais, et il finissait par dire : " Mademoiselle de Lavalle, vous repasserez vos empereurs romains, et vous prendrez soin [6] de ne pas confondre Tibère avec Vespasien " ; et là-dessus il s'en allait en trottinant, sans dire un mot de plus.

CHAPTER II

III

Un jour, le curé et moi, nous nous étions à peine assis à notre table [7] que la porte s'ouvrit et que Perrine entra dans un état de grande agitation. " Le feu est-il à la maison ? demanda ma tante.— Non, madame, mais la vache est dans le champ d'orge et les lapins dans le potager." Quand ma tante se fut précipitée dehors à la suite de la domestique, je me tournai vers le curé et lui dis : " Croyez-vous qu'il y ait dans le monde entier une femme aussi abominable que ma tante ? Savez-vous ce qu'elle a fait hier ? Elle m'a battue ! Mais j'ai trouvé le moyen de me venger." Je m'assis à côté de lui. " Vous avez entendu parler de mon oncle de Pavol ? Eh bien ! ma tante craint par-dessus tout que je ne me plaigne à M. de Pavol et que je ne lui demande de me prendre chez lui. Je la menacerai d'écrire à mon oncle." En ce moment ma tante entra comme un ouragan. " Reine, venez ici," cria-t-elle. Je lui fis un grand salut, et, sautant sur une chaise à son grand ébahissement, je me laissai glisser par la fenêtre dans le jardin. Le soir,[8] pendant le dîner, elle avait l'air aussi gracieux qu'un [9] dogue

[1] Or *chez.*
[2] Or *qui mettaient le pauvre curé à l'envers.*
[3] Or *le plus courts possible.*
[4] Or *dont il admirait le . .*
[5] Or *Pour moi*, or *quant à moi.*
[6] Or *vous ferez en sorte.*
[7] Or *à peine étions-nous installés à notre table, le curé et moi.*
[8] *Le soir*, not *Dans la soirée*, to avoid *dans . . pendant . .*
[9] Or *l'air gracieux d'un . .*

A Specimen Copy of the First, and Second Year will be presented on application

Crown 8vo. *First Year*, 1*s.* 6*d.* *Second Year*, 3*s.* 6*d.*

MACMILLAN'S
PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COURSE

BY

G. E. FASNACHT

FORMERLY ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL

First Year. Containing Easy Lessons and Rules on the Regular Accidence. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Second Year. Containing Conversational Lessons in Systematic Accidence and Elementary Syntax. With Philological Illustrations and Elementary Etymological Vocabulary. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Educational Times—"We have carefully examined these little books, and have no hesitation in recommending them. They are short, handy, and useful; and they seem to us to contain all that is wanted. Teachers should make a note of this work."

Schoolmaster—"There is much in these small volumes to commend them to the favourable notice of teachers. . . . The books before us present several features of special excellence. More than ordinary care has been bestowed upon the gradual unfolding of grammatical difficulties exemplified in the exercises. The philological comments, too, will be found helpful. . . . This course seems well suited to its purpose, and we cordially recommend a trial of its merits."

School Board Chronicle—"The pupil is furnished with the materials for working little German exercises into English and short English sentences into German. . . . The study of German certainly looks more interesting than usual in these pages. There are full vocabularies at the end of the volumes."

TEACHER'S COMPANION TO "MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COURSE." With copious Notes, Hints for different Renderings, Synonyms, Philological Remarks, etc. By G. E. FASNACHT. First Year, 4*s.* 6*d.* net. Second Year, 4*s.* 6*d.* net.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

Sieben und dreißigſte Stunde.—Singular.

(1)	*N.*	**Ich** arbeite.		*I* work.
	A.	Er lobt	**mich.**	He praises *me.*
	G.	Er bedarf	**mein(er).**	He is in need *of -me.*
	D.	Er antwortet	**mir.**	He replies *to-me.*
(2)	*N.*	**Du** warteſt.		*Thou* waitest.
	A.	Ich liebe	**dich.**	I love *thee.*
	G.	Ich gedenke	**dein(er).**	I think *of-thee.*
	D.	Ich ſage	**dir.**	I tell *to-thee.*
(3)	*N.*	**Er** ſpielt.		*He* plays.
	A.	Du ſiehſt	**ihn.**	You see *him.*
	G.	Du gedenkſt	**ſein(er).**[1]	You think *of-him.*
	D.	Du gibſt	**ihm.**	You give *to-him.*
	N.	**Sie** ſpielt.		*She* plays.
	A.	Er ſieht	**ſie.**	He sees *her.*
	G.	Er gedenkt	**ihrer.**	He thinks *of-her.*
	D.	Er giebt	**ihr.**	He gives *to-her.*
	N.	**Es** ſpielt.		*It* plays.
	A.	Ich ſehe	**es.**	I see *it.*
	G.	Ich gedenke	**ſein(er).**[2]	I think *of-it.*
	D.	Ich gebe	**ihm.**	I give *to-it.*

Plural.

(1)	*N.*	**Wir** arbeiten.		*We* work.
	A.	Er lobt	**uns.**	He praises *us.*
	G.	Er bedarf	**unſer.**	He is in need *of-us.*
	D.	Er antwortet	**uns.**	He replies *to-us.*
(2)	*N.*	**Ihr** wartet (**Sie** warten).		*You* wait.
	A.	Ich liebe	**euch (Sie).**	I love *you.*
	G.	Ich gedenke	**eurer (Ihrer).**	I think *of-you.*
	D.	Ich ſage	**euch (Ihnen).**	I tell *to-you.*
(3)	*N.*	**Sie** ſpielen.		*They* play.
	A.	Er ſieht	**ſie.**	He sees *them.*
	G.	Er gedenkt	**ihrer.**	He thinks *of-them.*
	D.	Er gibt	**ihnen.**	He gives *to-them.*

1 The shorter forms **mein, dein, ſein,** are often used in *poetry* and *idioms.*

2 **Seiner** can only be used in reference to *persons*; if referring to *things,* **deſſen, deſſelben, davon,** must be used:—

Ich bin **deſſen** gewiß. I am sure *of-it.*

Ich weiß nichts **davon.** I know nothing *about-it.*

PRACTICE :—

Es iſt **an mir** [1] zu ſpielen,	It is *my turn* to play,
es war **an dir** zu ſprechen, 2c.	It was *thy turn* to speak, etc.
Es ſchmeckt **mir,**	I relish it,
es ſchmeckte **dir,** 2c.	You liked it, etc.

[1] Cf. French :—C'est *à moi* à jouer, etc.

der Lenz (poet.),	*spring, lent.*	**kühlen,**	*to cool.*
vergiß (Imper. of **vergeſſen,**		**erquicken,**	*to refresh.*
Ex. 42),	*to forget.*	**wärmen,**	*to warm.*
fehlen (Dat.),	*to miss, to ail, to be wanting.*	**wie geht's?**	*how are you?*
		es geht mir gut,	*I am well.*
erfreuen,	*to rejoice.*	**unartig,**	*ill-bred, naughty.*
gar nichts,	*nothing at-all.*	**dann,**	*then* (adv.)

A. 1. Vergiß mein nicht!—Ich werde dein nie vergeſſen. 2. Was iſt Ihnen begegnet?—Ein großes Unglück iſt mir begegnet. 3. Was fehlt dir, mein liebes Kind?—Mir fehlt gar nichts. 4. Erinnerſt du dich ſeiner noch?—Ja, ſehr wohl. 5. Geht es ihr gut?—Ja, es geht ihr ſehr gut. 6. Erwarteſt du einen Brief von ihnen?—Nein, ſie erwarten einen von mir. 7. Willſt du mir gehorchen oder nicht?—Ich will Ihnen gerne gehorchen. 8. Es fehlt ihm an Mut. 9. Im Lenz erfreu' ich dich, Im Herbſt erquick' ich dich,
Im Sommer kühl' ich dich, Im Winter wärm' ich dich!

B. 1. What had happened to him?—Nothing good (**Gutes**). 2. Does he remember me?—No, he does not remember you. 3. Does he expect a letter from us?—No, he is expecting one from her. 4. That naughty child will not obey us.—Then punish him. 5. I thank them. 6. I wish you happiness and a long life. 7. It is their turn to speak. 8. What ails him?—Nothing ails him. 9. We don't relish it at all.

C. 1. These German exercises are not difficult. 2. This bookseller has old and new books. 3. Do not forget thy old friends. 4. The true happiness of men consists in the conscientious fulfilment of their duties. 5. Two thousand five hundred and eighty-seven soldiers have returned to-day. 6. I think (believe) it is a quarter to nine. 7. He is very well.

Exercise XX. *The Impersonal Passive Voice.*

Only *Transitive* Verbs that govern the *Accusative* can, as a rule, be used in the *Personal Passive:* whilst—

(*a*) *Intransitive* Verbs, and (*b*) *Verbs that govern the Dative* of the Person, can only be used in the *Impersonal* Passive Voice in German—

Active.	*Passive.*
(*a*) **Man läutet** um zehn Uhr zur Kirche.	**Es wird** um zehn Uhr zur Kirche **geläutet.***
They ring the bells for church at ten o'clock.	
Man tanzte und **ſang bis** ſpät in die Nacht. They danced and sang till late in the night.	**Es wurde** bis ſpät in die Nacht / or, **Bis** ſpät in die Nacht **wurde*** } **getanzt** und **geſungen.**
(*b*) **Man ſetzt** mir **nach.** They pursue me.	**Es wird** mir **nachgeſetzt;** / or, Mir **wird nachgeſetzt.*** I am pursued.
Man erlaubte ihm zu gehen. They allowed him to go. (cf. Fr. 'Il lui a été permis de partir.')	**Es wurde** ihm } **erlaubt zu** / or, Ihm **wurde*** } gehen. He was allowed to go.

* If the sentence does not begin with the Verb, the gram. subj. **es** is omitted; as,

Um Zehn Uhr **wird** zur Kirche **geläutet.**

A. 1. Es iſt keinem römiſchen Prieſter erlaubt zu heiraten. 2. Wird hier deutſch geſprochen?—Ja, hier ſpricht man deutſch. 3. Es iſt nach Ihnen gefragt worden. 4. Wurde Ihnen erlaubt zu bleiben?—Nein, im Gegenteil, es wurde mir verboten zu bleiben. 5. Wurde er nicht ſchwer verwundet?—Ja, es wurde ſogleich nach dem Arzt geſchickt.

B. 1. The slave was pursued. 2. That is not to be expected. 3. Are you allowed to do that?—No, we are strictly forbidden to do it. 4. Do you know that you are being looked for everywhere?—No, I did not know it. 5. We were promised great things. 6. Is the new German-English dictionary already printed?—No, but it is being printed now. 7. When will it be published?—I think it will be published in a fortnight. 8. I was ordered to translate three pages. 9. There was quarrelling and wrangling.

Exercise XXI. *Résumé of the Cases in which the English Passive Voice is rendered by a different construction in German:—*

He *is said* (supposed) *to be* very rich.	Er ſoll ſehr reich ſein. Ex. xvi. (Il *doit* être...).
It *cannot be denied.*	Es läßt ſich nicht läugnen. Ex. xviii.
He *is* not *allowed* to go. (Il ne lui est pas permis...).	Er darf nicht gehen. Ex. xvii. / Es iſt ihm nicht erlaubt zu gehen. Ex. xx.
I had him *punished.* / I ordered him *to be punished.*	Ich ließ ihn beſtrafen. Ex. xviii. (Je le fis *punir*.)
I *have been* told (On m'a dit).	Man hat mir geſagt. / Ich habe mir ſagen laſſen.
That *is understood.*	Das verſteht ſich (Cela s'entend).
The thunder *was heard* to roll.	Man hörte den Donner rollen.

By the *Gerundive*, see pp. 123–5

What is *to be done?*	Was iſt zu thun?
There is nothing *to be gained* by it.	Dabei iſt nichts zu gewinnen.
The physician *is to* (must) *be sent* for.	Man muß den Arzt holen laſſen. / Es muß nach dem Arzt geſchickt werden.
What shall I *be thought* of?	Was wird man von mir denken?

Recapitulation:—

1. They are said to have done their work very well. 2. The dark clouds were seen to pass over the mountains. 3. The master ordered the passive voice to be learnt by heart. 4. It could not be imagined that it was true. 5. There was nothing to be hoped for. 6. What would you be thought of, if you were to do that? 7. We are not allowed to be from home, when once the gates are shut. 8. If you were disposed to do your work well, you would be rewarded. 9. There was nobody to be found. 10. I am (supply—*it*) not accustomed to be treated thus.

A Specimen Copy of the First Course will be presented on application

Crown 8vo. First Course. 2s. 6d.

MACMILLAN'S COURSE

OF

GERMAN COMPOSITION

BY

G. E. FASNACHT

FORMERLY ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL

FIRST COURSE. Containing Parallel German-English Extracts and Parallel English-German Syntax. *2s. 6d.*

Scottish Leader—"The first part of the book is occupied by parallel passages in English and German, intended to familiarise the student with the points of similarity and difference in the structure and methods of composition of the two languages; in the second part we have a series of simple English passages for translation into German without other help than is furnished by footnotes. The third part is a parallel English-German Syntax, in which numerous practical illustrations of the grammatical rules of both languages are grouped together so as to bring out their points of identity and contrast. The principle of the book is eminently sound and scientific."

Dublin Evening Mail—"The difficulties of composition which a young learner has to encounter when left to the questionable aid which his dictionary affords him, are entirely surmounted by the author's method, the simplicity of which, we have no doubt, will cause his work to be widely used."

TEACHER'S COMPANION TO "MACMILLAN'S GERMAN COMPOSITION, FIRST COURSE." By G. E. FASNACHT. Globe 8vo. *4s. 6d.* net.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

202

12. Die Sphinx.

Die Sphinx soll ein gewisses Wundergeschöpf gewesen sein, welches den Kopf und die Hände eines Mädchens, den Körper eines Hundes, die Flügel eines Vogels, die Stimme eines Menschen, die Klauen eines Löwen, den Schwanz eines Drachen hatte. Sie saß auf einem Felsen nahe bei Theben in Böotien, und pflegte den Vorübergehenden so schwere Rätsel aufzugeben, daß sie dieselben nicht lösen konnten. Alsdann flog sie zu ihnen hinzu und riß sie zu sich auf den Felsen, und zerfleischte sie entweder mit den Klauen, oder stürzte sie vom Felsen hinab, so daß sie jämmerlich umkamen.

Als einst Oedipus in jene Gegenden gekommen war, legte ihm die Sphinx folgendes Rätsel vor: welches Geschöpf am Morgen vierfüßig, am Mittage zweifüßig, am Abende dreifüßig wäre?—Oedipus deutete das Rätsel und sagte, daß es der Mensch sei. Denn dieser ist in der Kindheit, auf Händen und Füßen kriechend, vierfüßig; wann er Jüngling und Mann geworden ist, zweifüßig; im Alter aber dreifüßig, weil nämlich die Greise auf einen Stab gestützt, einherzugehen pflegen. Als Oedipus so das Rätsel gelöst hatte, stürzte sich die erzürnte Sphinx vom Felsen herab und kam selbst um.

13. Tantalus.

Tantalus war den Göttern so lieb, daß Jupiter ihm seine geheimen Plane anvertraute und ihn zu den Mahlzeiten der Götter zuließ. Aber jener pflegte dasjenige, was er bei Jupiter gehört hatte, den Sterblichen zu verraten. Wegen dieses Frevels wurde er in die Unterwelt verstoßen, wo er im Wasser stehend immer dürstet. Denn so oft er einen Trunk Wasser nehmen will, weicht das Wasser zurück. Ebenso hängen Baumfrüchte über dem Kopfe desselben, aber so oft er dieselben zu pflücken versucht, werden die Zweige in die Höhe entrückt und täuschen den Hungernden.

12. The Sphinx.

The Sphinx was a fabulous animal which the ancients usually represented with the head and hands of a maiden, the body of a winged dog or lion, and the tail of a dragon. It was also supposed to be endowed with a human voice.

Seated (§ 113) on a rock, the Sphinx used to put difficult riddles to every Theban that passed by; and whoever was unable to solve them was either torn to pieces or hurled from the rock. Many Thebans had already miserably perished, when Œdipus came into that neighbourhood. To him the monster put a riddle which ran as follows (§ 115): "There is a creature which in the morning walks on four feet, at noon on two feet, and in the evening on three feet —what (§ 134) animal is it?"—"It is man," answered Œdipus, "who in infancy crawls upon all fours, in manhood stands erect upon two feet, and in old age totters along leaning on a staff." So angry was the Sphinx at seeing (§ 103) herself outwitted that she threw herself down from the rock and was killed on the spot.

13. Tantalus.

Tantalus had endeared himself to Jupiter so much that he was admitted to the banquets of the Olympian gods. Unfortunately he betrayed to (the) mortals the secret plans which the king of gods had entrusted to him. This indiscretion proved his ruin. Banished to the nether world, he was doomed to suffer raging thirst, while standing (§ 98) in the midst of a lake. For whenever he attempted to slake his thirst, the treacherous water receded. And whenever, pressed by hunger, he endeavoured to reach the tempting fruit which hung over his head, the branches would (§ 26) shrink back and mock his ravenous hunger.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Crown 8vo. First Year. 2s. 6d.

MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE GERMAN READER

BY

G. E. FASNACHT

FORMERLY ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL

I. FIRST YEAR. Containing an Introduction to the German Order of Words. With copious Examples, Extracts from German Authors in Prose and Poetry, Notes and Vocabularies. 2s. 6d.

School Board Chronicle—"Mr. Fasnacht's first year's *Progressive German Reader* takes the work up at the most elementary stage. The pupil begins by reading the most simple sentences, showing the 'direct order of words,' and illustrating the rudimentary construction of the German sentence. . . . Then come upwards of a couple of hundred pages of notes and vocabulary, forming a key, with abundant elucidation, to every line and word in the exercises."

Journal of Education—"The passages are well chosen, not hackneyed, simple and interesting. Full help is given; two-thirds of the book are notes and vocabulary. An Introduction gives clearly the chief rules for the order of words. A very thorough piece of work."

Schoolmaster—"Mr. Fasnacht here presents the young student with about one hundred pages of selections from German authors, carefully graduated, and provided with excellent notes and a copious vocabulary. The Introduction, on the order of words, gives such information, with numerous examples, as would be likely to be useful to those commencing to write German, and floundering helplessly amid the intricacies of the German sentence. The selections are both in prose and verse, and give a fair idea of the character of German literature in its simpler forms. Mr. Fasnacht has done well to make this first book very interesting. Pupils will be anxious to press on with the lessons for the sake of the captivating matter they contain."

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

A.—The Dependent Clause AFTER *its Principal Clause:—*

Der Mann iſt aller Ehren wert,
Der alle Ding' zum Beſten kehrt.

Keine That geſchieht, die der Herr nicht ſiehet.

Eiferſucht iſt eine Leidenſchaft,
Die mit Eifer ſucht, was Leiden ſchafft.

Das Glück hilft denen die ſich ſelbſt helfen.
Gebet dem Kaiſer was des Kaiſer's iſt.

Wer einmal lügt, dem glaubt man nicht,
Und wenn er auch die Wahrheit ſpricht.

Treue iſt ein ſeltner Gaſt,
Halt' ihn feſt wo du ihn haſt.

Wie ihr die Sprache auch wendet und dreht,
Die beſte Sprach' iſt die vom Herzen geht.

Man muß das Eiſen ſchmieden, weil es warm iſt.

Frage nicht was Andre machen;
Acht' auf deine eignen Sachen.

Wohin geht man, wenn man zwölf Jahre alt iſt?—Ins dreizehnte.

Der Böſe iſt nie ſchlimmer als wenn er fromm thut.

Tröpflein muß zur Erde fallen,
Muß das zarte Bäumchen netzen,
Muß mit Quellen weiter wallen,
Muß das Fiſchlein auch ergötzen,
Muß im Bach' die Mühle ſchlagen,
Muß im Strom' die Schiffe tragen,
Und wo wären denn die Meere,
Wenn nicht erſt das Tröpflein wäre?

Die grüne Stadt.

Ich weiß euch eine ſchöne Stadt,
Die lauter grüne Häuſer hat.
Die Häuſer, die ſind groß und klein,
Und wer nur will, der darf hinein.

Die Straßen, die ſind freilich krumm;
Sie führen hier und dort herum;
Doch Gaſſen, die gerad ausgeh'n,
Die ſind langweilig anzuſehen.

Die Wege, die ſind, weit und breit,
Mit bunten Blumen überſtreut.
Das Pflaſter, das iſt ſanft und weich,
Und ſeine Farb' den Häuſern gleich.

Es wohnen viele Leute dort,
Und alle lieben ihren Ort;
Ganz deutlich ſieht man dies daraus,
Daß Jeder ſingt in ſeinem Haus.

Die Leute die ſind alle klein,
Denn es ſind lauter Vögelein.
Nun, ſagt, wie heißt die grüne Stadt,
Die lauter grüne Häuſer hat? Ortlepp.

B.—The Dependent Clause BEFORE *its Principal Clause:*—

A Dependent Clause supplies, as we have seen in the Preliminaries (p. xix), the place of a Substantive, Adjective, or Adverb; as such, if placed before its Principal Clause, it affects the order of words in the latter in the same manner as an Object, Complement, Adverb, &c., introducing a Principal Clause. Compare—

Vor Sonnenaufgang Bevor die Sonne aufging	} glühten[1] die Gipfel der Alpen.
Before sunrise Before the sun rose	} *glowed* the peaks of the Alps.

[1] Notice that this placing of the Dependent Clause before its Principal Clause causes the Verb of the latter to follow close upon the Verb of the former. Generally, however, a Conjunction or Adverb, correlative to the term which introduces the first clause, is placed before the latter:—

Wie du ſäeſt, ſo wirſt du ernten.—Wo ein Aas iſt, da ſammeln ſich die Adler.—Wer den Acker pflegt, den pflegt der Acker.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.
Key, for Teachers only. Price 3s. 6d. *net.*

A PUBLIC SCHOOL
GERMAN PRIMER

COMPRISING

A FIRST READER, GRAMMAR, AND EXERCISES

WITH

SOME REMARKS ON GERMAN PRONUNCIATION AND FULL VOCABULARIES

BY

OTTO SIEPMANN

HEAD OF THE MODERN LANGUAGE DEPARTMENT AT CLIFTON COLLEGE

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved.

208

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

3. Die Ferien

Wir haben Ferien gehabt. Ich bin in der Schweiz gewesen. Es war sehr schön auf den Bergen. Wir hatten schönes Wetter und sind fast die ganze Zeit im Freien gewesen. Ich traf in Luzern eine Schar von Schulfreunden. Sie waren auf dem Rigi gewesen; aber sie hatten keine Aussicht gehabt. Sie fuhren mit dem Dampfer über den See. Ich weiß nicht, was nachher aus ihnen geworden ist. Wir reisten von Luzern nach Interlaken. Auf der Reise bemerkten wir mit Besorgnis, daß das Wetter trübe wurde, und es fielen schon einige Tropfen. Wir dachten, das schöne Wetter würde nun vorüber sein; aber über Nacht war der Himmel wieder ganz klar geworden. Es war nur ein Gewitter gewesen, und wir waren froh, daß unsre Besorgnis unbegründet gewesen war.

Ich ging ins Gebirge und bestieg das Wetterhorn. Die Aussicht war wunderschön. Je höher ich stieg und je müder ich wurde, desto großartiger wurde das Panorama. Es war unten ganz warm; aber allmählich wurde es kälter, und auf dem Gipfel würde ich erfroren sein, wenn ich nicht mein Plaid bei mir gehabt hätte.—Wir werden die nächsten Ferien bei meinem Onkel in Schottland sein. Ich würde lieber nach Deutschland gehen; aber aus diesem stillen Wunsche wird nichts werden. Mein Bruder aus Indien wird Urlaub haben; er wird auch dort sein. Er ist Offizier geworden. Er wird bald Hauptmann werden. Er würde es schon voriges Jahr geworden sein; aber er ist lange krank gewesen. Er ist beinahe dreißig Jahre alt. Wir sind alle gespannt, ihn wiederzusehen. Er wird sich wundern, daß ich so groß geworden bin.

Grammar.—Auxiliary Verbs, §§ 11-14, pp. 108-113. *Exercise* 3, p. 193.

Oral Practice.—(1) Wo bist du in den Ferien gewesen? (2) Was für Wetter habt ihr gehabt? (3) Was ist aus deinen Freunden geworden? (4) Wie war die Aussicht vom Wetterhorn? (5) Wo wirst du die nächsten Ferien zubringen? (6) Warum gehst du nicht nach Deutschland?

4. Conditional Present and Perf. of ſein, haben, werden (in interrog. neg. sent.)

5. Imperative of ſein, haben, werden.

Exercise.—Translate: 1. I am getting tired. 2. He will become ill. 3. Where have you (*Sing.*) been in the holidays? 4. We shall not go to Scotland. 5. It is getting cold. 6. You (*Sing.*) have grown very tall. 7. What has become of your friend? 8. He is going to be (become) an officer. 9. We have had no view. 10. I should be anxious. 11. The sky was becoming clear again. 12. You would have been very tired. 13. Will he be there? 14. He is going to have furlough. 15. Had you not your rug with you? 16. The wind has turned quite cold. 17. I should have been very glad. 18. Had not your anxiety been unfounded? 19. Who is there? 20. It is I. 21. Is it you? 22. No, it is he.

Reproduction.—They are now having holidays. They have been to Switzerland. They have had fine weather all the time. We are going to Lucerne next holidays. We shall ascend the Rigi. I hope that we shall have fine weather, for the view from the top is magnificent. My brother from India will go with us. He would rather go to Germany. We are longing to see him again. He became captain when he was thirty. I too shall become a soldier.

Exercise 4

N.B.—See List of Strong Verbs, pp. 277-279, for Drill.

Drill.—1. Present and Imperfect Passive of loben, lieben, beſiegen.

2. Perfect and Future Passive of fragen, beſchenken (neg.)

3. Pluperf. and Future Perf. Passive of beſiegen, ehren (interrog.)

4. Pres. and Perf. Cond. Passive of lieben, bewundern (interrog. neg.)

CHAPTER XIV.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

(1) Dieſer Teppich iſt klein; — This carpet is small;
aber dieſer iſt kleiner, — but this one is smaller,
und dies iſt der kleinſte. — and this is the smallest.

Die Äpfel ſind jetzt billig; — Apples are cheap now;
die Birnen werden noch billiger; — pears will get cheaper yet;
die Kirſchen ſind im Juli am billigſten. — cherries are cheapest in July.

Der kleine Teppich; der kleinere Teppich; der kleinſte Teppich.
die billigen Äpfel; die billiger(e)n Birnen; die billigſten Kirſchen.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
klein (small)	kleiner	kleinſt (der, die, das kleinſte; am kleinſten)
billig (cheap)	billiger	billigſt (der billigſte; am billigſten)

(2) **Adjectives in e, er, el, en.**

trübe (dull, not clear)	trüber	trübſt (der trübſte; am trübſten)
munter (gay)	muntrer	munterſt (der munterſte; am munterſten)
eitel (vain)	eitler	eitelſt (der eitelſte; am eitelſten)
beſcheiden (modest)	beſcheidner	beſcheidenſt (der beſcheidenſte; am beſcheidenſten)

(3) **Adjectives ending with a dental (d, t), sibilant (s, ß, ſch, z) or vowel.**

mild (mild)	milder	mildeſt (der mildeſte; am mildeſten)
laut (loud)	lauter	lauteſt (der lauteſte; am lauteſten)
ſüß (sweet)	ſüßer	ſüßeſt (der ſüßeſte; am ſüßeſten)
hübſch (pretty)	hübſcher	hübſcheſt (der hübſcheſte; am hübſcheſten)
ſtolz (proud)	ſtolzer	ſtolzeſt (der ſtolzeſte; am ſtolzeſten)
frei (free)	freier	freiſt (der freiſte; am freiſten) *or* freieſt (der freieſte; am freieſten)

(4) **Participles.**

reizend (charming)	reizender	reizendſt (der reizendſte; am reizendſten)
gebildet (cultured)	gebildeter	gebildetſt (der gebildetſte; am gebildetſten)
but geſucht (sought after)	geſuchter	geſuchteſt (der geſuchteſte; am geſuchteſten)

85. Regular Comparison.—The degrees of Comparison are formed in German—

by adding **er** to form the Comparative, *e.g.*—

klein (small), Comp. kleiner

by adding **ſt** to form the Superlative, *e.g.* :—

klein (small), Sup. kleinſt
billig (cheap), Sup. billigſt.

86. Comparison of Adjectives in e, er, el.—(*a*) Adjectives ending in **e** are treated as though the **e** were not there, *e.g.* :—

träge (lazy), träger, trägſt
trübe (dull), trüber, trübſt.

(*b*) Adjectives in **er, el, en** generally drop the **e** of their termination in the Comparative, *e.g.* tapfer (brave), tapfrer; edel (noble), edler; offen (open), offner, but not in the Superlative, *e.g.* tapferſt, edelſt, offenſt.

87. Superlative in eſt.—(*a*) The superlative of adjectives ending with a dental (**d**, **t**) or a sibilant (**ß**, **ß**, **ſch**, **z**) is formed in **eſt**, *e.g.* mild (mild), Superl. mildeſt; kalt (cold), kälteſt; ſüß (sweet), ſüßeſt; hübſch (pretty), hübſcheſt; ſtolz (proud), ſtolzeſt.

(*b*) In colloquial German, superlatives like der heißte Tag (the hottest day), die ſüßte Birne (the sweetest pear), are not unusual.

(*c*) Adjectives ending with a vowel can take **eſt** but take more frequently **ſt**, *e.g.* Das freiſte Volk (the freest nation), mein treuſter Freund (my most faithful friend).

Note.—Participles whose last syllable is unaccented always form the superlative in **ſt**, even when ending in **d** or **t**, *e.g.* Das reizendſte Thal (the most charming valley), das gebildetſte Volk (the most civilised nation), but mein geliebteſter Freund (my most beloved friend).

88. Equality.—Equality is expressed in German as in English by certain particles placed before the positive, *e.g.* :—

Er iſt ſo groß wie ich (He is as tall as I).
Er iſt nicht ſo alt wie ich (He is not so old as I).
Er iſt ebenſo alt wie ich (He is just as old as I).
Sie ſind alle gleich alt (They are all of the same age).

Note also: Er iſt weniger fleißig als ſein Bruder,
He is less industrious than his brother.
Er iſt minder begabt als ſein Bruder,
He is less gifted than his brother.

PRESS OPINIONS.

Journal of Education.—"Mr. Siepmann says in his preface that 'the present volume is an attempt to apply the principles of the *Neuere Richtung* to the teaching of German in public schools, as far as this is feasible under existing circumstances. **The attempt is successful, and we have here a book which, in the hands of a competent teacher, will prove a most satisfactory introduction to German.**

"The *Primer* contains several novel features. Most important, perhaps, is the arrangement by which reader, grammar, and exercises are all in one, and closely dependent on each other, though each is assigned a separate part of the book. First, there is the reader: a series of extracts, many of them written for the special purpose of leading up to some section of the grammar, which is, in the first place, to be deduced from the text. It may be noted in passing that Mr. Siepmann has shown great skill in writing these pieces, and that they are by no means as artificial as one might expect. At the end of each *Lesestück* are a number of questions which the pupils are to answer from the text; this will be found to encourage them in the colloquial use of the language. **The grammar is clearly expressed.** As a rule, the left-hand page contains the paradigms, &c., and remarks suggested by them are given on the opposite page. **The pupil is not confused by long lists of exceptions: Mr. Siepmann has rightly considered it more important to dwell on leading principles and rules.** The third section consists of exercises. Most of these are in three parts, drill (bearing on the section of the grammar which has been learnt), detached sentences (based on the reader), and a 'reproduction' (an English paraphrase of the *Lesestück*). The translation into German is to be done *vivâ voce* in form before being written as part of the home work.

"Mr. Siepmann has had the happy thought of giving a complete duplicate set of passages for reading, and of corresponding exercises. This will give a little variety to the teacher, and be very useful in the case of pupils who, through illness or idleness, have not been moved up.

"**We recommend this book very warmly, as being, indeed, the first attempt to introduce in our public schools some of the more important results arrived at by the German reformers in modern language teaching.** The 'Parallel Grammar Series' embodies some of these; but the idea that all languages, whether dead or living, can best be learnt according to one particular scheme is by no means beyond dispute. It is, further, an undoubted advantage to have the three sections united in one book, and the same vocabulary serving for them all.

"**This book is well printed, the German type being large and clear;** the proofs have been read with care, and the new orthography is carried through. We have noticed very few slips, and those of slight importance."

School Board Chronicle.—"Mr. Siepmann's *Primer* **has qualities** which lead us to commend it with emphasis to the attention of class teachers of German. **Without rushing to any extreme, the author has produced what we think will commend itself to experienced and open-minded teachers as a very practical and attractive modification of methods that are becoming antiquated, and one uniting in a very large**

degree the force of imitation, with those of reasoning and of memory. It is well enough, no doubt, to speak of learning a foreign language as one learns the mother tongue. But, as Mr. Siepmann very reasonably points out, the English student of German is generally something more than a little child when he begins his task. At fourteen or fifteen years of age and upwards there are other faculties than those of imitation which can be brought to bear. The aim of this 'Primer,' as the author, with studied moderation, terms it, appears to be to unite all the available faculties of the mind in obtaining a knowledge of the language, which shall be serviceable at an early stage, and at the same time sound and capable of progressive improvement. The work is in three parts. But these are wholly interdependent, and the progress made in each is simultaneous.

"The *Reader* is the nucleus of the book. It is intended to form an introduction to the German language for boys or girls of about fourteen, and aims at gradually evolving the more elementary points of accidence and those rules of syntax which are indispensable even to beginners. The *Grammar* collects and systematises the phenomena of accidence and syntax so evolved. The *Exercises* apply to what has been learnt in the Reader and in the Grammar. This is done partly by Drill in accidence, partly in the shape of separate sentences. But as a language is acquired not merely by a process of logical reasoning but also by imitation, a continuous passage has been added to each exercise, with the object of developing what is called in German '**Sprachgefuhl.**'

"That is the author's own statement of the plan, in general, of the work. Its purpose as a Primer is, however, served very appreciably also by the introductory section on German sounds, letters, characters, and other primary elements. Quite of a piece with the careful and practical character of the whole, are the interesting and useful explanations of the preface, which may be regarded as addressed primarily to teachers, but also to practical educationists at large. The points which the author has held chiefly in mind, in building up this elementary course, are summed up into five. These are—(1) The close interdependence of Grammar, Reader, and Exercises; (2) The inductive method of working up from example to rule before formulating the rules themselves, and descending again from rule to example; (3) The comparatively elementary character of the Grammar, and the comparatively advanced character of the Reader, as contrasted with most school books now in use; (4) The attention paid to pronunciation, and the endeavour to treat German as a spoken language, without reducing it to a mere vehicle of light conversation; (5) The dual system on which the passages in the Reader have been arranged, so that a boy may remain more than one term in a form or set without having to re-tread his steps. Not less for the purposes of Evening Continuation Schools and the higher standards of Elementary Schools, than for the Public Schools which the author had especially in mind, is such a work of practical interest at the present time."

Education.—"Mr. Siepmann's *German Primer* deserves more than a passing notice. It is a deliberate attempt to introduce into English schools, as far as possible, the principles of the *Neuere Richtung*, which have on the Continent revolutionised the teaching of modern languages.

Type, arrangement, and references are all good and accurate. We have tested them in several ways. This is the only complete book on the new system that we have seen, and we hope its publication will do much to make the early study of the German language more thorough."

The Modern Language Teachers' Guide.—"Every page of this book shows unmistakably that it is the work of a singularly able practical teacher. It is the only book for public school use which consistently carries out the principles of the new method. It will undoubtedly achieve very great success."

Educational News.—"The assistant master at Clifton College has not only formed a satisfactory *Lehrplan*, but has made it possible to carry out his plan practically and livingly. The vocabulary is not a mere lexicon of words and their synonyms. The words are annotated where requisite with historical, geographical, as well as linguistic explanations. This single, useful, and wisely-arranged book contains all that is required for an average school year."

School Guardian.—"The system suggested in the above volume is eminently practical. The book is clear and well arranged, and any teacher who follows Mr. Siepmann's advice should experience no difficulty in giving his pupils a thoroughly sound and practical knowledge of German."

Schoolmaster.—"Mr. Siepmann's book is a useful combination of Reader, Grammar and Exercises. The Reading Lessons begin with very simple sentences and by careful graduation arrive at fairly difficult passages in prose and verse."

Phonetic Journal.—"The plan of duplicating each lesson, for the benefit of dullards who need to be taken twice over the same ground without being nauseated by the same old material, is excellent.

"The Grammar, which covers the usual ground, is much more helpful than most grammars in the matter of declensions."

Western Daily Press.—"Mr. Siepmann's *Primer* is constructed on different lines to the Primers generally in use and will arouse genuine interest.

"The Reader contains simple, but intelligent sentences, short and easy stories, etc., and poetry. The Grammar is concise, and the points to be specially remembered are lucidly explained. In the Exercises the pupil will find not only scope to exercise his knowledge of the language, but much information of a useful kind."

Scotsman.—"It is a thoroughgoing work. It has a good 'Reader'—Grammar, Exercises, and Vocabularies, thus being complete in itself."

Glasgow Herald.—"The system is undoubtedly a good one, it has been carefully worked out, and ought to produce good results."

Oxford Magazine.—"The appearance of this book marks an epoch in the study of modern languages in England. It represents the first serious attempt to introduce into this country, in a form likely to be acceptable, the principles of the Marburg School, whose influence on the continent has been so far-reaching. The author's aim is 'to treat

the language as a living thing and at the same time draw from it some mental discipline and general outline, to impart ease in pronunciation and speech without degrading instruction to lessons in small talk and conversation.' The Primer is divided into three parts—Reader, Grammar, and Exercises—and these divisions stand in close interdependence with a coincident vocabulary. Practice precedes abstract rules. On a passage of the Reader are based conversation, grammar, and exercises, and endless variation suggests itself to a competent teacher. We fear, however, that the Englishman who '*hears* a German lesson' and deems that to be instruction in the German tongue, will curse Vietor, Bréal, Siepmann, and all their works.

"We have here a rational method. The adoption of this system would speedily effect an incredible change in the attainments of the British schoolboy, and aid in the solution of the problem which is constantly forced upon our attention, viz., how to induce the young hopeful to learn something of and in a foreign language.

"We hope that a second year's Course will soon be published."

Educational Review.—"As regards the grammar we heartily agree with Mr. Siepmann's statement that most German Courses are overcrowded with rules; he, himself, has avoided the mistake, though dealing fully with essentials.

"The Primer seems highly practical, and is carefully worked out."

Saturday Review.—"Mr. Otto Siepmann has skilfully combined a scientific and educational grammar (not mere reference tables) with a German 'Reader.' To this 'Reader' are appended English exercises, to be used chiefly for the reproduction of German sentences which have previously been read in the 'Reader'—a highly commendable method, because a boy's mind is thus saturated with the form of German sentences before he is set to translate English sentences into German. Another point in Mr. Siepmann's method strikes us as worthy of imitation—namely, his oral drill. At the end of every passage in the 'Reader' he prints a set of German questions to be answered in the full German sentences which can be constructed from the passage just studied. This is the way to loosen the tongue, form the ear, make the language live, and lead boys as much as possible into the habit of thinking in German. Moreover, the constant repetition of sentences is better than the learning of unapplied grammar."

Athenæum.—"Mr. Siepmann's Public School German Primer is an excellent book. The Reader is rightly made the chief feature of the work; the Grammar is intended to explain the passages included in the Reader; and the Exercises are designed to afford practice in the knowledge acquired in the Grammar. The system is sound and has been carefully carried out."

Guardian.—"This Primer consists of three parts—Reader, Grammar, and Exercises—all of which are interdependent. Thus, the Reader aims at evolving the elementary points of accidence and rules of syntax, the Grammar collects and systematises the 'phenomena' of accidence and syntax so evolved, whilst the Exercises apply what has been learnt in the Reader and in the Grammar. This part of the work seems to us admirably carried out, and the pieces selected for the Reader are

particularly well chosen for their purpose. Mr. Siepmann lays great stress upon reading aloud and pronunciation, and has prefaced the book with quite an elaborate series of examples of letters and sounds, with directions how they should and also how they should *not* be pronounced. This chapter should be of great use to an English teacher of German."

Daily Chronicle.—"Englishmen before Coleridge and Carlyle bothered their heads but very little with the language of Lessing and Goethe; but now they are endeavouring to make up for their past indifference to this language, which is taught in most of our schools. The Germans themselves are great hands as well as at the learning as at the teaching of tongues, and this Grammar of Mr. Siepmann aims at enabling his pupils to do more than 'bandy light prattle deftly at a railway station or a dinner-table.' His 'Reader,' which forms the nucleus of the book, 'is intended to form an introduction to the German language for boys or girls of about fourteen,' and aims at gradually evolving the more elementary points of accidence which are indispensable even to beginners. The Grammar 'collects and systematises the phenomena of accidence and syntax so evolved.'"

Secondary Education.—"There are various points about this book which seem likely to be useful in the hands of a good teacher. It is a simple thing to write an easy Grammar, one that shall be popular with careless and lazy pupils. It is far more difficult to write a text-book that shall be properly graduated, and present a requisite amount of resistance to the pupil as he proceeds with his studies. The work before us is scarcely intended for very young pupils, but it would be useful to those who begin to study about the age of thirteen or so."

University Correspondent.—"This seems to be a very clear and careful grammar well adapted for use in schools. The first part, or 'reader,' is well selected and graduated. The arrangement of the grammatical section is good. Besides the exercises there are easy pieces of continuous prose for translation into German."

The Modern Language Quarterly.—"It contains a reader, grammar, and writer, the exercises in the reader and writer being in duplicate, so that boys who are not moved up to a higher form need not necessarily be taken over familiar ground again. The system of the book is satisfactory, and a careful examination of it leads us to believe that pupils should be able to attain a sound knowledge of the elements of German within a year or so, if the teacher follows out the instructions of Mr. Siepmann. Reading, writing, speaking form part of each lesson, and every extract for translation or retranslation is illustrative of some part of the grammar of the language.

"The extracts for translation into English are carefully graduated, and lead up to some pieces from standard authors, such as Lessing and Heine. The grammar is complete in itself. Beginners will derive their grammatical training from it, and it is, therefore, important that in method and arrangement it should reach a high standard of excellence. We may say at once that we should find it hard to instance another outline of German Grammar of equal merit.

"We recommend the book to the attention of Teachers of Modern Languages, who have not yet become acquainted with it."

Specimen Copies will be presented on application.

Please name the volumes required.

MACMILLAN'S PRIMARY SERIES

OF

GERMAN READING BOOKS

EDITED BY

G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT

With Illustrations. Globe 8vo.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK : THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

GRIMM.—KINDER-UND HAUSMÄRCHEN. Selected and edited by G. E. Fasnacht. Illustrated. 2*s.* 6*d.*

HAUFF.—DIE KARAVANE. Edited by Herman Hager, Ph.D. With exercises by G. E. Fasnacht. 3*s.*

—— DAS WIRTSHAUS IM SPESSART. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht. 3*s.*

SCHMID.—HEINRICH VON EICHENFELS. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Specimen Copies will be presented on application.

Please name the volumes required.

MACMILLAN'S
FOREIGN SCHOOL CLASSICS

GERMAN

EDITED BY

G. E. FASNACHT

Pott 8vo.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

GOETHE.—Götz von Berlichingen. Edited by H. A. Bull, M.A. 2*s.*
—— Faust. Part I. Edited by Miss J. Lee. 4*s.* 6*d.*

HEINE.—Selections from the Reisebilder and other Prose Works. Edited by C. Colbeck, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

LESSING.—Minna von Barnhelm. Edited by C. Merk. 2*s.* 6*d.*

SCHILLER.—Die Jungfrau von Orleans. Edited by Joseph Gostwick. 2*s.* 6*d.*
—— Wallenstein. Part I. Das Läger. Edited by H. B. Cotterill, M.A. 2*s.*
—— Maria Stuart. Edited by C. Sheldon, M.A., D.Litt. 2*s.* 6*d.*
—— Wilhelm Tell. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht. 2*s.* 6*d.*
—— Der Neffe Als Onkel. "The Nephew His Own Uncle." Edited by Louis Dyer, M.A. 2*s.*
—— Selections from Schiller's Lyrical Poems. Edited by E. J. Turner, M.A., and E. D. A. Morshead, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

UHLAND.—Select Ballads. Adapted as a First Easy Reading Book for Beginners. Edited by G. E. Fasnacht. 1*s.*

Applications for Specimen Copies of any of these books (with the exception of the Keys and Word and Phrase books) will be considered

SIEPMANN'S GERMAN SERIES

EDITED BY

OTTO SIEPMANN

HEAD OF THE MODERN LANGUAGE DEPARTMENT AT CLIFTON COLLEGE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

220

SIEPMANN'S GERMAN SERIES

PRESS OPINIONS

I.—Of the Series as a whole.

"The advanced German series which is being brought out by Macmillan and Co., under the general editorship of Mr. Otto Siepmann, reaches, perhaps, the highest standard of critical and literary excellence that has ever been touched in publications of this class. They are much more than school-books, and even good German scholars may be glad to have the German classics in editions prepared with so much care and accompanied with an 'apparatus criticus' containing, in itself, much literary interest."—*Dublin Daily Express*, May 6th, 1899.

"We can heartily recommend the series for its sensible and business-like plan, and for the thoroughness with which each editor has done his work."—*Worcester Herald*, June 9th, 1900.

"An admirable plan is followed, by which each book becomes the pivot on which the instruction is made to turn. A special feature is an appendix of words culled from the text, in progressive order, and designed for *viva voce* drill in classes. The utility of such a practice is attested by all teachers who have given it a fair trial. Prose exercises based on the text are added. If the plan of the author is consistently carried out, the study of each successive work furnishes the student, not only with an enlarged vocabulary, but also with linguistic facility in the use of it. An interesting innovation is the inclusion of 'Volkslieder,' set to music, which certainly introduces an essential characteristic of German life. It is moreover an expedient which affords one of the most helpful exercises in memorising, and in acquiring at an early stage some ease in the use of the spoken tongue. Maps and genealogical tables are added where required; and a full vocabulary in the elementary series."—*School Board Chronicle*, April 15th, 1899.

"The general get-up of the series deserves special mention; the printing leaves nothing to be desired, and the binding is a model of neatness. The series is a splendid example of what can be done in the way of making a royal road to learning."—*Publishers' Circular*.

"The 'Word- and Phrase-Books,' price 6d., give the English and German (in parallel columns) of the list of words and phrases for *viva voce* drill which are given in the first appendix to the editions belonging to this Series and are intended to be used by pupils for Home Work. They cannot fail to increase the Vocabulary of Students in the easiest and most effective way possible.

"The Keys, price 2s. 6d. net each, contain besides, renderings of the 'Sentences on Syntax and Idioms' (Appendix II.) and of the 'Passages for Translation' (Appendix III.). Alternate renderings are given in foot-notes."

"The texts are interesting, well printed and bound, and the notes are excellent, and not merely intended to save trouble to teacher and taught. The appendices, four to each volume, are the distinguishing feature of the series. The first consists of the most important words and phrases occurring in the book. It is meant for *vivâ voce* drill, and cannot fail to rapidly increase the vocabulary of the learner. There are also English sentences and continuous passages based on the vocabulary and constructions of the text. We are convinced that this method is the only sound one of teaching composition . . . We feel certain that the proper use of these appendices by a competent teacher will ensure the rapid progress of the pupils. We wish all success to the series, than which there is no better."—*University Correspondent*, August 6th, 1898.

"Of the series generally, we should say that if further contributions to it reach the high standard which these volumes (*Sappho*, *Zwischen den Schlachten*) have set up, it will be one of the very best ever offered to the scholastic public."—*Glasgow Herald*, April 30th, 1898.

"The result of the use of this series, therefore, will be that the study of the text puts the pupil in possession not of temporarily interesting information only, but the knowledge of the language and general culture. We heartily commend it."—*School Guardian*.

"The editorial conception is at once high and thorough:—(1) Each work contains sufficient matter for one or two terms' study, is interesting in its matter, literary in style, practical and useful in its vocabulary, and instructive regarding the life and manners of the country to which it relates; (2) each 'Introduction' furnishes a short account of the author and his works; (3) the 'Notes' give, in a clear and concise form, such explanations as may aid in overcoming textual difficulties, and in elucidating allusions—literary, historical, geographical, and idiomatical; and (4) an 'Appendix' contains word and phrase lists drawn from the reading, and to be used in drill; *vivâ voce* exercises in syntax, founded on and involving the vocabulary of the text; composition and a chapter on word-formation. Linguistic knowledge, conversational utility, and general culture may thus introduce life and interest to the work of the class-room. The several special editors have implemented loyally, and to the full, this ideal in their selected volumes, which are intellectually refreshing, educationally worked out, and effective in every scholarly appliance skilfully put to use. They are all men of well-merited professional repute."—*Educational News*, June 4th, 1898.

"The need for *vivâ voce* practice and for translation from English into German has been appreciated by the editors of the series, who have met it in an excellent fashion. We consider the appendices the most valuable features of the series."—*Oxford Magazine*, March 2nd, 1898.

"The four appendices claim especial notice, notably Appendix I., which contains lists of words and phrases for *vivâ voce* drill, each word or phrase having previously become familiar to the pupil in the pages of the story. We can think of no plan more likely to help a beginner to the acquisition of a good vocabulary than a careful use of this appendix."—*Guardian*, April 27th, 1898.

II.—Of individual volumes.

Herr Walther von der Vogelweide eine Geschichte aus der Zeit der Minnesänger für die Jugend erzählt von THEODOR EBNER. Adapted and edited by E. G. NORTH, M.A., Assistant Master at Wellington College. Authorised edition. First ed., April, 1900.

"This work gives an insight into an exceedingly interesting historical as well as literary period of the twelfth century. . . . Introduction, notes, vocabulary, and appendices all help to make this elementary text-book a model reader for school study."—*Educational News.*

"The brief introduction provides a sketch of Walther's times, and emphasises his importance as a writer of patriotic verse. . . . The notes are brief and sufficient. The vocabulary appears to be trustworthy."—*School World.*

"This book consists of selections from Ebner's work on '*Walther von der Vogelweide*,' which is written for young people, and deals with an episode in his life when he attached himself to Philip of Swabia, about A.D. 1200. There is a brief introduction, describing the position of affairs in Germany at that time, as well as notes, a vocabulary, and an appendix of drill in words and phrases, with sentences and longer passages for translation, as in other volumes of the series."—*Educational Times.*

"The text is written in the direct and simple German, which seems to us not only easier, but of more practical use to the young learner than the statelier but more involved constructions of the older classical writers. Mr. North tells us that the present edition is 'adapted' from the original work published in 1887. . . . It would appear that only such scenes have been chosen for inclusion in the present volume as are essentially dramatic and as such likely to appeal to the imagination of the schoolboy, and Mr. North has been very successful in his choice."—*Guardian.*

"Interesting, and a welcome novelty amid the *crambe repetita* usually served up in schools. The notes are brief and to the point, and the editing satisfactory."—*Literature.*

"The 'Word- and Phrase-Books,' price 6d., give the English and German (in parallel columns) of the list of words and phrases for *viva voce* drill which are given in the first appendix to the editions belonging to this Series. They are intended to be used by pupils for Home Work. They cannot fail to increase the Vocabulary of Students in the easiest and most effective way possible.

The Keys, price 2s. 6d. net each, contain these also, and besides renderings of the 'Sentences on Syntax and Idioms' (Appendix II.) and of the 'Passages for Translation' (Appendix III.). Alternate renderings are given in foot-notes."

Die Humanisten VON ISOLDE KURZ. Edited by A. VOEGELIN, M.A. (Lond.), Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. Authorised edition. First edition, April, 1900.

"Isolde Kurz is at present very little known in England, but *Die Humanisten* is one of a collection of tales published under the title of 'Florentiner Novellen,' the publication of which in 1890 at once brought their author a Continental reputation. The language is simple and direct and will serve as an excellent lesson in style. The notes and appendices are as good as usual."—*Guardian.*

"An addition to 'Siepmann's Advanced German Series,' of which we have had several occasions to speak with praise. Isolde Kurz is a daughter of the poet and novelist, Hermann Kurz, and made herself a name in literature by the publication of her *Florentiner Novellen*, a collection of tales of which *Die Humanisten* is one."—*Bookseller.*

"Interesting, and a welcome novelty amid the *crambe repetita* usually served up in schools. The notes are brief and to the point, and the editing satisfactory."—*Literature.*

"The time of this tale is placed in the latter half of the fifteenth century, and the special incident dealt with an episode in the period of the Renaissance, when the Humanists—enthusiasts in the culture of classical literature—spent time and means in the discovery and recovery of the works of the writers of the classical period as the means of re-enlivening the learning of the Restauration by the achieved books of the past. Their zeal often outran discretion, and they too much despised the scholastic system of their times. Ciceronianism was the prevailing craze or fad of the Italian humanists, of whom Bernardo Rucellai, the brother-in-law of Lorenzo de Medici, was one of the chief. He was a MS. hunter, and a special Ciceronian Codex was the desire of his heart. The search for it brought anxiety to Lorenzo's god-daughter, Lucrezia Rucellai, for it interfered with her marriage—as to which of two suitors should be her bridegroom. Thereby hangs a tale of incident and amusement most intelligently told. 'The assistant master at St. Paul's School' has annotated the story knowingly and skilfully, brightly and briefly; and admirably adapted for pupils so far advanced as to occupy places in the fifth and sixth forms. The appendices of the general editor supplement, apply, and extend the scholastic material furnished in the text and notes, to the development of the higher culture for which the work affords full scope."—*Educational News.*

"Probably the delightful works of Isolde Kurz are known to few in England, and Mr. Siepmann is to be congratulated on being able to include this capital short story from her *Florentiner Novellen* in his series. It takes us back to the Florence of the Renaissance, telling how a young Swabian, who had accompanied Graf Eberhard, of Würtemburg, wins the daughter of a famous Humanist, who has consented to the betrothal on condition that *Veit* will find for him a unique Ciceronian codex traced to Swabia. The style is good; the text is well printed; and the notes supplied by the editor are thoroughly satisfactory. The 'fourth appendix' contains a good account of the suffixes used to form abstract nouns."—*School World.*

Iphigenie auf Tauris, EIN SCHAUSPIEL, von WOLFGANG VON GOETHE, edited by H. B. COTTERILL, M.A., Silver Medallist Society of Arts, Editor of 'Selections from the Inferno,' of Schiller's 'Lager,' etc. First edition, March, 1899.

"Mr. Cotterill has evidently been well fitted both in point of scholarship and of literary sympathy—an equally important matter—to undertake the editing of this work. The scholarship he displays is, indeed, astonishing, even in these days of well-edited text-books. No point of interest in the play, whether we regard it as an echo of classical antiquity, or in its relatiom to primitive mythology, or as a work of modern German literature, appears to have escaped him, and his notes and introduction are full of the little illuminating touches that only ripe and mellow knowledge can contribute, and that always, to the discerning eye, distinguish a work of genuine scholarship from one which is the outcome of reading-up for a special occasion. . . . Readers of all sorts and descriptions have only too much reason to be grateful to Mr. Cotterill for his admirable work. No student who has read his edition of the *Iphigenie* can fail to have learned much about German literature, and to have gained not a little insight into the nature of poetic literature in general."—*Dublin Daily Express*, May 6th, 1899.

"If teachers want to use *Iphigenie* as a class-book, either from their own choice or in compliance with the requirements of examiners, they can hardly do better than adopt this edition of it. The notes supplied by Mr. Cotterill will be found helpful not only towards the translation of a text, but also towards that adequate understanding of classical and mythological allusions without which the reading of the drama becomes a heavy task. On points of grammar they are equally good, and such of them as contain translations of difficult passages are both correct and idiomatic. In the appendices the general editor has performed his share of the work with great care and with an experienced appreciation of practical utility. He contributes largely to the excellence of the edition for school purposes."—*Glasgow Herald*, April 22nd, 1899.

"Whosoever would truly culture young minds to love and appreciate Literature must know the art of stimulating curiosity, exciting interest, and gratifying the desire thus aroused by showing just materials for study, and making it evident (1) that these are worthy of painstaking and persevering perusal and thought, and (2) why they thus delight, improve, and become relishable. Mr. Cotterill possesses the intelligent interpretative genius, and Goethe's *Schauspiel* has the interpenetrative power and masterly attractiveness which satisfies these conditions. The Editorial Introduction provides preliminaries on the *Myth* in general, as a form of thought, and in particular, in Greek Literature, as a form of legend—instructive, philosophic, or poetical. As an illustration the Orestean legend is instanced, and the *Iphigenia* of Euripides, Racine, and Goethe are compared and contrasted. A biographical sketch of Goethe is given, and then the Text in its latest form, when by the 'wonderful alchemy' of artistic skill the early prose first draft of this play was transfigured into a marvellous dramatic poem of ever-living vitality."—*Educational News.*

Vor dem Sturm, Roman aus dem Winter 1812 auf 13, von THEODOR FONTANE, edited by ALOYS WEISS, Ph.D., Professor of German at the Royal Military Academy Woolwich. First edition, January, 1899.

"As regards its subject-matter the text of this new volume of the 'Advanced German Series' has been selected with excellent judgment. Dealing as it does with the stirring events that immediately preceded the War of Liberation, the story is interesting and instructive from the historical point of view. It also presents a faithful and vivid picture of the life and manners of the period; it introduces a number of admirably drawn characters, and is written in a style remarkable for its clearness and its purity. Nor should it be omitted that, widely and deservedly popular as was Fontane in his own country up to the very last year of his long career, this is the first attempt that has yet been made to introduce any of his works into English schools. It deserves to be successful not only because of Fontane himself, but also because of his editor. The notes which he has supplied are thoroughly good in every respect—clear and to the point when they are explanatory; well-worded and idiomatic when they contain helps for the translation of difficult passages. The really distinctive features of the work, however, are to be found in the appendices. The 'words and phrases,' the 'exercises on syntax and idiom,' and the 'passages for translation into German,' are the accessories that give the volume its special value and its exceptional practical utility. They have all been drawn up with care, and with that appreciation of difficulties in the language and weak points in the learner which only long experience can give."—*Glasgow Herald*, February 2nd, 1899.

"Mr. Siepmann was fortunate in securing this volume for his series; for the 'Roman aus dem Winter 1812 auf 13' is a good story well told, likely to interest young readers. It is furnished with brief and satisfactory introductions by Professor Weiss, who has also written capital notes."—*Educational Times*, April, 1899.

"A historical novel which glows with the romance of patriotism as it acted within the minds of the men of the 'Prussian Mark of Brandenburg,' of which Fontane was a native, for the realisation of the views on liberation which Fichte had set before the people in his noble *Reden an die Deutschen*, and took its literary initiative from Fontane's admiration of the writings of Sir Walter Scott, could scarcely fail to be interesting. This *Roman aus den Winter* (1812-3) is such a *novelette*. That notable winter saw 'the invincible Napoleon' worsted in the attempted conquest of Russia, and this tale realises to the imagination the times in which the army which the drill of Scharnhorst has made effective, entered on the offensive under the war-cry of 'A stout heart and no peace!' till Europe's gigantic tyrant was crippled. The persons in the story are typical yet individual, but the scenes in which they live and move are set before the eye in genuine reality. The Biography of the author, the Introduction, and the Notes, form an excellent and scholarly equipment for the student, the preparation of which does credit to the editor."—*Educational News*, February 11th, 1899.

"A capital tale of the winter of 1812-13, with a Life of Fontane, a brief historical introduction, and thoroughly satisfactory notes. Mr. Siepmann has himself supplied the appendices, as usual; the fourth of these is an interesting chapter of 'Word Formation,' in which he discusses certain 'suffixes of concrete substantives.'"—*School World*, March, 1899.

Vom ersten bis zum letzten Schuss von HANS WACHENHUSEN, edited by T. H. BAYLEY, M.A., Assistant Master at Loretto School. First edition, October, 1898; reprinted February, 1899.

"It makes a more than commonly interesting class-book for students of modern German."—*Scotsman*, December 2nd, 1898.

"We have already in former notices spoken of Mr. Siepmann's excellent German series, and praised the appendices by the general editor for their novel features, especially for the words and phrases and the sentences on syntax and idioms for *vivâ voce* practice, and also for the introduction of the words and music of German national songs. In a new volume of the series—*Vom Ersten bis zum Letzten Schuss*, by Hans Wachenhusen—Mr. T. H. Bayley has continued the same praiseworthy methods as his predecessors, and the book has also other claims to be welcomed as a text-book for elementary classes. Hans Wachenhusen was war correspondent for several German newspapers for many years, and finally acted for *The Cologne Gazette* during the Franco-Prussian War of 1870. It is with his experience during the last war that the author deals in the book before us. His style is not the classical language of Goethe and Schiller, but the German of to-day, the German which school boys and girls are far more likely to need, and according to our own experience, acquire much more readily. The incidents are vividly detailed, and the book is full of such graphic descriptions of events removed by so short a period from their own lifetime as can hardly fail to arouse the interest of young students."—*Guardian*, January 11th, 1899.

"Mr. Bayley's book is an excellent addition to our German school texts, and deserves a hearty welcome. . . . The story of the Franco-Prussian War of 1870, as told by Wachenhusen, is a German classic, and, what is more to the point, is sure to interest schoolboys. It has, besides, the additional advantage of being a piece of contemporary history. Our modern language teaching must more and more aim at arousing the interest of our boys in the life, history, customs, and manners of our continental neighbours. And this book is admirably adapted for this purpose. Mr Bayley has done his work well. We especially welcome the inclusion of the few patriotic and national songs with music. The notes are valuable and ample. . . . In the general praise which we have accorded to this book we must not forget the vocabulary, which is a very careful piece of work."—*Journal of Education*, February, 1899.

"The text, a story founded on the events of the Franco-Prussian War, is in good present-day German, and forms excellent practice in reading and composition. The notes, maps, vocabulary, and appendix give all necessary aid for mastering the text, and for applying it to practical general purposes."—*Schoolmaster*, March 25th, 1899.

Zwischen den Schlachten von OTTO ELSTER, adapted and Edited by L. HIRSCH, Ph.D. (Bonn), Assistant Master at Alleyn's School. First edition, March, 1898; reprinted, October, 1898.

"It has always seemed to us a mistake to use exclusively classical works, and especially poems and plays, as reading-books for young students of a foreign language, though such has been the time-honoured plan. Mr. Otto Siepmann has, however, started a series of German reading-books for English readers in which he proposes to introduce a number of works by distinguished modern German authors, well known in their own country, but unrecognised as yet in our schools. The volume of this series before us is an historical novel, by Otto Elster, giving a vivid and graphic description of some events of the Franco-Prussian War of 1870. Intermingled with the historical narrative is a simple but charming love-story. The novel has been slightly abridged, and is supplied with a sufficient number of explanatory notes designed, not to 'be a storehouse of grammatical curiosities or of philological learning,' but to give a clear and concise explanation of all textual difficulties and to elucidate historical, geographical, and literary allusions."—*Guardian*, April 27th, 1898.

"For fifth forms, and especially Army classes, it makes an excellent Reader. The style is so simple and straightforward that we should be inclined to place it in the elementary rather than the advanced series. Dr. Hirsch's notes are sound, sensible, and accurate."—*Journal of Education*, July, 1898.

"In selecting *Zwischen den Schlachten*, by Otto Elster, for Messrs. Macmillan's German Series, Mr. Hirsch has made a sensible choice. The style is easy and interesting, besides being singularly free from the complicated grammatical structure which so often defaces the prose of German authors."—*Saturday Review*, September 24th, 1898.

"Elster's short story of the Franco-German War is admirable reading for young folk—whether boys or girls. We think that Dr. Hirsch has performed his task very satisfactorily."—*Oxford Magazine*, October 26th.

"The story, which is well told, will be of interest to English readers, apart from its educational value."—*Spectator*, September 24th.

"We venture to recommend this book very warmly to all schoolmasters for use in their schools. Mr. Siepmann's method is to our minds an excellent one. The matter for translation is interesting, and the appendices, at the end of the book, should prove extremely helpful to the pupil."—*Educational Review*, January, 1899.

Sappho von FRANZ GRILLPARZER, edited by W. RIPPMANN, M.A., Prof. of German at Queen's College, London, First edition, April, 1898.

"The editor of this series is to be congratulated on its initial volumes. We have hitherto often wondered at the failure of those who cater for schools to provide an edition of Grillparzer's classic play, which is in every way suited to the needs of the student of German. . . . It should be explained that the editor of each text appears to be responsible for the notes and introduction, while the general editor provides the appendices, which we consider the most valuable features of the series. . . . The introduction, though somewhat mosaic-like, serves its purpose well. In the notes excellent things are said about those German particles which bewilder the beginner so much."—*Oxford Magazine*, October 26th, 1898.

"To produce an adequate English edition of this fine tragedy—'to sketch a likeness of the dramatist with a few bold strokes, to draw attention to the skill with which the tale of Sappho is told, and to give useful notes without the fashionable display of word-lore'—such is the ideal that Mr. Rippmann has set before him, and in great measure achieved. The play is, indeed, well worth reading, and the very simplicity of the plot and the limited number of the characters (they are virtually reduced to the Æschylean three), which would lead us to assign to Grillparzer a lower rank than his editor claims for him, are from the teacher's point of view distinct advantages. Mr. Rippmann's notes on German words and phrases are all that can be desired; those on particles, such as *ja*, *nur*, *noch*, are particularly admirable."—*Journal of Education*, July, 1898.

"The name of the great Austrian dramatist is little known in England, although Byron, who read *Sappho* in an Italian translation, says of it: 'The tragedy of *Sappho* is superb and sublime! . . .' This is, as far as we know, the first time in which it has been edited for English readers in the original. Mr. Rippmann has carried out Mr. Siepmann's plan in his preparation of the book, and the notes and appendices follow the same excellent method which we have already commended."—*The Guardian*, April 27th, 1898.

"We hope that this edition may contribute towards familiarising English readers with a work which some critics have considered fully equal to the classical tragedies of Goethe."—*Spectator*, September 24th, 1898.

"A most careful edition of a valuable dramatic work, hitherto little known in England. It is suitable for advanced students of German, who will find the grammatical notes useful, as well as the chapter on Metre."—*Educational Review*, January, 1899.

"These volumes leave, in binding, print, and paper, nothing to be desired. The notes, which we have carefully tested, are excellent. Each of the volumes has, further, four appendices by the general editor. They consist of words, phrases, and idioms for *vivâ voce* drill and passages for continuous prose, all based on the German text. *Sappho* has also a short sketch of German metre. We feel certain that the proper use of these appendices by a competent teacher will ensure the rapid progress of the pupils. We wish all success to the series, than which there is no better."—*University Correspondent*, August 6th, 1898.

GENERAL PREFACE TO THE SERIES

This series introduces a number of works by distinguished German authors, such as Grillparzer, Rosegger, Fontane, who are prominent in their own country, but whose books have not yet received that recognition among our school-classics which is their due; it will also include some of the best productions of Gustav Freytag, Victor von Scheffel, Ernst von Wildenbruch, and others, of which no English school editions exist; and finally it will contain a few works which, although more familiar, may yet, it is hoped, be welcome in an edition framed on the plan here advocated.

The *advanced* texts are intended for pupils of the Fifth and Sixth forms, and are therefore longer (80-150 pages) and more difficult. The *elementary* texts are shorter (40-80 pages) and fairly easy, so as to suit Third and Fourth forms; to these a vocabulary will be added.

Each volume contains enough matter for *one* or *two* terms' reading. The editor, while taking care that the works selected should arouse the pupils' interest, should furnish them with a practical vocabulary and useful phraseology, and should help to cultivate literary taste, will also include in his selection such books as will enable the English reader to acquire a knowledge of Germany and her institutions, of German life and customs, or as Thackeray puts it, "to study the inward thoughts and ways of his neighbours."

[The principles on which this Series is edited are the same as those for the French series.]

ELEMENTARY

NOTE.—Those marked * are ready; those marked † are in the Press, and the others are in preparation.

		EDITED BY
EBNER . .	.*Walther von der Vogelweide.	R. G. H. NORTH, *Wellington College.* 2s.
GOEBEL . .	. Rubezahl.	D. B. HURLEY, *Newcastle Middle School.*
GOEBEL . .	.†Hermann der Cherusker.	J. ESSER, *Madras College, St. Andrews.*
SCHMIDT . .	. Reineke Fuchs.	A. L. GASKIN, *Bath College.*
SCHRADER .	.†Friedrich der Grosse.	R. H. ALLPRESS, *City of London School*
WACHENHUSEN	.*Vom ersten bis zum letzten Schuss.	T. H. BAYLEY, *Loretto School.* 2s. 6d.
WILDENBRUCH	.†Das edle Blut.	OTTO SIEPMANN, *Clifton College.*
ZASTROW . .	.†Wilhelm der Siegreiche.	E.P. ASH, *Haileybury College.*

Others to follow

ADVANCED

ELSTER . .	.*Zwischen den Schlachten.	DR. HIRSCH, *Allayn's School, Dulwich.* 3s. 6d.
FONTANE . .	.*Vor dem Sturm.	Prof. WEISS, R.M.A., *Woolwich.* 3s.
FREYTAG . .	. Die Ahnen Part i. Ingo.	OTTO SIEPMANN, *Clifton College*
GOETHE . .	. Die italienische Reise.	Prof. FIÉDLER, *Birmingham University.*
GOETHE . .	.*Iphigenie auf Tauris.	H. B. COTTERILL, M.A., *formerly of Haileybury College.* 3s.
GRILLPARZER	.*Sappho, Trauerspiel.	Prof. RIPPMANN, *Queen's College, London.* 3s.
HEINE . .	. Die Harzreise.	DR. SCHLAPP, *Edinburgh University.*
KLEIST . .	. Michael Kohlhaas.	R. T. CARTER, *Clifton College.*
KURZ . . .	.*Die Humanisten.	A. VOEGELIN, *St. Paul's School, London.* 2s. 6d
ROSEGGER .	. Als ich jung noch war.	Prof. SCHUDDEKOPF, *Yorkshire College, Leeds.*
SCHEFFEL .	.†Der Trompeter von Säkkingen.	E. L. MILNER-BARRY, *Mill Hill School.*
WILDENBRUCH	. Die Danaide.	DR. BREUL, *Cambridge University.*

Others to follow

Keys to the Appendices, for the use of Teachers only. 2s. 6d. net each.

Word and Phrase Books, with German translation, for Home Work. 6d. each.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 3s.

Siepmann's Advanced German Series

General Editor, OTTO SIEPMANN

VOR DEM STURM

ROMAN AUS DEM WINTER 1812 AUF 13

VON

THEODOR FONTANE

EDITED BY

ALOYS WEISS, PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF GERMAN AT THE ROYAL MILITARY ACADEMY WOOLWICH

AUTHORISED EDITION

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

232

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

letzten Bank einen halben Eckplatz zu erobern. Aller Erwartungen waren gespannt, und diese sollten nicht getäuscht werden. Das akademische Viertel war noch nicht um, als der kleine Mann mit dem scharfgeschnittenen Profil und den blauen, aber scharf treffenden Augen auf dem Katheder erschien. „Meine Herren," begann er, nachdem er nicht ohne ein Lächeln der Befriedigung seinen Blick über das Auditorium hatte hingleiten lassen, „meine Herren, wir sind alle unter dem Eindruck einer großen Nachricht, die nicht kennen zu wollen mir in diesem Augenblick als eine Feigheit erscheinen würde. Sie wissen, worauf ich hinziele: General York hat kapituliert. Das Wort hat sonst einen schlimmen Klang, aber wir kennen den General und wissen deshalb, in welchem Geiste wir sein Thun zu deuten haben. Ich meinesteils bin sicher, daß dies der erste Schritt ist, der, während er uns zu erniedrigen scheint, uns aus der Erniedrigung in die Erhöhung führt. Es werden auch andre Worte und Auslegungen an Ihr Ohr klingen. Die Feigheit, weil sie sich ihrer selber schämt, sucht sich hinter Autoritätsaussprüchen oder einem Codex falscher Ehre zu decken; ja, sie flüchtet sich hinter den besten Wappenschild dieses Landes. Aber es kann nicht sein, daß die große That kleinmütig gemißbilligt worden sei. Seien wir voll der Hoffnung, die Mut, und voll des Mutes, der Hoffnung giebt. Vor allem thun wir, was der tapfre General that, d. h. entscheiden wir uns."

Enthusiastisch antwortete das Auditorium, dann schwieg alles, und keine weiteren Demonstrationen wurden laut.

Nach der Vorlesung war Lewin zurückgeblieben,

Page LINE

39. 28. **Collegium publicum**: such lectures are open to all students of the University, and without fee.

,, 32. **war alles beſetzt,** 'every seat had been taken.'

40. 3. **das akademiſche Viertel:** say 'the interval.' A lecture at a German University, as a rule, commences precisely fifteen minutes after the hour.

,, 5. **ſcharf treffenden Augen,** 'quick eyes.'

,, 6. **Katheder** (*m* or *n*), 'chair' (from Gr. *καθέδρα*, from which Lat. *cathedra*), chair of a bishop or professor.

,, 22. **Codex** (der), 'code,' spelt with a C on account of its Lat. plural Codices, but also Codexe. Cf. note, p. 38 l. 12.

,, 25. **gemißbilligt,** 'disapproved'; mißbilligen, p.p. mißbilligt; mißbilligen, p.p. gemißbilligt. The shorter past participle is now preferred, regardless of the accent. So also with mißbrauchen, mißhandeln, mißtrauen.

41. 10. **wie ſteht es?** 'how are matters going?'

,, 11. **Bleiſt,** 1762–1823, commanded the infantry of the Prussian auxiliary troops under York in the Russian campaign. Later on he was created Count of Nollendorf for his victory at that place over the French (August 30, 1813), whereby he decided the battle of Kulm, in Bohemia.

42. 3. **ſtimmt die Brandſtätte zu:** ſtimmen zu 'to be in harmony with' 'to correspond to.'

,, 10. **er . . Flamme:** lit. 'he is fire and flame'; say 'he would stake his life.'

,, 11. **Cynismus,** 'cynicism' = churlish severity, contempt for the usual pleasures of life.

,, 15. **Konrektor,** 'subrector.'

,, 20. **Barnim, Lebus,** etc. To show where they are situated it may first be stated: Küstrin (p. 43 l. 11), 51 miles E. of Berlin by rail, at the junction of the Warthe with the Oder, pop. 17,000; Frankfort-on-the-Oder, about 50 miles ESE. of Berlin; see note, p. 43 l. 11 below.

The next four towns have less than 10,000 inhabitants each, viz. *Lebus*, about 6 miles N. of Frankfort, on the Frankf.-Küstrin railway line, which runs along the W. bank of the Oder; *Müncheberg*, about half-way between Berlin and Frankfort, belongs to the *Kreis* (circle) of Lebus; *Freienwalde*, now chief town of the *Kreis* of Upper Barnim, about 40 miles NE. of Berlin, and nearly as much NW. of Küstrin; *Bernau*, about 25 miles WSW. of Freienwalde, and belonging to the *Kreis* of Upper Barnim.

Page	WORDS	WORDS	PHRASES
35	at least	the superiority	to whisper sg. to some one
	square (*adj*)	to chat	to continue the conversation
	the cap	to bow (*refl*)	to be some one's right hand
36	the rest, quiet	the chair	to be resolved to be silent
	the answer	evidently	immediately afterwards
	as a rule	the reproach	I suppose so
37	to despise	moreover	a painful pause followed
	the zeal	the birth	to carry on a feud
	to muddle, confuse	the suspicion	to be frightened back by the responsibility
38	to condemn	the event	with a touch of mockery
	the protection	to be surprised	to suspect some one
	the doubt	the distraction	to disturb the company
39	twice	the lecture	only twice a week
	sufficient	the lecturer	what specially suits him
	the bent, inclination	the lecture-room	in the course of the morning
40	the corner-seat	the impression	a smile of satisfaction
	the expectation	the cowardice	you know what I am driving at
	to deceive	to make up one's mind	I for my part am sure
41	the sentry-box	cunning	one of the front rows
	to be indignant	the misfortune	to go for a walk together
	the court-martial	the ashes	how are things going?
42	offensive	the influence	to be at stake
	the unselfishness	particularly	to have great influence among . .
	occasional	to interest	to have sg. in one's mind
43	in spite of all	incalculable	there is a want of officers
	ready to strike	irreparable	to be ready to strike
	disadvantage	the throne	to set an example
44	the line (*printed or written*)	to intend	it is sufficient
		the hostage	to attach belief to a rumour
	the Court	the draft (*of a document*)	to count on some one
	the rumour		
45	the caprice	the contrast	to have many good points
	incalculable	to lay down	the esprit de corps
	to exist	the bandage	to stare at some one (*astonished*)
46	the return	cordial	to expect some one's return
	breakfast-table	magnificent	to surprise some one suddenly
	to interrupt	the (*last*) will	a legal claim
47	earthly	to sit down	according to his habit
	the possession	the quarters	to give the dog sandwiches
	for the present	peculiar	that is his affair
48	the guard-room	in front	to know of it
	the barracks	skilful	their moral stay is gone
	the fly	to bend	until further notice
49	to assert	to discuss	about midnight

PAGE

35. 5. It was difficult to get a place near the door, because we arrived so late.
6. Having continued the conversation for at least another quarter of an hour, he bowed and left the room.

36. 7. He was resolved to be silent about it, lest the news should disturb the company.
8. Does he know that York has capitulated? I suppose so, for he is the minister's right-hand man.
9. They were evidently disappointed, since they had not expected this reproach.

37. 10. The mere suspicion that he should have acted in an unpatriotic manner aroused sharp opposition.
11. I despise everybody who thinks that he has not acted on the purest motives.
12. I know that he will not be frightened by any responsibility whatsoever.

38. 13. He is the very man I was thinking of.
14. I am surprised that you do not accept his protection, said he with a touch of mockery.
15. Whoever suspects them shows by that how little he understands the latest events.

V

39. 1. What specially suits me are the lectures of Professor X, who lectures twice a week in the course of the morning.
2. It is already eight o'clock, if you wish to be in the lecture-room at a quarter past you will have to make haste.
3. Although he cannot speak English he understands it quite well.

40. 4. We for our part knew what he was aiming at as soon as he had begun, and when we applauded, a smile of satisfaction passed over his face.
5. It is true that he did not deceive our expectations, yet we expected that his lecture would make a deeper impression.
6. We all know in what spirit to interpret his action.
7. Let us make up our minds!

41. 8. We sat in one of the front rows and could hear every word he said.
9. How are things going? Have you heard the latest?
10. Everybody must do what he deems right, and take upon himself the consequences.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

favourite books were Shakespeare and the Percy Ballads. In order to read them he had learnt English; he did not speak it, it is true, but he understood it well. The first lecture was given by Professor Savigny, who did not seem to have heard of the great event of the day. Then Professor Fichte lectured on 'The true conception of War.' When Lewin arrived, he found all the seats taken, and it was only with difficulty that he obtained half a corner seat on the last bench. In a few minutes the little professor appeared, smiling with satisfaction at the well-filled room. 'Gentlemen,' he began, 'it would be pure cowardice to ignore the great news which has arrived. You know what I refer to: General York has capitulated. For my part I am certain that the general has acted rightly; but I may be wrong. Let us be full of the hope which brings courage, and of the courage which brings hope. But before everything, let us do what the brave general did: let us come to a decision!' After the lecture Lewin met Major von Haacke. 'They will bring old York before a court-martial,' said the latter; 'it may cost him his head.' 'Nonsense! It cannot be. I know York; he has had instructions.' 'I don't think so,' replied Haacke. 'The only instruction which each general receives now is: "Do what seems best to you, and take the consequences yourself!"' Then they separated.

VI

HOHEN-VIETZ, *20th March.*

DEAR LEWIN—Our organisation is complete. We have formed a brigade of veterans, consisting of four battalions. Bamme has taken over the command of the brigade, but there is still a lack of officers. We shall have a war according to old Prussian traditions. Now, listen! The court is leaving Potsdam and going to Breslau. This step is more important than you can imagine. It is said that Napoleon has intended to seize the king and have him taken to a French fortress. The entrance of the king into Breslau is fixed for the 25th; a week later he will summon

(3) verbs, e.g.—

lehren (to teach), der Lehrling (apprentice);
mieten (to hire), der Mietling (hireling);
ſäugen (to nurse), der Säugling (suckling);
taufen (to christen), der Täufling (infant or person receiving baptism).

(4) numerals, e.g.—

erſt (first), der Erſtling (the firstborn, first-fruits);
zwei (two), der Zwilling (twin);
drei (three), der Drilling (one of triplets).

Note also der Schierling (hemlock), der Schilling (shilling).

All nouns in -ling are masculine.

III. Form nouns in -ling from the following words, and give their English meaning :—

der Dichter	das Haupt	der Hof	der Schoß
friſch	neu	fremd	jung
prüfen	ſtrafen	mieten	ſäugen

(3) -el, -ſal, -ſel

The suffix -el is MHG. *-el* from original *-alo*, *-ulo*, *-ilo* for masculine and neuter nouns, and from *-alâ*, *-ulâ*, *-ilâ* for feminine nouns. When the original suffix has an i (*ilo*, *ilâ*) it is marked in modern German by the modification of the vowel in the primary word, e.g. *armilo*, Ärmel (sleeve); *sluzzil*, Schlüſſel (key). The suffix -el is mainly used to form names of *instruments* from verbs, e.g.—

heben (to lift), der Hebel (lever);
ſchlagen (to beat), der Schlägel (mallet, rapier);
fliegen (to fly), der Flügel (wing);
werfen (to throw), der Würfel (die);
henken (to hang), der Henkel (handle of a pot);
ziehen (to pull), der Zügel (rein).

Most nouns in -el denoting instruments are masculine.

The following are further instances :—

der Gürtel (belt), der Meißel (chisel), der Nagel (nail), der Rüſſel (trunk of an elephant), der Scheffel (bushel), der Schnabel (beak), der Stempel (stamp), der Stöpſel (stopper).

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d. net each

KEYS TO APPENDICES

OF

SIEPMANN'S GERMAN SERIES

BY

THE GENERAL EDITOR OF THE SERIES

The following are ready

EBNER—WALTHER VON DER VOGELWEIDE. By E. G. H. North.
ELSTER—ZWISCHEN DEN SCHLACHTEN. By Dr. Hirsch.
FONTANE—VOR DEM STURM. By Professor Weiss.
GOETHE—IPHIGENIE AUF TAURIS. By H. B. Cotterill, M.A.
GRILLPARZER—SAPPHO, TRAUERSPIEL. By Professor Rippmann.
KURZ—DIE HUMANISTEN. By A. Voegelin.
WACHENHUSEN—VOM ERSTEN BIS ZUM LETZTEN SCHUSS. By T. H. Bayley.

The following are in the Press

SCHRADER—FRIEDRICH DER GROSSE. By R. H. Allpress.
WILDENBRUCH—DAS EDLE BLUT. By Otto Siepmann.
GOEBEL—HERMANN DER CHERUSKER. By J. Esser.

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., Limited
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

35 at least — wenigſtens
square (*adj*) — quadratiſch
the cap — die Mütze
36 the rest, quiet — die Ruhe
the answer — die Antwort
as a rule — gewöhnlich
37 to despise — verachten
the zeal [fuse — der Eifer
to muddle, con- — verwirren
38 to condemn — verurteilen
the protection — der Schutz
the doubt — der Zweifel
39 twice — zweimal
sufficient [tion — ausreichend
the bent, inclina- — die Neigung
40 the corner-seat — der Eckplatz
the expectation — die Erwartung
to deceive — täuſchen [haus
41 the sentry-box — das Schilder-
to be indignant — entrüſtet ſein
the court-martial — das Kriegs-gericht
42 offensive — beleidigend
the unselfishness — die Selbſt-[ſuchts]loſigkeit
occasional — gelegentlich
43 in spite of all — trotz alledem
ready to strike — ſchlagfertig
disadvantage — der Nachteil
44 the line (*printed or written*) — die Zeile
the Court — der Hof
the rumour — das Gerücht
45 the caprice — die Laune
incalculable — unberechenbar
to exist — beſtehen (*str v*)
46 the return — die Rückkunft
the breakfast-table — der Frühſtücks-tiſch
to interrupt — unterbrechen, ä, o
47 earthly — irdiſch
the possession — der Beſitz
for the present — vorläufig
48 the guard-room — das Wachlokal
the barracks — die Kaſerne
the fly — die Fliege
49 to assert — behaupten

the superiority — die Überlegen-
to chat — plaudern [heit
to bow (*refl*) — ſich verbeugen
the chair — der Stuhl
evidently — offenbar
the reproach — der Vorwurf
moreover — überdies
the birth — die Geburt
the suspicion — der Verdacht
the event — das Ereignis
to be surprised — überraſcht ſein
the distraction — die Zerſtreutheit
the lecture — die Vorleſung
the lecturer — der Vortragende
the lecture-room — der Hörſal
the impression — der Eindruck
the cowardice — die Feigheit
to make up one's mind — ſich entſcheiden, ſchlau [ie, ie
cunning
the misfortune — das Unglück
the ashes — die Aſche
the influence — der Einfluß
particularly — namentlich
to interest — intereſſieren
incalculable — unberechenbar
irreparable — unwieder-bringlich
the throne — der Thron
to intend — beabſichtigen
the hostage — die Geiſel
the draft (*of a document*) — der Entwurf
the contrast — der Gegenſatz
to lay down — niederlegen
the bandage — der Verband
cordial — herzlich
magnificent — prächtig
the (*last*) will — das Teſtament (⌣ ⌣ ⌣́)
to sit down — ſich ſetzen
the quarters — das Quartier
peculiar — ſonderbar
in front — vorn
skilful — geſchickt
to bend — krümmen
to discuss — beſprechen, ä, o

35	to whisper sg. to some one	einem etwas ins Ohr flüſtern
	to continue the conversation	die Unterhaltung fortſetzen
	to be some one's right hand	jemandes rechte Hand ſein
36	to be resolved to be silent	entſchloſſen ſein zu ſchweigen
	immediately afterwards	gleich darauf
	I suppose so	ich vermute es
37	a painful pause followed	eine peinliche Pauſe folgte
	to carry on a feud	ſich gegenſeitig befehden
	to be frightened back by the responsibility	vor der Verantwortung zurückſchrecken
38	with a touch of mockery	mit einem Anfluge von Spott
	to suspect some one	einen verdächtigen
	to disturb the company	die Geſellſchaft ſtören
39	only twice a week	nur zweimal in der Woche
	what specially suits him	was ihm beſonders zuſagt
	in the course of the morning	im Laufe des Vormittags
40	a smile of satisfaction	ein Lächeln der Befriedigung
	you know what I am driving at	Sie wiſſen, worauf ich hinziele
	I for my part am sure	ich meinesteils bin ſicher
41	one of the front rows	eine der vorderſten Reihen
	to go for a walk together	einen gemeinſchaftlichen Spaziergang machen
	how are things going?	wie ſteht es?
42	to be at stake	auf dem Spiel ſtehen
	to have great influence among . .	großen Einfluß haben unter . .
	to have sg. in one's mind	etwas im Auge haben
43	there is a want of officers	es iſt Mangel an Offizieren
	to be ready to strike	ſchlagfertig ſein
	to set an example	das Beiſpiel geben
44	it is sufficient	es genügt
	to attach belief to a rumour	einem Gerücht Glauben ſchenken
	to count on some one	auf einen rechnen
45	to have many good points	viele Vorzüge haben
	the esprit de corps	der Sinn fürs Ganze
	to stare at someone (*astonished*)	einen groß anſehen
46	to expect some one's return	jemandes Zurückkunft erwarten
	to surprise some one suddenly	einen plötzlich überraſchen
	a legal claim	ein geſetzlicher Anſpruch
47	according to his habit	nach ſeiner Gewohnheit
	to give the dog sandwiches	dem Hund mit Fleiſch belegte Brotſchnitten geben
	that is his affair	das iſt ſeine Sache
48	to know of it	davon wiſſen
	their moral stay is gone	ihr moraliſcher Halt iſt dahin
	until further notice	bis auf weiteres
49	about midnight	um Mitternacht

PAGE

38. 14. Ich bin überraſcht, daß Sie ſeinen Schutz nicht annehmen, ſagte er mit einem Anflug von Spott.
15. Wer ſie verdächtigt, zeigt dadurch, wie wenig er die jüngſten Ereigniſſe verſteht.

V

39. 1. Was mir beſonders zuſagt, ſind die Vorleſungen von Profeſſor X, der zweimal die Woche im Laufe des Vormittags lieſt.
2. Es iſt ſchon acht Uhr, wenn Sie um viertel nach im Hörſaal ſein wollen, werden Sie ſich eilen[1] müſſen.
3. Obgleich er nicht Engliſch ſprechen kann, ſo verſteht er es doch ganz gut.

40. 4. Wir unſrerſeits wußten, worauf er hinzielte, ſobald er angefangen hatte, und als wir Beifall klatſchten, ging ein Lächeln der Befriedigung über ſein Geſicht.
5. Es iſt wahr, daß er unſre Erwartungen nicht getäuſcht hat, und doch erwarteten wir, daß ſeine Vorleſung einen tieferen Eindruck machen würde.
6. Wir wiſſen alle, in welchem Geiſte wir ſein Thun zu deuten haben.
7. Entſcheiden wir uns!

41. 8. Wir ſaßen in einer der vorderſten Reihen und konnten jedes Wort hören, das er ſagte.
9. Wie ſteht es? Haben Sie das Neueſte gehört?
10. Jeder muß thun, was ihm gut[2] dünkt und die Folgen auf ſich nehmen.

VI

42. 1. Er hat großen Einfluß unter den Arbeitern.
2. Es ſteht mehr auf dem Spiel, als die meiſten Leute glauben.
3. Was mich am meiſten intereſſiert, iſt die Organiſation der Freiwilligen.

43. 4. Niemand ſollte die Gelegenheit verſäumen, in einer ſo großen Sache ein gutes Beiſpiel zu geben.

[1] Or ſputen. [2] Or recht.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

ganze Gesellschaft von dem großen Ereignis. Die Herren versicherten,[1] daß sie nicht überrascht seien, während die Damen augenscheinlich enttäuscht waren. Um zwölf (Uhr) fuhren die ersten Wagen vor, und in einer halben Stunde waren die Räume leer.

V

Es war schon acht Uhr vorüber,[2] als Lewin am folgenden Morgen aufwachte. Der feste Schlaf hatte ihm wohlgethan. Dienstag und Freitag waren Vorlesungstage, und so begab er sich denn zur Universität. An den andern Tagen blieb er zu Hause. Seine Lieblingsbücher waren Shakespeare und die Percysche Balladensammlung.[3] Um sie zu lesen, hatte er Englisch gelernt; er sprach es zwar nicht, aber er verstand es gut. Die erste Vorlesung gab Professor Savigny; er schien von dem großen Ereignis des Tages nichts gehört zu haben. Dann las Professor Fichte über den „Begriff des wahrhaften Krieges." Als Lewin eintrat, fand er alle Sitze besetzt, und nur mit Mühe kriegte er einen Eckplatz in der letzten Reihe. Nach einigen Minuten erschien der kleine Professor und lächelte mit Befriedigung über den dicht gefüllten Hörsaal.[4] „Meine Herren," fing er an, „es wäre nichts als Feigheit, die große Nachricht, die eingetroffen ist, zu ignorieren.[5] Sie wissen, worauf ich hinziele[6]: General York hat kapituliert. Ich meinesteils bin sicher,[7] daß der

[1] Or erklärten.
[2] Or Erst nach acht Uhr erwachte . .
[3] Or die Percyschen Balladen.
[4] Or über das dicht gefüllte Auditorium.
[5] Or außer acht zu lassen.
[6] Or anspiele.
[7] Or gewiß.

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book from their Lending Library for Teachers.

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

MACMILLAN'S GERMAN IDIOMS

SELECTION OF GERMAN IDIOMS

PREPARED AND TRANSLATED BY
MYRA TAKER

UNDER THE DIRECTION OF
F. F. ROGET

LATE LECTURER IN THE UNIVERSITY OF ST. ANDREWS; ENGLISH LECTURER IN THE UNIVERSITY OF GENEVA

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

In this book the German idioms are translated, or explained, as the case may be, in the English language. But care has been taken not to place *alone*, by way of translation, opposite a German idiom, an English idiom, which, though the acknowledged equivalent of the first, bears no analogy to it, and may be of a totally different order.

The authors of this book have put it together for the benefit of students, who, in their reading or in conversation, cannot but be frequently stopped by a baffling idiom. Such students will find in the pages of this handy *thesaurus* of some three thousand phrases the desired meaning or meanings, with some useful particulars and frequent examples.

The vast majority of idioms are *figurative* expressions. A dictionary of idioms is therefore not a lexicon. It expounds phrases, not words. And as a people will mint widely different figures of speech for thoughts fundamentally synonymous, the nature of the figure becomes the determining feature of an idiom.

On that account, words and phrases are marked in this manual as *figurative*, when their use is quite general; as *figurative and colloquial*, when they belong to the *spoken* language; as *figurative and familiar*, when they belong to the domestic circle and are favourites with the young; as *figurative and slangy*, when "mater-familias" or the governess would frown at them.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Da hapert es! *fig. fam.* — There's the rub! v. holpern.

Happen, *m. fam.* — Bit, mouthful.

Harniſch, *m.* — v. geharniſcht.

In Harniſch geraten, *fig. coll.* — To fly into a passion.

Jemanden in Harniſch bringen *or* jagen, *fig. coll.* — To anger, irritate any one, to drive any one wild.

Haſe, *m.*

Sehen, wie der Haſe läuft, *fig. coll.* — To wait to see how things will turn out, to look, to see which way the wind blows.

Da liegt der Haſe im Pfeffer, *fig. coll.* — That's the knotty point; what a fix! v. Hund.

Haſe, *m.*; Haſenfuß, *m.*; Haſenherz, *n. fig. coll.* — Coward, chicken-hearted fellow.

Ex.: Ich habe den Herren erklärt, daß ſie alleſammt Haſenfüße wären.

Haſenpanier, *n.*

Das Haſenpanier ergreifen, *coll.* — To flee, to take to one's heels.

Haſpeln, *intr. v. fig. prov. and fam.* — To chatter, to jabber; v. abhaſpeln.

Hätſcheln, *tr. v. fam.* — To fondle, to pet, to caress.

Ex.: Sie wird von aller Welt gehätſchelt und auf Händen getragen.

Haube, *f.*

Unter die Haube bringen; unter die Haube kommen, *coll.* — To get a girl settled, married; to set up house, to get married.

Ex.: Die Mutter hatte Mühe ihre ſechs Töchter unter die Haube zu bringen.—Vierzig Jahre wurde ſie, ehe ſie unter die Haube kam.

Haudegen, *m.*, alter Haudegen, *fig. coll.* — Old trooper, old blade; v. Degen.

Haufen, *m.*

Der gemeine *or* der große Haufen. — The multitude, the vulgar herd.

In hellen Haufen. — In crowds.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Ich mache mir nichts aus ihm, *coll.* — He is quite indifferent to me; I do not like him.

Ich weiß nicht, was ich aus dir machen ſoll, *coll.* — I do not know what to think of you, I cannot make you out.

Ex.: Sie muſterte den wilden Jägersmann und war ſich nicht klar, was ſie aus ihm machen ſollte.

Sich machen, *coll.* — To look, to seem. To come right, to turn out for the best.

Ex.: Ida hat ſich wie immer prächtig gemacht.—Seien Sie nur geduldig, mit der Zeit wird es ſich ſchon machen.

Er macht ſich, *coll.* — He turns out well.

Sich an jemanden machen, *coll.* — To accost, to buttonhole, to apply to, to curry favour with.

Ex.: Kluge Leute machen ſich an reiche Leute.

Was machen Sie? *fig. fam.* — How do you do? how are you?

Ex.: Was machſt du heute? ganz munter?

Machen, *fam.* — To be quick, to get on.

Mach! Macht! Machen Sie! — Be quick! Be alive! Look sharp! etc.

Ex.: Mach! erzähl, erzähle!—Nun macht, ſchnell!—Ich mache ſchon! —Er macht ja!

Mache, daß du fort kommſt! — Begone! Clear out! Be off with you!

Ex.: Ich habe euch ſchon zu lange angehört; macht, daß ihr fortkommt.

Mage, *m.*, *pl.* —n, *obs.* — Relative, kindred.

Schildmage *or* Schwertmage, *m.*; Spillmage, *f. obs.* — Relative on the father's side; relative on the mother's side.

Magen, *m.*

Das liegt mir im Magen, *fig. fam.* — I am sick of that; I cannot forget, get over, digest, pocket that.

Ex.: Der Handel mit Emersleben liegt ihm im Magen. Haſt du etwas Näheres darüber erfahren?

Golden Treasury Series

THREE VOLUMES

OF

GERMAN POETRY

SELECTED AND EDITED WITH LITERARY INTRODUCTIONS AND NOTES

BY

C. A. BUCHHEIM, PH.D., HON. M.A., OXON, F.C.P.
PROFESSOR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON

HEINE'S LIEDER UND GEDICHTE. With a Vignette of HEINE. xxix and 376 pp. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

BALLADEN UND ROMANZEN. Containing the best German Ballads. With a Vignette of UHLAND. xxxvi and 318 pp. Pott 8vo. Third edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

DEUTSCHE LYRIK. A Selection of the best German Lyrical Poems. With a Vignette of GOETHE. Introduction, xx, Text (314 Poems), 338, Notes, 60 pp. Pott 8vo. Tenth edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
247

Specimen Page of the Text of Heine's
"Lieder und Gedichte."

9

Auf Flügeln des Geſanges,
Herzliebchen, trag' ich dich fort,
Fort nach den Fluren des Ganges,
Dort weiß ich den ſchönſten Ort.

Dort liegt ein rotblühender Garten
Im ſtillen Mondenſchein;
Die Lotosblumen erwarten
Ihr trautes Schweſterlein.

Die Veilchen kichern und koſen,
Und ſchaun nach den Sternen empor;
Heimlich erzählen die Roſen
Sich duftende Märchen ins Ohr.

Es hüpfen herbei und lauſchen
Die frommen, klugen Gazell'n;
Und in der Ferne rauſchen
Des heiligen Stromes Well'n.

Dort wollen wir niederſinken
Unter dem Palmenbaum,
Und Liebe und Ruhe trinken
Und träumen ſeligen Traum.

[Specimen Page of Notes to Heine's "Lieder und Gedichte."]

It treats of the old and ever new theme of unhappy love in its various shades, and this circumstance imparts to the poems a certain unity.

Prolog. Es war' mal, etc. The poetical vision contained in the Prolog originally appeared in the tragedy of „Almanſor," where it is sung by a harp-player. In 1822 it was published in a Muſenalmanach under the heading of Das Lied vom blöden Ritter, but when embodying the Lyriſches Intermezzo in the Buch der Lieder, Heine placed it under its present title at the beginning.

P. 41, *No.* 3. Bronne, poetical for "source."

P. 42, *No.* 4. *Stanza* 2. So muß, etc. This line simply expresses the height of emotion felt by the poet on hearing the joyful assurance that he is loved.

P. 44, *No.* 9. Auf Flügeln, etc. This celebrated poem, like several others in the present collection, is the outcome of Heine's enthusiasm for India, which is supposed to have been kindled by the description of that country by the celebrated Sanscrit scholar Franz Bopp. Heine felt a natural longing for the Indian dreamland, and the language of his Indian poems is throughout in harmony with that land of fairy tales.[1]

P. —, *No.* —. *Stanza* 2. The red-flowering lotus (Nelumbo) is the most beautiful of those water-lilies to which the Indians ascribe a mysterious and sacred character.

P. 45, *No.* 10. Die Lotosblume, etc. It is a fact that the lotus-flower shrinks from the glare of the sun, and droops in the day-time.

P. —, *No.* 11. Im Rhein, etc. A picture of the Virgin Mary (painted on wood) is in the Cologne Cathedral. „Die Figur der Madonna," says Hessel, „hat auf dem Dombild zum Hintergrund einen blumendurchwirkten, von Engeln gehaltenen Goldteppich."

[1] „Heine ſehnte ſich nach Indien," says George Brandes, „wie Goethe nach Italien; geiſtig war er an den Ufern des Ganges heimiſch, wie Goethe an denen der Tiber."

[Specimen Page of the Text of the "Balladen und Romanzen."

J. N. Vogl.

LXXIV.

Das Erkennen.

Ein Wanderburſch, mit dem Stab in der Hand,
Kommt wieder heim aus dem fremden Land.
Sein Haar iſt beſtäubt, ſein Antlitz verbrannt;
Von wem wird der Burſch wohl zuerſt erkannt?
So tritt er ins Städtchen, durchs alte Thor,
Am Schlagbaum lehnt juſt der Zöllner davor.
Der Zöllner, der war ihm ein lieber Freund,
Oft hatte der Becher die beiden vereint.
Doch ſieh—Freund Zollmann erkennt ihn nicht,
Zu ſehr hat die Sonn' ihm verbrannt das Geſicht.
Und weiter wandert nach kurzem Gruß
Der Burſche und ſchüttelt den Staub vom Fuß.
Da ſchaut aus dem Fenſter ſein Schätzel fromm,
„Du blühende Jungfrau, viel ſchönen Willkomm'."
Doch ſieh—auch das Mägdlein erkennt ihn nicht,
Die Sonn' hat zu ſehr ihm verbrannt das Geſicht.
Und weiter geht er die Straß' entlang,
Ein Thränlein hängt ihm an der braunen Wang'.
Da wankt von dem Kirchſteig ſein Mütterchen her,
„Gott grüß' Euch!"—ſo ſpricht er und ſonſt nichts mehr.
Doch ſieh—das Mütterchen ſchluchzet voll Luſt:
„Mein Sohn!"—und ſinkt an des Burſchen Bruſt.
Wie ſehr auch die Sonne ſein Antlitz verbrannt,
Das Mutteraug' hat ihn doch gleich erkannt.

[Specimen Page of the Introduction to the "Balladen und Romanzen."]

III.

'It is the honourable characteristic of Poetry that its materials are to be found in every subject which interests the human mind.' This weighty saying of Wordsworth found its practical application on a large scale in the ballad-literature of Germany during the third stage of its development. If the antiquarian notion that the old ballad alone has a claim to be considered as a ballad had been rigidly accepted, narrative poetry would have been confined to a very narrow compass. Fortunately the barrier was broken, first by the great luminaries of German poetry, Goethe and Schiller, and subsequently by Uhland and Heine, whose examples were considered *maszgebend*, and excited a lively emulation among their contemporaries and successors. This was the case to such a degree that every theme capable of being treated as a short narrative in verse, was considered as a legitimate topic for a ballad. There arose consequently such a great variety of ballads that during the Third Period of German ballad poetry they had lost entirely the stamp of uniformity, and there was in fact only one poet whose productions in this branch were 'epoch-making.' This poet was *Ferdinand Freiligrath.*

The great merit of Freiligrath's poems, both lyrical and narrative, consists in the novelty of his subjects, in the vigour of his language, in his many-coloured images, and in the picturesqueness of his details. His muse left the homely village-green, so to speak, and wandered forth into untrodden regions. His fancy carried him to the deserts of Syria and Africa, and the primeval forests of America, and his descriptions of people and scenery were quite in harmony with his exotic topics. Even his rhymes were not of the ordinary kind. They were new, like the subjects he

[Specimen Page of the Text of the "Deutsche Lyrite."]

LXVII.

Neue Liebe neues Leben.

Herz, mein Herz, was ſoll das geben?
Was bedränget dich ſo ſehr?
Welch ein fremdes, neues Leben!
Ich erkenne dich nicht mehr.
Weg iſt Alles, was du liebteſt,
Weg, warum du dich betrübeſt,
Weg dein Fleiß und deine Ruh —
Ach, wie kamſt du nur dazu!

Feſſelt dich die Jugendblüthe,
Dieſe liebliche Geſtalt,
Dieſer Blick voll Treu' und Güte
Mit unendlicher Gewalt?
Will ich raſch mich ihr entziehen,
Mich ermannen, ihr entfliehen,
Führet mich im Augenblick,
Ach, mein Weg zu ihr zurück.

Und an dieſem Zauberfädchen,
Das ſich nicht zerreißen läßt,
Hält das liebe, loſe Mädchen
Mich ſo wieder Willen feſt;
Muß in ihrem Zauberkreiſe
Leben nun auf ihre Weiſe.
Die Veränd'rung, ach, wie groß!
Liebe! Liebe! laß mich los!

Goethe.

PRESS OPINIONS

The following brief extracts are taken from among several hundred favourable reviews of Prof. Buchheim's Poetical Selections:—

HEINE'S LIEDER UND GEDICHTE

Guardian.—"It is needless to say that in the present volume only the nobler side of the poet is represented. . . . To those who are already admirers of Heine this pretty little volume will appeal as presenting an old favourite in a new and pleasant form, and Students of German literature, who do not already know one of its most delightful poets, can hardly make his aquaintance under more favourable circumstances."

Athenæum.—"Dr. Buchheim has written a judicious and sensible preface to the selection of *Heine's Lieder und Gedichte*, and has subjoined excellent notes. His pleasant volume may be warmly commended to lovers of German poetry."

Literature.—"As a whole the volume illustrates Heine's complex qualities remarkably well."

Bookman.—"The present selection is to all intents and purposes a perfect one, for it shows a great poet at his best."

Westminster Gazette.—"The arrangement of the poems, and all the rest are excellent."

BALLADEN UND ROMANZEN

Times.—"The name of Dr. Buchheim is a sufficient guarantee of the excellence of his new contribution to the 'Golden Treasury Series.'"

St. James's Gazette.—"Every piece that is given is good, and the collection as a whole representative. The introduction and notes are patterns of their kind."

Pall Mall Gazette.—"Dr. Buchheim's introduction and notes are also excellent. . . . For the rest, his works on German literature are like good wine which needs no bush."

The Author.—"It is a very beautiful collection and ought most certainly to be in the possession of all who read and love German poetry."

DEUTSCHE LYRIK

Spectator.—"That it is in itself a delightful little book, we can testify from the pleasure we have derived from it."

Daily News.—"To readers of German this volume will give great pleasure."

Globe.—"The editor has achieved his task with excellent taste."

Westminster Review.—"Dr. Buchheim has produced a book which all lovers of German poetry will welcome."

Standard.—"This is an excellent selection from the works of the principal German poets."

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

MACMILLAN'S ELEMENTARY LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

TO THE PROSE WRITINGS OF CAESAR. SALLUST, NEPOS, LIVY, EUTROPIUS, AND PORTIONS OF CICERO; AND THE POEMS OF CATULLUS, VIRGIL, HORACE, OVID, AND PHAEDRUS

FOR USE IN

PREPARATORY SCHOOLS AND JUNIOR FORMS

BY THE REV.

G. H. NALL, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AT WESTMINSTER SCHOOL

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

PREFACE

THIS small Dictionary has been prepared at the request of Messrs. MACMILLAN AND CO., and is primarily intended to meet the needs of young pupils. Several excellent Latin-English Dictionaries are already in use in our schools, well adapted to the requirements of Middle and Upper Forms. The publishers believe that there is a demand for a Dictionary which does not attempt to compete with these, but is modelled rather on the lines of a simple Vocabulary.

Practical experience proves that numerous examples and quotations, though valuable and necessary for older or more advanced pupils, bewilder rather than help the youthful beginner. For this reason in many schools Dictionaries have been altogether discarded in the Lower Forms, and the pupils use editions supplied with a special Vocabulary.

I should have wished not only to cut down the examples, but to still further simplify the book by omitting all save the most elementary derivations; but to do this, I am told, would impair its value in the eyes of many teachers. I have therefore inserted the usually received etymologies, except where they are too doubtful or obscure to be of any value.

The number of authors read in "Easy Selections" has increased so much in recent years, that it has been a difficult matter to decide what words to omit and what to include. I believe that the choice I have made will prove sufficient for the needs of those for whom the book is specially intended; indeed I think that I have erred rather in the direction of excess than of defect. I am not without hope that the Dictionary may be found useful in some cases for older boys, those on the modern side for instance, or those who are getting up a modicum of Latin for examination purposes.

The reduction in the quantity of matter has made it possible to print this book in exceptionally large and clear type, on good paper, and to issue it at a low price. An elementary school book is not a joy for ever to its possessor, and I trust that the cheapness of this little work will enable many a boy to consign his copy with a light heart to the flames, before it has reached a wizened and unsightly old age.

In preparing the book I have made free use of the labours of my predecessors. I refrain from enumerating them, not from any desire to conceal the extent of my obligation, but lest the length of the list should seem out of proportion to the modest and unpretentious character of the resulting work. For any notes of errors or omissions, which should be addressed to me direct or to the publishers, I shall be grateful.

PREPARATORY SCHOOLS' REVIEW.—"A capital book for use in Preparatory Schools. . . . The book is quite the cheapest Latin Dictionary which can claim to be at all satisfactory; and it is very doubtful whether anything will be lost by the omission of more copious instances, which, useful as they are to an older hand, are mostly wasted on, and even bewilder, the Preparatory School boy."

SCHOOLMASTER.—"The book should prove very handy to beginners, to whom the ordinary large dictionaries are an incumbrance and a source of perplexity, and seems to meet a real want in a highly satisfactory manner."

SCHOOL GUARDIAN.—"This is certainly the best 'elementary' Latin and English Dictionary we have seen, and is admirably suited for use in preparatory schools and the senior forms of our Public Schools. Mr. Nall evidently understands what boys want who are 'getting up a modicum of Latin for examination purposes.'"

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.—"A wonderfully cheap and well-executed book, and should find wide acceptance in schools."

SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.—"The work has been done with great care and sympathy with elementary difficulties. And its inexpensiveness is an important element of its many practical merits."

SPEAKER.—"The matter is compressed with no little skill, while the phrases included show good judgment; so that, although the print is in exceptionally large and clear type, it is confined within the limits of 430 pages. . . . As far as one can judge without some months of constant usage, this Dictionary will amply reward the curiosity of young students, and help to inform them with sound scholarship from the beginning."

out money. 2. (meton.) *ownership, possession, property.* 3. (fig.) *a slave purchased by mancipium;* in gen. *a slave.*

mancĭpo (mancŭpo), āre, āvi, ātum, *tr.v.* [manceps], *make over property* by mancipium, *sell, transfer.*

mancus, a, um, *adj.* 1. *maimed, infirm.* 2. *defective, imperfect.*

mandātum, i, *n.* [mando], *charge, order, commission, command.*

mandātus, ūs, *m.* [id.] (only in abl. s.), *command, mandate,* Cic.

Mandēla, ae, *f.*, town in Samnium.

1. **mando**, āre, āvi, ātum, *tr.v.* [manus, do]. 1. *commit to one's charge, commission, enjoin, command.* 2. *consign, entrust;* se fugae, *take to flight,* Caes.

2. **mando**, ĕre, di, sum, *tr.v.* [madeo, prop. *moisten*]. 1. *chew, masticate.* 2. *eat, devour;* humum, *bite the ground,* Verg.

Mandubĭi, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Gallic people, whose chief town was Alesia.

mānē [Old Lat. manus, *good*, cf. Manes]. I. *subst. indecl. n., the morning, morn.* II. *adv., in the morning.*

mănĕo, ēre, nsi, nsum, *v.* [cf. *μένω*]. A. *intr., stay, remain, abide, continue, last.* B. *tr., wait for, await.*

Mānes (mānes), ĭum, *m. pl.* [Old Lat. manus = *good*]. I. *deified souls of the dead; the gods of Lower World; ghosts, shades.* II. 1. *the Lower World.* 2. *punishments of the Lower World,* our '*Hell*,' quisque suos patimur manes, Verg. 3. *corpse.*

mango, ōnis, *m.* [*μάγγανον*], *slave-dealer,* Hor.

mănĭbrĭum, see **manubrium.**

mănĭcae, ārum, *f. pl.* [manus]. 1. *long sleeves* of tunic reaching to hand, serving as glove. 2. *glove* or *muff.* 3. (meton.) *handcuffs, manacles,* Verg.

mănĭcātus, a, um, *adj.* [manicae], *furnished with long sleeves,* Cic.

mănĭfestē (-festō), *adv.* [manifestus], *clearly, evidently.* *Comp.* manifestius.

mănĭfesto, āre, āvi, ātum, *tr.v.* [id.], *show clearly, exhibit, manifest.*

mănĭfestus (mănŭfestus), a, um, *adj.* [manus; fendo, cf. defendo]. 1. *clear, plain, evident, manifest.* 2. *brought to light, proved* by direct evidence. 3. *manifestly betraying, convicted of,* with gen.

mănĭprĕtĭum, see **manupretium.**

mănĭpŭlāris (sync. **mănĭplāris, mănŭp-**), e, *adj.* [manipulus], *belonging to a maniple;* iudices, *jurymen who once were common soldiers,* Cic. **mănĭpŭlāris**, is, *m.* 1. *a member of a maniple, private.* 2. *member of the same maniple, comrade.*

mănĭpŭlātim, *adv.* [manipulus], *by maniples,* Liv.

mănĭpŭlus (sync. poet. **mănĭplus**), i, *m.* [manus, pleo]. 1. *a handful; bundle* of hay, etc. 2. (milit. t.t.) *a company* of soldiers, *a maniple,* because, it is said, in old days a pole with handful of straw or hay twisted about it served as a standard.

Manlĭus, a, the name of a R. gens. **Manlĭus (Manlĭānus)**, a, um, *adj.*

mannus, i, *m.* [Celtic word], *cob, nag.*

măno, āre, āvi, ātum, *v.* [cf. madeo]. A. *intr.* 1. *trickle, flow, drop, distil.* 2. (meton.) *spread, be diffused.* 3. (of rumour, etc.) *spread abroad.* 4. *arise, proceed.* 5. *escape, be forgotten,* de pectore, Hor. B. *tr., cause to flow, shed, distil.*

mansĭo, ōnis, *f.* [maneo], *a staying.*

mansŭē-făcio, făcĕre, fēci, factum (pass. **mansŭē-fĭo**, fĭĕri, factus), *tr.v.* [mansuetus, facio]. 1. *tame.* 2. (fig.) *pacify, civilise.*

mansŭesco, ĕre, sŭēvi, sŭētum, *v.* [manus, suesco, *accustom to the hand*]. A. *tr., tame.* B. *intr., grow tame, gentle,* or *softened.* **mansŭētus**, see below.

mansŭētē, *adv.* [mansuetus], *gently, mildly, calmly.*

mansŭētūdo, ĭnis, *f.* [id.], *mildness, gentleness, clemency.*

mansŭētus, a, um, *p.p.* of mansuesco; as *adj.* 1. *tame.* 2. *mild, gentle, calm.* *Comp.* mansuetior, *sup.* mansuetissimus.

mansus, *p.p.* of 1. mando, 2. maneo.

mantēle, is, and **mantēlĭum**, ĭi (**mantĭ-**), *n.* [manus, tela], *towel, napkin,* Verg.

mantĭca, ae, *f.* [manus], *bag, portmanteau, wallet.*

Mantō, ūs, *f.* 1. prophetess, dr. of Tiresias. 2. Italian prophetic nymph, founder of Mantua.

Mantŭa, ae, *f.*, city of Gallia Transpadana, near which was Andes, birthplace of Vergil.

mănŭbĭae, ārum, *f. pl.* [manus], *money obtained from the sale of booty.*

mănŭbrĭum (mănĭbrĭum), ĭi, *n.* [manus], *handle, hilt, haft.*

mănŭfestus, see **manifestus.**

mănŭmissĭo, ōnis, *f.* [manumitto], *the freeing of a slave, manumission.*

mănŭmitto or **mănŭ mitto**, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *tr.v.* [manus, mitto], *set at liberty, emancipate, free* a slave.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Crown 8vo. ***English-Latin*, 3s. 6d.; *Latin-English*, 3s. 6d.;**
***or the two parts in one volume*, 7s. 6d.**

A PHRASEOLOGICAL
ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS

BY

CHARLES DUKE YONGE

FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF HISTORY, QUEEN'S COLLEGE BELFAST
AUTHOR OF "AN ENGLISH-GREEK LEXICON" ETC., "A GRADUS AD PARNASSUM
FOR ETON, WESTMINSTER, WINCHESTER, HARROW, CHARTERHOUSE
RUGBY, KING'S COLLEGE," ETC.

SIXTEENTH EDITION

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

a maker, of anything. Crĕātor, condĭtor, auctor, artĭfex -icis, fābrĭcātor, effector, mōlĭtor.—Of a law, lātor.
the right or power of making. Factio.
maladministration.——Men guilty of maladministration. Male rem gerentes. Cic. (This refers to their private affairs; of affairs of state he would have said, rempublicam.)——There was as much maladministration of the affairs of war as in those of peace. Nihilo militiæ quam domi melius respublica administrata est. Liv.
malady. Morbus.—*See* sickness.
malapert. Pĕtŭlans.——**malapertly.** Pĕtŭlanter.
malapertness. Pĕtŭlantia.
malcontent.—*See* discontented.
male. Mascŭlus, mas, *gen.* măris.——While male descendants of king Ancus remained. Anci regis virile stirpe salvâ. Liv.
malediction. Exsĕcrātio.
malefaction. Crīmen -ĭnis, *neut.*; mălĕfĭcium.—*See* crime.
a malefactor. Mălĕfĭcus, *adj.*; *comp.* -centior, &c.
malevolence, malice, malignity. Mălĕvŏlentia, mălignĭtas.
malevolent, malicious, malignant. Mălĕvŏlus, *comp.* -entior, mălignus.
malevolently, maliciously, malignantly. Mălignē.
malformation. Dĕformĭtas.
malleable. Ductĭlis. Plin.
a mallet. Malleus.
a mallow. Malva.
malpractice, malversation.—*See* maladministration, peculation.
a man, a human being, not a beast. Hŏmo -inis;—not a woman, vir, vĭri. (Sometimes the two are used together: vir, as one worthy to be called a man, being opposed to homo, as a contemptible fellow.)—A young man, jŭvĕnis, ădŏlescens.—An old man, sĕnex.—Man, as applied to ship, in such expressions as man-of-war (*see* ship).——You are not a man to boast. Non is es qui gloriere. Cic.
mankind.——Fellowship with mankind. Societas generis humani. Cic. ——All mankind. Omnes mortales omnium generum (Cic.); omnes qui ubique sunt. Cic.
to man (as the crew mans a ship). Conscendo, 3 (*see* to embark); as a captain mans it.——Domitius requires certain ships, and mans them with husbandmen and shepherds. Certas sibi deposcit naves, Domitius, atque has colonis pastoribusque complet. Cæs.
to manacle. Vincio, 4.—In vincula conjicio. Liv.—In catenas conjicio. Cæs.
manacled. Vinctus, *cătēnātus.
manacles, in *pl.* Vincŭla, *sync.* vîncla, cătēnæ, *mănĭcæ.—*See* chain, prison.
to manage affairs. Gĕro, 3; admĭnistro, 1; cūro, 1.—Affairs, or living beings, tracto, 1; *i. e.* to govern, *q. v.*, rĕgo, 3.—Animals, dŏmo, 1.
management of affairs. Admĭnistrātio, cūrātio, dispensātio.— Of living beings, tractātio.—Good management, prūdentia, dextĕrĭtas.
manageable. Tractābĭlis, făcĭlis.—Of animals, &c., dŏmābĭlis.
a manager. Admĭnistrator, cūrātor, dispensātor, mŏdĕrātor, *fem.* moderatrix.—Of animals, dŏmĭtor, *fem.* dŏmĭtrix.
a mandate. Mandātum, jussum, ēdictum.—*See* command.
mandible. Maxilla.
mandrake. Mandrăgŏras -æ, *masc.* Plin.
mane. Jŭba.
with a mane. Jŭbātus.
maneater. Anthrōpŏphăgus.
manes. Mānes -ium, *pl. masc.*
manful, manly. Vĭrīlis; *i. e.* vigorous, bold, *q. v.*, fortis, strenus.
manfully. Vĭrīlĭter, fortĭter, strēnue.
mange. Scăbies.
a manger. Præsēpe

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

A PHRASEOLOGICAL
LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

BEING

PART II.

OF AN

ENGLISH-LATIN LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS

A New Edition, carefully revised and corrected

BY

CHARLES DUKE YONGE

FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF HISTORY, QUEEN'S COLLEGE, BELFAST
AUTHOR OF AN "ENGLISH-GREEK LEXICON," ETC., "A GRADUS AD PARNASSUM
FOR ETON, WESTMINSTER, WINCHESTER, HARROW, CHARTERHOUSE
RUGBY, KING'S COLLEGE," ETC.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

259

frŭtĭcor, āris. *v. dep.* To be bushy, to sprout up in bushes.
frŭtĭcōsus, a, um. *adj.* Bushy, shrubby.
frux, frūgis. *f.*; very rare in sing. 1. The fruits of the earth (esp. green fruit, or that which grows in pods, leguminous fruit). 2. Fruit, i. e. result, consequence (rare): expertia frugis, works without any stuff in them, worthless, Hor.; fruge Cleantheâ, with the doctrine of Cleanthes, Pers.; multos vidi ... qui totam adolescentiam voluptatibus dedissent emersisse aliquando et se ad frugem bonam, ut dicitur, recepisse, I have seen many men, who had devoted their whole youth to dissipation, at last emerge, and come to bear a good crop, as the proverb is (i. e. reform), Cic.; herus si tuus volet facere frugem, if your master wishes to act with advantage, Plaut. — See **frugi.**
fūcātus, a, um. *part.* from fuco, q. v.; also as *adj.* Counterfeit, fictitious.
fūco, as. *v. a.* To paint, to die, to colour (esp. a face with rouge).
fūcōsus, a, um. *adj.* Counterfeit, spurious, deceptive.
fūcus, i. *m.* 1. ‡Rock lichen used for a red dye or for rouge. 2. A red colour, a red dye, rouge. 3. Any paint or colour. 4. Pretence, disguise, deceit. 5. Bee glue, with which bees stop up the entrance to the hive, propolis: fucum facio (c. dat. pers.), to deceive, Cic.
fūcus, i. *m.* A drone.
fŭga, æ. *f.* 1. Flight. 2. §A swift progress. 3. Banishment, exile. 4. Avoidance, desire to avoid, disinclination to. Facio fugam, *both* to put to flight *and* to take to flight: cum fugam in regiam fecisset, when he had made every one flee into the palace, Liv.; consternatæ cohortes fugam fecerunt, the squadrons in consternation took to flight, Liv.
fŭgācĭter. *adv.* By fleeing, by retiring.
fŭgax, ācis. *adj.* 1. Inclined to flee, to run away. 2. Timid, coy (of a damsel). 3. Fleeing quickly, swift. 4. §Eager to avoid (c. gen.). 5. Fleeting, transitory.
fŭgiens, entis. *part.* of seq., used also as *adj.* 1. Growing flat, losing its strength (of urine). 2. Departing, dying. 3. Desirous to avoid (c. gen.).
fŭgio, ĭs, fūgi, fŭgitum. *v. n.* and *a.* 1. (*v. n.*). To flee, to run away. 2. To pass away, to disappear. 3. (*v. a.*). To flee from, to avoid, to shun (c. acc., very rarely c. **ab** and *abl.*). 4. To be banished from (c. acc., once in Quint. c. **de** and abl.). 5. To escape from, to escape. 6. To escape the notice, or the memory of: fugit me ad te antea scribere, I forgot to write to you before, Cic.
fŭgĭtīvus, a, um. *adj.* Running away, fugitive. (Usu. in *m.*, as *subst.*). 1. A runaway, a runaway slave. 2. A deserter.
†fŭgĭto, as. *v. n.* and *a.* 1. (*v. n.*) To flee. 2. (*v. a.*) To avoid, to shun.
†fŭgĭtor, oris. *m.* A runaway.
fŭgo, as. *v. a.* 1. To put to flight, to drive away, to rout. 2. To send into banishment, to be the cause of banishment to, to banish.
§fŭlcīmen, ĭnis. *n.* A prop, a support.
fulcio, īs, si, tum. *v. a.* 1. To prop up, to support. 2. To strengthen, to secure. 3. (Metaph.) To support, to sustain (a friend in distress, etc.), to be the stay of. Antiopa ærumnis fulta, Antiopa oppressed with sorrows, Prop.
fulcrum, i. *n.* 1. A prop, a support (esp. the foot or pillar on which a bed stands). 2. A bed.
fulgeo, es, si, infin. also **fulgĕre,** no sup., *v. n.* To shine, to beam, to glitter, to glisten.
†fulgĭdus, a, um. *adj.* Shining, glittering, bright.
fulgor, ōris. *m.* 1. Sheen, brightness, brilliancy. 2. Lightning. 3. Splendour, brilliancy (of reputation, etc.).
fulgur, ŭris. *n.* 1. Lightning. 2. §A thunderbolt. 3. ‡A thing struck by lightning. 4. †§Brightness, brilliancy.
fulgŭrālis, e. Relating to lightning, or to the way of averting or interpreting omens given by lightning.

MACMILLAN'S
SHORTER LATIN COURSE

IN THREE PARTS

[*Macmillan's Latin Course Third Part is intended to form the concluding volume of the Shorter Latin Course also*]

BY

A. M. COOK, M.A., AND W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTERS IN ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

London

MACMILLAN AND COMPANY, LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

261

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

In Globe 8vo. Price 1*s.* 6*d. Key, for Teachers only,* 4*s.* 6*d. net*

[First Edition printed 1886. Reprinted 1887, 1888, 1890, 1891, 1892, 1894, 1895, 1896, 1899, 1900, (2).]

MACMILLAN'S SHORTER LATIN COURSE

BEING AN ABRIDGMENT OF MACMILLAN'S LATIN COURSE—FIRST PART

BY

A. M. COOK, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER IN ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

THIS book is an abridgment of the *Latin Course, First Part.* In that work an attempt was made to make the first steps of a beginner in Latin as easy as possible. The advance was made very gradual, the vocabulary was kept within the smallest possible limits, and care was taken that repeated changes should be rung on these few words by an abundance of exercises. In many schools, however, where the principle of this book, which a reviewer has termed aptly enough 'modified Prendergastianism,' was approved, it was found impossible, owing to the limited time that could be given to Latin, to work through so large a number of exercises. To meet the requirements of these schools, and at the suggestion of several eminent teachers, the present Shorter Course has been prepared. It differs from the original edition (which will still remain on sale) in the following points: (1) The exercises have been reduced by about one half, the Latin into English exercises having been especially curtailed. (2) Though the same subjects are treated, the subject of the gender of nouns of the third declension has been dealt with in a more summary way. (3) All the words, whether used in the exercises or in the pieces of translation, are to be found in the dictionaries at the end of the book. The pieces of translation are left practically unaltered.

CONTENTS

SECTION—1, 2, 3, 4. **First Declension**: Singular; The Accusative Case: Plural—5, 6, 7, 8, 9. **Second Declension**: Nouns in *-us*, Neuter Nouns, Adjectives in *-us -a -um*: Singular, Plural; Nouns and Adjec-

tives in *-er*—10. **Est—Sunt**:—TRANSLATION I. A Letter of a Father to his Boy at School: II. Romulus and Remus: III. The Black Slave —11. **Third Declension**: Case-Endings—12. The Gender shown by Meaning—TRANSLATION IV. A Fable—13. The Stem—14, 15. Genitive Plural—TRANSLATION V. Coriolanus—16, 17, Endings of Neuter Nouns —TRANSLATION VI. Theseus and Ariadne—18. Gender of Nouns by Termination: The Masculine Rule—TRANSLATION VII. A Surprise— 19. The Feminine Rule—TRANSLATION VIII. The Roman Army fights a Serpent—20, 21. The Neuter Rule—TRANSLATION IX. A Battle—22. Exceptions to these Gender Rules—23, 24, 25. Adjectives of the Third Declension—TRANSLATION X. A Roman Account of Britain: Recapitulatory Exercises, A-D—26, 27, 28. **Fourth Declension**: Neuter Nouns: *Domus*—29. **Fifth Declension**: TRANSLATION XI. A Ghost—30, 31, 32. **Comparison of Adjectives**: Comparative: Superlative—TRANSLATION XII. Arminius—33. Irregular Comparison—TRANSLATION XIII. Ixion, Sisyphus, and Tantalus—34. Cardinal **Numerals**—35. Ordinal Numerals —TRANSLATION XIV. Dates in Early English History—36, 37, 38. The Verb: *Esse*—TRANSLATIONS XV., XVI. Bannockburn—39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45. **Pronouns**: *Ego, Tu, Se, Hic, Ille, Is, Idem, Ipse, Iste, Totus, Alius, Uter, Alter, Qui*—TRANSLATION XVII. Ulysses and Polyphemus: I.—Recapitulatory Exercises: E-I—46, 47, 48, 49. **Verbs**: **Active, Indicative**: First Conjugation (*contd.*)—TRANSLATION XVIII. Ulysses and Polyphemus: II.—50, 51. Second Conjugation—TRANSLATION XIX. Ulysses and Polyphemus: III.—52, 53. Third Conjugation— TRANSLATION XX. Ulysses and Polyphemus: IV.—54, 55. Fourth Conjugation—TRANSLATION XXI. Ulysses and Polyphemus: V.— TRANSLATION XXII. Gaius Mucius Scaevola—Recapitulatory Exercises: J-M—56, 57. **Passive Indicative**: First Conjugation—TRANSLATION XXIII. A Cork Leg—58, 59. Second Conjugation—TRANSLATIONS XXIV., XXV. David and Goliath—60, 61. Third Conjugation—TRANSLATION XXVI. Nasica and Ennius—TRANSLATION XXVII. Literal Obedience—62, 63. Fourth Conjugation—TRANSLATION XXVIII. Bacchus and the Pirates—Recapitulatory Exercises: N-Q; Conjunction of the Verbs: Vocabularies to the First Four Pieces of Translation: Latin-English Dictionary: English-Latin Dictionary: Vocabularies to the Exercises.

PRESS OPINIONS

Saturday Review—"The book is a good one. The exercises are plentiful, and the words which they contain are such as will be useful to learners when they pass on to higher work."

Literary World—"The young learner who cannot 'get on with' his Latin under so simple and gently-progressive a course as Mr. Cook has here laid down had better be allowed to give it up altogether. The teacher's work has been greatly simplified and lessened by the omission of any advanced rules or complex examples. . . . The book seems to us admirably suited for girls' schools as well as for boys', and it is marvellously well printed and got up for the very low price charged."

Glasgow Herald—"This manual is admirably adapted to the Latin requirements of the Scotch Code for the first year. All the ground is covered, and the exercises for translation from and into Latin are numerous and judiciously arranged. The plan of the book is one by which the pupil is made to take stock of his knowledge at every step, and security is thus got for the foundation in Latin grammar being soundly laid. The book is likely to become a favourite. . . . The book is admirably simple and practical."

SHORTER LATIN COURSE.

SECTION 1.

First Declension: Singular.

Learn:—

Nominative case,	Mensă	*a table.*
Accusative case,	Mensam	*a table.*
Genitive case,	Mensae	*of a table* (or) *a table's.*
Dative case,	Mensae	*to* (or) *for a table.*
Ablative case,	Mensā	*by, with,* (or) *from a table.*

Write down in the same way:—

vīta, *life.* fĕnestra, *a window.*

cŏlōnia, *the colony.*

SECTION 2.

The Accusative Case.

We say in English "I strike *him*," not "I strike *he*," and "He strikes *me*," not "He strikes *I*;" for in these sentences the persons who strike are put in the nominative, and the persons whom they strike in the accusative. But very few words in English, as it is spoken and written nowadays,[1] have an accusative case different from the nominative. We say, for instance, "The stone struck me" and "I struck the stone," and the word

[1] English used to be more like Latin in this respect; for instance, "tunge" (now "tongue") used to have an accusative "tungan."

queen. 2. The unhappy man loves the beautiful girl. 3. The good girl often gives books to the unhappy queen. 4. The queen praises the girl's beautiful books. 5. The slaves praise the beautiful table of *their* masters. 6. The unhappy girl loves the good queen. 7. The queen often gives beautiful roses to the unhappy girl. 8. The good girls love the unhappy queen. 9. The masters give many letters to *their* slaves. 10. The queen always praises the good girl's diligence.

SECTION 10.

EST—SUNT.

Est, *is:* sunt, *are.*

The Latin for "Julia is queen" is *Julia est regina* (not *reginam*). The rule that the accusative is to be put after the verb does not apply to the verb "to be."

It is not right to say in English, "It is *me*," and "It is *him*," but "It is *I*," and "it is *he*." So in Latin, *est Julia* (not *Juliam*) will stand for "It is Julia."

Be careful, too, to notice that the adjective has to agree with its noun none the less because *est* or *sunt* comes between them. So the Latin for "the rose is beautiful" is *rosa est pulchra.*

[22.] 1. Puer est miser. 2. Epistula est longa. 3. Puellae sunt pulchrae. 4. Arma pulchra sunt. 5. Vir bonus non est miser. 6. Libri amico meo grati sunt. 7. Mensa magistri plena librorum est. 8. Magister Juliam laudat, Corneliam culpat. 9. Horti pulchri pueris et puellis grati sunt. 10. Epistula reginae bonis puellis grata est. 11. Hortus reginae semper plenus rosarum est. 12. Magister pigros pueros culpat, impigros laudat. 13. Magister pueris praemium non dat; non sunt boni. 14. Longa Marci epistula puellae

Cyclōpes eorum nomen erat. Haec res Ulixi non nota est. Ulixes igitur et comites ejus ad specum Polyphēmi veniunt. Is ferocissimus omnium Cyclopum est, idemque ceteris corpore ingentior: unum modo oculum in media fronte habet. In specu, igitur, Graeci lac et caseos laeti inveniunt. Ipse autem non adest, sed oves in montibus pascit. Brevi tempore ipse Polyphemus ad specum cum ovibus revertit. Primum maximo atque gravissimo saxo januam specus claudit. Deinde oves mulget, et lignis ignem facit. Tum demum Ulixem duodecimque ejus comites conspicit.

(*Continued on p.* 81.)

Recapitulatory Exercises.

E. 1. Hic filium, ille servum, ad urbem mittit. 2. Rex mercatorem laudat, eique magnam reginae imaginem dat. 3. Quintus tibi notus est: is omnium amicorum mihi longe carissimus est. 4. Ubi est illa domus, quam tuus pater in hac urbe aedificat? 5. Legati, quos hostes mittunt, jam in castris sunt. 6. Magister pueros laudat, eisque libros dat. 7. Regi et reginae eadem virtus eadem sapientia fuit. 8. Hi pueri se pessimis amicis semper circumdant. 9. Rex ad castra hostium copias ducit, agrosque eorum vastat. 10. Uter fratrum major est? — Alexander non solum natu major, sed multo etiam sapientior, est.

F. 1. The king himself informs me of these matters. 2. This legion has three thousand soldiers. 3. The best part of us is not the body, but the mind. 4. The ambassadors were three miles from the camp. 5. The works of Cicero are neither very difficult nor very easy. 6. Girls and boys are often not pleased by the same things. 7. I am to-day twenty-one years old. 8. The courage of the seventh legion is often praised by Caesar.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

In Globe 8vo. Price 2s.

Key, for Teachers only, 4s. 6d. net

[First Edition printed 1894. Reprinted 1896, 1898, 1900]

MACMILLAN'S SHORTER LATIN COURSE

SECOND PART

BEING AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE SECOND PART OF MACMILLAN'S LATIN COURSE

BY

A. M. COOK, M.A., AND W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTERS IN ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

"It will be well with the issue of the Second Part of this series to state once again what our aims are, and by what method we hope to attain them.

We aim at making the first few steps of the student at once more easy to take and more productive of permanent result. It seems to us that it is possible, by following in some respects the method which a child pursues in learning its native language, to make the process of learning Latin easier. A child, for example, uses the little stock of words already acquired over and over again, and only adds a word or two each day. In the same way we endeavour to make the increase of the vocabulary steady but gradual, so that the student will know or half-know nine-tenths of the words in each exercise, and will have to do comparatively little dictionary work (which is dull), but will be occupied rather in manipulating familiar words (which is interesting). Again, just as a child picks up the various ways in which sentences are put together, not so much from explanation as from hearing numberless examples, so we try by constant iteration to accustom the student to the Latin constructions. Of course, when these differ from the English constructions a few words of explanation are necessary, but a few words will generally suffice; it is not desirable at this

stage to attempt to classify the constructions or in any way to pursue the study of grammar. It is these constructions which make Latin a very difficult language to read; when once the inflexions have been mastered the vocabulary puts no considerable strain on an English memory; but it requires a prolonged effort to get accustomed to the various uses of the infinitive and subjunctive and participles which have no counterpart in our own language. When the student feels at home with such sentences as *Rogavit quis vicisset* and *Renuntiavit eum, qui vicisset, iam adesse*, so that he is not forced to stop and translate them to himself, he will soon be able to read continuous passages with ease. Our chief object in this volume is to accustom him to such sentences.

The pieces of translation necessarily contain a large proportion of unfamiliar words: they are introduced less with a view to systematic teaching, than in the hope that, being naturally more interesting than detached sentences, they may prove at least a not unprofitable diversion. With many pupils it would certainly be wiser to omit them in first going through the book or to give a good deal of help; otherwise more time and labour will be spent in turning the leaves of the dictionary than would be advisable.

This book is an abridgment of the second part of the longer course. The longer course carries out more fully the principles on which the series is based: but many teachers cannot find the time to use a larger book, and are forced to carry their pupils over the elementary ground more quickly. We have aimed at making this book as serviceable as possible to such students. The points most fully illustrated are the following: the use of the participles, the accusative and infinitive, the indirect question *ut*, *ne*, *cum*, *qui* final, *quin*, conditional sentences, continuous oratio obliqua. The exercises have been to a great extent rewritten to suit the requirements of the smaller book.

A. M. C.

W. E. P. P.

CONTENTS

SECTION—1, 2. Irregular Verbs: First Conjugation: Second Conjugation—3. Formation of Verbs of the Third Conjugation—TRANSLATION I. *The Philosopher—The Barber—An Ingenious Lunatic*—4, 5. Irregular Verbs: Fourth Conjugation; *Possum*, &c.—TRANSLATION II. *An Adventure*—6. Irregular Verbs: *Fero*, &c.—7. Deponent Verbs—8, 9. Participles: *Conans*, *Conatus*, *Amatus*, *Moratus*—TRANSLATION III. *Gyges' Ring*—10, 11. The Ablative Absolute—1. *Ut*, final, with Subjunctive, First and Second Conjugations—TRANSLATION IV. *Paedagogus—Puer*—13. *Ut*, final, with Subjunctive, Third Conjugation—14. *Ut*, final, with Subjunctive, *Capio*, *Facio*, &c.—15. *Ut*, final, with Subjunctive, Fourth Conjugation—TRANSLATION V. *Strange Discovery of a Murderer and Thief*—16. Accusative with Infinitive—17. Defective Verbs—18. Impersonal Verbs—TRANSLATION VI. *The Purchase of the Sibylline Books*—19. *Ut*, expressing a Result—20. The Indirect Question—21. The Supines—TRANSLATION VII. *Proverbial Sayings*—22. The Gerund—23. The Gerundive for the Gerund—24, 25. The Gerundive—TRANSLATION VIII. *Some Marvellous Stories*—26. Sequence of Tenses—27. Construction of Verbs of Hoping and Promising—TRANSLATION IX. *Sertorius and the Hind*—28. RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES: Relative and Interrogative—*Se* and *Suus*—29. *Te ducem facimus*—30. *Multa me rogavit*—

TRANSLATION X. *Fables about India*—31. *Aliquid cibi*—32. The Verb *Interest*—33. Genitive as Predicate—TRANSLATION XI. *A Murder at an Inn*—34. *Si loquitur, si loquetur*, &c.—RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES—35. Dative of Interest—*Cum* with Subjunctive—36. Dative of Purpose or Effect—RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES—TRANSLATION XII. *Alexander's Speech to his Soldiers*—37. Ablative Absolute and *Cum*—38. Whence? Whither? Where?—39. Ablative of the Agent, Instrument, &c.—40. Unfulfilled Conditions—TRANSLATION XIII. *Arion and the Dolphin*—41. "Some" and "Any"—42. Some Verbs followed by *Ut*—43, 44. Future Conditions—45. RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES on Conditions—TRANSLATION XIV. *Asking for a Holiday*—46. *Qui*, final—47. *Quo*, final—48. *Quidam*—TRANSLATION XV. *Androclus and the Lion*—49. *Quominus*—50. *Quin*—51. Verbs of Fearing—52. *Dum*—RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES—53. Oratio Obliqua—54. Questions and Commands in Oratio Obliqua—TRANSLATION XVI. *A True Dream*—NOTES ON THE PIECES FOR TRANSLATION—LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY—CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS: *Amo, Moneo, Rego, Audio, Sum, Possum, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero, Fio, Eo, Capio*—ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.

PRESS OPINIONS

Guardian.—"English schoolmasters are more likely to be attracted by Messrs. Cook and Pantin's *Shorter Latin Course*, Part II.—an abridgment of a longer course by the same authors which appeared two years ago. It seems to us extremely well done."

School Guardian.—"This is an admirable book for teaching young pupils the first principles of Latin construction. By attempting to follow the method which a child pursues in learning its own language, the editors here have considerably improved upon older books. The pieces for translation may, perhaps, be somewhat beyond the powers of a boy able to do the exercises; but a book like this deserves to be gone over time after time until the whole is thoroughly learnt."

Educational Review.—"This will be found a useful book. . . . A short, and generally very clear, summary of the rules is given with a large number of exercises on them, and the book is interspersed with pieces for translation. The sections on 'oratio obliqua' are specially good."

School Board Chronicle.—"Macmillan's *Shorter Latin Course*, Part Second, is a worthy sequel to Part First, but abridged and rendered more intelligible to young students. . . . The points that are most usefully and fully illustrated are those precisely most wanted. . . . It is a most serviceable book, and as such we highly recommend it."

Schoolmaster.—"We regard this as a useful and practical elementary Latin text-book; a judicious mixture of accidence, syntax, vocabularies, reading lessons, and notes. It makes the subject about as interesting and instructive as it could well be made, and young students using it with a good teacher should make sound and satisfactory progress."

Educational Gazette.—"To students who have made some progress with the Latin Grammar, and who are seeking a useful, practical guide in Latin Composition, we recommend this book as one of the most useful they can adopt. . . . To anyone who carefully goes through the series of exercises contained in the book we can guarantee a knowledge of Latin sufficient for such examinations as that of the First Arts at the Royal University."

Glasgow Herald—"A handy abridgment of the larger work. The exercises take the student over the verbs and the dependent sentences, and illustrate copiously all the more important rules of syntax. The pieces for translation are for the most part interesting stories. The book on the whole is remarkably well adapted for teaching purposes."

hostes fuga salutem petiisse. 10. Ii se suaque[1] omnia nobis dediderunt.

[6.] 1. Caesar carried on war with all the tribes of Gaul. 2. The soldiers of the fifth legion have been sent to the Parisii. 3. The Romans knew the men who were asking for peace. 4. The Romans carried on war in the territory of the Germans. 5. The soldiers who stood in front of the camp saw the horsemen. 6. The barbarians set sail at midnight. 7. The soldiers of that legion will turn[2] and seek safety in flight. 8. The Roman leader restored all their hostages to the Haedui. 9. Money is now being paid; peace has been made: hostages have been given. 10. I will write a letter to him: he will not maintain his opinion.

I.

The Philosopher.

Philosophus quidam tantum libris deditus est ut cetera omnia prorsus ignoraret. Viso puero quodam, dum in via ambulat, quaesivisse dicitur: "Tu, parve puer, quod tibi nomen?" Respondit puer: "At, mi pater, filius tuus ego sum, nomine Octavus."

The Barber.

Iam barbam cuiusdam raserat tonsor quaesiveratque num quid eorum quae in tonstrina essent desideraret; unguentorum enim atque optimorum quidem copiam esse maximam. Negavit tamen ille sibi quidquam opus esse, rogavitque: "Quantum tibi me dare oportet?" "Da modo, domine," inquit, "quidquid soles ei qui

[1] *Suaque* = *sua* + *que*.

[2] He turns (*i.e.* he turns *himself* round) must be *se vertit*: *verto* is a transitive verb, that is to say, it must be accompanied by an accusative case.

SECTION 44.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES—(*Continued*).

Before doing the two following exercises note the difference between—

1. Si adsit, eum laudemus (present subjunctive), *If he were to come* (in the future) *we should praise him*, and
2. Si adesset, eum laudaremus (imperfect subjunctive), *If he were here* (now) *we should be praising him.* (It is implied that he is not here.)

[124.] 1. Si rex essem, tibi non parcerem. 2. Si imperator fiam, Haeduos facile vincam. 3. Si ad regem adire auderem, ei persuaderem ut filium tuum liberaret. 4. Nisi canem timeret, non abiret. 5. Si mihi duo talenta des, de his rebus certiorem te faciam. 6. Si mihi duae essent legiones, Galli nobis nocere non possent. 7. Si negotio se dedat, ceteris facile praestet. 8. Si mos esset nobis ut victis parceremus, vitam vobis concederem. 9. Si liceat nobis abire liberis, e vestris finibus abeamus, nec quisquam nostrum redeat: aliquantum auri, frumenti multum ad vestram urbem quotannis mittamus. 10. Etiamsi vobis credere possem, non liceret mihi more populi Romani vobis parcere.

[125.] 1. If he were to come, I should not speak with him. 2. If he were present, I should say the same. 3. If he were to ask me, I should say that the legions ought to cross the river. 4. If he were to say it, I should not advise you to believe him. 5. If Caesar were to come with a fleet of a hundred ships, we would give up the city to him. 6. If I were in command of the cavalry, I should not fear Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 7. If he understood this he would not

MACMILLAN'S
LATIN COURSE
IN THREE PARTS

BY

A. M. COOK, M.A.

AND

W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTERS IN ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

London

MACMILLAN AND COMPANY, LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

272

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

In Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

[First Edition printed 1885. Reprinted 1887, 1891, 1892, 1894, 1896, 1899]

MACMILLAN'S LATIN COURSE

FIRST PART

BY

A. M. COOK M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER IN ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

THE preparation of this book was undertaken from a conviction that the books of the kind now in use err in three not unimportant points—1. The exercises in each chapter are not sufficient in amount. 2. Too many words are introduced at once. 3. More rules are given than are required, and more explanation than is helpful.

In the present book, therefore, the *Exercises* are far more abundant than is usual. The *Vocabularies* are kept as small as possible, and consist of rarely more than six words, and often of less; and with the help of the recapitulatory exercises, a word once introduced is kept before the pupil through the rest of the book. No more *Rules* are given than are considered indispensable. It is hoped that this method will render the first steps in Latin easier and more sure.

It is suggested that the English exercises should be first read aloud by the pupil, that they should be read and re-read, and not written out until he is able to translate them into Latin with some fluency.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

THE book is divided into 108 sections, containing in all 324 exercises, many of which are recapitulatory. The subjects handled are the Declensions, Adjectives, Numbers, Pronouns, the verb *Sum*, and the four conjugations (excluding however the subjunctive mood). The exercises are followed by the full conjugation of the verbs, vocabularies to the exercises, Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionaries. It should also be mentioned that pieces of translation are inserted among the exercises at intervals, and thus the book, as far as it goes, is at once exercise-book, grammar, and reading-book.

PRESS OPINIONS

Literary World.—"This work, which is a praiseworthy attempt to make the difficulties of Latin easier at the beginning, deserves a little more notice than the many unsystematic books of exercises which seem to be the delight of publishers and the despair of schoolmasters. It proceeds on a definite plan, and that plan, we venture to think, is the most satisfactory, if not the only satisfactory one. Mr. Prendergast, in his valuable work on the mastery of languages, laid down the principles that are here followed out. The main features of the system are: (1) To begin the teaching of a language with the sentence as the unit, and not with the single word; (2) To limit the vocabulary; (3) To ensure a constant repetition of the words that make up this vocabulary; and, above all, (4) To dispense to a great extent with rules. Little children, it is argued, in a foreign country pick up a foreign language with notorious ease, because (1) they only learn a small number of words, (2 they are constantly repeating this small number. It is possible to imitate in the schoolroom the methods which the children thus unconsciously use. But, to do this, we must have exercises which are constantly dwelling on the same words, or on a vocabulary which increases by very small degrees. There are other books to a great extent constructed on these lines, but in these, valuable as they are, the exercises, as they advance, become rapidly too difficult, introduce far too great a number of words, and far too intricate constructions. Mr. Cook's work, we think, avoids the mistake there made; it contains three hundred exercises on a small number of words; it deals only with elementary accidence, and also it introduces from the first some Latin stories, which are at once easy, ingenious, and amusing. The intention of the book is that the exercises should be first read over by the master, that then they should be read by the pupils, and that the oral repetition should be continued. It is carrying into effect one great maxim of education—*répétez sans cesse.* Any master who goes through this book, *insisting on the oral rehearsal of these exercises*, will find that in a year pupils of ordinary ability will have mastered the first and most serious difficulties of Latin."

Schoolmaster.—"There are some excellent features in this work. The exercises are numerous; the same words crop up from time to time, and in different relations throughout the exercises; and easy and interesting narratives are introduced at a much earlier stage than usual. We have been greatly pleased with the preparation and arrangement of the work. . . . It is the very book to put in the hands of young beginners in Latin, and even they will find the exercises by no means dull, but even interesting work."

Pall Mall Gazette.—"This book provides a very large and valuable body of well-arranged exercises of Latin into English and English into Latin. . . . A great and uncommon merit of the book is that the vocabularies are kept as small as possible, and consist of rarely more than six words, and often of less."

Liverpool Albion.—"This work is evidently a fruit or enlightened experience in the art of teaching. The lessons are ample in quantity, and admirably graduated."

SECTION 14.

THIRD DECLENSION—(*Continued*): THE STEM.

The nouns of the third declension which have been given so far have been declined by adding the case-endings to the nominative singular. But in order to decline the greater number of nouns of this declension it is necessary to know another case as well. Judex, a judge, for instance, is thus declined:—

	Singular.		*Plural.*
Nom.	Judex.	Nom.	judices.
Acc.	Judĭcem.	Acc.	judices.
Gen.	Judicis.	Gen.	judicum.
Dat.	Judici.	Dat.	judicibus.
Abl.	Judice.	Abl.	judicibus.

It is not to *judex*, but to *judic-*, that the case-endings are added.[1]

(47.)

1. Militibus Germanis bellum gratum est.
2. Regina diligentiam militum laudat.
3. Soror parvo fratri bonum librum dat.
4. Fratres praemiis reginae contenti sunt.
5. Rex militibus hodie contentus est.

[1] English words derived from the Latin sometimes help one to remember how a Latin noun is declined; the word "military" reminds one that *miles* makes *militem*, etc., so "judicial," *judex, judicem:* "regal," *rex, regem:* "margin," *margo, marginem:* "capital," *caput, capitis;* and many others.

10. Nobis ipsis injuriae nostrae gravissimae videbantur.
11. Ille vir omnium sapientissimus haberi dicitur.
12. Hi viri jure optimo fortissimi habiti sunt.

(294.)

1. The boys were sitting every day in the garden.
2. That city was being besieged in vain.
3. Marcus now possesses his brother's books.
4. Caesar, you have been praised by all the citizens!
5. He has been judged the wisest of all.
6. Your little brother will have been frightened by the lightning.
7. Will you not be delighted with your elder son's diligence?
8. You will not, will you, be frightened by the spirited horse?
9. The sailors have been warned again and again.
10. Marcus has always been considered, and is, a very good citizen.

XXIV.

A Cork Leg.

Viator Britannicus, a fera quadam atque inculta gente captus, diu de salute sua desperabat. Tandem novum quidem et inauditum consilium capit. Cultrum enim primo in alterum crus (corticeum erat) ridens infixit: mirantur qui circumstabant barbari, et paululum recedunt. Deinde totum crus exuit, et minaci vultu manibus supra caput vibravit. Tum vero illi, maximo commoti timore, summa vi in pedes se dederunt.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

In Globe 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

[First Edition printed 1890. Reprinted 1893, 1896]

MACMILLAN'S
LATIN COURSE
SECOND PART

BY

A. M. COOK, M.A., AND W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTERS IN ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

PREFACE

THE student of Latin has a threefold task to accomplish before he can read the Latin writers with any ease. In the first place, he must make himself familiar with the inflections. In the second place, he must acquire a considerable vocabulary. In both these respects Latin presents no serious difficulty; in both it is easier than Greek. The Greek irregular verb, with all its variety of forms for prose and poetry, taxes the strongest memory; the Latin irregular verb is easily acquired by any industrious student. With the vocabulary too there is much less labour involved; so many of the words wear a familiar aspect. But though the first two steps that have to be made by the student of Latin are not difficult, the third part of the task is by no means easy. The words taken singly are easily mastered, but it is nevertheless true that Latin is a peculiarly difficult language to read, that the relation of the words to one another is not easily detected without considerable practice. The reason of this is, no doubt, that many of the commonest Latin constructions have no counterpart in English. For example, in translating *Dixit se valere*, we cannot use our infinitive; we cannot imitate the construction of the sentence *Oravit me ut venirem*. Where Latin uses a participle we more often prefer a separate clause. It is not necessary to multiply instances to show that in the construction of sentences—and, we might add, in the order of words—the Latin language is peculiarly unlike our own. Hence Latin sentences seem strange and difficult to us; and this strangeness only wears off when we have got thoroughly accustomed to the Latin constructions.

Our principal object in the present volume is to introduce the beginner to the commonest Latin constructions, and, by continual practice, to make him quite familiar with them. Our plan is to explain the Latin usage in as few words as possible, avoiding as far as we can technical terms, to which the young student necessarily attaches no definite meaning. We then give at least one Latin and one English exercise dealing chiefly with the point explained, and in subsequent exercises we never leave it out of sight for long. We have endeavoured to present each construction only in its simplest form, occasionally suggesting in a note that there is more to learn. Many of the books most commonly put into the hands of beginners seem to us more difficult than they need be, because they give too much information, so that even the most intelligent boys are puzzled with a mass of details,

10. Nobis ipsis injuriae nostrae gravissimae videbantur.
11. Ille vir omnium sapientissimus haberi dicitur.
12. Hi viri jure optimo fortissimi habiti sunt.

(294.)

1. The boys were sitting every day in the garden.
2. That city was being besieged in vain.
3. Marcus now possesses his brother's books.
4. Caesar, you have been praised by all the citizens
5. He has been judged the wisest of all.
6. Your little brother will have been frightened the lightning.
7. Will you not be delighted with your elder s diligence?
8. You will not, will you, be frightened by spirited horse?
9. The sailors have been
10. Marcus has always

23

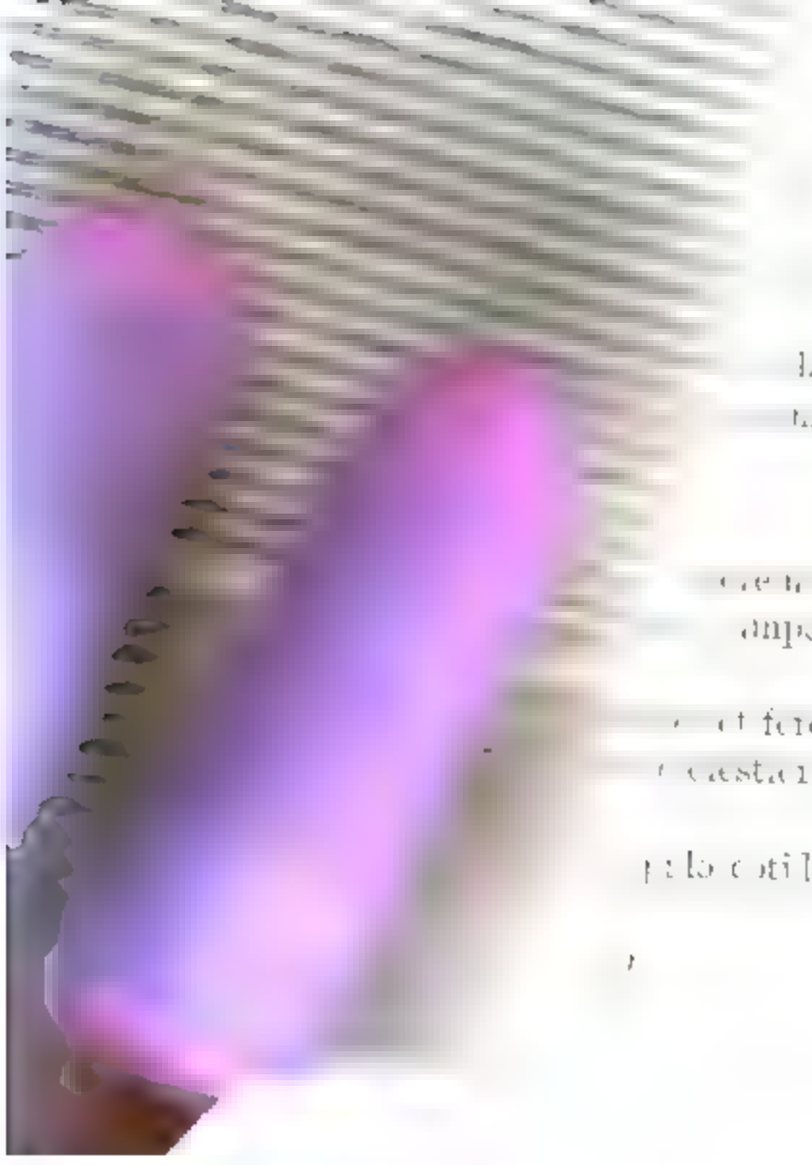
fer

in to

rstand

Gaius ?"

has been



supine of *fero*

he passive of *facio*

factus sum

patienter ferre

impetum nostrorum

et feret ; vir fortis est.

Celestiores hunt ; plurimi

pulo cotidie factae sunt.

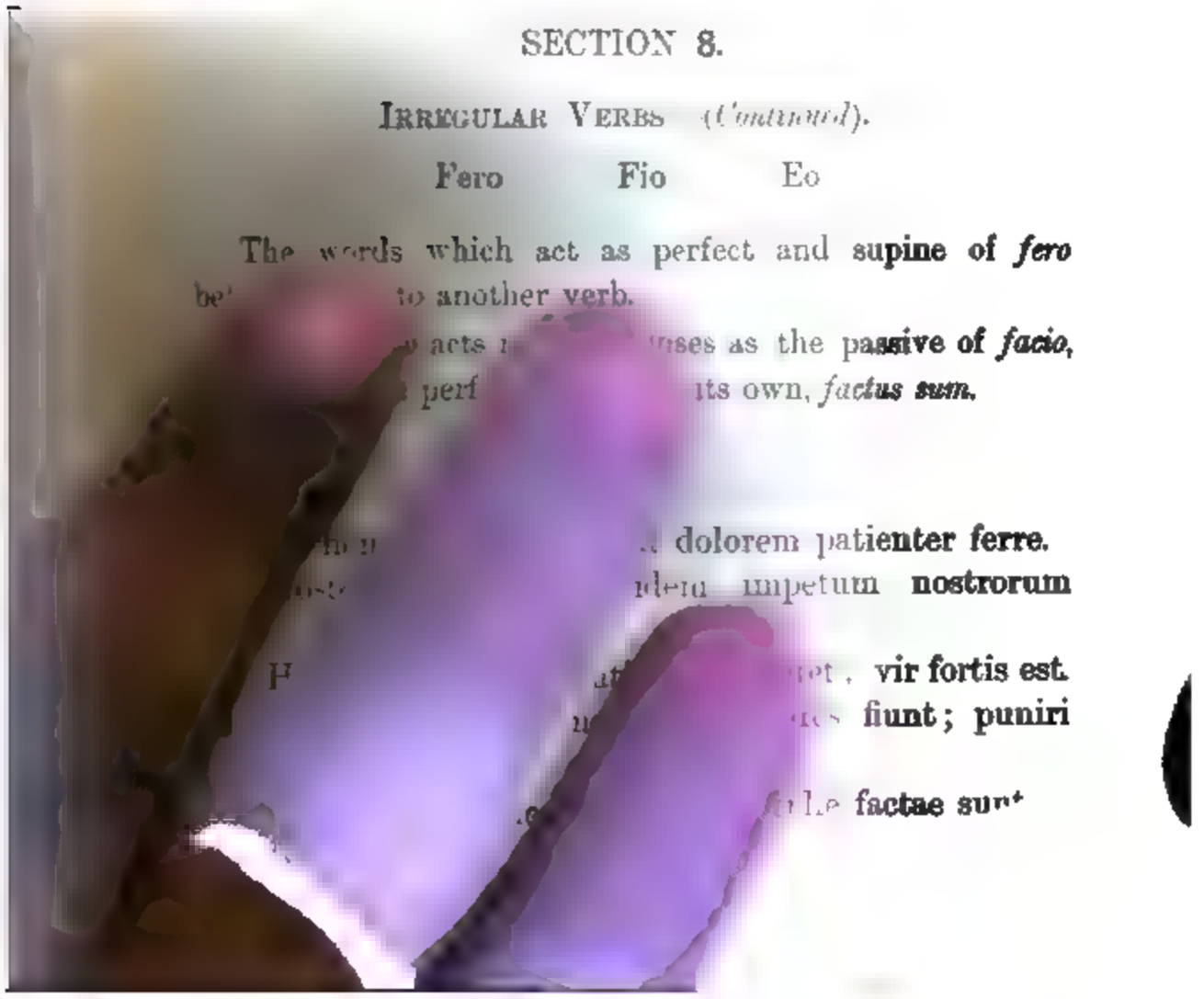
I hope that the book may prove useful not only for younger boys, but also for those elder boys and girls who begin Latin rather late and cannot give much time to the study of the language. For them the important thing is that they should acquire as rapidly as possible the power to read ordinary Latin prose without great difficulty. I think that something may be done to help them by excluding everything that is not quite common, and by giving plenty of practice in dealing with all those difficulties which are of frequent occurrence. It is waste of time to give them an exercise on *Macte virtute*, for example, or the use of the infinitive in rhetorical questions in Oratio obliqua, for they will very likely never come across an instance of either. What they need is such familiarity with common constructions as will make a sentence like the following easy and pleasant to read: *Cuius sermone ita tum cupide fruebar, quasi iam divinarem, id quod evenit, illo exstincto fore, unde discerem, neminem.*

CONTENTS

1-30, Miscellaneous—31-32, The connecting relative—33-35, *se* and *eum*—EXERCISE 1—36-51, Pronouns and the adverbs connected with them—(*Qui, quis, cur, quando*, &c., 36-40; *quisquam* and *ullus*, 41; *quivis*, 42; *aliquis, quidam, quondam*, 43, 44; *quisquis, quicumque*, 45; *quisque*, 46; *ipse*, 47; *idem*, 48)—EXERCISE 2—52-58, The tenses—(The tenses classified 52; general rule for tenses in subordinate sentences, 53; general rule applied to iterative sentences 54; general rule applied to conditional sentences with the indicative, 55; general rule applied to *cum* sentences with the indicative, 56; *iam diu* with the present, 58)—EXERCISE 3—59-64, Temporal sentences (*ubi, simul ac, postquam, priusquam, dum*)—EXERCISE 4—65-72, The conjunction *cum*—EXERCISE 5—73-79, The participles—EXERCISE 6-8—80-82, The infinitive, gerund, and gerundive. (The English verbal substantive in -ing: *ars scribendi*, the art of writing)—EXERCISE 9—83-89, The gerund and gerundive used as predicates (*scribendum est*, I must write)—EXERCISES 10, 11—90-95, The infinitive as subject (Predicative genitive)—EXERCISE 12—96-99, The infinitive as subject (Impersonal verbs; *decet, oportet, interest*, &c.)—EXERCISE 13—100, The infinitive as subject (Impersonal verbs with dative: *licet*, &c.)—EXERCISE 14—101-02, The infinitive as object—103, Verbs with which the nominative and infinitive may be used (*nolo ire solus*)—104, *Jubeo, veto*, &c.—105, Some verbs which admits of various constructions (*scio, volo, timeo, dubito, constituo, disco*)—EXERCISE 15—106-13, The infinitive with verbs of saying and thinking—114, The future infinitive active and passive—EXERCISE 16—115-19, Conditional sentences—EXERCISE 17—120-23, The potential subjunctive (*scire velim*)—EXERCISE 18—124-25, Commands and prohibitions—126-28, Exhortations (*eamus*, let us go)—129-30, Wishes (*Utinam veniat*)—EXERCISE 19—131-52, Oratio obliqua—EXERCISES 20-26—153-58, The subjunctive in relative clauses (*Nihil est cur doleas, Dignus est quem imiteris*, &c.)—EXERCISE 27—159-62, Casual sentences—*Quod* meaning "as to the fact that"—EXERCISE 28—163-67, The Calendar—168, Hints on the connection of sentences—Sixty-two Exercises in Continuous Prose—ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY—IRREGULAR VERBS—NUMERALS.

(Specimen Page, Second Part.)

8. Do not despise the poor: we ought to prefer wisdom to riches.
9. He will choose rather to go to the city than to remain at home.
10. He will neither be able nor willing to understand this book.
11. He inquired of me: "You have not seen Gaius?" "I have not seen him," I answered.
12. Do not, friends, blame the slave; he has been sufficiently punished already.



SECTION 8.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*Continued*).

Fero Fio Eo

The words which act as perfect and supine of *fero* be
to another verb.
acts
uses as the passive of *facio*,
perf
its own, *factus sum*.

dolorem patienter ferre.
idem impetum nostrorum
vir fortis est.
fiunt; puniri
factae sunt

Exercise 63

In the House of Lords

It seems to me, my lords, that you fail to understand that the question before you is, not whether we are to have peace or war, (for King Philip will not leave that open to you, he is setting about a great war both by land and sea,) but whether we are to carry our forces across to Spain or to receive the enemy into Britain. What an important difference this makes, you have certainly learned by your experience in the recent war, if never before. If Philip sends his soldiers over to Britain, do you believe that the Irish will keep quiet and maintain their loyalty to the throne? Never will that people fail to side against us, whenever they have any one, to

A question in the deliberative subjunctive suffers no change of mood when made indirect:

Direct — *Utrum cedamus an resistamus?* Are we to yield or resist?

Indirect—*Quaerit utrum cedamus an resistamus*, He asks whether we are to yield or resist.

my lords, *patres conscripti.*

fail to understand: use *ignorare.*

the question before you is: say 'you are being consulted.'

Philip, *Philippus.*

I leave it open to you, *liberum id vobis permitto.*

to set about a great war, *ingens bellum mōliri.*

to learn by experience, *experiri.*

recent: use *proximus.*

Irish, *Hiberni.*

maintain loyalty *to the throne, in fide manēre.*

never will that people etc.: arrange thus 'Never will that people, unless when there is wanting *one* to whom they may go over (*desciscĕre*), not revolt from us.' Here is a similar sentence: *Numquam ego, nisi cum deerunt quibus subveniam, non resistam tibi.*

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application.

Pott 8vo. Price 1s. 6d.

FIRST STEPS

TO

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

BY

REV. GEORGE RUST, M.A.

OF PEMBROKE COLLEGE, OXFORD

LATE MASTER OF THE MIDDLE AND LOWER SCHOOL, KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

A KEY to "FIRST STEPS TO LATIN COMPOSITION" by Rev. G. Rust, M.A. By W. M. Yates, Assistant-Master in the High School, Sale. Pott 8vo. 3s. 6d. net. *Supplied to Teachers only.*

Exercise I.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active Voice, Indicative Mood.

1. The boy was calling
2. The soldier fights
3. The javelin wounds
4. The king has praised
5. The spear had wounded
6. The father will call
7. The king will have fought
8. The soldier was fighting
9. The slave had called
10. The king is praising
11. The queen had praised
12. The father has called

Exercise XLII.

MISCELLANEOUS.

1. Cæsar orders the whole mountain to be fortified
2. Not having dared to cross the river the barbarians return into their camp
3. Cæsar understands that the Helvetii are about-to go through our province
4. The soldiers of the tenth legion having followed Cæsar in many battles said that they were willing to fight against Ariovistus
5. The journey from the hither province into further Gaul is long and difficult
6. The barbarians boast that they are able to conquer a Roman army
7. The same chiefs returned and said that they were willing to give hostages
8. Ariovistus said that he had left his own borders not without the hope of great rewards
9. On-account-of the multitude of the enemy our men did not dare to leave the camp
10. Having ravaged the lands of the Sequani the Germans returned to their own borders

A Specimen Copy (with the exception of the Key) will be presented on application

In Pott 8vo. Price 1s. 6d.; Key, for Teachers only. 3s. 6d. net.

SHORT EXERCISES

IN

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

AND

Examination Papers in Latin Grammar

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED A

BRIEF CHAPTER ON ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES

PART I

BY

THE REV. HENRY BELCHER, M.A., LL.D.

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

Part II. On the Syntax of Sentences, with an Appendix, including EXERCISES IN LATIN IDIOMS, etc. 2s. KEY, for Teachers only. 3s. net.

XXV.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES ON THE ABLATIVE

1. On the top of the hill Cæsar had pitched his camp.
2. He had fortified it with a ditch and five castles.
3. The soldiers defended it with much valour against the Nervii.
4. Nothing can be more useful to a soldier than virtue.
5. This soldier is braver than that one, and Cæsar has praised him.
6. We all hope that Cæsar, relying on his valour, will conquer the Nervii.
7. The Nervii, coming by night, attacked Cæsar's camp.
8. Having defeated the Nervii, Cæsar followed them many miles.
9. Cæsar, having followed the Nervii many miles, slew a large number of them.
10. They have seen the king with his army near the banks of the Rhone.
11. When the king was dead, all the enemy fled across the Rhone.
12. Cicero was killed by the order of Marcus Antonius, the Triumvir.
13. Let us use wise counsel rather than arms in this matter.
14. They have declared that they will use violence.
15. Relying on his courage, he attacked the lion and slew him.
16. The lion was slain by the brave soldier with his sword.
17. We have taught you that counsel is better than violence.
18. The young prefer to use violence, the old, counsel.
19. He has returned from Capua, where he saw your father and sisters.
20. If my father and sisters are at Capua, I shall go away from Rome at once.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered
Please name the volumes required

Macmillan's Elementary Classics

LATIN

A new feature has been added to Messrs. Macmillan's widely circulated series of Elementary Classics. Those authors, or selected parts of authors, which are most commonly read in schools are being gradually issued with illustrations arranged under the direction of an expert. These illustrations show the dress, furniture, arms, equipment, etc., employed by Greeks and Romans, and are either put together from trustworthy data or are direct reproductions of antique statues or designs. In many cases the plates are coloured. No addition is made to the price of the books thus provided with pictures which should at once interest and assist the pupil. The first volumes issued with the new illustrations will be Caesar, Books V. and VI., and "Invasion of Britain," Horace—Odes, Books I. and IV. Others will follow in rapid succession until all the volumes selected from Caesar, Horace, Virgil, Homer, and Xenophon are available in this form.

The following Volumes contain Introductions, Notes, and Vocabularies, and in some cases Exercises. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d. each.

Latin Accidence and Exercises arranged for Beginners.—By W. Welch, M.A., and Rev. C. G. Duffield, M.A.

Caesar.—The Helvetian War. Selections from Book I., adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. Welch, M.A., and Rev. C. G. Duffield, M.A.

[First Edition 1887; reprinted 1889, 1892, 1895, 1896, 1898, 1899, 1900.]

Caesar.—The Invasion of Britain. Selections from Books IV. and V., adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By the same.

[First Edition 1884; reprinted 1885, 1886, 1887, 1888, 1890, 1891, 1892, 1894, 1895, 1897, 1898, 1899, 1900.]

Caesar.—Scenes from Books V. and VI. By C. Colbeck, M.A.

Caesar.—The Gallic War. Book I. By Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A.
Books II. and III. By Rev. W. G. Rutherford, LL.D.
Book IV. By Clement Bryans, M.A.
Book V. By C. Colbeck, M.A.
Book VI. By C. Colbeck, M.A.
Book VII. By Rev. J. Bond, M.A., and Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A.

The Civil War. Book I. By M. Montgomrey, M.A.
Scenes from the Civil War. By C. H. Keene, M.A.

Cicero.—De Senectute. By E. S. Shuckburgh, M.A.

De Amicitia. By E. S. Shuckburgh, M.A.

First Catiline Oration. By Rev. G. H. Nall, M.A.

Pro Archia. By Rev. G. H. Nall, M.A.

Stories of Roman History. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By the Rev. G. E. Jeans, M.A., and A. V. Jones, M.A.

Curtius (Quintus).—Selections: Scenes in the Life of Alexander the Great. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By J. Coverley Smith, B.A.

Eutropius.—Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. Welch, M.A., and Rev. C. G. Duffield, M.A.

[First Edition 1883; reprinted 1884 (2), 1885, 1886, 1888, 1889, 1890, 1892, 1894, 1896, 1898, 1899.]

Eutropius.—Books I. and II. By W. Welch, M.A., and Rev. C. G. Duffield, M.A.

Exercises in Unseen Translation in Latin. By W. Welch, M.A., and Rev. C. G. Duffield, M.A.

Gellius (Aulus): Stories from. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By Rev. G. H. Nall, M.A.

Horace.—Odes. Book I. By T. E. Page, M.A. | Book III. By the same.
Book II. By the same. | Book IV. By the same.

Livy.—Book I. By Rev. H. M. Stephenson, M.A.

Book V. By M. Alford.

Book XXI. By Rev. W. W. Capes and J. E. Melhuish, M.A.

Book XXII. By Rev. W. W. Capes and J. E. Melhuish, M.A.

Livy.—Legends of Ancient Rome. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By H. Wilkinson, M.A.

Livy.—Selections from Books V. and VI. By W. Cecil Laming, M.A.

Livy.—The Hannibalian War. Books XXI. and XXII. Adapted by G. C. Macaulay, M.A.

[First Edition 1880; reprinted 1882, 1883, 1885, 1886, 1889, 1891, 1895, 1896, 1900.]

Livy.—The Hannibalian War. Books XXIII. and XXIV. Adapted by E. P. Coleridge, B.A.

Livy.—The Siege of Syracuse. Being part of the XXIV. and XXV. Books of Livy. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By G. Richards, M.A., and the Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A.

Nepos.—Selections Illustrative of Greek and Roman History. With Exercises. By G. S. Farnell, M.A.

Nepos.—Lives. Vol. I. By H. Wilkinson, M.A. [*Vol. II. in the Press.*

Nepos.—Lives of Miltiades and Epaminondas. By Rev. G. H. Nall, M.A.

Ovid.—Selections. By E. S. Shuckburgh, M.A.

Ovid.—Easy Selections from Ovid in Elegiac Verse. With Exercises. By H. Wilkinson, M.A.

Ovid.—Metamorphoses. Book I. By C. Simmons, M.A. [*In preparation.*

Stories from the Metamorphoses. With Exercises. By the Rev. J. Bond, M.A., and the Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A.

Ovid.—Tristia. Book I. By E. S. Shuckburgh, M.A.

Tristia. Book III. By E. S. Shuckburgh, M.A.

Phaedrus.—By the Rev. G. H. Nall, M.A.

Phaedrus.—Select Fables. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By the Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A.

Pliny.—Selections Illustrative of Roman Life. By C. H. Keene, M.A.

Pliny.—Letters I.-XII. By C. J. Phillips, B.A.

Sallust.—Jugurthine War. Adapted for Beginners. With Notes and Vocabulary. By E. P. Coleridge, M.A.

Sallust.—Catiline. Edited by Rev. G. H. Nall, M.A.

Suetonius.—Stories of the Caesars. By H. Wilkinson, M.A.

Valerius Maximus. With Notes and Vocabulary. By C. H. Ward, M.A.

Virgil.—Selections. By E. S. Shuckburgh, M.A.

Virgil.—Bucolics. By T. E. Page, M.A.

Georgics. Book I. By T. E. Page, M.A.
Book II. By the Rev. J. H. Skrine, M.A.
Book III. By T. E. Page, M.A.
Book IV. By T. E. Page, M.A.

Aeneid. Book I. By the Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A.
Book I. By T. E. Page, M.A.
Book II. By T. E. Page, M.A.
Book III. By T. E. Page, M.A.
Book IV. By the Rev. H. M. Stephenson, M.A.
Book V. By the Rev. A. Calvert, M.A.
Book VI. By T. E. Page, M.A.
Book VII. By the Rev. A. Calvert, M.A.
Book VIII. By the Rev. A. Calvert, M.A.
Book IX. By the Rev. H. M. Stephenson, M.A.
Book X. By S. G. Owen, M.A.
Book XI. By T. E. Page, M.A.
Book XII. By T. E. Page, M.A.

The following contain Introductions and Notes, but no Vocabulary.

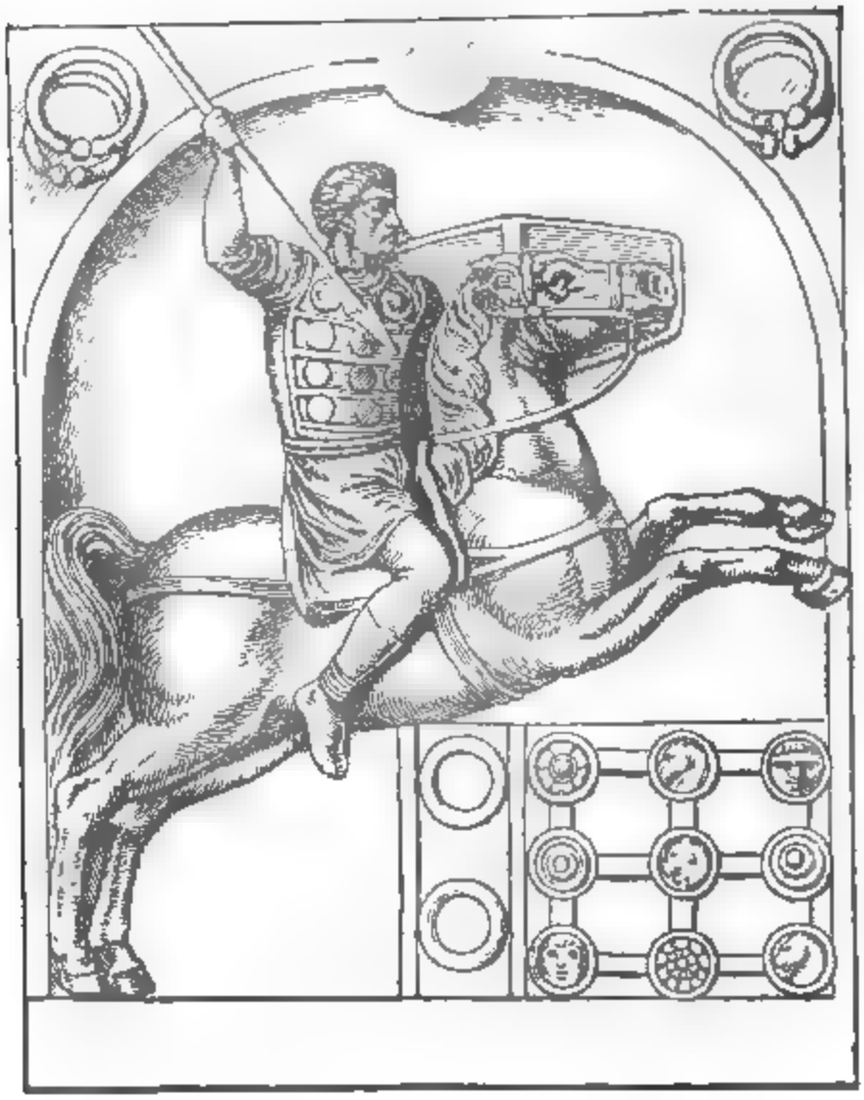
Cicero.—Select Letters. By the Rev. G. E. Jeans, M.A.

Horace.—Selections from the Satires and Epistles. By Rev. W. J. V. Baker, M.A.

Select Epodes and Ars Poetica. By H. A. Dalton, M.A.

Terence.—Scenes from the 'Andria.' By F. W. Cornish, M.A.

[Specimen Page of Illustrations]



Trooper (Scheiber Anderson)

Specimen Illustration from Caesar's Gallic War. Book V

These Volumes will be found to serve all the purposes of Single Term Readers

[Specimen Page]

LATIN ACCIDENCE AND EXERCISES. Arranged for Beginners. By W. Welch, M.A., and Rev. C. G. Duffield, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

3. We will not remain in the city without you.
4. I came with my friend.
5. The pirate does not fight without ships.
6. We remained many days in the city.

LESSON XIV.

The Ablative is used to express the means, instrument, manner, and cause of an action.

dīvid-o, -ere, dīvīs-i, dīvīs-um (v.a. 3) I divide.
glad-ius, -ii (m.), a sword. **am-or, -ōris (m.), love.**
auxil-ium, -ii (n.), help.

Exercise A.

1. Miles gladio hostem vulnerabat.
2. Navibus hostium victi sumus.
3. Agri duobus fluminibus dividuntur
4. Amore virtutis militem laudabimus.
5. Muris urbem munitote.
6. Hostes summa virtute pugnaverunt

Exercise B.

1. With a loud (*magnus*) voice he called the sailors.
2. With great bravery he avenged the wrongs of the king.
3. The soldiers were wounding the enemy with swords.

These Volumes will be found to serve all the purposes of Single Term Readers.

[Specimen Page]

CAESAR'S HELVETIAN WAR. Adapted for the Use of Beginners. By W. Welch, M.A., and Rev. C. G. Duffield, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

27. Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, 'Sunt' inquit, 'nonnulli, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valet:

ii privatim plus possunt quam ipsi magistratus.

Hi seditiosâ atque improbâ oratione multitudinem deterrent, ne frumentum vobis conferant.

Dicunt satius esse, si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possimus, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre:

neque se dubitare quin, si Helvetios superaveritis, una cum reliquâ Galliâ nobis libertatem sitis erepturi.

Hi vestra consilia, et ea, quae in castris geruntur, hostibus enuntiant: neque eos coercere possumus.

Intelligo quanto cum periculo haec tibi enuntiem, et ob eam causam, quam diu potui, tacui.'

28. Hac oratione Lisci Dumnorix, Divitiaci frater, designabatur: Caesar autem, pluribus praesentibus, eas res jactari nolebat: celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet.

Quaerit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat.

Dicit liberius atque audacius.

Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit: repperit esse vera.

ex eo audit Dumnorigem esse summâ audaciâ hominem:

illum propter liberalitatem magnâ apud plebem gratiâ esse:

novarum rerum cupidum esse.

These Volumes will be found to serve all the purposes of Single Term Readers

[Specimen Page]

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN. Adapted for the Use of Beginners. By W. Welch, M.A., and Rev. C. G. Duffield, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d.

receperunt. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. 28. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit: eosque in continentem adduci jussit. Ipse, idoneam tempestatem nactus, paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit: quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt: sed ex iis onerariae duae portus capere non potuerunt, et paulo infra delatae sunt.

The Britons surrender, and Caesar returns to Gaul.

Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eò duae civitates ex Britanniâ obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. Romae ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est. Interim naves aedificari veteresque refici jubet: ipse in fines Trevirorum profectus est, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant. 29. Inde ad portum Itium pervenit, quò naves convenire jusserat, quòd inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus. Dies circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus est, quòd Corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis his in locis flare consuevit. Tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves jubet. Labienum in continente cum tribus legionibus et millibus duobus equitum relinquit, ut portas tueatur et frumentum provideat. Ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continente reliquerat, ad

Preparations made during the winter for a second invasion to be undertaken in the following summer.

These Volumes will be found to serve all the purposes of Single Term Readers

[Specimen Page]

EUTROPIUS. Adapted for the Use of Beginners. With Notes, and Vocabularies. By W. Welch, M.A., and Rev. C. G. Duffield, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

71. Postea Caesar Romam regressus quarto se consulem fecit, et statim ad Hispanias est profectus, ubi Pompeii filii, Cnaeus et Sextus, ingens bellum reparaverant. Multa proelia fuerunt, ultimum apud Mundam civitatem, in quo adeo Caesar paene victus est, ut, fugientibus suis, se voluerit occidere, ne post tantam rei militaris gloriam in potestatem adolescentium natus annos sex et quinquaginta veniret. Denique, reparatis suis, vicit. Ex Pompeii filiis major occisus est, minor fugit.

War with Pompey's sons. B.C. 45.

72. Inde Caesar, bellis civilibus toto orbe compositis, Romam rediit. Agere insolentius coepit et contra consuetudinem Romanae libertatis. Quum ergo et honores ex suâ voluntate praestaret, qui a populo antea deferebantur, nec senatui ad se venienti assurgeret, aliaque regia ac paene tyrannica faceret, conjuratum est in eum a sexaginta vel amplius senatoribus equitibusque Romanis. Praecipui fuerunt inter conjuratos duo Bruti, ex eo genere Bruti, qui primus Romae consul fuerat et reges expulerat, C. Cassius et Servilius Casca. Ergo Caesar, quum senatus die inter ceteros venisset ad curiam, tribus et viginti vulneribus confossus est.

Death of Caesar. B.C. 44.

CIVIL WAR RENEWED.

73. Anno urbis septingentesimo fere ac nono, interfecto Caesare, bella civilia reparata sunt. Percussoribus enim Caesaris senatus favebat.

Antony and Octavianus. B.C. 43.

These Volumes will be found to serve all the purposes of Single Term Readers

[Specimen Page]

EUTROPIUS. Books I. and II. By W. WELCH, M.A., and Rev C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d.

II. 11 A.

RULE.—**A purpose is expressed in English by the infinitive, as** He sent the soldier *to report*, etc. This in Latin would be expressed by **ut** (=in order that) with **pres. or imperf. subjunctive as—misit militem ut renuntiaret. If the verb in the principal sentence is present, present perfect, future simple, or future perfect tense, then a present subjunctive will follow after ut. If the verb in the principal sentence is imperfect, past indefinite, or pluperfect, then an imperfect subjunctive must be used after ut, as militem** $\left.\begin{matrix}\text{mittit}\\ \text{misit}\end{matrix}\right\}$ **ut** $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{renuntiet.}\\ \text{renuntiaret.}\end{matrix}\right.$

1. The soldier was sent *to* demand peace.
2. The consul will send a soldier to report the death of Pyrrus.
3. He demands that the army should be dismissed.
4. He had come *to* give the gold to the soldier.
5. Have you sent a soldier to Rome *to* report the surrender of the enemy?
6. He came into the camp *to* see the general.
7. He has sent legates *to* seek peace.

II. 11 B.

1. The general sent soldiers *to* bury the dead.
2. We had gone from the city *to* see the battle.
3. *Raising his hands* to heaven he spoke with a loud (magna) voice.
4. Tarquinius made war on the Romans that he might be restored to his kingdom
5. The Romans feared the elephants which Pyrrus had.
6. When night had put an end to the battle they buried the dead.

These Volumes will be found to serve all the purposes of Single Term Readers

[Specimen Page]

EXERCISES IN UNSEEN TRANSLATION IN LATIN. By W. Welch, M.A., and Rev. C. G. Duffield, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

177. *Q. Cicero, Caesar's Lieutenant, sends out Foragers from his Camp.*

Cicero, qui per omnes superiores dies praeceptis Caesaris cum summa diligentia milites in castris continuisset ac ne calonem quidem quenquam extra munitionem egredi passus esset, septimo die diffidens de numero dierum Caesarem fidem servaturum, quod longius eum progressum audiebat neque ulla de reditu ejus fama afferebatur, simul eorum permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam paene obsessionem appellabant, si quidem ex castris egredi non liceret, quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes misit quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat.

Caesar.

178. *Zeus kills Phaethon with a Flash of Lightning.*

At Phaethon, rutilos flamma populante capillos,
volvitur in praeceps, longoque per aera tractu
fertur: ut interdum de coelo stella sereno
etsi non cecidit, potuit cecidisse videri.
Quem procul a patria diverso maximus orbe
excipit Eridanus, spumantiaque abluit ora.
Naiades Hesperiae trifida fumantia flamma
corpora dant tumulo: signantque hoc carmine saxum:
HIC SITUS EST PHAETHON, CURRUS AURIGA PATERNI:
QUEM SI NON TENUIT, MAGNIS TAMEN EXCIDIT AUSIS.

Ovid.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered
Please name the volumes required.

Macmillan's Classical Series

LATIN

Fcap. 8vo.

Caesar.—The Gallic War. By Rev. John Bond, M.A., and Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A. With maps. *4s. 6d.*

Catullus.—Select Poems. By F. P. Simpson, B.A. *3s. 6d.* The Text of this edition is carefully expurgated for School use.

Cicero.—The Catiline Orations. By Prof. A. S. Wilkins, Litt.D. *2s. 6d.*

Pro Cluentio. By W. Peterson, M.A. *3s. 6d.*

Pro Lege Manilia. By Prof. A. S. Wilkins, Litt.D. *2s. 6d.*

The Second Philippic Oration. By Prof. John E. B. Mayor. *3s. 6d.*

Pro Roscio Amerino. By E. H. Donkin, M.A. *2s. 6d.*

Pro P. Sestio. By Rev. H. A. Holden, Litt.D. *3s. 6d.*

Pro Milone. By F. H. Colson, M.A. *2s. 6d.*

Pro Murena. By J. H. Freese, M.A. *2s. 6d.*

Pro Plancio. By H. W. Auden, M.A. *3s. 6d.*

Select Letters. By Prof. R. Y. Tyrrell, M.A. *4s. 6d.*

Fourth Verrine. By F. W Hall, M.A. *3s. 6d.*

Horace.—The Odes and Epodes. By T. E. Page, M.A. *5s.* (Books I., II., III., and IV. separately. *2s.* each.)

The Satires. By Prof. Arthur Palmer, M.A. *5s.*

The Epistles and Ars Poetica. By Prof. A. S. Wilkins, Litt.D. *5s.*

Juvenal.—Thirteen Satires. By E. G. Hardy, M.A. *5s.* The Text is carefully expurgated for School use.

Select Satires. By Prof. John E. B. Mayor. XII.-XVI. *4s. 6d.*

Livy.—Books II. and III. By Rev. H. M. Stephenson, M.A. *3s. 6d.*

Books XXI. and XXII. By Rev. W. W. Capes, M.A. With Maps. *4s. 6d.*

Books XXIII. and XXIV. By G. C. Macaulay, M.A. With Maps. *3s. 6d.*

The Last Two Kings of Macedon. Extracts from the Fourth and Fifth Decades of Livy. By F. H. Rawlins, M.A. With Maps. *2s. 6d.*

Lucretius.—Books I.-III. By J. H. Warburton Lee, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Martial.—Select Epigrams. By Rev. H. M. Stephenson, M.A. 5*s.*

Ovid.—Fasti. By G. H. Hallam, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Heroidum Epistulae XIII. By E. S. Shuckburgh, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Metamorphoses. Book VIII. By C. H. Keene, M.A. 2*s.*
Books XIII. and XIV. By C. Simmons, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Plautus.—Miles Gloriosus. By Prof. R. Y. Tyrrell, M.A. Second Edition, revised. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Amphitruo. By Prof. Arthur Palmer, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Captivi. By A. R. S. Hallidie, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Pliny.—Letters. Books I. and II. By J. Cowan, M.A. 3*s.*
Letters. Book III. By Prof. John E. B. Mayor. With Life of Pliny by G. H. Rendall, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Propertius.—Select Poems. By Prof. J. P. Postgate, Litt.D. Second Edition, revised. 5*s.*

Sallust.—Catilina and Jugurtha. By C. Merivale, D.D. 3*s.* 6*d.* Or separately. 2*s.* each.
Bellum Catulinae. By A. M. Cook, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Tacitus.—The Annals. Book VI. By A. J. Church, M.A., and W. J. Brodribb, M.A. 2*s.*
The Histories. Books I. and II. By A. D. Godley, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*
— Books III.-V. By the same. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Agricola and Germania. By A. J. Church, M.A., and W. J. Brodribb, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.* Or separately. 2*s.* each.

Terence.—Adelphoe. By Prof. S. G. Ashmore. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Hauton Timorumenos. By E. S. Shuckburgh, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.* With Translation. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Phormio. By Rev. John Bond, M.A., and Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Virgil.—Bucolics and Georgics. By T. E. Page, M.A. 5*s.*
Aeneid. Books I.-VI. By T. E. Page, M.A. 5*s.*
Books VII.-XII. By T. E. Page, M.A. 5*s.*
Books II. and III. The Narrative of Aeneas. By E. W. Howson, M.A. 2*s.*

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.

A LATIN READER

FOR THE

LOWER FORMS IN SCHOOLS

BY

H. J. HARDY, M.A.

ASSISTANT-MASTER IN WINCHESTER COLLEGE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

301

209. Hannibal on the Alps.

Tandem nequicquam iumentis atque hominibus fatigatis castra in iugo posita, aegerrime ad id ipsum loco purgato, tantum nivis fodiendum atque egerendum fuit. Inde ad rupem muniendam, per quam unam via esse poterat, milites ducti, cum caedendum esset saxum, arboribus circa immanibus deiectis detruncatisque struem ingentem lignorum faciunt, eamque, cum et vis venti apta faciendo igni coorta esset, succendunt ardentiaque saxa infuso aceto putrefaciunt. Itaque torridam incendio rupem ferro pandunt, molliuntque anfractibus modicis clivos, ut non iumenta solum sed elephanti etiam deduci possent. Quatriduum circa rupem consumptum iumentis prope fame absumptis; nuda enim fere cacumina sunt et, si quid est pabuli, obruunt nives.

210. Poetry Lasts for Ever.

Ergo cum silices, cum dens patientis aratri,
  Depereant aevo, carmina nocte carent.
Cedant carminibus reges, regumque triumphi,
  Cedat et auriferi ripa beata Tagi.
Vilia miretur vulgus. Mihi flavus Apollo
  Pocula Castaliae plena ministret aquae:
Sustineamque coma metuentem frigora myrtum:
  Atque a sollicito multus amante legar.
Pascitur in vivis Livor: post fata quiescit,
  Cum suus ex merito quemque tuetur honor.
Ergo etiam, cum me supremus adederit ignis,
  Vivam, parsque mei multa superstes erit.

A Specimen Copy (with the exception of the Key) will be presented on application

Crown 8vo. *Price* 1s. 6d. *Key, for Teachers only,* 4s. *net.*

A FIRST LATIN VERSE BOOK

BY

W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AT ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

"The First Part of this book was written for use in St. Paul's School, at the request of the head master, who gave the writer some general suggestions as to the way in which he wished the book constructed. The Second Part is new. Many teachers must have found that the recognised books of elementary exercises in Latin Elegiac Verse do not contain a sufficient number of quite easy exercises. A boy

begins to do whole lines before he has learned to see at a glance when a vowel is long or short by position, and before he has acquired any skill in putting the words together. His difficulties are increased by the fact that the Vocabulary gives him several Latin equivalents for each English word. He writes down from ten to fifteen words, and then tries to select those which are suitable; but the matter is too complicated for his unpractised brain, and after wasting a good deal of time, he produces what a puzzled head may be expected to produce. Not only is very little learned in a large number of hours, but with many boys the sense of confusion produced by the multiplicity of details engenders a habit of blundering. On the other hand, it is possible to introduce the pupil gradually into the subject, and, with the help of notes to the text, to maintain the simplicity of the vocabulary so that a boy never has to deal with a confusingly large number of words: and then Latin Verse writing may afford a valuable opportunity for the acquisition of scholarly habits . . . So much may be said in justification of the existence of a new Verse Book. It remains to describe its contents. After the first three exercises come six exercises containing half lines; in the three following exercises the same half lines are put together in whole lines. Thus the whole lines are easier, and the half lines do not remain meaningless. Part I. ends with a series of couplets. Part II. consists of twenty-eight pages, each containing continuous passages of ten or twenty lines. These passages are drawn from the Latin poets; but, as no poet offers continuous passages suitable for the beginner, it has been necessary to make some changes in them, and sometimes to add a line or two to complete the sense. . . . A boy who has worked through these exercises several times will have a store of Latin poetry in his head, which may be the foundation of a sense of the difference between what is good and bad in literature."—*Extract from Author's Preface.*

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS

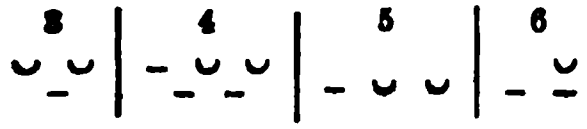
Manchester Guardian.—"Certainly the easiest introduction to Latin Verse Composition which has as yet been published. . . . By the time the student reaches the end of it he will have gained a good familiarity with the mechanism of elegiac verse, and have a store of Latin poetry in his head which will be invaluable in his later stages. The book is to be warmly recommended."

Irish Teachers' Journal.—"This little volume supplies a real want, and will be welcomed by Latin teachers. The difficulties of the subject are so carefully graduated and introduced by easy stages, that they will be scarcely felt by an intelligent pupil; yet anyone who works through it will have acquired a very considerable power of versification in Latin."

Schoolmaster.—"The distinguishing feature in this excellent little book is the step-by-step system. From the smallest beginnings the pupil is gradually, indeed gradually should be emphasised, very gradually led on to do small portions of an hexameter and pentameter line, till he is able to do battle with these entire. He will be pleased with his little successes in the earlier portions of the work, and encouraged thereby to go on to the more difficult parts. If Latin Verse making is still to hold a position in the educational course of our grammar schools, we do not know of any book more likely to save worry and weariness, the usual attendants to the want of success on the part of the pupil, than this excellent manual."

EXERCISE 9.

The Second Part of a Hexameter: The Longer Half.



mūlt/ōs flŭĭt / illĕ pĕr/ānnōs
cĕcĭn / ērūnt / cārmĭnă / mūltī

See Rule to Ex. 4.

1. it-had-contracted the little shadows.
2. "shall we endure these-things unavenged?"
3. he-made most-beautiful songs.
4. (my) better years having-been-passed [1].
5. he lies upon (*per*) the green grass (*pl.*)
6. he-left (his) companions in the valley.
7. having-followed by-sea and land.
8. and he-passed his-life in (*per*) ease.
9. she possesses many cities.
10. "I-perish, dearest mother."
11. (He sees) the Gauls congregated in the valley.
12. most-sad (*fem.*) on-a-lofty rock.
13. she-was-driving-back the she-goats from-the-cliff.
14. about-to-enter (*fem.*) the little homestead.
15. show-her (*pl.*) to-her-wretched parent.
16. nor was the mind fit for-labour.
17. and buried (*pl.*) *in-good-time* [2].
18. for thou dost afford consolation.
19. thou leadest us down to the sea.
20. and the shepherd reclines under a tree.
21. he-said, "Companions, approach."
22. it-covers all-things round with-darkness.
23. and the silence (*pl.*) of quiet sleep.
24. but the general did not think-them true-things.

[1] Abl. abs. [2] *tempestīvē.*

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

The Voice of the Sluggard.

Now comes over the ocean from (her) elderly husband
The yellow (goddess) who carries the day on her frosty car.
Whither art-thou-hurrying, Aurōra? Wait. Now (are) the times of sleep:
And the bird sings (her) song with slender throat.
Whither art thou hurrying, unwelcome to men, unwelcome to girls?
Stay[1] thy dewy bridle with purple hand.
Before thy rising the sailor[2] observes his stars better,
Nor does he wander without-knowledge in the midst of the water.
When thou dost come[3] the traveller arises, however[4] tired:
And the soldier fits his arm-bearing hands to[5] arms.
Thou art the first to see (men) burdened with the hoe cultivating the fields,
Thou art the first to call the slow oxen under the curved yokes.
Thou dost cheat boys of sleep, and give-them-over to (their) teachers,
That their tender hands may undergo cruel blows.
How-often have I-wished[6] that[7] the night might not be-willing to yield to thee,
And that[8] the stars might not *move and fly-from*[9] thy countenance.
How-often have I wished[6] either (that) the wind might break thy car,
Or (that) thy horse might fall, held-back by a thick cloud.
I-could-wish[10] (that) it-might-be-permitted to Tīthōnus to tell-stories about thee,
(There) would not be any uglier tale in-the-heaven.

[1] *supprĭmĕre.* [2] In pent. [3] "thou coming;" Hints, 8 (*c*).
[4] *quamvīs.* [5] *ăd.* [6] *optāre.* [7] that . . . not, *nē.*
[8] and that . . . not, *neu.*
[9] Say "the stars having-been-moved might-fly from."
[10] impf. subj. *vŏle.*

Now Ready. Fcap. 8vo. Price 5s.

THE

AENEID OF VIRGIL

BOOKS VII-XII

EDITED WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES

BY

T. E. PAGE, M.A.

FORMERLY FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

ASSISTANT MASTER AT CHARTERHOUSE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

307

ossibus haerentem. quem non super occupat Hisbo,
ille quidem hoc sperans ; nam Pallas ante ruentem,
dum furit, incautum crudeli morte sodalis,
excipit, atque ensem tumido in pulmone recondit.
hinc Sthenelum petit, et Rhoeti de gente vetusta
Anchemolum, thalamos ausum incestare novercae.
vos etiam gemini Rutulis cecidistis in arvis,
Daucia, Laride Thymberque, simillima proles,
indiscreta suis gratusque parentibus error ;
at nunc dura dedit vobis discrimina Pallas :
nam tibi, Thymbre, caput Euandrius abstulit ensis ;
te decisa suum, Laride, dextera quaerit,
semianimesque micant digiti ferrumque retractant.
Arcadas, accensos monitu et praeclara tuentes
facta viri, mixtus dolor et pudor armat in hostes.
tum Pallas biiugis fugientem Rhoetea praeter
traicit. hoc spatium tantumque morae fuit Ilo ;
Ilo namque procul validam derexerat hastam :
quam medius Rhoeteus intercipit, optime Teuthra,
te fugiens, fratremque Tyren ; curruque volutus
caedit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva.
ac velut, optato ventis aestate coortis,
dispersa inmittit silvis incendia pastor ;
correptis subito mediis extenditur una
horrida per latos acies Vulcania campos ;
ille sedens victor flammas despectat ovantes :
non aliter socium virtus coit omnis in unum,
teque iuvat, Palla. sed bellis acer Halaesus
tendit in adversos, seque in sua colligit arma.
hic mactat Ladona Pheretaque Demodocumque ;
Strymonio dextram fulgenti deripit ense
elatam in iugulum ; saxo ferit ora Thoantis,
ossaque dispersit cerebro permixta cruento.
fata canens silvis genitor celarat Halaesum ;
ut senior leto canentia lumina solvit,
iniecere manum Parcae, telisque sacrarum

417 cavens.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

390. **vos etiam...**] 'you too, Larides and Thymber, fell twin brethren on Rutulian plains, the offspring of Daucus indistinguishable (174 n.) in utter likeness and to their own parents a dear perplexity.' **suis**, not *vestris*, because the poet has ceased to address them and passed into description of them. The passage is admirably imitated in Sil. It. 2. 636

> *vos etiam primo gemini cecidistis in aevo,*
> *Eurymedon fratrem, et fratrem mentite Lycorma,*
> *cuncta pares; dulcisque labor sua nomina natis*
> *reddere, et in vultu genetrici haerere suorum;*

and also by Claudian de Cons. Hon. 209 (of Castor and Pollux) *iuvat ipse Tonantem* | *error, et ambiguae placet ignorantia matri* (see La Cerda).

394. **Thymbre**] as if from *Thymbrus*, not *Thymber* (391); cf. for the two forms of the nom. *Teucer*, *Teucrus*.

395. **suum**] 'its master.'

396. **micant...**] 'the fingers twitch and again (seek to) handle the sword.'

398. **mixtus dolor et pudor**] 'mingled pain and shame'; *dolor* is their sense of soreness at their own cowardice.

400. **hoc...**] 'so much respite, so much reprieve (lit. 'such extent and amount of delay') had Ilus, for against Ilus he (*i.e.* Pallas) had aimed....'

404. **caedit calcibus**] Cf. 730; Hom. Od. 18. 99 λακτίζων ποσὶ γαῖαν. **sēmĭanĭmis**: 12. 356 n.

405. **optato**] 'according to his wish,' because the shepherd has been waiting for a good opportunity for thus firing a wooded tract; see 12. 521 n. As he fires the brushwood from different points until at last there is a general blaze, so the different exploits of Pallas at last fire all his followers.

407. **mediis**] *i.e.* the space between each separate fire. When these 'catch fire' then 'Vulcan's array stretches in one bristling line over the broad plains.' **horrida** is, as usual, untranslatable, suggesting (1) the uneven jagged appearance of the line of flame, (2) a line of troops with bristling spears, and (3) that which causes shuddering or fear.

410. **socium**]=*sociorum*; cf. 8. 127 n.

412. **seque...**] 'and gathers himself up within his shield,' so as to leave no part exposed as he attacks. In 12. 491 the same attitude is adopted for defence.

415. **elatam in iugulum**] 'raised to strike his (Halaesus') throat.'

EDITED BY T. E. PAGE, M.A.

VIRGIL—Text only. With introduction. 6*s.* net. (Parnassus Library of Greek and Latin Texts.)

AENEID, BOOKS I-VI. and BOOKS VII-XII. Introduction, Text, and Commentary. 5*s.* each. (Classical Series.)

AENEID, BOOKS I. II. III. VI. XI. and XII. separately. With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabularies. Pott 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* each. (Elementary Classics.)

BUCOLICS AND GEORGICS. With Introduction and Notes. 5*s.* (Classical Series.)

BUCOLICS. With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary. Pott 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* (Elementary Classics.)

GEORGICS, BOOKS I. and IV. separately. With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary. Pott 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* each. (Elementary Classics.)

HORACE—Text only. With Introduction. 5*s.* net. (Parnassus Library of Greek and Latin Texts.)

THE COMPLETE WORKS. Introduction, Text, and Notes abridged from those of T. E. Page, Prof. A. Palmer, and Prof. A. S. Wilkins, in one volume. 8*s.* 6*d.*

THE ODES AND EPODES. Introduction, Text, and Commentary complete in one volume. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.* (Classical Series.)

THE ODES—BOOKS I. II. III. and IV. separately. With Introduction and Notes. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* each. (Classical Series.)

THE ODES—BOOKS I. II. III. and IV. separately. With Introduction, more elementary Notes, and Vocabularies. Pott 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* each. (Elementary Classics.)

THE EPODES.—Edited with notes. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* (Classical Series.)

THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES. Being the Greek Text as revised by Bishop Westcott, D.D., and Dr. F. J. A. Hort. With Explanatory Notes and Maps. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES. The Authorised Version. With Introduction, Notes, and Maps by T. E. Page, M.A., and Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Globe 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Key, for Teachers only, 3s. 6d. net.

AN INTRODUCTION TO

LATIN ELEGIAC VERSE COMPOSITION

BY

J. H. LUPTON, M.A.

SURMASTER OF ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

The thought in the author's mind at the outset was that, by paying more attention to methods, the learner's progress through the early stages of Latin Verse Composition might be made at once surer and more rapid. With this view, the necessary rules were not all given in a mass at the beginning, but distributed over the earlier exercises as required. In particular, at one stage in his course (Ex. xxii.) the learner was taken, as it were, into the workshop, and invited to watch the process of verse construction, in the form (as nearly as might be) in which it would be likely, on other occasions, to present itself to him. So far as the experience of some years justifies a conclusion, the plan thus followed has been a right one.

Saturday Review.—"The passages are on the whole well chosen, and the Latin verses suggested by the paraphrases are, as far as we have tested them, scholarly and graceful."

EXERCISE XLVI.

ODE.

UPLIFT a thousand voices full and sweet
In this wide hall, with earth's inventions stored,
And praise th' invisible, universal Lord,
Who lets once more in peace the nations meet,
Where Science, Art, and Labour have outpour'd
Their myriad horns of plenty at our feet.

O silent father of our kings to be,
Mourn'd in this golden hour of jubilee,
For this, for all, we weep our thanks to thee!

RETRANSLATION.

Uplift together a thousand voices and sounding applause,
Where this floor houses the treasures conveyed-together;
Praising the One Deity, visible to none,
Who suffers the peoples again to meet-together in peace,
Where Labour and Skill joined to Art its handmaid,
Have poured the full horns at our feet.
And thou, silent father of the race to which thou hast given the sceptre,
Whom the hour of rejoicing (though) golden yet grieves-for,
These things too, (and) many things also due to thee, weeping
We look-back-upon, and continue thy praises.

Globe 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

LATIN PHRASE-BOOK

BY

C. MEISSNER

TRANSLATED FROM THE SIXTH GERMAN EDITION, WITH THE ADDITION OF SUPPLEMENTARY PHRASES AND REFERENCES, BY

H. W. AUDEN, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AT FETTES COLLEGE, EDINBURGH, LATE SCHOLAR OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND BELL UNIVERSITY SCHOLAR

CONTENTS.

The World and Nature—Space and Time—Parts of the Human Body—Properties of the Human Body—Human Life: its various Relations and Conditions—The Mind: its Functions—The Arts and Sciences—Speech and Writing—The Emotions—Virtues and Vices—Religion—Domestic Life—Commerce and Agriculture—The State—Law and Justice—War—Shipping.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

The Academy—"This is one of the many excellent pieces of work that we owe to Germany. In its native land it has gone through six editions; the French translation is in its third; it has been rendered into Italian; and we are glad to greet it in English. Mr. Auden has added an appendix, and has made the book additionally useful by a Latin index and a catalogue of subjects in detail."

The Educational Review—"The book as a whole can be thoroughly recommended, especially to those who have not time to do such work for themselves."

The Spectator—"Nothing could be more systematic or more complete."

The Educational News—"It cannot fail to improve the prose Latinity of our schools. . . . Editor and Publisher have alike done their parts exceptionally well."

The Schoolmaster—"Supplies a want which many teachers and students must have often felt; a collection of such idiomatic phrases as will give the intelligent and industrious learner the power of writing real Latin. The work is a vast storehouse of such phrases, admirably classified and indexed, and so made of ready access to the student."

II. SPACE AND TIME

1. POINTS OF THE COMPASS—SITUATION

spectare in (*vergere ad*) *orientem* (*solem*), *occidentem*[1] (*solem*), *ad meridiem*, *in septentriones*—to lie to the east, west, south, north.

spectare inter occasum solis et septentriones—to be situate to the north-west.

Germania quae or *Germaniae ea pars quae*, *ad orientem*, *occidentem vergit*—eastern, western Germany.

est a septentrionibus collis—a hill lies to the north.

situs loci—the situation of a place.

natura loci—the natural position of a place.

opportunitas loci (B. G. 3. 14)—the advantageous situation of a place.

opportuno loco situm or *positum esse*—to be favourably situated.

urbs situ ad aspectum praeclara est—the city is very beautifully situated.

oppidum mari adiăcet—the town lies near the sea.

villa tangit viam—the country-house stands near the road.

oppidum colli impositum est—the town stands on rising ground.

oppidum monti subiectum est—the town lies at the foot of a mountain.

promunturium in mare procurrit—a promontory juts out into the sea.

[1] "The east" and "the west" = *orientis*, *occidentis* (*solis*) *terrae*, *partes*, *regiones*, *gentes*. The adjectives *orientalis*, *occidentalis* are not used in good Latin. The north, i.e. northern countries, is represented by *terrae septentrionibus subiectae*; the south by *terra australis*.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

suis legibus utitur (B. G. 1. 45. 3)—(a state) has its own laws, is autonomous.

nullam habere rem publicam—to have no constitution, be in anarchy.

rem publicam in pristĭnum statum restituere—to restore the ancient constitution.

optima re publica—at the time of a most satisfactory government.

libera res publica, liber populus—the Republic.

rem publicam gerere, administrare, regere, tractare, gubernare—to govern, administer the state.

rei publicae praeesse—to have the management of the state.

ad gubernacula (metaph. only in plur.) *rei publicae sedere*
clavum rei publicae tenere
gubernacula rei publicae tractare
} to hold the reins of government.

principem civitatis esse—to be the chief man in the state.

principem in re publica locum obtinere—to hold the first position in the state.

negotia publica (Off. 1. 20. 69)—public affairs.

vita occupata (*vid.* p. 94)—the busy life of a statesman.

accedere, se conferre ad rem publicam
rem publicam capessere (Off. 1. 21. 71)
} to devote oneself to politics, a political career.

in re publica or *in rebus publicis versari*—to take part in politics.

rei publicae deesse (opp. *adesse*)—to take no part in politics.

a negotiis publicis se removere
a re publica recedere
} to retire from public life.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered
Please name the Volumes required

Macmillan's Elementary Classics

GREEK

A new feature has been added to Messrs. Macmillan's widely circulated series of Elementary Classics. Those authors, or selected parts of authors, which are most commonly read in schools are being gradually issued with illustrations arranged under the direction of an expert. These illustrations show the dress, furniture, arms, equipment, etc., employed by Greeks and Romans, and are either put together from trustworthy data or are direct reproductions of antique statues or designs. In many cases the plates are coloured. No addition is made to the price of the books thus provided with pictures which should at once interest and assist the pupil. The first volumes issued with the new illustrations will be Cæsar, Books V. and VI., and "Invasion of Britain," Horace—Odes, Books I. and IV. Others will follow in rapid succession until all the volumes selected from Cæsar, Horace, Virgil, Homer, and Xenophon are available in this form.

The following Volumes contain Introductions, Notes, and Vocabularies, and in some cases Exercises. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d. each.

Æschylus.—Prometheus Vinctus. By the Rev. H. M. Stephenson, M.A.

Arrian.—Selections. With Exercises. By the Rev. John Bond, M.A., and the Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A.

Euripides.—Alcestis. By the Rev. M. A. Bayfield, M.A.

Hecuba. By Revs. J. Bond, M.A., and A. S. Walpole, M.A.

Medea. By A. W. Verrall, Litt.D., and Rev. M. A. Bayfield, M.A.

Herodotus, Tales from.—By G. S. Farnell, M.A.

Homer.—Iliad. Book I. By Rev. J. Bond, M.A., and Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A.

Book VI. By W. Leaf, Litt.D., and Rev. M. A. Bayfield, M.A.

Book XVIII. By S. R. James, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton.

Book XXIV. By W. Leaf, Litt.D., and Rev. M. A. Bayfield, M.A.

Odyssey. Book I. By Rev. J. Bond, M.A., and Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A.

Lucian.—Extracts from Lucian. With Exercises. By Rev. J. Bond, M.A., and Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A.

Passages for Greek Translation for Lower Forms. By G. H. Peacock, M.A., and E. W. W. Bell, M.A.

Thucydides.—The Rise of the Athenian Empire. Book I. Chapters 89—117 and 228—238. With Exercises. By F. H. Colson, M.A.

The Fall of Plataea and the Plague at Athens. Selections from Books II. and III. By W. T. Sutthery, M.A., and A. S. Graves, M.A.

Book VII. Athenian Disaster in Sicily. By E. C. Marchant, M.A.

Xenophon.—Anabasis. Selections, adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. Welch and Rev. C. G. Duffield.

Book I. With Exercises. By E. A. Wells, M.A.

Book I. By Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A.

Book II. By Rev. A. S. Walpole, M.A.

Book III. By Rev. G. H. Nall, M.A.

Book IV. By Rev. E. D. Stone, M.A.

Book V. By Rev. G. H. Nall, M.A.

Book VI. By Rev. G. H. Nall, M.A.

Book VII. By Rev. G. H. Nall, M.A.

Selections from Book IV. With Exercises. By Rev. E. D. Stone, M.A.

Xenophon.—Selections from the Cyropaedia. With Exercises. By A. H. Cooke, M.A.

Xenophon.—Tales from the Cyropaedia. With Exercises. By C. H. Keene, M.A.

Selections Illustrative of Greek Life. By C. H. Keene, M.A.

The following contain Introduction and Notes, but no Vocabulary.

Herodotus.—Selections from Books VII. and VIII. The Expedition of Xerxes. By A. Cooke, M.A.

Plato.—Euthyphro and Menexenus. By C. E. Graves, M.A.

The Greek Elegiac Poets.—From Callinus to Callimachus. Selected by the Rev. Herbert Kynaston, D.D.

Thucydides.—Books IV. Chapters 1—41. The Capture of Sphacteria. By C. E. Graves, M.A.

[Specimen Page of Illustrations]

Warriors Arming. From a Vase at Vienna.

Warrior taking a Farewell Drink. From a Vase at Vienna.

Specimen illustration from Xenophon Anabasis, Book I.

This Volume will be found to serve all the purposes of a Single Term Reader

[Specimen Page]

Passages for Greek Translation for Lower Forms.
By G. H. Peacock, M.A., and E. W. W. Bell, M.A.
Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d.

PASSAGES FOR GREEK TRANSLATION FOR LOWER FORMS.

PART I.—SENTENCES.

1. Ταῦτα γὰρ ἐγένετο Πυθοδώρου ἄρχοντος.
2. Ὁ παῖς φησι τὸν δεσπότην αὐτὸν κολάσειν.
3. Συνῄδει γὰρ ἑαυτῷ ἀδικῶν.
4. Γυνὴ πρόθυμος μᾶλλόν ἐστίν ἢ σοφωτέρα.
5. Μείζονι τῇ φώνῃ ἢ κατ' ἄνδρα ἐβόησεν.
6. Ἀλλ' εὐτυχοίης καὶ τύχοις ὅσων ἐρᾷς.
7. Λαβόντες δὲ τὰ ὅπλα παρῆσαν ἐς Σάρδεις.
8. Πᾶν ποισοῦσιν ὥστε μὴ δοῦναι δίκην.
9. Ἔγωγε βοηθητέον εἶναί φημι τοῖς πένησι.
10. Παρασκευὴν δ' εὐθὺς ἐποιήσαντο ὡς τῇ πόλει προσβαλοῦντες.
11. Πλανώμενοι οὖν νυκτὸς διὰ τῆς χιόνος οὐκ ᾔδεσαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὅποι τράποιντο.
12. Ἀπεκρύψατο ταῦτα τὸν πατέρα.
13. Τὸ δὲ μέγα τεῖχος ἐπαίσαντο οἰκοδομοῦντες φοβούμενοι μὴ οὐχ ἱκανὸν εἴη ἀντέχειν.
14. Διδάσκομαι τοὺς παῖδας ἱππεύειν καὶ τοξεύειν.

This Volume will be found to serve all the purposes of a Single Term Reader

[Specimen Page]

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS.—Adapted for the Use of Beginners. By W. WELCH, M.A., and Rev. C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d.

ὡς δὲ ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι, εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὁρμήσαντες·

πάνυ δὲ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν, σχεδὸν οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι.

σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὢν καθορᾷ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκεῖνον στίφος·

καὶ εὐθὺς εἰπὼν, "τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ," ἵετο ἐπ' αὐτόν·

καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος.

27. παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως·

καὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἐμάχοντο καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος, καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου.

Κῦρος δὲ αὐτός τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ.

ἀποθνήσκοντος δὲ αὐτοῦ, πάντες οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου πλὴν Ἀριαίου.

ὡς δὲ ᾔσθετο Κῦρον πεπτωκότα, ἔφυγεν, ἔχων καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν, οὗ ἡγεῖτο.

28. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ διώκων εἰσπίπτει εἰς τὸ Κυρεῖον στρατόπεδον·

καὶ οἱ μὲν μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἵστανται, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν, ἔνθεν ὥρμηντο.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Please name the volumes required

Macmillan's Classical Series

GREEK

Fcap. 8vo.

Æschines.—In Ctesiphonta. By Rev. T. Gwatkin, M.A., and E. S. Shuckburgh, M.A. 5*s.*

Æschylus.—Persae. By A. O. Prickard, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Seven against Thebes. By A. W. Verrall, Litt. D., and M. A. Bayfield, M. A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Prometheus Vinctus. By E. E. Sikes, M.A., and St. J. B. W. Willson. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Andocides.—De Mysteriis. By W. J. Hickie, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Aristophanes.—The Wasps. By W. J. M. Starkie, M.A. 6*s.*

Attic Orators.—Selections from Antiphon, Andocides, Lysias, Isocrates, and Isaeus. By Sir Richard Jebb. 5*s.*

Demosthenes.—De Corona. By B. Drake, M.A. Seventh Edition, revised by E. S. Shuckburgh, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Adversus Leptinem. By Rev. J. R. King, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
The First Philippic. By Rev. T. Gwatkin, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Philippic I. and Olynthiacs I.-III. By J. E. Sandys, Litt.D. 5*s.*
On the Peace, Philippics II. and III. By J. E. Sandys, Litt.D. 5*s.*

Euripides.—Alcestis. By M. L. Earle, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Andromache. By A. R. F. Hyslop, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Bacchae. By R. Y. Tyrrell, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Hippolytus. By Prof. J. P. Mahaffy, D.D., and J. B. Bury, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Ion. By M. A. Bayfield, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Iphigenia in Tauris. By E. B. England, M.A. 3*s.*
Medea. By A. W. Verrall, Litt.D. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Troades. With Revised Text and Notes. By R. Y. Tyrrell, Litt.D. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Greek Melic Poets. By Prof. H. Weir Smyth. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Herodotus.—Book III. By G. C. Macaulay, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
Book VI. By Prof. J. Strachan, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Book VII. By Mrs. Montagu Butler. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Homer.—Iliad. In 2 vols. By W. Leaf, Litt.D., and Rev. M. A. Bayfield, M.A. Vol. I. (Books I.-XII.). 6*s*. Vol. II. (Books XIII.-XXIV.). 6*s*.

Iliad. Books I., IX., XI., XVI.-XXIV. The Story of Achilles. By the late J. H. Pratt, M.A., and Walter Leaf, Litt.D. 5*s*.

Iliad. Book IX. By the same. 2*s*.

Odyssey. Book IX. By Prof. John E. B. Mayor, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

Odyssey. Books XXI.-XXIV. The Triumph of Odysseus. By S. G. Hamilton, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

Lysias.—Select Orations. By E. S. Shuckburgh, M.A. 5*s*.

Plato.—Laches. By M. T. Tatham, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

The Republic. Books I.-V. By T. H. Warren, M.A. 5*s*.

The Crito, and Part of the Phaedo (Chaps. LVII.-LXVII.). By C. H. Keene, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

Selections. Edited by Prof. L. L. Forman. 6*s*.

Meno. Edited by E. S. Thompson, Litt.D. 5*s*.

Plutarch.—Lives of Galba and Otho. By E. G. Hardy, M.A. 5*s*.

Life of Pericles. By Rev. H. A. Holden, Litt.D. 4*s*. 6*d*.

Life of Themistokles. By Rev. H. A. Holden, Litt.D. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Polybius.—The History of the Achaean League as contained in the Remains of Polybius. By Rev. W. W. Capes, M.A. 5*s*.

Thucydides.—Book II. By E. C. Marchant, M.A. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Book IV. By C. E. Graves, M.A. 3*s*. 6d.

Book V. By C. E. Graves, M.A. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Books VI. and VII. By Rev. Percival Frost, M.A. With Map. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Book VI. By E. C. Marchant, M.A. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Book VII. By E. C. Marchant, M.A. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Book VIII. By Prof. T. G. Tucker, Litt.D. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Xenophon.—The Anabasis. Books I.-IV. By Profs. W. W. Goodwin and J. W. White. Adapted to Goodwin's Greek Grammar. With Map. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Cyropaedia. Books VII. and VIII. By Prof. A. Goodwin, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

Hellenica. Books I. and II. By H. Hailstone, B.A. With Map. 2*s*. 6*d*.

Hiero. By Rev. H. A. Holden, Litt.D. 2*s*. 6*d*.

Memorabilia Socratis. By A. R. Cluer, B.A. 5*s*.

Oeconomicus. By Rev. H. A. Holden, Litt.D. With Lexicon. 5*s*.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Globe 8vo. Price 2s.

Macmillan's Greek Course

FIRST GREEK GRAMMAR

ACCIDENCE

BY

W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D.

LATE HEADMASTER OF WESTMINSTER

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

323

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

"This *Grammar* has been revised and in part re-written, but the general arrangement remains as it was. To change this might have done away with something that commended it to teachers; for the success of a school-book is often due to the fortunate accident of one man's work happening to meet the views of the majority.

"If the book is larger, it is not that I have abandoned the idea from which it first sprang, namely, that the part of an elementary Grammar is to state rules and leave exceptions out; but in response to the criticism of many who have used the book, the presentment of the matter has been made more clear and attractive by printing on two pages what before was printed on one. Indeed, far from relinquishing the first idea, I have carried it out more faithfully, omitting such forms as occur seldom, and selecting as examples of inflexion the most common words that I could find. As the *Grammar* was written when men had but begun to urge the views to which it was meant to give shape, I was glad of an opportunity of incorporating in a new edition the latest results of the free discussion of the last ten or twelve years. And such an opportunity came when it was proposed to publish a 'Greek Course,' of which this *First Greek Grammar* should be the starting point.

"The aim of the new series is to bring into the foreground the great main lines of Greek accidence and syntax,—in short, to teach the regular and ordinary modes of expression in use at the time when the most precise of languages had reached its highest precision. Accordingly it was necessary carefully to revise the *Grammar* if it was to take its proper place in the series."

PRESS OPINIONS

British Weekly.—"Messrs. Macmillan and Co. have made an excellent beginning of their 'Greek Course' by the issue of a *First Greek Grammar*, by W. Gunnion Rutherford, LL.D., Head-Master of Westminster; and *Easy Exercises in Greek Accidence*, by H. G. Underhill, M.A., of St. Paul's Preparatory School. These are school books of the kind that make one wish to be back at school again. Dr. Rutherford's *Grammar* is already well known, having first appeared ten years ago, and having passed through many editions since. It is in two parts, the first of which contains such forms as the beginner must know, while the second contains additional information of a more advanced kind. We could suggest no improvement on this little book. If the *Manual of Syntax* is as good, the teaching of Greek will be materially facilitated."

Cambridge Review.—"This reprint has much to recommend it. In the hands of a wise and discriminating teacher there is ample scope for an ingenious interlacing of the threads of knowledge." We confess to not liking the arrangements of the middle and passive of the regular verb, and we miss some useful landmarks which the revolution of the last few years has apparently swept away. This is more than compensated for by the introduction of some original matter. Chapters III. and XII. are likely to be appreciated."

Journal of Education.—"A good elementary *Grammar*, if for no other reason, because the first part contains everything that a beginner should learn and nothing that he should omit. The arrangement is good and the type clear. Part II. contains more advanced matter, such as the laws of contraction and accentuation, and irregularities of accidence. The book contains no syntax, which in our opinion is by no means a drawback."

CHAPTER VI

§§X.—XVII

FIRST DECLENSION

39. Of the words you have already learned, Ἑρμῆς is really a contracted form of an older Ἑρμέᾱς. There are also a few feminine nouns contracted in the same way, as συκῆ, *fig-tree*, for συκέᾱ.

N. V.	συκῆ
A.	συκῆν.
G.	συκῆς.
D.	συκῇ

But a few contract the εα into α, which they retain throughout, as μνᾶ, *mina* (*a sum of money*), for μνέᾱ, βορρᾶς, *north wind*, for βορέᾱς.

N.	μνᾶ.	βορρᾶς.
V.	μνᾶ.	βορρᾶ.
A.	μνᾶν.	βορρᾶν.
G.	μνᾶς.	βορρᾶ
D.	μνᾷ.	βορρᾷ.

The plural is always the same whether for masculine or feminine, for contracted or uncontracted nouns.

40. The dative plural was originally formed by adding ισι to the stem, as, stem τῑμα, dative plural τῑμα-ισι, and this longer form you will find in Attic poetry, and occasionally in elevated prose.

The genitive plural was formed by adding -ων to the stem, as τῑμᾰ́-ων, which became by contraction τῑμῶν. It is due to this fact that all nouns of the first declension have

Vowels long by nature, except η and ω, are marked long, unless they carry the circumflex accent.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Globe 8*vo*. 2*s*.

Macmillan's Greek Course

FIRST GREEK GRAMMAR

SYNTAX

BY

W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D.

LATE HEADMASTER OF WESTMINSTER

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

326

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

B. DEPENDENT INTERROGATIVE PROPOSITIONS.

§§ 246-252

Single: introduced by ὅστις, ὁποῖος, ὁπόσος, ὅπου, ὅποι, εἰ, etc.

Double: introduced by εἰ . . . ἤ, πότερον . . . ἤ, εἴτε . . . εἴτε.

Rule.—When principal verb primary, same mood and tense as if a direct interrogative proposition: when principal verb historic either (1) same mood and tense, or (2) same tense of optative.
For Interrogative Particles see Chapter X.

Note.—Negative μή if question is deliberative.

ἐρωτᾷ ὅστις ἐστίν. ἤρετο ὁπόθεν ἦλθον. οὐκ οἶδεν ὅποι τράπηται. οὐκ ἦσαν ὅποι τράπωνται. ἤρετο πότερον αὐτὸς εἶσιν ἢ σύ. ἠρόμην ὅστις εἴη. οὐκ ἤδη ὅποι τραποίμην. ἤρετο πότερον ἐγὼ ἴοιμι ἢ σύ. §§ 247, 248.

ἤρετο εἰ οὐκ αἰσχύνεται. ἐρωτῶσι πότερον δέδρακεν ἢ οὔ. σκόπει εἰ ἔτι οὕτως ἔχει ἢ οὔ. οὐκ ἦσαν πότερον πορευθῶσιν ἢ μή. ἐβουλεύετο εἴτε πέμποιέν τινας εἴτε πάντες ἴοιεν. ἐβουλεύετο ὁ φὼρ εἰ λέγοι τἀληθὴ ἢ μή. § 249.

Anticipatory Construction. § 250.

τοὺς νόμους σκοπῶμεν ὅ τι διδάσκουσιν. ἠπόρει περὶ τῆς ὁδοῦ ὅποι φέρει. § 250.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Price 2s.

EASY EXERCISES

IN

GREEK ACCIDENCE

BY

H. G. UNDERHILL, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER ST. PAUL'S PREPARATORY SCHOOL

"The aim of this book is to supply a 'drill ground' for exercise in the nouns, adjectives, and the Active Voice of regular verbs in Ω. The exercises were written for boys using Mr. Rutherford's *First Greek Grammar*, and they follow the arrangement of that book. I have, however, at Mr. Rutherford's suggestion, given the true form of the Pluperfect instead of that usually given in the grammars, and have also omitted all uncontracted forms, such as πλόος. Parts I. and II. are quite independent of each other. Younger boys should first work through Part I., and afterwards proceed to Part II.; but for older boys the Second Part will generally afford sufficient practice in Greek Accidence so far as it is dealt with here.

"Most teachers will use a book in their own way, but the suggestion of a plan, which experience has shown to produce satisfactory results, may be of service to some. The form should first be made to learn a vocabulary by heart, and then to go through all the nouns, adjectives, and verbs it contains before touching the exercise. Then, after they have translated the Greek sentences *viva voce*, they may be given a set of the English to turn into Greek on paper. In revising, I use the English sentences for *viva voce* work, and more or less discard the Greek. The book is so printed that a boy when translating an exercise *viva voce*, will not have the corresponding vocabulary before him, but will be compelled to rely upon his memory."—*From the Preface.*

Cambridge Review—"Useful if rapidly used. If a boy has time to learn the vocabularies and get the work up as suggested by the author, he will be fortunate in having more time for this subject in the lower forms than is now generally the case. The work is started on the right basis with the regular verb from the first, and as the vocabularies are well selected it will have admirers."

Journal of Education—"This book is adapted to Mr. Rutherford's *Grammar*. The exercises advance slowly through the elementary accidence, stopping short of the verbs in -μι (except εἰμί) and excluding the pronouns. A good feature of the book is that the -ω verbs are classified according to their stems, and the formation of the future and weak aorist in each class is carefully insisted on. The book is a good one for boys who begin Greek young."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

τράπεζαν. 4. *λύσομεν τὰς ζώνας τοῖς κριταῖς.* 5. *ἡ Ἥρα ἔσειε τὴν γῆν.* 6. *ὁ τοῦ κριτοῦ ταμίας θύει τῷ Ἑρμῇ.* 7. *κρούομεν τὴν τῆς κόρης θύραν.* 8. *ἔθυε τὸν ναύτην τῇ Ἥρᾳ.* 9. *κρούσετε τοὺς νεανίας.* 10. *ἐσείομεν τὴν τοῦ νεανίου τράπεζαν.*

10.—1. I was striking the citizen. 2. They shake the table. 3. I was shaking the tables. 4. Of the wisdom of the citizens. 5. Ye strike the young man. 6. The young men's cloaks. 7. You were shaking the steward. 8. They used to sacrifice to Hermes. 9. We were loosing the sailors. 10. We shall strike the judge.

11.—1. The wisdom of the steward. 2. Hermes was shaking the earth. 3. The stewards' cloaks. 4. The sailors will sacrifice in the land. 5. We will loosen the judge's cloak. 6. He was knocking-at the citizen's door. 7. We shall shake the earth. 8. The judges were loosening their [say "the"] cloaks. 9. The young men shake the doors. 10. I shall loosen the belt for the sailor.

12.—1. He used to sacrifice in the land. 2. They used to sacrifice to Hermes. 3. The stewards knock-at the door. 4. I was knocking-at the judges' doors. 5. The sailors will shake the tables. 6. Ye were

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Price 2*s.* 6*d.*

SECOND GREEK EXERCISE BOOK

BY

REV. W. A. HEARD, M.A.

HEAD-MASTER OF FETTES COLLEGE, EDINBURGH

"This Exercise Book is supplementary to the first exercise book of the series, and deals mainly with the verb. It is based on Dr. Rutherford's *First Greek Grammar*, and should be used in connexion with it. The methods of forming the tenses in verbs of the normal type, and the special forms of particular verbs, should be learnt from the *Grammar*. The Greek exercises are intended to familiarise the eye with these forms, and the English exercises to afford practice in the use of them. As the English exercises are for the most part constructed with special reference to the Greek exercises that precede them, the two ought always to be taken together. The aim has been to use only those parts of the verb which are found in Attic Greek, and, without specifying the limitations of Attic usage, to accustom the eye and mind to the forms that are met with in the best Attic authors."—*From the Preface.*

Schoolmaster—"These exercises carry out a good educational idea. They consist of, first, a translation of easy Greek sentences, and then follow English sentences to be turned into Greek, upon the model of the preceding lesson. There are a large selection to go over, and are all comparatively easy."

Educational Times—"This Exercise Book, of about one hundred and fifty pages, is supplementary to the First Exercise Book of Macmillan's 'Greek Course,' and deals mainly with the verb. It is based on Dr. Rutherford's *First Greek Grammar*, and should be used in connexion with it. It contains over two hundred well-graded exercises, each of ten sentences, numerous grammatical notes, and vocabularies. We recommend it to the careful attention of schoolmasters."

11.—1. *ἠγόρασαν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐν τῇ πόλει.* 2. *οὐ δοκοῦμεν πεπεικέναι ὑμᾶς φυλάττεσθαι τοὺς Λακῶνας.* 3. *οὗτος, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔψευσται, πείσας ὑμᾶς δέχεσθαι τὴν εἰρήνην.* 4. *ἐκεῖνος ὁ ἀνὴρ νενόμισται πονηρότατος εἶναι πάντων.* 5. *σώσομεν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὦ νεανίαι.* 6. *ἐπείσαμεν τοὺς ἄνδρας τὴν εἰρήνην μὴ δέχεσθαι.* 7. *τοῦτο εὖ παρεσκευασμένον ἐστι.* 8. *πῶς σωθησόμεθα, ὦ ἄνδρες;* 9. *δοκεῖ τοῦτο χαλεπώτατον ἁπάντων νενομίσθαι.* 10. *οὐκ ἐλπὶς ἦν τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις σωθήσεσθαι.*

12.—1. *ἐτείχισαν τὴν πόλιν ὑπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν πεισθέντες.* 2. *οὐκ ἠνάγκασα ὑμᾶς τὴν εἰρήνην ἄγειν.* 3. *ἠθροίκασιν οἱ Λακῶνες τὸ στράτευμα ἐν τῇ νήσῳ.* 4. *θαυμασόμεθα ὑμᾶς, ὦ νεανίαι, τοιαῦτα δεχομένους.* 5. *ἤθροισται τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στράτευμα.* 6. *οὐκ ἐπίθετο τοῖς ἐμοῖς λόγοις ὁ στρατηγός.* 7. *ἠναγκάσμεθα πείθεσθαι τοῖς γέρουσι.* 8. *ἡμῖν καλῶς πράττουσιν οὐ πείσονται.* 9. *ταῦτα δεῖ κομισθῆναι εἰς τὴν πόλιν.* 10. *δεῖ πείθεσθαι τοῖς ἄρχουσι.*

13.—1. We shall muster the army on the plain of the river. 2. We did not compel you to prepare these things. 3. They have been saved by the Athenians. 4. You will not obey me nor (*οὐδέ*) do you think this to be just. 5. Having spoken falsely they have persuaded you. 6. I marvelled at those

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Price 2s. 6d.

EASY EXERCISES

IN

GREEK SYNTAX

BY

REV. G. H. NALL, M.A.

"The great success of Mr. Rutherford's *First Greek Syntax* has induced the publishers to add to their 'Greek Course' an Exercise Book prepared specially to accompany this *Syntax*. The book is divided into chapters and sections corresponding precisely with the divisions in the *Syntax*. The Greek examples given in the *Syntax* are collected (with a few unimportant changes) either at the beginning of each chapter, or at the beginning of each sub-division of a chapter; and then a series of exercises follows, based very closely upon these examples.

"The plan of the book supposes that the pupil will first read carefully a certain portion of the *Syntax*, endeavouring to master the rules and to understand the examples which are there translated and explained. He will then turn to the Exercise Book and read over again the collected examples, translating them into English. When these have been mastered, and the rules which they illustrate have been discussed, he will proceed to the exercises. The earlier exercises in each division follow closely the words and constructions of the Greek examples; the later ones are more varied. On the more difficult portions of the *Syntax*, *e.g.* the Conditional Sentences, a large number of very easy exercises are given. It is hoped that this will make the book useful for quite young boys as well as for more advanced pupils."—*From the Preface.*

Scottish Leader—"The exercises and vocabularies in both Greek and English are carefully prepared, and seem well adapted to take young pupils through the more elementary part of Greek syntax; the large number and variety of examples on the more difficult portions, such as the Conditional Sentence, makes the book useful for beginners as well as more advanced pupils."

EXERCISES

X.—§§ 32-35

1. He has made his money more. 2. He is ashamed of his own citizens. 3. You praise my virtue, friends, but not your own. 4. Parents do not hate their own children. 5. You have told me my character; come now, tell me your own. 6. Your father has given me all these books. 7. Soldiers love their own generals. 8. They think that the goddess loves her own grove. 9. We have killed our own friend. 10. My brother hates town and longs for his parish.

XI.—§§ 36, 37

1. He struck himself with his hand. 2. Such men love themselves more than their friends. 3. We shall take the best counsel for ourselves. 4. He thought that the maiden loved him. 5. Bad boys think that their masters hate them. 6. They feared that the enemy would pursue them. 7. The king wished his sons to give way to him. 8. The maiden bade her servants wait for her. 9. A wise man gives himself many presents. 10. The cowardly boys feared that the dog would bite them.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Globe 8vo. 3s.

Macmillan's Greek Reader

STORIES AND LEGENDS

A FIRST GREEK READER

WITH

NOTES, VOCABULARY, AND EXERCISES

BY

F. H. COLSON, M.A.

LATE FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE
AND HEADMASTER OF PLYMOUTH COLLEGE

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

334

(3) Various Questions and Answers.

1. *Boys.*—*βλέπομεν, ὦ κύον, μὴ δάκῃς ἡμᾶς.*
   D.—*θαρρεῖτε, παιδία, κύων τεύτλια οὐκ ἐσθίει.*

2. *D.*—(To a bad musician). *χαῖρε, ὦ ἀλεκτρυόν.*
   Singer.—*τί δὲ ἐμὲ ἀλεκτρυόνα καλεῖς;*
   D.—*ὅτι ᾄδων πάντας ἐγείρεις.*

3. *Friend.*—*τί τῶν θηρίων κάκιστα δάκνει;*
   D.—*τῶν μὲν ἀγρίων συκοφάντης, τῶν δὲ ἡμέρων κόλαξ.*

4. *Friend.*—*ποίῳ καιρῷ δεῖ γαμεῖν;*
   D.—*τοὺς μὲν νέους μηδέπω, τοὺς δὲ πρεσβυτέρους μηδέποτε.*

5. *Friend.*—*ἢ θεράποντα, ἢ θεράπαιναν ἔχεις;*
   D.—*οὐκ ἔγωγε.*
   F.—*ὅταν οὖν ἀποθάνῃς, τίς σε ἐξοίσει;*
   D.—*ὁ χρῄζων τῆς οἰκίας.*

6. *Friend.*—*ποῖον οἶνον ἡδέως πίνεις;*
   D.—*τὸν ἀλλότριον.*

7. *D.*—*ὁ ἐμὸς δοῦλος ἀποδέδρακεν.*
   Friend.—*τί οὖν οὐ ζητεῖς αὐτόν, ὦ Διογένες;*
   D.—*γέλοιον ἂν εἴη, εἰ Μανῆς μὲν χωρὶς Διογένους ζῇ, Διογένης δὲ χωρὶς Μανοῦ οὐ δύναται ζῆν.*

8. *Friend.*—*πόθεν ἥκεις, ὦ Διογένες;*
   D.—*ἀπὸ τῶν Ὀλυμπίων.*
   F.—*ἦ πολὺς ὄχλος παρῆν;*
   D.—*πολὺς μὲν ὄχλος, ὀλίγοι δὲ ἄνθρωποι.*

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d. Key, for Teachers only, price 5s. net

AN INTRODUCTION TO

GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION

FOR USE IN PREPARATORY SCHOOLS AND THE LOWER FORMS OF PUBLIC SCHOOLS

BY

H. PITMAN, M.A.

LATE SCHOLAR OF ORIEL COLLEGE, OXFORD; ASSISTANT-MASTER AT EASTBOURNE COLLEGE; FORMERLY FIRST CLASSICAL ASSISTANT-MASTER AT CHEAM SCHOOL, SURREY, AND AT HAMPSTEAD PREPARATORY SCHOOL

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

336

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

THIS book aims at bringing a pupil as quickly as possible to a comprehension of the principles on which Greek compound sentences are constructed. Before beginning Greek, boys as a general rule have worked out a considerable number of elementary Latin exercises, and this kind of work prepares the mind to deal with the difficulties caused by inflexions in language. It is therefore felt that a boy can be taken through the declensions and the conjugation of a regular verb like λύω without a special exercise-book on this, the earliest stage in learning the language: the teacher himself can supply what is necessary, in the ordinary course of Greek Grammar lessons. This book is designed to be used as soon as a boy has passed through this preliminary stage.

The exercises begin by affording practice in the formation of the chief tenses of regular verbs. Prepositions are worked in from the first, and constant practice in their use is given throughout. The earlier exercises, which deal mainly with the forms of the regular verbs, are made short and simple,—the aim being to pass on to the usages of the moods as quickly as possible. No attempt is made to work in any uses of the cases except those which occur most frequently and are most easily grasped. The Continuous Proses at the end may be found convenient for revision, and desirable as a change from the monotony of constantly rendering sentences into Greek. These follow the arrangement of the sentences, and where fresh points are introduced notice is given in the Special Vocabularies. They are written simply, as it is beyond the pretensions of this book to act as a complete introduction to Greek Prose Composition: it is beyond its scope to do more than bring a beginner to the point where he may pass on to a more advanced book such as Mr. A. Sidgwick's *Greek Prose Composition*.

There is a Special Vocabulary to each exercise as well as a General Vocabulary of all the words required. In these, the tenses of irregular verbs are not given, as they can be found in the lists given by Greek grammars; but the stems of the regular verbs are indicated by capital letters (see List of Abbreviations, p. 126), and, in the case of contracted verbs, the uncontracted form of the final -ω in the present tense is given.

CONTENTS

PART I. EXPLANATION OF CONSTRUCTIONS

CHAPTER I. § 1. Formation of Tenses of Verbs with Vowel-Stems—§ 2. Meaning of Aorist Tense—§ 3. Meaning of Middle Voice—§ 4. Infinitive used for Indirect Command—§ 5. Position of Possessive Case.

CHAPTER II. § 6. Formation of Tenses of Verbs with Dental Stems—§ 7. *τίς*, Interrogative, and *τις*, Indefinite.

CHAPTER III. § 8. Formation of Tenses of Verbs with Labial Stems—§ 9. "With"=(1) "Together with," (2) Instrumental.

CHAPTER IV. § 10. Formation of Verbs with Guttural Stems—§ 11. Neuter Plural Subject takes Verb in Singular—§ 12. "By" as (1) Personal Agent, (2) Instrument.

CHAPTER V. § 13. Adjectives.

CHAPTER VI. § 14. Verbs with Stems in λ, ρ, ν—§ 15. Phrase formed by Article with Preposition.

CHAPTER VII. § 16. Final Construction (*ἵνα, ὡς, ὅπως*)—§ 17. Formation of Verbs with Stems in *α, ε, ο*—§ 18. Negatives after *ἵνα, ὡς, ὅπως* (Final)—§ 19. "To" in (1) Indirect Command, (2) "Prolative" Infinitive, (3) Purpose.

CHAPTER VIII. § 20. Consecutive Clauses (*ὥστε*)—§ 21. Phrases requiring *ὥστε*—§ 22. "For" expressing Duration of Time.

CHAPTER IX. § 23. "Actual" and "Natural" Result.

CHAPTER X. § 24. Augment of Simple Verbs—§ 25. Augment of Compound Verbs.

CHAPTER XI. § 26. *ἐκ, ἐξ*, compounded with Verbs—§ 27. *συν, ἐν* compounded with Verbs—§ 28. Time *at* which, and *within* which.

CHAPTER XII. § 29. Reduplication of Aspirated Consonants—§ 38. Reduplication of Verbs beginning with Vowels—§ 31. Article required after *οὗτος, ὅδε, ἐκεῖνος*—§ 32. *οὐδείς*, etc., strengthening preceding Simple Negative.

CHAPTER XIII. § 33. Perfect of Verbs beginning with two mute Consonants—§ 34. "He, she, it." "His, her," etc.

CHAPTER XIV. § 35. Infinitive expressing Indirect Statement.

CHAPTER XV. § 36. *οὐ* placed before *φημί*—§ 37. Subject of Infinitive in Indirect Speech is Nominative if the same as that of main Verb—§ 38. *αὐτός* with Infinitive.

CHAPTER XVI. § 39. οὐ and μή in Indirect Speech.

CHAPTER XVII. § 40. Participle in Indirect Speech after οἶδα—§ 41. Participle in Indirect Speech after other Verbs.

CHAPTER XVIII. § 42. Indirect Statement introduced by ὡς and ὅτι.

CHAPTER XIX. § 43. Indirect Question—§§ 44, 45. Words introducing Indirect Question.

CHAPTER XX. § 46. "Deliberative" Questions, Direct and Indirect.

CHAPTER XXI. § 47. Conjunctions introducing Temporal Clauses—§ 48. Definite Temporal Clauses.

CHAPTER XXII. § 49. Subordinate Sentences in Indirect Speech.

CHAPTER XXIII. § 50. Indefinite Constructions.

CHAPTER XXIV. § 51. Temporal Clauses expressing Future Action.

CHAPTER XXV. § 52. πρίν followed by Infinitive—§ 53. πρίν followed by a Finite Mood.

CHAPTER XXVI. § 54. Conditional Sentences, with Indicative in Apodosis (A).

CHAPTER XXVII. § 55. Conditional Sentences, with ἄν and Indicative or Optative in Apodosis (B).

CHAPTER XXVIII. § 56. Casual Sentences.

CHAPTER XXIX. § 57. Concessive Clauses.

CHAPTER XXX. § 58. Participles as Alternatives to Subordinate Clauses.

CHAPTER XXXI. § 59. Construction after Verbs of Fearing.

CHAPTER XXXII. § 60. Extension of Final Construction.

CHAPTER XXXIII. § 61. μή with Infinitive, after Verbs containing a Negative Notion.

CHAPTER XXXIV. § 62. Conditional Sentences in Indirect Speech.

CHAPTER XXXV. § 63. οὐ and μή.

PART II. EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES

SENTENCES—CONTINUOUS PROSES—SENTENCES ILLUSTRATING SYNTAX RULES, WITHOUT ENGLISH—LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS IN VOCABULARIES—SPECIAL VOCABULARIES TO SENTENCES—SPECIAL VOCABULARIES TO CONTINUOUS PROSES—GENERAL VOCABULARY.

CHAPTER XX

Explanatory to Exercise XXVII

46. Frequently an indirect question takes such a form as:

I do not know what to do,
whither to go,
whom to ask.

The direct form of such questions would be:

What am I to do?
Whither am I to go?
Whom am I to ask?

Such questions, implying anxiety or perplexity as to the course of action to be adopted, are done in Greek by what is called the Deliberative Subjunctive:

What am I to do? = *τί πράξω*; (aor. subj.).
Whither am I to turn? = *ποῖ τράπωμαι*;

When such questions have to be made indirect, they follow the general rule as stated above; thus:

Primary Sequence. I ask what I am to do = *ἐρωτῶ ὅ τι πράξω.*

Historic. I asked what to do = *ἠρώτησα ὅ τι πράξαιμι* (vivid, *ὅ τι πράξω*).
He is in doubt whither to turn = *ἀπορεῖ ὅποι τράπηται.*
He was in doubt whither to turn = *ἠπόρει ὅποι τράποιτο* (vivid, *τράπηται*).

Do not use the infinitive for the verb of such indirect sentences.

οὐ, οὐδείς, etc.	μή, μηδείς, etc.
In Temporal Sentences—	
Definite:	Indefinite:
ἐπειδὴ οὐκέτι ἦν σιτία, ταλαιπώρως εἶχον = When there were no longer any provisions, they suffered.	(*N.B.*—μή and its compounds are used in *all* indefinite clauses, not only the temporal.) ἀχθέσεσθε ἐπειδὰν μηκέτι σιτία ὑμῖν γένηται = You will be annoyed when you no longer have food.
In Relative Sentences—	
Definite, with Indic.:	Indefinite, with Indic.:
ἔκτειναν τὸν ἄνδρα ὃν οὐκ ἐφίλησαν = They killed the man whom they did not like.	ἃ μὴ οἶδα, οὐδὲ οἴομαι εἰδέναι = The sort of things I know not, I do not either think I know.
	With the ordinary indefinite construction (§ 50): κτείνουσιν ὄντινα ἂν μὴ φιλῶσιν = They kill any one they do not like.
In Conditional Sentences—	
In Apodosis:	In Protasis:
ἆρ' οὐκ ἀχθέσεσθε; = Will you not be vexed?	εἰ μηκέτι ὑμῖν σιτία γενήσεται; = If you no longer have any food?
In Causal Sentences—	
ἤχθοντο διότι οὐκ ἦν σιτία πρίασθαι = They were vexed because it was not possible to get provisions (real reason).	

13. To whom am I to say this?
14. What am I to announce?
15. Where are we to sail to?
16. Which of the two am I to believe?
17. Are we to speak or be silent?
18. Which of these men are we to choose?
19. Shall we stay or depart?
20. Why is the king vexed?

Exercise XXVII

1. The soldiers asked why their generals were waiting so long a time.
2. Who knows whether he will still live another day?
3. Nobody could tell me which way to go.
4. I will tell you what to look for.
5. I am in doubt whether to go to Athens or to Corinth.
6. The Governor asked the sailor where he had sailed to and what he had seen.
7. The Phoenicians said that they tried to sail round Libya in order to find out how big it was, but at last their ship stuck in shallow water and they had to return.
8. He could not say which of the two houses he liked best.
9. Many travellers have wondered why Homer called the Ethiopians blameless.
10. We did not know whether our general was safe.

IX

The manners of the gods about whom Homer wrote are very quaint, and sometimes the gods seem to act much more savagely than the men. Zeus often used to quarrel with his wife Hera. For she wished Troy to be destroyed as quickly as possible, but Zeus often protected the Trojans. Once Zeus threatened that he would hang her up and beat her, as he had done before. And another time, when they were quarrelling, the lame god Hephaestus persuaded Hera not to oppose her husband any longer, saying that no god could resist Zeus, and that once he himself, when he had tried to help her before, had been thrown out of Olympus and had fallen for a whole day till he reached the earth.

X

Homer therefore does not seem to have thought that the gods must be much better than men. Hector the Trojan certainly loved his wife Andromache, and treated her better than Zeus (did) Hera. And sometimes the gods were even weaker in battle than men. For they often used to come down from heaven to earth to fight for those whom they liked. They used to add strength to any hero whom they especially favoured, or aim his spear or sword so as to slay his foe; and, whenever he was in danger, they would hide him in a dense cloud. But they could not always do whatever they liked. For once Aphrodite, the goddess

Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

A SCHOOL GREEK GRAMMAR

BY

WILLIAM W. GOODWIN, LL.D., D.C.L.

NEW AND REVISED EDITION

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE.

"This work is an abridgment of the author's *Greek Grammar* [see p. 37] . . . and is intended for those who wish to begin the study of Greek with a small book, with the expectation of using a larger Grammar after the elements are mastered."

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

The School Board Chronicle—"A careful abridgment of the author's well-known scholarly Greek Grammar, which has been so much admired. The distinction of type used in these pages will enable any teacher to make a still more elementary Grammar of the present work, and to adapt it in this way to the wants of very young students. The classification of the subjects treated, and the clearness and brevity of the definitions and rules mark out the Grammar as one of very special merit aud usefulness, and its value is still more enhanced by the beauty and clearness of the type, and by the two indices, Greek and English, at the close of the volume."

The Journal of Education—"Is sure to command the respectful attention of all teachers. . . . We must not conclude without expressing our respect for this book as a whole, and our gratitude to its accomplished author. Any teacher and learner may safely trust himself to the guidance of Prof. Goodwin with the security that he will have very little to unlearn."

II. Comparison by -ιων, -ιστος.

§ 72. 1. Some adjectives in υς and ρος are compared by changing *these endings* to ῑων and ιστος. *E.g.*

Ἡδύς, *sweet*, ἡδίων, ἥδιστος.
Αἰσχρός, *base*, αἰσχίων, αἴσχιστος.
Ἐχθρός, *hostile*, ἐχθίων, ἔχθιστος.
Κυδρός (poet.), *glorious*, κυδίων, κύδιστος.

2. Comparatives in ῑων, neuter ῑον, are thus declined:—

	Singular.		*Dual.*	
Nom.	ἡδίων	ἡδιον		
Acc.	ἡδίονα ἡδίω	ἡδιον	N. V. A.	ἡδίονε
Gen.	ἡδίονος		G. D.	ἡδιόνοιν
Dat.	ἡδίονι			

Plural.

N. V.	ἡδίονες ἡδίους	ἡδίονα ἡδίω
Acc.	ἡδίονας ἡδίους	ἡδίονα ἡδίω
Gen.	ἡδιόνων	
Dat.	ἡδίοσι	

Note 1. The terminations *-ονα, -ονες, -ονας* may drop *ν*, and be contracted into *-ω* and *-ους* (§ 47, Note). Notice recessive accent (§ 21, 3) in the neuter singular.

Note 2. The irregular comparatives in *ων* (§ 73) are declined like *ἡδίων*.

III. Irregular Comparison.

§ 73. 1. The following are the most important cases of irregular comparison:—

1.	ἀγαθός, *good*,	ἀμείνων, βελτίων, κρείσσων or κρείττων,	ἄριστος, βέλτιστος, κράτιστος.
2.	κακός, *bad*,	κακίων, χείρων, ἥσσων or ἧττων,	κάκιστος, χείριστος, (ἤκιστος, rare): adv. ἥκιστα.
3.	καλός, *beautiful*,	καλλίων,	κάλλιστος.
4.	μέγας, *great*,	μείζων,	μέγιστος.

Cognate Accusative (Internal Object).

§ **159.** Any verb whose meaning permits it may take an accusative of kindred signification. This accusative repeats the idea *already contained* in the verb, and may follow intransitive as well as transitive verbs. *E.g.*

Ἥδομαι τὰς μεγίστας ἡδονάς, *I enjoy the greatest pleasures.* Εὐτυχοῦσι τοῦτο τὸ εὐτύχημα, *they enjoy this good fortune.* So πίπτειν πέσημα, *to fall (a fall)*; νόσον νοσεῖν, *to suffer under a disease*; ἁμάρτημα ἁμαρτάνειν, *to commit an error (to sin a sin)*; δουλείαν δουλεύειν, *to be subject to slavery*; γραφὴν γράφεσθαι, *to bring an indictment*; νίκην νικᾶν, *to gain a victory.*

Note 1. A neuter adjective sometimes represents a cognate accusative, its noun being implied in the verb; as μεγάλα ἁμαρτάνειν (sc. ἁμαρτήματα), *to commit great faults.*

Note 2. A transitive verb may have a cognate accusative and another object at the same time; as, γράφεσθαί τινα τὴν γραφὴν ταύτην, *to bring this indictment against any one*; ἠδικήσαμεν τοῦτον οὐδέν, *we did this man no wrong.*

Accusative of Specification.—Adverbial Accusative.

§ **160.** 1. The accusative of *specification* (or *limitation*) may be joined with a verb, adjective, noun, or even a sentence, to denote a *part*, *character*, or *quality*, to which the expression refers. *E.g.*

Τυφλὸς εἶ τὰ ὄμματα, *you are blind in your eyes*; καλὸς τὸ εἶδος, *beautiful in form*; δίκαιος τὸν τρόπον, *just in his character*; κάμνω τὴν κεφαλήν, *I have a pain in my head*; τὰς φρένας ὑγιαίνειν, *to be sound in their minds*; διαφέρει τὴν φύσιν, *he differs in nature*; ποταμὸς, Κύδνος ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο πλέθρων, *a river, Cydnus by name, of two plethra in breadth*; καὶ τὰ μικρὰ πειρῶμαι ἀπὸ θεῶν ὁρμᾶσθαι, *even in small matters I try to begin with the Gods.*

2. An accusative in certain expressions has the force of an adverb. *E.g.*

Τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον, *in this way, thus*; τὴν ταχίστην (sc. ὁδόν), *in the quickest way*; τὴν ἀρχήν, *at first* (with negative, *not at all*); τέλος, *finally*; προῖκα, *as a gift*, gratis; χάριν, *for the sake of*; δίκην, *in the manner of*; τὸ πρῶτον or πρῶτον, *at first*; τὸ λοιπόν, *for the rest*;

Now Ready. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. Price 14s.

A SHORT MANUAL OF COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY

FOR CLASSICAL STUDENTS

BY

P. GILES, M.A.

FELLOW AND LECTURER OF EMMANUEL COLLEGE AND READER IN COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE

μῦθος δ'. ὃς μὲν νῦν ὑγιής, εἰρημένος ἔστω

SECOND EDITION REVISED

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

In this new edition the work, while retaining its main features unaltered, has been carefully revised. Although there are few pages where some small change has not been made, the increase in bulk is due more to wider spacing in the printing than to additional matter. The syntactical examples from Plautus are now quoted throughout from the Teubner text of Goetz and Schoell, which has been completed since the book was published in 1895; references to the Greek tragic poets are, as before, according to the numbering of the lines in Dindorf's *Poetae Scenici*.

The natural corollary to a book like this is an etymological treatment of the vocabulary of the Greek and Latin languages, in which the principles here laid down could be applied to a greater number of examples than the limits of the present work would allow. Such a *Latin Etymology* I hope soon to publish, and this will be followed at no great interval by a similar treatment of Greek Etymology.

In issuing the book again, I wish to offer my best thanks to the many scholars at home and abroad who have sent me suggestions or corrections and literature which would often otherwise (especially when published in Italy or Russia) have been inaccessible to me. Mr. Hertel, who translated the first edition into German, sent me a number of corrections for the index. Above all I owe much to my friends and

colleagues Professor Skeat, Dr. Postgate, and Mr. J. H. Moulton for the friendly interest they have always shown and the help which from time to time they have rendered me.

I hope printer's errors are neither numerous nor serious, thanks to the excellent workmanship of Messrs. R. & R. Clark's printers and the accuracy and untiring vigilance of their reader.

P. G.

CONTENTS

TABLE OF ABBREVIATIONS. ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

PART I.—GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

Chapter I. What is Philology? II. What is an Indo-Germanic Language? III. How do Indo-Germanic Languages differ from other Languages? IV. The Principles of Modern Philology; V. Phonetics; VI. Accent; VII. Differences (1) between English and the Classical Languages, and (2) between English and other Germanic Languages.

PART II.—SOUNDS AND THEIR COMBINATIONS.

Chapter VIII. Indo-Germanic Sounds; IX. Attic Greek Alphabet and Pronunciation; X. Latin Alphabet and Pronunciation; XI. History of the original Indo-Germanic Sounds in Greek and Latin; XII. On some Combinations of Consonants; XIII. On some other Sound Changes; XIV. Accent.

PART III.—WORDS AND THEIR COMBINATIONS.

Chapter XV. General Principles of Word Formation; XVI. Noun Morphology; XVII. Classification of Nouns; XVIII. Case Suffixes; XIX. Pronominal Declension; XX. Uses of the Cases; XXI. Fragments of Cases; XXII. Stem Formation in the Noun; XXIII. The Numerals.

THE VERB.

Chapter XXIV. Verb Morphology; XXV. The Present Formations; XXVI. The Future; XXVII. The Perfect; XXVIII. Past Formations; XXIX. The Moods; XXX. Verbal Nouns; XXXI. Uses of the Verb Forms.

APPENDIX.

A. The Greek and Latin Alphabets; B. The Greek Dialects; C. The Italic Dialects; D. The Earliest Latin.

INDICES.

Index of Greek Words; Index of Italic Words; Index of Germanic Words; Index of Subjects.

PRESS OPINIONS OF THE FIRST EDITION.

CLASSICAL REVIEW.—"Mr. Giles deserves the thanks of all teachers and students of Comparative Philology for his admirable 'Manual.' Without unfairness to other books already in the field, one may say that it is the first thoroughly satisfactory work of the kind."

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.—"Admirably written . . . The book is not a mere mass of examples: it is really written. Mr. Giles contrives to present the elements of the subject in far more interesting shape than that in which they have been presented by his predecessors . . . Throughout his book he keeps first principles so clearly before the reader that nothing remains difficult to comprehend. Things that we found hard before, we find easy and almost pleasant now we have read Mr. Giles."

GUARDIAN.—"We heartily recommend the book. It is by far the best book, the most accurate, and the most comprehensive that has yet been published in England on the principles and methods of the New Philology. It ought to be the daily companion of every classical student."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY COURSE OF MATHEMATICS

COMPRISING

ARITHMETIC, ALGEBRA, AND EUCLID

BY

H. S. HALL, M.A., AND F. H. STEVENS, M.A.

Adapted to the First Stage of the South Kensington Syllabus.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

349

PRESS OPINIONS

Bookseller.—"The authors, who are already well known as writers of successful text-books, here propose to provide for the wants of those students who, after school, desire to continue their study of Elementary Mathematics partly at evening classes and partly at home. . . . **It has certainly been put together with all the skill and care that we should have expected from the compilers.**"

Publishers' Circular.—"The volume should prove very useful as it provides at small cost valuable assistance in the three branches of Mathematics mentioned. **Teachers at evening schools would do well to examine this manual.**"

Scotsman.—"It gives a highly practical introduction to Arithmetic, Algebra, and Euclid, and **will prove useful both in schools and for home work.**"

School Guardian.—"For those students who intend offering themselves for the first stage Mathematics Examination of South Kensington, and who like all their work between a single pair of covers, **no book can be better than the volume now before us. . . . The volume is in every way worthy of praise.**"

Teachers' Aid.—"The names of the authors of this book are a sufficient guarantee of the reliability of its contents, and teachers of the Elementary stage need have no hesitation in adopting it for class use."

Public School Magazine.—"The course in Arithmetic is divided into weeks, an admirable idea from every point of view, tending to give promptitude and finality to a boy's work. The Algebraical course takes us to Equations, and in Geometry we complete Book I. **Altogether this is a very convenient little book.**"

Educational Review.—"**The combination of Arithmetic, Algebra, and the first book of Euclid in a single and inexpensive volume is a happy idea which bids fair to meet an undoubtedly existing want.** The Arithmetic portion chiefly consists of exercises arranged in weeks' work with notes and hints for solution on such portions of the work as are usually badly taught to beginners, *e.g.*, contracted multiplication, compound practice, the metric system, and problems. The Algebra extends to simple equations, factors, and problems. The Euclid is a revised reproduction of the first book of 'Hall and Stevens'' well-known text-book."

Girls' and Infants' Mistress.—"The work does what it professes to do, and does it in the best possible manner. . . . **Every teacher engaged in evening continuation school work, science classes, where Mathematics is a subject of study, and the higher classes of our national schools, should immediately write for a copy.**"

Eighth Week. *Decimals of Compound Quantities.*

Note on Approximations. It should be carefully observed that a sum of money expressed in £s. and the decimal of a £., if correct to the *third* decimal place, will yield a result which differs from the true value by *less than one farthing.*

If, for instance, we are asked to find the value of £3·6818292... *to the nearest farthing*, we may begin by at once discarding all decimal figures beyond the third (using the fourth, if necessary, to correct the third): for £3·682 will give the same result (viz., £3. 13*s.* 7¾*d.*) as £3·6818292... to within less than a farthing.

Note. The reason of this is evident when we remember that 1 farthing = £$\frac{1}{960}$, which is *greater* than £$\frac{1}{1000}$ (or £·001). If, then, the decimal of £1 is corrected to the *third* place (*i.e.* made true to the nearest £·001) it cannot differ from the actual value by as much as £$\frac{1}{960}$, or 1 farthing. The student will find it convenient to acquire one of the various devices (explained in any text-book of Arithmetic) by which a sum of money can be expressed *at sight* as the decimal of £1 correct to the third place; and also the converse process.

Example 1. Add together £17·051$\dot{6}$, £8·197, and £12·3105$\dot{8}$, giving a result *true to the nearest farthing.*

17·051	65...
8·197	
12·310	58...
£37·559	2

Here the addition (in decimals of £1) need only be performed *correct to the third decimal place.*

And £37·559 = £37. 11*s.* 2¼*d.* (to the nearest farthing).

Example 2. Find *to the nearest farthing* the rent and taxes on 306·0108 acres at £5. 17*s.* 5*d.* an acre.

5·8,7,0,	8,3,3
306·0 1 0	8
1761·2 4 9	9
35·2 2 5	0
5 8	7
4	6
£1796·5 3 8	2

£5. 17*s.* 5*d.* = £5·87083$\dot{3}$,
and we have to multiply 5·870833... by 306·0108, retaining a result *true only to the third decimal place.*

Now £1796·538 = £1796. 10*s.* 9*d.* (to the nearest farthing).

Similarly a *weight* expressed as the decimal of a *ton*, if correct to the *fourth* decimal place, will give a result true to the nearest lb. (since the number of lbs. in 1 ton is less than 10,000); and

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

The Sum or Difference of Two Cubes.

81. If we divide a^3+b^3 by $a+b$ the quotient is a^2-ab+b^2: and if we divide a^3-b^3 by $a-b$ the quotient is a^2+ab+b^2.

We have therefore the following identities:

$$a^3+b^3=(a+b)(a^2-ab+b^2);$$
$$a^3-b^3=(a-b)(a^2+ab+b^2).$$

These results are very important, and enable us to resolve into factors any expression which can be written as the sum or the difference of two cubes.

Example 1. $8x^3-27y^3=(2x)^3-(3y)^3$
$=(2x-3y)(4x^2+6xy+9y^2).$

Note. The middle term $6xy$ is the *product* of $2x$ and $3y$.

Example 2. $64a^3+1=(4a)^3+(1)^3$
$=(4a+1)(16a^2-4a+1).$

We may usually omit the intermediate step and write down the factors at once.

Examples. $343a^6-27x^3=(7a^2-3x)(49a^4+21a^2x+9x^2).$
$8x^9+729=(2x^3+9)(4x^6-18x^3+81).$

EXAMPLES XII. g.

Resolve into factors:

1.	a^3-b^3.	**2.**	a^3+b^3.	**3.**	$1+x^3$.	**4.**	$1-y^3$.
5.	$8x^3+1$.	**6.**	x^3-8z^3.	**7.**	a^3+27b^3.	**8.**	x^3y^3-1.
9.	$1-8a^3$.	**10.**	b^3-8.	**11.**	$27+x^3$.	**12.**	$64-p^3$.
13.	$125a^3+1$.	**14.**	$216-b^3$.	**15.**	x^3y^3+343.		
16.	$1000x^3+1$.	**17.**	$512a^3-1$.	**18.**	$a^3b^3c^3-27$.		
19.	$8x^3-343$.	**20.**	x^3+216y^3.	**21.**	x^6-27z^3.		
22.	$m^3-1000n^6$.	**23.**	a^3-729b^3.	**24.**	$125a^6+512b^3$.		

Harder Cases of Resolution into Factors.

82. We shall now give some harder applications of the foregoing rules, followed by a miscellaneous exercise in which all the processes of this chapter will be illustrated.

Example 1. Resolve into factors $(a+2b)^2-16x^2$.

This expression, being *the difference between two squares*, is resolved into factors by the rule of Art. 80.

$$\therefore\ (a+2b)^2-16x^2=(a+2b+4x)(a+2b-4x).$$

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. 401 *pp.* *Globe* 8*vo.* 3*s.* 6*d.*

ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL MATHEMATICS

BY

FRANK CASTLE, M.I.M.E.

MECHANICAL LABORATORY, ROYAL COLLEGE OF SCIENCE, LONDON
LECTURER IN MATHEMATICS, MECHANICS, ETC., AT THE
MORLEY COLLEGE, LONDON

Adapted to the New South Kensington Syllabus

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

THE inability of artizan students to profit by much of the technical instruction given in polytechnics and similar institutes is largely due to insufficient preliminary training in Mathematics, for without a fair knowledge of this subject little or no real progress can be made in any branch of Physical Science. Notwithstanding this, classes in pure Mathematics are neither popular nor well attended by students of the industrial class. Even the enthusiastic apprentice seems to find it difficult to connect the instruction usually given in arithmetic, algebra,

and geometry with the work of the shop or factory. A number of attempts have been made to remedy this state of affairs. Classes in Technical and Workshop Arithmetic, Machine Calculations, Mensuration, and similar subjects have been started in many centres. The latest attempt to interest and benefit the "practical man" is the syllabus of Practical Mathematics issued by the Department of Science and Art. Judging from the Examination paper of May last, and the lectures delivered by Prof. Perry, F.R.S., to working men and to science teachers, the object of the course is to show the student how to prove and verify truths by experiment instead of arriving at elementary results through the ordinary processes of Euclid and other academic authorities. Abstract reasoning is to be relegated to the background, and concrete facts are to form the basis of the student's work.

The syllabus of Practical Mathematics, to which reference has been made, is so extensive in its scope that it is difficult to deal satisfactorily with all the points in it in a text-book such as the present. The course of study outlined in the following pages will consequently be found more than can be undertaken by backward students in one session. In such cases the plan of completing the course in two years may reasonably be adopted.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I.—Measurement. Units of Length.

CHAPTER II.—Units of Area and Volume. Density. Relative Density Principle of Archimedes.

CHAPTER III.—Time and its measurement. Angular measurement; Degrees, Radians. Geometrical construction.

CHAPTER IV.—Arithmetic. Signs of Operation: "× and ÷"; G.C.M.; L.C.M.; Vulgar Fractions; Decimals.

CHAPTER V.—Involution and Evolution. Simple Application of Arithmetical Rules.

CHAPTER VI.—Algebra. Addition, Subtraction, Multiplication, and Division. Simple Operations. Factors. Simplification of Algebraical Expressions. Indices.

CHAPTER VII.—Measures and Multiples. H.C.F. and L.C.M. Fractions.

CHAPTER VIII.—Simple Equations. Simultaneous Equations.

CHAPTER IX.—Graphic Methods. Scales and their use. Graphic Arithmetic.

CHAPTER X.—Labour-saving Methods: Logarithms. Multiplication, Division, Involution and Evolution by Logarithms.

CHAPTER XI.—Measurement and Functions of Angles. Sine, Cosine, and Tangent.

CHAPTER XII.—Labour-saving Methods. The Slide Rule.

CHAPTER XIII.—Arithmetical progression. Geometrical progression, Geometric Mean and Arithmetic Mean. Simple Interest. Compound Interest. Discount.

CHAPTER XIV.—Orthographic Projection. True lengths and inclinations of lines referred to two and three Co-Ordinate Planes.

CHAPTER XV.—Mensuration, Plane Figures, and Right-Angled Triangles. Areas of Rectangle, Parallelogram, Triangle, Rhombus, Hexagon, Quadrilateral, Trapezoid, Circle. Circumference and Area of Circle. Sector of Circle. Area of Annulus. Ellipse.

CHAPTER XVI.—Simpson's Rule.

CHAPTER XVII.—Mensuration. Solids. Areas, Volumes and Weights of Prisms (right and oblique). Cylinder, Hollow Cylinder, Pyramid, Cone, Frustum of Pyramid, Frustum of Cone, Guldin's Theorem. Surface and Volume of Sphere, Cylinder, Ring, Fly-wheel.

CHAPTER XVIII.—Linear Motion. Momentum. Force. Mass. Work. Energy (Potential and Kinetic).

CHAPTER XIX.—The Specification of Vectors. Polygon of Forces. Funicular Polygon. Graphic conditions of Equilibrium. Moments of Force. Parallel Forces. Bending Moment. Centre of Gravity. Roof Trusses. Moment of Inertia.

CHAPTER XX.—Use of Squared Paper. Plotting. Inch—Centimetres. Simple Machines. Area of Diagram to represent work done by a Force. Work done by a Variable Force. Compression of Springs. Stress, and Strain. Modulus of Elasticity. Indicator Diagrams.

CHAPTER XXI.—Evaluation of Algebraic and Trigonometrical Formulae.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS. ANSWERS. INDEX.

PRESS OPINIONS

BOARD TEACHER.—"Just the book for those taking this new division of Science Subject V."

BUILDER.—"It undoubtedly summarises in an excellent manner many branches of mathematics and shows how these may be adapted to the requirements of every day work. . . . May be said to contain all the information ordinarily required by the mechanic."

SECONDARY EDUCATION.—"The course embraces exactly what is requisite for students who desire to derive the full benefit of a course of instruction in technical work applicable to trades and industries. The book is admirably arranged. The diagrams are clear, and the examples numerous. . . . Every school teacher ought to have it as a guide to more practical methods in teaching."

SCHOOL WORLD.—"Sure to command a good sale. Fortunately it deserves this on its own merits. . . . Many of the subjects dealt with by the author might be introduced with great advantage into a school course; and his book deserves the careful attention of teachers from this point of view."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

A SCHOOL ARITHMETIC

BY

R. F. MACDONALD

HEADMASTER OF CHILDERIC ROAD BOARD SCHOOL, LONDON

THIS BOOK IS INTENDED SPECIALLY FOR USE IN HIGHER GRADE AND ORGANISED SCHOOLS OF SCIENCE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

A HEADMASTER writes:—"I must congratulate you on bringing out such an excellent and useful work. I am very pleased with it and I shall be very surprised if it does not meet with almost universal acceptance in higher schools. I am particularly struck with the number, variety, and the general style of examples—these will prove a boon to teachers. I gave an examination in Arithmetic to my school this week and picked out all the examples from your book—the Assistants thought the examples given exceedingly fair and straightforward.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER

I. Elements—Units—Numbers—Figures—Notation—Roman Notation—Exercises in Numeration and Notation, I., II.

II. Simple Rules.—Addition—Proofs—Exercise III.—Subtraction—Methods—Proofs—Exercise IV.—Multiplication—Tables—Powers of Numbers—Casting out the Nines—Exercise V.—Division—Methods—Proofs—Partition—Exercise VI.—Scales of Notation—Changing the Scale—Analogy in Working—Exercise VII.—Miscellaneous Exercises VIII.

III. Compound Rules.—British System—Tables—Reduction—Exercises IX., X.—Addition—Exercise XI.—Subtraction—Exercise XII.—Multiplication—Exercise XIII.—Mensuration—Area—Volume—Duodecimals—Exercise XIV.—Division—Exercise XV.—Mensuration—Exercise XVI.—Miscellaneous Exercises XVII.

IV. Numbers.—Kinds—Factors—Divisibility of Numbers—Series of Numbers—Exercise XVIII.—Highest Common Factor—Exercise XIX.—Multiples—L.C.M.—Exercise XX.

V. Vulgar Fractions.—Equal Parts—Forms—Reduction—Exercise XXI.—Comparison—Exercise XXII.—Addition—Exercise—XXIII.—Subtraction—Exercise XXIV.—Multiplication—Exercise XXV.—Division—Rule of Signs—Exercise XXVI.—Compound Reduction—Exercise XXVII., XXVIII.—Miscellaneous Exercises XXIX.

VI. Demicals.—Notation—Reduction—Exercises XXX., XXXI.—Addition—Decimal System of Coinage—Metric System—Exercise XXXII.—Subtraction—Exercise XXXIII.—Multiplication—Contraction—Exercise XXXIV.—Division—Exercise XXXV.—Reduction—Exercise XXXVI., XXXVII.—Miscellaneous Exercises XXXVIII.

VII. Practice.—Ratio—Aliquot Parts—Bills and Invoices—Exercises XXXIX., XL., XLI., XLII.

VIII. Proportion.—Ratio—Simple Proportion—Exercises XLIII., XLIV., XLV.—Compound Proportion—Exercise XLVI.—Proportional Parts—Exercise XLVII.—Applied Proportion—Longitude—Temperature—Exchanges, Clocks—Exercise XLVIII.—Miscellaneous Exercises XLIX.

IX. Percentages.—The Standard "per centum"—Examples—Brokerage, Gain, Loss, Prime Cost, Selling Price, etc.—Exercises L., LI., LII., LIII.—Mixed Exercises LIV.

X. Interest.—Examples of Methods—Exercise LV.—Principal, Rate, Time—Exercise LVI.—Compound Interest—Examples—Exercise LVII.

XI. Discount.—Bankers' and True Discount—Examples—Exercises LVIII., LIX., LX.

XII. Stocks.—Shares—Examples—Exercises LXI., LXII., LXIII.

XIII. Roots.—Square Root—Examples—Mensuration—Mean Proportion, etc.—Surds—Exercise LXIV.—Cube Root—Examples—Horner's Method—LXV.

XIV. Examination Papers.

Answers.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

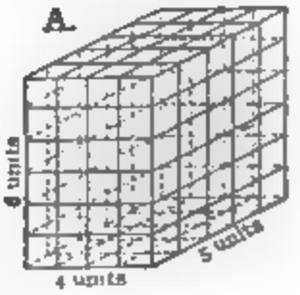
room, by the width, by the height; and the solidity of a body by multiplying the corresponding dimensions of length, breadth, and thickness.

Unless the system of duodecimals is employed each of the terms must be reduced to a common name as in finding area.

Inches × inches × inches = cubic inches; feet × feet × feet = cubic feet yards × yards × yards = cubic yards.

Suppose Block A to be
5 ft. long, 4 ft. wide, and 6 ft. thick,
then its solid content would equal
5 ft. × 4 ft. × 6 ft. = 120 c. ft.

N.B. This unit is now a cube of 1 foot edge.



Example (1). Find the solid content of a box whose length is 3 ft. 6 in., breadth 2 ft. 3 in., and depth 2 ft. 3 in.

Cubical content = length × breadth × depth
= 3 ft. 6 in. × 2 ft. 3 in. × 2 ft. 3 in.
= 42 in. × 27 in. × 27 in.
= 30618 cubic inches = 17 c. ft. 1242 c. in.

Example (2). Find, by duodecimals, the cubical content of a box measuring 3 ft. 6′ 9″ by 2 ft. 3′ 11″ by 2 ft. 3′.

Length,	3 ft.	6′	9″					
Breadth,				2 ft.	3′	11″		
	7	1′	6″					
		10′	8″	9‴				
		3′	3″	2‴	3⁗			
	8	3′	5″	5‴	2⁗			
Depth,					2 ft.	3′		
	16	6′	10″	10‴	6⁗			
	2	0′	▪	4‴	3⁗	9⁗′		
Cubical content,	18 c. ft.	7′	9″	2‴	9⁗	9⁗′		

N.B. The working can be followed by reference to the worked example in area above. The parts are cubic parts. The first is a twelfth part of the cubic foot.

When use is made of the duodecimal scale of notation explained on page 19, the example may be worked as illustrated under *area*. The symbol *t*=10, and *e*=eleven. The dots separate the feet from the parts.

Length,	3 ft.	6′ 9″	
Breadth,	2	3 *e*	
Multiplying by 2 ft.,	7	1 6	
" " 8′,		*t* 8 8‴	
" " *e*′,		3 3 2 3⁗	
	8	3 5 5 2	
Depth,	2	3	
Multiplying by 2 ft.,	16	6 *t* *t* 6	
" " 3′,	2	0 *t* 4 3 9⁗′	
Cubical content,	18 c. ft.	7 9 2 0 9	

9″ × 2 ft. = 18″; 18″ ÷ 12 = 1′ + 6″; carry 1′.
6′ × 2 ft. = 12′; 13′ ÷ 12 = 1 ft. + 1′; carry 1 ft.
3 ft. × 2 ft. = 6 ft.; 7 ft., etc.

N.B. Compared line by line with the sum above, it will be found exactly the same in every particular.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

81. A box with a lid was constructed of planking 1 ft. 6 in. wide. The external dimensions of the box were 3 ft. 6 in. long, 2 ft. 6 in. wide, and 1 ft. 9 in. deep. How many feet of planking were used?

82. A garden 76 yds. long and 56 yds. broad has a flower border all round 4 feet wide, next to it going all round is a path 5 ft. wide. The middle is grass. Find the area of the lawn.

83. Find the cost of a fence, 6 boards high, each board 11 feet long, to enclose a rectangular field 60 rods long and 50 rods wide, the planks costing £5 per thousand.

84. A piece of paper 12 yards long and 27 inches wide cost 4/6. For what money could a room 20 feet long by 16 feet 6 in. wide, and 12 feet high be papered with the same?

85. A platform has to be erected with a length of 55 feet and breadth 10 yards. The planks to be used are 16 ft. 6 in. long and 10 inches wide, costing 7½d. per sq. foot. Find the cost of the timber.

86. The bottom of a cistern measures 5 ft. 9 in. by 3 ft. 6 in. and it contains 300 gallons of water. If a gallon occupied 275 cubic inches what was the depth of water?

87. If a grain of gold is beaten out into 54 square inches of gold leaf, what weight will be required to cover a cube 1 ft. 6 in. on each edge?

88. A cubic foot of gold weighs 10 cwt. 95 lbs. If an ounce avoirdupois of gold may be beaten to form a leaf of 20 square yards, how many such leaves will make an inch of thickness?

89. A room is 16 ft. 6 in. long, 14 ft. 6 in. wide and 10 ft. 3 in. high. There is a doorway 7 ft. 3 in. × 3 ft. 3 in., a fireplace 4 ft. 6 in. square, and there are 2 windows each 6 ft. × 3 ft. 6 in. together with a skirting board 6 in. high. Find how many square yards of paper will cover the walls.

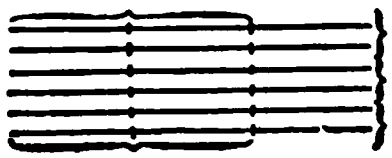
90. A roof 35 ft. 8 in. × 18 ft. 3 in. is to be covered with lead at the rate of 8 lb. per square foot. Find the cost of the same at a guinea per cwt.

91. What surface has to be painted if the walls of a room are 36 feet long, 24 feet wide, and 20 feet high, and allowance is made for a door 6 feet × 5 ft. 6 in., two windows each 7 ft. 6 in. × 3 ft. 9 in., and the whitewashing of the ceiling?

92. Find the cost of staining the border 2 ft. wide of a room 28 feet long by 22 feet in width, at a cost of 1/1½ per square yard.

(*b*) A *whole number* is divided by a *fraction* by *inverting the divisor* and proceeding as in multiplication, *e.g.*:

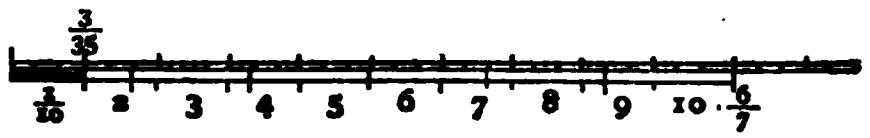
$$6 \div \frac{2}{3} = 6 \times \frac{3}{2} = \frac{18}{2} = 9.$$



In (*a*) $\frac{2}{3}$ is divided into 6 equal parts, each of which is $\frac{1}{3}$, while in (*b*) the question solved is how many parts called $\frac{2}{3}$ are there in 6, and there are 9.

(*c*) A *fraction* is divided by a *fraction* by (1) inverting the divisor, (2) cancelling, (3) multiplying, (4) reducing to simplest terms, *e.g.*:

$$\frac{3}{35} \div \frac{6}{7} = \frac{\cancel{3}}{\cancel{35}_{5}} \times \frac{\overset{1}{\cancel{7}}}{\cancel{6}_{2}} = \frac{1}{10}.$$



NOTE. Since $\frac{3}{35}$ divided by *one* equals $\frac{3}{35}$, then if divided by a *seventh* $\left(\frac{1}{7}\right)$ of one it will equal 7 times $\frac{3}{35}$, *i.e.* $\frac{3}{35} \times 7$; and if divided by six sevenths $\left(\frac{6}{7}\right)$ it will equal one-sixth of $\frac{3}{35} \times 7$, *i.e.* $\frac{3}{35} \times \frac{7}{6}$ the sign + being thus changed into × and the divisor $\frac{6}{7}$ into $\frac{7}{6}$, *i.e.* the divisor is inverted.

(*d*) *Mixed* numbers are divided by first reducing them to improper fractions, and then proceeding as in (*c*), *e.g.*:

$$3\tfrac{8}{9} \div 1\tfrac{1}{3} = \frac{35}{9} \div \frac{7}{6} = \frac{\cancel{35}^{5}}{\cancel{9}_{3}} \times \frac{\cancel{6}^{2}}{\cancel{7}_{1}} = \frac{10}{3} = 3\tfrac{1}{3}.$$

(*e*) A *complex* fraction is simplified by division, *e.g.*:

$$\frac{3\frac{8}{9}}{1\frac{1}{3}} = \frac{35}{9} \div \frac{7}{6} = \frac{35}{9} \times \frac{6}{7} = 3\tfrac{1}{3} \text{ (as above),}$$

or

$$\frac{3\frac{8}{9}}{1\frac{1}{3}} = \frac{\cancel{35}^{5}}{\cancel{9}^{3}} \div \frac{\cancel{7}^{1}}{\cancel{6}_{2}} = \frac{5}{3} \div \frac{1}{2} = \frac{5 \times 2}{3 \times 1} = \frac{10}{3} = 3\tfrac{1}{3}.$$

In the second working the outside numbers are the numerators and the inside the denominators, so the cancelling must be with 'inners' and 'outers,' and the *numerator* is the product of the '*outers*'—the *denominator* of the '*inners*.'

10. Rule of Signs.

(*a*) When +, −, ×, and ÷ signs are combined in an expression the + and − must be considered as *separating* the terms; × and ÷ as *uniting* them, that is to say, that × and ÷ unite the terms between which they are placed, and take precedence over the signs + and −.

(*b*) When an expression has × and ÷ signs the sign applies only to the fraction *immediately* following the sign.

24. A person's salary is £100 a year payable quarterly. Find the difference between his daily earnings in the two quarters beginning respectively on the 24th of June, and the 29th of September.

25. Sound travels through the air at the rate of 1142 ft. per second. A flash of lightning was observed and after 6 strokes of the pulse the thunder was heard. The pulse makes 68 strokes in a minute. How far off was the thunder cloud?

26. One pound Avoirdupois is 7000 grains Troy, and 66 shillings weigh 1 lb. Troy. Find the value of 20 Avoirdupois ounces of silver.

27. How many revolutions will a wheel make in a mile, the diameter of the wheel being 5 ft. 3 in., and the ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter being as 3·1416 is to 1?

28. The railway fare from Calais to Paris, a distance of 240 kilometres, is 38·16 francs; and from London to Dover, a distance of 70 miles, is 14s. 7d.; compare the cost of travelling in both countries when a metre=39·7068 inches and £1=25·44 francs.

29. If 35 men can do a piece of work in 45 days; and if 7 men drop off work every 15 days, find what time will elapse before the work is finished.

30. A certain number of workmen receive 50/- a week, twice as many receive 31/6 a week, 11 times as many 14/- a week; find the number of workmen when the total wages equal £93. 9s. 0d.

31. If a coach travels at the rate of $9\frac{1}{2}$ miles per hour, and a railway train runs 25 miles while the coach is going 8 miles; how much time will a traveller save in a journey of 152 miles by going by train?

32. If 200 men make an embankment 5 miles long in 25 days, how much overtime must 60 men work in order to finish an embankment 2 miles long in 32 days, 12 hours being a day's work?

33. If when meat is 9d. per lb. it costs £11. 16s. 3d. to supply 12 persons for 5 weeks, how much will it cost to supply 18 persons for 7 weeks when meat is 6d. per lb.?

34. A butler agrees to work a year for £128 and suits of clothes, but leaving at the end of nine months he gets £92 and the suits; what was the value of the clothes?

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

34. Bought 200 yards of cloth at 3/ a yard, the carriage costing £1. 12s. 0d. and storage 8s. If 10 per cent. of the cloth is lost by shrinkage, at what price per yard must the remainder be sold to gain a guinea on the whole transaction?

35. If I buy a house and sell it at a profit of £49, and find I make as much per cent. as the house cost me in sovereigns, how much did the house cost me?

36. Eggs are sold at the rate of 3 for 5 mils, and the gain at this rate is $1\frac{1}{5}$ of the cost; find at what rate per dozen they were purchased.

37. The number of sheep on a farm increases at the rate of 20 per cent. per annum. If at the end of two years there are 720 sheep, how many were there originally?

38. Watches are sold at a gain of 5 per cent. If the selling price of each watch were increased by 2/ the gain would then be 10 per cent. Find the cost price of each watch.

39. A tradesman marks his goods with two prices, one for ready money and the other for credit of six months. What ratio should the two prices bear to each other allowing interest at $7\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. per annum? If the credit price of an article be £33. 4s. 0d., what was the cost price?

40. By accepting A's offer for land I lose 7 per cent. on the purchase money; by accepting B's I should gain 5 per cent. B offers £273. 12s. 0d. more than A. Find what I paid.

5. Trade Customs. The applications of percentages are very varied owing, perhaps, to the eccentricities of traders; as, for example, in a business where goods are marked at a higher price than their real value, in order that a customer may receive an *abatement*, without the seller being in any way the loser, but rather the gainer. And, again, when several successive discounts are allowed.

Example (8). A chain sold at £2. 13s. 0d. gained 6 per cent.; at what price should it be sold to gain 12 per cent. instead?

For a gain of 6 per cent. let the selling price=£106, and for a gain of 12 per cent. let the selling price=£112.

Then 106 : 112 :: £2. 18s. 0d. : £2. 16s. 0d.

Example (9). When a silver watch was sold for £7. 17s. 6d. the gain was at the rate of 5 per cent.; at what price should it be sold to lose 10 per cent.?

For a gain of 5 per cent. let the selling price=£105, and for a loss of 10 per cent. let the selling price=£90.

Then 105 : 90 :: £7. 17s. 6d. : £6. 15s. 0d.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

84. A ladder 25 ft. long stands upright against a wall; find how far the bottom must be pulled out from the wall so as to lower the top 1 foot.

85. A ladder 26 ft. long stands upright against a wall; find how far the bottom of the ladder must be pulled out to lower the top 2 ft.

86. If the diagonal of a rectangular field is 100 yards, and one side is 80 yards, what is the area?

87. The area of a chess board having 6 squares along each side is 108 sq. inches. Find, to six places of decimals, the length of a side of one of these squares.

88. At 10s. a rod, what is the difference in the cost of fencing a field 20 rods square and another field containing the same area which is 40 rods long?

89. Find the square root of the third power of ·6 correct to four places.

90. Raise ·015 to the third power, and extract the square root of the power.

91. A room is half as wide as high, and twice as long as wide. If the floor contains 3362 sq. ft., what is the cost of papering the walls at 9d. per sq. yd.?

92. There are two rectangular fields of equal area. One is $\frac{1}{3}$ mile long and 990 ft. broad, and the other a square. Find the length of a side of the square.

93. Extract the square root of ·000003330625.

94. A rectangular piece of ground 9 acres 1 r. $16\frac{1}{3}$ per. is $\frac{1}{3}$ as broad as long. What is the distance round it, and from one corner to the opposite?

95. Two trees stand on opposite sides of a stream 10 ft. wide. The height of the tree is to the width of the river as 8 : 4, and the width of the stream is to the height of the other tree as 4 : 5. What is the distance between their tops?

96. Prove by the ordinary method that $2\cdot7\dot{6}=\sqrt{7\cdot6\dot{5}\dot{4}}$.

97. Assuming that $\sqrt{\text{area of circle} \div 3\frac{1}{7}}$ will give the radius, find the radius of a circle containing 17 sq. ft. 16 sq. in.

98. The area of a circle is said to be the square of the radius multiplied by 3·14159. Supposing a circular pond to contain $2\frac{1}{2}$ acres, what is its diameter?

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Fifth Edition. Revised. Globe 8vo. **4s. 6d.**
Examples separately, **3s.** *Answers,* **6d.**

ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS

BY THE

REV. J. B. LOCK, M.A.

SENIOR FELLOW AND BURSAR OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE
FORMERLY MASTER AT ETON

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

The present reprint **January 1899** has been carefully revised (see pp. 164, 180, 318 (i)).

It should be noticed that the 400 **Miscellaneous Examples** are, on the average, more difficult and **require more work** than the Examples for Exercise; they are intended to be used as home exercises for fairly advanced students. Many of them do not 'come out neatly,' and the last hundred are difficult questions in the working of which the Student will find an opportunity of testing his knowledge of the theory of approximation and of practising methods of abbreviation.

The **Mental Exercises** which are scattered throughout the book are intended to accustom the pupil as to the *language* of the subject and should be worked with as little help from the pen as possible.

I would again call attention to the importance of the **notation**, $\frac{£4.\ 7s.\ 6d.}{£3.\ 8s.\ 9d.}$ to express the **ratio** of £4. 7*s.* 6*d.* to £3. 8*s.* 9*d.*; this notation is now thoroughly recognised as Arithmetical and will be found admirably adapted to modern methods of ratio.

It is hoped that the multiplicity of Examples will not tempt teachers to use this book for purposes of practising their pupils in mere *unreasoning* calculation. Arithmetic should be studied from all of the following points of view :

(1) As the means of rapid and accurate calculation.

(2) As the instrument by which those engaged in practical science may work out their results to any required degree of approximation.

(3) As a preliminary part of Mathematics, exercising accurate thought and ingenuity, and demanding sound logical treatment.

I venture to call attention to the **Key and Companion** to this Edition ; in it I have endeavoured to shew the working of the more difficult questions in a manner which may render it useful to Teachers and to Students without being a temptation to indolent Schoolboys.

The **Examples** (nearly 8000 in all) have now been published in a separate volume.

When a star* is prefixed to an article or to a question, it is intended to suggest that what follows is of some exceptional difficulty and may therefore be in some cases omitted on a first reading of the book.

As in the first Edition so in the revised edition I have to express my obligations to the Rev. H. C. Watson, M.A., of Clifton College, for very valuable advice and criticism ; to him the book owes many of its best methods and the removal of many blemishes.

The following points may be noticed :—

I. The **metric system** is introduced directly after English weights and measures, and examples are given which can be worked without any special reference to decimals. See pages 58 to 66.

II. For **advanced pupils** pp. 70, 71, 79, 80, 81, will be found very useful.

III. The **examples on vulgar fractions** are very numerous. It may be pointed out that in the text a number such as 18 is never struck out or "cancelled" (see p. 99) thus ~~1~~8, but thus ~~18~~.

IV. The **notation** (p. 109) for concrete fractions $\frac{£4.\ 10s.}{£2.\ 15s.}$ will be found to be of very great importance. The "dot method" of expressing a ratio

or fraction has practically fallen into disuse, and in many modern Arithmetics the idea of ratio is almost entirely lost sight of. But no student can be considered to have grasped the fundamental principle of arithmetic who does not understand the idea of ratio.

The **Unitary Method** is an admirably simple way of solving problems, and is carefully explained (see pages 193 to 198). But it is also most useful for the purpose of leading up to the fundamental principle of Arithmetic, namely that of ratio. It will be found that the old method taught in Colenso and known as the "dot method," which is the method of ratio, can be easily translated into the unitary method and *vice versâ*. The first is only an abbreviation of the second. See Arithmetic, Chapter X., and particularly pages 198, 200, 204, 205.

V. **Percentage** is taught in a very full and graduated way, p. 217, etc.

VI. **Separate examples** are given for interest for a given number of *days*; see p. 227, and generally, the Chapter on Interest and Discount is very full and complete.

VII. Compare Articles 125A, 181B, 183A.

VIII. Note Example iii., p. 248. This example illustrates the fundamental idea of Arithmetic. Almost every purely arithmetical question is answered by finding the **ratio** which the quantity required bears to some given quantity.

IX. Note Example v. p. 256. A similar remark (viii.) applies here.

X. Examples are given of the different Scales of Temperature; p. 260.

XI. And of the Percentage Composition of Chemical Compounds; p. 262.

XII. The method of teaching **Profit and Loss** is new. See Exercise CXXIIIB, and Examples on pp. 267, 268.

XIII. On p. 304 will be found a very concise explanation of **Horner's Method** applied to each Root, etc.

XIV. **The four hundred Examples**, p. 319, called Miscellaneous Examples, require considerable calculation and are intended as a help in the preparation for the modern style of examination in which some of the questions do *not* come out neatly. While in the Examples for Exercise will be found a thousand examples carefully graduated, most of which are short and neat in the working. The last hundred are problems requiring some little thought and skill.

XV. Perhaps the most important point in the book is the attempt to explain the **Theory of Approximation** in Chapter viii. This, for students of practical science, is of very great importance. See particularly pp. 161 to 165, and 171, 172.

XVI. In connection with Approximation particular attention should be directed to Article 137A, and students should be encouraged to work all practical questions concerning money, in **decimals of £1.** See

Examples ii. to iv. on pp. 172, 173; Example ii. p. 237; Example ii. p. 245; Example iii. p. 248.

XVII. As regards the whole of the higher part of the book, while the methods are all based on the **unitary method**, the Author has endeavoured to lead the student carefully on to the idea of *ratio*. Thus the working of every question may, by the interpolation of the step called **reduction to unity**, be translated into the Unitary Method; as is seen in the Examples on Discount, Profit and Loss, and Stocks.

XVIII. As regards the early part of the book, the method of **Complementary Addition** will, it is hoped, some day be generally adopted in the elementary teaching in England, as it is on the Continent; so that the Italian method of division will replace the comparatively clumsy English method. See Articles 20, 23, 31, 36.

XIX. The **method of multiplication** by which the digits of the highest denomination in the multiplier are treated first, is well worth the consideration of Teachers. It is clearly the most scientific method, and it leads up to the idea of Approximation. It is, however, perhaps doubtful how far students who are familiar with the old method should be made to change either their method of division or of multiplication, and it is not insisted on in the book.

The "Arithmetic for Schools" is in use in the following Schools and Colleges:—Eton; Westminster; Clifton; Tonbridge School; Shrewsbury; Brighton College; Highgate School; Leys School, Cambridge; Fettes College, Edinburgh.

At the following Training Colleges:—Brighton; Glasgow, Church of Scotland; Bangor; Battersea; Wandsworth; Chelsea; Stockwell.

At the following Colleges and High Schools for Girls:—Clapham Common, Clarence House; Carlisle; West Dulwich; Manchester; Truro; Durham; Richmond, Surrey; Aberdeen; Carshalton; Cheltenham: Ladies' College, and Public School.

The "Arithmetic for Schools" is also in use at the following Schools:—Aberdeen, Gordon's College; Alton, Grammar School; Atherstone, Grammar School; Aspatria, Agricultural College; Arbroath, High School; Basingstoke, Queen's School; Bath: Competitive College, and Kingswood School; Bedale, Grammar School; Bedford, Modern School; Birkenhead, The School; Birmingham: Five Ways, Aston, Blue Coat School, Oratory School, and Girls' School, Camp Hill; Bishop Auckland, Grammar School; Bishop Stortford, Grammar School; Bridgnorth, Grammar School, Burnley: Grammar School, and Mechanics' Institute; Burton, Grammar School; Campbeltown, The Academy; Carmarthen, Presbyterian College; Chelmsford; Grammar School; Cheltenham: Grammar School, and Dean Close School; Chester: Modern School, Higher Grade Board School, and Arnold House; The College, Cheshunt; Chigwell, Grammar School; Clifton: Redland Hill House, and Shottery House School; Clitheroe, Grammar School; Colwyn Bay, Pen-y-

rhòs College; Crewe, The Academy; Dawlish, West Cliff House School; Deal, The College; Dedham, Grammar School; Derby, Spondon House School; Devonport, H.M.S. *Lion*; Dublin: Blackrock College, and Alexandra College; Dunfermline, High School; Easingwold, Grammar School; Eastbourne, Southdown College; Eccles, Modern School; Edinburgh: The Academy, and Cargilfield School; Elgin, The Academy; Elmham, Norfolk County School; Ely, King's School; Epsom, The College; Falkirk, High School; Fochabers, Milne's Institution; Forfar, The Academy; Framlingham, The College; Gateshead, Gateshead School; Glasgow: Technical College, Allen Glen's School, Newton Terrace School, Girls' Grammar School, and The Academy; Glenalmond, Trinity College; Gosport, Collegiate School; Grange-over-Sands, Preparatory School; Gravesend, Proprietary School, Greenock, Kilblain Academy; Grimsby, St. James's College; Hastings: University School, and Hurst Court; Helensburgh, Larchfield Academy; Hereford, Cathedral School; Heversham, Grammar School; Horsham, Grammar School; Huddersfield, Technical School; Hurstpierpoint, St. John's College; Ilminster, Grammar School; Ipswich, Middle School for Boys; Kenley, Beaumont School; Kidderminster, Grammar School; Kingston: Elmhurst School, and Tiffin's Boys' School; Lancaster, Grammar School; Leeds: Central Higher Grade School, and Woodhouse Grove School; Leicester, Wyggeston Boys' School; Lincoln, Northgate School; Liverpool: Waterloo High School, Warbreck College, Parkfield School, and Sandholm, Waterloo; Londonderry, Foyle College; Lurgan, The College; London: City Central Foundation School, E.C., London Institution, E.C., School for Sons of Missionaries, Blackheath, St. Dunstan's College, Catford, Aske's School, Hatcham, Wilson's Grammar School, Camberwell, Roan Girls' School, Greenwich, Alleyne's School, Dulwich, United Westminster School, Victoria Street, S.W., Tooting College, S.W., Haberdashers' School, Hoxton, N., High School, Willesden, N.W., Technical School, Peckam, S.E., Penywern House College, Earl's Court, S.W., Polytechnic Middle School, Regent Street, W., and Polytechnic Institution, Regent Street, W.; Malvern (Great), Greville House School; Marlborough, Grammar School; Monmouth, Grammar School; Montrose, Technical College; Newcastle-on-Tyne, Rutherford College; Newcastle (Staff.), High School; Nottingham, Baptist College; Oxford: High School, St. Kenelm's College, and School House, Crick Road; Perth: The Academy, and Sharp's Institution; Plymouth, Mannamead School; Probus, Grammar School; Portsmouth, Buckingham Place Academy; Ramsgate, St. Augustine's College; Red Hill, Royal St. Anne's School; Retford (East), Grammar School; Rottingdean, The School; Ruabon, Grammar School; Saltburn, Collegiate School; Sedbergh, Grammar School; Sheffield, Central Higher Grade School; Shildon, Friend's British School; Silcoates, Northern Congregational School; St. Andrews, St. Leonard's School; St. Asaph, Grammar School; St. Bees, Grammar School; St. Kitt's, B.W.I., Grammar School; St. Leonards: Maze Hill School, and Winchester House School; Sandwich, Grammar School; Storrington, The Forge School; Sunderland, The Hall School; Swansea, St. Andrew's College; Taunton, The Huish School; Tipperary, Christian School; Torquay, Torbay College; Twickenham, King's College; Warwick, King's School; Waterford, Ursuline Convent School; Watford, London Orphan Asylum; Weybridge, St. George's College; Windsor, St. Mark's School; Winchester, Wellington House School; Woodford, Bancroft School; Yarm-on-Tees, Grammar School; Yarmouth, Grammar School.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price, with Answers, Green Cloth, 4s. 6d.

Without Answers, Maroon Cloth, 4s. 6d.

[*Examples separately, 3s. Answers, 6d.*]

AN ARITHMETIC

FOR SCHOOLS

BY

S. L. LONEY, M.A.

SOMETIME FELLOW OF SIDNEY SUSSEX COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

369

CONTENTS

CHAP.

I. Definitions; Notation and Numeration.

II. The Four Fundamental Rules; Miscellaneous Examples on the Four Simple Rules.

III. Compound Quantities; Money; Miscellaneous Examples on Money.

IV. Compound Quantities; Weights and Measures; Miscellaneous Examples on Weights and Measures.

V. Measures and Multiples of Numbers.

VI. Greatest Common Measure and Least Common Multiple; Miscellaneous Examples on G.C.M. and L.C.M.

VII. Vulgar Fractions; Miscellaneous Examples on Vulgar Fractions.

VIII. Decimal Fractions; Miscellaneous Examples on Decimal Fractions.

IX. Abbreviations and Approximations—Italian Method of Division; Contracted Multiplication of Decimals; Contracted Division of Decimals; Decimalization of Money.

X. Practice; Invoices.

XI. Square and Cubic Measure; Carpeting of Rooms and Papering of Walls.

XII. The Unitary Method; Chain Rule.

XIII. Ratio and Proportion; Miscellaneous Examples on Proportion.

XIV. Proportionate Division.

XV. Percentages; Miscellaneous Examples on Percentages.

XVI. Profit and Loss; Miscellaneous Examples on Profit and Loss.

XVII. Partnerships.

XVIII. Bankruptcies, Taxes, etc.

XIX. Simple Interest; Miscellaneous Examples on Simple Interest.

XX. Compound Interest; Miscellaneous Examples on Compound Interest.

XXI. Present Value and Discount.

XXII. Stocks and Shares; Miscellaneous Examples on Stocks.

CHAP.
XXIII. Square Root; Miscellaneous Examples on Square Root.
XXIV. Cube Root; Miscellaneous Examples on Cube Root.
XXV. Some Miscellaneous Problems and Methods—Averages; Mixtures and Alloys; Work Problems; Clock Problems; Velocity Problems; Stream and Race Problems; Thermometers; Areas of Circles, etc.; Duodecimals.
XXVI. The Metric System; Decimal Coinage.
XXVII. Foreign Moneys; Foreign Exchanges.

Appendix—Note A. The Roman System of Numeration; B. On Money; C. On Time and the Calendar; D. On Measures of Length; E. On Measures of Weight; F. On Measures of Capacity; G. On Casting out the Nines; H. On Recurring Decimals; K. On the Third, Tenth and Tenth Rule; L. On Bills of Exchange; M. On Paper Currency.

Answers to the Examples.

PRESS OPINIONS

Guardian.—"Mr. Loney is so well known now as a most successful writer that it is almost sufficient notice to say that he has brought out an *Arithmetic* for use in public schools, and that his last production is quite as good as the others. . . . Its cheapness, good binding, and excellent typography make one inclined to say that Mr. Loney has said the last word on the subject—at any rate for many years to come."

Nature.—"A comprehensive text-book, clearly written and well arranged. . . . The examples are numerous, sensibly chosen, and carefully graduated. . . Deserves to rank with the best of its class."

English Mechanic.—"An excellent text-book."

Scotsman.—"An admirable book of its kind."

Educational Times.—"A clear and well-illustrated account of abstract and concrete arithmetic in its higher applications."

Teachers' Aid.—"In this book everything generally given under the head of arithmetic is included, and in some of the chapters, such as stocks and foreign exchanges, some trouble has been taken by the author to furnish the student with an elementary knowledge of those subjects. Many of the more typical and difficult questions are worked out, and appended to most of the more im-

portant chapters there is a set of miscellaneous examples ; which will be found of great value to students. The answers are placed at the end of the book, which appears to have been compiled with great care, and is well adapted for the purpose the author had in view."

School Guardian.—"Many excellent text-books of arithmetic have been published of late years, and not a few of really high merit, altogether surpassing and (we trust) supplanting their indifferent predecessors of thirty or forty years ago. Yet we think that Mr. Loney's volume altogether justifies its existence by the various points in which it either equals or excels its rivals. Whether this be so or not, it seems to us an admirable and praiseworthy compilation that may be safely commended to the notice of teachers who are on the look-out for a new text-book for the use of their pupils. The exercises are abundant and well graduated, what may be called the more important classes of problems are dealt with in separate chapters, and there are some capital Appendices on such subjects as Roman Numeration, Money, the Calendar, and others akin to these."

Practical Teacher.—"An excellent book for school use. . . . The examples given are well graded and well arranged. . . . The book is a thoroughly good one which we can heartily recommend."

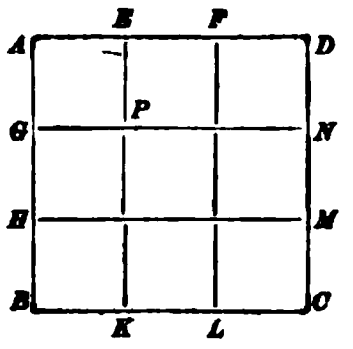
Schoolmistress.—"The author has endeavoured to state very clearly the principles and methods of arithmetical calculations, and has succeeded in his endeavour. There is much useful matter towards the end of the book that will prove valuable to those attending higher class schools. We have verified a goodly number of the exercises, and have found the answers given correct. This is a carefully-compiled, complete, and up-to-date school arithmetic."

School Board Chronicle.—"The book before us justifies its title, and will prove as useful to the teacher as to the scholar. Not only are the mental processes for each operation set out for the scholar to follow, but the proofs of rules are simple enough to be readily intelligible to the mind of the ordinary schoolboy, and consequently are such as might be adopted by any teacher, and will certainly be of use to those preparing for teachers' examinations, where such simple explanations are required. The four fundamental rules are thoroughly considered—thirty-two pages being devoted to them. The book contains everything usually given under the head of arithmetic. Every portion receives adequate treatment, and this of such a character as makes it possible to read and follow it with a minimum of effort. In some chapters, as those on Stocks and Foreign Exchanges, the author has been at some pains to impart an elementary knowledge of those subjects, such as is necessary if a scholar is to intelligently tackle the problems set for his solution. That is an excellent way of presenting calculations of this nature. In a severely abstract form they are often repugnant to the same lad who will pursue them with intelligence and pleasure when he perceives them in their practical application, to those actual transactions of business life of which he is usually more or less vaguely aware. The examples set at the end of each chapter are very numerous and comprehensive, embracing every form of problem usually met with in schools. In an Appendix at the end of the book will be found some useful information, especially concerning Money, Roman Numeration, the Calendar, Weights and Measures, and Recurring Decimals. It would be difficult to suggest what could usefully have been embodied in an Arithmetic for Schools more than is provided within these 450 pages."

MEASURES OF SURFACE.

122. A square is a four-sided figure all of whose sides are equal, and such that each side is at right angles to the two adjacent sides.

Thus the annexed figure is a square in which the four sides AB, BC, CD, and DA are all equal, and the angles A, B, C, and D are all right angles.



A square yard is a square such that each of its sides is one yard in length.

Similarly a square foot, inch, etc., is a square whose side is a foot, inch, etc., in length.

Let $ABCD$ be a square yard, so that $AB = AD = 1$ yard.

Take E, F, G, H, K, L, M, and N points in the sides, such that $AE = EF = FD = 1$ foot, $AG = GH = HB = 1$ foot,

$BK = KL = LC = 1$ foot, and $CM = MN = ND = 1$ foot.

Join these points as in the figure by straight lines; we thus get nine equal figures such as $AGPE$. Since $AG = GP = PE = EA = 1$ foot, the figure $AGPE$ is a square foot.

Thus the figure $ABCD$ is equal to 9 square feet, that is, a square yard is equal to 9 square feet.

Similarly, if we took a square foot and divided each side into 12 parts and drew straight lines as above, we should see that a square foot is equal to 12×12, that is, 144 square inches.

123. The following is the ordinary table of

SQUARE MEASURE.

144 Square Inches (Sq. Ins.)	**make**	**1 Square Foot** (Sq. Ft.).
9 Square Feet	„	**1 Square Yard** (Sq. Yd.).
30¼ Square Yards	„	**1 Square Pole** (Sq. Po.).
40 Square Poles	„	**1 Rood** (R.).
4 Roods	„	**1 Acre** (Ac.).
640 Acres	„	**1 Square Mile** (Sq. Mi.).

In addition, since 1 chain = 22 yards,

we have 1 square chain = 22×22 sq. yards = 484 sq. yards.

But 1 acre = 4 roods = 160 sq. poles

= $160 \times 30\frac{1}{4}$ sq. yards = 4840 sq. yards = 10 sq. chains.

Hence we have 10000 sq. links = 1 sq. chain,

and 10 sq. chains = 1 acre.

6384 seven times. Remembering that the figures cut off, when multiplied by 7, would have caused a "carried" figure 3, we set down 6016 instead of 6013.

The remainder is now 368.

Cutting off the 9 of the divisor and altering the 5 into a 6 (because 59 is nearer to 60 than 50), we have 86 as the final divisor. Also 86 divides into 368 four times. The whole process may be written as in the margin.

```
85|9|4|3|2 ) 6489350 ( ·755074
             6016024
             ------
              4733260
              4297160
              -------
               436100
               429716
               ------
                 6384
                 6016
                 ----
                  368
                  344
                  ---
                   24
```

251. We see that in the previous work we should arrange so that the last curtailed divisor should consist of two digits (such as the 86). We should therefore commence the curtailing of the divisor at that stage of the work *where the number of figures still to be found in the quotient is just two less than the number of the digits in the divisor.*

For, since we cut off one digit from the divisor for each further place found in the quotient, it is clear that if we begin the curtailing at the stage given by the above rule we shall always have two figures left in the divisor at the last division.

Ex. 1. *Find the value, to four places of decimals, of*

$$3749{\cdot}62357 \div 97{\cdot}43725164.$$

Since 97 divides into 3749 between 30 and 40 times there will be two places of whole numbers in the quotient. Hence we have to find the first six figures of the quotient, and we know that the decimal point comes after the first two of these figures.

Moving the decimal point eight places to the right in each, we have

9743725164) 374962357000 (

Since we only have to find six figures in the quotient, we need only commence with the first eight (6 + 2) figures of the divisor. We therefore cast out the right-hand pair of digits in both the preceding divisor and dividend.

```
97|4|3|7|2|5|1 ) 3749623570 ( 38·4824
                  29231175
                  --------
                   8265060
                   7794980
                   -------
                    470080
                    389749
                    ------
                     80331
                     77950
                     -----
                      2381
                      1949
                      ----
                       432
                       390
                       ---
                        42
```

Ans. = 38·4824.

37. Find the expense of turfing a piece of ground which is 40 yards long and 100 feet wide, with turfs, each a yard long and a foot wide, their cost being 6*s.* 9*d.* a hundred.

38. How much turf will be required to cover a rectangular plot of ground which consists of a lawn-tennis court (26 yards by 12) and a margin of $3\frac{1}{2}$ yards at each end and 4 feet at each side? Find also the cost at 4*s.* 6*d.* per square pole.

39. The floor of a room 17 ft. 6 in. long by 16 ft. 3 in. wide is to be covered with tiles at £2. 5*s.* per thousand, the size of a tile being 3 inches by 5 inches; what is the cost of the tiles?

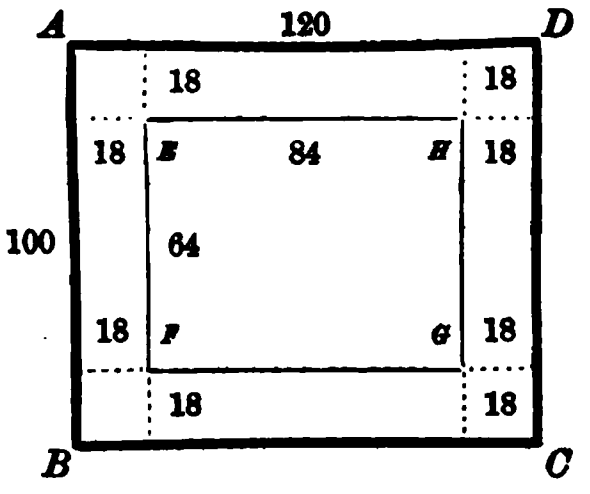
40. How many tiles, $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches by 6 inches, will be required to cover a floor 18 feet long by 13 ft. 6 in. broad, and what is their cost at 3*s.* 4*d.* per dozen?

41. It is found that 1296 bricks (the exposed surface of each brick measuring $9\frac{1}{2}$ inches by $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches) have been employed in paving a certain court-yard; how many tiles, each 9 inches square, will be required for a pavement one-ninth of the size?

42. *A rectangular court-yard is* 120 *feet long, and* 100 *feet wide; around the court-yard is a gravel path,* 18 *feet wide, and the rest of the court is a grass plot: find the area of the grass plot, and also that of the gravelled portion.*

Let $ABCD$ be the courtyard, and $EFGH$ the boundary of the grass plot.

Then EF is less than AB by twice the width of the gravel, that is, by twice 18 feet.



$\therefore$ $EF = AB - 2 \times 18 = 100 - 36 = 64$ ft.

So $EH = 120 - 2 \times 18 = 120 - 36 = 84$ ft.

The area of the grass plot therefore

$= 84 \times 64$ sq. ft. $= 5376$ sq. ft.

The area of the whole courtyard

$= 120 \times 100$ sq. ft. $= 12{,}000$ sq. ft.

Hence the area of the gravelled portion $= 12{,}000 - 5376 = 6624$ sq. ft.

43. What will it cost to make a gravel walk 7 feet wide along the inner edge of each side of a square field, whose side is 110 yards long, at 1*s.* 6*d.* per sq. yard?

44. Find the expense of paving a pathway 6 feet wide round and immediately outside a lawn, 21 yards long and 10 yards broad, at $9\frac{1}{2}d.$ per sq. yard.

45. A rectangular court is 120 feet long and 90 broad, and a path of the uniform width of 10 feet runs round it and inside it; find the cost of covering the path with flagstones at 4*s.* 6*d.* per sq. yard, and the remainder with turf at 3*s.* 3*d.* per 100 sq. feet.

274. Carpeting of Rooms. Most carpets are made in one long continuous piece, and when a carpet of given size has to be made for a room, a sufficient length has to be cut off from the roll of carpet. In some cases it is necessary to find

Line (3) is $\frac{1}{400}$ of line (1), and is obtained by dividing line (1) by 4, and setting down the result two decimal places to the right.

Similarly for the rest of the work.

Since we only require four decimal places in the answer, all the figures to the right of the vertical line might have been omitted.

Ex. 2. *Find the amount of* £567. 11*s.* 7*d. in* 3 *years at* $3\frac{13}{16}$ *per cent. per annum.*

By Art. 258, £567. 11*s.* 7*d.* = £567·57916̇.

Also $3\frac{13}{16} = 3 + \frac{8+4+1}{16} = 3 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{16}$

$$\therefore\ 1 + \frac{3\frac{13}{16}}{100} = 1 + \frac{3}{100} + \frac{1}{200} + \frac{1}{400} + \frac{1}{1600}$$

$$= 1 + \frac{3}{100} + \frac{1}{200} + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{200}\right) + \frac{1}{4} \times \left(\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{200}\right).$$

$$3\frac{13}{16}\,\% \begin{cases} 3\,\% = \cdot 03 \\ \frac{1}{2}\,\% = \frac{1}{6} \text{ of } 3\,\% \\ \frac{1}{4}\,\% = \frac{1}{2} \text{ of } \frac{1}{2}\,\% \\ \frac{1}{16}\,\% = \frac{1}{4} \text{ of } \frac{1}{4}\,\% \end{cases}$$

£		
567·5791	6...	.....(1)
17·0273	748	.....(2)
2·8378	958	.....(3)
1·4189	479	.....(4)
·3547	369	.....(5)
589·2181		
17·6765	43	
2·9460	9	
1·4730	45	
·3682	6	
611·6820		
18·3504	60	
3·0584	1	
1·5292	0	
·3823		
635·0024		
20		
·0480		
12		
·576		

Ans. = £635. 0*s.* $0\frac{3}{4}$*d.*

Line (2) is $\frac{3}{100}$ of line (1), and is obtained by multiplying it by 3 and setting down the result two places to the right.

Line (3) is $\frac{1}{200}$ of line (1), and is obtained by dividing it by 2 and setting down the work two places to the right. [It may also be obtained by dividing line (2) by 6.]

Line (4) is $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{200}$ of line (1); that is, $\frac{1}{2}$ of line (3), and is obtained by dividing line (3) by 2.

Similarly line (5) is $\frac{1}{4} \times \left(\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{200}\right)$ of line (1), and is thus $\frac{1}{4}$ of line (4).

Similarly the rest of the work follows. It is clear that, as before, the figures to the right of the vertical line are unnecessary.

353. If the interest be supposed to be added on to the principal half-yearly, the amount in a given number of years is the same as in twice that number of years at half the given rate per cent. Thus the amount of £100 in 4 years at 5 % per annum, payable half-yearly, is the same as that of £100 in 8 years at $2\frac{1}{2}$ % per annum, and is therefore obtained by multiplying £100 by 1·025 eight times in succession.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

it is said to be **'at a premium."** When the selling price is less than 100, that is, when the Stock would sell for less than was originally subscribed, it is said to be **"at a discount."** When the price is exactly 100 the Stock is said to be **"at par."**

Thus in the examples of Art. 370, London and North-Western Railway Stock is "at a premium of 108 per cent."

Great Eastern Stock is at "a premium of 21 (that is, 121 – 100) per cent.," and London, Chatham and Dover Railway Stock is "at a discount of 79 (that is 100 – 21) per cent."

374. Any quantity of Stock, excluding fractions of a penny, can be bought or sold. Thus we could buy "£137. 6*s.* 7*d.* of London and N.-W. Stock." This expression means *not* "that which costs in cash £137. 6*s.* 7*d.*," *but* "that for which £137. 6*s.* 7*d.* was originally subscribed."

375. The expression "£100 of Stock" thus means that quantity of Stock of which the *nominal* value is £100, that is, that quantity of the Stock which originally cost £100. It does not mean that quantity of Stock which would sell for £100. This point must be carefully noted by the student. *Its neglect is the cause of most of the difficulties found in questions on Stocks.*

376. Sometimes the capital of a company is not spoken of as so much Stock, but it is instead divided into shares, each of some given value. Thus the capital of a company may consist of 200,000 shares, each of £10. In this case only a whole number of shares can be bought or sold.

377. There is another kind of Stock besides the Stocks which form the capital of commercial companies, that is, of companies formed for the object of making profits.

Almost all Governments (and also many cities and towns) have borrowed money. These Governments have often applied these monies in paying for the execution of works of public utility. Still more often, unfortunately, the money has been borrowed for the purpose of carrying on wars, or paying the expenses of wars. Thus, for some reason or other, almost every Government has a Public Debt on which it pays Interest.

In some cases the Governments have fixed a time, or times, at which its debt should be repaid or redeemed; in many cases, however, there is no such time fixed.

378. British Public Debt. Consols. The main portion of the British Public Debt consists (1897) of a sum of

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

16. *A* and *B* run a race; *A* starts at the rate of 400 yards a minute, and at the end of each minute diminishes his pace by 20 yards a minute. *B* increases his pace at the same rate, and catches *A* at the end of six minutes; at what pace did *B* start?

17. *A* and *B* run a race. *A* starts at the rate of 400 yards a minute, but in each successive minute increases his pace by a yard per minute; *B* diminishes his pace at the same rate, and is overtaken by *A* in 4 minutes; what was *B*'s pace at first?

18. In a bicycle race of 5 miles *A* gives *B* 400 yards and *C* 750 yards start. If their respective speeds be uniform, and as 25 : 24 : 23, in what order will they reach the goal?

19. *A gives B 49 yards start in a race of one mile, and is beaten by 20 yards; how many yards ought A to have given B?*

Since *A* is beaten by 20 yards the distance he has run

$$= 1760 \text{ yards} - 20 \text{ yards} = 1740 \text{ yards}.$$

Now the distance *B* has run = 1760 yards − 49 yards = 1711 yards.

$\therefore$ *A* runs 1740 yards whilst *B* runs 1711 yards;

$\therefore$,, 1 yard ,, $\frac{1711}{1740}$ $\left(=\frac{59}{60}\right)$ yard;

$\therefore$,, 1760 yards ,, $\frac{59}{60} \times 1760$, that is, $1730\frac{2}{3}$ yards.

Hence the start that *A* can give $B = \left(1760 - 1730\frac{2}{3}\right) = 29\frac{1}{3}$ yards.

20. *A gives B 4 yards start in a race of 100 yards and is beaten by 1 yard; he gives C a start of 7 yards in a race of the same distance and wins by 1 yard: how much start could B give C in a race of 800 yards in order to just make a dead heat, the rates of running in each case being supposed to be always the same?*

In the first race *B* runs a distance of 100 − 4, that is, 96 yards.

A being beaten only runs 99 yards in the same time;

$\therefore$ *A* runs 99 yards whilst *B* runs 96 yards;

$\therefore$,, 1 yard ,, $\frac{96}{99}$, that is, $\frac{32}{33}$ yard. .....(1)

In the second race *C* has only 93 yards to run, and he is beaten by 1 yard, so that he runs 92 yards only;

$\therefore$ *A* runs 100 yards whilst *C* runs 92 yards;

$\therefore$,, 1 yard ,, $\frac{92}{100}$, that is, $\frac{23}{25}$ yard. .....(2)

From (1) and (2) we see that

B runs $\frac{32}{33}$ yard whilst *C* runs $\frac{23}{25}$ yard;

$\therefore$,, 1 yard ,, $\frac{23}{25} \times \frac{33}{32}$, that is, $\frac{759}{800}$ yard;

$\therefore$ *B* runs 800 yards whilst *C* runs 759 yards;

$\therefore$ the start that *B* could give to *C* = 800 − 759 = 41 yards.

21. *A* can give *B* 5 yards and *C* 6 yards in a 100 yards' race; if *B* give *C* one yard start in a 100 yards' race, which would win?

22. At a game of billiards *A* can give *B* 10 points in a game of 100, and he can give *C* 15 points in the same number; how many points can *B* give *C* in a game of 200?

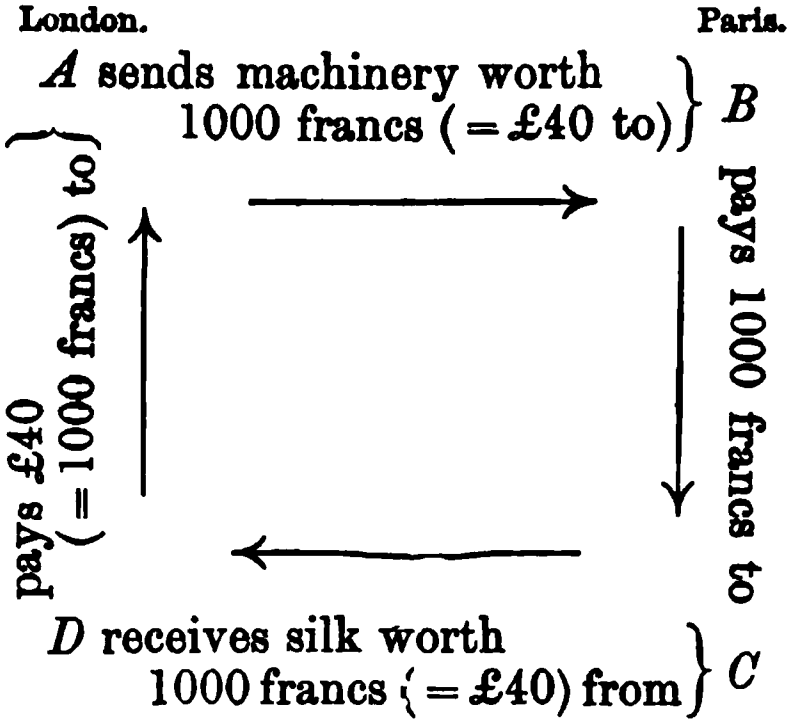
23. At a game of billiards *A* can give *B* 15 points in 50, and he can give *C* 32 in 80; how many can *B* give *C* in a game of 70?

461. Foreign Exchanges. Suppose that an English merchant, *A*, sells machinery to a Frenchman, *B*, in Paris, for which he charges the latter 1000 francs. One way of settling the debt would be for *B* to send *A* 1000 francs. But this method of settling the debt would be inconvenient, both because of the expense of actually sending cash, and also because the amount of coin required in the course of trade would be considerably greater than the amount which is actually in existence.

Suppose, now, that a second Frenchman, *C*, sells to a second Englishman, *D*, silk for which he charges *D* £40 (=1000 francs).

If, then, *D* were to pay 1000 francs (or its equivalent in English money, say £40) to *A*, and *B* were to pay 1000 francs to *C*, the two transactions would be completed, and each of the four persons, *A*, *B*, *C*, and *D*, would have that to which he is entitled.

The transaction would then stand as follows:



The two sales would then have been completed without any transference of money across the Channel.

462. In actual practice it would be inconvenient, and perhaps impossible, for *B* to find a person, *C*, who required *from* London exactly the same sum of money which *B* owed *to* London. This inconvenience would be overcome if the business were performed through a banking house that has branches both in London and in Paris.

In the above case *A* would draw a bill on *B* for 1000 francs (=£40, say), and *B* would accept it.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.* *Key.* *Crown 8vo.* 10*s.* 6*d.*

ARITHMETIC

IN

THEORY AND PRACTICE

BY

J. BROOKSMITH, M.A., LL.B.

B give
28. At a
give *C* 32 in 80;

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

380
37

FROM THE PREFACE TO THE SIXTH EDITION

"In the following pages I have endeavoured to reason out in a clear and accurate manner the leading propositions of the science of Arithmetic, and to illustrate and apply those propositions in practice. In the practical part of the subject I have advanced somewhat beyond the majority of preceding writers; particularly in Division, in Greatest Common Measure, in Cube Root, in the chapters on Decimal Money and the Metric System, and more especially in the application of Decimals to Percentages and cognate subjects. So long as the mania for *neat* answers continues to exist, so long will Decimals fail to take their legitimate place in the class-room, and be relegated to the office and the counting-house. The chapter on Weights and Measures and the Metric System is longer than usual, but not I hope uninteresting. In the earlier part of the work I have used the method of Reduction to the Unit, but I am far from advising an exclusive adherence to that method; when the student has gained a clear and firm grasp of ratio, it would be unwise of him to neglect the powerful instrument that has come into his possession."

PRESS OPINIONS

School Board Chronicle—"We most heartily welcome every good book expounding the theory of arithmetic, and Mr. Brooksmith's is one of the best of them. The master of the arithmetic class and the clever boy trying to excel in study will hail it as a friend."

Scotsman—"*Arithmetic in Theory and Practice* will 'make a good arithmetician of whoever has brains and perseverance enough to get through it. A clever young man who wishes to go thoroughly into the theory and practice of arithmetic, and has no prospect of studying algebra, could not get a better book."

Literary Churchman—"This strikes us as a valuable manual of arithmetic of the modern, *i.e.* scientific kind. Indeed, *pace* the many other writers of excellent school books, this really appears to us the best we have seen."

British Quarterly Review—"This is an essentially practical book, leading the student forward to commercial book-keeping, land mensuration, and percentages, and providing very definite help to candidates for almost every kind of competitive examination."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

hence (108) we have this Rule,—*Divide in the usual way, and to the integral quotient add the fraction whose numerator is the remainder, and denominator the divisor.*

COR. Since $29 \div 8 = \frac{29}{8}$ we shall use either notation indifferently.

Ex. 1. Divide 868 by 37.

$$\begin{array}{r|l} 37 & 868\,(\,23 \\ & 128 \\ & 17 \end{array}$$

therefore $868 \div 37 = 23\frac{17}{37}$.

134. *To divide any number by a fraction.*

For example divide $\frac{3}{4}$ by $\frac{5}{7}$. Here we have to find a quotient which when multiplied by $\frac{5}{7}$ shall give the product $\frac{3}{4}$; hence (128)

$\frac{5}{7}$ of this quotient is equal to $\frac{3}{4}$;

therefore $\frac{1}{7}$ ..... $\frac{3}{4} \div 5$ or to $\frac{3}{4 \times 5}$,

and therefore this quotient..... $\frac{3}{4 \times 5} \times 7$ or to $\frac{3 \times 7}{4 \times 5}$;

but $\frac{3 \times 7}{4 \times 5} = \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{7}{5}$; (127)

therefore $\frac{3}{4} \div \frac{5}{7} = \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{7}{5}$.

Or we may proceed thus:

quotient $\times \frac{5}{7} = \frac{3}{4}$ by definition;

multiply each term of this equality by $\frac{7}{5}$,

therefore quotient $\times \frac{5}{7} \times \frac{7}{5} = \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{7}{5}$,

or $\frac{5}{7} \times \frac{7}{5} \times$ quotient $= \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{7}{5}$, (130)

that is quotient $= \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{7}{5}$;

the same result as before; that is, to divide a number by $\frac{5}{7}$ we multiply the number by $\frac{7}{5}$; but $\frac{7}{5}$ is the *reciprocal* of $\frac{5}{7}$; hence to divide a number by a fraction we have this Rule :—

Multiply the number by the reciprocal of the Divisor.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Ex. 3. If 16 cannon firing 4 rounds in 7 minutes kill 270 men in an hour and a half, how many cannon firing 8 rounds in 9 minutes will kill 420 men in 40 minutes?

cannon.	rounds.	min.	men.	hours.
16	4	7	270	$1\frac{1}{2}$
cannon reqd.	8	9	420	$\frac{2}{3}$

If the number of rounds be *increased*, the number of cannon will be *decreased*—proportion inverse.

If the interval between each round be *increased*, the number of cannon will be *increased*—proportion direct.

If the number of men to be killed be *increased*, the number of cannon will be *increased*—proportion direct.

If the time during which the cannon fire be *increased*, the number of cannon will be *decreased*.

Therefore stating as directed in the last example, we have

$$\left.\begin{array}{rcl} 8 & : & 4 \\ 7 & : & 9 \\ 270 & : & 420 \\ \frac{2}{3} & : & \frac{3}{2} \end{array}\right\} = 16 \text{ cannon : cannon required;}$$

$$\therefore \text{ cannon required} = 16 \times \frac{4 \times 9 \times 420 \times \frac{3}{2}}{8 \times 7 \times 270 \times \frac{2}{3}}$$

$$= 36.$$

Ex. 4. A garrison of 4500 men is supplied with provisions for 15 weeks at the rate of 13 oz. per day per man: how many men must leave that the same provisions may supply those that remain 27 weeks at 10 oz. per day per man?

Here we must find how many men the provisions will supply on the second hypothesis.

men.	weeks.	oz.
4500	15	13
men required	27	10

If the number of weeks be *increased*, the number of men must be *decreased*—proportion inverse.

If the number of ounces per day be *increased*, the number of men must be *decreased*—proportion inverse:—hence

$$\left.\begin{array}{rcl} 27 & : & 15 \\ 10 & : & 13 \end{array}\right\} = 4500 \text{ men : men required;}$$

$$\therefore \text{ men required} = 4500 \times \frac{15 \times 13}{27 \times 10} = 3250;$$

$$\therefore \text{ no. of men that must leave} = 4500 - 3250 = 1250.$$

Application for Specimen Copies will be considered

Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

Arithmetic for Schools

BY

BARNARD SMITH, M.A.

NEW EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

BY

W. H. H. HUDSON, M.A.
PROFESSOR OF MATHEMATICS IN KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
384

PREFACE

"In revising the text of this work care has been taken to give the reason before the rule, in the belief that this simple transposition will increase its educational usefulness. No rule has been omitted. Additions have been made, especially under the heads of Notation, Subtraction, Division, Greatest Common Measure, Approximations, Ratio, Percentage, and Surds. The simplified explanation of Subtraction, with the wording recommended by De Morgan, not only greatly facilitates the process of Subtraction, but is an essential step to the new Division. It is quite as easily learnt by a beginner as any other method, though habit may throw a difficulty in the way of its adoption by those who are not beginners. Teachers are strongly recommended to overcome this difficulty for the sake of their pupils.

"The Tables of Weights and Measures have been brought into accordance with the Act of Parliament which legalised the Metric System. Examples have been given on the connection between the Metric and British Units and on the Electrical Units, on account of their growing commercial importance. The section on Surds will, it is hoped, be found useful as an introduction to algebraical ideas without algebraical symbols. Some of the examples worked out in the book have been simplified, additional steps have been inserted, and additional examples exhibiting varieties of method have been introduced. To the already numerous collection of questions, about 1200 exercises and problems, partly original but largely collected from examination papers, have been added. It is by no means necessary for a learner to work all the examples under each head before proceeding; some may advantageously be left for a revision course. Some of the examples are for mental work, but among the problems are included several of appreciable difficulty.

"To facilitate the use of this edition concurrently with older ones, the numbers of the articles and of the old examples remain unaltered, new articles are distinguished by asterisks, new sets of examples include the word 'Additional' in their headings and are numbered in Arabic figures. Any one happening to meet with errors either in the text or in the examples who will kindly communicate them to the Publishers will confer an obligation upon the Editor."

The Select Committee appointed to enquire whether any, and if any, what, changes in the present system of weights and measures should be adopted, has recommended:—"That the metrical system of weights and measures be at once legalised for all purposes. That after a lapse of two years the metrical system be rendered compulsory by Act of Parliament, and that the metrical system of weights and measures be taught in all elementary public schools as a necessary and integral part of Arithmetic."

Barnard Smith and Hudson's Arithmetic contains a full account of the Metric System.

This Arithmetic contains also exercises on the new physical and electrical units.

PRESS OPINIONS

Schoolmaster—"The present issue of this well-established standard work will be found to enhance the solid reputation it has as one of the finest manuals of arithmetic yet produced."

Glasgow Herald—"This revised edition should make the book more valuable than ever as a standard work on elementary arithmetic."

Scotsman—"The work, already recognised as one of the best general text-books of its subject, is in this improved form sure to be more extensively put in use in schools."

Ex. 2. $5{\cdot}34 \times {\cdot}0021$.

Consider $5 \times {\cdot}002$, it is ·01, therefore the answer to the complete multiplication must be about ·01. It is ·011214.

Ex. 3. $41{\cdot}34 \times 24{\cdot}41$.

Here $40 \times 20 = 800$, this shows that the answer to the multiplication cannot be about 100 nor 10091, hence it must be 1009·1094. Or the position of the decimal point may be kept in sight by writing the units figure of the multiplier under the lowest digit of the multiplicand, and beginning to write each partial product under its multiplier, writing the decimal point where it occurs in multiplying by the units' digit, as this does not change its position; the decimal points will then be in a vertical line: this is an easy practical method.

41·34
24·41
·4134
16·536
165·36
826·8
1009·1094

Superfluous cyphers to the right may be disregarded at once.

Ex. 4. $4{\cdot}325 \times 6{\cdot}08$.

Ex. 5. ·0124 × ·0425.

It is best to begin with the left hand or most important digit of the multiplier.

·325	·0124
6·08	0·0425
1·95 ·	·000496
25 · ·	248
1·975	62 ·
	·000527 ·

Ex. XXVII.

1. Multiply together:

(1) 3·8 and 42; ·38 and ·42; 3·8 and 4·2; ·038 and ·0042.

(2) 417 and ·417; ·417 and ·417; 71956 and ·000025.

(3) 2·052 and ·0031; 4·07 and ·916; 476 and ·00026.

2. Multiply (proving the truth of the result in each case)

(1) 81·4632 by ·0378. (2) 27·35 by 7·70071. (3) ·04375 by ·0754.

3. Find the product of

(1) ·0046 by 7·85. (2) ·00846 by ·00324. (3) ·314 by ·0021

(4) ·009 by ·00846. (5) ·009207 by 6·056. (6) ·00948 by 29; proving the truth of each result.

4. Find the continued product of 1, ·01, ·001, and 100; also of ·12, 1·2, ·012, and 120; and prove the truth of the results.

5. Find the value of (1) $7{\cdot}6 \times {\cdot}071 \times 2{\cdot}1 \times 29$.

(2) $·007 \times 700 \times 760{\cdot}3 \times {\cdot}00416 \times 100000$.

TABLE OF COAL MEASURE.

107. This measure is not used now, as coals are sold by weight.

Formerly,
4 Pecks ..... made 1 Bushel.
3 Bushels ..... 1 Sack.
12 Sacks or 36 Bushels 1 Chaldron.

107*. THE METRIC TABLE OF CAPACITY.

10 Centilitres = 1 Decilitre.
10 Decilitres = 1 LITRE = 1 cubic Decimetre.
10 LITRES = 1 Dekalitre.
10 Dekalitres = 1 Hectolitre.
10 Hectolitres = 1 Kilolitre = 1 cubic Metre.

A Kilolitre of wood is called a Stère ; 10 Stères = 1 Decastère.

MEASURES OF WEIGHT.

TABLE OF AVOIRDUPOIS WEIGHT.

108. Avoirdupois weight derives its name from *Avoirs* (goods or chattels), and *Poids* (weight). It is used in weighing all heavy articles, which are coarse and drossy, or subject to waste, as butter, meat, and the like, and all objects of commerce, with the exception of medicines, gold, silver, and some precious stones. The different units are drams (drs.), ounces (oz.), pounds (lbs.), quarters (qrs.), hundredweights (cwts.), tons (tons). The pound avoirdupois is the Imperial Standard pound.

16 Drams..... make 1 Ounce..... 1 oz.
16 Ounces ..... 1 Pound ..... 1 lb.
14 Pounds ..... 1 Stone ..... 1 st.
2 Stones or 28 Pounds.. 1 Quarter ..... 1 qr.
4 Quarters or 8 Stones.. 1 Hundredweight.. 1 cwt.
20 Hundredweights ..... 1 Ton..... 1 Ton.

Also, 7000 Grains = 1 lb. ; 100 lbs. = 1 Cental ; 1 Firkin of Butter = 56 lbs. ; 1 Fodder of Lead = 19½ cwt. ; 1 Great Pound of Silk = 24 ounces ; 1 Pack of Wool = 240 pounds ; 1 Cubic Foot of Water weighs about 1000 ounces, and is equal to about 6¼ gallons.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Globe 8vo, 2s. ; *with Answers*, 2s. 6d.

A COURSE OF EASY ARITHMETICAL EXAMPLES FOR BEGINNERS

BY

J. G. BRADSHAW, B.A.

FORMERLY ASSISTANT MASTER AT CLIFTON COLLEGE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

"This collection of examples has been compiled for the use of young boys. Sometime ago a difficulty was felt by those of my colleagues who were teaching vulgar fractions to young beginners, in finding a book that contained a sufficient number of easy and easily graduated examples. Too often the boy had to grapple with numerical difficulties when attempting to grasp a new principle. To supply this want, a course of examples, which forms Part II. of the present volume, was compiled and privately printed. This has now been in use in the Junior School at Clifton for more than a year. Partly for our own use, and partly in the belief that such a collection may be of use to others, these examples have been extended to cover the full course generally taught to boys under fourteen."—*From the Preface.*

Schoolmaster—"The examples are numerous, varied, carefully graded, and not more difficult than might fairly be expected from junior scholars. The work is arranged in four sections. The first three take in all the easier rules, and include vulgar and decimal fractions and proportion. The remaining part comprises more advanced work,—percentages, interest, discount, stocks, etc. We can recommend the book as specially adapted for private schools, and the earlier years of a pupil-teacher's course."

Educational Times—"The examples are numerous and easy. The student advances by easily graduated steps. The full course of arithmetic generally taught to boys under fourteen years of age is covered in this volume. The printing is excellent, all the figures standing out in bold type."

Academy—"A collection of carefully selected exercises in the subject, drawn up for the use of Clifton boys, but which will be found very serviceable for other juniors up to thirteen or fourteen years of age. The exercises are many hundreds in number, and the answers are given at the end."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

13. $\frac{15}{2}$. 14. $\frac{33}{4}$. 15. $\frac{47}{5}$. 16. $\frac{82}{7}$. 17. $\frac{19}{13}$.

18. $\frac{82}{15}$. 19. $\frac{145}{12}$. 20. $\frac{100}{9}$. 21. $\frac{100}{11}$. 22. $\frac{96}{11}$.

23. $\frac{180}{15}$. 24. $\frac{226}{21}$. 25. $\frac{254}{25}$.

EXAMPLES. XVII a. Multiplication.

1. $\frac{3}{4} \times 8$. 2. $\frac{1}{5} \times 10$. 3. $\frac{1}{7} \times 21$. 4. $\frac{1}{9}$ of 27.

5. $\frac{1}{11}$ of 33. 6. $\frac{1}{12}$ of 25. 7. $\frac{2}{15}$ of 30. 8. $\frac{4}{9}$ of 18.

9. $\frac{5}{8} \times 16$. 10. $\frac{3}{8} \times 4$. 11. $\frac{5}{12} \times 3$. 12. $\frac{7}{16} \times 4$.

13. $\frac{9}{25} \times 5$. 14. $\frac{3}{8}$ of 12. 15. $\frac{7}{12}$ of 16. 16. $\frac{1}{18} \times 27$.

17. $\frac{3}{16} \times 24$. 18. $\frac{4}{21} \times 35$. 19. $\frac{8}{33} \times 44$. 20. $\frac{1}{5}$ of $\frac{1}{6}$.

21. $\frac{1}{4}$ of $\frac{1}{7}$. 22. $\frac{1}{8} \times \frac{1}{9}$. 23. $\frac{1}{10} \times \frac{1}{10}$. 24. $\frac{2}{15} \times \frac{5}{8}$.

25. $\frac{4}{7} \times \frac{21}{12}$. 26. $\frac{7}{12} \times \frac{3}{28}$. 27. $\frac{15}{18} \times \frac{9}{25}$. 28. $\frac{14}{12} \times \frac{16}{21}$.

29. $\frac{12}{27} \times \frac{24}{16}$. 30. $\frac{7}{15} \times \frac{20}{21} \times \frac{9}{4}$. 31. $\frac{28}{45} \times \frac{18}{7} \times \frac{10}{8}$.

32. $\frac{32}{63} \times \frac{15}{8} \times \frac{21}{25}$. 33. $\frac{7}{9}$ of $\frac{18}{22}$ of $\frac{55}{35}$. 34. $\frac{3}{14}$ of $\frac{21}{9} \times \frac{54}{27}$.

35. $\frac{28}{39} \times \frac{52}{77} \times \frac{44}{17} \times \frac{51}{64}$.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Third Edition. Revised and Enlarged.
Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.

ARITHMETICAL EXERCISES
AND
EXAMINATION PAPERS

WITH OR WITHOUT ANSWERS

BY

H. S. HALL, M.A., AND S. R. KNIGHT, B.A.

Cambridge Review—"All the mathematical work these gentlemen have given to the public is of genuine worth, and these exercises are no exception to the rule. The addition of the logarithm and mensuration questions add greatly to the value."

Scotsman—"The exercises and questions are well selected, and form an excellent book of discipline in Arithmetic. An Appendix of questions in logarithms and mensuration adds to the value of the work."

PREFACE

IN this book we have followed the same plan as in our *Algebraical Exercises and Examination Papers*: the contents comprise eighty progressive miscellaneous Exercises, followed by a collection of fifty Papers set at recent Examinations, and an Appendix containing miscellaneous examples in Logarithms and Mensuration.

The EXERCISES are arranged as follows:

Part I. includes Decimals, Practice, Simple Proportion, and Simple Interest; Part II. takes in Compound Proportion, Percentages, Averages, and Proportional Parts; in Part III., Square Root, Areas, and Volumes are introduced; Part IV. includes Discount and Compound Interest; Part V., Profit and Loss and Stocks; Part VI., Cube Root and Duodecimals.

The EXAMINATION PAPERS will be found to comprise specimens of papers set at all the most important examinations in which a knowledge of Arithmetic is required.

The APPENDIX now consists of three hundred and fifty graduated questions in Logarithms and Mensuration, arranged in thirty-five papers of ten questions, preceded by a list of numerical constants and formulae in Mensuration.

In the Second Edition the Appendix was increased by a new series of Examples which are intended to be worked by the aid of Logarithmic Tables. In view of the increasing importance of logarithmic calculation in many Examinations this last section will be found especially useful.

6. A grocer sells sugar at 4*d.* per lb. and takes off 5 per cent. for cash payment: find what it costs him per cwt. in order that he may make a profit of 60 per cent.

7. If the discount on a bill due five months hence at $3\frac{3}{4}$ per cent. per annum is £774. 12*s.* 6*d.*, what is the amount of the bill?

8. By selling out 3 per cent. Consols at $102\frac{3}{4}$, and investing the proceeds in a railway stock which pays dividends of 7 per cent. per annum, a man finds that he can double his income: what is the price of the railway stock?

EXERCISE LVIII.

1. A man's yearly income is £566. 13*s.* 4*d.*, and he spends $82\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. of it: how much does he save a year?

2. Reduce 2 miles 7 furlongs 18 perches 3 yards to the decimal of a league.

3. Find the income derived from the investment of £4470 in the $4\frac{1}{4}$ per cents. at $93\frac{1}{8}$.

4. If a postage stamp is an inch long and $\frac{4}{5}$ of an inch broad, how many stamps will be required for papering a room 18 ft. 10 in. long, 16 ft. 9 in. broad, and 9 ft. 6 in. high?

5. Simplify $\dfrac{\frac{13}{111}+\frac{17}{47}}{1-\frac{13}{111}\times\frac{17}{47}} - \dfrac{\frac{17}{15}-\frac{19}{47}}{1+\frac{17}{15}\times\frac{19}{47}}$.

6. It is found that 40 lbs. Troy of standard gold can be coined into 1869 sovereigns, the proportion of pure gold to alloy in standard gold being 22 to 2. How many grains of pure gold are there in a sovereign?

7. A wine-merchant buys whiskey at 17*s.* 6*d.* per gallon, and after adding water to it in the proportion of 1 gallon to 6, retails it at 18*s.* per gallon: what percentage of profit does he make on his outlay?

XXIX.

Cambridge Local Examinations. Junior Students.

December, 1886.

1. There are 57 boxes of rice each containing eight hundred and nine thousand three hundred and nine grains, and 76 other boxes each containing seven hundred and nineteen thousand two hundred and ninety-four grains: write *in words* how many grains of rice there are altogether.

2. How many ounces are there in thirteen times 1 ton 2 cwt. 11 lbs.; and how many inches in 1 mile 2 furlongs 35 poles?

3. What is the whole cost of 5 pairs of gloves at 2*s.* 11$\frac{3}{4}$*d.* a pair, 24 yds. of muslin at 1*s.* 9$\frac{1}{2}$*d.* a yard, 17$\frac{1}{2}$ yds. of ribbon at 8$\frac{1}{2}$*d.* a yard, and 35 yards of flannel at 1*s.* 7$\frac{3}{4}$*d.* a yard?

4. Find by Practice the cost of warming a building for 11 days 17 hours 28 minutes, if the cost is £4. 10*s.* per day.

5. Subtract $4\frac{33}{35}$ from $\frac{1}{6}+2\frac{1}{7}+13\frac{3}{10}+\frac{4}{21}$.

6. Simplify

$$\frac{1664}{1408} \text{ of } \left\{\frac{7}{10} \text{ of } £3\frac{3}{14}+6\frac{2}{3} \text{ of } £3.\ 0s.\ 9d.-4\frac{13}{31} \text{ of } £3.\ 2s.\right\}.$$

7. Multiply ·004 by 32·4, and divide the product by 6·4. Express as a vulgar fraction the product of $\cdot\dot{2}\dot{7}$ and $\cdot 9\dot{1}\dot{6}$.

8. If I pay £2. 7*s.* 8$\frac{1}{4}$*d.* as Income Tax on a rental of £71. 10*s.* 7$\frac{1}{2}$*d.*, what should I pay on a rental of £510. 15*s.*?

9. Find the Compound Interest on £4500 for 2 years at 4$\frac{1}{4}$ per cent. per annum.

10. *C* does half as much in a day as *A* and *B* can do together, and *B* does half as much again as *A*. If all three working together can mow 20 acres of barley in 16 days, how long would each, working by himself, take to mow 5 acres?

11. How much 3 per cent. stock sold at 92$\frac{1}{2}$ will produce £3700? If this sum of £3700 be then invested in Railway Stock at 115$\frac{5}{8}$, what percentage must this stock pay in order that the same income may be received as from the original investment? (No brokerage is to be reckoned.)

12. A rectangular field which is twice as long as it is wide costs 1·0138*s.* per square yard to turf. If the whole cost is £191. 17*s.* 0$\frac{3}{4}$*d.*, find the lengths of the sides of the field.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

8. Calculate approximately the area and circumference of a circle inscribed in a square whose side is 359·5678 feet.

9. Find the volume of a prism on a triangular base the sides of which are 47·3, 38·9, 2·7 inches respectively, the height being 55·8 inches.

10. If V is the volume of a sphere and A the area of its surface, prove that

$$3 \log A = 2 \log 6 + \log \pi + 2 \log V.$$

Calculate the value of A, if $V = 796{\cdot}325$ cubic inches.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Evaluate (1) $52{\cdot}4574 \times 3{\cdot}78472$;
(2) $(5{\cdot}7432)^{1{\cdot}246}$.

2. Find to six places of decimals the value of

$$\frac{87{\cdot}327 \times 784{\cdot}55 \times {\cdot}020868}{{\cdot}61659 \times 58{\cdot}844}.$$

3. How many terms of the series

·04, ·08, ·16, ·32, ·64, ...

will amount to 41943?

4. A person borrowed £11000 for two months at 5 per cent. per annum. At the end of the time he was unable to pay the interest; it was, therefore, added to the principal and the debt was allowed to run for another two months. This was continually repeated, till at the end of 2 years the debt and interest were paid; how much did this amount to?

5. Looking due South from the top of a cliff which is 37·7 yards high, an observer sees two objects whose angles of depression are 27° 18′ 35″ and 43° 12′ 14″ respectively; find the distance between them.

6. A ship sailing due East is observed at 10 o'clock to be in a direction 15° 37′ East of South; at 12.15 the ship is observed to be 57° 12′ East of South; if the ship sails 10 miles an hour, find the distance of the observer from each position of the ship.

7. Compute to the nearest square inch the area of a circle in which a chord 4 ft. in length subtends at the centre an angle 28° 36′.

8. The diagonal of a cube is 58·9342 inches; find the radius of a sphere whose surface is equal to that of the cube.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Globe 8vo. Without Answers, 2s. With Answers, 2s. 6d.

ALGEBRA
FOR BEGINNERS

By H. S. HALL, M.A.
FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

AND

S. R. KNIGHT, B.A., M.B., Ch.B.
FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., Limited
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

The present work has been undertaken in order to supply a demand for an easy introduction to our *Elementary Algebra for Schools*, and also to meet the wishes of those who, while approving of the order and treatment of the subject there laid down, have felt the want of a beginners' text-book in a cheaper form.

It will be found that full provision has been made in the following pages for all the public examinations which do not require a knowledge of Algebra beyond Quadratic Equations. The Explanations are given in somewhat simpler language than in the *Elementary Algebra*, while the examples for practice are entirely new; thus the two books are supplementary to each other, and in many classes may be conveniently used together.

PRESS OPINIONS

Aberdeen Free Press—"To give the learner a sufficient knowledge of the ordinary algebraical processes without presenting him with too many of their difficulties requires a thorough knowledge of what is necessary for a beginner, and of what may be omitted until a more advanced stage. A very slight examination of the book shows that the authors possess this qualification in an eminent degree. . . . The definitions and explanations of symbols are full and simple. . . . **An important feature of the work is the great number of problems given to show the practical applications of the science.**"

Schoolmaster—"To teachers who have had experience of either the *Elementary* or the *Higher Algebra* it will only be necessary to say that this book is marked by the same qualities which have brought these works into such deserved repute. To those who are still in ignorance of these books, **we can say that for clear, simple, and concise explanation, convenient order of subject-matter and copious and well graduated exercises, these books have, to say the least, no superiors.** Quite early the student is introduced to easy problem work, which can only be looked upon as an advantage. The very numerous exercises are entirely new, so that the book might easily serve as a companion and supplement to the elementary work."

Western Daily Press—"**This little book seems to be a really valuable addition to the best text-books on elementary algebra.** The authors wisely take simple equatoins much earlier than they used to be taken in the text-books of twenty years ago. There is nothing so interesting to the young student as to feel that he can work at something tangible like equations, and the drudgery of evolution and fractions can be taken later. . . . **Nothing is more admirable than the clearness and simplicity of statement adopted by the authors in illustrating the working of problems.**"

Educational Times—"*Algebra for Beginners* is dealt with on the same lines as the earlier and somewhat more advanced book. The learner is introduced as soon as possible to the practical and more interesting side of the subject, such as equations and problems, while work which largely consists in the manipulation and simplification of elaborate expressions is postponed till later on. The examples for practice are copious, and have been newly composed for this particular book; and, as heretofore, the explanations are clear, concise, and simply expressed. **Indeed, without hesitation, we pronounce this book the best of its size which we have seen.**

University Correspondent—"Those masters who have already adopted Messrs. Hall and Knight's *Elementary Algebra* in their schools will welcome this new work for the use of their junior classes. . . . **The numerous exercises for the student are excellent in quality and entirely new. We can unhesitatingly recommend the book to the notice of both teachers and students.**"

Scottish Leader—"Goes as far as quadratic equations, covering the ground on the same lines as the author's former books, but much more fully, and with a wealth of illustration and example that will commend the book to all masters of junior forms in schools."

National Teacher—"The exercises throughout are well graduated, and so selected as to make the difficult subject of Algebra interesting to the youthful student. **Altogether it is an admirable text-book for beginners.**"

Glasgow Herald—"**Seems in all respects to deserve an equally favourable reception to that of its predecessor.**"

Guardian—"It possesses the systematic arrangement and the lucidity which have gained so much praise for the works previously written by the same authors in collaboration."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Example 3. *A* and *B* are playing for money; *A* begins with £p and *B* with q shillings. *B* wins £x; express by an equation the fact that *A* has now 3 times as much as *B*.

What *B* has won *A* has lost;

$\therefore$ *A* has $p-x$ pounds, that is $20(p-x)$ shillings,

B has q shillings $+x$ pounds, that is $q+20x$ shillings.

Thus the required equation is $20(p-x) = 3(q+20x)$.

Example 4. A man travels a miles by coach and b miles by train; if the coach goes at the rate of 7 miles an hour, and the train at the rate of 25 miles per hour, how long does the journey take?

The coach travels 7 miles in 1 hour;

$\therefore$ ..... 1 ..... $\frac{1}{7}$ hour;

that is, ... a ..... $\frac{a}{7}$ hours.

Similarly the train travels b miles in $\frac{b}{25}$ hours.

$\therefore$ the whole time occupied is $\frac{a}{7}+\frac{b}{25}$ hours.

Example 5. How many men will be required to do in p hours what q men do in np hours?

np hours is the time occupied by q men;

$\therefore$ 1 hour ..... $q \times np$ men;

that is, p hours..... $\frac{q \times np}{p}$ men.

Therefore the required number of men is qn.

EXAMPLES X. b.

1. Write down three consecutive numbers of which a is the least.
2. Write down four consecutive numbers of which b is the greatest.
3. Write down five consecutive numbers of which c is the middle one.
4. What is the next odd number after $2n-1$?
5. What is the even number next before $2n$?
6. Write down the product of three odd numbers of which the middle one is $2x+1$.
7. How old is a man who will be x years old in 15 years?
8. How old was a man x years ago if his present age is n years?
9. In $2x$ years a man will be y years old, what is his present age?

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

139. By suitably grouping together the terms, compound expressions can often be expressed as the difference of two squares, and so be resolved into factors.

Example 1. Resolve into factors $9a^2 - c^2 + 4cx - 4x^2$.

$$\begin{aligned} 9a^2 - c^2 + 4cx - 4x^2 &= 9a^2 - (c^2 - 4cx + 4x^2) \\ &= (3a)^2 - (c - 2x)^2 \\ &= (3a + c - 2x)(3a - c + 2x). \end{aligned}$$

Example 2. Resolve into factors $2bd - a^2 - c^2 + b^2 + d^2 + 2ac$.

Here the terms $2bd$ and $2ac$ suggest the proper preliminary arrangement of the expression. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} 2bd - a^2 - c^2 + b^2 + d^2 + 2ac &= b^2 + 2bd + d^2 - a^2 + 2ac - c^2 \\ &= b^2 + 2bd + d^2 - (a^2 - 2ac + c^2) \\ &= (b + d)^2 - (a - c)^2 \\ &= (b + d + a - c)(b + d - a + c) \end{aligned}$$

140. The following case is important.

Example. Resolve into factors $x^4 + x^2y^2 + y^4$.

$$\begin{aligned} x^4 + x^2y^2 + y^4 &= (x^4 + 2x^2y^2 + y^4) - x^2y^2 \\ &= (x^2 + y^2)^2 - (xy)^2 \\ &= (x^2 + y^2 + xy)(x^2 + y^2 - xy) \\ &= (x^2 + xy + y^2)(x^2 - xy + y^2). \end{aligned}$$

141. Sometimes an expression may be resolved into more than two factors.

Example 1. Resolve into factors $16a^4 - 81b^4$.

$$\begin{aligned} 16a^4 - 81b^4 &= (4a^2 + 9b^2)(4a^2 - 9b^2) \\ &= (4a^2 + 9b^2)(2a + 3b)(2a - 3b). \end{aligned}$$

Example 2. Resolve into factors $x^6 - y^6$.

$$\begin{aligned} x^6 - y^6 &= (x^3 + y^3)(x^3 - y^3) \\ &= (x + y)(x^2 - xy + y^2)(x - y)(x^2 + xy + y^2). \end{aligned}$$

Note. When an expression can be arranged either as the difference of two squares, or as the difference of two cubes, each of the methods explained in Arts. 136, 137 will be applicable. It will, however, be found simplest to first use the rule for resolving into factors the difference of two squares.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Converse Use of Factors.

143. The actual processes of multiplication and division can often be partially or wholly avoided by a skilful use of factors.

It should be observed that the formulæ which the student has seen exemplified in this chapter are just as useful in their converse as in their direct application. Thus the formula for resolving into factors the difference of two squares is equally useful as enabling us to write down at once the product of the sum and the difference of two quantities.

Example 1. Multiply $2a+3b-c$ by $2a-3b+c$.

These expressions may be arranged thus:

$$2a+(3b-c) \text{ and } 2a-(3b-c).$$

Hence the product $= \{2a+(3b-c)\}\{2a-(3b-c)\}$

$$= (2a)^2-(3b-c)^2$$
$$= 4a^2-(9b^2-6bc+c^2)$$
$$= 4a^2-9b^2+6bc-c^2.$$

Example 2. Find the product of

$$x+2,\ x-2,\ x^2-2x+4,\ x^2+2x+4.$$

Taking the first factor with the third, and the second with the fourth,

the product $= \{(x+2)(x^2-2x+4)\}\{(x-2)(x^2+2x+4)\}$

$$= (x^3+8)(x^3-8)$$
$$= x^6-64.$$

Example 3. Divide the product of $2x^2+x-6$ and $6x^2-5x+1$ by $3x^2+5x-2$.

Denoting the division by means of a fraction,

the required quotient $= \dfrac{(2x^2+x-6)(6x^2-5x+1)}{3x^2+5x-2}$

$$= \frac{(2x-3)(x+2)(3x-1)(2x-1)}{(3x-1)(x+2)}$$
$$= (2x-3)(2x-1),$$

by cancelling factors which are common to numerator and denominator.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Reduce to lowest terms :

4. $\dfrac{5x^2yz^2}{5x^2y+10x^2z}$. 5. $\dfrac{9x^2-y^2}{6x^2y-2xy^2}$. 6. $\dfrac{2x^2y^2-8}{3x^2y+6x}$.

7. $\dfrac{x^2+4x}{x^2+x-12}$. 8. $\dfrac{7a^2x-7a^2c}{5cx^2-10c^2x+5c^3}$. 9. $\dfrac{x^2+x-30}{5x^2+30x}$.

10. $\dfrac{(2a+b)^2}{4a^2-ab^2}$. 11. $\dfrac{a^3+b^3}{a^2-ab-2b^2}$. 12. $\dfrac{2c^2+5cd-3d^2}{c^2+6cd+9d^2}$.

13. $\dfrac{x^2-4x-21}{3x^2+10x+3}$. 14. $\dfrac{x^2-2x-15}{3x^2-12x-15}$. 15. $\dfrac{2x^2+x-3}{2x^2+11x+12}$.

16. $\dfrac{3a^3-24}{4a^2+4a-24}$. 17. $\dfrac{4x^3-25xy^2}{2x^2+xy-15y^2}$. 18. $\dfrac{18a^3+6a^2x+2ax^2}{27a^3-x^3}$.

155. When the factors of the numerator and denominator cannot be determined by inspection, the fraction may be reduced to its lowest terms by dividing both numerator and denominator by the highest common factor, which may be found by the rules given in Chap. XVIII.

Example. Reduce to lowest terms $\dfrac{3x^3-13x^2+23x-21}{15x^3-38x^2-2x+21}$.

The H.C.F. of numerator and denominator is $3x-7$.

Dividing numerator and denominator by $3x-7$, we obtain as respective quotients x^2-2x+3 and $5x^2-x-3$.

Thus $\dfrac{3x^3-13x^2+23x-21}{15x^3-38x^2-2x+21}=\dfrac{(3x-7)(x^2-2x+3)}{(3x-7)(5x^2-x-3)}=\dfrac{x^2-2x+3}{5x^2-x-3}$.

156. If either numerator or denominator can readily be resolved into factors we may use the following method.

Example. Reduce to lowest terms $\dfrac{x^3+3x^2-4x}{7x^3-18x^2+6x+5}$.

The numerator $=x(x^2+3x-4)=x(x+4)(x-1)$.

Of these factors the only one which can be a common divisor is $x-1$. Hence, arranging the denominator so as to shew $x-1$ as a factor,

the fraction $=\dfrac{x(x+4)(x-1)}{7x^2(x-1)-11x(x-1)-5(x-1)}$

$=\dfrac{x(x+4)(x-1)}{(x-1)(7x^2-11x-5)}=\dfrac{x(x+4)}{7x^2-11x-5}$

10. Solve the equations:

(1) $x-6-\frac{x-12}{3}=\frac{x-4}{2}+\frac{x-8}{4}$;

(2) $x+y-z=0, \quad x-y+z=4, \quad 5x+y+z=20$;

(3) $\frac{ax+b}{c}+\frac{dx+e}{f}=1.$

11. Simplify $\frac{x+3}{x^2-5x+6}-\frac{x+2}{x^2-9x+14}+\frac{4}{x^2-10x+21}.$

12. A purse of sovereigns is divided amongst three persons, the first receiving half of them and one more, the second half of the remainder and one more, and the third six. Find the number of sovereigns the purse contained.

---

13. If $h=-1$, $k=2$, $l=0$, $m=1$, $n=-3$, find the value of

$$\frac{h^3(m-l)-\sqrt{3hn}+hk}{m(l-h)-2hm^2+\sqrt[3]{4hk}}.$$

14. Find the L.C.M. of

$15(p^3+q^3)$, $5(p^2-pq+q^2)$, $4(p^3+pq+q^2)$, $6(p^2-q^2)$.

15. Find the square root of

(1) $\frac{4x^2}{9}+\frac{9}{4x^2}-2$;

(2) $1-6a+5a^2+12a^3+4a^4.$

16. Simplify $\frac{20x^2+27x+9}{15x^2+19x+6}+\frac{20x^2+27x+9}{12x^2+17x+6}.$

17. Solve the equations:

(1) $\frac{a(x-b)}{a-b}+\frac{b(x-a)}{b-a}=1$;

(2) $\frac{9}{x-4}+\frac{3}{x-8}=\frac{4}{x-9}+\frac{8}{x-3}.$

18. A sum of money is to be divided among a number of persons; if 8s. is given to each there will be 3s. short, and if 7s. 6d. is given to each there will be 2s. over: find the number of persons.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

195. In the result $x = \dfrac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$,

it must be remembered that the expression $\sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}$ is the square root of the compound quantity $b^2 - 4ac$, *taken as a whole.* We cannot simplify the solution unless we know the numerical values of a, b, c. It may sometimes happen that these values do not make $b^2 - 4ac$ a perfect square. In such a case the exact numerical solution of the equation cannot be determined.

Example. Solve $5x^2 - 13x - 11 = 0$.

Here $a = 5$, $b = -13$, $c = -11$; therefore by the formula we have

$$x = -\frac{(-13) \pm \sqrt{(-13)^2 - 4 \,.\, 5(-11)}}{2 \,.\, 5}$$

$$= \frac{13 \pm \sqrt{169 + 220}}{10}$$

$$= \frac{13 \pm \sqrt{389}}{10}.$$

Since 389 has not an exact square root this result cannot be simplified; thus the two roots are

$$\frac{13 + \sqrt{389}}{10}, \quad \frac{13 - \sqrt{389}}{10}.$$

196. Solution by Factors. There is still one method of obtaining the solution of a quadratic which will sometimes be found shorter than either of the methods already given.

Consider the equation $x^2 + \frac{7}{3}x = 2$.

Clearing of fractions, $3x^2 + 7x - 6 = 0$.....(1);

by resolving the left-hand side into factors we have

$$(3x - 2)(x + 3) = 0.$$

Now if *either* of the factors $3x - 2$, $x + 3$ be zero, their product is zero. Hence the quadratic equation is satisfied by either of the suppositions

$$3x - 2 = 0, \text{ or } x + 3 = 0.$$

Thus the roots are $\frac{2}{3}$, -3.

It appears from this that *when a quadratic equation has been simplified and brought to the form of equation* (1), its solution can always be readily obtained if the expression on the left-hand

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Elementary Algebra for Schools

BY

H. S. HALL, M.A.

FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

AND

S. R. KNIGHT, B.A., M.B., CH.B.

FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

Seventh Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Globe 8vo. (bound in maroon-coloured cloth), 3*s.* 6*d.* With Answers (bound in green-coloured cloth), 4*s.* 6*d.*

The distinctive features of the Seventh Edition are :—

(1) Greater prominence has been given to *the fundamental Laws of Algebra* (see Arts. 22, 29-32, 46-48). With this object parts of the chapters on Multiplication and Division have been re-written.

(2) A short section on the use of *Detached Coefficients* has been given on page 7.

(3) A fuller treatment of the *Remainder Theorem* and its applications will be found on pages 236, 237.

(4) Five new sets of *Miscellaneous Examples* have been added at convenient intervals, beginning with one on page 32, which replaces Examples IV. c. With the exception of this change and a combination of Examples XI. b and XI. c, which now appear as one exercise, all the original examples will be found under their old numbers and with the answers unaltered, even where the examples themselves have been improved.

It will be found that the pagination is very little altered, the only difference being that the introduction of miscellaneous examples has placed the beginning of some chapters a few pages further on in the book than in previous editions. It is believed that the few alterations in the text will all be justified by usage, and that they will cause no inconvenience to those who are familiar with the book in its old form.

PRESS OPINIONS

Schoolmaster—"**Has so many points of excellence, as compared with its predecessors, that no apology is needed for its issue . . .** The plan always adopted by every good teacher of frequently recapitulating, and making additions at every recapitulation, is well carried out."

Nature—"This is, in our opinion, the best Elementary Algebra for school use. It is the combined work of two teachers who have had considerable experience of actual school teaching . . . and so successfully grapples with difficulties which our present text-books in use, from their authors lacking such experience, ignore or slightly touch upon. . . . **We confidently recommend it to mathematical teachers, who, we feel sure, will find it the best book of its kind for teaching purposes.**"

Academy—"We will not say that this is the best Elementary Algebra for school use that we have come across, but we can say that **we do not remember to have seen a better. . . . It is the outcome of a long experience of school teaching, and so is a thoroughly practical book.** All others that we have in our eye are the works of men who have had considerable experience with senior and junior students at the universities, but have had little, if any, acquaintance with the poor creatures who are just stumbling over the threshold of Algebra. . . . Buy or borrow the book for yourselves and judge, or write a better. . . . A higher text-book is on its way. This occupies sufficient ground for the generality of boys."

Educational Times—"A book of exceptional value. A very good book. The explanations are concise and clear, and the examples both numerous and well chosen."

Opinions of Teachers.

"**It seems excellent in every way for a first Algebra. I like your arrangement of the work, and the proofs and explanations are admirably simple and clear. But, in my opinion, its chief merit consists in the fact that it is so well adapted for school use.** The great fault of many otherwise excellent books on elementary mathematics is that they are unsuitable for large classes of average boys; too little regard being paid to the requirements of school machinery and the various questions of in-school lessons and out-of-school work. The immense importance of these points has been recognised by you in a way which all class teachers must appreciate."—A. E. ALLCOCK, M.A., *Late Head of the Modern Side, Wellington College.*

"**I think it decidedly the best of all books on Elementary Algebra yet published.** The great merit seems to me to be that, while it is quite simple and elementary, there are no misleading and inaccurate statements which must afterwards be unlearned. I shall certainly make use of it in my classes, and hope it may come into general use throughout the country."—A. J. WALLIS, M.A., *Fellow and Lecturer of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.*

"We have examined your Algebra very carefully; and **we agree that it is as perfect as a book can be.** I will introduce it at St. Paul's as soon as I can."—C. PENDLEBURY, M.A., *Senior Mathematical Master, St. Paul's School.*

"After employing it with my evening class this term, **I feel it to be quite the best Elementary Algebra that has yet appeared.**"—R. A. HERMAN, M.A., *Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge; Late Professor of Mathematics at University College, Liverpool.*

"I should have thought it impossible that a book could be devised for school purposes so nearly approaching perfection."—REV. T. C. SIMMONS, M.A., *Late Senior Mathematical Master, Christ's College, Brecon.*

"I have perused it carefully and am delighted with it: **it bears the impress of experience on every page.**"—W. BRIGGS, M.A., LL.B., F.R.A.S., F.C.S., *Principal of the University Correspondence College.*

The "Elementary Algebra" is in use in the following Schools and Colleges:—Eton; Harrow; Westminster; Winchester; Charterhouse; St. Paul's; Rugby; Merchant Taylors'; Marlborough; Cheltenham; Haileybury; Wellington; Clifton; Tonbridge School; Uppingham; Shrewsbury; Repton; Rossall; City of London School; University College School; King's College School; Dulwich; Malvern; Sherborne; Bath College; Bradfield College; Radley; Giggleswick; Leamington College; Sedbergh; Felsted; Dover College; Lancing College; Brighton College; Highgate School; Tiverton, Blundell's School; Leys School, Cambridge; Perse School, Cambridge; Manchester Grammar School; Bedford Grammar School; Bristol Grammar School; Leeds Grammar School; Liverpool College; Fettes College, Edinburgh; Nottingham High School; King's School, Canterbury; Bromsgrove School; Christ's College, Brecon; Victoria College, Jersey; Elizabeth College, Guernsey; Academy, Edinburgh; Edinburgh High School; High School, Glasgow; High School, Dublin; High School, Dundee; University College, Aberystwyth; University College, Bangor; University College, Bristol; The University, Birmingham; The University, Durham; University College, Dundee; University College, Nottingham; Owens College, Manchester; Aberdeen, Free Church; Edinburgh, Free Church; Glasgow, Free Church; Glasgow, Church of Scotland; Bangor; Battersea; Carmarthen; Carnarvon; Cheltenham; Culham; Darlington; Durham; Exeter; Hammersmith; Isleworth; Peterborough; Saltley; York; Westminster; Gray's Inn Road; Lincoln; Liverpool; Edge Hill, Liverpool; Ripon; Salisbury; West Hill, Wandsworth; Whitelands, Chelsea; Stockwell.

At the following Colleges and High Schools for Girls:—Bath; Birmingham; Blackheath; Clapham Common, The Lawn; Clapham Common, Clarence House; Carlisle; Croydon; Dover; West Dulwich; Gateshead; Highbury, N.; Liverpool, Princes Park; Maida Vale, W.; Norland Square, W.; Nottingham; Sheffield; Shrewsbury; Sutton; Swansea; Sydenham; Guernsey, Ladies' College; Jersey; Dulwich, Haberdashers' School; Manchester; Manchester, Ladies' College; Truro; Tunbridge Wells; Weymouth; Wimbledon; York; Liverpool, East; Brighton; Kendal; Leicester; Newcastle-on-Tyne; Richmond, Surrey; Surbiton; Woolwich; Hull; Aberdeen; Bridgnorth; Carshalton; Cheltenham, Ladies' College; Cheltenham, Public School; Clifton; Clifton, Redland Hill; Edinburgh, Ladies' College; Leamington; Hoxton, Haberdashers' School; Hatcham, Haberdashers' School; Macclesfield.

The "Elementary Algebra" is in use at the following Schools:—Aberdeen, Grammar School; Aberdeen, Gordon's School; Abergavenny, Grammar School; Aberystwyth, Grammar School; Almondbury, Grammar School; Alton, Grammar School; Armagh, Academy; Armagh, Royal School; Armagh, St. Patrick's School;

Atherstone, Grammar School; Aspatria, Agricultural College; Ayr, The Academy; Arbroath, High School; Ashby-de-la-Zouch, Grammar School; Banbury, All Saints' School, Bloxham; Bangor, Friars' School; Barnard Castle, N. E. County School; Barnet, Friern Barnet High School; Basingstoke, Queen's School; Batley, Grammar School; Bath, Competitive College; Bath, Kingswood School; Bath, Combe Down School; Bath, King Edward's School; Bath, St. Gregory's College; Bath, Fortescue College; Belfast, The Academy; Belfast, St. Malachy's College; Belfast, Christian Brothers' School; Belfast, Methodist College; Belfast, Clanrye School; Berkhampstead, Grammar School; Bingley, Grammar School; Birkenhead, The College; Birkenhead, The School; Brackley, Magdalen College School; Bolton, Grammar School; Brentwood, Grammar School; Bradford, Grammar School; Bradford, Board School, Chapel Street; Bradford, Girls' Grammar School; Bridgnorth, Grammar School; Bristol, Merchant Venturers' School; Broughty Ferry, Collegiate School; Burnley, Grammar School; Burton, Grammar School; Bury, Grammar School; Canterbury, Kent College; Canterbury, King's School; Campbeltown, The Academy; Cardiff, Higher Grammar School; Carmarthen, Presbyterian College; Cavan, St. Patrick's College; Cheam, The School; Caistor, Grammar School; Carlisle, Grammar School; Carlow, The College; Castleknock, St. Vincent's College; Chelmsford, Grammar School; Cheltenham, Modern School; Cheltenham, Grammar School; Chester, King's School; Chester, Modern School; Chester, Higher Grade Board School; Chesterfield, Mount St. Mary's College; Clitheroe, Grammar School; Coatbridge, Technical School; Coatbridge, Technical Academy; Cork, Grammar School; Cork, Presentation Brothers' College; Cork, Christian Brothers' School; Crieff, Morrison's Academy; Croydon, Whitgift Grammar School; Cirencester, Royal Agricultural College; Coleraine, Academical Institution; Cookstown, Academy; Coventry, Grammar School; Crewe, The Academy; Crediton, Grammar School; Darlington, Grammar School; Dartford, Grammar School; Daventry, Grammar School; Denbigh, Grammar School; Denstone, St. Chad's College; Devonport, H.M.S. *Lion*; Devonport, Stoke Public School; Dewsbury, Wheelwright Grammar School; Dollar, The Institution; Dorchester, County School; Doncaster, Grammar School; Dublin, Blackrock College; Dublin, Belvedere College; Dublin, Christian Brothers' School; Dublin, Rathmines' School; Dublin, Alexandra College; Dublin, Alexandra School; Dublin, King's Hospital; Dudley, Grammar School; Dundalk, St. Mary's College; Dundalk, Educational Institute Dundee, Harris Academy; Dunfermline, High School; Eastbourne, The College; Eastbourne, Southdown College; Eastbourne, New College; Eccles, Modern School; Edinburgh, George Watson's College; Edinburgh, Heriot Watt College; Edinburgh, Cargilfield School; Edinburgh, College of Science; Edinburgh, Merchiston Castle School; Edinburgh, Institution; Edinburgh, Ladies' College, 70 Queen Street; Ellesmere, The College; Elgin, The Academy; Ely, King's School; Epsom, The College; Exeter, Grammar School; Exeter, Hele's School; Exeter, Heavitree College School; Falkirk, High School; Faversham, Grammar Schools Fermoy College; Fochabers, Milne's Institution; Fort Augustus, St. Benedict's; College; Framlingham, The College; Gateshead, Gateshead School; Gildersome, The College; Glasgow, Hutchesons' Grammar School; Glasgow, Queen Margaret College; Glasgow, Garnethill Public School; Glasgow, Hillhead Public School; Glasgow, The Academy; Glenalmond, Trinity College; Gloucester, Crypt Grammar School; Godalming, Hillside School; Godalming, Branksome; Gosport, Collegiate School; Gosport, Royal Academy; Goudhurst, Bethany House School; Grahamstown, St. Andrew's College; Grantham, Grammar School; Gravesend, Proprietary School; Greenwich, Royal Naval College; Greenock, Kilblain Academy;

Greenock, Holmscroft Public School; Grimsby, St. James's College; Hampton, Grammar School; Harrogate, St. George's College; Harrogate, Trinity College; Hamilton, The Academy; Hastings, University School; Headingley, Wesleyan College; Helensburgh, Larchfield Academy; Hereford, Cathedral School; Heversham, Grammar School; High Wycombe, Grammar School; Hinckley, Grammar School; Holbeach, Grammar School; Horsham, Grammar School; Houghton-le-Spring, Grammar School; Huddersfield, Technical School; Hull, Hymer's College; Hull, Leyland's School, Hornsea; Hull, Grammar School; Hurstpierpoint, St. John's College; Ilminster, Grammar School; Inverness, The College; Ipswich, Middle School for Boys; Isle of Man, King William's College; Isle of Man, Grammar School, Castletown; Jersey, St. James's College School; Kendal, Grammar School; Kidderminster, Grammar School; Killarney, St. Brendan's Seminary; King's Lynn, Grammar School; Kingston, Elmhurst School; Kingston, Tiffins' Boys' School; Kirkcaldy, Burgh School; Kirkcudbright, The Academy; Kirton, Grammar School; Lanark, Grammar School; Langholm, Academy; Launceston, Dunheved College; Leatherhead, St. John's Foundation School; Leeds, Wortley Grammar School; Leeds, Boys' Modern School; Leeds, Central Higher Grade School; Leicester, Wyggeston Boys' School; Leicester, Stoneygate School; Lichfield, Grammar School; Lincoln, Grammar School; Lincoln, Northgate School; Liscard, High School; Listowel, St. Michael's College; Liverpool, Liverpool Institute; Liverpool, St. Francis Xavier's College; Liverpool, Waterloo High School; Liverpool, Venice Street Board School; Liverpool, St. Edmund's College, Everton; Liverpool, Grove Street College for Girls; Llandilo, County School; Londonderry, Magee College; Londonderry, Academical Institution; Londonderry, Foyle College; Lucton, Grammar School; Lurgan, The College; London, City of London College, E.C.; London, Mercer's School, College Hill, E.C.; London, City Central Foundation School, E.C.; London, Birbeck Institution, E.C.; London, London Institution, E.C.; London, St. Thomas Charterhouse School of Science and Art, E.C.; London, Christ's College, Finchley; London, Owens School, Islington; London, The School, Mill Hill; London, North London Collegiate School, Camden Town; London, Belsize School, Hampstead; London, Maria Grey College, Brondesbury; London, Eltham College, Eltham; London, School for Sons of Missionaries, Blackheath; London, St. Olave's Grammar School, Southwark; London, Connaught Military College, Blackheath; London, St. Dunstan's College, Catford; London, Aske's School, Hatcham; London, Wilson's Grammar School, Camberwell; London, Roan Girl's School, Greenwich; London, Alleyne's School, Dulwich; London, Blackheath Proprietary School; London, Manor House, Old Road, Lee; London, United Westminster School, Victoria Street, S.W.; London, Tooting College, S.W.; London, Boy's High School, Clapham; London, Onslow College, Chelsea; London, Godolphin School, Hammersmith; London, Grammar School, Kensington Square, W.; Louth, Grammar School; Macclesfield, Grammar School; Manchester, St. Bede's College; Manchester, High School, Fallowfield; Manchester, Central Higher Grammar School; Manchester, Hulme Trust School; Manchester, Mechanics' Institute, Princess Street; Manchester, School of Science and Art, Central Board School; Margate, Thanet Collegiate School; Margate, New College; Marlborough, Grammar School; Maynooth, St. Patrick's College; Middlesboro, High School; Monmouth, Grammar School; Montrose, The Academy; Montrose, Techincal College; Moulton, Grammar School; Musselburgh, Loretto School; Navan, St. Finian's Seminary; Navan, Loretto Convent School; Newcastle-on-Tyne, Grammar School; Newcastle-on-Tyne, Allan's Endowed School;

Newcastle-on-Tyne, Pupil Teachers' Centre (Prudhoe Street); Newcastle-on-Tyne, Mechanics' Institute (Elswick); Newcastle (Staffordshire), High School; Newry, St. Colman's College (Violet Hill); Newton Abbot, Newton College; Northampton, Waterloo College; Norwich, King Edward VI.'s Middle School; Norwich, Grammar School; Nottingham, Baptist College; Nottingham, People's College; Oundle, Laxton Grammar School; Ormskirk, Grammar School; Oxford, High School; Oxford, St. Kenelm's College; Oxford, St. Edward's School-Summertown; Paignton, Grammar School; Paisley, Grammar School; Paisley, Neilston Institution; North Pangbourn, Woodcote House; Pembroke Dock, County Intermediate School; Penrith, Blencowe Grammar School; Perth, The Academy; Perth, Sharp's Institution; Peterborough, King's School; Plymouth, Corporation Grammar School; Plymouth, Western College; Plymouth, Mannamead School; Preston, Grammar School; Probus, Grammar School; Portsmouth, Buckingham Place Academy; Portsmouth, Grammar School; Purley, Warehouseman's School; Rathfarnham, St. Columba's College; Ramsgate, St. Augustine's College; Ramsgate, Ramsgate College; Ramsgate, Ramsgate School; Reigate, Grammar School; Reigate, St. David's College; Ripon, Grammar School; Rochester, Mathematical School; Rochester, King's School; Richmond (Yorks.), Grammar School; Rotherham, Grammar School; Ruabon, Grammar School, Rugby, Lower School; St. Andrews, St. Leonard's School; St. Bees, Grammar School; St. Kitt's B.W.I. Grammar School; St. Leonard's, Maze Hill School; St. Leonard's, Winchester House School; St. Peters, Stonehouse School; Salford; Pupil Teachers' Central Classes; Sallins, Clongowes Wood College; Saltburn, Collegiate School; Sandwich, Grammar School; Sheffield, Firth College; Sheffield, Central Higher Grade School; Sheffield, Grammar School; Sheffield, Technical School; Sheffield, Wesley College; Slough, British Orphan Asylum; Slough, Stoke House School; Shildon, Friend's British School; Silcoates, Northern Congregational School; Southampton, Boys' College; Southampton, Hartley Institution; Southport, University School; Southport, Sandringham School; Sligo, The College; Southsea, Hope House School; Southwick, Merton House School; Spalding, Grammar School; Stafford, Grammar School; Stirling, High School; Stony Stratford, St. Paul's College; Stourbridge, Grammar School; Stratford-on-Avon, Trinity College School; Stroud, Marling Endowed School; Sutton Coldfield, Grammar School; Sutton Valence, Grammar School; Swansea, St. Andrew's College; Swindon, High School; Taunton, The Huish School; Tenbury, St. Michael's College; Tettenhall College; Thurles, St. Patrick's College; Tipperary, Christian School; Torquay, Torbay College; Tottenham, Tottenham College; Towcester, Grammar School; Tralee, Intermediate and University School; Twickenham, King's College; Uddingston, Uddingston Academy; Uttoxeter, Grammar School; Walsall, Queen Mary's School; Warrington, Grammar School; Warwick, King's School; Waterford, Christian Brothers' College; Waterford, Ursuline Convent School; Watford London Orphan Asylum; Wellingboro, Grammar School; Weybridge, St. George's College; Weymouth, Weymouth, College; Whalley (Lancs.), Stoneyhurst College; Whalley, Royal Grammar School; Wigan, Grammar School; Windsor, St. Stanislaus' College; Windsor, St. Mark's School; Woodbridge, Grammar School; Woodford, Bancroft School; Wood Green, Royal Masonic School; Worcester, Queen Elizabeth's School; Worcester, Cathedral School; Wymondham, Grammar School; Yarmouth, Grammar School; York, St. Peter's School; York, Archbishop Holgate's School.

The Method of Detached Coefficients.

45. When two compound expressions contain powers of one letter only, the labour of multiplication may be lessened by using **detached coefficients**, that is, by writing down the coefficients only, multiplying them together in the ordinary way, and then inserting the successive powers of the letter at the end of the operation. In using this method the expressions must be arranged according to ascending or descending powers of the common letter, and zero coefficients must be used to represent terms corresponding to missing powers of that letter.

Example. Multiply $2x^3-4x^2-5$ by $3x^2+4x-2$.

$$\begin{array}{r} 2-\ 4+\ 0-\ 5 \\ 3+\ 4-\ 2 \\ \hline 6-12+\ 0-15 \\ \quad 8-16+\ 0-20 \\ \quad\quad -\ 4+\ 8-\ 0+10 \\ \hline 6-\ 4-20-\ 7-20+10 \end{array}$$

Here we insert a zero coefficient to represent the power of x which is absent in the multiplicand. In the product the highest power of x is clearly x^5, and the others follow in descending order.

Thus the product is

$$6x^5-4x^4-20x^3-7x^2-20x+10.$$

The method of detached coefficients may also be used to multiply two compound expressions which are homogeneous and contain powers of two letters.

Example. Multiply $3a^4+2a^3b+4ab^3+2b^4$ by $2a^2-b^2$.

$$\begin{array}{r} 3+2+0+4+2 \\ 2+0\ -1 \\ \hline 6+4+0+8+4 \\ \quad -3-2-0-4-2 \\ \hline 6+4-3+6+4-4-2 \end{array}$$

We write a zero coefficient to represent the term containing a^2b^2 which is absent in the first expression. Similarly, the term containing ab is represented by a zero coefficient in the second expression.

The law of formation of the literal factors is easily seen, and the complete product is

$$6a^6+4a^5b-3a^4b^2+6a^3b^3+4a^2b^4-4ab^5-2b^6.$$

Note. Beginners should on no account attempt to use detached coefficients until they are well practised in the ordinary full process of multiplication.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Example. Resolve into factors $7x^2 - 19x - 6$.

Write down $(7x \quad 3)(x \quad 2)$ for a first trial, noticing that 3 and 2 must have opposite signs. These factors give $7x^2$ and -6 for the first and third terms. But since $7 \times 2 - 3 \times 1 = 11$, the combination fails to give the correct coefficient of the middle term.

Next try $(7x \quad 2)(x \quad 3)$.

Since $7 \times 3 - 2 \times 1 = 19$, these factors will be correct if we insert the signs so that the negative shall predominate.

Thus $7x^2 - 19x - 6 = (7x + 2)(x - 3)$.

[Verify by mental multiplication.]

132. In actual work it will not be necessary to put down all these steps at length. The student will soon find that the different cases may be rapidly reviewed, and the unsuitable combinations rejected at once.

It is especially important to pay attention to the two following hints:

1. If the third term of the trinomial is positive, then the second terms of its factors have both the same sign, and this sign is the same as that of the middle term of the trinomial.

2. If the third term of the trinomial is negative, then the second terms of its factors have opposite signs.

Example 1. Resolve into factors $14x^2 + 29x - 15$ .....(1),
$14x^2 - 29x - 15$ .....(2).

In each case we may write down $(7x \quad 3)(2x \quad 5)$ as a first trial, noticing that 3 and 5 must have opposite signs.

And since $7 \times 5 - 3 \times 2 = 29$, we have only now to insert the proper signs in each factor.

In (1) the positive sign must predominate,

in 2 the negative .....

Therefore $14x^2 + 29x - 15 = (7x - 3)(2x + 5)$.
$14x^2 - 29x - 15 = (7x + 3)(2x - 5)$.

Example 2. Resolve into factors $5x^2 + 17x + 6$ .....(1),
$5x^2 - 17x + 6$ .....(2).

In (1) we notice that the factors which give 6 are both positive.
In (2) ..... negative.

And therefore for (1) we may write $(5x + \quad)(x + \quad)$.
(2) ..... $(5x - \quad)(x - \quad)$.

And, since $5 \times 3 + 1 \times 2 = 17$, we see that

$5x^2 + 17x + 6 = (5x + 2)(x + 3)$.
$5x^2 - 17x + 6 = (5x - 2)(x - 3)$.

Resuming the work, we have

$$\begin{array}{r|l|l|l}
x & 3x^3-13x^2+23x-21 & 3x^2-10x+7 & x \\
 & 3x^3-10x^2+7x & 3x^2-7x & \\
\hline
-1 & \quad -3x^2+16x-21 & \quad -3x+7 & -1 \\
 & \quad -3x^2+10x-7 & \quad -3x+7 & \\
\hline
 & \qquad 2)\,6x-14 & & \\
\hline
 & \qquad 3x-7 & &
\end{array}$$

Therefore the H.C.F. is $3x-7$.

The factor 2 has been removed on the same grounds as the factor 9 above.

Example 2. Find the highest common factor of

$$2x^3+x^2-x-2 \quad \ldots\ldots(1),$$

and

$$3x^3-2x^2+x-2 \quad \ldots\ldots(2),$$

As the expressions stand we cannot begin to divide one by the other without using a fractional quotient. The difficulty may be obviated by *introducing* a suitable factor, just as in the last case we found it useful to remove a factor when we could no longer proceed with the division in the ordinary way. The given expressions have no common *simple* factor, hence their H.C.F. cannot be affected if we multiply either of them by any simple factor.

Multiply (2) by 2, and use (1) as a divisor:

$$\begin{array}{r|l|l|l}
 & 2x^3+x^2-x-2 & 6x^3-4x^2+2x-4 & 3 \\
 & 7 & 6x^3+3x^2-3x-6 & \\
\hline
-2x & 14x^3+7x^2-7x-14 & \quad -7x^2+5x+2 & \\
 & 14x^3-10x^2-4x & \quad 17 & \\
\hline
17x & \qquad 17x^2-3x-14 & -119x^2+85x+34 & -7 \\
 & \qquad 17x^2-17x & -119x^2+21x+98 & \\
\hline
14 & \qquad\qquad 14x-14 & \qquad 64)\,64x-64 & \\
 & \qquad\qquad 14x-14 & \qquad\qquad x-1 &
\end{array}$$

Therefore the H.C.F. is $x-1$.

After the first division the factor 7 is introduced because the first remainder $-7x^2+5x+2$ will not divide $2x^3+x^2-x-2$. At the next stage the factor 17 is introduced for a similar reason, and finally the factor 64 is removed as explained in Example 1.

Note. Here the highest common factor might have been more easily obtained by arranging the expressions in *ascending* powers of x. In this case it will be found that there is no need to introduce a numerical factor in the course of the work. Detached coefficients, as explained in Art. 45, may also be used with advantage here, and will often effect a considerable saving of labour.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

152. When the factors of the numerator and denominator cannot be determined by inspection, the fraction may be reduced to its lowest terms by dividing both numerator and denominator by the highest common factor, which may be found by the rules given in Chap. XVIII.

Example. Reduce to lowest terms $\dfrac{3x^3-13x^2+23x-21}{15x^3-38x^2-2x+21}$.

First Method. The H.C.F. of numerator and denominator is $3x-7$.

Dividing numerator and denominator by $3x-7$, we obtain as respective quotients x^2-2x+3 and $5x^2-x-3$.

Thus $$\frac{3x^3-13x^2+23x-21}{15x^3-38x^2-2x+21}=\frac{(3x-7)(x^2-2x+3)}{(3x-7)(5x^2-x-3)}=\frac{x^2-2x+3}{5x^2-x-3}.$$

This is the simplest solution for the beginner; but in this and similar cases we may often effect the reduction without actually going through the process of finding the highest common factor.

Second Method. By Art. 141, the H.C.F. of numerator and denominator must be a factor of their sum $18x^3-51x^2+21x$, that is, of $3x(3x-7)(2x-1)$. If there be a common divisor it must clearly be $3x-7$; hence arranging numerator and denominator so as to shew $3x-7$ as a factor,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{the fraction} &= \frac{x^2(3x-7)-2x(3x-7)+3(3x-7)}{5x^2(3x-7)-x(3x-7)-3(3x-7)}\\ &= \frac{(3x-7)(x^2-2x+3)}{(3x-7)(5x^2-x-3)}\\ &= \frac{x^2-2x+3}{5x^2-x-3}.\end{aligned}$$

153. If either numerator or denominator can readily be resolved into factors we may use the following method.

Example. Reduce to lowest terms $\dfrac{x^3+3x^2-4x}{7x^3-18x^2+6x+5}$.

The numerator $=x(x^2+3x-4)=x(x+4)(x-1)$.

Of these factors the only one which can be a common divisor is $x-1$. Hence, arranging the denominator,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{the fraction} &= \frac{x(x+4)(x-1)}{7x^2(x-1)-11x(x-1)-5(x-1)}\\ &= \frac{x(x+4)(x-1)}{(x-1)(7x^2-11x-5)}=\frac{x(x+4)}{7x^2-11x-5}.\end{aligned}$$

MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES IV.

[*The following Examples for revision are arranged in groups under different headings; each group illustrates one or more of the principal rules and processes already discussed, and for the most part the Examples present more variety and difficulty than those of the same type which have appeared in previous exercises.*]

Substitutions and Brackets.

1. Find the value of $\dfrac{a+\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}{a^3-2b(a^2-b^2)}$ when $a=-4$, $b=-3$.

2. When $a=1$, $b=-1$, $c=2$ evaluate the expression

$$\sqrt{3a^3(b-c)+3b^3(c-a)+3c^3(a-b)}.$$

3. Simplify

$$a(b-c)^3-a(b-c)(2b^2-bc+2c^2)+(ab+ac)(b^2-c^2);$$

and find its value when $a=1$, $b=2$, $c=3$.

4. Find the value of

$$\sqrt[3]{\{5(b^2-c^2)-a^2\}}+\sqrt[4]{3\{a(a^2-c^2)-1\}}$$

when $a=4$, $b=5$, $c=3$.

5. Find the value of

$$\sqrt{(x^2+y^3+z)(x-y-3z)}\div\sqrt[3]{xy^3z^2}$$

when $x=-1$, $y=-3$, $z=1$.

6. When $a=0$, $b=2$, $x=1$, $y=-3$, $z=5$, find the numerical value of

(1) $(x-y)^3-3a(x-y)^2+3b(x^3-y^3)$;

(2) $(x-a)^3-b^2(x-y+z)+\sqrt{(bx^2-axy+y^2+z^2)}$.

7. If $x=6$, $y=7$, $z=8$, find the value of

(1) $x\left\{\frac{x}{7}-\frac{2}{3}\left(\frac{y}{4}+1\right)\right\}-\frac{2}{7}\left\{y(x+1)+\frac{1}{2}(x^2-2y)-\frac{7x}{3}\right\}$;

as will be given effect a col... $\frac{y}{2}\left\{y-3\left(\frac{x}{3}-xz^2\right)\right\}-2xz\left\{-y\left(1+\frac{y}{2xz^2}\right)\right\}$.

Example. Find the value of

$$\frac{a}{(a-b)(a-c)(x-a)}+\frac{b}{(b-c)(b-a)(x-b)}+\frac{c}{(c-a)(c-b)(x-c)}.$$

Changing the sign of one factor in each denominator, so as to preserve cyclic order, we get for the lowest common denominator,

$$(a-b)(b-c)(c-a)(x-a)(x-b)(x-c).$$

The whole expression has for its numerator

$$-[a(b-c)(x-b)(x-c)+\ldots\ldots+\ldots\ldots]$$

or $$-[a(b-c)\{x^2-(b+c)x+bc\}+\ldots\ldots+\ldots\ldots].$$

Arrange it according to powers of x; thus

coefficient of $x^2 = -\{a(b-c)+b(c-a)+c(a-b)\}$
$=0$;

coefficient of $x = \{a(b^2-c^2)+b(c^2-a^2)+c(a^2-b^2)\}$
$=(b-c)(c-a)(a-b)$; [Art. 223.]

terms which do not contain x
$= -\{abc(b-c)+abc(c-a)+abc(a-b)\}$
$= -abc\{b-c+c-a+a-b\}$
$=0.$

Hence the expression $=\dfrac{(b-c)(c-a)(a-b)x}{(b-c)(c-a)(a-b)(x-a)(x-b)(x-c)}$

$$=\frac{x}{(x-a)(x-b)(x-c)}.$$

Note. In examples of this kind the work will be much facilitated if the student accustoms himself to readily writing down the following equivalents:

$$(b-c)+(c-a)+(a-b)=0.$$
$$a(b-c)+b(c-a)+c(a-b)=0.$$
$$a^2(b-c)+b^2(c-a)+c^2(a-b)=-(a-b)(b-c)(c-a).$$
$$bc(b-c)+ca(c-a)+ab(a-b)=-(a-b)(b-c)(c-a).$$
$$a(b^2-c^2)+b(c^2-a^2)+c(a^2-b^2)=(a-b)(b-c)(c-a).$$

Some of the identities in XXIX. c. may also be remembered with advantage.

*EXAMPLES XXIX. d.

1. $\dfrac{a}{(a-b)(a-c)}+\dfrac{b}{(b-c)(b-a)}+\dfrac{c}{(c-a)(c-b)}.$

2. $\dfrac{bc}{(a-b)(a-c)}+\dfrac{ca}{(b-c)(b-a)}+\dfrac{ab}{(c-a)(c-b)}.$

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Example 2. The remainder when x^4-2x^3+x-7 is divided by $x+2$ is

$$(-2)^4-2(-2)^3+(-2)-7;$$

that is, $16+16-2-7$, or 23.

Or the remainder may be found more shortly by substituting $x=-2$ in $[\{(x-2)x\}x+1]x-7$.

Example 3. Find the factors of $bc(b-c)+ca(c-a)+ab(a-b)$.

On trial, this expression vanishes when $b=c$; therefore $b-c$ is a factor. Similarly $c-a$, $a-b$ may be shewn to be factors.

$$\therefore\ bc(b-c)+ca(c-a)+ab(a-b)=M(b-c)(c-a)(a-b).....(1);$$

and since the left-hand member of this identity is only of three dimensions in a, b, c, the factor M must be some numerical quantity independent of a, b, c; its value can therefore be found by giving particular values to a, b, c, or by equating the coefficients of like terms on each side.

Let $a=0$, $b=1$, $c=2$, then (1) becomes

$$2(-1)+0+0=M(-1)\times 2\times(-1);$$

whence $M=-1$.

$$\therefore\ bc(b-c)+ca(c-a)+ab(a-b)=-(b-c)(c-a)(a-b).$$

***230.** We shall now give general proofs of the statements made in Art. 55. We suppose n to be positive and integral.

I. *To prove that* x^n-y^n *is always divisible by* $x-y$.

By the remainder theorem when x^n-y^n is divided by $x-y$ the remainder is

$$y^n-y^n, \text{ or } 0,$$

that is, x^n-y^n is always divisible by $x-y$.

II. *To prove that* x^n+y^n *is divisible by* $x+y$ *when* n *is odd, but not when* n *is even.*

By the remainder theorem when x^n+y^n is divided by $x+y$ the remainder is

$$(-y)^n+y^n.$$

(1) if n is odd, $(-y)^n+y^n=-y^n+y^n=0$;

(2) if n is even, $(-y)^n+y^n=y^n+y^n=2y^n$;

hence there is a remainder when n is even, but none when n is odd; which proves the proposition.

In like manner it may be proved that x^n-y^n is divisible by $x+y$ when n is even; and x^n+y^n is *never* divisible by $x-y$.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Example 1. Form the equation whose roots are 3 and -2.

The equation is $(x-3)(x+2)=0,$

or $x^2-x-6=0.$

Example 2. Form the equation whose roots are $\frac{3}{7}$ and $-\frac{4}{5}$.

The equation is $\left(x-\frac{3}{7}\right)\left(x+\frac{4}{5}\right)=0;$

that is, $(7x-3)(5x+4)=0,$

or $35x^2+13x-12=0.$

When the roots are irrational it is easier to use the following method:

Example 3. Form the equation whose roots are $2+\sqrt{3}$ and $2-\sqrt{3}$.

We have sum of roots $=4,$

product of roots $=1;$

$\therefore$ the equation is $x^2-4x+1=0,$

by using formula (2) of the present article.

341. The results of Art. 339 are most important, and they are generally sufficient to solve problems connected with the roots of quadratics. In such questions *the roots should never be considered singly*, but use should be made of the relations obtained by writing down the sum of the roots, and their product, in terms of the coefficients of the equation.

Example 1. If α and β are the roots of $x^2-px+q=0$, find the value of (1) $\alpha^2+\beta^2$, (2) $\alpha^3+\beta^3$.

We have $\alpha+\beta=p,$

$\alpha\beta=q.$

$\therefore\ \alpha^2+\beta^2=(\alpha+\beta)^2-2\alpha\beta$

$=p^2-2q.$

Again, $\alpha^3+\beta^3=(\alpha+\beta)(\alpha^2+\beta^2-\alpha\beta)$

$=p\{(\alpha+\beta)^2-3\alpha\beta\}$

$=p(p^2-3q).$

Example 2. If α, β are the roots of the equation $lx^2+mx+n=0$, find the equation whose roots are $\frac{\alpha}{\beta}$, $\frac{\beta}{\alpha}$.

We have sum of roots $=\frac{\alpha}{\beta}+\frac{\beta}{\alpha}=\frac{\alpha^2+\beta^2}{\alpha\beta},$

product of roots $=\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\cdot\frac{\beta}{\alpha}=1;$

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Example 1. Expand $(1+x)^{-3}$ to four terms.

$$(1+x)^{-3}=1+(-3)x+\frac{(-3)(-3-1)}{1.2}x^2+\frac{(-3)(-3-1)(-3-2)}{1.2.3}x^3+..$$

$$=1-3x+\frac{3.4}{1.2}x^2-\frac{3.4.5}{1.2.3}x^3+\ldots$$

$$=1-3x+6x^2-10x^3+\ldots.$$

Example 2. Expand $(4+3x)^{\frac{3}{2}}$ to four terms.

$$(4+3x)^{\frac{3}{2}}=4^{\frac{3}{2}}\left(1+\frac{3x}{4}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}=8\left(1+\frac{3x}{4}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}$$

$$=8\left[1+\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{3x}{4}+\frac{\frac{3}{2}\left(\frac{3}{2}-1\right)}{1.2}\left(\frac{3x}{4}\right)^2+\frac{\frac{3}{2}\left(\frac{3}{2}-1\right)\left(\frac{3}{2}-2\right)}{1.2.3}\left(\frac{3x}{4}\right)^3+\ldots\right]$$

$$=8\left[1+\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{3x}{4}+\frac{3}{8}\cdot\frac{9x^2}{16}-\frac{1}{16}\cdot\frac{27x^3}{64}+\ldots\right]$$

$$=8+9x+\frac{27}{16}x^2-\frac{27}{128}x^3+\ldots.$$

369. In finding the general term we must now use the formula

$$\frac{n(n-1)(n-2)\ldots\ldots(n-r+1)}{\lfloor r}x^r$$

written in full; for the symbol ${}^nC_r$ cannot be employed when n is fractional or negative.

Example 1. Find the general term in the expansion of $(1+x)^{\frac{1}{2}}$.

$$\text{The } (r+1)^{\text{th}} \text{ term}=\frac{\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{2}-1\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}-2\right)\ldots\ldots\left(\frac{1}{2}-r+1\right)}{\lfloor r}x^r$$

$$=\frac{1(-1)(-3)(-5)\ldots\ldots(-2r+3)}{2^r\lfloor r}x^r.$$

The number of factors in the numerator is r, and $r-1$ of these are negative; therefore, by taking -1 out of each of these negative factors, we may write the above expression

$$(-1)^{r-1}\frac{1.3.5\ldots\ldots(2r-3)}{2^r\lfloor r}x^r.$$

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

381. *To determine the characteristic of the logarithm of any number greater than unity.*

It is clear that a number with two digits in its integral part lies between 10^1 and 10^2; a number with three digits in its integral part lies between 10^2 and 10^3; and so on. Hence a number with n digits in its integral part lies between 10^{n-1} and 10^n.

Let N be a number whose integral part contains n digits; then

$$N = 10^{(n-1)+\text{a fraction}};$$

$$\therefore \log N = (n-1)+\text{a fraction}.$$

Hence the characteristic is $n-1$; that is, *the characteristic of the logarithm of a number greater than unity is less by one than the number of digits in its integral part, and is positive.*

382. *To determine the characteristic of the logarithm of a decimal fraction.*

A decimal with one cipher immediately after the decimal point, such as ·0324, being greater than ·01 and less than ·1, lies between 10^{-2} and 10^{-1}; a number with two ciphers after the decimal point lies between 10^{-3} and 10^{-2}; and so on. Hence a decimal fraction with n ciphers immediately after the decimal point lies between $10^{-(n+1)}$ and 10^{-n}.

Let D be a decimal beginning with n ciphers; then

$$D = 10^{-(n+1)+\text{a fraction}};$$

$$\therefore \log D = -(n+1)+\text{a fraction}.$$

Hence the characteristic is $-(n+1)$; that is, *the characteristic of the logarithm of a decimal fraction is greater by unity than the number of ciphers immediately after the decimal point and is negative.*

383. The logarithms to base 10 of all integers from 1 to 200000 have been found and tabulated; in most Tables they are given to seven places of decimals. This is the system in practical use, and it has two great advantages:

(1) From the results already proved it is evident that the characteristics can be written down by inspection, so that only the mantissæ have to be registered in the Tables.

(2) The mantissæ are the same for the logarithms of all

In Crown 8vo. Price 8s. 6d.

SOLUTIONS OF THE EXAMPLES

IN

ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA

FOR SCHOOLS

BY

H. S. HALL, M.A.

FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

AND

S. R. KNIGHT, B.A.

FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PRESS OPINIONS

Academy—"These solutions are just what are wanted by mathematical masters who cannot command the time necessary for the immediate working-out of many of the exercises whilst engaged with their classes. They are still more valuable, perhaps, for that large class of students who cannot avail themselves of a teacher's guiding hand."

Nature—"By making a judicious use of the examples, the student will find himself materially helped, especially if he is studying the subject without the aid of a teacher. We may also recommend this Key to teachers, who will find much of their time saved by having it in their possession."

Fifth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

HIGHER ALGEBRA

A SEQUEL TO

ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA FOR SCHOOLS

BY

H. S. HALL, M.A.

FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

AND

S. R. KNIGHT, B.A.

FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

FIFTH EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1919

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

IN this edition the text and examples are substantially the same as in previous editions, but a few articles have been recast, and all the examples have been verified again. We have also added a collection of three hundred Miscellaneous Examples which will be found useful for advanced students. These examples have been selected mainly but not exclusively from Scholarship or Senate House papers; much care has been taken to illustrate every part of the subject, and to fairly represent the principal University and Civil Service Examinations.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS

Athenæum—"The *Elementary Algebra* by the same authors, which has already reached a third edition, is a work of such exceptional merit that those acquainted with it will form high expectations of the sequel to it now issued. Nor will they be disappointed. Of the authors' *Higher Algebra* as of their *Elementary Algebra*, **we unhesitatingly assert that it is by far the best work of its kind with which we are acquainted. It supplies a want very much felt by teachers.**"

Academy—"Is as admirably adapted for College students as its predecessor was for schools. It is a well-arranged and well-reasoned-out treatise, and contains much that we have not met with before in similar works. **For instance, we note as specially good the articles on Convergency and Divergency of Series, on the treatment of Series generally, and the treatment of Continued Fractions. . . . The book is almost indispensable, and will be found to improve upon acquaintance.**"

Saturday Review—"They have presented such difficult parts of the subject as Convergency and Divergency of Series, Series generally, and Probability with great clearness and fulness of detail. . . . **No student preparing for the University should omit to get this work in addition to any other he may have, for he need not fear to find here a mere repetition of the old story.** We have found much matter of interest and many valuable hints. . . . We would specially note the examples, of which there are enough, and more than enough, to try any student's powers."

School Guardian—"**We have no hesitation in saying that, in our opinion, it is one of the best books that have been published on the subject. . . . The last chapter supplies a most excellent introduction to the Theory of Equations.** We would also specially mention the chapter on Determinants and their application, forming a useful preparation for the reading of some separate work on the subject. The authors have certainly added to their already high reputation as writers of mathematical text-books by the work now under notice, which is **remarkable for clearness, accuracy, and thoroughness. . . . Although we have referred to it on many points, in no single instance have we found it wanting.**"

"**It is a splendid sequel to your Elementary Algebra**, and I am very pleased to see you have introduced the **essential parts of the Theory of Equations** in Chap. XXV., which contains all that is required of the subject for ordinary practical purposes."—A. G. GREENHILL, M.A., *Professor of Mathematics to the Senior Class of Artillery Officers, R.A. Institution, Woolwich.*

An *independent variable* is a quantity which may have any value we choose to assign to it, and the corresponding *dependent variable* has its value determined as soon as the value of the independent variable is known.

*123. An expression of the form

$$p_0x^n + p_1x^{n-1} + p_2x^{n-2} + \ldots + p_{n-1}x + p_n$$

where n is a positive integer, and the coefficients p_0, p_1, $p_2 \ldots p_n$ do not involve x, is called a **rational and integral algebraical function of x.** In the present chapter we shall confine our attention to functions of this kind.

*124. A function is said to be **linear** when it contains no higher power of the variable than the first; thus $ax + b$ is a linear function of x. A function is said to be **quadratic** when it contains no higher power of the variable than the second; thus $ax^2 + bx + c$ is a quadratic function of x. Functions of the *third*, *fourth*,... degrees are those in which the highest power of the variable is respectively the *third*, *fourth*,.... Thus in the last article the expression is a function of x of the nth degree.

*125. The symbol $f(x, y)$ is used to denote a function of two variables x and y; thus $ax + by + c$, and $ax^2 + bxy + cy^2 + dx + ey + f$ are respectively linear and quadratic functions of x, y.

The *equations* $f(x) = 0$, $f(x, y) = 0$ are said to be linear, quadratic,... according as the *functions* $f(x)$, $f(x, y)$ are linear, quadratic,....

*126. We have proved in Art. 120 that the *expression* $ax^2 + bx + c$ admits of being put in the form $a(x - \alpha)(x - \beta)$, where α and β are the roots of the *equation* $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$.

Thus a quadratic expression $ax^2 + bx + c$ is capable of being resolved into two rational factors of the first degree, whenever the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ has rational roots; that is, when $b^2 - 4ac$ is a perfect square.

*127. *To find the condition that a quadratic function of* x, y *may be resolved into two linear factors.*

Denote the function by $f(x, y)$ where

$$f(x, y) = ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c.$$

*305. *The series whose general term is* $\frac{1}{n\,(\log n)^p}$ *is convergent if* $p > 1$, *and divergent if* $p = 1$, *or* $p < 1$.

By the preceding article the series will be convergent or divergent for the same values of p as the series whose general term is

$$a^n \times \frac{1}{a^n\,(\log a^n)^p}, \text{ or } \frac{1}{(n \log a)^p}, \text{ or } \frac{1}{(\log a)^p} \times \frac{1}{n^p}.$$

The constant factor $\frac{1}{(\log a)^p}$ is common to every term; therefore the given series will be convergent or divergent for the same values of p as the series whose general term is $\frac{1}{n^p}$. Hence the required result follows. [Art. 290.]

*306. *The series whose general term is* u_n *is convergent or divergent according as* $Lim \left[\left\{n\left(\frac{u_n}{u_{n+1}} - 1\right) - 1\right\} \log n\right] > 1$, or < 1.

Let us compare the given series with the series whose general term is $\frac{1}{n(\log n)^p}$.

When $p > 1$ the auxiliary series is convergent, and in this case the given series is convergent by Art. 299, if

$$\frac{u_n}{u_{n+1}} > \frac{(n+1)\{\log(n+1)\}^p}{n\,(\log n)^p} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (1).$$

Now when n is very large,

$$\log(n+1) = \log n + \log\left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right) = \log n + \frac{1}{n}, \text{ nearly;}$$

Hence the condition (1) becomes

$$\frac{u_n}{u_{n+1}} > \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)\left(1 + \frac{1}{n \log n}\right)^p;$$

that is,
$$\frac{u_n}{u_{n+1}} > \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)\left(1 + \frac{p}{n \log n}\right);$$

that is,
$$\frac{u_n}{u_{n+1}} > 1 + \frac{1}{n} + \frac{p}{n \log n};$$

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Example. Find the value of

$$\begin{vmatrix} 30 & 11 & 20 & 38 \\ 6 & 3 & 0 & 9 \\ 11 & -2 & 36 & 3 \\ 19 & 6 & 17 & 22 \end{vmatrix}$$

Diminish each constituent of the first column by twice the corresponding constituent in the second column, and each constituent of the fourth column by three times the corresponding constituent in the second column, and we obtain

$$\begin{vmatrix} 8 & 11 & 20 & 5 \\ 0 & 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 15 & -2 & 36 & 9 \\ 7 & 16 & 17 & 4 \end{vmatrix},$$

and since the second row has three zero constituents this determinant

$$=3\begin{vmatrix} 8 & 20 & 5 \\ 15 & 36 & 9 \\ 7 & 17 & 4 \end{vmatrix} =3\begin{vmatrix} 8 & 20 & 5 \\ 8 & 19 & 5 \\ 7 & 17 & 4 \end{vmatrix} =3\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 8 & 19 & 5 \\ 7 & 17 & 4 \end{vmatrix} =-3\begin{vmatrix} 8 & 5 \\ 7 & 4 \end{vmatrix} =9.$$

505. The following examples shew artifices which are occasionally useful.

Example 1. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b & c & d \\ b & a & d & c \\ c & d & a & b \\ d & c & b & a \end{vmatrix} = (a+b+c+d)(a-b+c-d)(a-b-c+d)(a+b-c-d).$$

By adding together all the rows we see that $a+b+c+d$ is a factor of the determinant; by adding together the first and third rows and subtracting from the result the sum of the second and fourth rows we see that $a-b+c-d$ is also a factor; similarly it can be shewn that $a-b-c+d$ and $a+b-c-d$ are factors; the remaining factor is numerical, and, from a comparison of the terms involving a^4 on each side, is easily seen to be unity; hence we have the required result.

Example 2. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & d \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 & d^2 \\ a^3 & b^3 & c^3 & d^3 \end{vmatrix} = (a-b)(a-c)(a-d)(b-c)(b-d)(c-d).$$

The given determinant vanishes when $b=a$, for then the first and second columns are identical; hence $a-b$ is a factor of the determinant [Art. 514]. Similarly each of the expressions $a-c$, $a-d$, $b-c$, $b-d$, $c-d$ is a factor of the determinant; the determinant being of six dimensions, the remaining factor must be numerical; and, from a comparison of the terms involvi- bc^2d^3 on each side, it is easily seen to be unity; hence we obtain the reqr result.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Cubic Equations.

575. The general type of a cubic equation is

$$x^3 + Px^2 + Qx + R = 0,$$

but as explained in Art. 573 this equation can be reduced to the simpler form $x^3 + qx + r = 0$,
which we shall take as the standard form of a cubic equation.

576. To solve the equation $x^3 + qx + r = 0$.

Let $x = y + z$; then

$$x^3 = y^3 + z^3 + 3yz\,(y + z) = y^3 + z^3 + 3yzx,$$

and the given equation becomes

$$y^3 + z^3 + (3yz + q)\,x + r = 0.$$

At present y, z are any two quantities subject to the condition that their sum is equal to one of the roots of the given equation; if we further suppose that they satisfy the equation $3yz + q = 0$, they are completely determinate. We thus obtain

$$y^3 + z^3 = -r, \quad y^3 z^3 = -\frac{q^3}{27};$$

hence y^3, z^3 are the roots of the quadratic

$$t^2 + rt - \frac{q^3}{27} = 0.$$

Solving this equation, and putting

$$y^3 = -\frac{r}{2} + \sqrt{\frac{r^2}{4} + \frac{q^3}{27}} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (1),$$

$$z^3 = -\frac{r}{2} - \sqrt{\frac{r^2}{4} + \frac{q^3}{27}} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (2),$$

we obtain the value of x from the relation $x = y + z$; thus

$$x = \left\{-\frac{r}{2} + \sqrt{\frac{r^2}{4} + \frac{q^3}{27}}\right\}^{\frac{1}{3}} + \left\{-\frac{r}{2} - \sqrt{\frac{r^2}{4} + \frac{q^3}{27}}\right\}^{\frac{1}{3}}.$$

The above solution is generally known as *Cardan's Solution*, as it was first published by him in the *Ars Magna*, in 1545. Cardan obtained the solution from Tartaglia; but the solution of the cubic seems to have been due originally to Scipio Ferreo, about

231. It is known that at noon at a certain place the sun is hidden by clouds on an average two days out of every three: find the chance that at noon on at least four out of five specified future days the sun will be shining. [QUEEN'S COLL. OX.]

232. Solve the equations

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x^2+(y-z)^2&=a^2\\ y^2+(z-x)^2&=b^2\\ z^2+(x-y)^2&=c^2 \end{aligned}\right\}.$$

[EMM. COLL. CAMB.]

233. Eliminate x, y, z from the equations:

$$\frac{x^2-xy-xz}{a}=\frac{y^2-yz-yx}{b}=\frac{z^2-zx-zy}{c}, \text{ and } ax+by+cz=0.$$

[MATH. TRIPOS.]

234. If two roots of the equation $x^3+px^2+qx+r=0$ be equal and of opposite signs, shew that $pq=r$. [QUEENS' COLL. CAMB.]

235. Sum the series:

(1) $1+2^3x+3^3x^2+\ldots\ldots+n^3x^{n-1}$,

(2) $$\frac{25}{1^2.2^3.3^3}+\frac{52}{2^2.3^3.4^3}+\ldots\ldots+\frac{5n^2+12n+8}{n^2(n+1)^3(n+2)^3}.$$

[EMM. COLL. CAMB.]

236. If $(1+a^3x^4)(1+a^5x^8)(1+a^9x^{16})(1+a^{17}x^{32})\ldots\ldots$
$=1+A_4x^4+A_8x^8+A_{12}x^{12}+\ldots\ldots$

prove that $A_{8n+4}=a^3A_{8n}$, and $A_{8n}=a^{2n}A_{4n}$; and find the first ten terms of the expansion. [CORPUS COLL. CAMB.]

237. On a sheet of water there is no current from A to B but a current from B to C; a man rows down stream from A to C in 3 hours, and up stream from C to A in $3\frac{1}{2}$ hours; had there been the same current all the way as from B to C, his journey down stream would have occupied $2\frac{3}{4}$ hours; find the length of time his return journey would have taken under the same circumstances.

238. Prove that the nth convergent to the continued fraction

$$\frac{3}{2+}\,\frac{3}{2+}\,\frac{3}{2+}\ldots\ldots \text{ is } \frac{3^{n+1}+3(-1)^{n+1}}{3^{n+1}-(-1)^{n+1}}.$$

[EMM. COLL. CAMB.]

239. If all the coefficients in the equation

$$x^n+p_1x^{n-1}+p_2x^{n-2}+\ldots\ldots+p_n=f(x)=0,$$

be whole numbers, and if $f(0)$ and $f(1)$ be each odd integers, prove that the equation cannot have a commensurable root.

[LONDON UNIVERSITY.]

In Crown 8vo. Price 10*s.* 6*d.*

SOLUTIONS OF THE EXAMPLES

IN

HIGHER ALGEBRA

BY

H. S. HALL, M.A.
FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

AND

S. R. KNIGHT, B.A.
FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PRESS OPINIONS

Academy—"A fitting complement of the text-book. . . . We have read a great number of these solutions, and have found them well suited to their purpose, as they are concisely put, and yet no necessary steps are suppressed."

Schoolmaster—"This Key to the authors' *Higher Algebra* is a companion in the best sense of the word. It not only contains solutions to nearly all the questions in the original work, but includes valuable hints as to processes, and judiciously guides the student wherever a word or two will help him in his study, and save time and labour in the elucidation of knotty points. . . . Such a Key will be of great use to teachers generally, and specially serviceable to that large class well known as 'private students.' We can heartily recommend the volume as educational and practical in an eminent degree."

Nature—"The volume will prove most useful to teachers, and we strongly recommend it to students who are beginning the study of Algebra without a teacher."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Third Edition. Revised and Enlarged
Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.

ALGEBRAICAL EXERCISES

AND

EXAMINATION PAPERS

WITH OR WITHOUT ANSWERS

BY

H. S. HALL, M.A., AND S. R. KNIGHT, B.A.

THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

Saturday Review—"To the exercises, one hundred and twenty in number, are added a large selection of examination papers set at the principal examinations, which require a knowledge of algebra. These papers are intended chiefly as an aid to teachers, who no doubt will find them useful as a criterion of the amount of proficiency to which they must work up their pupils before they can send them in to the several examinations with any certainty of success."

Irish Teachers' Journay.—"We know of no better work to place in the hands of junior teachers, monitors, and senior pupils. Any person who works carefully and steadily through this book could not possibly fail in an examination of Elementary Algebra. . . . We congratulate the authors on the skill displayed in the selections of examples."

Schoolmaster—"We can strongly recommend the volume to teachers seeking a well-arranged series of tests in algebra."

PREFACE

THIS book consists of one hundred and twenty progressive miscellaneous Exercises, followed by a collection of Papers set at recent Examinations.

The EXERCISES have been frequently tested among our own pupils, and each will be found of suitable length for about an hour's work.

They are arranged as follows:

Part I. takes in the early rules up to, and inclusive of, Simple Equations; in Part II., Involution, Evolution, and Simplé Fractions are introduced; Part III. takes in Resolution into Factors, and Fractions of all kinds; Part IV., Quadratics, Indices, and Surds; Part V., Ratio and the Progressions; Part VI., Permutations, Combinations, and the Binomial Theorem; and Part VII. consists of Papers of Miscellaneous Equations of the most useful types.

The EXAMINATION PAPERS are more varied in length and character; they will be found to comprise specimens of papers set at all the most important examinations in which a knowledge of Elementary Algebra is required.

EXERCISE XLIV.

1. Solve the equations :

(1) $\cdot 8x - \cdot 067 = \cdot 473 + \cdot 071x.$

(2) $33x + 35y = 4, \quad 55x - 55y = -16.$

2. Extract the square root of

$$16x^3(x-2) - 8x(1-3x) + 1.$$

3. Resolve into factors :

(1) $60a^4b^5 - 135a^2b^7.$ (2) $x^3 - 3x^2 + 7x - 21.$

4. Find the lowest common multiple of

$$32a^5b^2 - 32a^4b^3 + 8a^3b^4, \quad 48a^5b^5 - 48a^4b^6 + 12a^3b^7.$$

5. Find the value of

$$2 + \frac{3x}{2y} - \frac{6x}{3x+2y} + \frac{9x^2(3x-2y)}{2y(4y^2-9x^2)}.$$

6. Divide

$$2 - \frac{3n}{m} + \frac{9n^2-2m^2}{m^2+2mn} \text{ by } \frac{1}{m} - \frac{1}{m-2n-\frac{4n^2}{m+n}}$$

7. Solve the equations :

(1) $\dfrac{1}{x-2} - \dfrac{1}{x-3} + \dfrac{1}{x+1} = 0.$

(2) $a(x+y) + b(x-y) = 2a, \quad y(a+b) - x(a-b) = 2b.$

8. A dealer adds 20 per cent. to the cost price of an article to make the selling price; afterwards in selling off he deducts 10 per cent. from the selling price and then obtains a profit of 6 shillings : find the cost price.

EXERCISE XLV.

1. Divide $1 - 2x$ by $1 - x + 2x^2$ to five terms, and give the remainder.

2. Subtract the cube of $4x^2 - 3$ from the square of

$$8x^3 - 9x - 1.$$

8. Simplify $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}+\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}+\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}-\dfrac{\sqrt{3}-\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}-\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}$.

EXERCISE XCIV.

1. Simplify

(1) $\dfrac{a^2+24bc-16b^2-9c^2}{16b^2-9c^2-6ac-a^2}\div\dfrac{a+4b-3c}{a+4b+3c}$.

(2) $\left(\dfrac{x^2}{y^2}-2+\dfrac{y^2}{x^2}\right)\left(\dfrac{x^4y^4}{xy+y^2}\right)\left(\dfrac{\dfrac{x}{y}-1+\dfrac{y}{x}}{x^3-2x^2y+xy^2}\right)$.

2. At what time between 7 and 8 o'clock will the hands of a watch be directly opposite to each other?

3. Find a value of x which will make

$$x^5-8x^3+11x^2+7x-1789$$

exactly divisible by x^2+7x-1.

4. The sum of n terms of an A. P. is 377; the first term is 11, and the common difference is 3: find n.

5. Sum to n terms the series whose r^{th} term is

$$r(r-1)(r+1).$$

6. In what scale is the denary number $18\cdot\dot{3}$ represented by $20\cdot3$?

Prove that $1\cdot2544$ is a perfect square in any scale whose radix is greater than 5.

7. Five times the number of combinations of n things 5 together is equal to eighteen times the number of combinations of $n-2$ things 3 together: find n.

8. Write down the $(k+1)^{\text{th}}$ term of $\dfrac{1}{(1-3x)^2}$, and the first two terms of the expansion of

$$\frac{(1-3x)^{\frac{2}{3}}.(1+x)^{-\frac{3}{2}}}{(1-2x)^{\frac{5}{2}}}.$$

XLII.

Queen's Scholarship Examination. December, 1898.

1. Arrange the following in ascending powers of x and collect coefficients:

$$a^3+a^2x+x^3+bx^2+c^2x+bcx-2(a+b)x^2+(ax+b^2)x.$$

2. Divide the sum of

$2p^4x-2p^3x^2+4px^4$, and $p^4x+2p^3x^2-5p^2x^3-x^5$ by p^2+px-x^2.

3. X is taken n times from Y with remainder Z. If $mZ=X$ show that Z is the G.C.M. of X and Y.

4. Simplify

$$\frac{\sqrt{(x^2+y^2)^2-(x^2-y^2)^2}}{\sqrt{(x^2-y^2)^2+4x^2y^2}}\times\frac{x^4-y^4}{\sqrt{(x^2-y^2)^2-4x^2y^2}}-2\left(\frac{x+y}{\frac{1}{x}+\frac{1}{y}}\right)^2.$$

5. Find the cube root of

$$1-6x+18x^2-32x^3+36x^4-24x^5+8x^6,$$

showing the full working.

6. Solve the equations:

(i) $(4x+3)\left(1-\frac{4}{x+3}\right)=3x-10+\frac{(x+2)(x+9)}{x+3}$;

(ii) $\frac{14}{x+1}=6-\frac{15}{x-10}$.

7. An excursion train carries first, second, and third class passengers, 760 in all. The first class fare is 7*s.* 6*d.*, second 5*s.* 6*d.*, third 4*s.* There are twice as many fir[illegible] second class passengers, and the fares amount to £186. [illegible] many second and third class passengers are there?

8. I have a quantity. If I invert it, I obtain the same amount as if I add $1\frac{11}{45}$ to it. What is the quantity?

9. (*a*) Distinguish between an identity and an equation.

(*b*) Which of the following are equations and which identities?

$$(x+a)(x^2-bx+a^2)=x^3+a^3;$$
$$(x-b)(x^2+bx+b^2)=x^3-b^3;$$
$$(x+a)(x-a)=x^2-a^2;$$
$$\tfrac{1}{2}\left\{\frac{x-a}{2}+\frac{x+a}{2}\right\}=\frac{(x+a)^2-(x-a)^2}{8a}.$$

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. New Edition. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d. With Answers, 4s. 6d. Key, 8s. 6d. net. Answers, 1s.

[First Edition 1863; reprinted 1865, 1867, 1869, 1870, 1872 (2), 1874, 1875, 1876, 1877, 1878, 1880, 1881, 1882, 1883, 1884, 1885, 1886, 1888, 1889, 1891, 1892, 1895, 1897, 1899.]

ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS

WITH NUMEROUS EXAMPLES

BY

I. TODHUNTER, Sc.D., F.R.S.

NEW EDITION THOROUGHLY REVISED

BY

S. L. LONEY, M.A.

LATE FELLOW OF SIDNEY SUSSEX COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE; PROFESSOR AT THE ROYAL HOLLOWAY COLLEGE.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

Special Features of the New Edition—The size of the page has been enlarged and types of the best kinds have been used. The total quantity of matter in the book has been increased by more than one half. The total number of Examples has been more than doubled. The Examples have not all been put at the ends of the chapters, but have been arranged in sets throughout the chapters. In the Revised Edition there are 118 sets, whilst in the old Edition there are 44. The chapter on Factors has been entirely re-written, and a large number of Examples provided. The chapters on Simple Equations and Simple Equation Problems have been put earlier in the book. Additional chapters have been inserted on the Theory of Quadratic Equations, Logarithms, and Miscellaneous Propositions. The later chapters on Progressions, Permutations, and the Binomial Theorem have been considerably expanded and almost re-written. The Miscellaneous Examples have been arranged in sets for use at the different stages of the student's progress. Hardly anything has been omitted, and no chapter is without some additions and, it is hoped, improvements. Arrangements have been made to show at a glance what portions of the Revised Edition are in the old Edition.

They are 9 and 8. Thus $t^2+t-72=(t+9)(t-8)$.

$$\therefore\quad 6x^2+x-12=\frac{1}{6}[6x+9][6x-8]=(2x+3)(3x-4).$$

We now give some more examples.

Ex. 1. *Factorize* $21x^2+92x+55$.

$$21x^2+92x+55=\frac{1}{21}[21^2x^2+92\times 21x+21\times 55]\ =\frac{1}{21}[t^2+92t+1155],$$

where $t=21x$.

We want two numbers whose product is 1155 and whose sum is 92. They are 15 and 77.

$$\text{Thus } 21x^2+92x+55=\frac{1}{21}(t+15)(t+77)=\frac{1}{21}[21x+15][21x+77]$$
$$=(7x+5)(3x+11).$$

Ex. 2. *Factorize* $6x^2+x-15$.

$$6x^2+x-15=\frac{1}{6}[6^2x^2+6x-90]=\frac{1}{6}[t^2+t-90],\text{ where } t=6x.$$

We want two numbers whose product is 90 and whose difference is 1. They are 10 and 9. Thus

$$6x^2+x-15=\frac{1}{6}[t+10][t-9]=\frac{1}{6}[6x+10][6x-9]=[3x+5][2x-3].$$

Ex. 3. *Factorize* $10x^2-31x-63$.

$$\text{The expression}=\frac{1}{10}[10^2x^2-31\times 10x-630]=\frac{1}{10}[t^2-31t-630],$$

where $t=10x$.

We want two numbers whose product is 630 and whose difference is 31. They are 14 and 45. Hence the expression

$$=\frac{1}{10}[t-45][t+14]=\frac{1}{10}[10x-45][10x+14]=(2x-9)(5x+7).$$

127. Such expressions as the preceding may also be factorized by guessing. Thus consider Ex. 2 of the last article.

Two quantities whose product is $6x^2$ are $3x$ and $2x$. Also since 15 has the negative sign prefixed, the second terms of the factors must be respectively positive and negative.

Assume then as a first trial $(2x+\ )(3x-\ )$. But since the middle term of the given expression has the positive sign, this trial solution, *if it be correct*, must be $(2x+5)(3x-3)$, and this gives 6 as the coefficient of x. Our trial solution is, therefore, incorrect. Next try $(2x-\ )(3x+\ )$.

On inserting 3 and 5 respectively, we have $(2x-3)(3x+5)$, which is correct.

The student will find that in some cases it is very difficult and tedious to guess the required coefficients.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

The student will see that we have introduced an auxiliary symbol a, to enable us to form the equation easily; and that we can remove it by division when the equation is formed.

Prob. 11. *Four gamesters, A, B, C, D, each with a different stock of money, sit down to play; A wins half of B's first stock, B wins a third part of C's, C wins a fourth part of D's, and D wins a fifth part of A's; and then each of the gamesters has £23. Find the stock of each at first.*

Let x denote the number of pounds which D won from A; then $5x$ will denote the number in A's first stock. Thus $4x$, together with what A won from B, make up 23; therefore $23-4x$ denotes the number of pounds which A won from B. And, since A won half of B's stock, $23-4x$ also denotes what was left with B after his loss to A.

Again, $23-4x$, together with what B won from C, make up 23; therefore $4x$ denotes the number of pounds which B won from C. Also, since B won a third of C's first stock, $12x$ denotes C's first stock, and therefore $8x$ denotes what was left with C after his loss to B.

Again, $8x$, together with what C won from D, make up 23; therefore $23-8x$ denotes the number of pounds which C won from D. And, since C won a fourth of D's first stock, $4(23-8x)$ denotes D's first stock; and therefore $3(23-8x)$ denotes what was left with D after his loss to C.

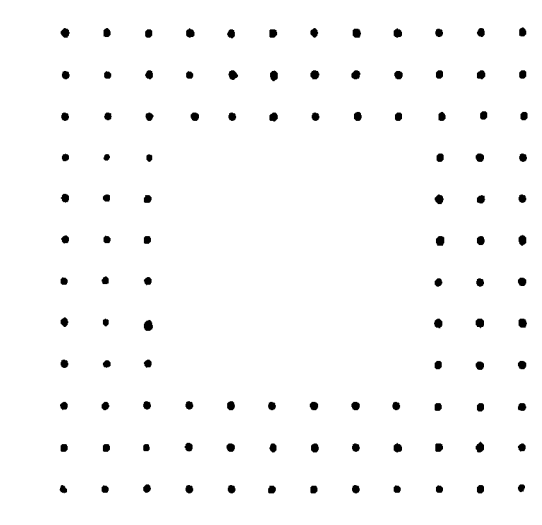
Finally, $3(23-8x)$, together with x, which D won from A, make up 23; thus

$$23 = 3(23-8x)+x, \text{ and hence } x=2.$$

Thus the stocks at first were 10, 30, 24, 28.

Prob. 12. *The number of men in a regiment is 960, and they are formed into a hollow square four deep: find the number of men in the front of this square.*

[A hollow square is a figure such as the adjoining, where the dots represent the soldiers. In this figure the number of men in the outer side is 12, and the men are standing 3 deep. The number of men in this figure is clearly equal to the difference between the number that would be in the square if it were solid, and the number that could stand in the unoccupied centre.



Now, clearly, the number of men that could stand in a side of the above unoccupied square

= number of men in outer side − twice the number of rows

$= 12 - 2 \times 3 = 12 - 6 = 6.$

Hence, in the above case, number of men $= 12^2 - 6^2 = 144 - 36 = 108.$]

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Thus we have a remainder $-\frac{5x^4}{4}-\frac{x^5}{2}-\frac{x^6}{4}$, after finding four terms of the square root of $1-2x$; and so we know that

$$\left(1-x-\frac{x^2}{2}-\frac{x^3}{2}\right)^2=1-2x+\frac{5x^4}{4}+\frac{x^5}{2}+\frac{x^6}{4}.$$

279. Square roots by inspection. Often the square root of a quantity can be obtained by inspection alone.

We know that the square root of $a^2+2ab+b^2$ is $a+b$, that is, it is equal to the sum of the square roots of the first and last terms of the given expression.

Similarly, if x^4+6x^2+9 have a square root it is $\sqrt{(x^4)}+\sqrt{(9)}$, that is, it is x^2+3. Also since twice the product of x^2 and 3 is $6x^2$, it is clear that $(x^2+3)^2=x^4+6x^2+9$ that is, that x^2+3 is the square root.

If again the expression x^4+9x^2+16 have a square root it must be x^2+4. But since twice the product of x^2 and 4 is not equal to $9x^2$, therefore $(x^2+4)^2$ is not equal to x^4+9x^2+16, so that the latter expression has not a square root.

When therefore an expression can be arranged as a trinomial, when expressed in powers of some letter, then, if this expression has a square root, it is the sum of the roots of the first and last terms of this trinomial.

Ex. 1. *Find the square root of* $a^2+b^2+c^2+2bc+2ca+2ab$.

The expression

$$=a^2+2a(b+c)+b^2+2bc+c^2=a^2+2a(b+c)+(b+c)^2,\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots(1)$$

and is thus a trinomial when expressed in descending powers of the letter a.

If, therefore, the expression has a square root it will

$$=\sqrt{(a^2)}+\sqrt{(b+c)^2}=a+(b+c),$$

and since the second term of (1) is twice the product of a and $(b+c)$, this quantity is the required square root.

Ex. 2. *Find the square root of* $x^6-2bx^5+b^2x^4-2bcx^2+2cx^3+c^2$.

Arrange in powers of c, and the expression

$$=c^2+2c(x^3-bx^2)+(x^6-2bx^5+b^2x^4)=c^2+2c(x^3-bx^2)+(x^3-bx^2)^2$$

and the square root is $c+(x^3-bx^2)$, that is, x^3-bx^2+c.

A quadratic equation cannot therefore have more than two roots.

335. *Discussion of the roots of a quadratic equation.*

The roots of the equation $ax^2+bx+c=0$ are

$$\frac{-b\pm\sqrt{(b^2-4ac)}}{2a}. \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots(1)$$

(1) If b^2 be greater than $4ac$, then b^2-4ac is positive and thus $\sqrt{(b^2-4ac)}$ is real. In this case the two values, given by (1), are both real and they are also unequal.

(2) If b^2 be equal to $4ac$, then b^2-4ac is zero and the square root in (1) vanishes. Thus, in this case, the two roots reduce to the same quantity, namely $-\frac{b}{2a}$. In this case the two roots are real and equal.

(3) If b^2 be less than $4ac$, then b^2-4ac is negative and thus $\sqrt{(b^2-4ac)}$ is an imaginary quantity. In this case, therefore, the two roots are both imaginary.

Hence **the roots of the quadratic equation**

$$\mathbf{ax^2+bx+c=0}$$

are real and unequal, equal, or imaginary according as b^2 is greater than, equal to, or less than $4ac$.

If the roots are real they are not necessarily rational. Thus $\sqrt{7}$ is a real quantity but it is not a rational quantity. In order that the roots may be real the quantity, b^2-4ac, which is under the radical sign, must be a *perfect square.*

Ex. 1. The roots of the equation $7x^2+8x+9=0$ are both imaginary, by the previous article; for $8^2-4\times7\times9=64-252=-188$ = a negative quantity.

Ex. 2. The roots of the equation $3x^2-5kx+7=0$ are equal, by the previous article, provided that $(-5k)^2-4\times3\times7$ is zero,

that is, if $\quad 25k^2=4\times3\times7=4\times21,$

that is, if $\quad 5k=\pm2\sqrt{21}$, and then $k=\pm\frac{2\sqrt{21}}{5}$.

Ex. 3. *Whatever be the value of m, prove that the roots of the equation $x^2-2x\left(m+\frac{1}{m}\right)+3=0$ are real.*

The roots are real if $\left[-2\left(m+\frac{1}{m}\right)\right]^2-4\times1\times3$ is positive,

For by subtracting one expression from the other, we have an equation of the nth degree which is satisfied by more than n values of x, and hence the coefficients of this equation must be separately zero.

520. Symmetrical Expressions. An expression is said to be symmetrical with respect to any two letters that it contains when, if these two letters are interchanged, the expression is unaltered. Thus a^2+b^2 and a^3+b^3 are symmetrical expressions with respect to a and b; but a^3+a^2b is not a symmetrical expression.

An expression is said to be symmetrical with respect to any three or more letters that it contains, when, if *any* two of the three, or more, letters be interchanged, the expression is unaltered. Thus

$$a+b+c, \quad bc+ca+ab, \quad \text{and} \quad bc(b+c)+ca(c+a)+ab(a+b)$$

are symmetrical expressions in a, b, and c. For if *any* two of these letters, say b and c, be interchanged, each of these expressions is unaltered.

As another example, the quantity $a^3+b^3+c^3+3abcd$ is symmetrical with respect to the three letters a, b, and c, but not with respect to the four letters a, b, c, and d.

521. The only expression of the first degree which is symmetrical with respect to a and b is $a+b$, or any multiple of $a+b$, such as $L(a+b)$, where L is any constant.

There are two symmetrical expressions of the second degree in a and b, namely, a^2+b^2 and ab. Also any expression obtained by adding any multiple of the first to any multiple of the second is symmetrical. Hence $L(a^2+b^2)+Mab$, where L and M are any constants whatever, is symmetrical, and the expression is called the most general symmetrical expression of the second degree in a and b.

There are two such expressions of the third degree, namely, a^3+b^3 and a^2b+ab^2, and the most general symmetrical expression is $L(a^3+b^3)+M(a^2b+ab^2)$, where L and M are constants.

So of the fourth degree there are three such expressions, namely, a^4+b^4, a^3b+ab^3, and a^2b^2, and the most general one

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

452. (428.) We may apply the Binomial Theorem to expand expressions containing more than two terms.

Ex. *Expand* $(1+2x-x^2)^4$.

Put y for $2x-x^2$; then we have

$$(1+2x-x^2)^4=(1+y)^4=1+4y+6y^2+4y^3+y^4$$
$$=1+4(2x-x^2)+6(2x-x^2)^2+4(2x-x^2)^3+(2x-x^2)^4.$$

Also

$$(2x-x^2)^2=(2x)^2-2(2x)x^2+(x^2)^2=4x^2-4x^3+x^4,$$
$$(2x-x^2)^3=(2x)^3-3(2x)^2x^2+3(2x)(x^2)^2-(x^2)^3=8x^3-12x^4+6x^5-x^6,$$
$$(2x-x^2)^4=(2x)^4-4(2x)^3x^2+6(2x)^2(x^2)^2-4(2x)(x^2)^3+(x^2)^4$$
$$=16x^4-32x^5+24x^6-8x^7+x^8.$$

Hence, collecting the terms, we obtain

$$(1+2x-x^2)^4=1+8x+20x^2+8x^3-26x^4-8x^5+20x^6-8x^7+x^8.$$

453. It will be noted that in the expansion of $(a+x)^n$ there are $(n+1)$ terms.

The second term contains x, that is x^1; the third term contains x^2, the fourth x^3, and so on, the exponent of x in each term being less by unity than the number of the term.

Thus the rth term contains x^{r-1}, the sth term x^{s-1}, and the $(r+1)^{\text{th}}$ term contains x^r.

454. General term. In the expansion of $(a+x)^n$ the term that contains x^r is called the general term, and thus, by the previous article, is the $(r+1)^{\text{th}}$ term. Its coefficient is, by Art. 447, ${}_nC_r . a^{n-r}$, that is,

$$\frac{n(n-1)(n-2)\dots(n-r+1)}{\lfloor r}a^{n-r}x^r. \quad \dots\dots(1)$$

Since, as in Art. 442,

$$\frac{n(n-1)\dots(n-r+1)}{\lfloor r}=\frac{n(n-1)\dots(n-r+1)\times\lfloor n-r}{\lfloor r\times\lfloor n-r}$$

$$=\frac{n(n-1)\dots(n-r+1)\times(n-r)(n-r-1)\dots1}{\lfloor r\,\lfloor n-r}=\frac{\lfloor n}{\lfloor r\,\lfloor n-r},$$

the quantity (1) may be written in the form

$$\frac{\lfloor n}{\lfloor r\,\lfloor n-r}a^{n-r}x^r. \quad \dots\dots(2)$$

The form (2) is sometimes more useful than (1). But (2) cannot be used, as we shall see later, for the cases when n is negative or fractional.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Sixth Edition. Globe 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA

BY

CHARLES SMITH, M.A.
MASTER OF SIDNEY SUSSEX COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

SIXTH EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
438

For the Second Edition the whole book was thoroughly revised, and the early chapters remodelled and simplified, and chapters on Logarithms and Scales of Notation were added. The number of examples has been very greatly increased.

CONTENTS: Definitions; Positive and Negative Quantities; Addition; Subtraction; Brackets; Multiplication; Division. Miscellaneous Examples I.: Simple Equations; Problems; Simultaneous Equations of the First Degree; Problems. Miscellaneous Examples II.: Factors; Highest Common Factors; Lowest Common Multiples; Fractions; Equations with Fractions. Miscellaneous Examples III.: Quadratic Equations; Equations of Higher Degree than the Second; Simultaneous Equations of the Second Degree; Problems. Miscellaneous Examples IV.: Miscellaneous Equations; Powers and Roots; Square Root; Indices; Surds; Ratio, Proportion, Variation. Miscellaneous Examples V.: Arithmetical Progression; Geometrical Progression; Harmonical Progression; Other Simple Series. Miscellaneous Examples VI.: Permutations and Combinations; The Binomial Theorem; Logarithms. Miscellaneous Theorems and Examples: Scales of Notation. Answers to the Examples.

Academy—"Whatever gifts are required for the composition of a good school text-book on a mathematical subject seem to have been bestowed upon, or to have been acquired by, our author. His *Conics* and his two *Algebras* are praised by all teachers, and have attained a large circulation in this country, and besides are 'in very general use in schools and colleges throughout the United States.'"

Athenæum—"This *Elementary Algebra* treats the subject up to the Binomial Theorem for a positive integral exponent, and so far as it goes deserves the highest commendation. Mr. Smith has avoided the danger, which, as the preface shows, besets writers of treatises like the one before us—that of 'paying too little attention to the groundwork of their subject.' All through the volume the reasoning underlying the processes of algebra is kept prominently in view, and thus a real interest is infused into the subject, while the educational value of the study is immensely increased. This valuable characteristic of the book is observable as much in the earliest as in the most advanced chapters, and we doubt not that beginners will appreciate it. The examples, which are very numerous, are a notable feature of the book, and, so far as we have investigated them, are singularly well selected and arranged, and the solution of them on the students' part, after careful perusal of the chapters to which they are appended, cannot fail to be greatly 'for the benefit of beginners.'"

Saturday Review—"One could hardly desire a better beginning on the subject of which it treats than Mr. Charles Smith's *Elementary Algebra*. It is instinct with the merits which distinguished his previous ventures, and has the same *lucidus ordo*. . . . A very carefully selected collection of exercises adds considerably to the work."

Nature—"It is a pleasure to come across an algebra book which has manifestly not been written in order merely to prepare students to pass an examination. Not that we think Mr. Smith's book unsuitable for this purpose; indeed, with its carefully-worked examples, graduated sets of exercises, and regularly recurring miscellaneous examination papers, it compares favourably with the most approved 'grinders' books. . . . He shows to great advantage as a teacher, his style of exposition being most lucid; the average student ought to find the book easy and pleasant reading. The second set of exercises on the Binomial Theorem is worth specially noting. This is a second edition of this well-known book, and differs from the first in some important particulars. It has been thoroughly revised, and the early chapters have been simplified and remodelled. Chapters on logarithms and scales of notation form a useful and valuable addition, and there is a great increase in the number of the examples. For beginners this work should prove invaluable, and even more advanced students would do well to glance over its pages."

Educational Times—"There is a logical clearness about his expositions and the order of his chapters for which both schoolboys and schoolmasters should be, and will be, very grateful. His treatment of the Theory of Indices, for instance, though really a very simple matter, is admirable for the way in which it sets forth the difficulties of the subject, and then solves them."

With the above definition multiplication by a negative quantity presents no difficulty.

For example, to multiply 4 by -5. Since to subtract 5 by one subtraction is the same as to subtract five units successively,

$$-5 = -1-1-1-1-1;$$

$$\therefore \quad 4\times(-5) = -4-4-4-4-4$$

$$= -20.$$

Again, to multiply -5 by -4. Since

$$-4 = -1-1-1-1;$$

$$\therefore \quad (-5)\times(-4) = -(-5)-(-5)-(-5)-(-5)$$

$$= +5+5+5+5 \qquad \text{[Art. 28.]}$$

$$= +20.$$

We can proceed in a similar manner for any other numbers whether integral or fractional, positive or negative. Hence we have the following laws:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} a\times\ \ b &= +ab \text{.....(i)} \\ (-a)\times\ \ b &= -ab \text{.....(ii)} \\ a\times(-b) &= -ab \text{.....(iii)} \\ (-a)\times(-b) &= +ab \text{.....(iv)} \end{aligned}\right\} \text{.....}(\beta).$$

The rule by which we determine the signs of the products is called the **Law of Signs**: this law is sometimes enunciated briefly as follows:—*like signs give* +, *and unlike signs* −.

39. **The factors of a product may be taken in any order.**

It is proved in Arithmetic that when one number, whether integral or fractional, is multiplied by a second, the result is the same as when the second is multiplied by the first.

EXAMPLES. XXVII.

Find the factors of each of the following expressions:

1.	$3x^2-10x+3$.	2.	$3x^2-17x+10$.	3.	$2x^2+11x+12$.
4.	$2x^2+3x-2$.	5.	$3x^2+7x-6$.	6.	$4x^2+x-3$.
7.	$5x^2-38x+21$.	8.	$3x^2+11x-20$.	9.	$7x^2-33x-54$.
10.	$5x^2-38x+48$.	11.	$7x^2+75x-108$.	12.	$9x^2+130x-75$.
13.	$4x^2+21x-18$.	14.	$4x^2+4x-15$.	15.	$6x^2+55x-50$.
16.	$10x^2+3x-1$.	17.	$132x^2+x-1$.	18.	$4x^2-5x+1$.
19.	$12x^2+50x-50$.	20.	$7x^2+123x-54$.	21.	$24x^2-30x-75$.
22.	$x^2+4xy+3y^2$.	23.	$x^2-6xy+8y^2$.	24.	$x^2-11xy+18y^2$.
25.	$x^2+5xy-14y^2$.	26.	$x^2-25xy+150y^2$.	27.	$x^2-35xy-200y^2$.
28.	$3x^2-17xy+10y^2$.			29.	$7x^2-33xy-54y^2$.
30.	$24x^2-70xy-75y^2$.			31.	x^4-13x^2+36.
32.	$x^4-25x^2y^2+144y^4$.			33.	$36x^4-97x^2y^2+36y^4$.
34.	x^3-3x^2-18x.			35.	$x^3y-x^2y^2-2xy^3$.
36.	$15x^4y-4x^3y^2-4x^2y^3$.			37.	$75xy^3-130x^2y^4-9x^3y^5$.

102. It is clear that the method of finding by trial the factors of an expression of the form px^2+qx+r, where p, q, r are known numbers, would be very tedious if there were many pairs of numbers whose product was p and many pairs whose product was r, for there would then be very many pairs of factors which would agree with the given expression so far as the end terms were concerned, and out of these the single pair which would give the correct middle term would have to be sought. It would, for example, be almost impossible to find the factors of $2310x^2-2419x-9009$ in this way.

Again, we not unfrequently meet with such an expression as x^2+6x+7 which cannot be written as the product of two factors altogether rational, and in such a case it would be impracticable to try and guess the factors.

We therefore need some method of finding the factors of a quadratic expression which is applicable to all cases. This method we proceed to investigate.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

157. It should be remarked that we cannot solve *any* two equations which are both of the second degree; for the elimination of one of the unknown quantities will frequently lead to an equation of higher degree than the second, from which the remaining unknown quantity would have to be found; and we cannot solve an equation of higher degree than the second, except in very special cases.

For example, if we have the equations $x^2+x+y=3$ and $x^2+y^2=5$. We have from the first equation $y=3-x-x^2$; and, by substituting this value of y in the second equation, we get

$$x^2+(3-x-x^2)^2=5,$$

that is $$x^4+2x^3-4x^2-6x+4=0;$$

and this equation of the fourth degree cannot be solved by any methods which are within the range of this book.

158. We can always solve two equations of the second degree when *all the terms which contain the unknown quantities are of the second degree.* The method will be seen from the following example.

Ex. 1. Solve the equations

$$x^2+3xy=28,$$
$$xy+4y^2=8.$$

Divide the members of the first equation by the corresponding members of the second equation; we then have

$$\frac{x^2+3xy}{xy+4y^2}=\frac{28}{8}=\frac{7}{2}.$$

Hence $$2(x^2+3xy)=7(xy+4y^2);$$

$$\therefore \quad 2x^2-xy-28y^2=0,$$

that is, $$(2x+7y)(x-4y)=0.$$

Hence $$x=4y, \text{ or } x=-\tfrac{7}{2}y.$$

I. If $x=4y$, we have from the second equation,

$$4y^2+4y^2=8; \quad \therefore \ y=\pm 1.$$

And therefore $$x=4y=\pm 4.$$

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

where

$$c_0 = c_n = 1,\ c_1 = c_{n-1} = n,\ \text{and}\ c_r = c_{n-r} = \frac{\lfloor n}{\lfloor r \lfloor n-r}.$$

I. Put $x = 1$ in the above formula; and we have

$$2^n = c_0 + c_1 + c_2 + \ldots + c_r + \ldots c_n.$$

Thus *the sum of the coefficients in the expansion of* $(1+x)^n$ *is* 2^n.

II. Again, put $x = -1$; and we have

$$(1-1)^n = c_0 - c_1 + c_2 - c_3 + \ldots;$$

$$\therefore\ 0 = (c_0 + c_2 + c_4 + \ldots) - (c_1 + c_3 + c_5 + \ldots).$$

Thus *the sum of the coefficients of the odd terms of a binomial expansion is equal to the sum of the coefficients of the even terms.*

III. Since $c_r = c_{n-r}$, [Art. 246] we may write the binomial theorem in either of the following ways:

$$(1+x)^n = c_0 + c_1 x + c_2 x^2 + \ldots + c_r x^r + \ldots c_n x^n,$$

$$\text{or}\ (1+x)^n = c_n + c_{n-1} x + c_{n-2} x^2 + \ldots c_{n-r} x^r + \ldots + c_1 x^{n-1} + c_0 x^n.$$

The coefficient of x^n in the product of the two series on the right is equal to

$$c_0^2 + c_1^2 + c_2^2 + \ldots + c_n^2.$$

Hence* $c_0^2 + c_1^2 + \ldots + c_r^2 + \ldots c_n^2$ is equal to the coefficient of x^n in $(1+x)^n \times (1+x)^n$, that is in $(1+x)^{2n}$, and this coefficient is $\frac{\lfloor 2n}{\lfloor n \lfloor n}$.

Hence *the sum of the squares* of the coefficients in the expansion of $(1+x)^n$ is equal to $\frac{\lfloor 2n}{\lfloor n \lfloor n}$.

* See Art. 272.

The values of A, B, C, ... can, however, be obtained *separately* in the following manner. Since (i) is to be true for *all* values of x, it must be true when $x = a$; and putting $x = a$, we have $F(a) = A(a-b)(a-c)\ldots$; and therefore $A = F(a)/(a-b)(a-c)\ldots$. Similarly we have

$$B = F(b)/(b-a)(b-c)\ldots;$$

and so for C, D, ...

We have thus found values of A, B, C, ... which make the relation (i) true for n values a, b, c,... of x; and as the expressions on the two sides of (i) are of not higher degree than the $(n-1)$th, it follows [Art. 272] that the relation is true for *all values* of x.

Thus

$$\frac{F(x)}{(x-a)(x-b)(x-c)\ldots} = \frac{F(a)}{(a-b)(a-c)\ldots}\cdot\frac{1}{x-a} + \ldots.$$

Ex. 1. Resolve $\dfrac{2x}{(x-1)(x-3)}$ into partial fractions.

Assume $$\frac{2x}{(x-1)(x-3)} \equiv \frac{A}{x-1} + \frac{B}{x-3};$$

then $$2x \equiv A(x-3) + B(x-1).$$

In this identity put $x=1$; then $2 = A(-2)$. Now put $x=3$; then $6 = B \cdot 2$.

Thus $$\frac{2x}{(x-1)(x-3)} = \frac{3}{x-3} - \frac{1}{x-1}.$$

Or, by equating the coefficients of the different powers of x, we have

$$2 = A + B, \text{ and } 0 = -3A - B;$$

whence, as before, $$A = -1,\ B = 3.$$

Ex. 2. Find the coefficient of x^r in the expansion of $\dfrac{2x}{x^2-4x+3}$ according to ascending powers of x.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

144. A cask was filled with wine and water mixed together in the ratio of 5 : 3. When 16 gallons of the mixture had been drawn off and the cask filled up with water, the ratio of the wine to the water became 3 : 5. How many gallons did the cask hold?

145. Shew that, if

$$\frac{bx-ay}{cy-az}=\frac{cx-az}{by-ax}=\frac{z+y}{x+z},$$

then will each fraction be equal to $\frac{x}{y}$ unless $b+c=0$.

146. To each of three quantities in geometrical progression the second is added. Shew that the three resulting quantities are in harmonical progression.

147. Shew that, if a, b, c are in Arithmetical Progression and a, b, $c+1$ in Geometrical Progression, then will

$$a=(a-b)^2=(b-c)^2.$$

148. Shew that, if x and y are both positive and $x<\frac{1-y}{1+y}$, then will $y<\frac{1-x}{1+x}$.

149. Eliminate x and y from the equations

$$\frac{b}{x}+\frac{a}{y}=1, \quad \frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}=2, \quad xy+ab=0.$$

150. Expand, in a series of ascending powers of x, each of the expressions $(1-x+x^2)^{-1}$ and $(1-x-2x^2)^{-1}$, and shew that, if p_n, q_n be the respective coefficients of x^n in the two series, then

$$3q_n-p_{2n}=2^{n+1}.$$

151. Shew that, if $2s=a+b+c$ and $2\sigma^3=a^3+b^3+c^3$, then will

$$(\sigma^3-a^3)(s-a)+(\sigma^3-b^3)(s-b)+(\sigma^3-c^3)(s-c)=a^4+b^4+c^4-s\sigma^3.$$

152. Shew that, if $x^2-a^2=y^2-b^2=z^2-c^2$,

then
$$\frac{bz-cy}{a-x}+\frac{cx-az}{b-y}+\frac{ay-bx}{c-z}=0.$$

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Please state which part is required

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

A TEXT-BOOK OF
EUCLID'S ELEMENTS

INCLUDING ALTERNATIVE PROOFS, TOGETHER WITH ADDITIONAL THEOREMS AND EXERCISES CLASSIFIED AND ARRANGED

BY

H. S. HALL, M.A., AND F. H. STEVENS, M.A.

THIRD EDITION ENLARGED
Books I.-VI., XI. (and XII. 1 and 3)

Also in Parts separately as follows:—

Book I.	1s.	Books IV.—VI.	2s. 6d.
Books I. and II.	1s. 6d.	Books I.—IV.	3s.
Books I.—III.	2s. 6d.	Books III.—VI.	3s.
Books II. and III.	2s.	Books V. VI. and XI.	2s. 6d.
Books III. and IV.	2s.	Book XI.	1s.

Book I. covers the First Stage of the South Kensington Syllabus. Books I.-IV. cover the First and Second Stages of the Syllabus.

PRESS OPINIONS

Cambridge Review—"To teachers and students alike we can heartily recommend this little edition of Euclid's Elements. The proofs of Euclid are with very few exceptions retained, but the unnecessarily complicated expression is avoided, and the steps of the proofs are so arranged as readily to catch the eye. Prop. 10, Book. IV., is a good example of how a long proposition ought to be written out. Every now and then alternative proofs, allowable in the Previous and similar examinations, are given or suggested. The book is not, however, a mere text-book for pass examinations. The candidate for mathematical honours will find introduced in their proper places short sketches of such subjects as the Pedal Line, Maxima and Minima, Harmonic Division, Concurrent Lines, etc., quite enough of each for all ordinary requirements. Useful notes and easy examples are scattered throughout each book, and sets of hard examples are given at the end. **The whole is so evidently the work of practical teachers, that we feel sure it must soon displace every other Euclid.**"

Saturday Review—"Amongst the many editions of Euclid's Elements of Plane Geometry produced recently, that of Messrs. Hall and Stevens **will deservedly occupy a prominent place as a class-book.**"

Literary World—"By bringing out their new edition of Euclid **Messrs. Hall** and Stevens deserve the thanks of every one who is interested in geometrical teaching, and **it is a distinct advance on all previous editions.**"

Journal of Education—**"The most complete introduction to plane geometry based on Euclid's Elements that we have yet seen."**

Irish Teachers' Journal—"**It must rank as one of the very best editions of Euclid in the language.**'

Athenæum—"The joint authors of this book, though adhering pretty closely to Euclid's arrangement and reasoning, have nevertheless ventured to make several important alterations. These changes will, almost without exception, obtain entire approval. . . . Exercises and notes are abundant, and there are several interesting and useful propositions which, though strictly belonging to more modern and more advanced geometry, may be perfectly understood by any student who has mastered the ordinary text. Lest timid teachers, with the fear of conservative examiners before their eyes, should imagine that the book contains too many or too sweeping innovations, we may state that wherever any serious departure is made from Euclid's method, it is put into the form of an *alternative* proof, Euclid's proof being given as well. **The work will be received with favour by practical teachers.**"

Nature—"We have here the completion of a work which in its first instalment (Books I. and II.) has already won a considerable amount of favourable notice from teachers. The end has crowned the work in a similar satisfactory manner. . . . Great attention has been paid to the arrangement and composition of the text, and the difficulties which delay beginners have been carefully smoothed and explained. **The ordinary proofs have been adhered to as much as possible, and . . . changes have been adopted only where the old text has been generally found the cause of difficulty.** . . . The subject of proportion has been treated on the system advocated by De Morgan, and here great use has been made of the admirable exposition of it given in the Association's (A.I.G.T.) text-book. The principal propositions have been established in a clear manner, both from the algebraical and geometrical definitions of ratio and proportion, and the distinction between the two modes of treatment is well brought about. The whole of this part forms a good introduction to the sixth book. . . . The explanatory matter and additional sections contain all, or nearly all, that is looked for nowadays, and include articles on harmonic section, centres of similarity and similitude, pole and polar, radical axes and transversals. The exercises in the text are well graduated, and should bring out the pupils' acquaintance with, and mastery over, the propositions to which they are appended. More difficult problems are led up to by the solution of typical examples. In conclusion, we need only say **the work before us contains all that is needful to a student, who, if he has this, will require no other text-book to become an expert geometer.**"

KEY TO "A TEXT-BOOK OF EUCLID'S ELEMENTS."

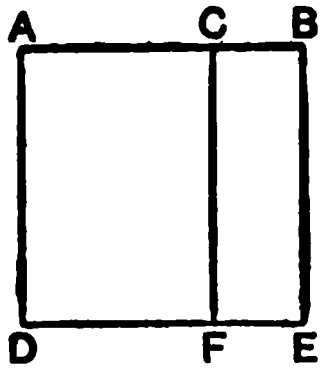
Books I.–IV. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*
Books VI. and XI. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Books I.–VI. and XI. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

Of the 530 Public Schools, Grammar Schools, Training Colleges, and Girls' High Schools using Messrs. Hall & Knight's *Elementary Algebra*, 295 use Messrs. Hall & Stevens' *Elements of Euclid*, besides the following:—King's College; Glasgow, Girls' Grammar School; Norwich; Maidstone, Girls' Grammar School; Liverpool, Merchant Taylors' Girls' School; Bow, E., Coborn School for Girls; Tunbridge Wells, High School; Abingdon, Grammar School; Alford, Grammar School; Andover, Grammar School; Aston, King Edward's School; Audlem, Grammar School; Aysgarth School, Yorks.; Bangor, Baptist College; Barnsley, Grammar School; Beaumaris, Grammar School; Bewdley, Grammar School; Birkenhead, Clifton Park School; Birmingham, Blue Coat School; Birmingham, School Board; Blairs, St. Mary's College; Bloxham, All Saints' School; Brecon, Christ's College; Bridge of Allan, Stanley House School; Brigg, Grammar School; Brighton, St. Aubyn House School; Brighton, A. H. Thomas, Montpelier Crescent; Bristol, Grammar School; Brockley, High School; Bromsgrove, Grammar School; Bromyard, Grammar School; Bruton, Grammar School;

Bungay, Grammar School; Canterbury, Clergy Orphan School; Cartmel, Grammar School; Cheltenham, Dean Close School; Cheltenham, A. D. H. Bushnell, 12 Suffolk Square; Chester, Arnold House School; Chester, Mostyn House School; Chorley, Grammar School; Claughton, Collegiate School; Cleobury Mortimer, Grammar School; Clevedon, Walton Lodge; Clifton, Redland Hill House; Clifton, G. E. Crawford, Manilla Road; Colwyn Bay, Rydal Mount; Colwyn Bay, Pen-y-rhôs College; Cork, Grammar School; Dawlish, West Cliff House School; Derby, Spondon House School; Dewsbury, Wheelwright School; Dover, Castlemount School; East Grinstead, Fonthill School; Enniskillen, Royal School; Farnham, Grammar School; Farnworth, Grammar School; Gainsborough, Grammar School; Galway, Grammar School; Gillingham, Grammar School; Glasgow, Collegiate School. Queen's Park; Glasgow, Technical School, George Street; Glasgow, Stonelaw School, Rutherglen; Greenock, Academy; Guildford, Grove House School; Guisborough (Yorks.), Grammar School; Halifax, Crossley Orphan School; Halifax, W. Elliott, Lightcliffe; Halstead, Grammar School; Hastings, Grammar School; Hastings, Hurst Court, Ore; Henley, Grammar School; Hereford, County College; Hertford, Grammar School; Kimbolton, Grammar School; Lampeter, College School; Lancaster, Grammar School; Leeds, Bewerley Street Board School; Leicester, Mill Hill House School; Liverpool, Rev. R. W. Jones, 63 Kremlin Drive; Liverpool, Parkfield School; Liverpool, Y.M.C.A., Mount Pleasant; London, High School, Willesden, N.W.; London, Birkbeck School, Stoke Newington, N.; London, Haberdashers' Boys' School, Hoxton, N.; London, Philological School, Marylebone, W.; London, Roan School for Boys, Greenwich; London, J. A. Bower, 10 Ladywell Park, S.E.; London, Yverden House, Blackheath, S.E.; London, Streatham School, S.W.; London, W. Ellis' School, Gospel Oak; London, Whitechapel Foundation School; London, Parmiter's School, Victoria Park; London, George Green School, Poplar; London, Forest School, Walthamstow; London, Emmanuel School, Wandsworth Common; London, Military College, 2 Penywern Road, S.W.; London, W. Wren, Powis Square, W.; London, J. H. Watkins, 90 Kensington Park Road, W; London, Captain James, 19 Lexham Gardens, W.; London, Polytechnic Middle Class School, W.; London, Rochester House School, Ealing, W.; London, Archbishop Tenison's School, Leicester Square, W.C.; Louth, King Edward VI. School; Maidstone, Grammar School; Malvern, Colwall School; Malvern, The Wells House; Mansfield, Grammar School; Marlow, Sir W. Borlase's School; Newark, Grammar School; Newbury, Grammar School; Newcastle-on-Tyne, Rutherford College; Newcastle-on-Tyne, Eskdale Tower; Newton Abbot, Grammar School; Pocklington, Grammar School; Polmont, Blair Lodge School; Pontefract, Kings' School; Ramsey (Hunts.), Grammar School; Ramsey (Isle of Man), Grammar School; Ramsgate, S. E. College; Reading, Park House School; Reading, School; Retford (East), Grammar School; Ryde, Isle of Wight College; St. Ives (Hunts.), Grammar School; Sandbach, Grammar School; Santry, Santry School; Sedbergh, Grammar School; Shipley, Boys' High School; Solihull, Grammar School; Steyning, Grammar School; Stockton-on-Tees, High School; Storrington, Forge School; Taunton, King's College; Tettenhall College; Thame, Grammar School; Thetford, Grammar School; Thorne, Grammar School; Twyford School; Uckfield, Grammar School; Ulverston, Grammar School; Ushaw, St. Cuthbert's College; Wakefield, Grammar School; Wallasey, Grammar School; Walsingham, Grammar School; Warminster, Grammar School; Wem, Grammar School; West Bland, Grammar School; Wexford, St. Peter's College; Wexford, The Tate School; Winchester, Wellington House; Windsor, Clewer House School; Woolwich, High School.

PROPOSITION 2. THEOREM.

If a straight line is divided into any two parts, the square on the whole line is equal to the sum of the rectangles contained by the whole line and each of the parts.



Let the straight line AB be divided at C into the two parts AC, CB.

Then shall the square on AB *be equal to the sum of the rectangles contained by* AB, AC *and by* AB, BC.

Construction. On AB describe the square ADEB. I. 46.
Through C draw CF par[l] to AD. I. 31.

Proof. Now the fig. AE is made up of the figs. AF, CE: and of these,

the fig. AE is the sq. on AB: *Constr.*

and the fig. AF is the rectangle contained by AB, AC; for it is contained by AD, AC; and AD = AB:

also the fig. CE is the rectangle contained by AB, BC; for it is contained by BE, BC; and BE = AB.

∴ the sq. on AB = the sum of the rectangles contained by AB, AC, and by AB, BC. Q.E.D.

CORRESPONDING ALGEBRAICAL FORMULA.

The result of this proposition may be written

$$AB^2 = AB \cdot AC + AB \cdot BC.$$

Let AC contain a units of length, and let CB contain b units,

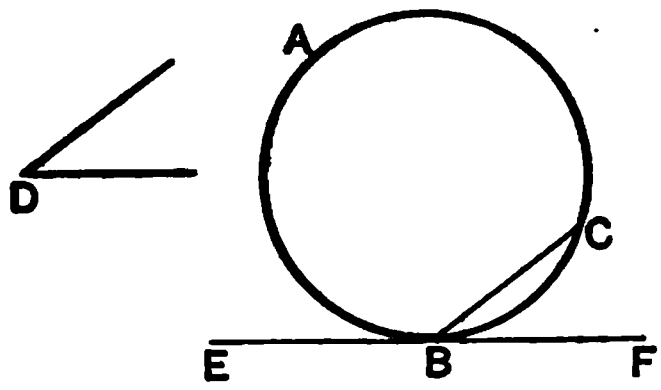
then $AB = a + b$ units;

and we have $(a+b)^2 = (a+b)a + (a+b)b.$

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

PROPOSITION 34. PROBLEM.

From a given circle to cut off a segment which shall contain an angle equal to a given angle.



Let ABC be the given circle, and D the given angle.

It is required to cut off from the ⊙ ABC *a segment which shall contain an angle equal to* D.

Construction. Take any point B on the ○ᵒᵉ,
and at B draw the tangent EBF. III. 17.
At B, in FB, make the ∠ FBC equal to the ∠ D. I. 23.
Then the segment BAC *shall contain an angle equal to* D.

Proof. Because EF is a tangent to the circle, and from B, its point of contact, a chord BC is drawn,
∴ the ∠ FBC = the angle in the alternate segment BAC.
III. 32.
But the ∠ FBC = the ∠ D; *Constr.*
∴ the angle in the segment BAC = the ∠ D.
Hence from the given ⊙ ABC a segment BAC has been cut off, containing an angle equal to D. Q.E.F.

EXERCISES.

1. The chord of a given segment of a circle is produced to a fixed point: on this straight line so produced draw a segment of a circle similar to the given segment.

2. Through a given point without a circle draw a straight line that will cut off a segment capable of containing an angle equal to a given angle.

QUESTIONS FOR REVISION.

1. Enunciate the propositions from which we infer that a straight line and a circle must either

(i) intersect in two points ; or
(ii) touch at one point ; or
(iii) have no point in common.

2. Give two independent constructions for drawing a tangent to a circle from an external point.

Shew that the two tangents so drawn

(i) are equal ;
(ii) subtend equal angles at the centre ;
(iii) make equal angles with the straight line which joins the given point to the centre.

3. Enunciate propositions relating to

(i) angles in a segment of a circle ;
(ii) similar segments of circles.

4. What are *conjugate arcs* of a circle ?

The angles in conjugate segments of a circle are supplementary. How does Euclid enunciate this theorem ? State and prove its converse.

5. Explain what is meant by a *reflex angle.* What simplifications may be made in the proofs of Third Book Propositions if reflex angles are admitted ?

6. If the circumference of a circle is divided into six equal arcs, shew that the chords joining successive points of division are all equal to the radius of the circle.

7. Find the locus of the centres of all circles

(i) which pass through two given points ;
(ii) which touch a given circle at a given point ;
(iii) which are of given radius, and touch a given circle ;
(iv) which are of given radius, and pass through a given point ;
(v) which touch a given straight line at a given point ;
(vi) which touch each of two parallel straight lines ;
(vii) which touch each of two intersecting straight lines of unlimited length.

8. If a system of triangles stand on the same base and on the same side of it, and have equal vertical angles, shew that the locus of their vertices is the arc of a circle. Prove this theorem, having first enunciated the proposition of which it is the converse.

THEOREM 11. **Alternando, or Alternately.** *If four magnitudes of the same kind are proportionals, they are also proportionals when taken alternately.*

That is, if $a : b = x : y,$

then shall $a : x = b : y.$

For, by hypothesis, $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{x}{y}.$

Multiplying both sides by $\frac{b}{x},$

we have $\frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{b}{x} = \frac{x}{y} \cdot \frac{b}{x};$

that is, $\frac{a}{x} = \frac{b}{y},$

or $a : x = b : y.$

NOTE. In this theorem the *hypothesis* requires that a and b shall be of the same kind, also that x and y shall be of the same kind; while the *conclusion* requires that a and x shall be of the same kind, and also b and y of the same kind.

THEOREM 12. **Addendo.** *In a series of equal ratios (the magnitudes being all of the same kind), as any antecedent is to its consequent so is the sum of the antecedents to the sum of the consequents.*

That is, if $a : x = b : y = c : z = \ldots;$

then shall $a : x = a + b + c + \ldots : x + y + z + \ldots.$

Let each of the equal ratios $\frac{a}{x}, \frac{b}{y}, \frac{c}{z} \ldots$ be equal to $k.$

Then $a = kx, \quad b = ky, \quad c = kz, \quad \ldots;$

$\therefore$, by addition,

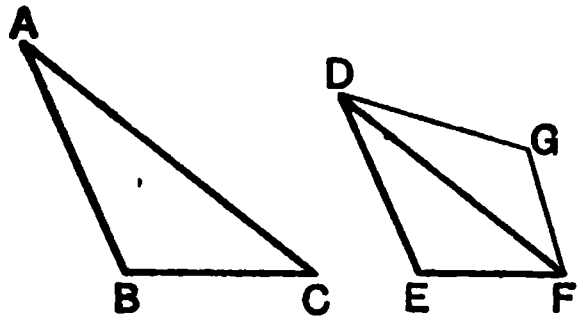
$$a + b + c + \ldots = k(x + y + z + \ldots);$$

$$\therefore \frac{a + b + c + \ldots}{x + y + z + \ldots} = k = \frac{a}{x},$$

or $a : x = a + b + c + \ldots : x + y + z + \ldots.$

PROPOSITION 6. THEOREM.

If two triangles have one angle of the one equal to one angle of the other, and the sides about the equal angles proportionals, the triangles shall be similar.



In the △ˢ BAC, EDF, let the ∠ BAC = the ∠ EDF,
and let BA : AC :: ED : DF.

Then shall the △ˢ BAC, EDF *be similar.*

At D in FD make the ∠ FDG equal to the ∠ CAB: I. 23.
at F in DF make the ∠ DFG equal to the ∠ ACB;
∴ the remaining ∠ DGF = the remaining ∠ ABC. I. 32.

Then the △ˢ BAC, GDF are equiangular to one another;
∴ BA : AC :: GD : DF. VI. 4.
But, *by hypothesis*, BA : AC :: ED : DF;
∴ GD : DF :: ED : DF,
∴ GD = ED.

Then in the △ˢ GDF, EDF,
Because { GD = ED,
and DF is common;
and the ∠ GDF = the ∠ EDF; *Constr.*
∴ the △ˢ GDF, EDF are equal in all respects; I. 4.
so that the △ EDF is equiangular to the △ GDF;
but the △ GDF is equiangular to the △ BAC; *Constr.*
∴ the △ EDF is equiangular to the △ BAC;
∴ their sides about the equal angles are proportionals; VI. 4.
that is, the △ˢ BAC, EDF are similar.

Q.E.D.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Please name the Book required

Now Ready. *Globe* 8vo. *Book I.*, 1s. *Books I. and II.*, 1s. 6d.
Books I. to IV., 3s. *Complete*, 4s. 6d.

THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

WITH NOTES, AN APPENDIX, AND EXERCISES

BY

I. TODHUNTER, D.Sc., F.R.S.

NEW EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

BY

S. L. LONEY, M.A.

PROFESSOR OF MATHEMATICS AT THE ROYAL HOLLOWAY COLLEGE
SOMETIME FELLOW OF SIDNEY SUSSEX COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

The right of translation is reserved

454

PREFACE

In preparing a new edition of the late Dr. Todhunter's *Euclid*, the following are the principal alterations and additions that I have made:

(1) The text of the Propositions has been simplified and shortened. A sparing use has been made of symbols in the place of constantly recurring words. Some of the proofs (*e.g.* II. 13) have been altered in accordance with modern usage, but this has always been done subject to the regulations at present in force in the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge.

(2) Considerable trouble has been taken to arrange the book so that, with very few exceptions, each Proposition is commenced on a fresh page, and may be read by the student without his turning over a leaf.

(3) The proofs of Book V. have been much shortened. To them, and also to the proofs of Book II., the corresponding algebraic formulae have been added.

(4) The more important of Dr. Todhunter's Notes have been appended to the Propositions to which they refer.

(5) The total number of Exercises has been doubled.

(6) The easier of the Exercises in the previous edition, and a large number of additional ones, have been classified and follow, in the Text, the Propositions on which they depend. The more important of these have asterisks prefixed to them, and, as far as possible, their results should be remembered by the student as part of his geometrical knowledge.

(7) All through the book, with the exception of the Exercises at the end, which are left to the student, hints have been annexed to the more difficult and more important Exercises.

(8) The Appendix has been more than doubled in quantity, and the theorems in it have been classified according to the Book to which they refer and on which they depend; a large number of Exercises has been incorporated in it.

(9) Sections have been added dealing with Poles and Polars, Orthogonal Circles, Pedal Triangles, The Pedal Line, The Nine-Point Circle, Co-axal Circles, Harmonic Ranges, Inversion, and the Properties of a Complete Quadrilateral.

Out of the large number of Propositions on these subjects it is clear that only a selection could be made, but I have endeavoured within the range chosen to omit no important Proposition. Without unduly increasing the size of the book it was impossible to prove all such important Propositions in the text. It is hoped, however, that the hints attached to those given as Exercises will be sufficient for any fairly intelligent student.

For any corrections of misprints or errors, or any suggestions for improvement, I shall be very grateful.

S. L. LONEY.

CONTENTS

Books I., II., III., IV., V., VI., XI., XII., Notes.

APPENDIX

Book I. Theorems and Examples—On Geometrical Analysis—On Loci—Maxima and Minima.

Book II. Theorems and Examples.

Book III. A Tangent as a Limit—Common Tangents—Loci—Poles and Polars—Orthogonal Circles.

Book IV. Pedal Triangles, etc.—Pedal Line—Nine-Point Circle—Tangencies of Circles—Constructions—Maxima and Minima.

Book VI. Radical Axis—Co-axal Circles—Loci—Centres of Similitude—Constructions—Harmonic Ranges—Inversion—Transversals—Complete Quadrilaterals—Co-polar and Co-axal Triangles.

EXERCISES

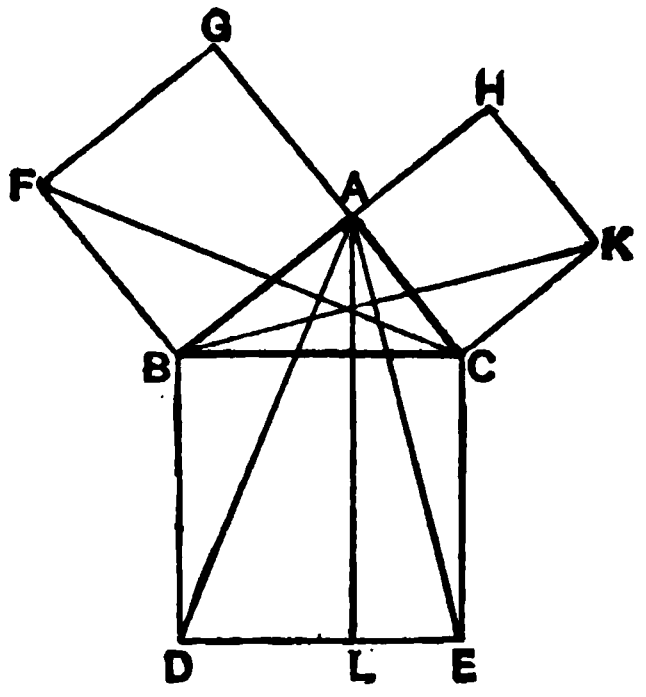
Books I., II., III., IV., VI., XI., Miscellaneous.

Proposition 47. Theorem.

In any right-angled triangle the square which is described on the side subtending the right angle is equal to the squares described on the sides which contain the right angle.

Let ABC be a right-angled triangle, having the right angle BAC;

the square described on the side BC *shall be equal to the squares described on the sides* BA, AC.



Construction. On BC describe the square BDEC, and on BA, AC describe the squares BFGA, AHKC; [I. 46.
through A draw AL parallel to BD or CE, [I. 31.
and join AD, FC.

Proof. Because the angle BAC is a right angle, [*Hypothesis.*
and that the angle BAG is also a right angle; [*Definition* 31.
∴ CA is in the same straight line with AG. [I. 14.
Similarly, AB and AH are in the same straight line.
Now the angle DBC = the angle FBA,
for each of them is a right angle; [*Axiom* 11.
add to each the angle ABC.
∴ the whole angle DBA = the whole angle FBC. [*Axiom* 2.

[Let ABCDEF... be the polygon and O the centre of the circle.
The $\angle ABC = 2$ rt. $\angle^s - \frac{1}{2}\angle AOC$; $\angle CDE = 2$ rt. $\angle^s - \frac{1}{2}\angle COE$, etc.;
$\therefore$ on addition, the sum of the alternate angles
$= 2$ rt. $\angle^s \times \frac{1}{2}$ no. of the sides $- \frac{1}{2}$ all the $\angle^s$ at O = etc.]

6. Shew that the four straight lines bisecting the interior (or the exterior) angles of any quadrilateral form a quadrilateral which can be inscribed in a circle.

[Let the bisectors of the interior angles A and B, B and C, C and D, D and A of a quadrilateral meet in E, F, G, H. Then

$$\angle FEH = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s - \tfrac{1}{2}\angle A - \tfrac{1}{2}\angle B,$$
$$\text{and } \angle FGH = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s - \tfrac{1}{2}\angle C - \tfrac{1}{2}\angle D;$$

.. $\angle^s$ FEH, FGH = 4 rt. $\angle^s$ − half the sum of the interior angles of ABCD
$= 4$ rt. $\angle^s - 2$ rt. $\angle^s = 2$ rt. $\angle^s$; $\therefore$ etc.
Similarly for the bisectors of the exterior angles.]

****7.** Shew that no parallelogram except a rectangle can be inscribed in a circle.

8. D is any point on the arc BC of a circle whose centre is A; CD is produced to E; prove that the angle BDE is half the angle BAC.

9. AOB is a triangle; C and D are points in BO and AO respectively, such that the angle ODC is equal to the angle OBA; shew that a circle may be described round the quadrilateral ABCD.

10. ABCD is a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle, and the sides AB, DC when produced meet at O; shew that the triangle AOC is equiangular to the triangle BOD, and the triangle AOD to the triangle BOC.

****11.** If any two consecutive sides of a hexagon inscribed in a circle be respectively parallel to their opposite sides, the remaining sides are parallel to each other.

[Let ABCDEF be the hexagon having FA, AB parallel to CD, DE. Then $\angle FEB = 2$ rt. $\angle^s - \angle FAB$ [III. 22] $= 2$ rt. $\angle^s -$ DEC [I. 29] $= \angle EBC$.

12. ABCD is a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle; AB and CD meet in P; AD and BC meet in Q; prove that the bisectors of the angles P and Q are at right angles.

[If O be the intersection of the bisectors, and OQ meet CD in L, then

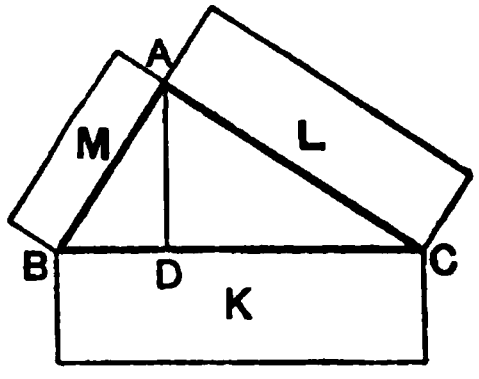
$$\angle OPC = \tfrac{1}{2}D - \tfrac{1}{2}PAD \text{ and } \angle OQD = \tfrac{1}{2}D - \tfrac{1}{2}DCQ;$$
$$\therefore \angle POQ = \angle PLQ - \angle OPC = \angle D - \angle OQD - \angle OPC$$
$$= \angle D - \tfrac{1}{2}(2\angle D - \angle PAD - \angle PCQ)$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\angle PAD + \tfrac{1}{2}\angle PCQ = \text{a rt. } \angle.]$$

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

PROPOSITION 31. THEOREM.

In any right-angled triangle, any rectilineal figure described on the side subtending the right angle is equal to the similar and similarly described figures on the sides containing the right angle.

Let ABC be a triangle, right-angled at A:
the rectilineal figure described on BC *shall be equal to the similar and similarly described figures on* BA *and* CA.



Construction. Draw the perpendicular AD. [I. 12.

Let K, L, M be the similar and similarly described figures on BC, CA, and AB.

Proof. Because AD is drawn from the right angle A perpendicular to BC,

the $\triangle$CBA is similar to the $\triangle$ABD; [VI. 8.

$\therefore$ BC : BA :: BA : BD; [VI. *Def.* 2.

$\therefore$ BC : BD :: K : M; [VI. 20, *Cor.* 2.

and inversely, BD : BC :: M : K. [V. *B.*

Similarly, CD : BC :: L : K;

$\therefore$ as BD and CD together are to BC so are L and M together to K. [V. 24.

But BD and CD together = BC;

$\therefore$ the figure K = the figures L and M. [V. *A.*

Wherefore, *in any right-angled triangle, etc.* [Q.E.D.

Note. Of this general proposition I. 47 is a particular case.

EXERCISES.

****1.** The straight line joining two points, A and B, is the polar of the point of intersection of the polars of A and B.

[Let the latter intersect at T; then A lies on the polar of T, since T lies on the polar of A (43); so B lies on the polar of T; ∴ AB is the polar of T.]

****2.** The point of intersection of any two straight lines is the pole of the straight line joining their poles.

****3.** Find the locus of the poles of all straight lines which pass through a given point. [Use Art. 43.]

****4.** A and B are two points in a plane of a circle whose centre is C; AX and BY are the perpendiculars from A and B on the polars of B and A respectively; prove that the rectangles CA . BY and CB . AX are equal. [Salmon's Theorem.]

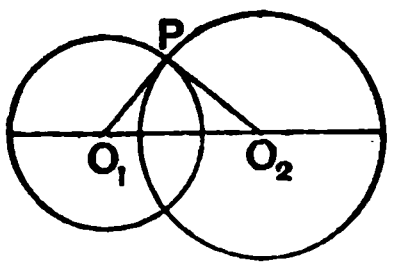
[Let the polar of A meet CA in M, and that of B meet CB in N; also draw AU, BV perp^r to CB, CA respectively.

Then A, V, U, B lie on a circle; ∴ CU . CB=CA . CV. [III. 36.

But CN . CB=CM . CA=sq. on radius (Art. 42). Subtract;

∴ CB . NU=CA . MV, *i.e.* CB . AX=CA . BY.]

44. Orthogonal Circles. Def. Two circles are said to intersect orthogonally when the tangents at their points of intersection are at right angles.



If the two circles intersect at P, the radii O_1P and O_2P, which are perpendicular to the tangents at P, must also be at right angles.

Hence $$O_1O_2^2=O_1P^2+O_2P^2,$$

i.e. the square of the distance between the centres must be equal to the sum of the squares of the radii.

Also the tangent from O_2 to the other circle is equal to the radius a_2, *i.e. if two circles be orthogonal the length of the tangent drawn from the centre of one circle to the second circle is equal to the radius of the first.*

Either of these two conditions will determine whether the circles are orthogonal.

It follows that if we want the circle whose centre is O_2 which shall cut a given circle, centre O_1, orthogonally, we must take its radius equal to the tangent from O_2 to the given circle.

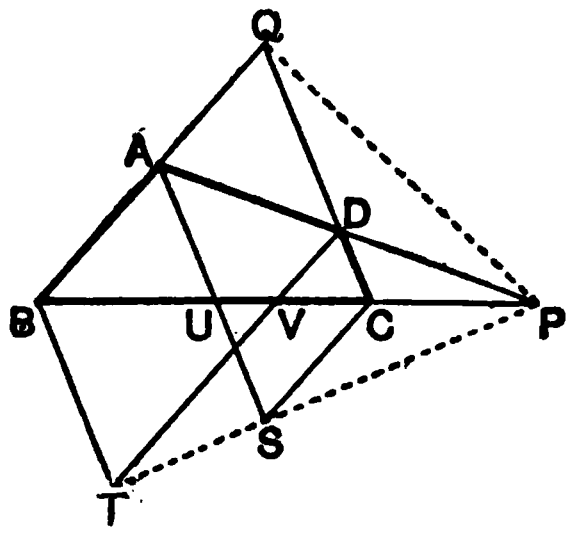
COMPLETE QUADRILATERALS.

106. Let ABCD be an ordinary Euclidean quadrilateral. Let AD and BC be produced to meet in P, and let AB and CD meet in Q. The figure is now said to be a complete quadrilateral, since it gives all the points of intersection of the four lines AB, BC, CD, DA produced indefinitely.

The straight line PQ is called the third diagonal, the other two being AC and BD.

Also, if AC, BD meet in R, then P, Q, and R are called the three vertices.

107. *The middle points of the diagonals of a complete quadrilateral lie on a straight line.*



Complete the parallelograms QASC, QBTD.

Let AS, DT meet BP in U and V.

Then PC : CU :: PD : DA, since CD, UA are $\|^{l}$,

i.e. :: PV : VB, since VD, BA are $\|^{l}$;

$\therefore$ PC : PV :: CU : VB,

:: CS : VT, since CUS, VBT are similar Δ^{s};

$\therefore$ PST is a straight line;

$\therefore$ the middle points of QP, QS, QT are in a straight line parallel to PST. [Art. 24.

But since QBTD, QASC are $\|^{gms}$, the middle points of QT, QS are the middle points of BD, AC;

$\therefore$ the middle points of the three diagonals BD, AC, QP lie on a straight line.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application
Please state which Part is required

Book I., 1s.; *Books I. and II.*, 1s. 6d.; *Books III. and IV.*, 2s.;
Books I. to IV., 3s.

EUCLID'S ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY

BOOK I. BOOKS I. AND II. BOOKS III. AND IV. BOOKS I. TO IV

EDITED FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS

BY

CHARLES SMITH, M.A.
MASTER OF SIDNEY SUSSEX COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

AND

SOPHIE BRYANT, D.Sc.
HEAD MISTRESS OF THE NORTH LONDON COLLEGIATE SCHOOL FOR GIRLS

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

462

EXTRACTS FROM THE PREFACE

THE following is the first instalment of a School Edition of Euclid's Elements of Geometry. The subject is treated in Euclid's order and manner, but with no special regard for the exact words of Simson's translation, which appears to have been scrupulously followed by many English editors.

Further explanation has been given whenever this appeared to be necessary or desirable, and we have not hesitated occasionally to give proofs different from those of Euclid.

The changes we have made in Book II. are more considerable than in Book I. We have substituted for Euclid's proofs of Props. 9 and 10 the proof in which the equality to be established is shewn directly from the diagram. Proofs of II. 12 and II. 13 are also given in which the equality that has to be established is proved at once from the diagram. These proofs might be given immediately after I. 47, as in Lardner's Euclid, where, so far as we can discover, these interesting and instructive extensions of I. 47 first appear.

The second book of Euclid is often found to be difficult and distasteful to beginners; we hope, however, that the changes we have ventured to introduce, and the explanations and additions we have given, will make the study of this important section of Geometry more attractive and more valuable.

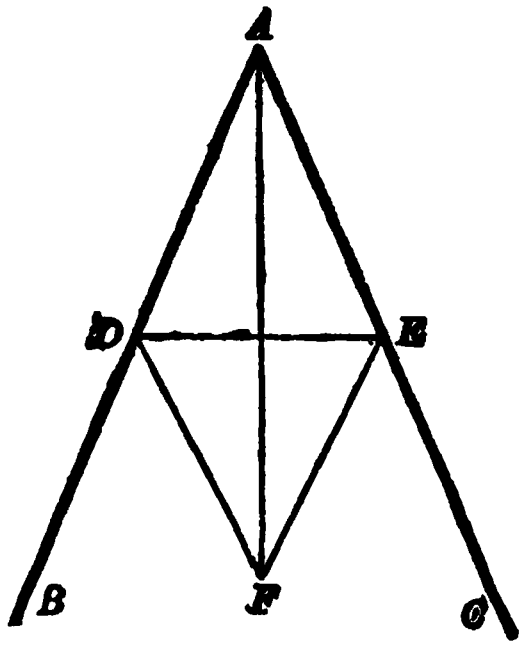
A few additional propositions have been given in the text; and in a note following each book we have grouped together the other important theorems with which the student should make himself familiar on a second reading. Most of the examples which are given under the different propositions are very simple, and could be solved by an average well-taught student quite early in his study of Geometry.

Abbreviations and symbols for words have been used at an early stage, because the different steps of the reasoning are more easily followed when contractions are employed; and, when students are themselves required to write out proofs, it is of the utmost importance that each of the different steps of the proof should be made to stand out as clearly as possible by the use of abbreviations.

PROPOSITION IX. Problem.

To bisect a given angle, that is, to divide it into two equal angles.

Let BAC be the given angle, *it is required to divide it into two equal angles.*



Const. In AB take any point D, and from AC cut off a part AE equal to AD. Join DE.

On the side of DE remote from A describe the equilateral triangle DFE, and join AF.

Then the straight line AF will bisect the angle BAC.

Proof. In the triangles ADF and AEF,

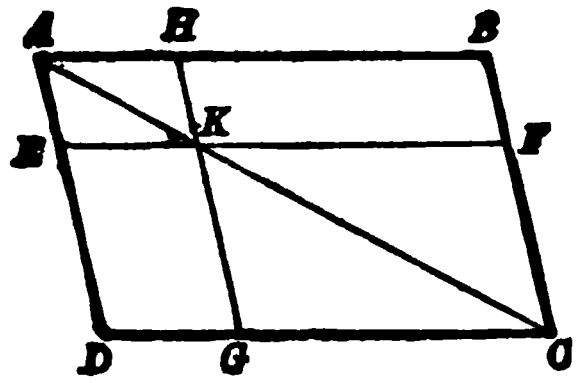
$$\because \begin{cases} AD = AE, & [\textit{Const.} \\ AF = AF, & \\ \text{and } DF = EF; & [\textit{Const.} \end{cases}$$

$\therefore$ the Δ^s ADF and AEF are equal in all respects, and in particular [I. 8.

$$\angle DAF = \angle EAF.$$

Therefore *the angle BAC is bisected by AF.*

The equilateral triangle DFE is constructed on the side of DE remote from A, for the construction would otherwise fail if DAE happened to be itself an equilateral triangle. If, however, DAE is not an equilateral triangle, DFE can be on either side of DE.



Since every ||^{m} is bisected by its diagonal,

$$\Delta\, ABC = \Delta\, ADC,$$

$$\Delta\, AHK = \Delta\, AEK,$$

and $$\Delta\, KFC = \Delta\, KGC.$$

From $\Delta\, ABC$ take the sum of the Δ^{s} AHK and KFC, and from the Δ ADC take the sum of the Δ^{s} AEK and KGC; then the remainders will be equal.

Hence $$||^{m}\, HF = ||^{m}\, KD.$$

It should be noticed that the converse of this theorem is true, namely:—

'If any ||^{m} be divided into four ||^{ms} by two lines || respectively to two adjacent sides; then if two opposite ||^{ms} be equal, the other two ||^{ms} will be about a diagonal of the given ||^{m}.'

Let GE, EH, HF, FG be the four ||^{ms} into which ||^{m} AC is divided by lines || to adjacent sides, and let ||^{m} EG=||^{m} FH. Then we have to prove that AKC is a st. line.

For, if AKC is not a st. line, let AK cut DC in the point X. Draw XY || to AD and cutting AB in Y. Then the complements GE and KY are equal. Hence ||^{m} KY=||^{m} KB, which is impossible. Hence AKC must be a straight line.

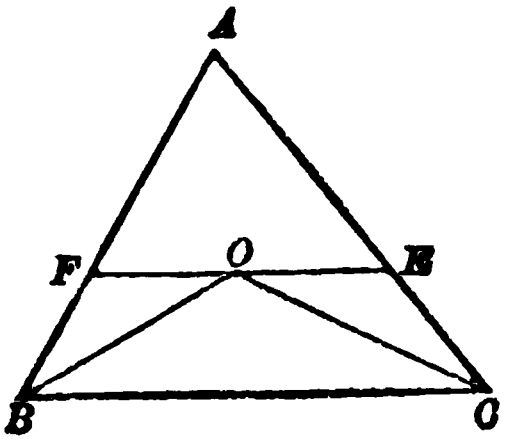
Ex. 1. Shew that each of the parallelograms about the diagonal of a rhombus, is a rhombus.

Ex. 2. Shew that each of the parallelograms about the diagonal of a rectangle, is a rectangle.

Ex. 3. Shew that the parallelograms DH and AF are equal.

Ex. 4. Shew that the parallelograms EC and GB are equal.

Ex. 1. ***Draw a line parallel to the base BC of the triangle ABC and cutting the sides AB, AC in the points F, E respectively so that FE may be equal to the sum of BF and CE.***



[Suppose the line FE to be drawn as required.

Then it naturally suggests itself to take the point O on FE such that $FO = BF$, and therefore $OE = EC$.

Then, since $BF = FO$, if BO be joined, $\angle FOB = \angle FBO$.

But, since FOE is $\parallel$ to BC, $\angle FOB = \angle OBC$.

Hence O must be *on the line bisecting the angle ABC.*

Similarly O must be *on the line bisecting the angle ACB.*

Hence the required line can be drawn by the following construction*.]

Const. Bisect the angles ABC, ACB by the lines BO and CO, and through O, the point of intersection of these bisectors, draw a line parallel to BC and cutting AB, AC in F, E respectively.

Then, by construction, $\angle FBO = \angle OBC$,

and, $\because$ $BC \parallel$ to FO,

$\angle OBC = \angle FOB$;

$\therefore$ $\angle FBO = \angle FOB$;

$\therefore$ $FO = FB$.

Similarly $OE = EC$, and $\therefore$ $FE = BF + CE$.

Ex. 2. ***Draw through any point P within the angle XOY a straight line cutting the lines OX, OY in the points Q, R respectively so that*** $QP = PR$.

* In future the 'analysis' will be put in brackets, as in this case.
The student will find it necessary, in all except the very simplest cases, to make an Analysis; this need not, however, be written out for an examiner in addition to the Synthesis.

Since AC is the difference between AB and BC, the above proposition can be enunciated in the following more interesting form:—

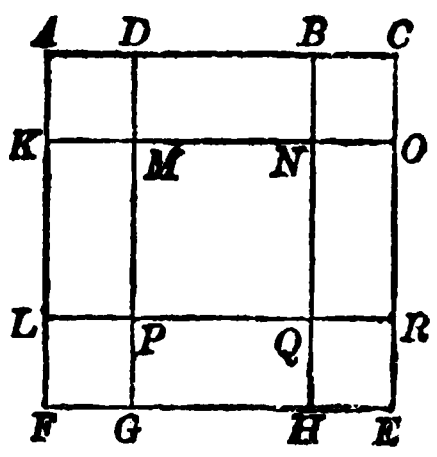
'*The square on the difference of any two straight lines is less than the sum of the squares on the lines by twice the rectangle contained by them.*'

Ex. 1. Shew that the sum of the squares on two straight lines is never less than twice the rectangle contained by them.

Ex. 2. Shew that the sum of the squares on two straight lines is never less than half the square on the sum of the lines.

PROPOSITION VIII. THEOREM.

The square on the sum of two straight lines exceeds the square on their difference by four times the rectangle contained by the lines.



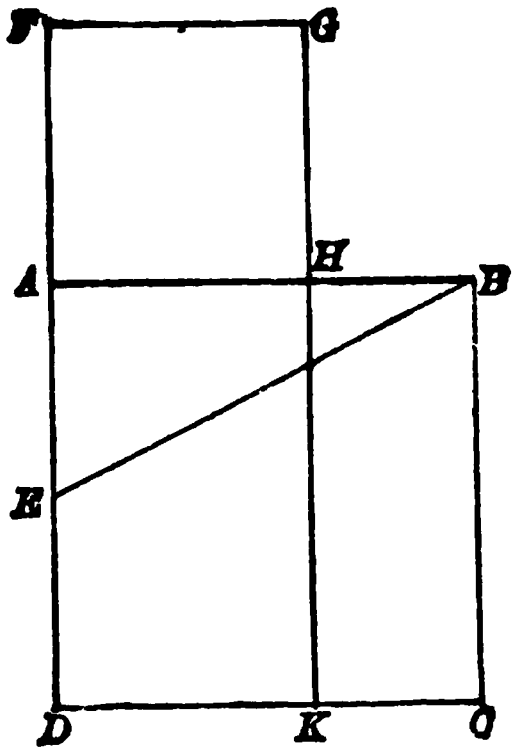
Let AB and BC be the two given straight lines, placed so that ABC is a straight line.

Cut off from AB a part AD equal to BC.

Then AC is the sum of the given lines and DB is the difference. *It is required to prove that sq. on AC exceeds the square on DB by four times the rect. AB, BC.*

On AC describe the square $ACEF$. Through D, B draw lines parallel to AF meeting FE in G, H respectively.

From AF cut off $AK = AD$ and $FL = AD$.



But figure FK is rect. DF, FA, since $FG = FA$.

Hence figure FK = sq. AC.

From these equals take away the fig. AK which is common; then

fig. FH = fig. HC.

But fig. FH is a square, and is $\therefore$ the sq. on AH, and fig. HC is equal to rect. AB, HB, for $BC = AB$.

Hence sq. on AH = rect. AB, BH.

Def. When a straight line is divided into two parts so that the rectangle contained by the whole line and one of the parts is equal to the square on the other part, the line is said to be divided in '**medial section.**' The line is also said to be divided in '**extreme and mean ratio,**' for in this case, as will be seen in Book VI, the ratio of the whole line to one part is equal to the ratio of that part to the other.

The analysis [see page 101] of this problem will shew how the above construction could be invented, and will enable the student to solve other analogous problems.

Analysis. Suppose that AB is divided in the required manner at the point H. Construct $AFGH$, the square on AH, and also the rectangle HB, BA, *these being put on opposite sides of the line* AB, as in the figure.

Then it is natural to complete the square AB, and as FK is equal to AC, we see that DA is to be produced to F so that the rectangle contained by the whole line produced and the part produced may be equal to the square on AB. Thus the problem is reduced to a particular case of that considered in Prop B.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Ex. 1. If in the diagram to Prop. XI, CB and FG are produced to meet in R, shew that DHR is a straight line.

Ex. 2. Shew that, if the lines GB, FC and AK be drawn, they will all be parallel.

Ex. 3. If FC cut AB, HK in P, Q respectively; then $FP=QC$.

Ex. 4. $\parallel^m GC=\parallel^m FB=\parallel^m AK$.

Ex. 5. The lines KF and HC are parallel.

Ex. 6. If KF cut AH in the point X, $HX=BH$.

Ex. 7. FB is $\perp^r$ to DH.

Ex. 8. If DH and EB intersect in O, AO is parallel to FB, and perpendicular to DH.

Ex. 9. The square on EF is five times the square on EA.

Ex. 10. The sum of the squares on AB and BH is three times the square on AH.

Ex. 11. The square on the sum of AB and BH is five times the square on AH.

Ex. 12. The difference of the squares on AH and HB is equal to the rectangle AH, HB.

Ex. 13. If, in the figure to Euclid II. 11, a point L be taken on ED produced such that $EL=EB$, and if a square $ALMN$ be described so that the squares AC and AM are on opposite sides of ADL; shew that the line BA will be divided externally at N so that sq. on AN is equal to rectangle BA, BN.

Ex. 14. If X be taken on HA such that $HX=HB$, then square on HX is equal to the rectangle HA, AX.

[This result is important. It shews that if a straight line be divided in medial section, and if the lesser segment be cut off from the greater, this latter is thereby divided in medial section. And this process can be continued.]

Ex. 15. DF is divided in medial section at A.

Ex. 16. DR is divided in medial section at H.

Ex. 17. GX is parallel to DH.

Ex. 18. Divide a straight line into two parts such that the sum of the squares on the whole line and one part may be equal to three times the square on the other part.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Pott 8vo.

FIRST COURSE.—*Books I.-III.*, 1s. 9*d.*; *Book I.*, 1s.; *Book II.*, 9*d.*

SECOND COURSE.—*Books I.-VI.*, 1s. 9*d.*; *Complete*, 3s.

Exercises in Euclid

GRADUATED AND SYSTEMATISED

BY

WILLIAM WEEKS

LECTURER ON GEOMETRY, ST. LUKE'S TRAINING COLLEGE, EXETER

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

One of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools—"I think the exercises are admirably chosen, and the system of grouping them in sets, the governing deduction in each set being printed in large type, is an excellent plan."

Rev. W. W. HOWARD—"The best collection that I know."

Rev. F. BOLTON, B.A.(Oxon.)—"No one who works through the exercises in this excellent little book, which supplies a long-felt want, can fail to derive great benefit from it. They are so well arranged that even a beginner will find the steps easy, and will soon by their help acquire a good power of working deductions. The book is evidently the work of one who knows how Geometry should be taught."

Mr. JOHN PASSMORE, Assistant Master, Hele's School, Exeter; late Principal of Brent Hill Collegiate School, Hanwell, London, W.—"An excellent book. Will prove a boon to teachers as well as students. I am working through it myself, and shall recommend it wherever I have the opportunity."

ON I. 6

(*a*) Prove the corollary to this proposition.

(*b*) ABC is an isosceles triangle with AB equal to AC; the bisectors of the angles ABC and ACB meet at O. Prove that CO is equal to BO, and thence prove that the triangles AOB, AOC are equal in all respects.

(*c*) SPQR is a square, and PT, QT are drawn so as to make equal angles with PQ: show that ST is equal to TR.

(*d*) ABC is an isosceles triangle; equal parts AD, AE are cut off from the equal sides AB, AC respectively; BE, CD intersect at F: prove that FBC is an isosceles triangle.

(*e*) ABCD is a quadrilateral having AB equal to AD and each of the angles ABC, ADC a right angle. Prove that BC is equal to CD.

ON I. 7

(*a*) Can there be two equilateral triangles on the same base and on the same side of it?

(*b*) If two points be taken on the same side of a given straight line such that they are equidistant from a given point in that line, they cannot be equidistant from any other point in that line.

(*c*) Show that the beams of a roof keep the ridge in a fixed position.

(*d*) Two circles cannot intersect at more than one point on the same side of the line which joins their centres. (Employ the *reductio ad absurdum* method and suppose that they do.)

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Crown 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Mensuration for Beginners

WITH THE

RUDIMENTS OF GEOMETRICAL DRAWING

BY

F. H. STEVENS, M.A.
FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF QUEEN'S COLLEGE, OXFORD

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

"This Primer consists in the main of the First Course taken from the author's *Elementary Mensuration*. Rules have, however, been re-stated, and explanations re-written with a view to greater simplicity; moreover, such additions have been made in the Introductory Chapter as were requisite to bring the work within the reach of pupils with no previous knowledge of Geometry."

The schemes of work laid down by the Education Code for Day Schools and Evening Continuation Schools have been considered in determining the general standard of the book; but its scope is not limited to these requirements, the main purpose being to provide a practical introduction of the subject likely to be useful to all classes of beginners.

Some indication has been given of the service which the elements of Geometrical Drawing may render to Plane Mensuration. . . .

The book may be studied, and the examples worked throughout, *without the aid of Algebra*, but for the convenience of those learners who have some knowledge of algebraical notation, many rules have been stated algebraically *as well as verbally*.

PRESS OPINIONS

Educational Times—"A considerable amount of ground is covered, and the whole is written with rare judgment and clearness. **We should judge that it would be practically impossible to produce a book better adapted to its purpose.**"

Academy—"**This book can be thoroughly recommended to the beginner,** as its contents, which are based upon the requirements of the Code, are both simple and concise. The rules are stated verbally, as well as algebraically, and the rudiments of geometrical drawing are also explained, so that a knowledge of arithmetic is the only necessary preliminary. **A good feature is the inclusion among the examples of questions for graphic solution.**"

Guardian—"**The little book is really excellent.** Mr. Stevens seems to us to have chosen just the elements that are of use in every-day life, and, in the notes and the examples he has worked out, to have given sufficient illustration of right methods. Exercises are numerous and discreetly tabulated; and—a point worth noticing—a good many are set for graphic solution."

Scotsman—"It is expounded with special knowledge of the needs of teachers, and makes a capital book on which to begin students of its subject."

University Correspondent—"The main book seems to us to be admirably written and got up in attractive form, with just such differences of type as are a real help."

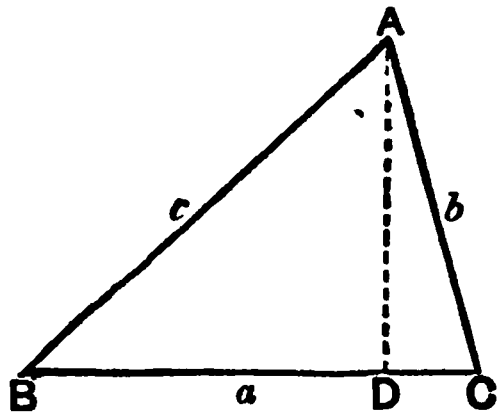
Educational News—"This little treatise will be found thoroughly practical . . . the explanations are clear and to the point, and the examples numerous and graded. **It is worth the attention of teachers and pupil-teachers, who have this subject to take. The book is in all respects worthy of commendation.**"

CHAPTER IV.

ON THE AREA OF TRIANGLES.

60. In a triangle ABC it is usual to adopt the letters a, b, c to denote the *lengths* of the sides opposite to the vertices A, B, C. Thus we may suppose that BC measures a units of length, CA b units, and AB c units.

Taking BC as the base of the triangle, then the perpendicular AD is called the altitude.



61. *To find the area of a triangle, having given the base and altitude.*

RULE. *The area of a triangle* $= \frac{1}{2}$ *base* $\times$ *altitude.*

NOTE.—This rule is derived from Euclid I. 41, where it is proved that *the area of a triangle is half the area of a rectangle on the same base and of the same altitude.*

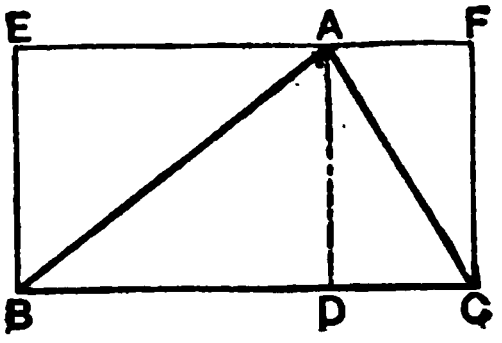
Thus in the adjoining figure:

The area of the triangle ABC

$= \frac{1}{2}$ area of rectangle EBCF

$= \frac{1}{2}$ length BC $\times$ breadth EB

$= \frac{1}{2}$ base BC $\times$ altitude AD.



Example. Find the area of a triangle whose base is 16 chains 15 links, and whose altitude is 2 chains 50 links.

Here *area of triangle* $= \frac{1}{2}$ *base* $\times$ *altitude*

$= \frac{1}{2} \times 16{\cdot}15 \times 2{\cdot}5$ sq. chains

$= 20{\cdot}1875$ sq. chains

$= 2{\cdot}01875$ ac.

$= 2$ ac. 0 r. 3 p.

16·15
2·5
8230
8075
2|40375
20·1875

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

121. The process may now be illustrated by an example.

Example. Find the volume of a rectangular block of granite whose length is 5 ft. 3′ 8″, breadth 3 ft. 5′, and thickness 2 ft. 4′.

Length,	5 ft.	3′	8″		
Breadth,	3 ft.	5′			
	15 sq. ft.	11′	0″		
	2 sq. ft.	2′	6″	4‴	
Area of base,	18 sq. ft.	1′	6″	4‴	
	2 ft.	4′			
	36 cubic ft.	3′	0″	8‴	
	6 cubic ft.	0′	6″	1‴	4⁗
Volume,	42 cubic ft.	3′	6″	9‴	4⁗ = 42 cubic ft. 513⅜ cubic in.

EXAMPLES XIII. B.

On Duodecimal Multiplication.

1. Find the volume of the rectangular solids in which
   (i.) the length is 3 ft. 4 in., the breadth 2 ft. 9 in., the thickness 1 ft. 4 in. ;
   (ii.) the length is 5 ft. 5 in., the breadth 3 ft. 9 in., the thickness 2 ft. 8 in. ;
   (iii.) the length is 6 ft. 7 in., the breadth 2 ft. 5 in., the thickness 1 ft. 2 in. 3 pts. ;
   (iv.) the length is 15 ft. 4 in., the breadth 1 ft. 5′ 3″, the thickness 8′ 4″.

2. How many cubic yards of masonry are there in a work in which 2160 blocks of stone have been used, each measuring 1 ft. 4′ 3″ in length, 1 ft. 2′ in breadth, and 10′ 8″ in thickness?

3. Find the weight of a deal beam 18 ft. long, 9 in. wide, and 6 in. 4 pts. thick, if one cubic foot of deal weighs 57 lbs.

4. Find the approximate weight of a granite block whose dimensions are 2 ft. 5 in., 1 ft. 2 in. 4 pts., and 9 in., it being given that one cubic foot of granite weighs 166 lbs. Give the result true to the nearest pound.

5. Find to the nearest gallon the contents of a rectangular cistern whose dimensions are 5 ft. 5 in., 4 ft. 3 in., and 3 ft. 7 in., it being given that 1 cubic ft. = 6¼ galls.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY MENSURATION

BY

F. H. STEVENS, M.A.

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

"This text-book of Elementary Mensuration is intended to meet the needs of two classes of learners. It accordingly includes a first and second course. The first course provides for those whose knowledge of Geometry is confined to Euclid's First Book, and of Algebra to the meaning of the simplest symbols; while a somewhat more advanced treatment is offered to students who have mastered the Sixth Book of Euclid, are fairly conversant with all ordinary algebraical methods up to the Binomial Thorem, and have made a beginning with Trigonometry.

"The examples in the first course are therefore merely numerical: they have been made as simple as possible, and it is hoped that they will serve as an introduction of the subject to those beginners who may have occasion in the future to study some of its practical applications. On the other hand the chief purpose of the higher course of questions is to exercise and illustrate the student's knowledge of Geometry and Algebra, and to give to the subject of Mensuration a somewhat higher place in a *mathematical* (as distinct from a *technical*) training than until recently has been claimed for it. . . .

"The formulae of Elementary Mensuration are collected for reference and revision in Chapter XXIV., and these are followed by an exercise consisting of questions selected from recent examination papers."

PRESS OPINIONS

Oxford Magazine—"Mr. Stevens seems bent on making students understand the meaning of the processes employed; and **his examples are excellent. This is by far the best book extant on the subject.**"

Guardian—"Elementary Mensuration is a book which we can entirely recommend. . . . The chief feature seems to be its abundance of well-chosen or original examples, which are sub-divided in each set for a junior and senior course. But it is no mere collection of examples; **the hand of the experienced teacher is seen throughout.**"

School Guardian—"The volume is systematically arranged, clearly and concisely written, and fully illustrated by numerous diagrams and a variety of examples and exercises. **It is in every way a creditable piece of work, and worthy of commendation.**"

Nature—"The large number of original examples will be found of great assistance by teachers, and the questions, selected from papers set by the principal examining bodies, will prove of service as tests of the students' capabilities in working out mensuration problems."

Schoolmaster—"**Very valuable suggestions on practical work are given throughout the book.** The exercises are numerous and suitable."

Scotsman—"While serving admirably as a book on which to begin the subject, it takes its students well on. Its exposition is simple and clear, and the large number of exercises and examples in which it abounds make the book **particularly suitable for use in large classes.**"

Glasgow Herald—"Throughout the book numerous problems are worked out in a clear and methodical manner. . . . The book is not intended as a technical treatise, but as a supplement to the staple subjects of an elementary mathematical training, and in this connection it seems to be all that can be desired."

NOTE. The above definition refers only to a *right circular cone*. Cones may exist whose axes are not perpendicular to their bases, and whose bases are not circular. Such cones, however, are beyond the scope of the present text-book.

101. *To find the surface and volume of a cone.*

In the adjoining figure let the height AB = h units of length, the radius of the base BC = r, and the *slant height* AC = l.

Then from the right-angled $\triangle$ABC,

$$AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2;$$

or, $$l^2 = h^2 + r^2; \quad \therefore \ l = \sqrt{h^2 + r^2}.$$

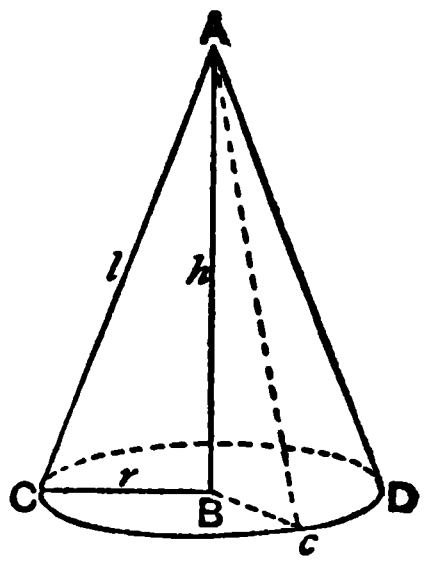
(i) *The curved surface of cone*

$$= \frac{1}{2}(\textit{circumference of base})$$

$$\times (\textit{slant height})$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \cdot 2\pi r \times l$$

$$= \pi r l \text{ square units.}$$



The *whole surface* of cone = curved surface + area of base

$$= \pi r l + \pi r^2$$

$$= \pi r (l + r).$$

Again, it may be shewn that the volume of a cone is *one-third* the volume of the cylinder on the same base and of the same height;

$$\therefore \text{ (ii) } \textit{the volume of cone} = \frac{1}{3}(\textit{area of base}) \times \textit{height}$$

$$= \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h \text{ cubic units.}$$

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Second Edition. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

THE TRIGONOMETRY OF ONE ANGLE

BY

REV. J. B. LOCK, M.A.

FELLOW AND BURSAR OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE
FORMERLY MASTER AT ETON

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

THIS little book has been entirely rewritten for this Second Edition. It now contains (without the Appendix) only that portion of the Trigonometry of One Angle which is required in the Cambridge Previous Examination. It is hoped that it may be found useful as a very simple introduction to the study of Trigonometry.

PRESS OPINIONS

SCHOOLMASTER.—"The selection has been judiciously made, and in parts re-written, especially when the author felt that by so doing he could improve it. We can well recommend the book."

SCHOOL GUARDIAN.—"The book is, as we should have expected, skilfully compiled, and likely to be of considerable service to private students."

OXFORD MAGAZINE.—"It should be of especial assistance to students commencing mechanics . . . It may with confidence be said that no boy is likely to make any effective progress in such a subject, who is unable to master a work in which the explanations and general arrangement are so clear as in that before us."

CAMBRIDGE REVIEW.—"It is very well printed and the figures are clear."

NATIONAL OBSERVER.—"Teachers with dull pupils will find his work most useful."

INDIAN ENGINEERING.—"It is not necessary to discuss this book at any very great length. It is intended for those students who require a knowledge of the properties of sines and cosines for use in the study of elementary mechanics. The properties of the Trigonometrical Ratios are so simple, and a knowledge of them is so easily acquired, that this little work will supply a suitable text-book for those students who have no leisure to study the more difficult properties of compound angles. But although the work deals with the most elementary parts of the subject, the explanations are throughout eminently scientific, and we are glad to see that the author has explained the application of the signs *plus* and *minus* from the consideration of angles and lines as displacement of direction and of distance respectively. Great care seems to have been taken to insure accuracy; and, from beginning to end, a teacher would find it hard to add much in the way of supplementary explanation. Mr. Lock's books are remarkable for the clearness and precision of the statements contained in them; the present work fully sustains the deserved reputation of its author."

DUBLIN EVENING MAIL.—"The propositions are properly arranged and clearly stated. The examples are numerous and judiciously graduated. The diagrams and print are remarkably clear and indeed beautiful."

Example 1. *In a right-angled triangle, in which C is the right angle, A is* 30° *and BC is* 10 ft. ; *solve the triangle.*

Here, $B = 180° - 90° - 30° = \underline{60°}$,

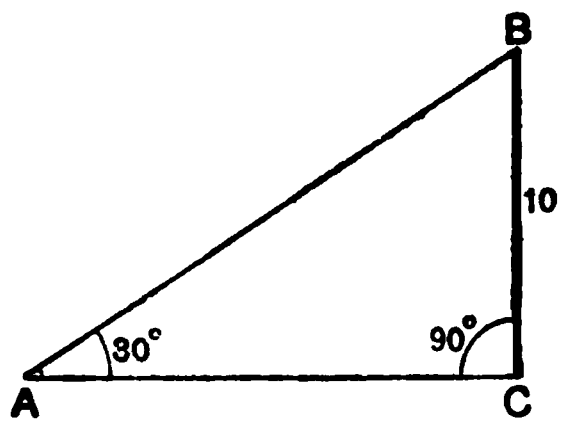
$$\frac{b}{a} = \cot A = \cot 30° = \sqrt{3};$$

$$\therefore \quad b = a\sqrt{3} = 10 \times 1{\cdot}7320 \ldots$$

$$= \underline{17{\cdot}320 \ldots} \text{ (ft.)},$$

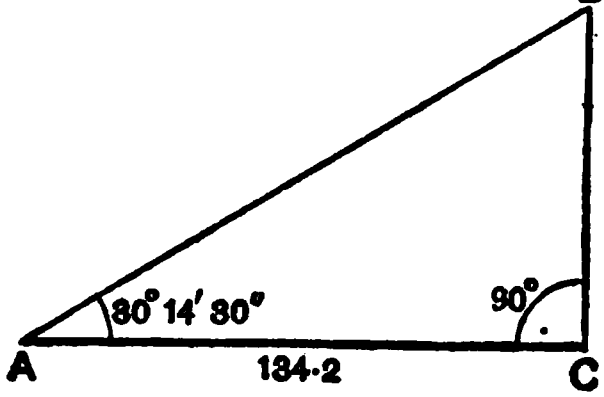
$$\frac{c}{a} = \operatorname{cosec} 30° = 2;$$

$$\therefore \quad c = 10 \times 2 = \underline{20} \text{ (ft.)};$$



$$\therefore \quad B = 60°, \ AC = 17{\cdot}320 \ldots \text{ ft.}, \ AB = 20 \text{ ft.}$$

Example 2. *In a right-angled triangle, in which C is the right angle, A is* 30° 14′ 30″ *and AC is* 134·2 ft. ; *solve the triangle, it being given* that* tan 30° 14′ 30″ = ·5831.



Here $B = 90° - 30°\ 14'\ 30'' = \underline{59°\ 45'\ 30''}$

$$\frac{a}{b} = \tan A = \tan 30°\ 14'\ 30'' = {\cdot}5831;$$

$$\therefore \quad a = b \times {\cdot}5831 = 134{\cdot}2 \times {\cdot}5831 \ldots = \underline{78{\cdot}25 \ldots}$$

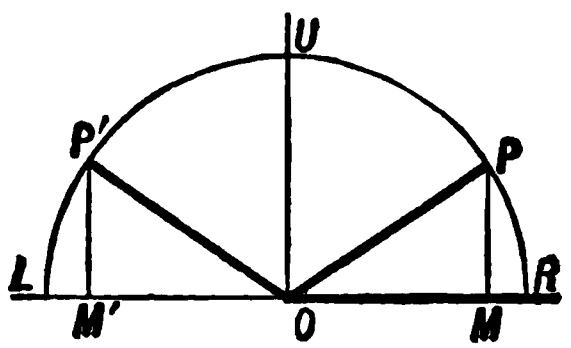
$$c = \sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)} = \sqrt{\{(78{\cdot}25)^2 + (134{\cdot}2)^2\}} = \sqrt{(6123{\cdot}0625 + 18009{\cdot}64)} = \underline{155{\cdot}3\ldots}$$

Hence $B = 59°\ 45'\ 30''$; $BC = 78{\cdot}25\ldots$ ft. ; $AB = 155{\cdot}3$ ft.

* In practice a book of Mathematical Tables is used, from which (as from a Dictionary) the numerical value of the ratio of any given angle can be found, or from which the size of the angle having a given ratio can be found. In Examination Papers if a book of Tables is not supplied, the necessary quotations are given from the Tables (as in the Example above).

67. To trace the changes in sin A *as* **A** *increases from* 0° *to* 180°.

Let a revolving line OP, of constant length (r), turning about O, make with OR the angle ROP (A), so that the angle ROP increases continuously from 0° to 180°.



Draw PM perpendicular to OR or RO produced.

$$\sin A = \frac{MP}{OP} = \frac{MP}{r}.$$

Then as ROP increases **from 0° to 90°,**

MP increases continuously from 0 to r;

$\therefore$ $\sin A$ increases continuously from 0 to 1;

and as ROP increases **from 90° to 180°,**

MP decreases continuously from r to 0;

$\therefore$ $\sin A$ decreases continuously from 1 to 0.

68. To trace the changes in *the sign and magnitude of* **cos A** *as* **A** *changes from* 0° *to* 180°.

Let a revolving line OP, of constant length (r), turning about O, make with OR the angle ROP (A), so that the angle ROP increases continuously from 0° to 180°.

Draw PM perpendicular to OR or RO produced.

$$\cos A = \frac{OM}{OP} = \frac{OM}{r}.$$

Then as the angle ROP increases **from 0° to 90°,**

OM decreases continuously from r to 0;

$\therefore$ $\cos A$ decreases continuously from 1 to 0;

and as ROP increases **from 90° to 180°,** OM' is drawn in the *opposite direction*, and its measure, which is therefore negative, changes continuously from 0 to $-r$;

$\therefore$ $\cos\theta$ decreases continuously from 1 to 0;

$\therefore$ $\cos\theta$ is negative, and changes continuously from 0 to -1.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Globe 8vo. Price 2s 6d. Key, 6s. 6d.

TRIGONOMETRY

FOR

BEGINNERS

AS FAR AS

THE SOLUTION OF TRIANGLES

BY THE

REV. J. B. LOCK, M.A.

FELLOW OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

FORMERLY MASTER AT ETON

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

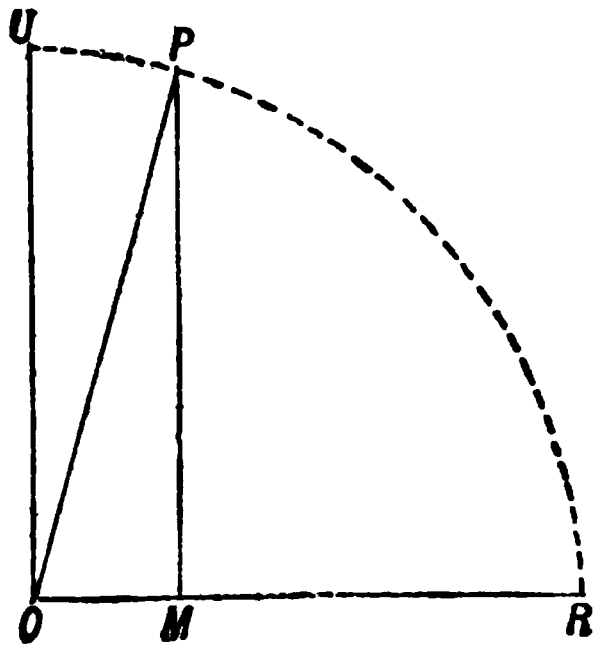
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

Chapter I. On Measurement; II. On the Relation between the Circumference of a Circle and its Diameter; III. On the Measurement of Angles; IV. The Trigonometrical Ratios; V. On the Ratios of Certain Angles; VI. On the Trigonometrical Ratios of the same Angle; VII. On the Use of the Signs + and —; VIII. On the use of + and — in Trigonometry; IX. On the Ratios of Two Angles; X. On the Ratios of Multiple Angles; XI. On Logarithms; XII. On the Use of Mathematical Tables; XIII. On the Relations between the Sides and Angles of a Triangle; XIV. On the Solution of Triangles; XV. On the Measurement of Heights and Distances; XVI. Triangles and Circles, Examples for Exercise, Answers to Examples.

56. *To find* $\sin 90^0$, $\cos 90^0$, $\tan 90^0$.



Let ROP be an angle nearly equal to 90^0, let OP be kept of a constant length, so that as ROP approaches 90^0, P lies on a circle centre O. Draw PM perpendicular to OR.

Consider what happens as the angle ROP *approaches* and *finally becomes* 90^0.

We notice that

(i) MP increases and tends to become equal to OP; and finally becomes equal to OP.

(ii) OM diminishes and tends to become zero, or 0; and finally becomes 0.

(iii) OP is unchanged.

Therefore as the angle ROP *approaches and finally becomes* 90^0,

$$\sin ROP, \text{ i.e. } \frac{MP}{OP}, \text{ approaches } \frac{OP}{OP}; \text{ that is, } 1;$$

and finally becomes 1;

$$\therefore \sin 90^0 = 1.$$

$$\cos ROP, \text{ i.e. } \frac{OM}{OP}, \text{ approaches } \frac{O}{OP}; \text{ that is, } 0;$$

and finally becomes 0;

$$\therefore \cos 90^0 = 0.$$

$$\tan ROP, \text{ i.e. } \frac{MP}{OM}, \text{ approaches } \frac{OP}{O},$$

a fraction which is greater than any assignable number; that is, 'infinity' or ∞;

$$\therefore \tan 90^0 = \infty.$$

88. We proceed to show that the Trigonometrical Ratios of an angle vary in **Sign** according to the **Quadrant** in which the revolving line of the angle happens to be.

From the definition we have, with the usual letters,

$$\sin ROP = \frac{MP}{OP}, \cos ROP = \frac{OM}{OP}, \tan ROP = \frac{MP}{OM}.$$

Fig. I.

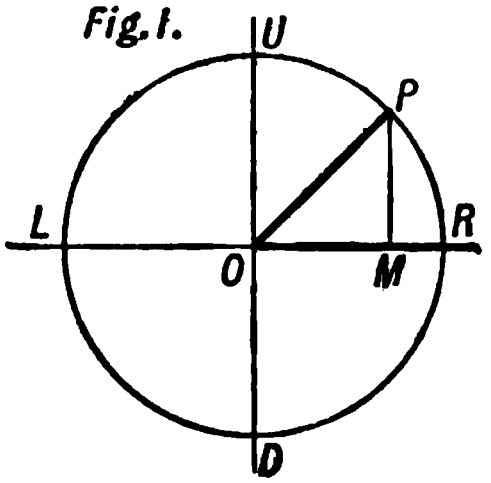


Fig. II.

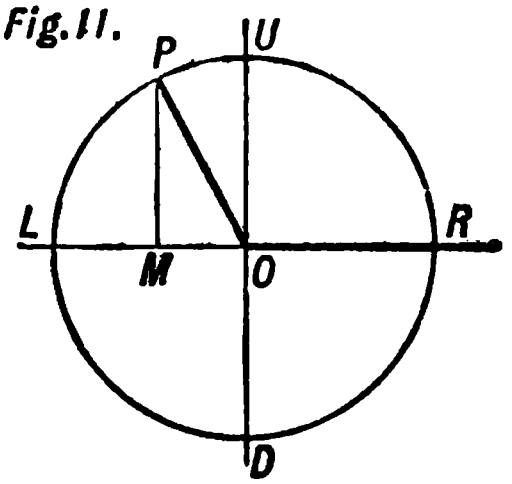


Fig. III.

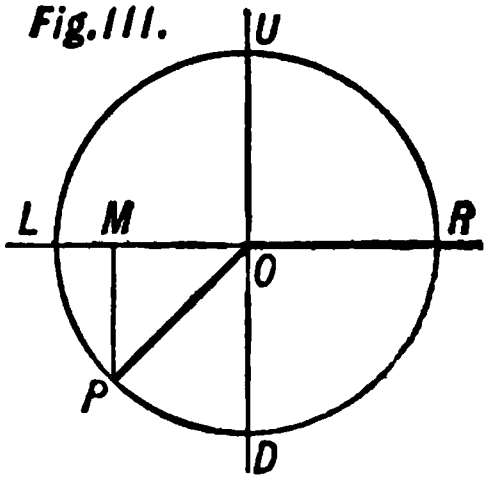
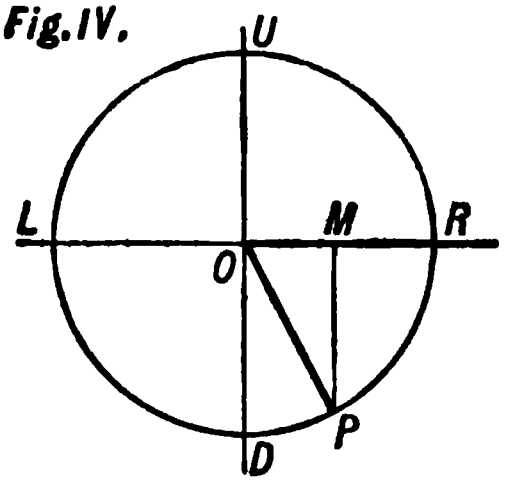


Fig. IV.



I. When OP is in the **first** Quadrant (Fig. I.).

MP is *positive* because from M to P is *upwards* (Rule II. p. 55.)

OM is *positive* because from O to M is *towards the right*, (Rule I.).

OP is *positive*. (Rule III.).

Hence, if A be any angle of the *first* Quadrant,

$\sin A$, which is $\frac{MP}{OP}$, is *positive;*

$\cos A$, which is $\frac{OM}{OP}$, is *positive;*

$\tan A$, which is $\frac{MP}{OM}$, is *positive.*

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Globe 8vo. Price 4s. 6d. Key, 8s. 6d.

A TREATISE

ON

ELEMENTARY TRIGONOMETRY

BY

REV. J. B. LOCK, M.A.

FELLOW OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, FORMERLY MASTER AT ETON.

STEREOTYPED EDITION

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

Chapter I. On Measurement; II. On Incommensurable Quantities; III. On the Relation between the Circumference of a Circle and its Diameter; IV. On the Measurement of Angles; V. The Trigonometrical Ratios; VI. On the Ratios of Certain Angles; VII. On the Trigonometrical Ratios of the same Angle; VIII. On the Use of the Signs + and −; IX. On the Use of + and − in Trigonometry; X. On Angles unlimited in Magnitude, I.; XI. On the Ratios of Two Angles; XII. On the Ratios of Multiple Angles; XIII. On Angles unlimited in Magnitude, II.; XIV. On Logarithms; XV. On the Use of Mathematical Tables; XVI. On the Relations between the Sides and Angles of a Triangle; XVII. On the Solution of Triangles; XVIII. On the Measurement of Heights and Distances; XIX. On Triangles and Circles; XX. On the Area of the Circle, the Construction of Trigonometrical Tables, etc., Appendix, Examples for Exercise, Examination Papers, Answers to Examples.

484

241. Let s stand for half the sum of a, b, c, so that $(a+b+c)=2s$.

Then, $(b+c-a)=(b+c+a-2a)=(2s-2a)=2(s-a)$,
and $(c+a-b)=(c+a+b-2b)=(2s-2b)=2(s-b)$,
and $(a+b-c)=(a+b+c-2c)=(2s-2c)=2(s-c)$.

242. VI. *To prove that* $\sin\frac{A}{2}=\sqrt{\frac{(s-b)(s-c)}{bc}}$,

and that $\cos\frac{A}{2}=\sqrt{\frac{s(s-a)}{bc}}$,

when s *stands for half the sum of the sides* a, b, c.

Now, since $\cos A=\frac{b^2+c^2-a^2}{2bc}$, and $2\sin^2\frac{A}{2}=1-\cos A$;

$$\therefore\ 2\sin^2\frac{A}{2}=1-\cos A=1-\frac{b^2+c^2-a^2}{2bc}\ \text{[Arts. 240, 166]}$$

$$=\frac{2bc-(b^2+c^2-a^2)}{2bc}=\frac{a^2-(b^2-2bc+c^2)}{2bc}$$

$$=\frac{a^2-(b-c)^2}{2bc}=\frac{\{a-(b-c)\}\{a+(b-c)\}}{2bc}.$$

$$\therefore\ \sin^2\frac{A}{2}=\frac{(a+c-b)(a+b-c)}{4bc}.$$

$$\therefore\ \sin\frac{A}{2}=\sqrt{\frac{(2s-2b)(2s-2c)}{4bc}}=\sqrt{\frac{(s-b)(s-c)}{bc}}.$$

Again, since $\cos A=2\cos^2\frac{A}{2}-1$; [Art. 166]

$$\therefore\ 2\cos^2\frac{A}{2}=1+\cos A=1+\frac{b^2+c^2-a^2}{2bc}.$$

$$\therefore\ \cos^2\frac{A}{2}=\frac{(b+c)^2-a^2}{4bc}=\frac{(b+c+a)(b+c-a)}{4bc}.$$

$$\therefore\ \cos\frac{A}{2}=\sqrt{\frac{2s\,.\,(2s-2a)}{4bc}}=\sqrt{\frac{s\,.\,(s-a)}{bc}}.$$

274. ***To find the Radius of the*** **Circumscribing Circle.**

Fig. I.

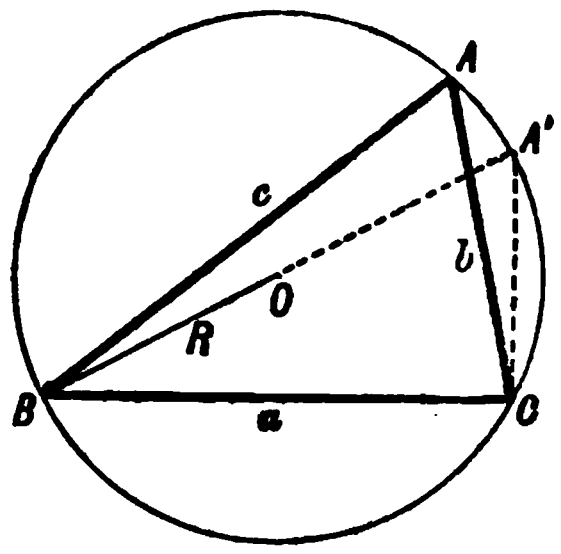
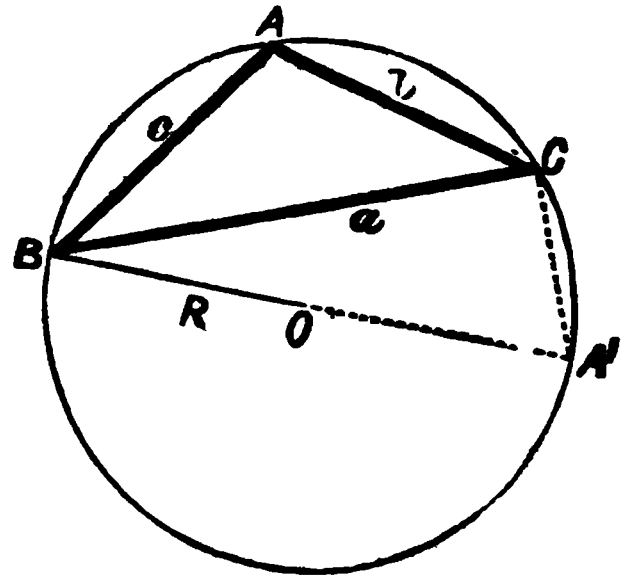


Fig. II.



Let a circle $AA'CB$ be described about the triangle ABC. Let R stand for its radius. Let O be its centre. Join BO, and produce it to cut the circumference in A'. Join $A'C$.

Then, Fig. I. the angles BAC, $BA'C$ in the same segment are equal; Fig. II. the angles BAC, $BA'C$ are supplementary; also the angle BCA' in a semicircle is a right angle.

$$\text{Therefore } \frac{CB}{A'B} = \sin CA'B = \sin CAB = \sin A,$$

$$\text{or, } \frac{a}{2R} = \sin A;$$

$$\therefore 2R = \frac{a}{\sin A}.$$

275. Similarly, it may be proved that

$$2R = \frac{b}{\sin B}; \text{ and that } 2R = \frac{c}{\sin C}.$$

$$\text{Hence, } \frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C} = 2R.$$

Thus d, the value of each of these fractions, is the diameter of the circumscribing circle.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY TRIGONOMETRY

BY

H. S. HALL, M.A.
FORMERLY FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

AND

S. R. KNIGHT, B.A., M.B., CH.B.
FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

The distinctive features of the book are

(1) The subdivision of the chapters into short sections, each followed by carefully graduated examples.
(2) The special prominence given to easy Identities and Equations, as soon as the fundamental properties of the Trigonometrical Ratios have been discussed.
(3) The postponement of radian or circular measure, a subject which has usually been placed so as to intimidate the beginner at the very outset.
(4) The model solutions of logarithmic questions, and of problems in heights and distances.

A KEY, for the use of Teachers. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

PRESS OPINIONS

Academy.—"It is drawn up with that skill which shows the writers to be past masters in the art of teaching, and is quite on as high a platform for Trigonometry as their previous books on Algebra are for that subject. We have read the text with care and have thoroughly enjoyed it."

Educational Review.—"The authors have that instinctive knowledge of the needs, both of the pupil and of the teacher, which only belongs to the practical teacher. The value of the book is due to the fact that they embody in it the results of their experience and that they present these results in a form so easily available to teachers and students. . . We must also congratulate the authors on their courage in postponing the consideration of circular measure, which has generally been placed so as to intimidate the beginner at the very outset. We have also to notice the excellent arrangement of the bookwork, the entire absence of the pedantic peculiarities which deface some well-known and otherwise excellent works, and the unusually good and numerous, and excellently classified series of examples. We must not omit also to call attention to the stress laid in orderly arrangement of working, especially, when it is most important, in logarithmic working. The model solutions of logarithmic questions are admirable. On the whole it is the best elementary treatise on Trigonometry we have seen."

Lyceum.—"Among other distinctive features of the book may be mentioned the postponement of the subject of Radian or Circular Measure to a somewhat late chapter. This is done, the authors announce, in order to give special prominence at the very commencement to the fundamental properties of the Trigonometrical Ratios, and to enable the student to acquire at once the necessary familiarity of Trigonometrical Identities and Equations. It is not too much to say of this book that it is the very best class-book that can be placed in the hands of beginners."

School Guardian.—"This new text-book of plane trigonometry is pretty sure of a welcome from those students and teachers who have already used the other mathematical works by the same authors. It is certainly entitled to such a welcome by reason of the many merits it possesses. Easy Identities and Equations—perhaps the most interesting part of elementary trigonometry to young pupils—are given a much larger space than is ordinarily allotted to them, while the chapter on logarithms and their uses and that on problems in heights and distances (which shows the practical side of the subject) also receive special attention . . . The number and variety of the examples, indeed, form a leading feature of the book."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Easy Trigonometrical Equations.

40. As a further exercise in using the formulæ of Art. 29 and the numerical values of the functions of 45°, 60°, 30°. we shall now give some examples in trigonometrical equation.

Example 1. Solve $4\cos A = 3\sec A$.

By expressing the secant in terms of the cosine, we have

$$4\cos A = \frac{3}{\cos A},$$

$$4\cos^2 A = 3,$$

$$\cos A = \pm\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}.$$

$$\therefore \cos A = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (1),$$

or

$$\cos A = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (2).$$

Since $\cos 30° = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$, we see from (1) that $A = 30°$.

The student will be able to understand the meaning of the negative result in (2) after he has read Chap. VIII.

Example 2. Solve $3\sec^2\theta = 8\tan\theta - 2$.

Since $$\sec^2\theta = 1 + \tan^2\theta,$$

we have $$3(1 + \tan^2\theta) = 8\tan\theta - 2,$$

or $$3\tan^2\theta - 8\tan\theta + 5 = 0.$$

This is a quadratic equation in which $\tan\theta$ is the unknown quantity, and it may be solved by any of the rules for solving quadratic equations.

Thus $$(\tan\theta - 1)(3\tan\theta - 5) = 0,$$

therefore *either* $$\tan\theta - 1 = 0 \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (1),$$

or $$3\tan\theta - 5 = 0 \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (2).$$

From (1), $\tan\theta = 1$, so that $\theta = 45°$.

From (2), $\tan\theta = \frac{5}{3}$, a result which we cannot interpret at present.

41. When an equation involves more than two functions, it will usually be best to express each function in terms of the sine and cosine.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

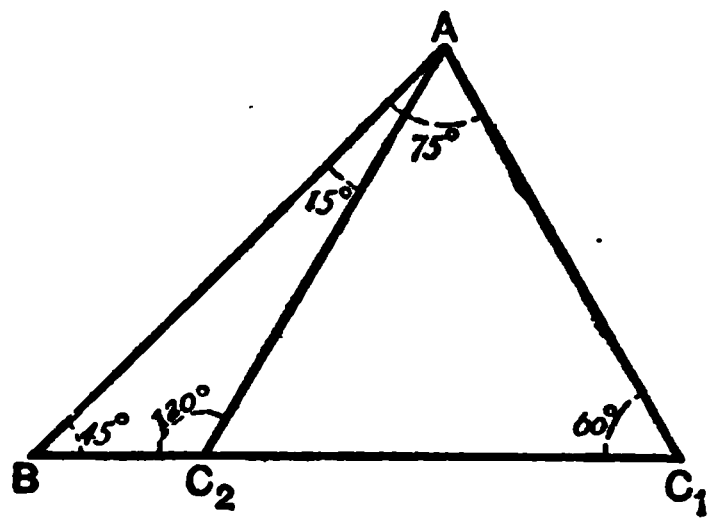
Example. Given $B=45°$, $c=\sqrt{12}$, $b=\sqrt{8}$, solve the triangle.

We have $$\sin C=\frac{c\sin B}{b}=\frac{2\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{2}}\cdot\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}=\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}.$$

$$\therefore\ C=60°\text{ or }120°,$$

and since $b<c$, both these values are admissible. The two triangles which satisfy the data are shewn in the figure.

Denote the sides BC_1, BC_2 by a_1, a_2, and the angles BAC_1, BAC_2 by A_1, A_2 respectively.



(i) In the $\triangle ABC_1$, $\angle A_1=75°$;

hence $$a_1=\frac{b\sin A_1}{\sin B}=\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{3}+1}{2\sqrt{2}}=\sqrt{2}(\sqrt{3}+1).$$

(ii) In the $\triangle ABC_2$, $\angle A_2=15°$;

hence $$a_2=\frac{b\sin A_2}{\sin B}=\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{2\sqrt{2}}=\sqrt{2}(\sqrt{3}-1)$$

Thus the complete solution is
$$\begin{cases} C=60°, \text{ or } 120°; \\ A=75°, \text{ or } 15°; \\ a=\sqrt{6}+\sqrt{2}, \text{ or } \sqrt{6}-\sqrt{2}. \end{cases}$$

EXAMPLES. XIII. b.

1. Given $a=1$, $b=\sqrt{3}$, $A=30°$, solve the triangle.
2. Given $b=3\sqrt{2}$, $c=2\sqrt{3}$, $C=45°$, solve the triangle.
3. If $C=60°$, $a=2$, $c=\sqrt{6}$, solve the triangle.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

If a be the smallest positive angle which has the given tangent, then $A = n\pi + a$, and we are really finding the value of

$$\tan \frac{1}{2}(n\pi + a).$$

(1) Let n be even and equal to $2m$; then

$$\tan \frac{1}{2}(n\pi + a) = \tan\left(m\pi + \frac{a}{2}\right) = \tan \frac{a}{2}.$$

(2) Let n be odd and equal to $2m+1$; then

$$\tan \frac{1}{2}(n\pi + a) = \tan\left(m\pi + \frac{\pi}{2} + \frac{a}{2}\right) = \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \frac{a}{2}\right).$$

Thus $\tan \frac{A}{2}$ has the two values $\tan \frac{a}{2}$ and $\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \frac{a}{2}\right)$.

Example 1. If $A = 170°$, prove that $\tan \frac{A}{2} = \frac{-1 - \sqrt{1 + \tan^2 A}}{\tan A}$.

Here $\frac{A}{2}$ is an acute angle, so that $\tan \frac{A}{2}$ must be positive. Hence in the formula $\frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{1 + \tan^2 A}}{\tan A}$ the numerator must have the same sign as the denominator. But when $A = 170°$, $\tan A$ is negative, and therefore we must choose the sign which will make the numerator negative; thus $\tan \frac{A}{2} = \frac{-1 - \sqrt{1 + \tan^2 A}}{\tan A}$.

Example 2. Given $\cos A = \cdot 6$, find $\tan \frac{A}{2}$, and explain the double answer.

$$\tan^2 \frac{A}{2} = \frac{1 - \cos A}{1 + \cos A} = \frac{\cdot 4}{1 \cdot 6} = \frac{1}{4};$$

$$\therefore \tan \frac{A}{2} = \pm \frac{1}{2}.$$

Here all we know of the angle A is that it must be one of a group of equi-cosinal angles. Let a be the smallest positive angle of this group; then $A = 2n\pi \pm a$.

$$\therefore \tan \frac{A}{2} = \tan\left(n\pi \pm \frac{a}{2}\right) = \tan\left(\pm \frac{a}{2}\right) = \pm \tan \frac{a}{2}.$$

Thus we have two values differing only in sign.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

299. By means of the identities

$$2\sin^2 a = 1-\cos 2a, \qquad 2\cos^2 a = 1+\cos 2a,$$

$$4\sin^3 a = 3\sin a - \sin 3a, \qquad 4\cos^3 a = 3\cos a + \cos 3a,$$

we can find the sum of the squares and cubes of the sines and cosines of a series of angles in arithmetical progression.

Example 1. Find the sum of n terms of the series

$$\sin^2 a + \sin^2(a+\beta) + \sin^2(a+2\beta) + \ldots\ldots.$$

$$2S = \{1-\cos 2a\} + \{1-\cos(2a+2\beta)\} + \{1-\cos(2a+4\beta)\} + \ldots\ldots$$

$$= n - \{\cos 2a + \cos(2a+2\beta) + \cos(2a+4\beta) + \ldots\ldots\};$$

$$= n - \frac{\sin n\beta}{\sin\beta}\cos\frac{2a+\{2a+(n-1)2\beta\}}{2};$$

$$\therefore\ S = \frac{n}{2} - \frac{\sin n\beta}{2\sin\beta}\cos\{2a+(n-1)\beta\}.$$

Example 2. Find the sum of the series

$$\cos^2 a + \cos^2 3a + \cos^2 5a + \ldots\ldots + \cos^2(2n-1)a.$$

$$4S = (3\cos a + \cos 3a) + (3\cos 3a + \cos 9a) + (3\cos 5a + \cos 15a) + \ldots\ldots$$

$$= 3(\cos a + \cos 3a + \cos 5a + \ldots\ldots) + (\cos 3a + \cos 9a + \cos 15a + \ldots\ldots)$$

$$= \frac{3\sin na}{\sin a}\cos\left\{\frac{a+(2n-1)a}{2}\right\} + \frac{\sin 3na}{\sin 3a}\cos\left\{\frac{3a+(2n-1)3a}{2}\right\};$$

$$\therefore\ S = \frac{3\sin na\cos na}{4\sin a} + \frac{\sin 3na\cos 3na}{4\sin 3a}.$$

300. The following further examples illustrate the principle of Art. 293.

Example 1. Find the sum of the series

$$\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{1+1.2.x^2} + \tan^{-1}\frac{x}{1+2.3.x^2} + \ldots\ldots + \tan^{-1}\frac{x}{1+n(n+1)x^2}.$$

As in Art. 249, we have

$$\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{1+r(r+1)x^2} = \tan^{-1}(r+1)x - \tan^{-1}rx;$$

$$\therefore\ S = \tan^{-1}(n+1)x - \tan^{-1}x.$$

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

MECHANICS FOR BEGINNERS

BY

W. GALLATLY, M.A.
FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF PEMBROKE COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

Adapted to the Elementary Stage of the South Kensington Syllabus

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

Attention is called to the following special characteristics of the book:

1. It contains the unprecedented number of *eight hundred* examples, of which one hundred and sixty are *worked in full*.

2. Great attention is given to Work, Power, and Energy. In Practical Mechanics these subjects are supremely important; and considerable stress is being laid on them in public examinations.

3. Problems of the same type are classed together in *small sections*, the method of dealing with each section being clearly explained by a worked example.

The work will be found suitable for the following examinations:

1. London University Matriculation. 2. Science and Art: Stage I. 3. Cambridge Local: Junior. 4. Oxford Local: Junior. 5. College of Preceptors: Professional Preliminary and Certificate. 6. Woolwich: Obligatory. 7. Royal University of Ireland: Matriculation. 8. Glasgow University: Preliminary. 9. Glasgow Technical College: Preliminary. 10. St. Andrews University: Preliminary. 11. Victoria University: Preliminary. 12. Owens College: First Year. 13. Birmingham University; Junior Physics. 14. Firth College: Elementary Mechanics.

PRESS OPINIONS

***NATURE.*—"The student who uses the treatise as a text-book will be equipped for almost any examination in elementary theoretical mechanics."**

***GUARDIAN.*—"There is much to praise in the book. The principles of Work and Energy have never been so simply and clearly stated in an elementary treatise."**

***SCHOOLMASTER.*—"Here everything possible seems to have been done to make the path a pleasant and easy one for the beginner. We feel certain the book will be received with marked favour."**

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

A TREATISE ON
ELEMENTARY DYNAMICS

DEALING WITH RELATIVE MOTION MAINLY IN TWO DIMENSIONS

BY

H. A. ROBERTS, M.A.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

This text-book assumes on the part of the student a knowledge of Trigonometry up to the Solution of Triangles, and of the simpler parts of Analytical Geometry. For the benefit of students who may be beginning to read the Differential Calculus, occasional reference is made, in the smaller print, to the notation of that subject.

The Kinematical Section is fuller than has hitherto been usual in books of this class; the treatment of independent velocities occupies more space, that of acceleration is carried further, and such problems as Simple Harmonic Motion occur in their logical place.

Mass is discussed from the point of view of inverse acceleration—ratios. Newton's formulation of the Laws of Motion is, as far as possible, retained: but an attempt is made, following modern authorities, to interpret the Laws so as to keep in view the Relativity of Motion. An entire chapter is devoted to Work and Energy.

The Velocity diagram and the Hodograph are constantly employed; for example, the former is often of use in discussing the Impact of Particles, and the latter in discussing the Motion of Projectiles.

If now we choose a certain particle A as being of unit mass, a particle B whose mass is m is such that

$$-\frac{\text{magnitude of acceleration of } A \text{ due to } B}{\text{magnitude of acceleration of } B \text{ due to } A} = \frac{m}{1}.$$

Thus the mass-ratio of the particle B to the unit particle A is a number m, which we may call the mass of B.

Similarly, in the case of another particle C, the mass-ratio of C to A is a number m', which we may call the mass of C.

If now the particles B, C be tested by experiment, we find, as previously remarked, that their mass-ratio is a constant number.

Moreover, a comparison of experimental results shows that this number is equal to $\frac{m}{m'}$.

The same is, of course, true of any other particles.

Thus there is associated with each particle a certain number called its *mass*, such that the ratio of the masses of any two particles is equal to their mass-ratio as above defined.

When two or more particles are rigidly connected so as to form a single particle, the mass of the single particle is found to be equal to the arithmetic sum of the masses of the separate particles composing it. For instance, the mass of a leaden bullet A, formed by melting together two other leaden bullets B and C, is the sum of the masses of B and C.

Two homogeneous particles of the same material and volume are found to have equal masses. Hence the masses of homogeneous particles of the same material are proportional to their volumes, a result in accordance with observed facts.

The mass of a particle, as is seen from the above discussion, is a constant scalar quantity. The *constancy* of mass has usually been assumed owing to Newton's definition of it.

Units of Mass. The British unit of mass, *i.e.* the body regarded as a particle whose mass is arbitrarily assumed to be unity, is a lump of platinum kept at Westminster, and called the Imperial Standard Pound.

The C.G.S. unit of mass is $\frac{1}{1000}$ part of the mass of a lump of platiniridium kept at Paris, and called the International Prototype Kilogram. This unit is called a Gram.

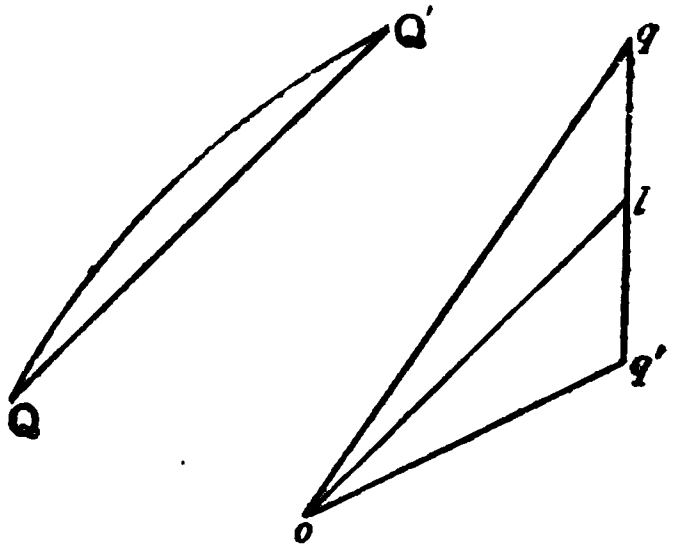
The Kilogram was designed to represent, and approximately does so, the mass of 1000 cubic centimetres of distilled water at 4° C. and 760 millimetres barometric pressure.

Our definition of mass is now complete as far as Galileo's axes are concerned; we shall presently extend it.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

As we shall give an independent proof of these important properties in the next article, we leave the above deductions as an exercise to the student.

157. *To find from the hodograph the range of a projectile on a given inclined plane through the point of projection at right angles to the vertical plane of the path, and to discuss the circumstances of projection.*



(1) **Range.** Let QQ' be the range on the inclined plane, qq' the hodograph for the portion of the path QQ', o the pole of the hodograph, l the middle point of qq', t the time from Q to Q'.

Then (§ 40, ii., Cor.) ol is the average velocity from Q to Q'.

Therefore the range $= QQ' = ol \,.\, t$.

But $ql = lq' = \frac{gt}{2}$, and therefore $t = \frac{2ql}{g}$.

Hence the range $= 2 \,.\, \frac{ol \,.\, lq}{g} = \frac{2uv}{g}$, *where* u, v *are the magnitudes of the (oblique) components of the initial velocity parallel to the plane and the vertical.*

This form of the expression for the range, which is convenient to remember, may be at once reduced to that of the last article.

We have, in fact, $oq = V$, $ol = u$, $lq = v$, angle $qol = a - i$, angle $oql = \frac{\pi}{2} - a$, angle $olq = \frac{\pi}{2} + i$.

$\therefore$ by trigonometry,

$$u = \frac{V \cos a}{\cos i}, \quad v = \frac{V \sin(a - i)}{\cos i},$$

and

$$\frac{2uv}{g} = \frac{2V^2}{g} \cdot \frac{\cos a \sin(a - i)}{\cos^2 i}.$$

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY
MECHANICS OF SOLIDS

BY

W. T. A. EMTAGE, M.A. (OXON.)

DIRECTOR OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION IN MAURITIUS; LATE PRINCIPAL OF THE TECHNICAL INSTITUTE, WANDSWORTH; FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF MATHEMATICS AND PHYSICS IN UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, NOTTINGHAM, AND EXAMINER IN THE FINAL HONOUR SCHOOL OF NATURAL SCIENCE IN OXFORD

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

Chapter I. Force; Parallelogram and Triangle of Forces. Chapter II. Resolution of Forces; Polygon of Forces. Chapter III. Rotative Tendency of Force; Moments. Chapter IV. Parallel Forces; Centre of Parallel Forces; Couples. Chapter V. Centre of Gravity; Mass; Density; Specific Gravity. Chapter VI. Centre of Gravity (continued); States of Equilibrium. Chapter VII. States of Matter; Elasticities. Chapter VIII. Work; Power; Energy. Chapter IX. Machines; Mechanical Advantage; Efficiency; Levers; Inclined Plane. Chapter X. Pulleys; Wheel and Axle; Screw; Toothed Wheel. Chapter XI. Balance; Steel-yards. Chapter XII. Velocity; Acceleration; Kinematical Equations. Chapter XIII. Use of the Kinematical Equations; Acceleration due to Gravity. Chapter XIV. Dynamical Measure of Force; Newton's First and Second Laws of Motion. Chapter XV. Dynamical Measure of Weight; Attwood's Machine. Chapter XVI. Impulse; Newton's Third Law of Motion. Chapter XVII. Kinetic Energy. Chapter XVIII. Potential Energy; Conservation of Energy; Perpetual Motion; Energy after Collision. Chapter XIX. Relative Velocity and Acceleration; Composition of Velocities and Accelerations; Uniform Circular Motion. Chapter XX. Simple Harmonic Motion; Pendulums.

497

21. Find in magnitude and direction the least force which will keep a body weighing 100 lbs. at rest on a smooth inclined plane, inclined at an angle of 45° to the horizontal. (*N.B.*—A graphical solution will be accepted.) (Science and Art, 1898.)

Summary.

A **machine** is an arrangement for transmitting force. The magnitude of the force is generally altered in the process.

The force applied to a machine is called the **Effort** (sometimes called Power, but this is not a good term for it); the force overcome is called the **Resistance.**

$$\textbf{Mechanical advantage} = \frac{\textbf{Resistance}}{\textbf{Effort}}.$$

In any practical case the work done by the effort exceeds that done against the resistance, because some work is lost in overcoming friction, etc., in the parts of the machine.

In a machine

$$\textbf{Efficiency} = \frac{\textbf{Work obtained}}{\textbf{Work expended}}.$$

If a and b are infinitesimally small distances through which the effort acts, and the resistance is overcome at the same time in any machine, then

$$\textbf{Velocity ratio} = \frac{a}{b}.$$

$$\textbf{Mechanical advantage} = \textbf{Velocity ratio} \times \textbf{Efficiency}.$$

Levers.—The general necessary and sufficient condition of equilibrium is that the moments about the fulcrum of the effort and the resistance should be equal and opposite.

Levers are divided into three classes according as *Fulcrum*, *Resistance*, or *Effort* is in the middle.

In any simple machine, if there is no friction, the work done by the effort may be shown to be equal to that done against the resistance. Or, assuming this principle, we can find the relation between the effort and the resistance.

With a **smooth inclined plane** suppose **P** is the effort necessary to sustain a body of weight **W** on the face of the plane, and **R** is the normal resistance of the plane. Let the height, length, and base be h, l, b.

(a) If **P** is parallel to the face of the plane,

$$\frac{\mathbf{P}}{h} = \frac{\mathbf{W}}{l} = \frac{\mathbf{R}}{b}.$$

(b) If **P** is horizontal,

$$\frac{\mathbf{P}}{h} = \frac{\mathbf{W}}{b} = \frac{\mathbf{R}}{l}.$$

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

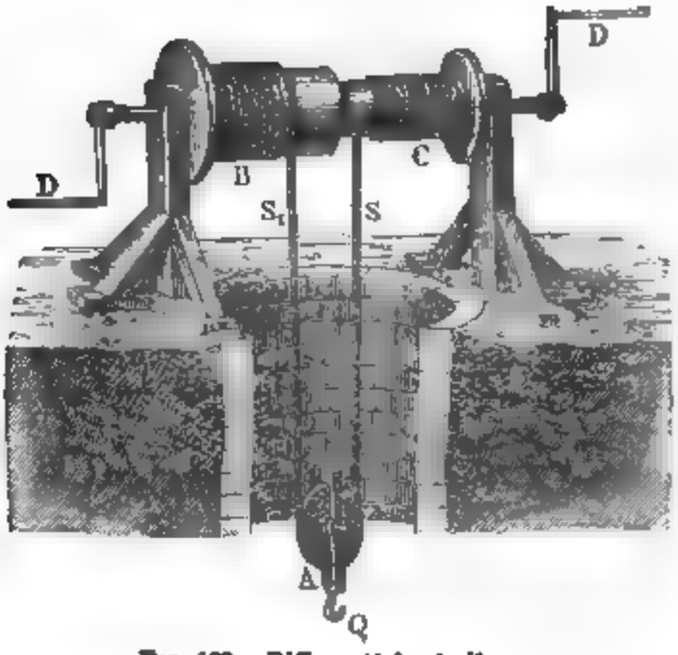


FIG. 133.—Differential windlass.

Suppose an effort **P** applied to the handle to sustain a weight **W**. Then the tension in the rope is $\frac{W}{2}$. And by moments about the axis of the drum,

$$Pa = \frac{W}{2}(b - c);$$

$$\frac{W}{P} = \frac{2a}{b - c}.$$

EXPERIMENT 35.—A wheel-and-axle is easily made by attaching a disc of wood to a cylinder of much smaller radius, or else by turning the whole in one solid piece. The first plan is simpler. A wheel of about 8 inches diameter and an axle of 1 inch diameter and 3 inches long will do very well. The wheel should be screwed firmly on the end of the axle with three or four screws, none of which passes through the centre. Two wire nails or screws may then be fixed at the centre of the wheel and at the other end of the axle to form an axis of rotation, and the arrangement set so that it can turn on two upright supports.

Fasten strings to the wheel and the axle, and wind them round in opposite ways.

First find the velocity ratio by finding how far the wheel string must be pulled down to raise a point of the axle string by a certain amount, say 2 or 3 inches.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. In Three Stages. Globe 8vo. Price, 1*s.* 6*d. each*

ELEMENTARY PHYSICS AND CHEMISTRY

ADAPTED TO THE SYLLABUSES OF

(1) Alternative Class Subject. Course H.
(2) Specific Subject XIII.
(3) Practical Science in Evening Continuation Schools

BY

R. A. GREGORY, F.R.A.S.

PROFESSOR OF ASTRONOMY, QUEEN'S COLLEGE, LONDON

AND

A. T. SIMMONS, B.Sc. (Lond.)

ASSOCIATE OF THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF SCIENCE, LONDON

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PRESS OPINIONS

STAGE I.

Guardian.—"The educational value of this first course, if the experiments are really performed, thought out, and written about, as herein indicated, is distinctly great—far greater, in fact, than Paul Bert's book. . . The book merits very extensive use in schools: it is a good stepping-stone to higher things."

Girls' and Infants' Mistress.—"Messrs. Gregory and Simmons have produced an excellent little work for young beginners in science."

Educational News.—"It is certain to become a favourite."

STAGES II AND III.

Saturday Review.—"The same good points are to be found as in the first: ample experiments, careful explanations and suggestive questions."

Schoolmaster.—"These books are well worth the attention of those who are interested in the teaching of the elements of science in our elementary schools. They are useful because they contain a large amount of instruction respecting many of the chemical and physical changes which almost daily come under our notice. They are educational because the course of instruction is so arranged as to cultivate the powers of observation and reasoning."

School Guardian.—"This method is well calculated to teach pupils to observe and reason for themselves, and the habit of mind thus acquired is of infinitely more value than the mere acquisition of facts."

Secondary Education.—"This is an exceedingly useful course of elementary science, and it is based on sound educational principles."

Contents of Stage I.

Lesson 1, The Senses; 2, Matter and Hardness; 3, Solids, Liquids and Gases; 4, Properties of some Common Things; 5, Properties of some Common Things, *continued;* 6, Measurement of Length; 7, Measurement of Area; 8, Measurement of Volume; 9, Mass and Weight; 10, Measurement of Mass; 11, The Principle of the Balance; 12, Density; 13, Density, *continued;* 14, Determination of Density; 15, Things which sink in Water; 16, Things which float in Water; 17, Principle of Archimedes; 18, Determination of the Density of a Solid; 19, The Air around us; 20, The Pressure of the Air; 21, Barometers; 22, Why the Height of the Barometer alters; 23, Effects of Heat; 24, Thermometers; 25, Graduation of Thermometers, Fixed Points; 26, Soluble and Insoluble Solids; 27, Soluble Liquids and Gases; 28, There is no Loss during Solution, Evaporation; 29, Saturated Solutions; 30, Solubility of Things in Acids; 31, Changes of Mass when Chemical Action accompanies Solution; 32, Crystals and Crystallisation; 33, Crystals and Crystallisation, *continued;* 34, Graphic Representation; 35, Graphic Representation, *continued.*

Contents of Stage II.

Summary of First Stage. Lesson 1, Evaporation; 2, Distillation; 3, Moisture in the Air; 4, How the Amount of Water Vapour in the Air is Measured; 5, Changes of Volume and Density of Water; 6, Maximum Density of Water; 7, Heat and Temperature; 8, The Measurement of Heat; 9, Quantity of Heat; 10, Heat Capacity; 11, Relative Capacities for Heat; 12, Specific Heat; 13, Heat Absorbed in the Fusion of Ice, 14, Convection: Heat Absorbed in the Conversion of Water into Steam; 15, Increase of Mass Accompanies Burning; 16, The Rusting of Iron; 17, The Action of Phosphorus on Air; 18, Changes Produced by Burning Phosphorus in Air; 19, The Burning of a Candle; 20, The Burning of a Candle, *continued;* 21, The Burning of Oil and Gas; 22, Search for the Active Part of Air; 23, Preparation of Oxygen; 24, Chemical Conduct of Oxygen.

Contents of Stage III.

Summary of First and Second Stages. Lesson 1, Characteristic Properties of Water; 2, Action Between Water and Iron; 3, The Composition of Water; 4, Action of Zinc upon Acids; 5, Properties of Hydrogen; 6, The Burning of Hydrogen; 7, The Action of Hydrogen on Metal Rusts; 8, Natural Waters; 9, Chalk and the Action of Heat upon it; 10, Chalk and Lime Compared; 11, Further Study of the Action of Heat on Chalk; 12, Action of Acids on Chalk; 13, Study of the Gas Obtained from Chalk; 14, Further Study of the Action of Acids on Metals and Carbonates; 15, Burning and Breathing; 16, Carbon Dioxide in the Air; 17, Hard and Soft Waters; 18, Limestones; 19, Natural Changes in which Chalk and Carbon Dioxide take part; 20, Mortar.

iron, oak, pine, and cork, one after another, into the water. Observe that (1) some sink and others float, (2) of those which float some sink further into the water than others. Take the objects which sink in water and place them in mercury. Notice that they float.

Partly fill a glass cylinder, divided into cubic centimetres, and record the level of the water therein. Drop in one of the cubic centimetre solids which sinks, and again read the level of the water; put the others in in order, recording the level of the water after each such addition. It will be found that the level increases by 1 cubic centimetre division in each case.

Take any solid, such as a glass stopper or a marble, and drop it gently into water contained in the graduated glass cylinder. Read the level of the water before and after dropping the solid in; the difference between these readings will give you the volume of the solid in cubic centimetres.

READING LESSON.

Some Things sink, others float in Water.—When you throw a stone into water what happens to it? It sinks to the bottom. But if you throw a piece of wood into water does it also sink? No, it floats. By noticing what happens when different substances are put in water you can easily divide them into two classes. Those in one division all sink, while those in the other all float. And, of those that float, some sink further into the water than others.

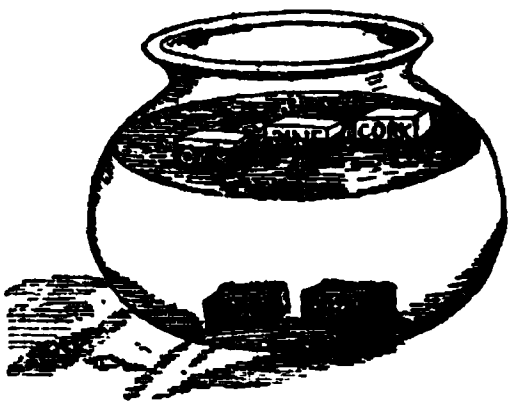


FIG. 37.—Some things sink, and others float, in water.

But you must not suppose that substances which sink in water will sink in every liquid. As a matter of fact, solid iron, or even lead, will float upon mercury.

Volume of Water displaced by Bodies placed into it.—If we put water into a narrow glass cylinder, and then add lumps of material of such a size and shape that they will go into

Another way is to burn a little phosphorus in a sealed tube having a pointed end, and then by breaking off the end of the tube under water, the volume of water which takes the place of the air used can be found, and its proportion to the whole volume of the tube can be determined.

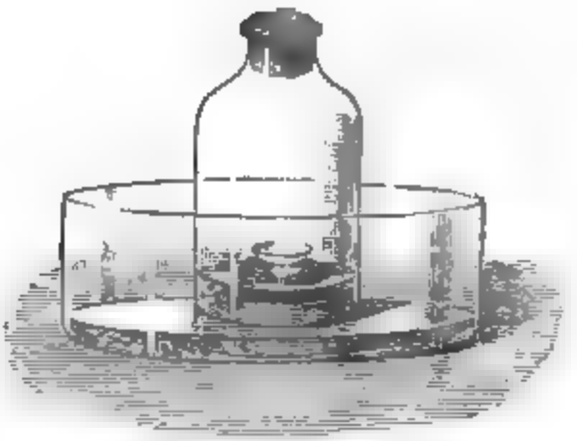


FIG. 58.—Phosphorus uses up one-fifth of the air in the bottle when it burns, and water rises to take the place of the air used.

That the gas left behind is really the inactive part, which is called nitrogen, can be proved by quickly pulling out the stopper of a jar in which phosphorus has been burnt, and introducing a lighted taper. The flame is at once extinguished.

Phosphorus slowly takes out the active part of the air without being lighted.—We have seen that iron slowly takes the active part of the air and combines with it to form rust. And this happens without heating the iron. Will ordinary phosphorus do the same when it is not alight? This question, too, is easily answered by a simple experiment. When a piece of clean phosphorus is exposed to an enclosed quantity of air over water, the rapid changes described in the last paragraph take place slowly. The only difference in the two cases is the rate at which the active part of the air is taken out. Burning phosphorus combines with the active part very quickly; ordinary phosphorus but slowly. Still, given time enough, ordinary phosphorus will remove all the active part of air, and at the end of the experiment it will be found that again one-fifth of the air has disappeared.

TO BE REMEMBERED.

Phosphorus readily burns in the air; in doing so it takes out the active part and combines with it to form a white snow-like powder.

Phosphorus can also, like iron, slowly take out the active part of the air without being lighted.

When phosphorus is burnt in an enclosed volume of air, one-fifth of the volume is used up, and four-fifths remain.

5. When would you expect a man to breathe out most carbonic acid gas, when sitting still or when working hard, and why?

6. Clear lime-water is left in an unstoppered bottle, what happens and why?

7. Why is it dangerous to descend into an old well or mine which has not been ventilated?

LESSON XVI.

CARBON DIOXIDE IN THE AIR.

PRACTICAL WORK.

Things required.—Spring water or water saturated with carbonic acid gas. Fresh watercress. Test-tubes. Basin of water. Splinters. Glass jar. Large funnel. Green leaves. Piece of sheet iron or tin plate.

What to do.

Carbon dioxide in water.—Procure some fresh spring water, which generally contains carbon dioxide dissolved in it. You can see whether the water you think of using contains carbon dioxide by adding lime-water. If there is no milkiness the water is unsuitable for the experiment. In that case you must pass carbon dioxide into some water for a little while from the delivery tube of an apparatus like that in Lesson XIII.

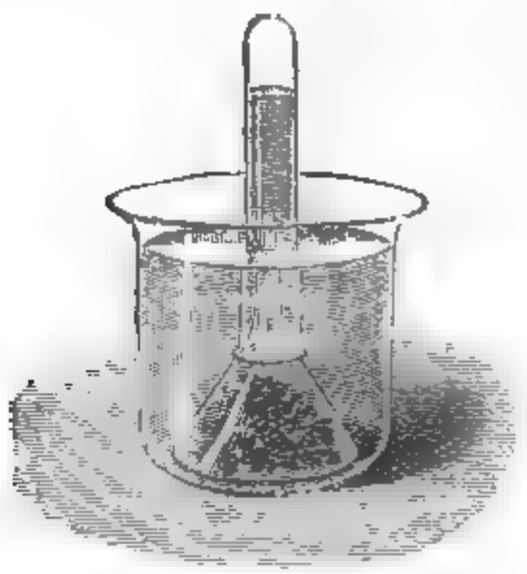


FIG. 41.—Oxygen is given off from fresh watercress in bright sunlight.

Oxygen from plants.—Take a bunch of fresh watercress, or water weeds, and put it into a beaker or glass jar and completely fill it with the water saturated with carbon dioxide. Cover the plants with a funnel nearly as wide as the jar,

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Part I., First Year's Course. 208 *pp. Globe* 8*vo.*, 2*s.*
Part II., Second Year's Course. 2*s.*

EXERCISES IN PRACTICAL PHYSICS

FOR SCHOOLS OF SCIENCE

BY

R. A. GREGORY, F.R.A.S.

PROFESSOR OF ASTRONOMY, QUEEN'S COLLEGE, LONDON

AND

A. T. SIMMONS, B.Sc. (Lond.)

ASSOCIATE OF THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF SCIENCE, LONDON

IN TWO PARTS.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

THE characteristics of this volume and its sequel, to which we invite the attention of teachers of practical physics, are briefly:

(1) The number and variety of exercises used to exemplify each of the principles dealt with.

(2) The limitation of the text to instructions for the intelligent performance of the experiments, and the recognition of the significance of the results obtained.

(3) The number of new and simple experimental devices which, by the courtesy of various teachers, it has been possible to incorporate.

(4) The numerous illustrations showing at a glance the apparatus required and the method of procedure.

Teachers of practical physics, whether in "Schools of Science," or other schools in which experimental work in physical science forms a part of the curriculum, may be left to judge for themselves as to the value of these points. Our own experience in teaching and examining has convinced us that a sound knowledge of any scientific principle is only obtained after many experiments designed to present it under different aspects have been performed and studied. It is for this reason that several exercises are given under each division of the subject. When time permits a student ought to perform practically all the exercises, in order to impress upon his mind the principles they exemplify; he should, in fact, regard the exercises as he does the examples in his mathematical books, and work as many of them as he can. But where certain subjects must be studied in the very few hours per week allotted to practical physics it will be necessary for the teacher to make a selection.

The descriptive matter has been curtailed because students only require, in a laboratory manual, instructions to guide them in carrying out experimental work—they can study the theoretical aspects of their laboratory practice from lecture-notes and in text-books of general physics.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I.—Measurement of Length; II., Measurement of Area; III., Measurement of Volume in Capacity; IV., Measurement of Mass and Density; V., Hydrostatic Methods of Determining Densities; VI., Pressures on Liquids and Gases; VII., Plotting of Curves; VIII., The Lever, Parallel Forces, and Centre of Gravity; IX., Measurement of Time and Angle; X., Parallelogram and Triangle of Forces, Friction, and Inclined Plane; XI., Motion and the Force of Gravity; XII., Thermometers, and Simple Observations with them; XIII., Conduction and Radiation of Heat; Additional Exercises; Index.

PRESS OPINIONS

EDUCATIONAL NEWS.—"This book is neither of too advanced a type for the scholars in a higher grade school nor too elementary for students beginning their course in a Technical Institute or College. The experiments are sufficiently detailed, and sufficiently illustrated by diagrams to allow of correct working. Its bulk is not needlessly increased by theoretical explanations; it professes to be not a scientific treatise, but a practical text-book, and as such we can recommend it. The diagrams are good; we would particularly call our readers' attention to those on the use of the vernier."

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.—"The opening words of this volume—'You are provided with a foot-rule'—are typical of its thoroughly practical character."

PUBLIC SCHOOL MAGAZINE.—"This well-illustrated volume contains accurate and lucid descriptions of a large number of experiments, and methods of measurement. . . . The experiments are mostly simple and progressive, and the book is exceedingly workable for a fairly large class."

BOOKSELLER.—"This is the first part of a collection of exercises in practical physics taught on the experimental system now so generally recognised, and one advantageous feature is the number of new and simple experimental devices which it includes, many of which are exceedingly ingenious and helpful. As the book is intended for actual work in the laboratory the descriptive matter has been carefully restricted, and thus room has been found for all the principal elementary portions of the subject."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

(*a*) If the area of each small square of the base of a block like *A* in Fig. 48 is 1 sq. cm., and the slabs are 1 cm. thick, how many cubic centimetres are there in a single slab of the block? How many cubic centimetres are there in three of the slabs? How many cubic centimetres are there in the whole of the slabs?

Now examine a block like *B*, Fig. 48, and determine (1) the area of the base, (2) the number of cubic centimetres in a single slab, (3) the number of cubic centimetres in the whole of the slabs, that is, the volume of the triangular prism.

Proceed in the same way to determine the volumes of blocks like *C* and *D* in Fig. 48. The area of the base of *D* can be found by placing the block upon squared paper and drawing a line around it.

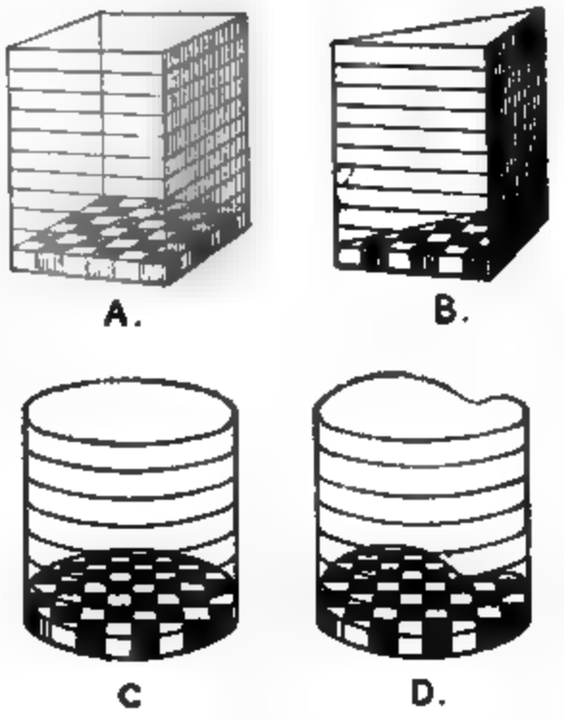


FIG. 48.—Determination of volumes of solids.

(*b*) Measure in centimetres the length, breadth, and height of a rectangular block, and by multiplying the three numbers together determine the number of cubic centimetres there are in the block.

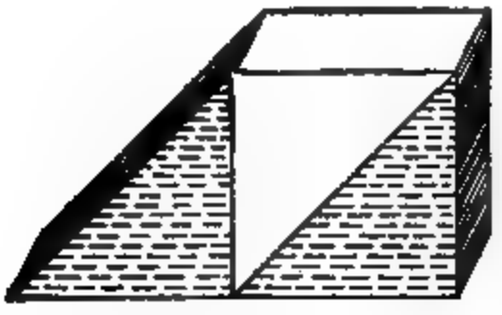


FIG. 49.—A parallelopiped can be converted into a cube.

Parallelopiped.

(*c*) Place together two triangular blocks or prisms to form a cube. Then place the shaded block against the unshaded one so as to form the slant shape shown in Fig. 49.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

In Pott 8vo. Price 1s.

ELEMENTARY COURSE

OF

PRACTICAL SCIENCE

PART I

BY

HUGH GORDON, M.A.

INSPECTOR OF SCIENCE SCHOOLS UNDER THE SCIENCE AND ART DEPARTMENT

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

508

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION. To the Teacher.—To Examiners.

MEASUREMENT. Measurement of Length.—The English System.—The Decimal System.—The English Standard of Length.—The French Standard of Length.—Teaching the Metric System.—Exercises 1-6. Measurement of Length and Breadth or Surface.—Exercises 7-10.—Measurement of Bulk or Volume.—Exercises 11-13.

Measurement of Weight.—Measurement of Weight.—The English System of Weights.—The French System of Weights.—Additions of Interest.—The Parliamentary Standards.—The Scales or Balance.—The Method of Weighing.—Important Note on Weighing.—Exercises 14-18.—Graphic Representation of the Weights of the Cubes.—The Weight of Water.—Additions of Interest.—The Metric System.—Exercises 19-23.

The Lever.—Experiments with simple Balance or Lever.—Exercises 24-26.—Application of above Conclusions to the Balance.—Exercises 27-28.

The Relative Weights of Liquids and Solids.—Relative Weights of Liquids.—The Relative Weight Bottle.—Exercises 29-35. The Relative Weights of Liquids by Means of the U Tube.—Exercises 36-37.

The Barometer.—The U Tube and the Air.—Exercises 38-40.—Addition of Interest—The Storm in Mauritius.—The Relative Weights of Solids.—Exercises 41-43.—The Relative Weights of Solids found by first finding their Volume. Exercises 44-45.—Relative Weights of Solids by Weighing in Water.—Exercises 46-50.—Table of Relative Densities or Specific Gravities.

Thermometers.—Expansion and Contraction of Liquids.—Centigrade and Fahrenheit Thermometers.—Exercises 51-58.—The Boiling of Water.—Liebig's Condenser.

Filtration.—Separation of certain Solids from Water by Straining.—Exercises 59-61.

Evaporation.—Evaporation at Ordinary Temperatures.—Sea-weed.—The Wet and Dry Bulb Thermometer.—Tabulated Results.—Exercises 62-64.—Evaporation of (1) Ordinary Water, (2) Sea Water, (3) Rain Water.—Exercise 65.

Solubility.—Solubility of Salt, Soda, Chalk, etc., in Water.—Exercises 66-68.

Appendices.—Notes on boring Corks, cutting Glass, etc.—List and Price of Apparatus required.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

London University Matriculation

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY GENERAL SCIENCE

BY

A. T. SIMMONS, B.Sc. (Lond.)

ASSOCIATE OF THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF SCIENCE, LONDON

AUTHOR OF "PHYSIOGRAPHY FOR BEGINNERS," ETC.

AND

LIONEL M. JONES, B.Sc. (Lond.)

ASSOCIATE OF THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF SCIENCE, LONDON

SCIENCE MASTER OF ST. DUNSTAN'S COLLEGE, CATFORD, S.E.

This book has been modelled upon the syllabus of the new subject "General Elementary Science" which is to be compulsory for all candidates for Matriculation at the London University. It is also suitable for the new "Elementary Science" paper of the University Junior Examinations.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., Limited

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

510

PRESS OPINIONS

Nature.—"It contains an admirable course of practical work covering all the principles of mechanics, physics, and chemistry included in the new subject for the London Matriculation. . . . The volume contains an instructive course of work which will be of real assistance to both teachers and pupils in schools where elementary science is taught."

Academy.—"We have given the little work a very careful examination, and are convinced that no better introduction to physics and chemistry is at present available."

Athenæum.—"We have pleasure in admitting that it would be difficult to prepare for pupils' execution a better series of illustrative experiments."

Journal of Education.—"This is a very good type of an elementary text-book, written in a literary style far too rare in science books. The experimental nature of the subject is continually kept in view, and instructions are given for over three hundred experiments."

Educational Times.—"It is planned on a thorough experimental basis, and the style is clear and interesting."

Education.—"The work can be thoroughly recommended."

Educational News.—"This is an ideal manual for class use, and to teachers and pupils preparing for examinations, it is simply invaluable."

Teacher's Aid.—"Alike in get-up, matter, and illustrations, the book is one which can be thoroughly recommended."

Pupil Teacher.—"It would be difficult to conceive a more admirably adapted text-book."

Literature.—"In clearness and conciseness it leaves little to be desired."

Saturday Review.—"It is not easy in dealing with physics, mechanics, and chemistry, for the beginner in one volume to decide what to include and what to omit; however, the authors have been very successful in this respect."

Electrical Review.—"As regards accuracy, the authors may be thoroughly depended on, and the book is quite reliable."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

from a plane mirror, that is, a flat reflecting surface. Such a mirror can be made from a variety of substances, but the most common is bright metal or silvered glass. To find the relation between the angle at which a beam strikes a mirror and the angle at which it is reflected, the following experiment should be performed.

EXPT. 162.—Fix two slabs of wood at right angles as in Fig. 73, AB, CD. Against the upright slab place a piece of

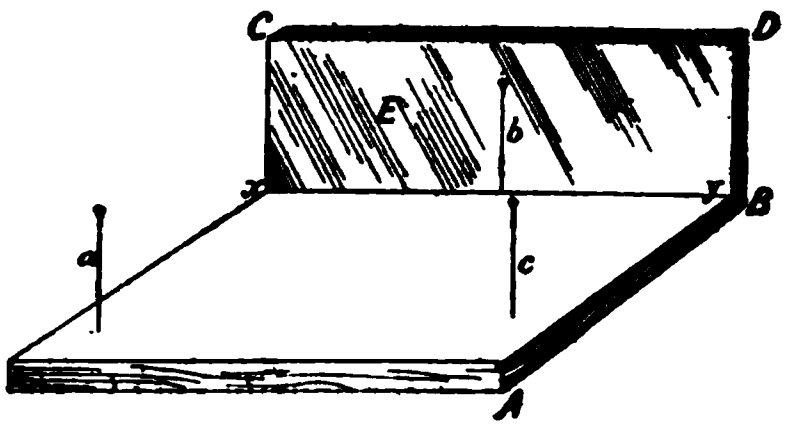


FIG. 73.—Arrangement to illustrate the Law of Reflection.

glass EF with blackened back so that reflection only takes place from the front. Upon the horizontal slab place a sheet of white paper. Stick a pin *b* in the wood against the glass, and place another pin near the position *a*. Now procure another pin and stick it into the wood at *c* in such a position that *c*, *b*, and the image of *a* are in a straight line. Draw with a finely pointed pencil a line along the edge of the glass *xy*; then take glass and pins away.

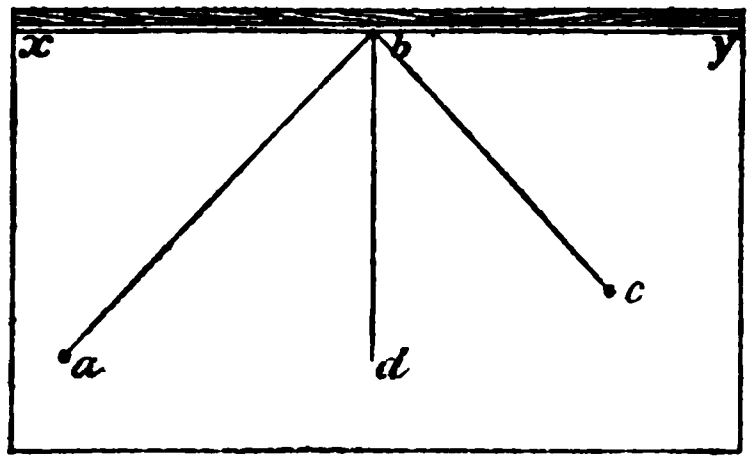


FIG. 74.—Angles of Incidence and Reflection

The paper will be marked by the pin-holes and the line *xy*. Draw lines through the pin-holes, and at *b* a normal to *xy*, that is, a line perpendicular to *xy*. Measure the angles *abd*, *cbd*, and compare them (Fig. 74). Repeat the experiment two or three times, with the pins in different positions, and so determine that the angle of incidence and the angle of reflection are equal.

EXPT. 262.—The flask which contained the copper and sulphuric acid should next be examined. It will be observed that most of the copper has disappeared, and the contents of the flask have a black colour. Add some water, shake well, and filter, when a blue liquid is obtained. Evaporate this partially, and put aside to crystallise. It will be found that blue crystals are so obtained.

These crystals are what are known commercially as *blue vitriol*, the chemical name being *sulphate of copper*. We may therefore state that **Copper and sulphuric acid produce sulphur dioxide and copper sulphate.**

Sulphur Trioxide and Sulphuric Acid.—Although sulphur dioxide does not burn, yet by suitable means we can make it

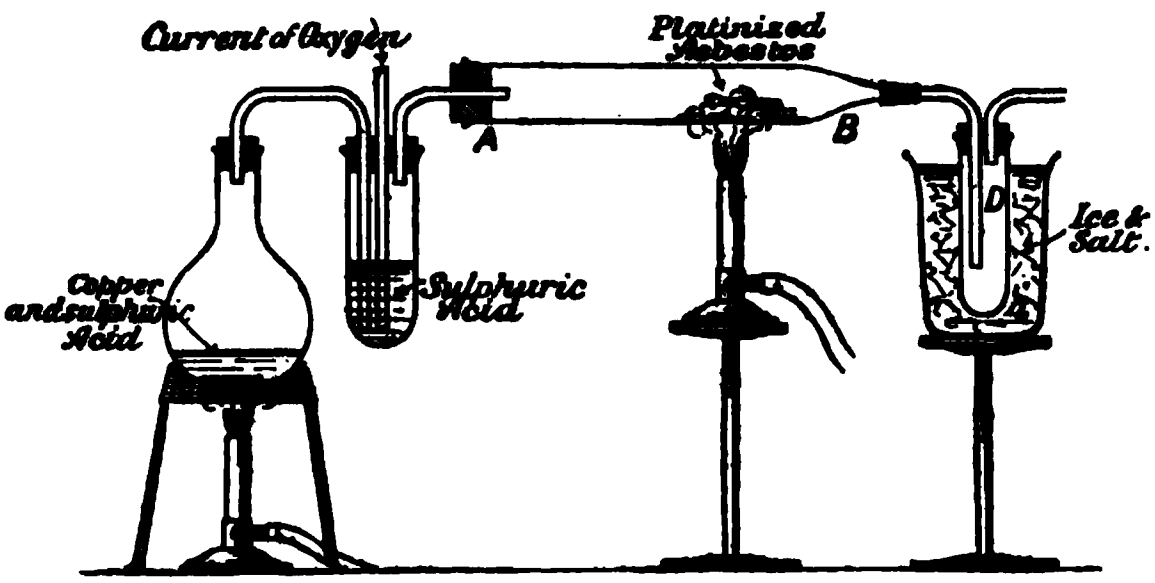


FIG. 129.—Preparation of Sulphur Trioxide.

combine with more oxygen and produce a higher oxide, which is known as **sulphur trioxide.**

EXPT. 263.—In the tube AB place some platinised asbestos,[1] and pass through the tube a well-dried mixture of sulphur dioxide and oxygen or air, the gases then being had into the cooled tube D. Heat the tube of asbestos, and note that white fumes are formed which condense in the cooler flask to form a white powder or crystals.

This powder is sulphur trioxide, and we may now state:— **Sulphur dioxide with oxygen forms sulphur trioxide.**

[1] This is prepared by dipping asbestos fibres into (1) platinic chloride solution, (2) ammonium chloride solution, and heating strongly. By this means the asbestos becomes coated with a quantity of very finely divided platinum.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Fcap. 4to. Price 2s. 6d.

AN EXERCISE BOOK

OF

ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL PHYSICS

BY

RICHARD A. GREGORY, F.R.A.S.

PROFESSOR OF ASTRONOMY, QUEEN'S COLLEGE, LONDON

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

TEACHERS will find that young students of average mental ability are able to work through the exercises in this book from the simple measurements of length at the beginning to the more difficult experiments at the end. The object of practical work of this kind is to teach students to measure accurately, to manipulate carefully, to see fully, to reason intelligently, and to express their observations and results clearly. Almost the only information given in the book consists of instructions as to how the exercises and experiments are to be done; the student being left to find out and describe the results for himself.

Though intended, in the first instance, for Organised Science Schools under the Science and Art Department, the exercises arranged in this book meet other prescribed courses. If the exercises illustrating the mechanical powers are omitted, the remainder cover part I. of the Elementary Course of Practical Science for Evening Continuation Schools. With the same omission, the exercises cover the Experimental Arithmetic and Physics of the Alternative Courses for Class Subjects in Elementary Day Schools, from Standards I. to V. inclusive. The Regulations referring to this subject point out that "the instruction

should be experimental, the experiments being carried out by the scholars." Another course which the exercises in a section of the book illustrate is that prescribed for the Third Stage of Mechanics as a Specific Subject in Elementary Day Schools. The Education Department expressly states that the instruction in Mechanics "should be purely descriptive and experimental"; and if provision can be made for the performance of the experiments by the pupils themselves, the best results will be obtained. But if not, teachers will find that by following the instructions laid down in this book, they can illustrate to their classes the chief mechanical principles with apparatus that need only cost a few shillings.

The exercises in the first half of the book are of a very elementary character; they are introduced in order to give students a clear and definite knowledge of the metric system of weights and measures, and to give practice in the use of decimals. The Select Committee appointed by the House of Commons to inquire into the changes most desired in our cumbersome system of weights and measures recommended "That the metrical system of weights and measures be taught in all public elemen tary schools as a necessary and integral part of arithmetic, and that decimals be introduced at an earlier period of the school curriculum than is the case at present." The opening exercises in this book should help to carry out the Committee's recommendations.

PRESS OPINIONS

Educational Review.—"Will be found extremely useful to students in organised science schools under the Department of Science and Art, in evening continuation schools, and in the highest standards in elementary schools. . . . So far as we have tested them, the exercises seem well selected and carefully graduated."

Educational Times.—"Mr. Gregory is no mere intelligent dispenser of other men's prescriptions. His book is essentially original. He has one of the most valuable qualities in a teacher—a ready invention."

Saturday Review.—"In no book that we know of is this method (Froebel's) quite so ably set forth as in this admirable book of exercises that Mr. Gregory has arranged. . . . Here and there he shows himself not only a scientific teacher but a remarkably ingenious one."

Guardian.—"The publishers have produced a thoroughly good half-crown exercise book which is a step forward in science teaching, especially where numbers, drill and time-tables are concomitants."

Technical World.—With such a guide and the experience reaped whilst Mr. Gregory was assistant to Professor A. M. Worthington, F.R.S., at Clifton College, one naturally expected a really trustworthy work, and having carefully gone through the book, we unhesitatingly say that we are not disappointed. . . . In conclusion, we would heartily recommend this book to the notice of all science teachers, and believe, if judiciously used, cannot but produce good results."

Scotsman.—"It is so novel, attractive, and practical that it will not only teach its subject, but give students a new interest in it."

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. 430 pp. Price 3s. 6d.

A MANUAL OF ELEMENTARY SCIENCE

A COURSE OF WORK IN PHYSICS, CHEMISTRY, AND ASTRONOMY FOR KING'S SCHOLARSHIP CANDIDATES

BY

R. A. GREGORY, F.R.A.S.

PROFESSOR OF ASTRONOMY, QUEEN'S COLLEGE, LONDON

AND

A. T. SIMMONS, B.Sc. (LOND.)

ASSOCIATE OF THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF SCIENCE, LONDON

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

Chap. 1. Forms of Matter; 2. Measurement of Space, Mass, Weight, Density; 3. Measurement of Time, Angles, and Motion; 4. Inertia, Gravitation, Parallelogram of Forces; 5. Parallel Forces, Centre of Gravity, the Lever; 6. The Pulley, the Inclined Plane, and the Screw; 7. Fluid Pressure; 8. Effects of Heat—Thermometers; 9. Quantity of Heat and its Measurement; 10. Change of State and Transference of Heat; 11. Reflection of Light; 12. Refraction of Light; 13. Analysis of Light—Colour; 14. Terrestrial Magnetism; 15. Chemical Changes in Relation to Quality and Quantity of Matter; 16. Nitrogen and Oxygen as Constituents of Air; 17. Water and Hydrogen; 18. Carbon and some of its Compounds; 19. Common Salt—Hydrochloric Acid—Chlorine; 20. Sulphur and Sulphuric Acid; 21. Laws of Chemical Combination—Chemical Formulae; 22. Nitric Acid—Bases and Salts; 23. Some Common Metals; 24. Guide to the Constellations and the Conspicuous Stars; 25. The Celestial Sphere and its Diurnal Motions; 26. The Rotation of the Earth and its Consequences; 27. The Revolution of the Earth and its Consequences; 28. Annual Variations of the Sun's position with reference to the Horizon; 29. The Moon and Eclipses; 30. Motions of Planets.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

AN INTRODUCTION

TO

PRACTICAL PHYSICS

FOR USE IN SCHOOLS

BY

D. RINTOUL, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AT CLIFTON COLLEGE, AND SOMETIME FELLOW OF CORPUS CHRISTI COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

517

EXTRACTS FROM PREFACE

THIS introduction to Practical Physics is published in the hope that it will be found of use by those who are engaged in teaching the subject to boys of about thirteen or fourteen years of age and upwards. It is based on the Laboratory notes which have been in use at Clifton for some years past, and the proof-sheets having been used in the Laboratory for some months, have thus received the criticism of those for whom the book has been primarily written. This fact enables the author to feel confident that the book will present no difficulty to the average boy of the age which has been mentioned, and that all the experiments described are capable of being performed with the most simple and inexpensive apparatus.

A word of explanation may be given as to the principles on which the book is based. A somewhat extended experience of teaching experimental Physics to large classes in a Public School has convinced the author that it is possible for a boy to "work through" a course of Practical Physics in such a way as to lose many of the advantages of this kind of study. If the explanations given in the text-book are too detailed, and if the conclusions to be drawn from each experiment are explicitly stated, a boy may perform the experiments, and write out a fairly clear account of them; yet this account may be nothing but a transcript or a paraphrase of the text-book. All incentive to independent thought is here withdrawn, except in the case of boys who are greatly interested in the subject; and instead of a spirit of scientific curiosity being developed it is rather discouraged, since it is to the apparent interest of the pupil to hurry over the ground as fast as possible. The laboratory work becomes, like many other school lessons, a matter of learning certain facts, no doubt of considerable importance, without the mental training being different in kind from that conveyed in other branches of school work.

In the course here described, an attempt is made to induce the pupil to think for himself, and to treat each experiment as a problem which he himself has to solve; while the solution is rendered possible by suggestions given in the form of questions which he has to answer. Thus, after being told what he has to do, the pupil is asked what the result of his experiment has been—what consequences he has seen to result from certain operations. Instead of the conclusions to be drawn from the experiment, or the appropriate chain of reasoning, being explicitly stated, they are indicated by a series of questions which the pupil has to answer. If he cannot answer any of the questions he should go to the teacher, who can generally induce him to answer the question himself by one or two other questions judiciously put, or, what is easier but less instructive, can give the answer at once. So far as the authors' own experience has gone, he is a very dull boy indeed who cannot work through nearly the whole course with the very minimum of

help from the teacher. It may here be noted, that the pupil should be taught to write out his notes in such a way that reference to the book on the part of the teacher is unnecessary. Thus, instead of merely writing the answers to the questions in the text, the questions themselves should either be written down, each followed immediately by its answer, or else the answers should be in such a form that there can be no doubt what the questions were. It is hardly necessary to say that the latter is much the better method.

The course has been arranged in the order in which the subjects are usually taken by boys on the modern side at Clifton ; but it is possible to take them in any order which the teacher may consider most suitable. For some reasons it may be desirable to take Part III. before Part II., but this must depend, to some extent, on the arrangements made for the teaching of Physics in each particular school. It will be noticed that certain experiments are marked with an asterisk. These are experiments which (mainly on account of their difficulty) may with advantage be omitted by younger boys on taking the subject for the first time.

CONTENTS

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS.

PART I.

MENSURATION AND HYDROSTATICS.

CHAPTER 1, Mensuration ; 2, Experiments on Mensuration ; 3, Hydrostatics.

PART II.

HEAT.

CHAPTER 1, Expansion ; 2 Convection, Conduction, and Radiation ; 3, Change of State ; 4, Measurement of Heat Quantity.

PART III.

DYNAMICS.

CHAPTER 1, Measurement of Forces—Friction ; 2, Forces in Different Directions ; 3, Moments ; 4, Parallel Forces ; 5, Elasticity.

PRESS OPINIONS

Nature.—"So many volumes containing courses of work in practical physics have lately appeared, that it would hardly seem necessary to increase their number. But a critical examination of the present volume is sufficient to afford justification for adding the book to those previously available. . . . The experiments described are not of the kind invented by the arm-chair philosopher—now happily becoming extinct—but those which have stood the test of experience, and have proved to be suitable for the class of students expected to perform them . . . Sufficient explanation is given to enable the young experimenter to proceed with his work intelligently, and to grasp the significance of the results. He is then in a position to understand the effects produced by different conditions; and Mr. Rintoul provides him with many questions upon which he can usefully exercise his mind. The book is especially suitable for the modern sides of public schools. As a physical laboratory manual for use in schools of this character it can be highly commended."

Knowledge.—"The author has contrived to extract a maximum amount of practical knowledge out of a minimum outlay in the way of materials."

Educational Times.—"This excellent manual bears the stamp of the well-managed laboratory on every page. Whether the subject is the measurement of a cylinder, the determination of a boiling point, or the parallelogram of forces, we always find clear instructions, which are just sufficient to make the pupil do his work properly, without giving him anticipations of his results, which are so apt to spoil the thoroughness of his work. We can cordially recommend this book to teachers of elementary science."

Educational News.—"Practical Physics, not being a grant-earning subject under South Kensington arrangements, has had to give way too much to Practical Chemistry; but the former subject is to take a foremost place in the proposed Higher Grade Science Schools. This little book will form a very suitable text-book for the practical work in such schools, or any school with a physical laboratory."

Education.—"The book can be most highly recommended for the very careful way in which the author has given his information, which is sufficient to enable a class to make the necessary measurements and observations, and to set them thinking for themselves."

Schoolmaster.—"The author's desire is to make students think for themselves, and every part of the book is written to this end. The students are told what to do, and then left, or, by means of suggestive questions, helped to draw the required conclusions. . . . The course of instruction is a capital one, and the book should enable students to acquire knowledge, understanding, and skill in manipulation."

Literature.—"Mr. Rintoul's book is one of the best of its kind, and, properly used, should prove of great benefit."

Athenæum.—"This is one of the best books of its kind that we have seen. It begins with general instructions relating to mode of recording experiments, scale of experiments, degree of accuracy to be aimed at, avoidance of large errors, arithmetical processes, and curve-drawing; and the hints given are exactly of the kind that a beginner requires in order to make his work tell. They point out the mistakes into which he is most apt to fall, and go far towards making his experiments serve an important purpose in mental training; they teach him to work rationally and to get the best results from the simplest means. Throughout the remaining chapters, which deal with mensuration, hydrostatics, heat, and dynamics, the same characteristics of intelligent working and emphasizing of essentials prevail."

Glasgow Herald.—"An admirable introductory course in practical physics. The instructions given are excellent, and the pupil is expected to deduce his own conclusions from the results, represented graphically where possible. The book is attractively got up, and the illustrations are numerous and good."

Birmingham Post.—"One of the best books written for school use and published during the last few years. The style is simple, clear, and original. There are, of course, many elementary experiments to be found here which have been often described before. On the other hand, there are several very good experiments which are either quite novel or of which some novel modification is shown. . . . The illustrations, of which there are over eighty, are particularly clear and useful to the teacher; while, as regards the student, the book has the virtue of not explaining too much. In this book nothing is described except that which has close relation to the experiment; and, though sufficient instructions are given to enable the reader, working in the laboratory, to arrange and perform the measurements, detailed explanations are avoided, and inferences are left for the student to make for himself."

Speaker.—"An admirable 'Introduction to Practical Physics.' . . . The lessons are carefully graduated, and seem to us models of clear statement; whilst a series of diagrams forms a further aid to interpretation."

Oxford Magazine.—"Mr. Rintoul's long experience is a guarantee for the mental training which the learner will derive from the use of the present volume. We have tested it in many parts, and can speak most clearly of its accuracy and clearness."

Machinery.—"It supplies a want which in these days of general craving for technical education can hardly be exaggerated. . . . Practically it exhausts the subject of experimental physics, and will be found a very useful aid to the master in all the training schools in the country."

EXPERIMENT 16

To find the volume of an irregular solid which sinks in water.

If you place the solid in a vessel which is quite full of any liquid, what do you know about the volume of the liquid which runs over, or is displaced? If the liquid is water, what do you know about the mass of the water which is displaced?

Counterpoise in one pan of your balance a dry beaker. Take a test-tube just wide enough to admit the solid (a glass stopper is a very convenient object to use for this experiment). Make a mark with a file on the test-tube, at such a height that when the stopper is in the test-tube it will be completely covered if water is poured in up to the mark.

Fill the test-tube up to the mark with water, carefully adjusting the level by means of a pipette. Then drop the stopper gently into the test-tube by inclining the tube and letting the stopper slide down so that no water splashes out of the test-tube. The water will now be above the mark. Transfer, by means of a pipette, all the water that has risen above the mark to the counterpoised beaker, and then weigh this water.

What is the mass of the water that has been displaced by the stopper?

What is the volume of this water, and therefore of the stopper?

Weigh the stopper.

Knowing the mass and volume of the stopper, calculate its density.

Would your result be equally trustworthy if you used a very wide test-tube? (See p. 14.)

Would you expect an equally accurate result if you filled

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

so that the bulb of the thermometer is in the water. Heat the flask by your Bunsen burner and notice the thermometer.

You will observe that the temperature of the water rises steadily for some time and then stops rising.

What is the temperature at which the thermometer stops rising? What do you notice about the water?

Raise the thermometer till the bulb is just above the surface of the water, and note the temperature.

Place about 50 grammes of common salt in the water, and, after it has been dissolved, take the temperature of the boiling water and then of the steam.

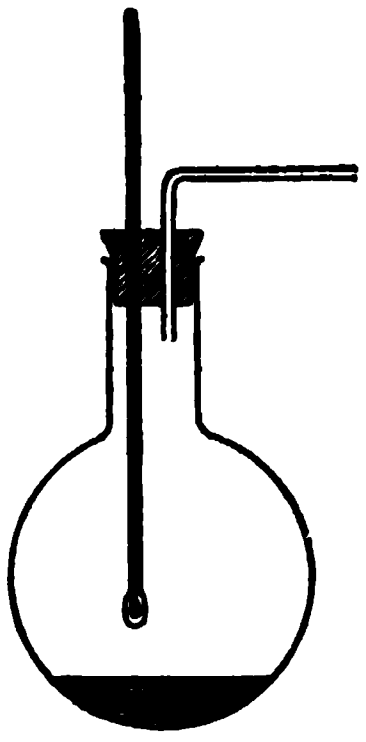


Fig. 46.

In doing this the thermometer bulb should be well cleaned after being in the salt water and before being placed in the steam. If any salt be allowed to remain on the bulb it will affect the result.

What is the effect of the salt on the temperature of the water while it is boiling? What is the effect of the salt on the temperature of the steam which comes from the boiling water?

EXPERIMENT 22

Effect of pressure on boiling-point.

Using the same apparatus as in last experiment, fix to the end of the escape-tube a short piece of indiarubber tubing capable of being closed by a spring clip. Place the thermometer so that its bulb is just above the surface of the water, and, while the water is boiling freely, note its reading when steady, then close the escape-tube by the clip and notice the thermometer. You will find that it rises.

As soon as the thermometer has risen 2° above its reading

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

one next to it above it. Thus the strain is one in which each little disc slides over the one next to it.

EXPERIMENT 31

To find the relation between the elongation of a stretched wire and the force producing it when the wire is stretched within its limit of elasticity. (*Hooke's Law.*)

Take two pieces of wire (brass or copper or steel), about 1 mm. diameter or less, and fix them to a support, so that when weights are attached to their free ends the wires hang side by side a few centimetres apart. The wires should be as long as can be conveniently suspended in this way from some firm support, and it is well to fix them in steel clamps like small vices screwed into a beam in the ceiling. To one wire hang a weight heavy enough to keep it tightly stretched, and to the other attach a scale pan sufficiently large and strong to carry weights up to 20 or 30 kgm. The former wire should be shorter than the latter, so that the two wires may be able to hang close together without the shorter wire being touched by the scale pan.

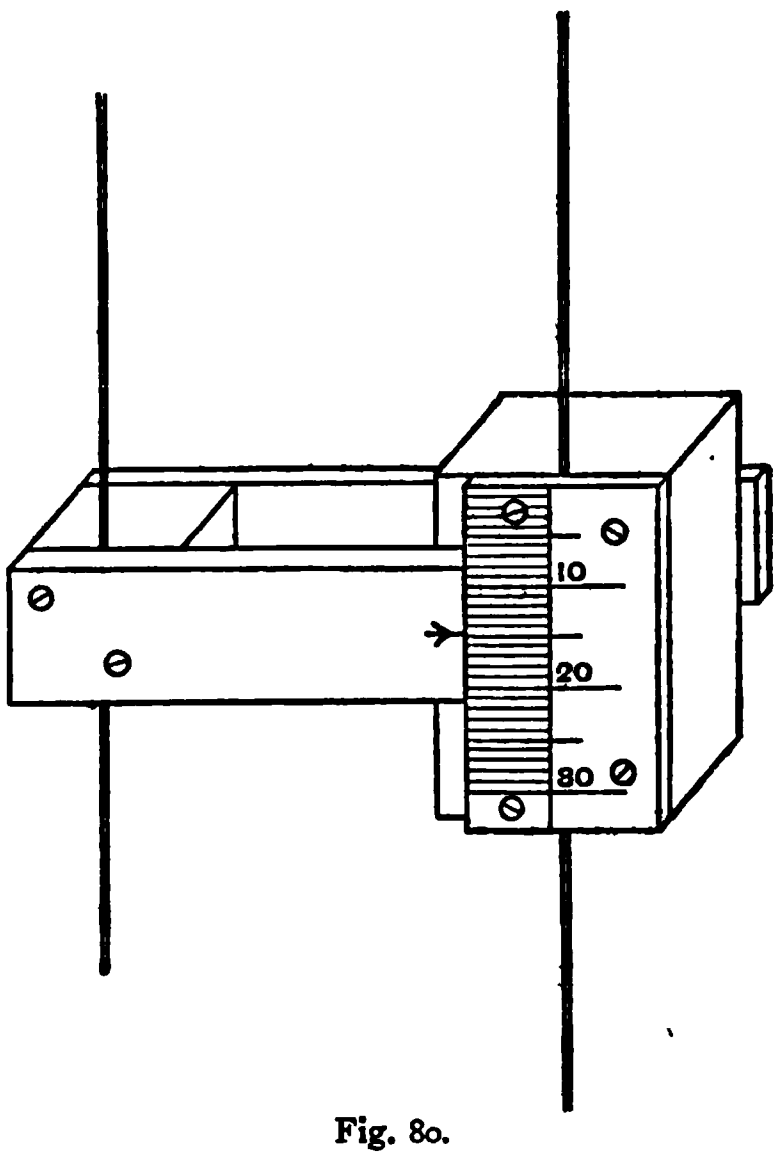


Fig. 80.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Extra Crown 8vo. 862 pages. 7s. 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY
COURSE OF PHYSICS

EDITED BY

REV. J. C. P. ALDOUS, M.A.

CHIEF INSTRUCTOR TO NAVAL CADETS H.M.S. BRITANNIA, 1875-98,
LATE FELLOW OF JESUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

Or, in Three Parts

Part I.—MECHANICS, PROPERTIES OF MATTER, HYDROSTATICS, HEAT. By the Editor. 420 pp. 4s. 6d.

Part II.—WAVE MOTION, SOUND, LIGHT. By W. D. Eggar, M.A., Assistant Master, Eton College. 220 pp. 2s. 6d.

Part III.—MAGNETISM, ELECTRICITY. By F. R. Barrell, M.A., B.Sc., Prof. of Math., Univ. Coll., Bristol. 230 pp. 2s. 6d.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

525

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

motion which we call Heat; it is not momentum. There may have been no change in the momentum of the apparatus; yet there has been a gradual development of Heat. What then has been done? *Work has been done* on the handle of the whirling table which has been pressed with a definite force through a definite distance.

The 'Principle of Work' applies only to 'perfect' machines. In a real machine some work is done against friction, so that

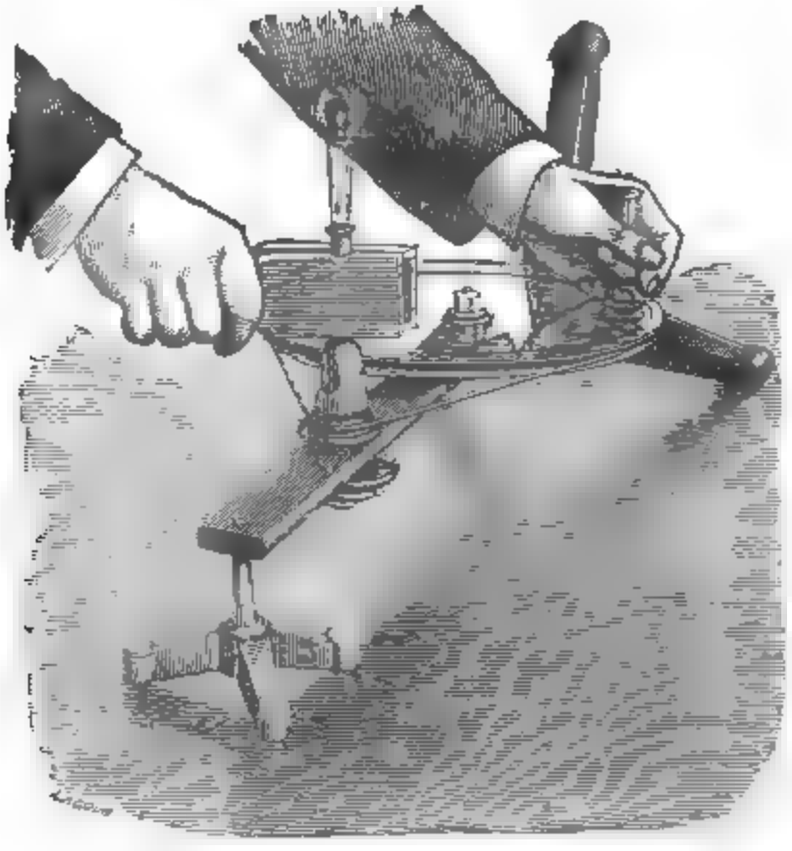


Fig. 58.—Friction and heat.

in practice the work done *on* a machine is not equal to the work done *by* the machine. The work done against friction produces kinetic energy in the form of heat.

Heat and Kinetic Energy.—A metal plunger fits well in a strong metal cylinder, at the bottom of which is placed a piece of tinder. Now if the plunger be put in the cylinder so as to enclose some air, and then be smartly pushed in, or better still, hammered in smartly with a heavy hammer, the air inside

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

wire in the same direction as the current; then the N. pole of the needle is urged round the wire the same way as the point of the corkscrew moves.

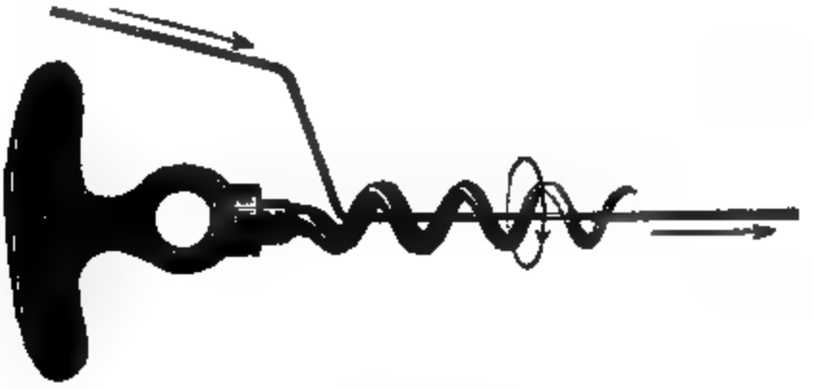


Fig. 56.—Screw movement of north pole and current.

Simple Galvanometer.—Bend a piece of stout copper wire into a rectangular shape as ABCD, and connect with the wires

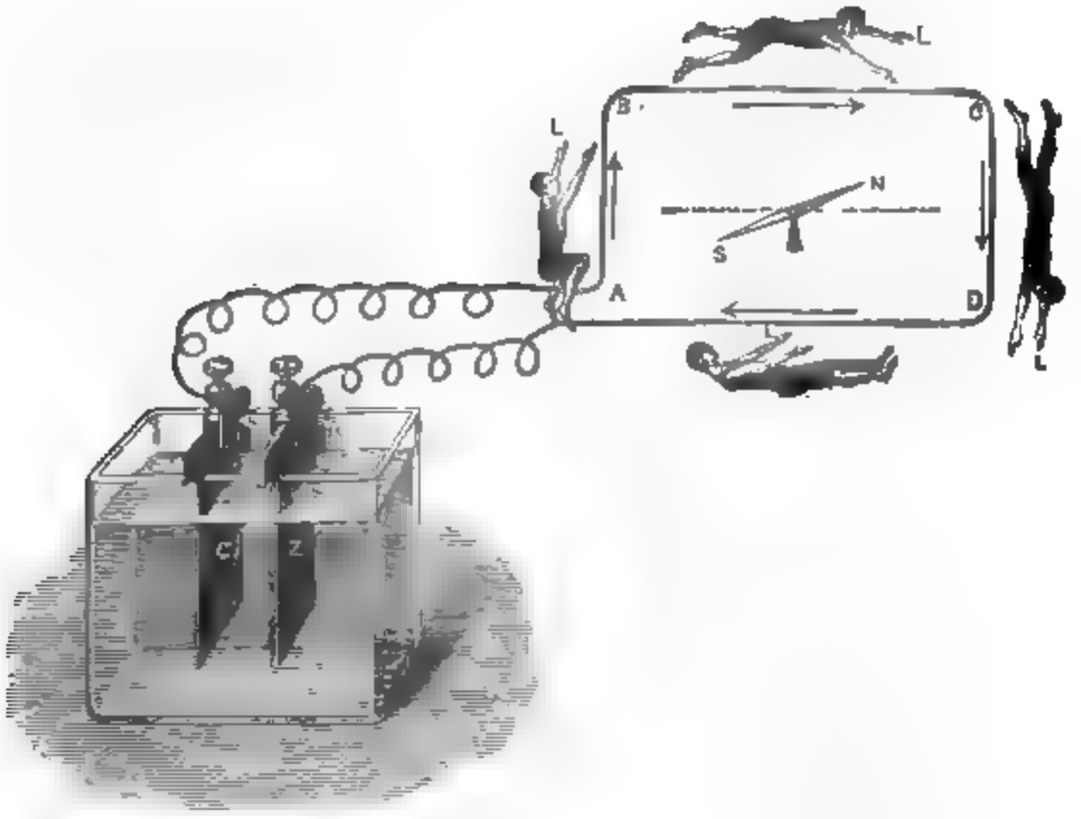


Fig. 57.—Action of current flowing round a rectangle.

from a simple voltaic cell; suspend a magnet needle in the middle, then the dolls as sketched show that all four sides, AB,

PREFACE

THIS Manual of Physics took its rise from a desire to relieve the subject of the foreign element of unreality, and to give a modern and practical course of Natural Philosophy in a compendious form.

The illustrations are almost all new, and the Editor, owing to a temporary lull in the demand for the beautiful art of wood-engraving, was able to secure the services of one of its best exponents, Mr. Octave L. Lacour, who has executed 278 blocks for the work.

It was the original intention of the editor to secure the revision of the whole book by one scientific man of eminence; but, owing to the kindness of friends, he was led to the preferable plan of securing the advice in each part of one who had made the subject a special study. For this immense advantage he is indebted to the extreme kindness of Lord Kelvin, Lord Rayleigh, Professor J. A. Ewing, and Captain Wilson Barker.

A complete Index renders the usual Table of Contents and List of Illustrations unnecessary.

A CAMBRIDGE TUTOR SAYS:—"It is the sort of book that candidates for the Mathematical Tripos ought to read, that they may have the correct physical ideas before venturing on mathematical applications. That is a difficulty one finds in one's lectures on Electricity and Magnetism. The pupils do not know the facts, and so fail to understand the Mathematics."

PRESS OPINIONS

Guardian.—"A treatise which deals on a uniform plan with the whole range of physics is a great convenience both to teacher and student. . . . The present careful and elaborate compilation will, we expect, find favour with many schoolmasters. . . . The authors are thoroughly versed in the art of adapting their treatment to the capabilities of schoolboys."

Nature.—"In this book an attempt is made to give a modern and practical course of natural philosophy in a compendious form, and it may be stated at once that the effort is a most successful one. . . . The treatment of the various subjects is most lucid and thorough, and is evidently based on an intimate acquaintance with the requirements of students. Great pains have been taken to avoid looseness of statement; and the fact that some of the sections have had the advantage of the criticisms and suggestions of Lord Kelvin, Lord Rayleigh, and others, makes it a trustworthy book of reference. Where everything else is so well done, it is difficult to select points for special mention, but it mae be remarked that examples drawn from naval sources form a notably and valuable feature, and graphical methods of representing experimental results are largely utilised and encouraged.

Academy.—"The *Elementary Course of Physics* is again a work of quite a different kind. Hitherto the reader requiring a general account of the present state of physical science has gone to translations of the well-known books by Ganot and Deschanel, which have for many years had a wide popularity in this country. The volume now under our notice is an English attempt to meet such a student's requirements. The various parts are treated by different authors, the whole being edited by Mr. Aldous. Thus, while the sections on mechanics, hydrostatics, and heat are written by the editor, wave-motion, sound, and light are from the pen of Mr. W. D. Eggar, and magnetism and electricity from that of Professor Barrell. A striking feature of the book is the profusion of clear, artistic illustrations, which will do much to lighten the beginner's task. The fact that the various chapters have been examined and criticised by Lord Kelvin, Lord Rayleigh, and others should be guarantee enough that we have here a trustworthy introduction to an extensive subject."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

HEAT, *separately, sewed*, 1s.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS

IN

HEAT, LIGHT, AND SOUND

BY

D. E. JONES, B.Sc. (LOND.)

INSPECTOR OF SCIENCE SCHOOLS UNDER THE SCIENCE AND ART DEPARTMENT
LATE DIRECTOR OF TECHNICAL INSTRUCTION TO THE STAFFORDSHIRE COUNTY COUNCIL, AND PROFESSOR OF PHYSICS IN THE UNIVERSITY COLLEGE OF WALES, ABERYSTWYTH

ADAPTED TO THE ELEMENTARY STAGE OF THE SOUTH KENSINGTON SYLLABUS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK : THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

530

PRESS OPINIONS

Glasgow Herald.—"Should be very popular among young students, and the practical study of heat, light, and sound, with its aid should serve to create enthusiasm for the subject. . . . The book is well and simply written."

Scottish Leader.—"Prof. Jones is master of an admirably clear expository style; he spares no pains to make each phase of his subject intelligible, and his explanations are aided by numerous diagrams and other illustrations."

Scotsman.—"It is an elementary book, but few elementary treatises convey anything like so much knowledge of their subjects, and few make the subjects so interesting to a mind coming fresh to them. The large number of illustrations contribute something to this result, but it is due mainly to the expository skill of the author, and to his interesting manner of explaining experiments."

The Schoolmaster.—"May be confidently recommended for giving sound elementary knowledge of these branches of physical science. The statements are concise, the definitions clear and accurate, and the descriptions, both verbal and pictorial, are well chosen."

Engineering.—"Well suited to serve the purpose of introducing beginners to the study of Experimental Physics: the general arrangement of the work is particularly happy, and the paragraphs are clearly written, explaining those points that do not generally seem to be grasped by students."

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

EXAMPLES IN PHYSICS

Fcap. 8*vo.* *Third Edition.* *Revised and Enlarged.* 3*s.* 6*d.*

Containing over one thousand problems and questions, with an introduction, numerous solved examples and hints for solution answers, and a table of logarithms.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD., LONDON

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Now Ready. 478 *pp.* *With Illustrations and Experiments*

Globe 8*vo.* 4*s.* 6*d.*

HEAT FOR ADVANCED STUDENTS

BY

EDWIN EDSER, A.R.C.Sc. (LOND.)

WITH TWO HUNDRED AND FOURTEEN ILLUSTRATIONS

ADAPTED TO THE ADVANCED STAGE OF THE SOUTH KENSINGTON SYLLABUS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

532

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

THE aim of this book is to give a comprehensive account of the science of Heat in both its theoretical and experimental aspects, so far as this can be done without the use of higher mathematics. The book is intended for students who already possess an elementary knowledge of fundamental physical principles, but whose training has not, as yet, qualified them to derive full benefit from more advanced text-books, foremost amongst which must be placed the excellent treatise on "The Theory of Heat," by Professor Thos. Preston, M.A., F.R.S., &c.

Much recent work has been included in order to give as complete and many-sided a survey of the subject as possible. The experiments to be performed by the student have been selected so as to illustrate the most important points in each chapter, and it is believed that the descriptions given will be found sufficient to ensure accurate results.

Great stress has been laid on the necessity of due precautions in connection with thermometry. The whole science of Heat is based on thermometric measurements, hence too great an importance cannot be attached to this part of the subject.

In treating of Thermodynamics an acquaintance with the method of expansion by the Binomial Theorem is assumed. The notation of the infinitesimal calculus has been used, but each problem has been worked out from first principles, no previous knowledge of the calculus being taken for granted. The proofs given are consequently often much longer than those found in advanced text-books, but the clear indication of the various assumptions made in the course of each investigation will prove a sufficient compensation to the conscientious student. The necessity for a careful study of Thermodynamics has been emphasized by the recent publication of popular accounts of the "wonderful" properties of liquid air. Even a slight knowledge of thermodynamical principles would have created as much distrust in these reports as in an account of any other method of obtaining perpetual motion.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I., Temperature and Thermometry; II., Errors of a Mercurial Thermometer, with their Corrections; III., Expansion of Solids; IV., Expansion of Liquids; V., Elasticity and Thermal Expansion of Gases; VI., Calorimetry—Specific Heats of Solids and Liquids; VII., Latent Heat of Fusion and Vaporisation; VIII., Change of State; IX., Continuity of State; X., Properties of Vapours; XI., Mechanical Considerations; XII., The First Law of Thermodynamics; XIII., The Kinetic Theory of Gases; XIV., Van der Wall's Theory; XV., Adiabatic Transformations; XVI., Carnot's Cycle and the Second Law of Thermodynamics; XVII., Applications of Carnot's Theorem; XVIII., Internal Work and the Cooling of Gases on Free Expansion; XIX., Electrical Instruments; XX., Convection and Conduction of Heat; XXI., Radiation. INDEX.

PRESS OPINIONS

Educational News.—"We find embodied here the essence of such admirable works as those of Clerk Maxwell, Tait, and Tyndall, together with all the more recent work which has been done in the subject. . . . The summaries at the ends of the chapters are excellent, containing as they do, in a succinct and definite form, the facts and conclusions of the text. The examination questions will also be found of considerable service to students. . . . Is well printed and got up, and constitutes an excellent and modernised text-book for advanced students, and will be found highly useful to both student and teacher, and will unquestionably take a first place in the literature of the subject."

Industries and Iron.—"This valuable treatise."

Scotsman.—"It gives an account at once concise and comprehensive of the scientific doctrine on its subject, suitable for the purposes of students who have studied the elements of science, but are not yet masters of the higher mathematics. It is well equipped with questions and experiments, and would prove a serviceable class-book anywhere."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. 335 *pp. with Experiments.* *Globe* 8*vo.* 2*s.* 6*d.*

Magnetism and Electricity

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

H. E. HADLEY, B.Sc. (LOND.), A.R.C.Sc. (LOND.)

HEADMASTER OF THE SCHOOL OF SCIENCE, KIDDERMINSTER

WITH ONE HUNDRED AND NINETY-SIX ILLUSTRATIONS

ADAPTED TO THE ELEMENTARY STAGE OF THE SOUTH KENSINGTON SYLLABUS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

535

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

THIS little book is primarily intended to meet the requirements of students preparing for the Elementary Stage of the Science and Art Department's Examination in Magnetism and Electricity. The subject has, however, received rather fuller treatment than is required by the syllabus of that subject, so as to include the additional portions needed in examinations for the London Matriculation, Oxford and Cambridge Local, Oxford and Cambridge Joint Board, and College of Preceptors.

The beginner in this subject is often handicapped by a want of knowledge of the elementary facts of Force, Work, and Energy, which are so essential to a clear understanding of electrical principles; an early chapter is therefore devoted to these points.

Electrical Potential generally presents considerable difficulty in the early stages of the study of electricity; an attempt has therefore been made to gradually build up the student's knowledge of this point by introducing it at the outset and on every possible occasion.

The general treatment of the subject is experimental; each step in the argument is brought home to the student by experiments in which the apparatus is constructed from the simplest material. The student should at every opportunity be encouraged to make the apparatus and repeat the experiments for himself.

CONTENTS

PART I.

MAGNETISM

CHAPTER 1, Natural and Artificial Magnets; 2, Forms of Magnets—Methods of Magnetisation; 3, Magnetic Induction; 4, Force, Mass, Weight, Work and Energy; 5, Magnetic Fields; 6, Maps of Magnetic Fields; 7, Internal Magnetic Fields—Weber's Theory—Magnetic Screening; 8, The Relative Measurement of Magnetic Forces; 9, Terrestrial Magnetism.

Part II.

STATICAL ELECTRICITY

Chapter 10, Preliminary Experiments; 11, Electric Fields of Force; 12, Electrostatic Induction; 13, Capacity—Condensers—Leyden Jars; 14, Electrical Machines—Action of Points—Electrical Discharge; 15, Contact Electricity.

Part III.

VOLTAIC ELECTRICITY

Chapter 16, Chemical Action, and the Simple Voltaic Cell; 17, Voltaic Cells; 18, Magnetic Effects of an Electric Current; 19, Galvanoscopes and Galvanometers; 20, Electrical Resistance—Ohm's Law; 21, Units of E.M.F. and Resistance—Practical Units—Ohm's Law applied to Simple and Divided Circuits—Wheatstone's Bridge—Grouping of Cells; 22, Thermal and Chemical Effects; 23, Attraction and Repulsion of Linear Currents—Electromagnetic Induction.

PRESS OPINIONS

Mechanical World.—"A welcome is to be extended to such books as that of Mr. Hadley, who has plainly endeavoured to clear the student's path of many obstacles which are too often ignored or only superficially dealt with by compilers of elementary science manuals. In particular, a commendable step in this direction is the introduction of an early chapter on force, work and energy—matters upon which the average elementary student has generally only the haziest of notions."

Scotsman.—"Must prove of great service. . . . The student is carried forward by easy stages. He is made familiar with the means of conducting experiments from apparatus of simple construction, is shown how to make such apparatus for himself, and is put in possession of the knowledge requisite to enable him to repeat the experiments on his own account. . . . It has many useful illustrations."

Builder.—"It is accurate, and the author does not shirk explaining difficulties or illustrating how the laws of electricity can be demonstrated by the most simple apparatus."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

CHEMISTRY

FOR ORGANISED SCHOOLS OF SCIENCE

BY

S. PARRISH, B.Sc., A.R.C.S. (LOND.)

CENTRAL HIGHER GRADE SCHOOL, LEEDS

WITH INTRODUCTION

BY

D. FORSYTH, D.Sc.

PRINCIPAL OF THE CENTRAL HIGHER GRADE SCHOOL, LEEDS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

538

PRESS OPINIONS

Oxford Magazine.—"At every stage thought is stimulated and facts are noted for future use in more theoretical studies. . . . Mr. Parrish can write simply and has produced a useful text-book."

Nature.—"The pupil who is fortunate enough to receive instruction on these lines will be placed in the receptive intellectual attitude which should be the aim of all scientific education."

Educational News.—"Will be found of great service to students of elementary chemistry working on the new Science and Art Syllabus. . . . As a laboratory guide the volume will be found particularly useful. The experiments are varied and suggestive. The illustrations are well done. We cordially commend the work to students of the elementary stage and their teachers."

Scotsman.—"The book is eminently practical and well adapted to the capacities of boys and girls from thirteen to fifteen years old. . . . Has a valuable series of illustrative plates."

Schoolmaster.—"The chief merit of this book is that its contents have been fully put to the proof in a well-known school of science. This means that the course of instruction is possible, both as regards quality and quantity. The theory is such as boys and girls can grasp, and they can also carry out successfully this experimental work. If used wisely, the book will certainly enable pupils to acquire knowledge, to exercise their understanding, and to become fairly proficient in manipulation. Those who are seeking an approved and ready-made course of instruction in chemistry may use the book with confidence."

Educational Times.—"The course of practical work set out in this book is well designed. The instructions are clear and sufficient, and the explanations of chemical phenomena and terms as good as could be wished."

Teachers' Aid.—"Dr. Forsyth's thoughtfully written introduction supplies the keynote to the contents of this highly workmanlike and scholarly treatise which has been so ably compiled by his colleague in the Central Higher Grade School, Leeds, where the course has been in use for some time with the most beneficial results. The science of chemistry is best taught experimentally, and the experiments here explained and illustrated are well within the power of boys and girls to perform during the time allotted for the lessons. The book is intended to cover enough matter to occupy a two-years' course, and we feel quite confident that the work can be nicely accomplished in the time allotted, and that the results at the end of the period will be highly satisfactory."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Fcap. 8*vo.* 4*s.* 6*d.*

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY INORGANIC AND ORGANIC

BY

SIR H. E. ROSCOE, F.R.S.

[First Edition 1866; reprinted 1866, 1867, 1868. Second 1869; reprinted 1869, 1871. Third 1871; reprinted 1872, 1874, 1875, 1877 (3). Fourth 1878; reprinted 1878, 1879, 1880 (2), 1882, 1883, 1884, 1885. Fifth 1886; reprinted 1887, 1888, 1890, 1891. Sixth 1892; reprinted 1892, 1894, 1897. Seventh edition, thoroughly revised and re-written, 1900.]

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PRESS OPINIONS

Journal of Education—"We have always considered it the best work for those who wish to get a clear and connected knowledge of the outlines of Inorganic and Organic Chemistry."

School Board Chronicle—"It still holds its position among the very best text-books on Elementary Chemistry."

Spectator—"This is a small, compact, carefully elaborated, and well-arranged manual of Elementary Chemistry in all its branches. For the correctness and accuracy of its contents, the name of the writer is a sufficient guarantee, holding as he does no mean rank among English chemists, and having given close attention not to one only, but to many branches of his subject. As a standard general text-book it deserves to take a leading place. . . . A carefully prepared series of questions added in an appendix is a most useful addition to the book, and will be fully appreciated by those who wish to have their knowledge of the subject in a precise and readily producible form."

Chemist and Druggist—"The most important facts and principles of the science are described in plain but precise language, and arranged in a form admirably suited to the present requirements of elementary instruction."

Chemical News—"It has no rival in its own field, and it can scarcely fail to take its place as the text-book at all schools where Chemistry is now studied. . . . Well fitted for the junior chemical classes at the universities, colleges, and medical schools."

(SPECIMEN PAGE)

surface, it contains from 20·9 to 21 volumes of oxygen per cent. The gas left after the oxygen has been removed from air is not pure nitrogen, but contains 1·2 per cent. of another gas known as Argon (inactive). This gas has the density 19·8, and is remarkable for the fact that it forms no compounds with other elements. It is left behind when the nitrogen is absorbed by heated metallic magnesium.

Composition of Air by Weight.—When we know the composition of air by volume, and the relative densities of the

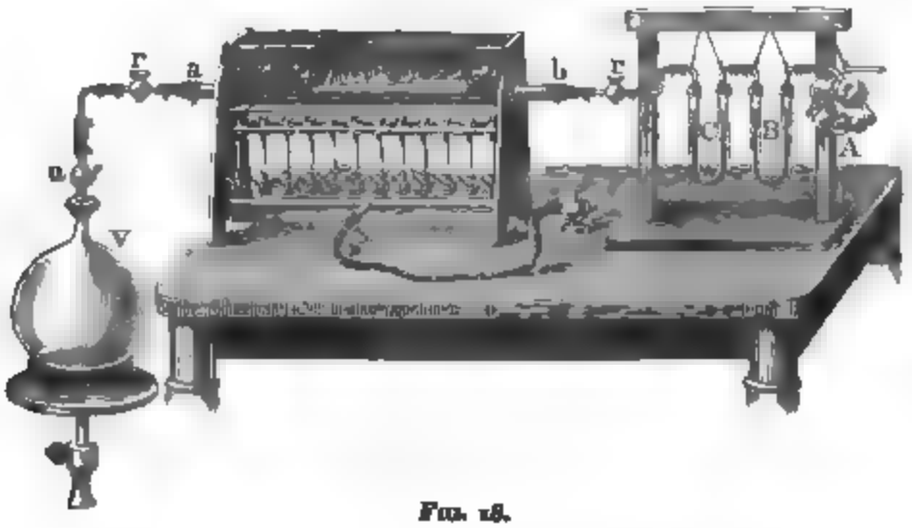


FIG. 18.

constituent gases, we can calculate its composition by weight. It is important, however, to determine this by direct experiment; for this purpose a large glass globe (*v* Fig. 18), furnished with a stopcock (*u*) is rendered vacuous by the air-pump and then weighed; a tube (*a b*) of hard glass filled with copper turnings and also furnished with stopcocks (*r*) is likewise weighed. This tube is then heated to redness in a long tube-furnace, and connected at one end with the empty flask, at the other with a series of tubes (A, B, C,) filled with caustic potash and sulphuric acid, for the purpose of completely freeing the air passing through them from carbonic acid and aqueous vapour; the cocks are then slightly opened, and air allowed to pass slowly through the purifiers into the hot tube, where it is completely deprived of oxygen by the hot metallic copper, which is thereby oxidised, the nitrogen

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Price 6s. 6d.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY

OF CHEMISTRY

Inorganic Chemistry

BY

PROF. IRA REMSEN

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

542

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

the flask with water at the ordinary temperature, so that the water extends several inches into the tube. Now cool the vessel by placing it in ice or in a freezing mixture, and notice the contraction of the water indicated by the fall of the column of water in the tube. By means of this experiment, it can be shown also that the water expands as it is cooled below 4° C. (39.2° F.)

Just as water contracts when cooled, so it expands when heated, and when it reaches the temperature of 100° C. (212° F.), it is converted into an invisible vapour. When a given volume of water is converted into vapour, the vapour at 100° C. occupies about 1600 times the volume that the water did. When partly condensed, water-vapour is visible, and then it is called steam.

EXPERIMENT 58.—Fill a vessel with water at a low temperature and weigh it. Fill the same vessel with water at a comparatively high temperature. What difference do you notice? How do you account for the difference?

Arrange an apparatus, as for Experiment 57. Fill with water to the lower part of the glass tube. Heat, and notice change in position of the column of water. What does this prove? Compare the result with that reached in Experiment 57.

Water is a bad conductor of heat. When a mass of water is heated by a flame applied beneath it, the particles of water which are lowest first become heated. They expand and rise. The same changes take place in the next following particles, and so on until the whole mass becomes heated to the boiling temperature. The heat is thus distributed through the mass by means of currents caused by the heat. These are called *convection-currents*, and the process is called *convection*.

EXPERIMENT 59.—Heat a mass of water contained in a good-sized flask, and note the formation of currents from below. Some light powder, as powdered charcoal, put in the water will show the currents strikingly.

Boiling Point.—The boiling point of a liquid is that

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

New Edition. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

Inorganic Chemistry

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

SIR HENRY ROSCOE, F.R.S., D.C.L., LL.D., M.P.

ASSISTED BY

JOSEPH LUNT, B.Sc. (Vic.), F.C.S.

With One hundred and eight Illustrations in the Text

ADAPTED TO THE ELEMENTARY STAGE OF THE SOUTH KENSINGTON SYLLABUS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

544

CONTENTS

ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES

Solids, Liquids, and Gases. The Air—Introductory. Water, Introductory—Mechanical Mixture and Chemical Combination—Indestructibility of Matter. Elements and Compounds—Symbols and Formulæ—Distribution of the Elements. Combination in Definite and Multiple Proportions—Dalton's Atomic Theory—Atomic and Molecular Weights—Calculations. Physical Measurements. Physical Properties of Gases.

SYSTEMATIC STUDY OF CERTAIN NON-METALLIC ELEMENTS, AND THEIR MORE IMPORTANT COMPOUNDS.

Hydrogen. Oxygen and the Oxides, Hydroxides, Acids, Bases, and Salts. Ozone. Compounds of Hydrogen and Oxygen. Heat Relations of Water. Water as a Solvent—Water of Crystallisation, Efflorescence, Deliquescence—Solubility of Gases—Natural Waters—Temporary and Permanent Hardness and the Softening of Water—Distillation and Purification. Nitrogen and Air. Compounds of Nitrogen and Oxygen, Nitrous Acid, Nitric Acid, The Nitrites and Nitrates. Compounds of Nitrogen and Hydrogen, Ammonia and the Ammonium Compounds. Chlorine, Hydrochloric Acid, and the Chlorides. Sulphur, Sulphuretted Hydrogen, and the Sulphides. Oxides and the Oxy-Acids of Sulphur. Carbon and its Allotropic Modifications—Carbon Monoxide—Carbon Dioxide—Methane Acetylene—Ethylene—Coal Gas and Flame.

PRESS NOTICES

***Nature*—"In every respect the book is a good one, and contains the kind of knowledge that should be imparted to all beginners in science."**

***Chemical Trade Journal*—"This work is admirably adapted to the requirements of science teachers, each lesson being supplemented with a summary of 'What We have Learnt,' and a list of about ten questions relevant to the lesson. . . . The book is well printed and got up, and constitutes an excellent and modernised text-book for beginners, which will be found highly useful to both student and teacher, and should gain equal favour with both."**

***Glasgow Herald*—"An important feature of this book is a summary of the contents of each chapter placed at the end, together with a few searching questions well adapted to test the student's understanding of what has gone before. It is admirably got up in every way, and the illustrations are very numerous and invariably excellent."**

***Manchester Courier*—"The different methods of chemical combination are clearly set forth, and the heat relations of water, as well as the properties of gases and the modifications of carbon, are explained with a lucidity which cannot but be profitable to the student. The manual is very profusely illustrated, and contains directions for a great number of instructive experiments."**

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

Inorganic Chemistry

FOR ADVANCED STUDENTS

BY

SIR HENRY ROSCOE, F.R.S., D.C.L., LL.D.

AND

ARTHUR HARDEN, PH.D., M.Sc. (Vict.)

WITH FIFTY-ONE ILLUSTRATIONS IN THE TEXT

ADAPTED TO THE ADVANCED STAGE OF THE SOUTH KENSINGTON SYLLABUS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

546

CONTENTS

LESSON I. Molecular and Atomic Weights—2. Experimental Determination of the Molecular Weights of Gases and Volatile Liquids and Solids—3. Solution and Crystallisation—4. The Halogen Elements: Fluorine. Chlorine. Bromine. Iodine—5. The Halogen Elements (*continued*)—6. The Halogen Elements (*continued*)—7. The Action of Alkalis on the Halogens; Oxides and Oxy-Acids of the Halogens—8. The General Properties of the Halogen Elements—9. Equivalents; Direct Determination of the Equivalents of the Halogen Elements and Silver; The Foundation of Quantitative Analysis; Indirect Determination of Equivalents—10. Metals and Non-Metals—11. The Nitrogen Group: Nitrogen. Phosphorus. Arsenic. Antimony. Bismuth—12. The Elements of the Nitrogen Group (*continued*)—13. The Elements of the Nitrogen Group (*continued*)—14. Bismuth; The General Properties of the Elements of the Nitrogen Group—15. Determination of the Atomic Weight from the Specific Heat of the Solid Element—16. Crystals; Isomorphism—17. The Alkali Metals—18. The Alkali Manufacture: Sulphuric Acid. Salt Cake. Soda Ash. Caustic Soda. Chlorine. Bleaching Powder. Potassium Chlorate—19. The Alkali Metals (*continued*)—20. Constitutional Formulæ; Valency; Constitution of Hydroxides and Oxyacids—21. The Ammonium Compound; Dissociation—22. The Metals of the Alkaline Earths—23. The Metals of the Zinc Group: Magnesium. Zinc. Cadmium. Mercury—24. The Metals of the Zinc Group (*continued*)—25. The Metals of the Copper Group: Copper. Silver. Gold—26. Metals of the Copper Group (*continued*)—27. Thermochemistry—28. Electro-chemistry—29. The Elements of the Aluminium Group: Boron. Aluminium—30. The Elements of the Carbon Group: Carbon. Silicon. Tin. Lead—31. The Elements of the Carbon Group (*continued*)—32. The Metals of the Iron Group: Iron. Nickel. Cobalt—33. The Metals of the Iron Group (*continued*)—34. Chromium—35. Manganese—36. Platinum, Argon, and Helium—37. Classification: The Periodic System—38. Determination of the Molecular Weights of Dissolved Substances. 39. Spectrum Analysis. INDEX.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

AN INTRODUCTION

TO THE

STUDY OF CHEMISTRY

BY

W. H. PERKIN, Jr., PH.D., F.R.S.

PROFESSOR OF ORGANIC CHEMISTRY IN THE OWENS COLLEGE, MANCHESTER

AND

BEVAN LEAN, D.Sc., B.A. (LOND.)

ASSISTANT LECTURER AND DEMONSTRATOR, AND BERKELEY FELLOW OF THE OWENS COLLEGE, MANCHESTER

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. The Birth of Chemistry; II. The Metric System; III. The Measurement of Length; IV. The Measurement of Mass. The Balance; V. The Measurement of the Volume of Liquid; VI. The Measurement of Temperature; VII. The Measurement of the Relative Densities of Solids and Liquids; VIII. The Measurement of the Pressure of the Atmosphere; IX. Fitting up Apparatus; X. Change of State: Liquefaction and Solidification; XI. Change of State: Vaporisation and Condensation; XII. Change of State: The Evaporation of Water and of other Liquids; XIII. Calorimetry; XIV. Solution; XV. Crystallisation; XVI. Raw Materials; XVII. The

Preparation of the Common Acids and Alkalies; XVIII. The Action of Acids and Alkalies upon Litmus. The Formation of Salts; XIX. The Discovery of Fixed Air; XX. The Study of Fire and Air; XXI. The Rusting of Iron; XXII. The Discovery of Oxygen; XXIII. The Action of Acids upon Metals; The Discovery of "Inflammable Air"; XXIV. The Action of Acids on Metals. The Discovery of "Volatile Sulphurous Acid" and of "Nitrous Air"; XXV. The Discovery of the Composition of Water; XXVI. The Properties of Gases. The Densities of Gases; XXVII. The Properties of Gases. Boyle's Law; XXVIII. The Properties of Gases: The Expansion of Gases by Heat; XXIX. The Properties of Gases. The Pressure in a Mixture of Gases; XXX. A Research on Chalk; XXXI. The Composition of Water by Volume and by Weight; XXXII. Acids and Alkalies: Their Combining Proportions; XXXIII. Equivalent Weights of the Metals; XXXIV. The Transformation of Matter. The Law of Definite Proportions.

APPENDIX. Laboratory Fittings, Apparatus, and Chemicals.

PRESS OPINIONS

CHEMICAL NEWS.—"This is a gratifying book. The student is trained to re-discover, or, as the case may be, to re-demonstrate for himself, the cardinal factor and laws of chemical science. Hence, instead of—as is too generally the case—closing the book with the sad reflection that the contents, how true soever, are a mere *rechauffée* of what has been many times said before, we are in a position to congratulate the authors and still more their pupils and readers."

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.—"We welcome this book as containing the best treatment of chemistry as an *educational* subject that we have yet seen, and one in which all the old traditions of science-cramming are finally thrown to the winds . . . The authors evidently expect a second edition to be called for soon, since they express the intention of including in it 'chapters, which are already in hand, on the Discovery of the Metals, on the Diffusion of Gases, and on Fuel and Food Stuffs.' If the sale of a book were proportional to its merits (alas! for the *if*) their anticipations should be justified. For the sake of science teaching we trust they may be."

EDUCATIONAL NEWS.—"A most interesting, useful, and valuable contribution to the study of this subject. . . The book is masterly in treatment and scientific in method. . . The book is worthy of all praise, and, without reservation, we can thoroughly recommend it to all students of chemistry."

GUARDIAN.—"This book lays great stress on early quantitative work by all the students themselves. Undoubtedly such work is more easy to secure in University colleges and polytechnics than in the average secondary schools. But wherever the necessary bench accommodation can be obtained, this is the book which in our judgment is—since the days of Galloway's *First and Second Steps in Chemistry*—best qualified to stimulate the interest and evolve the mettle of the student."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

PRACTICAL
INORGANIC CHEMISTRY

BY

G. S. TURPIN, M.A. (Camb.), D.Sc. (Lond.)

PRINCIPAL OF THE INTERMEDIATE AND TECHNICAL SCHOOL, SWANSEA

Adapted to the Elementary Stage of the South Kensington Syllabus

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS

Manchester Guardian.—"These examples will sufficiently explain the character of Dr. Turpin's book, which is quite distinct from the crowd of elementary text-books of tables and tests which come with such surprising regularity from the press. We may congratulate Dr. Turpin on a most thoughtful attempt to teach beginners the true aims and methods of chemistry."

Speaker—"Its thorough and workmanlike character is sure to recommend this book to the managers of science schools."

Nature—"It encourages thought, creates interest in chemistry, and furnishes the kind of knowledge most likely to prove of advantage in after years. Not only in organized science schools, but in every school where chemistry is taught, the course described in this book could be profitably introduced."

Educational News.—"We have carefully gone through this text-book, and find it in all respects a very desirable text-book. To students who desire a practical knowledge of this subject there can be little doubt it will prove most invaluable. The experiments given are well grouped, the apparatus required is carefully sketched, the methods are clearly shown . . . To all students of inorganic chemistry his book may safely be recommended, but to those who to make themselves proficent in the subject desire practical work, it will be a decided acquisition. In all respects it is a very suitable manual."

School Guardian.—"This little work deserves its title of 'Practical.' It is clear and accurate, and is well supplied with useful diagrams . . . It will be found a good and useful introduction to the experimental study of inorganic chemistry."

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Now Ready. Second Edition. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

PRACTICAL ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

FOR ADVANCED STUDENTS

BY

JULIUS B. COHEN, PH.D.

LECTURER ON ORGANIC CHEMISTRY, THE YORKSHIRE COLLEGE
LECTURER IN THE VICTORIA UNIVERSITY AND
ASSOCIATE OF THE OWENS COLLEGE

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

551

PREFACE

THE present volume is an enlarged edition of that published in 1887, and has been completely rewritten. The preparations have all been carefully revised, some of the former ones omitted and many new ones introduced. The chief additions are the introductory chapters on organic analysis and molecular weight determinations, and an extension of the appendix.

The book does not aim at being a complete laboratory guide, but is intended to provide a systematic course of practical instruction, illustrating a great variety of reactions and processes with a very moderate outlay in materials and apparatus.

The objection may be raised that the detailed description of processes makes no demand upon a student's resourcefulness or ingenuity. It must be remembered, however, that the manipulative part of organic chemistry is so unfamiliar to the elementary student that he requires minute directions in order to avoid waste of time and material. Until he has acquired considerable practical skill he cannot accomplish the experimental work requisite for research, and repeated failures will be apt to destroy his confidence in himself.

To satisfy, to a legitimate extent, the prejudices of certain examining bodies, who still adhere to the old system of testing a student's knowledge of practical organic chemistry by means of the qualitative analysis of certain meaningless mixtures, the special tests for some of the more common organic substances have been inserted. At the same time, an attempt has been made at the end of the appendix to systematise the analysis of organic substances on a broader and therefore more rational basis.

The present occasion seems opportune to direct attention to the fact that one of the most familiar, most readily procurable, and most cheaply produced of all organic materials is placed beyond the reach of many students by the heavy duty levied upon it. May I, in the name of teachers of organic chemistry, appeal to the Board of Inland Revenue, on behalf of scientific and technical education, to provide institutions for higher education in science with a limited quantity of pure alcohol free of duty, thereby placing schools of chemistry in this country in the same position as those on the Continent?

In conclusion I desire to thank Dr. J. McCree, who has written the section on Ethyl Tartrate and the use of the Polarimeter, Dr. T. S. Patterson, who has been kind enough to look over the proofs, and Mr. H. D. Dakin, who has given me substantial assistance in the practical work of revision.

J. B. COHEN.

THE YORKSHIRE COLLEGE.

CONTENTS

ORGANIC ANALYSIS—
- Estimation of carbon and hydrogen—
  - Qualitative examination
  - Quantitative estimation
- Estimation of Nitrogen—
  - Qualitative examination
  - Quantitative estimation
- Estimation of the halogens—
  - Qualitative examination
  - Quantitative estimation
- Estimation of sulphur—
  - Qualitative examination
  - Quantitative estimation
- Determination of molecular weight—
  - Vapour density method
  - Cryoscopic or freezing-point method
  - Boiling-point method
  - Molecular weight of acids
  - Molecular weight of bases

PREPARATIONS—
- Purification of methylated spirit
- Ethyl alcohol
- Potassium ethyl sulphate
- Ethyl bromide
  - Determination of specific gravity
  - Determination of boiling-point
- Ether
  - Purification of commercial ether
- Ethylene bromide
- Acetaldehyde
- Methyl alcohol
- Methyl iodide
- Amyl alcohol
- Amyl nitrite
- Acetone
- Chloroform

PREPARATIONS (*continued*)—
- Acetoxime
  - Melting-point determination
- Acetic acid
- Acetyl chloride
- Acetic anhydride
- Acetamide
- Acetonitrile
- Methylamine hydrochloride
- Ethyl acetate
- Ethyl acetoacetate
  - Distillation in vacuo
- Monochloracetic acid
- Monobromacetic acid
- Glycocoll
- Diethyl malonate
  - Preparation of hydrochloric acid gas
- Ethyl malonic acid
- Chloral hydrate
- Trichloracetic acid
- Oxalic acid
- Methyl oxalate
- Palmitic acid
- Glycerin
- Formic acid
- Allyl alcohol
- Isopropyl iodide
- Epichlorhydrin
- Glyceric acid
- Succinic acid
- Tartaric acid
- Ethyl tartrate
  - Determination of rotatory power
- Pyruvic acid
- Citric acid
- Citraconic and mesanconic acid
- Urea
- Thiocarbamide
- Uric acid

PREPARATIONS (*continued*)—
Alloxantin
Alloxan
Caffeine
Creatine
Grape sugar
Benzene—
Purification of benzene
Fractional distillation
Bromobenzene
Ethyl benzene
Nitrobenzene
Azoxybenzene
Azobenzene
Hydrazobenzene
Aniline
Acetanilide
Para-bromacetanilide
Meta-dinitrobenzene
Meta-nitraniline
Dimethylaniline
Para-nitrosodimethylaniline
Thiocarbanilide
Phenyl thiocarbimide
Triphenylguanidine
Diazobenzene sulphate
Para-cresol
Para-chlorotoluene
Idobenzoic acid
Tolyliodochloride
Iodosotoluene
Para-tolylcyanide
Para-toluic acid
Diazoamidobenzene
Amidoazobenzene
Phenylhydrazine
Sulphanilic acid
Methyl orange
Potassium benzene sulphonate
Benzenesulphonic chloride
Benzene sulphonamide
Phenol

PREPARATIONS (*continued*)—
Anisol
Ortho- and para-nitrophenol
Picric acid
Phenolphthalein
Salicylaldehyde and para-oxybenzaldehyde
Salicylic acid
Quinone and Quinol
Benzyl chloride
Benzyl alcohol
Benzaldehyde
Benzoic acid
Benzoin
Benzil
Benzilic acid
Cinnamic acid
Hydrocinnamic acid
Meta-bromobenzoic acid
Benzoyl chloride
Benzamide
Ethyl benzoate
Acetophenone
Acetophenoneoxime
Acetophenonesemicarbazone
Benzoylacetone
Diphenylmethane
Triphenylmethane
β-Naphthalenesulphonate of sodium
β-Naphthol
Anthraquinone
Anthraquinone β-monosulphonate of sodium
Alizarin
Isatin from indigo
Quinoline
Quinine sulphate from cinchona bark
Appendix

INDEX

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

PHYSIOLOGY

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

SIR MICHAEL FOSTER, K.C.B., M.A., M.D., LL.D., F.R.S

PROFESSOR OF PHYSIOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
AND FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

AND

L. E. SHORE, M.A., M.D., B.C.

DEMONSTRATOR OF PHYSIOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
AND FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

ADAPTED TO THE ELEMENTARY STAGE OF THE SOUTH KENSINGTON SYLLABUS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

555

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. Introduction, Chemical Preliminaries; II. Oxidation, Life, Plants and Animals; III. General Structure of the Body; IV. The Blood; V. The Skeleton; VI. Joints; VII. Structure of the Supporting Tissues, Cartilage, connective Tissue and Bone; VIII. Muscle, Movements; IX. The Heart; X. Structure and Properties of Blood-vessels, Regulation of the Circulation, Lymphatics; XI. Respiration; XII. Digestion; XIII. The Liver and Spleen; XIV. Waste and Excretion; XV. The Skin; XVI. Animal Heat; XVII. The Nervous System; XVIII. Sensation, Touch, Taste, Smell; XIX. The Eye and the Sense of Sight; XX. The Ear and the Sense of Hearing; XXI. The Larynx, Voice and Speech.

PRESS OPINIONS

Birmingham Medical Review.—"An admirable little text-book for beginners. . . . It is exactly the kind of book for a medical student commencing his studies; being well written, clear, and abounding in useful diagrams. A capital feature of the book is the introduction here and there of instructions for dissections and experiments which can be done by the student without much cost or inconvenience. We think that this will become a popular text-book with students commencing the study of physiology."

Glasgow Medical Journal.—"A careful perusal of the volume leads us to rank it as perhaps the best introduction to the study of Physiology yet published, with due regard to its size. . . . It is deeply interesting, and may be confidently recommended as supplying a reliable basis upon which to build up a truly scientific knowledge of Physiology."

Quarterly Medical Journal.—"A delightful little text-book, not in the least a compressed cram book, but a clear, well-written, well-illustrated first book for those who are about to go further in their subject. We welcome this production very heartily."

British Medical Journal.—"For the book itself, however, we have nothing but praise; both text and illustrations are excellent. . . . Can be confidently recommended to all students."

St. Bartholomew's Hospital Journal.—"We can recommend the book with the firm conviction that a student will find the paths of his later study of Physiology made vastly more easy to follow."

A Specimen Copy of the Revised Edition will be presented on application

New and Revised Edition. *Globe* 8*vo.* 2*s.* 6*d.*

Botany for Beginners

BY

ERNEST EVANS

BURNLEY TECHNICAL SCHOOL

ADAPTED TO THE ELEMENTARY STAGE OF THE SOUTH KENSINGTON SYLLABUS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

557

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

It is now generally accepted by educationists that experimental work is an essential part of instruction in any branch of physical or natural science. Too much information cannot be attached to knowledge gained direct from Nature; and it is gratifying to know that many questions now set by public examining bodies are designed to test the student's own observations and experience. As an instance of this, it is worth pointing out that in the syllabus for Botany, published by the Department of Science and Art, the examiners remark:

"The examination will be especially directed towards ascertaining the amount and character of the practically acquired knowledge possessed by the students."

To provide students with a means of obtaining such knowledge, this little work has been prepared in the spirit of the foregoing remarks, as a guide to beginners in the practical study of plants. The attempt is often made to study Botany without the practical examination of plants, and it has produced on the popular mind an impression that the subject is uninteresting. This is the result of the old method of teaching Botany by means of ideals or definitions; the new method is to examine the plants from as many points of view as possible, and to draw conclusions from the actual observations. Studied in this way, the subject becomes of living interest instead of a collection of technical names and terms. It is with the idea of placing in the hands of all persons interested in the study of plants a book which shall be a guide and companion during a first course that the present volume has been prepared. Though the book has been primarily designed to cover the syllabus of the Department of Science and Art, it is by no means a "cram-book" for that particular examination, and a thorough knowledge of its contents will not only lay the foundation for further work, but should enable a student to pass any elementary examination in Botany with distinction. The book should also be useful to teachers in elementary schools, in assisting them to prepare object lessons with plants for the instruction of their pupils.

Teachers are recommended to see that the students perform the experiments, and keep a complete record of the results obtained. Most of the plants necessary for the experiments can be easily obtained; others can be grown in the school grounds. A small collection of fruits, seeds, dried and mounted plants, should be kept in all schools.

It is hoped that the introduction into this book of a series of carefully graded experiments with simple apparatus will prove useful to many students and teachers, and will be the means of making botanical science a more popular subject in the future than in the past.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. Introduction; II. Morphology—Study of the Body of a Plant; III. Anatomy—Study of the Shoot; IV. The Study of the Shoot (*continued*); V. Anatomy—Study of Roots; VI. Sections, how to Prepare and Examine Them; VII. The Histology of the Cell; VIII. The Histology of the Tissues; IX. The Histology of the Shoot and Root; X. The Physiology of Nutrition; XI. The Absorption and Movement of Water in the Plant; XII. The Physiology of Growth and Movement; XIII. Flower and Inflorescences; XIV. The Terms Used in Describing the Flower; XV. The Development and Morphology of the Flower; XVI. Pollination and Fertilisation; XVII. The Morphology of Seed and Fruits, and their Distribution; XVIII. The Physiology of Reproduction; XIX. The Classification of Plants; XX. Classification of Plants (*continued*); XXI. Plant Description; Index.

PRESS OPINIONS

Board Teacher.—"We strongly recommend it."

Scotsman.—"Messrs. Macmillan & Co. have added to their series of 'Science Class Books' a handbook of *Elementary Practical Mathematics* written by Mr. Frank Castle, and a book of *Botany for Beginners* by Ernest Evans. Both are well expounded and workmanlike text-books, well worthy of the attention of all who have to teach their subjects to large classes."

Educational News.—"Forms a valuable addition to Messrs. Macmillan's excellent series of 'Science Class Books.' . . . Will, we feel confident, be widely used by elementary students of the subject. . . . Terms are explained and defined with the greatest care, and no less than 202 experiments are described illustrating the text. . . . An excellent feature of the book is the summary given at the end of each chapter. The student will find the questions most useful tests of his progress and mastery of the subject. The general character of the work is of a very high order, the subject is made interesting, and the student is provided with every aid to success in his examination, and a thorough and profitable knowledge of the science."

Bookseller.—"Mr. Evans has carried out his intention in a very workmanlike and satisfactory fashion. His book will be useful not only to learners, but also to teachers who may not as yet have fully recognized the advantages of the newer methods which it is intended to illustrate."

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.

PRACTICAL BOTANY

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

PROF. BOWER, D.Sc., F.R.S.

PROFESSOR OF BOTANY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF GLASGOW

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

"This little book contains, in an abridged form, the elementary and more essential parts of the text of the larger *Course of Practical Instruction in Botany*. It is believed that beginners will find the directions sufficient to guide their first steps in laboratory work.

"In order to use this book with proper effect, his knowledge should extend far beyond the area of the work here specifically described, and the larger edition may help him towards this end. By grasping every opportunity of comparison of the type selected with allied forms which show differences of detail, he will then be able to guide the pupil to distinguish essentials from secondary details, and to check the dangerous tendency of beginners towards generalisation from too limited an area of fact."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

5. No general bundle-sheath is present, though each bundle is surrounded by a layer of colourless cells, without intercellular spaces, which may be regarded as representing the bundle-sheath.

B.—LAMINA.

I. Take a piece of the lamina of the leaf of the Sunflower, including the apex : it is important that it should be previously bleached by treatment with alcohol : warm it gently in a mixture of dilute glycerine and potash, and mount in glycerine : examine with a low power, and observe—

1. The **midrib**, with its strongly marked **vascular bundle**, running up to the apex of the leaf, where it terminates abruptly in a mass of glandular tissue.

2. Lateral **branch-bundles**—the **ribs** or **nerves**—passing off from it, and forming a network by frequent anastomoses, while some of them run up into and terminate in the serrate projections of the margin of the lamina.

3. Smaller branch-bundles sometimes showing **blind endings** in the parenchyma which fills the meshes of the network.

II. Cut off a small square piece of the lamina of a leaf of *Helianthus*, including one of the main **ribs** or **nerves**, and embed in paraffin (see directions, p. 9), so that the rib shall be perpendicular. Cut transverse sections, and mount in glycerine.

Good sections may be obtained even from fresh material by holding the piece of lamina between slices of carrot, or pith ; or by folding the whole lamina repeatedly, and cutting sections from the whole mass.

Note with a low power—

1. The general outline of the section, which is irregular and undulating, though it is in the main of uniform breadth. At the point corresponding to the main nerve the section widens out, the nerve appearing **semilunar**, as in the petiole. The convex side is the inferior (**adaxial** or **dorsal**), and the concave the superior (**abaxial** or **ventral**) surface.

2. That the margins of the sections (*i.e.* the superior and

A Specimen Copy of any of these works will be presented on application

Please name the book required

WORKS BY HENRY TANNER, F.C.S.

THE

Principles of Agriculture

FOR USE IN

ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS

Price 6d.

I. THE ALPHABET OF THE PRINCIPLES OF AGRICULTURE

Price 1s.

II. FURTHER STEPS IN THE PRINCIPLES OF AGRICULTURE

FOR THE SECOND STAGE

Price 1s.

III. ELEMENTARY SCHOOL READINGS ON THE PRINCIPLES OF AGRICULTURE

FOR THE THIRD STAGE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

562

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 5s.

ROUND THE YEAR

A SERIES OF

SHORT NATURE-STUDIES

BY

PROFESSOR L. C. MIALL, F.R.S.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS CHIEFLY BY A. R. HAMMOND, F.L.S.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

The right of Translation and Reproduction is reserved

PREFACE

I HAVE given the title of "Round the Year" to a series of sketches suggested by the natural events of the year 1895. The principles of selection have been simple: I have written upon things which happened to interest me at the time, which seemed to admit of popular treatment, and which had not been fully discussed, so far as I knew, in elementary books. Another naturalist would have

made a different choice ; all the naturalists in the world could not exhaust the subject.

The readers whom I hope to find are observers (especially young observers) of out-of-door nature, teachers of elementary science, and all who care for Live Natural History. L. C. M.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

"Man sieht nur was man weiss"—Insects and Plants in Mid-Winter—White of Selborne—Snow-flakes—Buried in the Snow —Birds in Mid-Winter—The Depth to which the Ground Freezes —The Great Frost of 1895—Under the Crags—Phi and Theta—Which are the Wettest Months?—Animals with and without Combs—The Moon—Spring Crocuses—Catkins—The Oil-Beetle (Meloe)—The Corn-rigs of Beamsley Fell—The Cuckoo—Buds—The Botany of a Railway Station—Summer Twilight—Midsummer Blooms—Hay-time—The History of the Cabbage White Butterflies—Cabbages and Turnips—Duckweed—Routine—Weeds—Moorland Plants—The Love of Mountains—The Reversed Spiral—Gossamer—Flower-haunting Insects—Tennyson as a Naturalist—The Structure of a Feather—The Fall of a Leaf—Autumn Winds and Winter Floods—The Shortest Day of the Year.

GUARDIAN.—"Would that all books on subjects classed as scientific were written in this pleasant style—a style breathing human sympathy and the strong desire to rouse in other minds the spirit of wholesome investigation of the wonders and mysteries belonging to the things about us."

RURAL WORLD.—"A delightful companion, and we doubt if a more suitable gift book will be published this season."

MANCHESTER GUARDIAN.—"Though intended especially for young observers, the reader of larger growth will find much that is both useful and interesting if he be, as the author says, one who cares for 'live natural history.'"

SPEAKER.—"It is a charming book written with the utmost simplicity by a man of the highest scientific attainments, and it therefore possesses merits which are incontestable."

SATURDAY REVIEW.—"Though there is not a dry passage in the book, the insight and research displayed are remarkable, and none of the many subjects can be said to be treated superficially."

PALL MALL GAZETTE.—"We have rarely met with a more fascinating book for fresh young minds: it is one among a thousand."

Crown 8vo. 6s.

THE NATURAL HISTORY OF AQUATIC INSECTS

By PROFESSOR L. C. MIALL, F.R.S.

With Illustrations by A. R. HAMMOND, F.L.S.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

I HAVE here attempted to help those naturalists, especially those young naturalists, who take delight in observing the structure and habits of living animals. It has also been my hope that I might do something to revive an interest in the writings of certain old zoologists—Swammerdam, Réaumur, Lyonnet, and De Geer—who are at present unjustly neglected; I have tried to carry on as well as to popularise their work. It would be much if I could persuade some few working naturalists to lay aside their technical lists and records of parish distribution, and study the works of Nature with open eyes, seeking above all things to know more of life in its infinitely varied forms.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. Aquatic Beetles.—II. Flies with Aquatic Larvæ.—III. Aquatic Hymenoptera.—IV. Aquatic Caterpillars.—V. Caddis-Worms (Trichoptera).—VI. Sialidæ.—VII. Perlidæ.—VIII. May-Flies (Ephemeridæ).—IX. Dragon-Flies (Odonata).—X. Pond-Skaters, Water-Scorpions, and Water-Boatmen (Rhynchota).—XI. The Water Spring-Tail (Podura).—XII. Insects of the Sea-Shore.—XIII. The Contrivances of Aquatic Insects.

PALL MALL GAZETTE.—"It is an inspiring discussion of the numerous subtle expedients by which the essentially aërial organism of the insects adapts itself to an amphibious existence. Problem after problem is handled clearly and skilfully, and Professor Miall shows himself possessed of that rare gift of literary colour by which, while developing the logical process with absolute accuracy, the writer can yet keep before us the running streams, the shady pools, the hum of wings, and the stir of the wind-swept reeds amid which the practical solution to his problems is worked out, summer after summer."

NATURE.—"Prof. Miall deserves praise for the admirable account he has put together of the insect inhabitants of our lakes, ponds, and watercourses."

WESTMINSTER GAZETTE.—"Can be cordially recommended to any who may wish to take up, or who may have already taken up a singularly fascinating study."

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

NATURE STUDY

IN

ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS

A MANUAL FOR TEACHERS

BY

MRS. LUCY LANGDON WILLIAMS WILSON, PH.D.

HEAD OF THE BIOLOGICAL LABORATORIES IN THE PHILADELPHIA NORMAL SCHOOL FOR GIRLS, AND IN CHARGE OF THE NATURE WORK IN THE SCHOOL OF OBSERVATION AND PRACTICE CONNECTED WITH THE NORMAL SCHOOL

WITH A PREFACE BY

FRANCIS W. PARKER

HEAD OF THE COOK COUNTY NORMAL SCHOOL, CHICAGO, ILL.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

566

PREFACE

THIS book is an outgrowth of a rich, varied, and thoughtful experience with child nature and the nature that surrounds the child. Mrs. Wilson recoguizes the truth that children have a deep, strong, instinctive love for all things that live and all things that support life. The teacher should develop instinct into habit by making spontaneity the basis of character.

Nature Study to-day is pioneer work. The prevailing methods of teaching nature are the old methods dominated by the delusion of logical sequence—of isolated fact learning. Mrs. Wilson's plan is to study the child, understand his interests, and adapt conditions to his actual personal needs.

The old method is founded upon a rigid faith in the book and traditional processes; the new upon the divinity of the child and the influence of God's creations upon his growing mind. One method is fixed; the other is everlasting motion over the infinite line of unrealized possibilities. One method demands accurate imitation; the other, original discovery and creation. Under one method the teacher is a pedant; under the other, a student.

The pressing need of the hour is genuine students of education, teachers who bring to every child and every subject a mind full of desire to know, an abiding faith in boundless possibilities, a freshness of spirit that is in itself the most potent factor in education, a devotion that inspires new contributions to the unlimited science of teaching.

This book is such a contribution, and I am sure it will be a great help to many teachers who are struggling with the problem of Nature study.

FRANCIS W. PARKER.

SYNOPSIS OF COURSE

ARRANGED ACCORDING TO MONTHS

SEPTEMBER.—*Weather*: Appearance and Names of Clouds; Blackboard Record; Direction and Velocity of Wind; Excursions; Rain.—*Plants*: Aster; Black-eyed Susan; Butter and Eggs; Chicory Ferns; Garden Nasturtium; Goldenrod; Ironweed; Jamestown Weed; Morning Glory; Pond Lily; Sunflower; Thistle; Wild Carrot.—*Animals*: Bee; Beetles; Cicada (Locust, or Harvest Fly); Dragon Fly; Fly; Locust (Grasshopper); Mosquito; Moths and Butterflies (general); Tussock Moth.

OCTOBER.—*Weather*: Excursions; Records; Sun.—*Plants*: Flowers (*continued*). See list under September.—*Fruits*: Ailanthus; Apple; Ash; Burdock; Chestnut; Maple; Stick-me-tight.—*Animals*: English Sparrow: Insects (*continued*). See list under September.

NOVEMBER.—*Weather*: Examination of October Record; Moon; Temperature.—*Plants*: Buds; Bulbs; Falling Leaves; Fleshy Roots.—*Animals*: Cocoons; Other Preparation for Winter; The Pigeon.

DECEMBER.—*Weather*: Examination of November Record; Record; Snow; Stars.—*Plants*: Arbor Vitæ; Balsam Fir; Hemlock; Holly; Mistletoe; Pine; Spruce.—*Animals*: Fish; Mussels; Snail; Tadpole.

JANUARY.—*Weather*: Boiling; Condensation; Evaporation; Examination of December Record; Record.—*Plants*: Evergreens (*continued*). See list given under December; Germination.—*Animals*: Beaks and Feet of Birds; Bones of Birds; Crow; Feathers; Owl; Woodpecker.

FEBRUARY.—*Weather*: Clouds; Dew; Frost; Hail; Rain; Records; Snow.—*Plants*: Germination (*continued*); Seed Food-supply.—*Animals*: Chickadee; Golden-crowned Kinglet; Snowbird; Winter Wren.

MARCH.—*Weather*: Records.—*Plants*: Buds; Seed Food-supply (*continued*).—*Animals*: Blackbird; Bluebird; Earthworm; Excursions; Migration; Robin.—*Stones*: Clay; Feldspar; Mica; Pebbles; Quartz; Sand; Soil.

APRIL.—Ailanthus; Arbutus; Ash; Beech; Birches; Bloodroot; Buckeyes; Buds; Cherry; Chestnut; Dogtooth Violet; Elms; Excursions; Hepatica; Hickory; Horse-chestnut; Linden; Locusts; Maples; Oaks; Poplars; Quaker Ladies; Spring Beauty; Sycamore (Buttonwood); Violet; Walnut; Willows.—*Animals*: Bees; Beetles; Butterflies; Moths.—*Stones*: Gneiss; Granite; Mica Schist.

MAY AND JUNE.—*Plants*: Apple; Buttercup; Chickweed: Clover; Daisy; Dandelion; Ferns; Fungi; Jack-in-the-pulpit; Lichens; Mosses; Sheep's Sorrel; Shepherd's Purse; Strawberry; Trees (*continued*). See the list given under April.—*Stones*: Limestone; Sandstone; Slates and Shales.

APPENDIX.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

PHYSIOGRAPHY

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

A. T. SIMMONS, B.Sc. (LOND.)

ASSOCIATE OF ROYAL COLLEGE OF SCIENCE, LONDON
AUTHOR OF "PHYSIOGRAPHY FOR ADVANCED STUDENTS

Adapted to the Elementary Stage of the South Kensington Syllabus, and suitable for the Junior University Local Examinations

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

569

[SPECIMEN PAGE].

the east and west of this locality was made in the last chapter. Being able, however, to now regard the earth as a spinning globe, we are in a position to explain this difference more fully. Fig. 78 makes the matter very simple. The student must suppose himself in space looking down upon the north pole of the earth, which is situated at the intersection of the diameters of the circle representing the equator of the earth. The circle is divided into twenty-four equal parts, and hence the angle between any pair of radii will be 360 divided by 24, or 15 degrees.

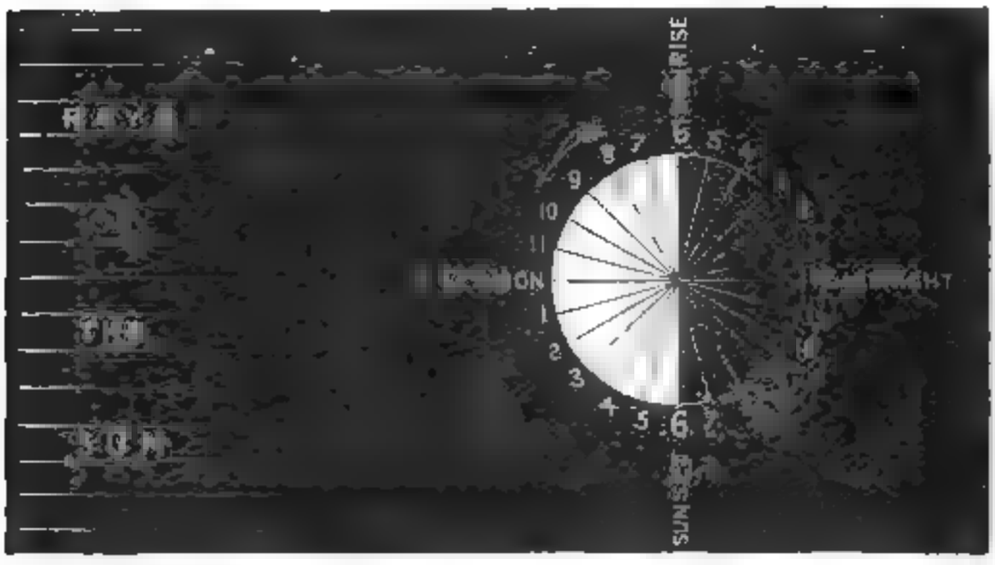


FIG. 78.—To explain the different times at places east and west of Greenwich.

As the globe spins round each radius in turn occupies the position of that one marked "12 noon." An observer in this position will see the sun in his highest position for the day, or on the meridian, that is, southing. The observer situated at the opposite end of the same diameter will be as far away from the sun as he can possibly be. Or, to take an example, at places longitude 180° it will be twelve o'clock midnight when it is twelve o'clock noon at Greenwich. When the sun is on the [illegible]dian at Greenwich at places 90° W. and 90° E. it will be [illegible]ck in the morning and six o'clock in the evening

Mo[illegible]
(contin[illegible]
Sandstone

APPENDIX. [illegible] it is twelve o'clock noon at Greenwich, at

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

stem of the barometer shown in Fig. 95, the mercury column to its upper limit in the long tube, the air to its upper limit, which as will be seen, is a great distance from the surface of the earth. If for any reason the weight of the atmosphere becomes greater, the mercury will be pushed higher to preserve the balance; if it should become less, then similarly the amount of mercury which can be supported will be less, and so the height of the column of mercury is diminished.

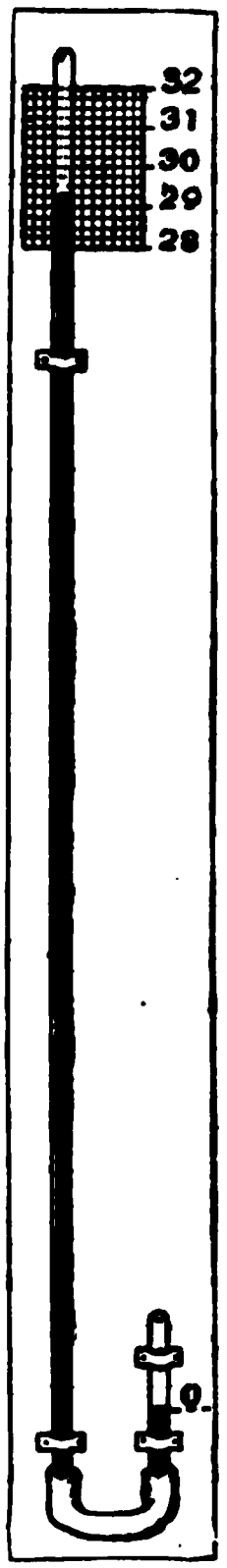


FIG. 95.—To explain the Principle of the Barometer.

The student will now understand why it is so necessary to remove all the air bubbles in Expt. 193. If this were not done, when the tube was inverted the enclosed air would rise through the mercury and take up a position in the top of the tube above the mercury. The reading would not then be thirty inches, for instead of measuring the whole pressure of the atmosphere, what we should really be measuring would be the difference between the pressure of the whole atmosphere and that of the air enclosed in the tube. In a properly constructed barometer, therefore, there is nothing above the mercury in the tube except a little mercury vapour.

An arrangement like that described constitutes a *barometer, which we can define as an instrument for measuring the pressure exerted by the atmosphere.*

§ EXPT. 194.—Procure a thick glass tube about thirty-six inches long and closed at one end. Fill the tube with mercury; place your thumb over the open end; invert the tube; place the open end in a cup of mercury and take away your thumb. A column of mercury will be supported in the tube by the pressure of the atmosphere. The distance between the top of the column and the surface of the mercury in the cup will be about thirty inches.

§ EXPT. 195.—Weigh the column of mercury sustained in the barometer

THIS book has been constructed to follow the annotated syllabus of Elementary Physiography published in the *Directory* just issued by the Department of Science and Art. Its distinctive features are:—(1) The large number of experiments described; (2) the liberal use of illustrations, many of them new; (3) summaries of the chief points in each chapter; (4) 250 questions on the subjects dealt with. The wide scope of the book will be seen from the following list of the subjects of the chapters:

Chapter I. Matter. II. Measurement of Space, Mass, and Density. III. Motion, Inertia, and Force. IV. The Mechanical Powers. V. Energy. VI. Heat and Temperature. VII. Radiation. VIII. The Chemical Composition of Matter. IX. Common Chemical Elements and Compounds. X. The Earth. XI. Rotation of the Earth, and Measurement of Time. XII. The Sea, the Earth's Revolution, and the Moon. XIII. The Atmosphere. XIV. Atmospheric Phenomena. XV. The Oceans. XVI. Currents in the Oceans. XVII. Rivers and Glaciers. XVIII. The Earth's Solid Crust, Igneous Rocks. XIX. Aqueous and Metamorphic Rocks. XX. Internal Forces acting on the Earth's Crust. XXI. Terrestrial Magnetism.

PRESS OPINIONS

Educational News—"This is really an excellent text-book on the subject. . . . The value of the work as a practical text-book on the subject cannot be overestimated."

Royal College of Science Magazine—"Mr. Simmons' book should have a large circulation, and we recommend it both to those who will use it as a text-book, or as ground work for lectures and demonstrations."

Educational Times—"Mr. Simmons has evidently written his book with extraordinary care, and to read his chapters on 'Energy' is to be convinced that he is a teacher of very exceptional ability."

Academy—"It is anything but a light task to undertake the explanation of the elementary principles of mechanics to persons whose mathematical knowledge is limited to arithmetic, yet Mr. Simmons has attempted it with great success. . . . A pupil-teacher who has mastered its contents and has performed the numerous experiments described, will never lack material for an object lesson."

Nature—"It may be stated at once that the book covers the syllabus in the most complete and satisfactory manner, and we have no hesitation in saying that teachers will find it to adequately meet their requirements as a class-book. The descriptions are clear and not too long, and great pains have evidently been taken to ensure accuracy in every section. One of the best features is the great prominence given, for the first time, we believe, to experimental illustrations of the subject, all those suggested in the syllabus having been incorporated, and others added to make a total of 216, all of which require but simple appliances."

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

Physiography for Advanced Students

BY

A. T. SIMMONS, B.Sc. (LOND.)

ASSOCIATE OF THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF SCIENCE, LONDON

AUTHOR OF "PHYSIOGRAPHY FOR BEGINNERS"

Adapted to the Advanced Stage of the South Kensington Syllabus

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

Chapter 1. Matter. 2. Work and Energy. 3. Heat and Temperature. 4. Waves in Water, Air, and the Ether. 5. The Atmosphere and Atmospheric Movements. 6. Atmospheric Phenomena in Relation to Climate.

7. Seas and Lakes. 8. Seas (*continued*)—The Tides. 9. The Earth's Crust —Rock-forming Minerals. 10. The Earth's Crust—Rocks and their Classification. 11. The Earth's Crust—Phenomena connected with the Internal Heat of the Earth. 12. The Earth's Crust—Movements in the Earth's Crust and some of their Results. 13. The Universe—Celestial Co-ordinates, and how they are affected by the Earth's Movements. 14. The Universe —The Law of Gravity in the Solar System. 15. The Universe—Physical Features of the Sun and Moon. 16. The Universe—The Terrestrial Planets and their Moons. 17. The Universe—The Major Planets and their Moons, Comets, and Meteorites. 18. The Universe —The Stars: their Magnitudes and Proper Motions. 19. The Universe—Double Stars, Clusters, and Nebulæ. 20. The Universe—Celestial Measurements. 21. Terrestrial Magnetism. INDEX.

PRESS OPINIONS

Scotsman—"Rich in illustrations and in references to deeper authorities, it provides a book suitable especially to students following the syllabus of the Science and Art department, but serviceable to all."

School Guardian—"The book is an excellent example of a class-book thoroughly up to date."

Nature—"We believe the book will admirably supply the need which must have been felt by teachers and students under the new conditions created by the revised syllabus. In conjunction with the volume to which it is a supplement, it will also provide the general reader with a comprehensive view of the earth and its relation to other bodies in space."

Educational News—"No better book on the subject has hitherto come under our notice, and we recommend it with full confidence."

Educational Review—"The exposition is lucid, the matter full, accurate, and up to date. . . . It is altogether an excellent text-book."

Pupil Teacher—"It is impossible to speak too highly of this excellent work. . . . We cordially recommend the work, as a continuation of *Physiography for Beginners*, as being admirably suited for advanced pupils studying for the Science and Art Department Syllabus."

Educational Times—"We can congratulate the author on his clear descriptions and on the admirable series of illustrations which he has brought together from so many sources."

Speaker—"The essential features of the plan of the earlier book are here presented—precise instructions for simple experiments, summaries of chapters, and questions. The book will be acceptable to the general reader, who, as well as the science student, will find plenty of interesting illustrations. As the book is thorough, it is well worth a place in the science library of Messrs. Macmillan."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

whole melts, its valley is seen to have assumed the form of smooth undulating prominences, in appearance not unlike the back of dolphins as they appear at the surface of the water in which they are rolling. These rounded mounds are called *roches moutonnées*, from a similar likeness they exhibit to the backs of sheep.

The water formed from the local melting of a glacier collects on the surface and often finds its way down one of the numerous crevasses, carrying with it a considerable quantity of the moraine detritus. This water finally gets under the glacier, and in many cases, by the help of the stones it carries with it, erodes a kind of pot-hole, which is in some places spoken of as

FIG. 111.—Glacial Striations at Kingston, Ohio.

a *giant's kettle*. As was pointed out in describing the same sort of work in the case of rivers, the largest amount of erosion will be effected in those cases where the rocks are soft. It is sometimes indeed sufficiently extensive to form considerable hollows, which on the retirement of the glacier often becomes filled with water, forming *tarns* or *lakes* (p. 150).

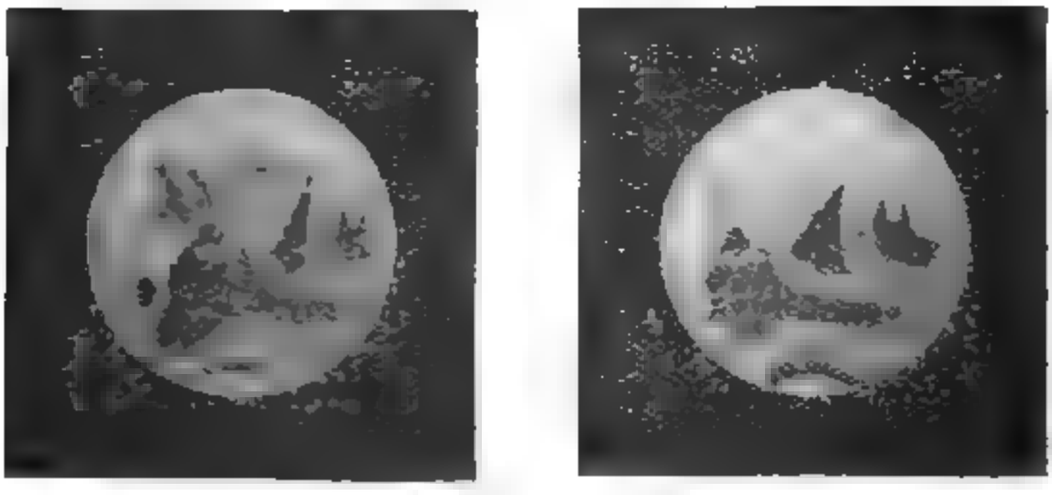
Results of Glacial Action.—The student will readily perceive that it is quite possible to tell where glaciers have been from the permanent record they leave behind. We can summarise the occurrences, the existence of which in any country can be taken as proof of the previous existence of glaciers.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Physical Features of Mars.—The planet Mars generally presents the aspect of a ruddy disc, which is, as before remarked,

FIG. 162.—Mars on August 29, 1894, showing the Planet in the Gibbous phase. (From a Drawing by Mr. Percival Lowell in *The Astrophysical Journal*, No. 128).

gibbous in form at stated times. Its surface markings can be distinctly made out with a telescope having a four- or five-inch



1892, August 17d., 10h. 32m. 1892, August 17d., 11h. 55m.

FIG. 163.—The Planet Mars, as drawn by Prof. James E. Keeler on August 17, 1892. The South Polar Cap is shown in each of the Drawings.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d. (*Questions on the same*, 1s. 6d.)

ELEMENTARY LESSONS

IN

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY

BY

SIR ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S.

[First Edition 1877; reprinted 1878, 1880, 1882 (2), 1883 (2), 1884. Second Edition 1884; reprinted 1886, 1887, 1889, 1890, 1892, 1894, 1897 (2), 1898 (2), 1899.]

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

Academy—"The language is always simple and clear, and the descriptions of the various phenomena are no less vivid than interesting; the lessons are never dull, never wearisome, and they can scarcely fail to make the study of Physical Geography popular wherever they are used."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

5. (2) A further feature in the distribution of lakes, which may be observed on maps, is the more or less abundant occurrence of these sheets of water among

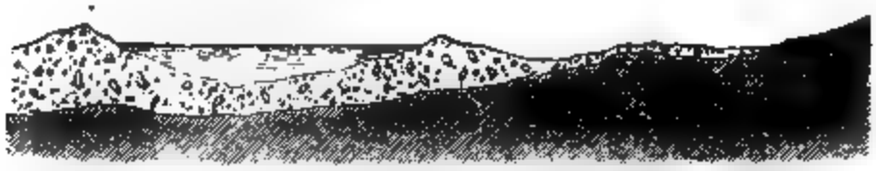


FIG. 53.—Section of a lake-basin lying in a hollow of superficial detritus.

mountains. Take Europe as an illustration. Even in the comparatively low mountain groups of Scotland, Cumberland, and Wales, lakes abound, forming one of the great charms of the well-known scenery of these districts. Among the Alps a series of large lakes occurs on each side of the main axis of the chain, and innumerable minor sheets of water occur scattered at all heights among the central mountains, up even to the borders of the snow-line. All mountain systems, indeed, have not

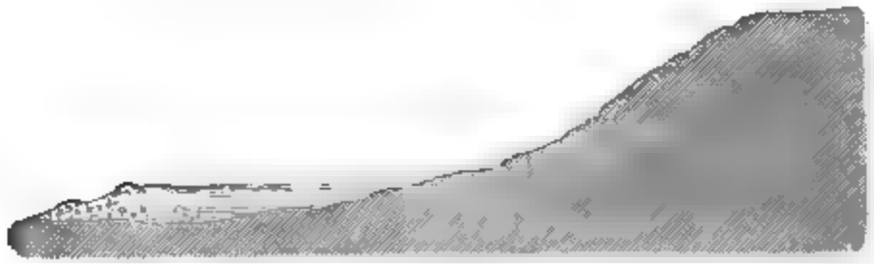


FIG. 54.—Section of a lake dammed up by a barrier of earth or gravel.

the same abundance of water-filled hollows; in some there are few or none. Lakes among mountains may be, in some cases, hollows formed during the elevation of the mountains (Lesson XXIX.); in other examples, like those referred to in Art. 4, they may either have had their basins scooped out by glaciers or formed by the irregular piling up of ice-borne debris (Fig. 54). In most volcanic districts, lakes occur in cavities which have been formerly blown open by explosions from

1892, —

FIG. 163.—The Planet Mars
1892. The South Polar.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

Geology for Beginners

BY

W. W. WATTS, M.A., F.G.S.

FORMERLY LECTURER TO THE CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY EXTENSION
AND MEMBER OF HER MAJESTY'S GEOLOGICAL SURVEY, AND
NOW ASSISTANT-PROFESSOR IN GEOLOGY AT THE
BIRMINGHAM UNIVERSITY

WITH THREE HUNDRED AND TEN ILLUSTRATIONS

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

579

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

At the present time there appears to be needed a small book on Geology which, while short and elementary in treatment, is accurate and fairly up to date. Further, it is well that sections and diagrams should be supplemented by photographs of hand-specimens and microscopic slides of rocks, and of the natural exposures where rocks are to be seen in the field. The author has kept both these aims in view while planning his work on the lines of the revised syllabus of the Science and Art Department.

While primarily intended for use in preparation for the elementary stage of the Science and Art Examination, care has been taken to make the book suitable for school work and for the examinations of the Oxford and Cambridge Schools' Examination Board. With this object in view there have been placed at the end of the chapters all the Questions set in the Science and Art Examination during the last twenty years, and those of the Oxford and Cambridge Board for ten years.

Naturally in writing this book no other elementary work of the class has been consulted, but no one who has ever read the late Professor Green's classic work on Physical Geology can help being attracted by the lucidity of his style and influenced by the charm of his methods. The writer owes an especial debt for the advice and assistance given him when acting as Professor Green's deputy on two occasions several years ago. The principal methods pursued in two or three of the earlier chapters, and the general practical aim of the book as a whole, are due directly to Professor Green's advice.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. Introduction; II. Study of a Piece of Stone at Home; III. Study of Rocks out of Doors; IV. Wear and Tear of Rocks by the Weather and Springs; V. Denudation by Rivers and Glaciers; VI. Marine Denudation—Rate of Work; VII. Rock-building by Sediments; VIII. Rock-structures and Earth-movement; IX. Faulting, Cleavage, and Joints; X. Minerals; XI. Sedimentary Rocks; XII. Volcanoes; XIII. Volcanic Rocks; XIV. Plutonic Rocks; XV. Foliated Rocks; XVI. Fossils; XVII. Principles of Historical Geology; XVIII. The Eozoic and Older Palæozoic Groups; XIX. The Palæozoic Group—Deutozoic Division; XX. The Neozoic Group—Mesozoic Division; XXI. The Neozoic Group—Cainozoic Division; XXII. The Origin of Landscape; XXIII. Economic Geology.

SPECIMEN PAGES

brought by rivers and currents. The pebbles are laid down as shown in Fig. 49, in such a way as to oppose the greatest resistance to being lifted again by currents.

FIG. 49.—Deposition of pebbles under the influence of a current.

The *sand* is interesting because the perpetual movement of the waves imprints on it the beautiful ribbed surface known as ripple-mark, see Fig. 50. Shell-fish, crustaceans like crabs

FIG. 50.—Ripple-marking on sand; also formation of sea-caves by denudation along planes of bedding and jointing. (From a photograph by Mr. G. T. Atchison: copyright.)

and lobsters, worms, and other animals, moving over it between tide-marks, leave their tracks and burrows, which may occasionally be preserved if a coating of mud or fine sand is deposited upon them. Even rain-prints indented by a passing shower, and cracks caused by the drying and shrinking of sand or mud under the sun's rays where it is left dry by the tide, may under favourable circumstances be preserved (Fig.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

With 200 *New Illustrations*

New and Cheaper Edition. *Crown* 8*vo.* 4*s.* 6*d.*

Class Book of Geology

BY

SIR ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

Academy—"It is lucid and attractive in a degree without precedent among geological handbooks. Facts which in most other books of the kind are presented in isolation are here given in a chain of interesting relations, by means of which they are impressed indelibly on the learner's memory. One feature of the book which will render it specially suitable to young students is the large space given to certain details which are usually delegated to mineralogy. The woodcuts (most of which, it is stated, have been drawn expressly for this book) are extremely good."

Educational News—"As this is the latest manual of Geology it is also without question the best. . . ."

Saturday Review—"Clear in expression and lucid in method, the work exhibits all the literary grace for which Dr. Geikie is so highly distinguished."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

supplied its own contribution of detritus. Thus from a region of red sandstone, the rubbish would be red and sandy; from one of black slate, it would be black and clayey (see Chapter XXVI).

Summary.—In this chapter we have seen that Ice in various ways affects the surface of the land and leaves its mark there. Frost, as already explained in Chapter II, pulverises soil, disintegrates exposed surfaces of stone, and splits open bare rocks along their lines of natural joint. On rivers and lakes, the disrupted ice wears down banks and pushes up mounds of sand, gravel, and boulders along the shores. Snow lying on the surface of the land protects that surface from the action of frost and air. In the condition of avalanches, snow causes large quantities of earth, soil, and blocks of rock to be removed from the mountain-slopes and piled up on the valleys. In the form of glaciers, ice transports the debris of the mountains to lower levels, bearing along and sometimes stranding masses of rock as large as cottages, which no other known natural agent could transport. Moving down a valley, a glacier wears away the rocks, giving them a peculiar smoothed and striated surface which is thoroughly characteristic. By this grinding action, it erodes its bed and produces a large amount of fine sediment, which is carried away by the river that escapes at the end of the ice-stream. Land-ice thus leaves thoroughly distinctive and enduring memorials of its presence in polished and grooved rocks, in masses of earth, clay, or gravel, with striated stones, and in the dispersal of erratic blocks from principal masses of high ground. These memorials may remain for ages after the ice itself has vanished. By their evidence we know that the present glaciers of the Alps are only a shrunk remnant of the great ice-fields which once covered that region; that the Scandinavian glaciers swept across what is now the bed of the North Sea as far as the mouth of the Thames; and that Scotland, Ireland, Wales, and the greater part of England were buried under great sheets of ice which crept downwards into the North Sea on the one side, and into the Atlantic on the other (Chapter XXVII).

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Please name the book required.

MACMILLAN'S

GEOGRAPHY READERS

BOOK I.

OBJECT LESSON READER IN GEOGRAPHY . **10d.**

BOOK II.

OBJECT LESSON READER IN GEOGRAPHY **1s. 0d.**

BOOK III.

ENGLAND . . . . . **1s. 4d.**

BOOK IV.

BRITISH ISLES, ETC. . . . . **1s. 4d.**

BOOK V.

EUROPE . . . . . **1s. 6d.**

BOOK VI.

THE BRITISH COLONIES, ETC. . . **1s. 6d.**

BOOK VII.

THE UNITED STATES, ETC. . . **1s. 9d.**

London

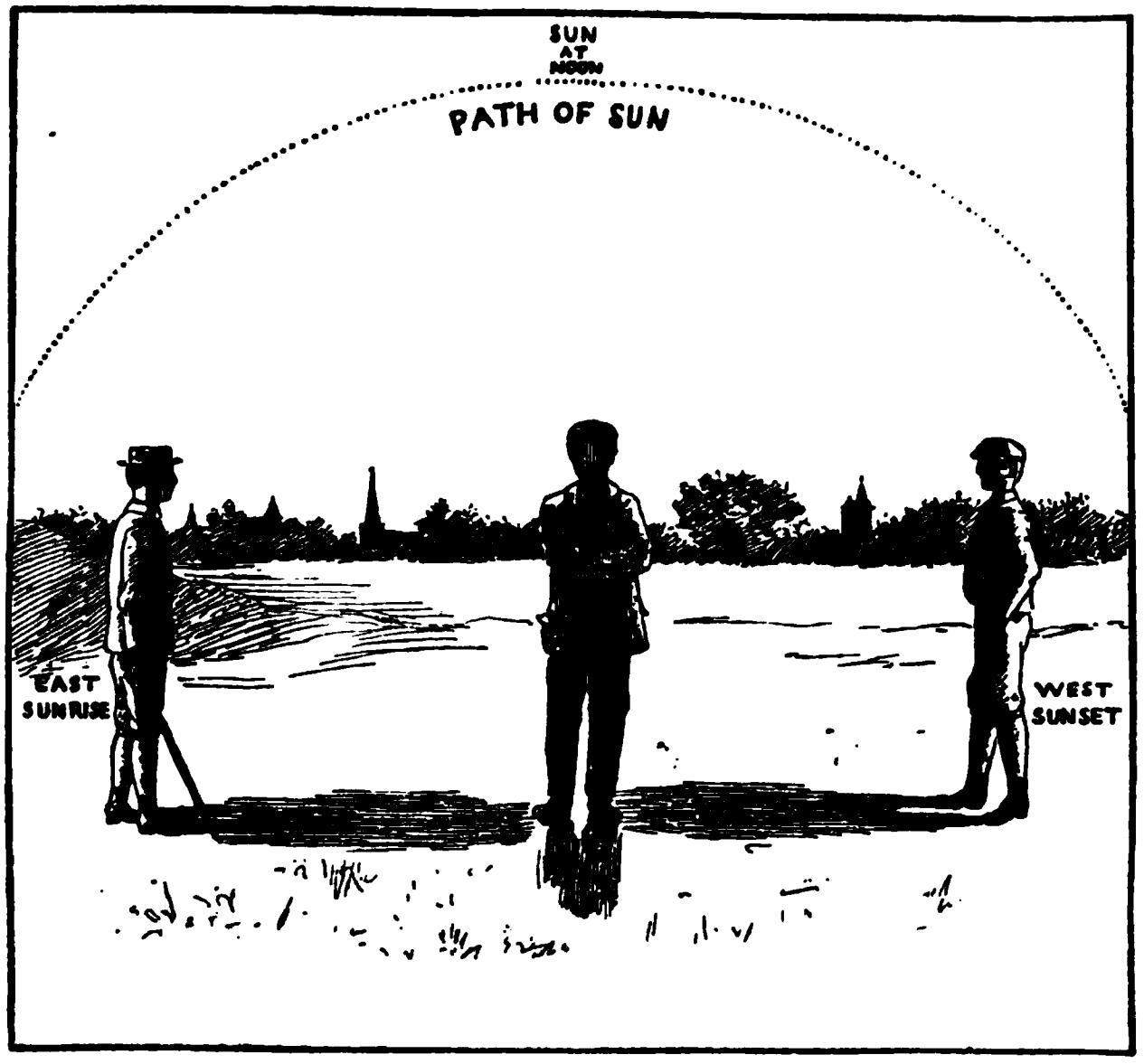
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

584

his father. Jack looked at the shadow and at the stick, and also at his own shadow. He saw that it was the sun which caused the shadow.

4. "Where is the sun now, Jack?" "In the East, father." "Now look at the shadow," said his father, "and tell me which way it points." "To the West," said Jack.



5. "It is now six o'clock," said Mr. Green. "If you come here to-morrow

4. "What is a desert, uncle?" asked Tom. "It is a great sandy plain. For miles and miles nothing can be seen but sand and stones. There are no trees except in a few fertile spots, called oases, which are sometimes hundreds of miles apart."

5. "These oases are lower than the surrounding land, and in them water is found, and a few palm trees. People cross the deserts on camels."

6. "Oh yes, uncle," said Tom, "I remember teacher giving us a lesson on the camel. He

83 ...en built in them. Neither was the whole built at one time. Some of the old walls were perhaps built by the Romans, or Saxons. William, the Conqueror, built a portion of them; and other kings added to it in later times.

TOWER OF LONDON.

6. As a state prison the Tower holds a sad record. Many innocent men and women, in addition to the guilty, have been confined within its walls; and many have been the lives taken therein.

7. When you visit London, you must see the Tower. The visit will interest you very much, especially if you have read about some of the great people who were imprisoned there.

8. London Bridge is the next object of special interest. From very early times in

the coast as shown on the map. The northern portion is wild and rugged in character. It is cut into by two arms of the sea—Loughs Swilly and Foyle, the latter forming a good harbour.

THE GIANT'S CAUSEWAY.

5. Malin Head, the extreme northern point of Ireland, lies at the extremity of the peninsula formed by the inlets just named. Fair Head is the most north-easterly point, and the coast here, and for some miles westward, is the most interesting in the island.

6. It is formed of basalt, or old lava-rocks, arranged in huge columns or pillars having from three to six sides—more often six. The pillars fit evenly and closely, and each seems to be built up of pieces neatly joined together.

mules. In some places paths have been constructed on the edges of precipices, and in other places it has been necessary to cut tunnels through projecting rocks.

7. It is not only over the surface of the Alps that man is able to force his way; right under the

NORTH ENTRANCE, GREAT TUNNEL, ST. GOTHARD.

St. Gothard, a railway tunnel nearly ten miles long has been driven. This tunnel plays an important part in the trade of Switzerland, Italy, and Germany, at whose joint expense it was made. By means of this tunnel, which is the longest in the world, heavy goods can be transported from the continental ports on the English Channel, and the North and Baltic Seas, to the Italian ports, within three days.

which could not be given, because the Sepoys had risen in that city also. Then in his distress he sought the aid of Nana Sahib, a native prince, who lived in a magnificent palace twelve miles away, and had always been on friendly terms with him. Nana

THE WELL AT CAWNPORE.

promptly replied to the invitation by collecting his troops, marching on Cawnpore, and attacking the place of refuge of the old British General, who stubbornly defended it.

7. At length Nana agreed, under the veil of clemency and friendship, to give the garrison a safe conduct as far as Allahabad, provided they sur-

40. America's Great Natural Bridges.

1. The Natural Bridge of Virginia is a natural arch of rock two hundred feet high and about ninety feet wide at the top, crossing over a little stream flowing into the James River.

NATURAL BRIDGE, VIRGINIA.

2. The story of this bridge, with its roadway over the top, and the number of names carved on its rocky sides, and how George Washington, the first President, when a boy, climbed up at fearful hazard, and carved his name higher than the rest, has been told number-

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

MACMILLAN'S
Geographical Series

EDITED BY

SIR ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S.

DIRECTOR GENERAL OF THE GEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF THE UNITED KINGDOM

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

592

Globe 8vo. Price 2s.

The Teaching of Geography

A PRACTICAL HANDBOOK FOR THE USE OF TEACHERS

BY

SIR ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. Introductory; II. General Principles; III. General Principles (Continued); IV. Appliances in Geographical Teaching; V. The Elementary Stage of Geographical Teaching; VI.—Elementary Ideas of Time; VII. The Surroundings of School, Out-of-Door Teaching; VIII. Physical Geography of the School Locality; IX. Physical Geography of the School Locality (Continued); X. Political Geography of the School Locality; XI. Relation of the School Locality to the rest of the Country, and of the Country to the rest of the Earth; XII. More Advanced Geographical Teaching, General Observations; XIII. Mathematical Geography; XIV. The Physical Geography of a Region; XV. The Political and Historical Geography of a Country; XVI. Special Geographical Work of the Higher Forms.

The aim of this volume is to advocate the claims of Geography as an educational discipline of a high order, and to show how these claims may be practically recognised by teachers.

PRESS OPINIONS

Times—"The book is written with Mr. Geikie's well-known fluency and eloquence, and will be read with profit and pleasure by any one. Nothing, in our estimation, could be more satisfactory, or calculated to lead to more profitable results, than the suggestions contained in the introductory chapters of the subject. . . . Mr. Geikie's volume, as a whole, lifts Geography into a new atmosphere. If his suggestions are faithfully followed in all our schools, the result could not but be of the highest benefit to education all round. . . . It ought to be welcomed with open arms by all friends of real education."

Journal of Education—"This simple and unpretentious handbook for teachers serves as a fitting introduction to a new geographical series projected and edited by the same author. Such a series, the scope of which is indirectly indicated in this volume, is greatly needed—something less arid and formal than the tabular statements of the old-fashioned geographies, and more methodical and systematic than the modern Geographical Readers. And no fitter editor for such a series could have been chosen. Not only has Dr. Geikie a wide and profound knowledge of his subject, but he has grasped the first principles of pedagogics,—that knowledge profiteth little or nothing unless it is gained in the right way, by observation and induction, and so becomes a living germ of future growth, not a store of raw material. This principl is the keynote of the handbook, and its various applications are admirably worked out especially in the earlier stages."

With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOK OF GENERAL GEOGRAPHY

BY

H. R. MILL, D.Sc., F.R.S.E.
LIBRARIAN OF THE ROYAL GEOGRAPHICAL SOCIETY

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1. Geography in General; 2. Physical Geography; 3. Distribution of Living Creatures; 4. The Continent of Eurasia; 5 The British Islands; 6. North-Western Europe; 7. South-Western Europe; 8. Central Europe; 9. Southern Europe and Western Asia; 10. Eastern Europe and Northern Asia; 11. Southern Asia; 12. Eastern Asia; 13. The Commonwealth of Australia; 14. The States of Australia; 15. Islands of the Pacific Ocean; 16. The Continent of North America; 17. Arctic America; 18. The Dominion of Canada; 19. Southern North America; 20. Central America and West Indies; 21. The Continent of South America; 22. Western Countries of South America; 23. Eastern Countries of South America; 24. Northern Countries of South America; 25. The Continent of Africa; 26. Countries of Northern Africa; 27. Countries of Central Africa; 28. Countries of Southern Africa; 29. The Antartic Regions.

PRESS OPINIONS

Journal of Education—"We can recommend it to teachers as a valuable help."

Guardian—"The descriptive portions of the work are excellently written and arranged, and give a better idea of the configuration of the continents, and of the history, political divisions, industries, customs, and habits of the peoples who inhabit them, than any other school text-book which has come beneath our notice."

School Guardian—"A painstaking piece of work, and the pupil who simply reads it through two or three times will have a truer and more real idea of the earth he lives on than if he had crammed himself up for half-a-dozen examinations. . . . We cordially commend his book to the notice of teachers generally."

Educational News—"To those whose aim is to acquire intelligent ideas of the people, the governments, the natural products, the industries of different countries, the book will prove as interesting as it is instructive."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

273. Krakatoa.—In Sunda Strait, between Sumatra and Java, *Krakatoa*, an islet consisting of one volcano, was shattered by the greatest volcanic explosion ever known in August 1883, and the dust of it was blown through the air all round the world, giving rise everywhere to sunsets of great beauty for several months.

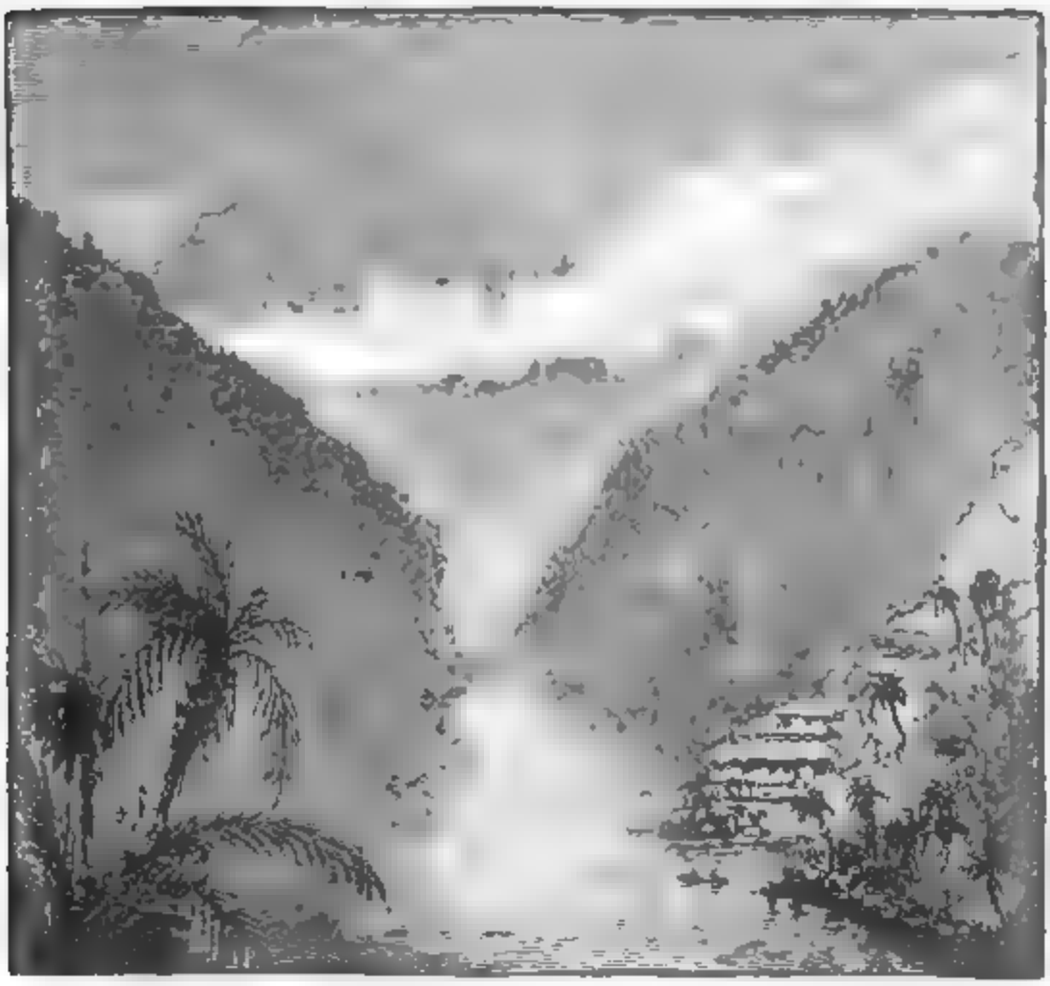


FIG. 11.—A SCENE IN JAVA, SHOWING A RIVER VALLEY, PALM-TREES, AND ACTIVE VOLCANO.

274. JAVA, crowded with volcanoes, which rise above the most gorgeous tropical forests, alive with brilliant birds and insects, is the wealthiest of the Dutch East Indies. An old crater, named the *Guevo Upas* or Poison Vale, in one of the forests, exhales carbonic acid gas, and the margin is said to be strewn with skeletons of beasts and men that went too near the deadly hollow. Most of the hot low-lying land is laid out

Globe 8vo. Price 2s.

Geography of the British Colonies

BY

G. M. DAWSON, LL.D.

AND

A. SUTHERLAND, M.A.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

I. British North America.—Physical Geography and General Characteristics. II. Dominion of Canada and Newfoundland.—Newfoundland; Dominion of Canada (*a*) Acadian Provinces, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Prince Edward Island; (*b*) St. Lawrence Provinces.—Quebec; Ontario; Manitoba; North-West Territory; North-East Territory; British Columba. III. The West Indian Colonies.—The Bahamas; Jamaica; Leeward Islands; The Windward Islands; Barbados; Trinidad. IV. Central American Colony.—British Honduras. V. South American Colony.—British Guiana. VI. Atlantic Islands.—Bermuda; Falkland Islands; St. Helena, Ascension, Tristan d'Acunha. VII. Mediterranean Possessions. VIII. The South African Colonies.—Cape Colony; Natal. IX. British West Africa. X. British East Africa. XI. Possessions in the Red and Arabian Seas and Indian Ocean. XII. Possessions in the South-East of Asia. XIII. Australia.—New South Wales; Victoria; South Australia; Queensland; Western Australia; Tasmania. XIV. New Zealand. XV. Pacific Islands.

PRESS OPINIONS

Nature—"The facts are presented simply and clearly, and every page contains statements which an intelligent teacher would have no difficulty in using as texts for pleasant and profitable instruction."

Scottish Geographical Magazine—"A descriptive work based on science, and arranged according to scientific principles, and it is all the more likely to be educative because it is extremely interesting. The book is very fully and carefully illustrated with pictures of characteristic scenes."

Schoolmaster—"For those who are sufficiently advanced, there are few works on the colonies which could be so advantageously studied."

Athenæum—"Strikes us as being excellent. . . . The descriptions of Canada and of Australia, on the whole, are nearly perfect."

(SPECIMEN PAGE)

25,000, of whom nearly 6000 are soldiers forming the garrison. It is a coaling station, and a port of call for vessels bound to or from the various ports of the Mediterranean.

Farther east, in the middle of the Mediterranean Sea, two islands lie side by side, of which the larger, **Malta,** is of great importance to British navigation. This island is 17 miles long and 9 miles broad. On the south its cliffs rise boldly from the sea, and are almost inaccessible; but on the north the shores are broken into several

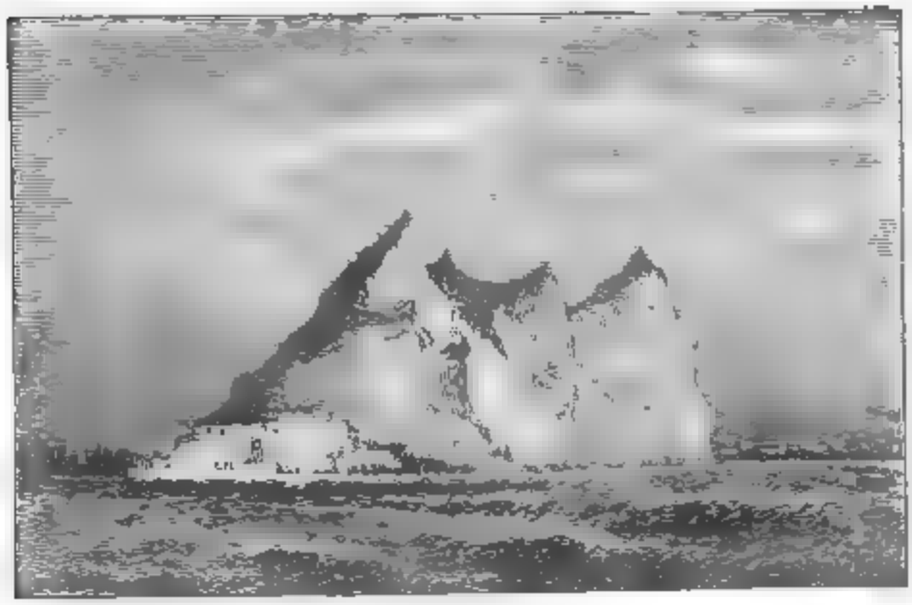


FIG. 28.—GIBRALTAR.

harbours, of which the best resembles a large artificial dock. On this inlet lies the chief town and seaport, called Valetta. Landing at this place the visitor finds himself in front of flights of stairs, which he must climb, for the whole island is high. In the town itself the streets at first are really stairs, but the upper and busy part is a city of stately but much-decayed splendour. The narrow streets are bordered with lofty mansions, the projecting balconies of which are wrought with so much taste and beauty as to suggest, what is really true, that this city was once the abode of merchant-princes. Fine churches, spacious convents, and marble-fronted

Pott 8vo. Price 1*s.*

Geography of the British Isles

BY

SIR ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S.

CONTENTS

I. THE BRITISH ISLES.—Geographical Position; Outer Form and Size; General Surface Features; Climate; Plants and Animals; Population; Products, Industries, Commerce; Internal Communications. II. ENGLAND AND WALES.—England, Name and Size; Surface; Coast-Line; Drainage System; Mineral Fields; Population and Political Subdivisions; Wales; Islands. III. SCOTLAND.—Name and Size; Surface; Coast-Line; Drainage; Mineral Fields; Population and Political Subdivisions. IV. IRELAND.—Name, Shape, and Size; Surface; Coast-Line; Drainage; Mineral Fields; Population and Subdivisions.

PRESS OPINIONS

Athenæum—"A favourable specimen of what a book of this type should be. It is surprising how large an amount of information, and what variety of matter, the author has succeeded in crowding into 127 very small pages without rendering his little book repellent."

Literary World—"Dr. A. Geikie is so well known by his able and lucid treatises on Geology that those who believe in combining some instruction in that branch of science with the teaching of Geography will welcome a work like the *Elementary Geography of the British Isles*, issued in 'Macmillan's Geographical Series.' We have rarely met with a school book at once so delightful and so valuable."

The Scotsman says—"The book is prepared in accordance with the plan of instruction advocated in the author's *Teaching of Geography*, a work the value of which was pointed out here on its appearance last year. It lays special stress on the description of the physical features of the country, and is in every way an admirable text-book for children."

The Practical Teacher says—"This is an excellent little summary of the geography of our islands. The islands are first treated of as a whole, and their size, surface, climate, productions, and other interesting features described. Then each country is treated in greater detail, a short description of each county and its chief towns being added to the physical features. The style is clear and interesting, and the details are full without being unnaturally burdensome. The figures for areas and population are enclosed in brackets, and can thus be learned or otherwise at the discretion of the teacher."

The Scottish Geographical Magazine says—"This little volume of 'Macmillan's Geographical Series' has been prepared in accordance with the method of instruction explained and advocated in the author's book on *The Teaching of Geography*, which is the foundation of the whole series. The principle that lies at the root of Dr. Geikie's teaching is that Geography should be a real and not merely a verbal study—that it should be treated so as to appeal to the observing powers, the judgment, and the imagination of the scholar, and not merely to his memory. This root-principle has been carefully observed in the present little book. It does not consist, like the old text-books and some of the new ones, of mere lists of names that are 'linked with no idea or association.' Each place, in accordance with the author's rule, is 'connected with the physical feature, some fact in history, or some other human interest.' That is excellent, and it is admirably worked out in the book. So also is the description of the physical features of the British Isles, on which the political geography is founded."

Pott 8vo. Price 1s.

Maps and Map Drawing

By W. A. ELDERTON

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

I. History of Maps.—Ancient, Mediaeval, Modern Maps. II. Surveying.—Scales; The Vernier; Surveys by Eye, with Chain and Cross-staff; Military Surveys; Trigonometrical Surveys; Determination of Latitudes and Longitudes; Spherical Triangles; Levelling and Contouring. III. Globes.—Old and curious Globes; Manufacture; The Stand; Use for general Study, for determining Directions and Distances, for explaining Rhumb-line and Great Circle Sailing, for judging Latitudes and Longitudes, Length of Nights, Twilight, etc. IV. Map-Drawing.—Difficulty of expressing Sphere on Plane; Orthographic, Gnomonic or Central, Stereographic, Equidistant or Globular, Conical, Cylindrical, and Mercator's Projections; Drawing the Map; Diminishing and Enlarging; Symbols; Contours; Hachuring; Minor Details; Use of Map for Study, for Reference. V. Copying Maps.—Method for Students; Uses. VI. Memory Maps.—Their Importance; What to remember; How to remember; Illustrated by simple Map of France, by more exact Map of England and Wales, by Mercator's Chart of World.

PRESS OPINIONS

Morning Post—"May be recommended as a useful book to those students who have an elementary knowledge of Geometry, and the use of the more common mathematical instruments. . . . A careful perusal of Mr. Elderton's book will remove many of the difficulties experienced by beginners, and help them to retain in their memories the form of the countries they have to delineate."

Schoolmaster—"To any student desirous of acquainting himself with the principles and methods on which maps and globes are constructed, or surveys made, we commend this small manual. It sketches the history of map-making, and suggests modes of copying and 'what is, perhaps, most important,' of remembering maps when copied. To many these suggestions must be valuable."

Nature—"This little book will be found to form a most useful supplement to t works on geography published in the same series. In it an excellent brief accour given concerning the history of maps from the records of the Egyptians down to present day. Then follow various methods of making surveys, including descript of the various instruments employed, such as the prismatic compass theodolite sext &c."

Globe 8vo. Price 1s. 9d.

AN ELEMENTARY GEOGRAPHY

OF

INDIA, BURMA, AND CEYLON

BY

H. F. BLANFORD, F.R.S.

LATE METEOROLOGICAL REPORTER TO THE GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

The Indian Empire.—Influence of India's Geography on its People; Geographical Position; Outer Form, Size, and Boundaries; General Surface Features; Climates; Plants and Animals; Population; Languages; Religion and Caste; Products, Industries, and Commerce; Internal Communications. The Government of India and its Provinces.—The Supreme Government; Provincial Governments; Native States; Foreign Possessions. The Provinces of India.—Balúchistán; Kashmír; The Punjab; North-West Provinces and Oudh; Bengal; Assam; Rájputána; Central India Agency; Central Provinces; Bombay; Berar; Hyderabad; Mysore and Coorg; Madras; Burma; Andaman and Nicobar Islands; Ceylon. Foreign Possessions in India. Frontier States.—Afghánistán; Nepal.

PRESS OPINIONS

Academy—"The first portion of the book, treating of India generally, is a model of clear exposition, and is made as interesting as the character of the subject permits."

Speaker—"The book is at once practical and scientific, and it is not merely well-written, but admirably arranged. No aspect of the subject appears to have been overlooked, and we are not aware of any text-book which gives in similar compass as vivid and interesting a summary of the whole field of inquiry. The volume is well illustrated."

Saturday Review—"Mr. Blanford's *Elementary Geography of India, Burma, and Ceylon* is a valuable addition to 'Macmillan's Geographical Series.' In method and arrangement it is a model of clearness and conciseness. The woodcuts are good, and the statistical information, admirably tabulated, is neither more nor less than is necessary."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

the Ganges and Jumna; the seat of the provincial government since 1857; also a place of Hindu pilgrimage. In the fort is a column bearing an inscribed edict of Asoka of the third century B.C. Bareilly (113,000), in Rohilkand, on the Rámganga, 96 miles above its confluence with the Ganges.

Other places of importance are—Meerut (99,500), the chief military cantonment of the province, on the Gangetic

FIG. 11.—THE TÁJ MEHÁL, AGRA.

doáb, 40 miles north-east of Delhi: Muttra (Mathura) (47,500), on the right bank of the Jumna between Delhi and Agra, an ancient Hindu city, the scene of Krishna's youthful adventures, and now the centre of the Vaishnava sect of Hindus; remarkable for the beauty of its Hindu architecture: Roorkee (11,000), the headquarters of the engineering staff of the Ganges canal, and the chief engineering school of India: Moradabad (67,000), in Rohilkand, well known for its niello brass ware: Aligarh (60,000), in the doab, north-east of Muttra, the seat of an institute founded by an enlightened Muhammadan gentleman, Syud Ahmed, for

Globe 8vo. Price 2s.

Geography of Europe

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS

BY

JAMES SIME, M.A.

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. Europe; II. Greece; III. Italy; IV. The Iberian Peninsula; V. France; VI. The British Isles; VII. Germany; VIII. Switzerland; IX. Austria-Hungary; X. The Low Countries; XI. Denmark; XII. Scandinavia; XIII. Russia; XIV. The Balkan Peninsula.

PRESS OPINIONS

University Correspondent—"Mr. Sime's book is worthy of its place in this admirable series. . . . The whole treatment is fresh and suggestive; in particular the stress laid on the peculiarities of the inland seas, and on the relation of race and language, and the classification of valleys as 'longitudinal' and 'transverse,' call for praise."

Schoolmaster—"With a good atlas before him the Geographical student will have great delight in reading this very 'readable' volume. Many excellent engravings of local scenery are scattered over its three hundred pages, and the book will be highly valued by every intelligent young person, as containing an excellent summary of necessary knowledge."

Scottish Geographical Magazine—"This is another volume in the series of geographical books edited by Dr. Archibald Geikie, and it resembles the others in its admirable method and its high aim. One of its most valuable features is a careful summary of the history of each country, with special reference to successive races and forms of government. The illustrations, which are specially prepared, are admirable."

Oxford Magazine—"Can be heartily recommended to any would-be student of Geography."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

hilly district descending from the Sierra Nevada. Past it flows the Jenil, and the neighbouring country is covered with olive-groves, fig-trees, and pomegranate-trees, and produces in lavish abundance the vine, the jasmine, and the myrtle. On the top of one of the two hills on which the greater part of Granada is built stands the famous Moorish palace, the **Alhambra** ("The Red," so called from the reddish hue of the walls by which it is surrounded).

FIG. 11.—THE ALHAMBRA.

Granada has also a splendid cathedral and a university. Its chief manufactures are silk and paper.

Passing westward from Cape Tarifa, the southernmost point of Andalusia, we come to **Cape Trafalgar**, a name famous in the naval history of England. CADIZ (pop. 57,100), representing the Phœnician Gades, is the oldest city in western Europe. It is strongly fortified, and is the chief centre of the export trade of Spain. Behind it is JEREZ, from which comes the wine called sherry, the word being a corruption of the name of the town. From a port

Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

Geography of Africa

BY

EDWARD HEAWOOD

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. General Sketch: Physical Features; II. Races of Man in Africa; III. Exploration; IV. Political Relations; V. North Africa; VI. The Sahara; VII. The Soudan; VIII. The Nile Region; IX. North-East Africa; X. East Africa; XI. The Zambesi Region; XII. South Africa; XIII. West Central Africa; XIV. African Islands. Summary. Index.

PRESS OPINIONS

Nature—"No book now in existence contains within such a small compass so much accurate information on the African continent as is given in Mr. Heawood's little volume. The book should be widely used in schools, and for this purpose the summary of the Geography of Africa will be found very serviceable. To everyone who wishes to possess a concise statement of the physical features, native inhabitants, history and political development of Africa, the volume can be confidently recommended."

Geographical Journal—"While promising to be of great utility as a school-book for the higher forms, it may also serve as a handy summary of the main features of African geography for general reference. . . . The importance of such manuals on the continents, written by specialists who have mastered all trustworthy sources of information, cannot be over-estimated."

Guardian—"The first successful attempt yet made to deal scientifically with the 'Dark Continent' as a whole. . . . Although his superstructure will doubtless be subsequently modified in detail as time and circumstances require, to Mr. Heawood will belong the honour of having levelled the ground and constructed the platform upon which future text-books upon the geography of Africa will be built."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

it receives from the west the important tributary, the Bahr-el-Ghazal, which brings in the combined waters of a wide extent of country to the west. It is the last permanent tributary from this direction. The last part of its course is swampy and choked with vegetation like the main river. After this the Nile makes a sudden bend

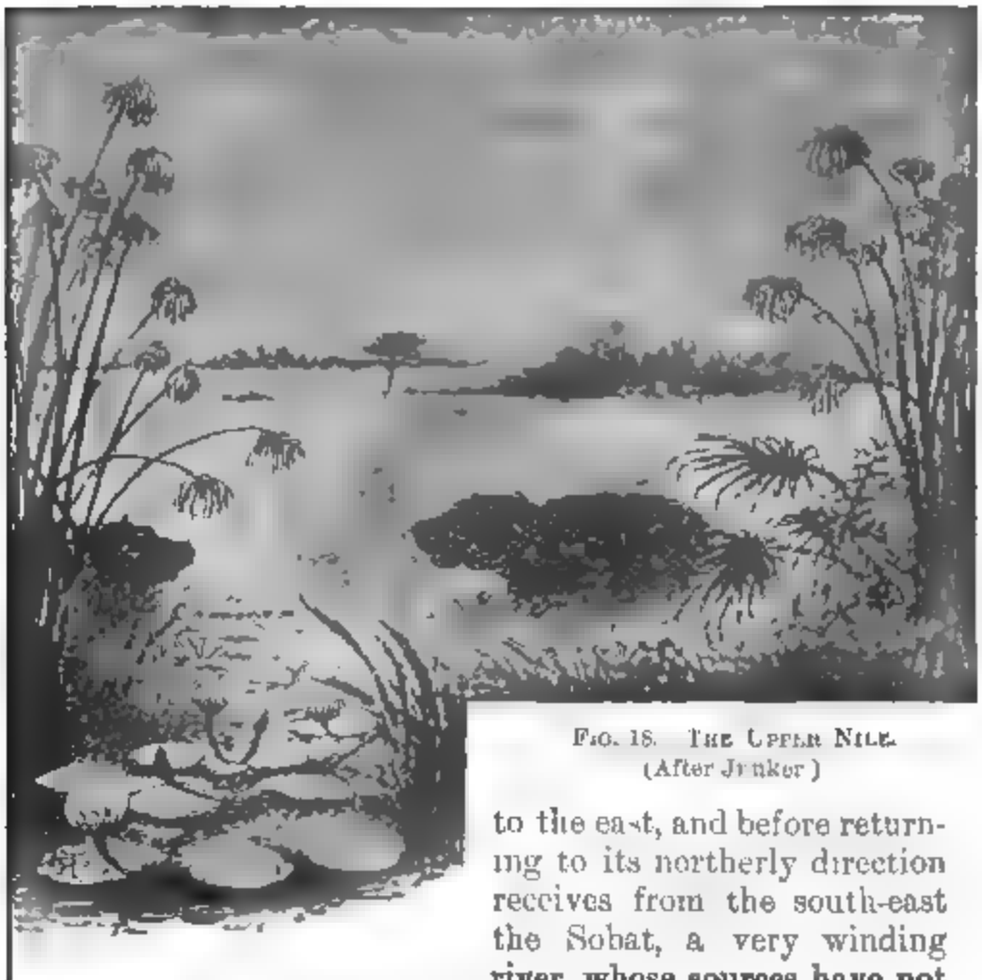


FIG. 18. THE UPPER NILE.
(After Junker.)

to the east, and before returning to its northerly direction receives from the south-east the Sobat, a very winding river, whose sources have not yet been explored. After passing 15° N. latitude, this southern branch of the Nile, known as the White River or Bahr-el-Abiad, is joined by the great eastern branch, the Bahr-el-Azrek or Blue River, and after 180 miles more by the Atbara, both having their sources in the highlands of Abyssinia. The Atbara is the last permanent stream which joins the Nile, which here begins to flow

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 2s.

Man and his Markets

A Course in Geography

BY

LIONEL W. LYDE, M.A.

EXAMINER IN GEOGRAPHY TO THE COLLEGE OF PRECEPTORS AND TO THE OXFORD LOCAL EXAMINATION BOARD; HEADMASTER OF THE ENGLISH DEPARTMENT IN GLASGOW ACADEMY; AUTHOR OF "MAN ON THE EARTH," ETC.

London

Macmillan and Co., Ltd.

New York: The Macmillan Co.

All rights reserved

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

THE much greater attention paid to Geography in recent years, especially in Germany and the United States, has attracted notice in this country; and parents are constantly and urgently demanding that their boys should have "a *good general* knowledge of Geography," such as will fit them for business. The time allotted to the subject in school is, however, still very small—in my own case, forty-five minutes a week with each class. Consequently, there must be from the outset a recognition of these limitations; and this involves an arbitrary selection of the matter to be taught, and every possible device for saving time.

In making this selection I have been guided by two considerations: that the matter *must* be at once valuable and interesting, and that it *must* be presented in such a way as to appeal primarily to the reason and the imagination.

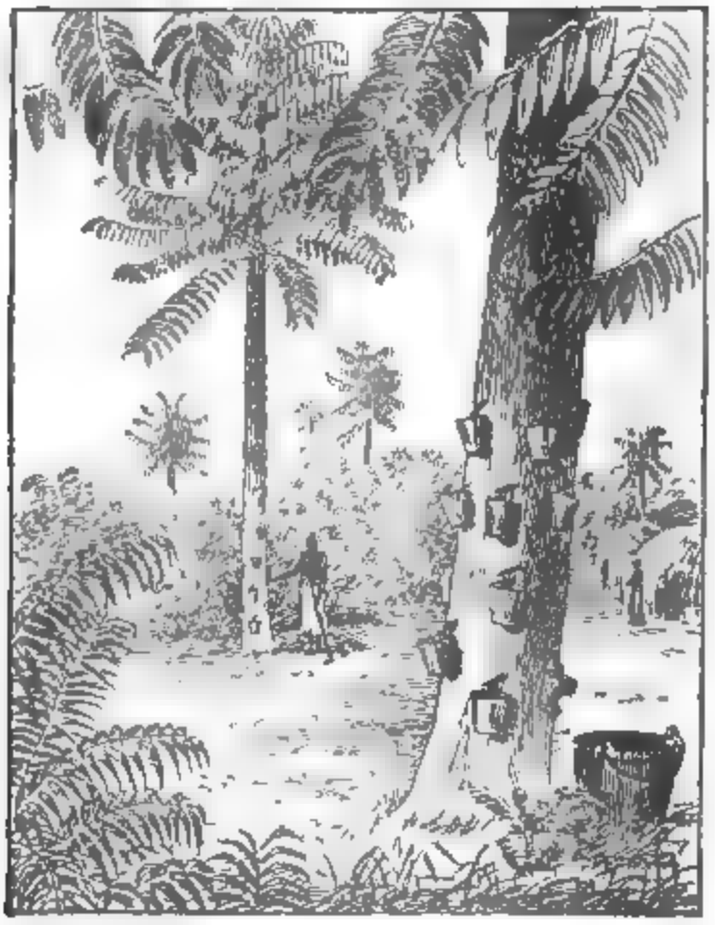
With regard to the saving of time, I found that the greatest waste of it was caused by the necessity for beginning afresh with every new country, and for repeating over and over again great principles, *e.g.* the reasons for the growth of towns. In other words, the boys could not make full use of physical and geological maps because they had not the necessary knowledge of principles. Practical experiment proved, however, that a whole term "wasted" on the great phenomena of the science and on the chief necessaries of life, was amply repaid when we came to deal with the earth piecemeal by continents and countries. And it is the result of this experiment with my own classes that is embodied in *Man on the Earth* and *Man and his Markets*

This substratum of knowledge enabled us to understand the atlas, to argue constantly by cause and effect, and to apply known conditions instantaneously to new cases. It also involved us in constant verification of facts, and in constant appeals to observation.

Of course, it is absolutely essential to do such work in close connection with the atlas; and, in view of this, care has been taken to mention very few places which will not be found even on the cheapest atlas; *e.g.* "The Satchel," or Keith-Johnston's "Sixpenny" A wall-map is certainly very useful, especially a really large *Mercator*; but I have come to the conclusion that the most satisfactory results are obtained when every member of every class has an atlas of his own. Then every place can be looked out by every one every time that it is mentioned; and, if this is done carefully and constantly, names and positions come to be remembered with great ease and accuracy.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Moreover, as the Andes run down the west coast, while the wet winds blow—except in the south of Chile—from the east, the **great rivers** flow from the eastern slope of the mountains towards the Atlantic, *i.e.* towards the commercial nations of the Old World. And the existence of two mountainous plateaux, that



COLLECTING RUBBER.

of Guiana in the north and that of Brazil in the east, divides the river system into three great basins—the Orinoco, the Amazon, and the Plate.

Between these three mountain systems, and along these three rivers, there are **three plains**—the llanos of the Orinoco, the selvas of the Amazon, and the pampas

i.e. in Flanders. It happens also that in the same district there is a remarkable absence in the soil of limesalts; and this makes the water of the Lys river peculiarly well adapted to the cleansing of flax, just as the water of the Maine (U.S.A.) rivers is to the manufacture of pulp and paper, or that of the Loire at St. Etienne to the tempering of iron, or that of the Trent at Burton to the brewing of beer. Consequently, the wealth of the Flemish peasant consists chiefly in flax; and, owing to the abundance of coal and iron in the neighbourhood between Tournai and Liège, Courtrai and other towns in the Lys valley have become as famous for fine linen as Brussels, Mechlin, and Bruges have for fine lace.

What has been said about the climate of Belgium is more or less true of **Holland**. The country is very low and very flat, and is exposed on the north, as well as on the west, to wet sea-winds. Consequently, the air is very damp, and the sky is continually clouded over; but there is no effective condensing medium to precipitate the moisture in rain or snow.

In such a climate, and on an alluvial soil, the agricultural products are sure to include rye, potatoes, and flax; and the demand for really good flax for the Belgian lace industry causes a single crop of it to be sometimes more valuable than the whole piece of land on which it was grown. But the most important product of all will be **grass**, for the low moist polders give splendid pasture for the production of milk; and dairy industries suit a country like Holland, which has very important colonies, *e.g.* in Java, Sumatra, Borneo, and Guiana, to attract its male population to commerce. The cheese is made chiefly west of the Zuider Zee, *e.g.* at Alkmaar, and Hoorn,

The Publishers will be pleased to forward Specimen Copies of the books marked * to Principals of Schools and others engaged in tuition

Prospectus and Price List with Specimen Pages

Thornton's Book-keeping

I am often being asked questions about my books:—which should I recommend for a class of beginners, which for certain examinations, which for a business man, in what order should they be studied, and so on. I hope that the following pages will supply answers to some of these questions, and give the kind of information and help that is wanted to intending purchasers. I shall always be pleased to reply to any special enquiries, and shall appreciate suggestions from those who have tested my methods of teaching Book-keeping.

LEAMINGTON COLLEGIATE SCHOOL. JOHN THORNTON.

CONTENTS

***Book-keeping for Elementary Schools.** Three Stages. Stage I. 9d.

***First Lessons in Book-keeping.** 2s. 6d.
Key to the above, oblong 4to. 10s. 6d.

***A Primer of Book-keeping.** 1s.
Key to the above, demy 8vo. 2s. 6d.

***Easy Exercises in Book-keeping.** 1s.

***Examination Papers in Book-keeping.** 9d.
Key to the above, demy 8vo. Sewed. 2s.

Students' Manual of Book-keeping. 7s. 6d.

Advanced Examination Papers in Book-keeping. 1s.
Key to the above, 8vo. Sewed. 2s. 6d.

Book-keeping for Business Men. 3s. 6d.

A B C Automatic Balancing Charts for the above. 1s.

***Manuscript Exercise Books:**
No. 1. For Junior Pupils. 9d. No. 2. Skeleton Ledger. 9d. No. 3. For working Test Exercises fully. 1s. 6d. No. 4. Including Journal Cash Book, Day Book, Invoice Book Ledger. 1s. 6d. No. 5. Condensed Edition, Nos. 1 to 4. 2s. No. 6. Journal only (small 4to.). 6d. No. 7. Exercise Books for the Primer. 1s. the set.

***A B C D Book-keeping Exercise Books:**
Book A, for ordinary Ledger Work (with £ s. d.) 3d. Book B, for Exercises in *Proving* without words, dates, shillings, or pence, 3d. Book C, for Journal, Cash Book, Day Book, or Invoice Book (with £ s. d.), 3d. Book D, for Exercises in *Proving* through the medium of Cash Book, Day Book, etc., 3d. The set, 1s.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Stage I., Sewed 9d.

Stages II. and III. in the Press

BOOK-KEEPING FOR ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS

IN THREE STAGES

BY

J. THORNTON

EXAMINER TO THE CENTRAL WELSH BOARD
AUTHOR OF "STUDENT'S MANUAL OF BOOK-KEEPING"
"PRIMER OF BOOK-KEEPING," ETC.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS.

LESSON I. Things and Persons; II. Transactions and Accounts; III. Why we keep Accounts; IV. Cash and Credit; V. Cash and Goods; VI. Personal Accounts; VII. How to make out a Personal Account; VIII. How to Balance a Personal Account; IX. Cash Account; X. How to Prove Cash Accounts; XI. Goods Account; XII. Double Entry—What it means; XIII. Debtor and Creditor; XIV. Trial Balance; XV. Double Entry not Double Trouble; XVI. Books of Original Entry; XVII. Sales Book and Purchases Book; XVIII. Posting; XIX. "Cash Book" and "Cash Account"; XX. Balancing the Cash Book; XXI. Practice in Entering and Posting; XXII. Practice in Proving; XXIII. Cash and Discount; XXIV. Cash Book with Bank Columns; XXV. Gross Profit; XXVI. Profit and Loss Account; XXVII. Capital Account; XXVIII. Proving Capital Account; XXIX. Proving by Trial Balance; XXX. Proving by Final Balance Sheet.

WHY WE KEEP ACCOUNTS.

getting confused, so to make it quite clear you put it down on paper for him to look at.

BALANCE SHEET.

JULY 1ST, 1899.

LIABILITIES.		*ASSETS.*	
Debts Payable, - -	£50 0 0	Cash in Hand, - -	£10 0 0
NET CAPITAL, - -	560 0 0	,, Bank, - -	50 0 0
		Goods in Stock, -	350 0 0
		Debts Receivable, -	200 0 0
	£610 0 0		£610 0 0

Then you explain that the word **Assets** means all your property of every description, that **Liabilities** are Debts owing by you, and that the **difference** between your Assets and Liabilities constitutes your **Net Capital**. "Well, my son, I see you have done well. You have lived out of the business, and are now worth £60 more than when I started you. That shows what perseverance and energy will do."

"Something else too, father, something I should never have got on without."

"Pray, what is that?

"Good **Bookkeeping**, which I learnt at School, where they taught me how to "**Prove my Books.**"

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the difference between **Debts Payable** and **Debts Receivable**?
2. How can I find the total of my **Debts Receivable** and **Debts Payable**?
3. Give a careful explanation of the difference between **Cash** and **Capital**.
4. Name any **Assets** you can think of not mentioned in the Lesson.
5. What are **Liabilities**?
6. What is the **difference** between your **Assets** and your **Liabilities** called?

Thirteenth Edition, crown 8vo with two folded diagrams.
Price 2s. 6d.

First Lessons in Book-keeping.

This is the simplest of all the books I have written on the subject, and I believe the simplest that has yet appeared. It is designed to make the Theory of Double Entry simple enough for children to understand it. And yet I have found that many candidates for the Cambridge and College of Preceptors' Examinations, prepared by this book only (simple as it is), have obtained the mark of distinction. It may therefore be considered as amply sufficient for ordinary school work.

I recommend the use of MS. Exercise Books, Nos. 1 to 3 (see page 624 with the above text-book, except in the case of those pupils who are able to make exceptionally rapid progress, and find it unnecessary to work out all the Exercises For these I recommend No. 5 (see page 624.)

NOTICES AND OPINIONS.

W. G. Rushbrooke, Esq., LL.M. (City of London School).—"I am much taken with it. It has pleased all who have seen it here, and Dr. Abbott is expecting to introduce it next term."

The late Sir Charles Reed, M.P. (Chairman London School Board).—"Your book deserves the success I hope it may secure."

Rev. A. R. Vardy, M.A. (Birmingham).—"Very carefully adapted to the capacity of the average boy, and throughout thoroughly practical."

W. H. Johnson, Esq., M.A. (Cambridge).—"A most capital book for simplicity and clearness."

A. Browning, Esq., M.A. (Bath).—"Please send fifty copies of your Exercise Book No. 4. We have been using ——'s Book-keeping, but intend to change."

J. B. Allen, Esq., M.A. (Cambridge).—"The great point which has struck me from the first with regard to your system is, that you seem to have succeeded in treating the art in a manner which gives to it an educational value. Under your system a boy must necessarily learn to think and to know the reason for every step, and under these circumstances the study fulfils the conditions which should regulate the introduction into our schools of all subjects of instruction. And the art of keeping accounts is so unspeakably valuable in after life, that once a way can be shown by which a boy can acquire the knowledge and develop his faculties at the same time, the last objection which can possibly be urged against its universal adoption in the school curriculum must disappear."

Scholastic World.—"It would be impossible to find a more simple or more clearly arranged book on this difficult and most important subject than the one before us. The author avoids the error of attempting to do too much by dealing with too complicated accounts He takes a number of very short accounts to illustrate and fix in the minds of pupils the elementary principles of the subject, and his explanations are so lucid, and his illustrative diagrams so striking, that anyone using this book, either with a teacher's guidance or otherwise, ought to have a clear and practical knowledge of the subject."

School Board Chronicle.—"As the author says, this book is written for children, and simplicity is its predominant characteristic. There are plenty of test exercises, and there are large folded diagrams 'Showing how to prove the books,' and presenting a 'synoptical view of the various accounts contained in the ledger.' Nothing can exceed the simplicity of the explanations and demonstrations."

Educational Times.—"The picture tells its own story, and suggests what Mr. Thornton calls a 'mental photograph,' which at once makes clear the principle. We have much pleasure in recommending this book."

Journal of Education.—"For teaching boys the principles of Book-keeping, nothing could be better than this little volume. The rules are short, and printed in bold type, the explanations so clear that even young boys cannot fail to understand them; whilst the *Mental Photographs* or *Memory Pictures* present the most important facts in an original and graphic method."

Brighton Gazette.—"We can well recommend this volume as the simplest and most readily understood exposé of book-keeping it has ever been our lot to meet. Mr. Thornton may be styled the Abecedarian of book-keeping, for he puts the very elements of the system in a form which a child could scarcely fail to understand. Mr. Thornton's instructions are made still more lucid by simple diagrams and progressive exercises, leading from the commencement of book-keeping to the all-important step of *Proving the Books*."

Literary World.—"No one could give attention to these pages and ever again become confused as to the difference between Real, Personal, and Nominal Accounts, or as to which side should receive the particular entry. Mr. Thornton is engaged himself in teaching, as the headmaster of a school. He knows the difficulties, therefore, of young minds, and has met them."

Sussex Daily News.—"This is one of the very best small books on book-keeping that have come under our notice. It gives in a very few pages the clearest information upon the essential principles which underlie the most complicated systems of accounts. By the use of a few simple diagrams, by condescending not to take anything for granted, by thoroughly eliminating everything not directly essential to the working out of the matter immediately in hand, and by putting every technical term into popular language, the author has produced a book which is really a model of clearness."

Irish Educational Journal.—"This is without doubt a novelty in book-keeping. We do not mean that new principles are introduced, or new theories advanced, but the usual routine has been departed from in the design of the work. The idea before the writer was to make book-keeping sufficiently plain to be understood by children. Though this may appear an easy matter, it is attended with no inconsiderable difficulty. Without going through the practical part of the business, it is almost impossible to make children familiar with the mode of making balances and computing gains and losses. But, we believe, if this can be accomplished in any treatise, Mr. Thornton has succeeded in discovering the secret."

NOTICES—(*continued*).

Birmingham Daily Gazette.—"Mr. Thornton's volume is a priceless boon. It is simplicity and lucidity carried to perfection. Every process is carefully explained and illustrated by diagrams and specimen ledgers and journals, and Mr. Thornton never leaves a subject without having made the regulating principle most thoroughly comprehensible. The veriest tyro may safely enter on the study of this book with the conviction that perseverance alone is needed to ensure a mastery of the art. Beyond a doubt this volume is the best on book-keeping lately published."

School Magazine.—"A really excellent little work. The author seems to have a thorough grasp of his subject, and to possess the enviable attainment of being able to put his information in the most intelligible form."

Oblong 4to., cloth. 10*s.* 6*d.*

A Key to First Lessons in Book-keeping.

This book contains all the exercises in First Lessons fully worked out, with answers to the questions at the end of each Test exercise, and occasional hints for the use of teachers. It is not intended to be put into the hands of pupils, but I can easily understand that busy masters find it a great boon. I do myself.

Third Edition. 8vo., sewed. Price 9*d.*

Examination Papers in Book-keeping.

Original and Select. By J. THORNTON. With Copious Notes, written to help pupils to think for *themselves.* **9d.**

I have found book specially useful in preparing for the Examination of the College of Perceptors. I have written the notes to make the rough places plain and to meet every real or supposed difficulty either by a question, a hint, a suggestion, or a reference to the text-book. It is a great help to masters to be able to say to boys whose faces betray that they have got hopelessly stuck, "Have you looked at your Notes?" Each paper is printed on the left-hand page and the notes on the corresponding right-hand page, so that if the boy will only look at them ——!

A great many teachers have written to me, to say how useful they have found this little book.

I recommend MS. Exercise Books No. 6 and No. 1, or No. 6 and No. 3, or No. 4 only, for use with these Examination Papers. (*See page* 624.)

Demy 8vo., sewed. Price 2*s.*

A Key to Examination Papers in Book-keeping.

did not think *losses* were so "interesting" as *gains;* and who did not therefore "interest" themselves sufficiently about them, to prevent their running away with all the gains! How vexatious it must be for a man who is doing a good trade, quite enough perhaps to get a very comfortable living out of it, to find at the end of the year, that the greater portion of his "profits" are being ***eaten up*** (so to speak) by "losses."

Let us see then how profits are sometimes eaten up. If you have forgotten about the Irish Ponies on page 38, please to turn back and refresh your memory. You there saw at work three of the largest of those sharks that have such a keen appetite for "gains." Their names are—

1. Trade Expenses.
2. Bad Debts.
3. Discounts.

I do not mean to say that these are the only three, but they are the most common, and will be enough for the present to think of. Of these the *first* is the largest, and can the most easily be reduced.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

Third edition. 16mo. Price 1s.

A Primer of Book-keeping.

I have explained the object and scope of this little book in the preface, which I reproduce below. The *Primer of Book-keeping* has been widely used and greatly appreciated, and, in the edition just issued, I have attempted to render it still more useful, by introducing some additional exercises, and still further simplifying the text in one or two places.

PREFACE TO THE PRIMER.

The author's *First Lessons in Book-keeping* having been very widely adopted in high-class schools and colleges, it is thought that a cheaper series on the same plan would be welcome in many schools where economy has to be considered.

This *Primer of Book-keeping* is not a mere abridgment of *First Lessons*. It has been almost entirely re-written, and contains several new features.

Its object is to assist and encourage the intelligent *study* of the *principles* of account-keeping.

The *practice* of the *art* is best learnt afterwards. The study of the Theory should be taught at school, and taught to every boy and girl; not only on account of its intrinsic importance, but because, if handled properly, it can be, and ought to be, an instrument of no mean educational value

This it could never become by the old method of teaching the subject, which was characterized mainly by four glaring faults:

(1) It *began* wrong—taking Day Book and Invoice Book first, and Ledger last. De Morgan vigorously hits this blot: "The only book that need be explained," says he, "is the Ledger. The other books have nothing to do with the main principle."

(2) It laboured with intense assiduity to guide the pupil into well prepared RUTS. Make your entries thus—and thus—and thus, and on no account deviate.

(3) It carefully *obscured* the principle by a wholly needless multiplicity of details.

(4) A KEY was usually incorporated with the text-book; the pupil being pathetically asked not to refer to it unnecessarily.

This Primer avoids these errors in the following manner:—

(1) The *first* half of the book deals with the Ledger, and how to prove it.

(2) Almost every account is shown in a variety of forms and the exercises are worked out in different ways, in order to throw the pupil back on himself at every turn.

(3) Technical phrases are avoided as much as possible. Shillings and pence, folios, and even dates are banished from very many of the exercises.

(4) Little progress will be made by the pupil until he understands how to find out and correct his own mistakes. A chapter is therefore given on Error Hunting—a matter that need not be considered dry and uninteresting if properly approached.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS

The Leeds Mercury says: "Clearness and common sense alike distinguish Mr. Thornton's useful little *Primer of Book-keeping*. The object of the volume is to help boys at school to grasp intelligently the theory of the art, so that when in the business of after life they are confronted by its practice they may experience no real difficulty. The first half of the book deals with the ledger and how to prove it, and the exercises which follow are worked out in a variety of forms so as to throw the pupil on his own resources whenever that can be fairly done. Technical phrases, we are glad to see, are avoided as far as possible, and the exercises are, of course, carefully graduated."

The **Educational News** says: "The little book before us is more an explanatory manual than a formal text-book; and old, as well as young, readers will be able to pick up many useful practical hints from its perusal."

The **Schoolmaster** says: "This *Primer of Book-keeping* is a work that will please many who are engaged in teaching this valuable subject. It is interesting from its clear, graphic description of book-keeping, and all 'who are not infants or lunatics' ought to come away from the book far better acquainted with the art than when they first went to it. . . . The 'Key' is a useful aid to the exercises in the Primer."

The **Practical Teacher** says: "This *Primer of Book-keeping* is not a whit behind any of its predecessors. It is written mostly in the first person singular, and has almost the value of *vivâ voce* lessons. Its purpose is to enable pupils to understand the principles of book-keeping. The method adopted in the book is analytic instead of synthetic. . . . As every child who leaves school ought to know something of accounts a book of theory and practice is needed, and we have not yet met with a little book which will serve the purpose better than this shilling Primer."

The **Manchester Guardian** says: "This excellent little book is admirably adapted for the purpose. The methods of recording accounts are very clearly and simply explained, and frequent exercises are prescribed, these being sometimes supplemented by questions which the pupil may put to himself with a view to ascertain how far he has grasped the instruction previously given."

The **Glasgow Herald** says: "This *Primer of Book-keeping* is a useful addition to the well-known Primer Series of this firm by Mr. J. Thornton, an author already recognized as an authoritative exponent of the subject. The present manual, which is of about equal compass with the other primers, contains an admirably simple statement of the principles of account-keeping. There is a directness and lucidity in the language employed which persons of ordinary understanding and application can hardly fail to comprehend."

Education says: "It puts the essentials in the clearest way."

The **Cape Argus** says: "The book is a model of clearness."

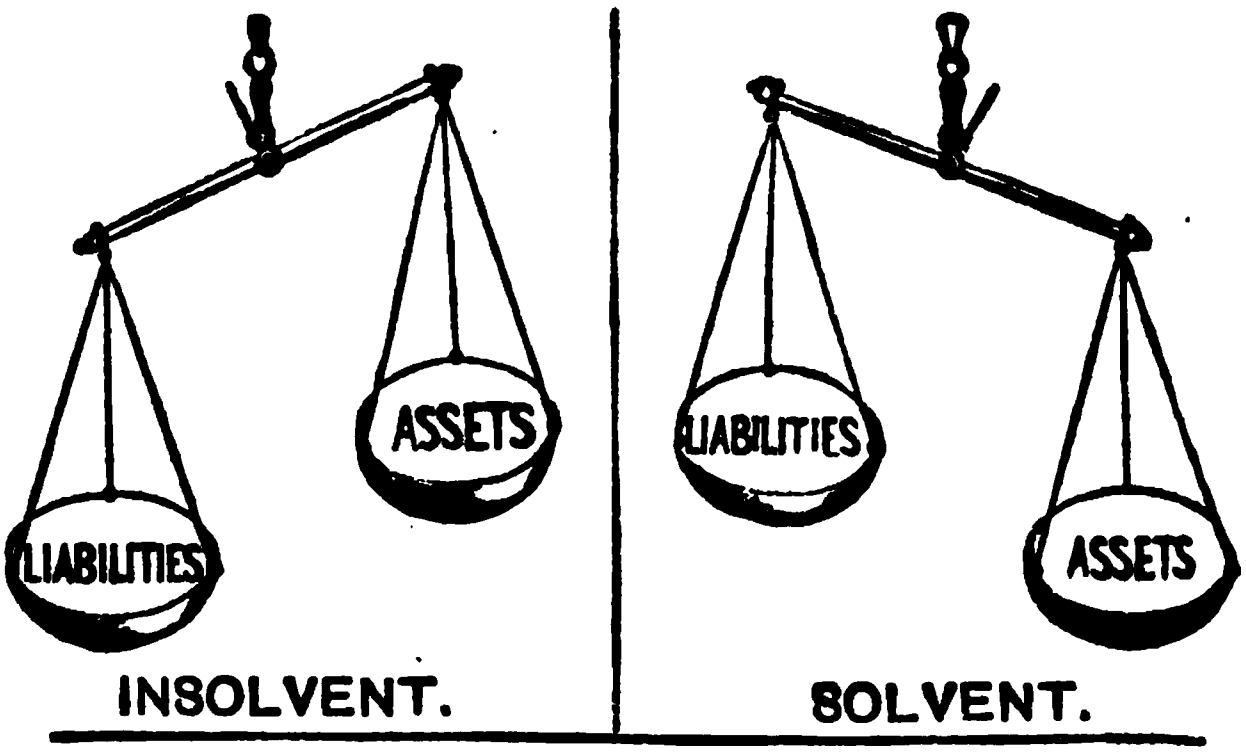
The Manuscript Exercise-books for the Primer are now published by Messrs Macmillan & Co. Price 1s., *the set.* *See page* 624.)

A statement made out in this way is called a Balance Sheet.

[10] When a man is NOT in a position to be able to pay all his debts (even though he sold all his goods and collected all the money owed to him to enable him to do so), then he is said to be "*Insolvent.*" You may say then—

(1) *I am* "SOLVENT" *when my* "*Assets*" *exceed my* "*Liabilities.*"

(2) *I am* "INSOLVENT" *when my* "*Liabilities*" *exceed my* "*Assets.*"



[11] By looking at a Balance Sheet I can not only see whether I am Solvent or Insolvent, I can also find an answer to some other very important questions. It would seem then that the Balance Sheet is the store-house of much of that Useful Information which it is the very aim of good Book-keeping to supply. It is not only that It is more. It is the "Alpha and Omega" (the beginning and the end) of Book-keeping. For the *first* thing to do on taking a Business, and the *last* thing before

A Key to the Primer of Book-keeping.

Crown 8vo., cloth. Price 2s. 6d.

This Key contains answers to all the exercises, most of them being *fully worked*. These are arranged in such a way as to facilitate reference to any particular exercise that may be wanted.

***Uniform with the Primer.* 18mo. Price 1s.**

Easy Exercises in Book-keeping. By J. Thornton.

[*For specimen see page* 624.)

This book, though intended primarily as a companion and supplement to the Primer, can be used with any good text-book on the subject. It has nine distinctive features:—(1) The exercises are all *short* (most exercises in Book-keeping are too long). (2) They are carefully *graduated* on a different plan to any the author has yet seen. (3) They are *classified* under distinct heads, so that one can find in a moment an exercise on any desired branch of the subject. (4) *Questions* are given on each exercise, not merely formal ones, but framed so as to set the wits to work. (5) There are also explanatory *notes*, not too many and not too lavish of information, but suggestive and helpful. (6) The exercises can be worked either with or *without shillings and pence*, answers being given for both ways of working. (7) *An exercise to a page*—throughout the book. (8) The number of the page and the number of the exercise *correspond*. (9) Answers are given to all the exercises, and are printed on perforated pages at the end of the book.

This book of *Easy Exercises* is a great favourite of my own. I use it in all my elementary classes, and find it very useful for mid-term examination and revision purposes. One glance at the table of contents, and the several divisions of a class may be immediately set to work (useful work) by the mere announcement of the numbers. Quite recently I prepared a class of seven for the Cambridge Junior Locals largely by the aid of this book. [They had been nourished on First Lessons.] Five of them gained the mark of distinction, one of these being placed First in the list.

I have not thought it necessary to issue a Key, as *Answers* are given pretty fully at the end of the book.

For Manuscript Exercise books I recommend the use of any of those numbered* 1, 2, 3 *and* 6 (*see page* 624.) *I find the occasional substitution of loose sheets of paper an advantage

Practical Teacher.—"These Exercises are eminently practical. . . . The common-sense views, the short, crisp sentences in which directions are given, the genial manner in which difficulties are explained, the unconventional illustrations, bespeak the attention of the learner, and prove the author to be a master of his subject, a teacher full of resource and endowed with the *bonhomie* of a happy enthusiast."

Notes.

This Exercise is to be worked out like the last one. The first entry is not a "Transaction" at all. If you do not remember where to enter it look at the last Exercise. Remember that each Transaction goes in *two* different Accounts, and on *opposite* sides, or you will have all your work for nothing. You will never Prove!

Exercise 62.

Enter the following Transactions in Skeleton Ledger. Then balance and "Prove," *as in the preceding Exercise, taking Value of Goods on hand at the end of the month at* £170.

1890.			£
Jan.	1.	Began business with . . .	600
	5.	Bought Goods for Cash . .	350
	10.	Sold Goods to J. Smith . .	120
	15.	„ „ to J. Brown . .	50
	20.	„ „ for Cash . . .	60
	25.	Received of Mr. Smith . .	100
	30.	Paid Trade Expenses . . (Debit Profit and Loss) .	25

Questions.

1. What was I worth at the beginning of the month?
2. What was I worth at the end of the month?
3. What is Gross Profit?
4. How much Gross Profit did I make in January?
5. How much *Net* Profit?
6. Could Net Profit possibly be equal to Gross Profit? If so, explain how?

Now ready, crown 8vo, 519 pp., with diagrams and folded chart.
Price *7s. 6d.*

A Manual of Book-keeping for the use of Students

(*For Specimen of Diagrams see page 625 of this List.*)

This is an advanced and comprehensive text-book. It is written for those who intend to study the subject, either for examination or commercial purposes. I am sorry that its publication has been so long delayed, but being anxious to omit no point of importance, I found its preparation took more time than I had anticipated. Part I. consists of eight lessons on the Laws and Principles of Book-keeping; part II. of twelve lessons on the application of these laws. The lesson on "Cash" discusses the principle of the various forms of cash books, with numerous examples. An appendix to this lesson gives a brief account of the Bank of England. The lesson on "Bills" is full of examples, and an appendix to this lesson treats of the Foreign Exchanges. There are lessons on Company Book-keeping, Tabular Book-keeping and Government Book-keeping, and there are nearly one hundred exercises, some original, and others selected from the papers of the Society of Arts and other examining bodies. Incorporated with the index is a glossary of such technical terms as are not explained in the text. Answers to the exercises are printed at the end of the book.

Any of the MS. Exercise Books, Nos. 2, 3, 4, *or* 6, *would be suitable for use with the Manual.* (*See page* 624.)

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS

Nature.—"Is the clearest exposition of the principles and practice of book-keeping that we have yet seen, and the most original in design."

Guardian.—"Most complete and lucid treatise on a subject which is but too often imperfectly understood."

Manchester City News.—"The completest manual on the subject of book-keeping that we have seen."

Aberdeen Free Press.—"The work is fitted to take its place as a standard manual, and may be expected to come into general use as such."

Manchester Courier.—"We have seldom met with a more instructive or profound treatise on advanced book-keeping than this manual by Mr. Thornton."

Dundee Advertiser.—"The manual is intended for advanced students, to whom we can confidently recommend it."

Educational Review.—"An unusual feature in books on this subject is the author's extreme lucidity of style."

Bookman.—"This will probably soon take its place as the standard text-book on the subject. The theory has never been so intelligently explained nor the practice so clearly illustrated."

Banker's Magazine.—"We heartily commend Mr. Thornton's work."

8vo. 1*s.* KEY, 2*s.* 6*d.*

Advanced Examination Papers in Book-keeping

Schoolmaster.—"These papers are the actual questions set to students by the Society of Arts, University of Cambridge, London Chamber of Commerce, the College of Preceptors, Institute of Bankers, and other kindred bodies. Mr. Thornton, a well-known authority on the subject, has appended useful notes and hints for the help of the examinee in his preparation for the ordeal. Teachers of book-keeping will find a valuable aid to their class-teaching in this little book."

Oxford Magazine.—"This pamphlet contains papers recently set in the Oxford and Cambridge Locals and other Examinations, and useful notes are appended by the compiler, of whose *Manual of Book-keeping* we expressed a high opinion some time ago."

Glasgow Herald.—"A valuable aid to the higher teaching of this subject."

Leeds Mercury.—"Appear to be of a very practical character, embracing almost every department. The notes will be found very helpful to the student, enabling him to overcome many difficulties."

Manuscript Exercise Books

[*Specimens gratis to Head Masters.*]

BOOK-KEEPING EXERCISE BOOK No. 1. Price 9*d.*

This book is specially prepared for working out the Exercises on Lessons I. to IX. in "First Lessons." It contains general directions, special instructions to junior pupils, and a page of examples. A feature of the new edition is that *each page* contains words of caution and advice for the guidance of beginners.

BOOK-KEEPING EXERCISE BOOK No. 2. Price 9*d*.

This is my well-known "Skeleton Ledger." I originally prepared it for working out the Test Exercises in "First Lessons." It is, however, equally useful for any short exercises of this kind. By its means a pupil can take an ordinary Examination paper (such as that of the College of Preceptors), open the books, enter, balance, and prove, in half an hour. Schoolmasters who cannot find time for Book-keeping should use this book. The present edition is arranged on an improved method, and contains instructions *on each page*.

BOOK-KEEPING EXERCISE BOOK No. 3. Price 1*s*. 6*d*.

This book is designed to show, in a clear and unmistakable manner, *How to Prove the Books*. It consists of a series of Ledgers, so arranged that the whole of the work, from the first balance sheet to the last, can be seen at one view. This plan not only saves trouble in turning over, but also gives to junior pupils a clearer and more emphatic idea of the co-relation of the various accounts and balance sheets. A pupil who obtained first place in all England writes:—"It is your No. 3 Exercise Book that first enabled me to understand the subject." The book contains instructions and questions *on each page*. It may be used for any short exercises, such as the Test Exercises in "First Lessons"

BOOK-KEEPING EXERCISE BOOK No. 4. Price 1*s*. 6*d*.

This book was specially prepared for working out Exercises on Lessons XIII. and XIV. in "First Lessons." These exercises give the transactions of a merchant for twelve months, the special feature of the exercise being that the books have to be balanced and proved every month. The book contains Journal, Cash Book, Day Book, Invoice Book and Ledger; all ruled in the ordinary pattern, and it can therefore be used for any exercises in any of my publications where the above books are required. The new edition contains hints and cautions *on each page*, as well as special instructions at the beginning.

BOOK-KEEPING EXERCISE BOOK No. 5. Price 2*s*.

This book has been prepared for the use of those who are able to make *rapid progress* in the study of Book-keeping, and who find the Author's "First Lessons" sufficiently simple to be easily mastered by working only two or three Exercises on each Lesson. It is a condensation of Nos. 1, 2, 3 and 4.

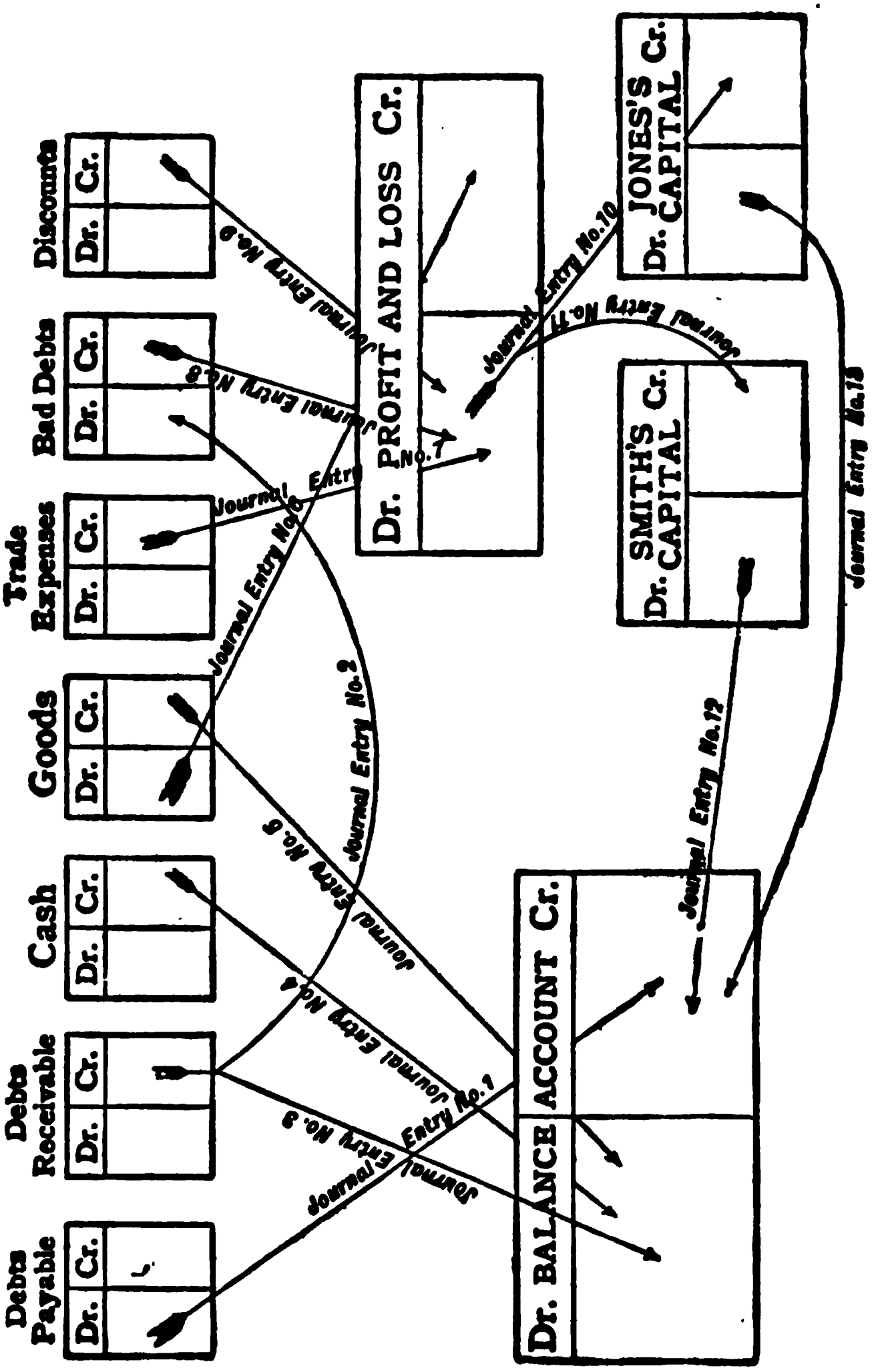
BOOK-KEEPING EXERCISE BOOK No. 6. Price 6*d*.

This book is ruled in the ordinary journal pattern, and can be used with any of my text-books. It can easily be adapted for use as Cash book, Day book, and Invoice book; it contains rules for journalizing *on each page*.

EXERCISE BOOKS FOR USE WITH THE PRIMER. Price 1*s*.

This set of exercise books is specially prepared for working out the exercise in the *Primer of Book-keeping*. A new edition, now ready, has eight extra pages, the journal being ruled in the ordinary manner Special directions are printed on the inside of the wrapper.

VIII.—PRINCIPLE OF FINAL BALANCE.



Price 1s. *the Set.*

Thornton's A B C D

Series of Book-keeping Exercise Books

BOOK A.—For Ordinary Ledger work (with £ s. d.) - - Price 3d.

BOOK B.—For Exercises in "PROVING," without Words, Dates, Shillings or Pence (One Exercise on each page) - ,, 3d.

BOOK C.—For Journal, Cash Book, Day Book, or Invoice Book (with £ s. d.) - - - - - - - - ,, 3d.

BOOK D.—For Exercises in "PROVING," through the Medium of Cash Book, Day Book, etc. (One Exercise on each opening) - - - - - - - - ,, 3d.

The Set, 1s.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

626

Directions to Junior Pupils

1.—Write clearly and carefully.

2.—Make your headings at least twice as large as the rest of your work.

3.—Make each entry on one line.

4.—Never let your words run into the pounds column or even touch the double red line. You may avoid this in three ways :—

(1) By writing smaller.
(2) By contracting some words.
(3) By putting the last word just above or below the line.

5.—Let your figures be *very distinct*, so that there can be no *possible* mistake about what you intend each one of them for.

6.—Set Units exactly under units.
Tens exactly under tens.
Hundreds exactly under hundreds.

7.—Let the tens figure of your pounds always stand in the *middle* of the pounds column.

8.—Let the units, tens, and hundreds be quite *apart* from each other. Never join them.

9.—Notice well the ruling in the examples given. Let the lines that you rule be thin and perfectly straight—double lines being close together. Hold your ruler steadily, and rule very lightly and rather quickly.

10.—Do not forget that the "balance" of every Dr. and Cr. account must be carried down (or away).

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

BOOK-KEEPING FOR BUSINESS MEN

BY

J. THORNTON

AUTHOR OF "STUDENTS' MANUAL OF BOOKKEEPING," ETC.

AND

S. W. THORNTON

"The bearing lies in the application."—*Captain Cuttle*

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PREFACE

THE principles of good Book-keeping are extremely simple, though their application is often very far from being so.

I have tried in this book to explain both the principles and their application, with sufficient clearness and fulness to enable the young trader to construct, keep, and balance a set of account books suited to his own business.

The chief defects of many manuals of this kind seem to be (1) the paucity and cloudiness of the explanatory matter and (2) the want of elasticity of the "model system" set forth as an example.

I hope I have succeeded in avoiding both these defects. My plan has been to take the reader into partnership, insisting that he shall understand what he is about from start to finish.

The first four chapters of the book explain the principles and advantages of Double Entry. Then follows a discussion of the question, What business shall we choose? Having settled this point, Reader and Thornton go into partnership, and open a set of books. The transactions which follow are planned to show how to meet bookkeeping difficulties of all kinds.

The set of account books in which these transactions are recorded is so far from being regarded as a model set, that alternative methods are suggested at every step, and set forth at length in the appendix.

A Trial Balance is taken at the end of every week, both members of the firm assisting in the work. A full and final balance is struck at the end of the month, the result being readily arrived at and clearly set forth by the use of the ABC Automatic Balancing Chart.

It is hoped that the partnership thus begun may be made permanent by the regular use of these charts.[1]

In the preparation of this guide, and more particularly in the arrangement of the transactions and construction of the books of Reader and Thornton, I have gladly availed myself of the assistance of my son, Mr. S. W. Thornton, without whose help the pressure of other work would I fear have led to the indefinite postponement of its publication.

J. THORNTON.

LEAMINGTON COLLEGIATE SCHOOL.

[1] The Automatic Balancing Charts may be obtained from any bookseller through the publishers of this handbook.

CONTENTS

1. Accuracy; 2. Economy of Labour; 3. Clearness of Arrangement; 4. Utility and Certainty; 5. What Business? 6. Taking a Partner; 7. Facts and Figures; 8. Opening the Books; 9. Transactions of Reader and Thornton; 10. Books of Reader and Thornton; 11. Proving the Books. Appendix. Alternative Methods.

PRICE ONE SHILLING THE SET

A B C
Automatic Balancing Charts

ARRANGED BY

J. THORNTON

AS A SUPPLEMENT TO

BOOK-KEEPING FOR BUSINESS MEN.

These Charts were prepared some years ago to assist business men in the periodical balancing of their books, and are now issued in an improved form.

They consist of a series of three large charts distinguished as Chart A, Chart B, and Chart C. Each entry on each chart is clearly numbered, and instructions are printed on the very spot where they are needed to show how the amount is to be obtained. A small index hand points to the blank space left for the figures, so that it is almost impossible for mistakes to be made.

The Charts are called *Automatic*, because if each entry is faithfully filled out in numerical order they will Balance and Prove themselves.

Examples and full explanations are given in Thornton's Book-keeping for Business Men.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Now Ready. 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

A

Text-Book of Book-Keeping

BY

FRANK IRESON, B.A.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

The right of translation and reproduction is reserved

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

THE first half of this treatise has been planned expressly for beginners, at school and elsewhere. Part I., in particular, is entirely elementary: it includes an explanation of the principles of debiting and crediting, as applied to transactions in which neither profit nor loss is involved. In Part II., the transactions described are those in which profits and losses most commonly arise. Although the examples here selected are simple in character, they are nevertheless representative of the majority of transactions occurring in ordinary business. In these examples the student is taken step by step through the early stages of his work, the various points being presented in the order most convenient for their explanation.

The second half of this treatise deals with accountancy of medium difficulty. Part III. comprises transactions, and methods of account-keeping, not so simple as those which preceded it. Part IV. describes the Cash Book and other subsidiary books.

SET A. *Price* 10*d.*

MACMILLAN'S

BOOK-KEEPING EXERCISE BOOKS

JOURNAL, LEDGER

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

This set of Exercise Books has been prepared expressly for the use of beginners. It comprises a Ledger, together with one subsidiary book, i.e. Journal. Each one of them should be marked on the outside, in the space left for the purpose, with the name of the person or firm whose transactions are to be entered in it.

In the Journal the primary entry of each transaction must first be made. Then, using the Journal as a guide, the Ledger must be posted up.

It is not imperative to use the Ledger Index, but it is desirable to follow the commercial practice of indexing each account opened.

The Journal "narrations" should be written out in full, and the "particulars" of each transaction should be inserted in the proper columns of the Ledger, in all cases where the entry would not be intelligible without them. If pressed for time, in answering a long examination paper, the student may, however, be compelled to omit these important details.

The Trial Balance before Closing, and the List of Balances after Closing, are in practice made out on loose sheets of paper, but in order to render this set of Exercise Books as compact and portable as possible, the necessary forms are here included at the end of the Journal. A form for the Balance Sheet will be found on the back of the Ledger.

SET B. *Price* 1s.

MACMILLAN'S
BOOK-KEEPING EXERCISE BOOKS

CASH BOOK, JOURNAL, LEDGER

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

These Exercise Books have been arranged so that the student, in using them, may be as nearly as possible under the same conditions as he would be in English commercial practice. They are, in fact, a "pocket edition" of those employed in actual Book-keeping, and can perfectly well be used for keeping the accounts of a small private business, such as that of an estate, a trust, or an executorship.

The set comprises a Ledger, together with two subsidiary books, *i.e.* Cash Book and Journal. Each one of them should be marked on the outside, in the space left for the purpose, with the name of the person or firm whose transactions are to be entered in it.

All Bank and Office Cash transactions, with the Discount items relating thereto, are entered direct into the Cash Book, and thence posted into the Ledger.

Transactions which do not involve any cash receipts or payments are first entered in the Journal, and thence posted into the Ledger. All purchases and sales can be treated in the same way; they are so few in number, in an exercise of the length usually set, that there is no object (unless by special direction of the examiner) in having a separate Purchase Book and Sale Book for their primary entry. The Journal can also be used for bill transactions, thus obviating the necessity for separate Bill Books.

It is not imperative to use the Ledger Index, but it is desirable to follow the commercial practice of indexing each account opened.

The Journal "narrations" should be written out in full, and the "particulars" of each transaction should be inserted in the proper columns of the Cash Book and Ledger, in all cases where the entry would not be intelligible withou them. If pressed for time, in answering a long examination paper, the student, may, however, be compelled to omit these important details.

The Trial Balance before Closing, and the List of Balances after Closing, are in practice made out on loose sheets of paper, but, in order to render this set of Exercise Books as compact and portable as possible, the necessary forms are here included at the end of the Journal. A form for the Balance Sheet will be found on the back of the Ledger.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

HISTORY OF COMMERCE IN EUROPE

BY

REV. H. DE B. GIBBINS, D.LITT., M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER IN THE HIGH SCHOOL, NOTTINGHAM

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

BOOK I.—ANCIENT AND CLASSICAL COMMERCE.

CHAPTER 1. Introductory—Commerce and History; 2. Ancient Commerce; 3. Greece and Rome.

BOOK II.—MEDIAEVAL COMMERCE.

CHAPTER 1. The Barbarian Invasions and the Decay of Commerce; 2. The Revival of Commerce in the Middle Ages; 3. The Italian Cities; 4. The Hansa Towns; 5. Mediaeval Trade Routes and Fairs; 6. The Manufacturing Centres of Europe; 7. The Commerce of Early and Mediaeval England.

BOOK III. MODERN COMMERCE.

CHAPTER 1. The Commercial Empires in the East; 2. The Commercial Empires in the West; 3. English Commerce from the Sixteenth to the Eighteenth Century; 4. European Commerce in the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries; 5. The Industrial Revolution in England and the Continental War (1793); 6. Modern English Commerce; 7. Modern Europe: France and Germany; 8. Modern Europe: Holland, Russia, and the other States.

APPENDICES (*a*) Fifty Years of British Trade; (*b*) Colonial Possessions of Foreign Powers.

INDEX.

PRESS OPINIONS

Nature.—"His appreciation of the action of historical causes in the development of commerce is excellent; and for a general view of commercial progress his manual will be of much service to students."

Athenæum.—"A really interesting sketch, accurate in its outlines, and not loaded with details, exactly suited for use in schools along with such general histories as Professor Freeman's or Green's."

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

In Globe 8vo. Price 3s.

COMMERCIAL GEOGRAPHY

BY

E. C. K. GONNER, M.A.

BRUNNER PROFESSOR OF ECONOMIC SCIENCE AT UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LIVERPOOL

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

PART I.—COMMERCIAL GEOGRAPHY AND ITS PRINCIPLES.

CHAPTER 1. Introductory; 2. Leading Physical and Political Influences; 3. The Necessary Conditions of Various Industrial and Commercial Developments—(*a*) Agriculture; (*b*) Manufacture; (*c*) Commerce.

PART II.—THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE CHIEF PRODUCTS AND OTHERS.

CHAPTER 1. The Production of Food and Drink—Grains; Wheat; Rye; Barley; Oats; Maize; Potatoes; Rice; Pulses; Animal Products; Meat, etc; Butter; Cheese; Eggs; Fish; Sugar; Coffee; Tea; Cacao; Salt; Farinaceous Foods; Fruits; Spices; Drugs, etc.; Miscellaneous; Wine; Beer; Spirits; Tobacco. 2. Textile Raw Materials and their Manufacture—Cotton; Wool; Flax; Hemp; Jute; Silk; Other Fibres. 3. Other Products (chiefly Mineral) and their Manufacture—Coal; Iron; Copper; Lead; Tin; Zinc; Other Minerals; Leather, etc.; Petroleum, etc.; Timber; Gums; Animal and Vegetable Oils; Chemicals; Stone and Clay; Miscellaneous.

PART III.

COUNTRIES, THEIR AGRICULTURE, INDUSTRIES, AND COMMERCE.

United Kingdom; France; Belgium; Holland; Germany; Austria-Hungary; Switzerland; Italy; The Balkan Peninsula; Spain and Portugal; Norway, Sweden, and Denmark; Russia; Canada and Newfoundland; United States; Mexico; Central America; West Indies; South America; Turkey in Asia, etc.; Asiatic Russia; British India; Further India, etc.; China, Japan, Algeria, etc.; Egypt; South Africa; Australia; Tasmania; New Zealand; Oceania.

Table showing the Money in use in the Principal Foreign Countries.

INDEX.

Nature.—"If the main facts contained in this volume are grasped by students intended for commercial careers, British commerce will undoubtedly be benefited."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

coal-fields in Lanark and Ayr. In the *United States* Pennsylvania is the great home of the iron-smelting industry. Pittsburg is the great iron town. In *Germany* iron-smelting is carried on most importantly in the Ruhr valley.

One great disadvantage from which many countries have suffered has been the distance of the iron-fields from the coal mines. Both the United Kingdom and the United States are very favourably situated in this respect. Other countries, through their low state of industrial development, are driven to rely for their iron goods, and especially for the railway plant, on the supplies to be obtained from the more forward lands.

The chief exporting country is the *United Kingdom.* Its exports have varied considerably during the last few years owing to the renewed efforts of the United States to close its markets to our goods. In 1890 the value of these iron exports was £31,000,000; of these, the great mass goes to the British Colonies, India, Canada, and Australia. In the case of railway plant and steel rails, the Argentine and Brazil are very large purchasers from England. Owing to its large foreign trade in iron and steel goods, there is a large import of iron ore, of which nearly all comes from Spain. It enters at the south Welsh ports and at Newcastle and Glasgow, and is smelted with the coal from the neighbouring pits. *Germany* exports an increasing amount of iron and steel goods, and imports more pig-iron than it exports. *France* imports iron ore, and is able to send abroad its surplus products both in manufacture and pig-iron. The *United States*, despite its efforts to render itself independent of foreign supplies, and notwithstanding the extent of its iron production and manufacture, still continues to buy pig-iron and European iron and steel goods. This is owing to the rapid growth of its industries, and the necessity in which it stands of still further railway extension. *Belgium* imports regularly more iron ore and pig-iron than it exports. On the other hand, its exports of iron goods are very considerable, falling not far short of half a million tons in quantity. As a

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Globe 8vo. *Price* 3s. 6d.

COMMERCIAL ARITHMETIC

BY

S. JACKSON, M.A.
HEAD MASTER OF VICTORIA COLLEGE, CONGLETON

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION I.—ARITHMETICAL OPERATIONS.

ARTICLE 1. Mental Rules of Multiplication; 2. Multiplication in one line; 3. Involution; 4. Abbreviated Multiplication; 5. Italian Method of Division; 6. Decimalisation of Money; 7. Methods of Approximation.

SECTION II.—CALCULATION OF PRICES.

ARTICLE 1. Mental Rules; 2. Method of Nine Multiples; 3. Method of Inversion; 4. Aliquotation; 5. Method of Interchanges; 6, 7, 8, 9. General Methods; 10. Method of Farthings; 11. Method of Mils.

SECTION III.—English Weights and Measures.

The Act of 1826; The Report of 1838; A Decimal Coinage; Troy Weight; Apothecaries' Weight and Fluid Measure; Avoirdupois Weight; Wine and Spirit Measure; Gaugers' Rule; Ale and Beer; Corn and Dry Measure; Hay and Straw; Cattle; Length Measure; Surveyors' Long Measure; Cloth Measure; Square Measure; Surveyors' Square Measure; Cross Multiplication; Duodecimals; Solid Measure; Timber; S. Petersburg Standard; Prices of Timber; Trade Standards and Prices; Mensuration; Formulae; Time; Angular Measure; Thermometers; Paper Measure.

SECTION IV.—The Metric System.

Article 1. The Metric System; 2. Commercial Uses; 3. Table of Equivalents; 4. Conversion by Method of Approximation; 5. Conversion by Method of Multiples—Multiple Tables; 6. Equivalent Prices with Foreign Rates; 7. Equivalent Prices with Sterling Rates; 8. Equivalent Prices by the Tables; 9, 10. Equivalent Prices by Fixed Numbers.

SECTION V.—Proportion and Percentages.

Article 1. Proportion; 2. Proportional Parts; 3. Mixtures; 4. Mixtures of all kinds; 5. Alcohol Strengths; 6. Alloys; 7. Percentages; 8. Partnership; 9. Freehold Property; 10. Taxes; 11. Duties; 12. Insurance; 13. Profit and Loss.

SECTION VI.—Methods of Prediction.

Article 1. Form $a \times b$; 2. Form $a \div b$; 3. Form $a \times b \times c$; 4. Form $a \times \frac{b}{c}$; 5. Form $\frac{a \times b}{c}$; 6. Form $\frac{a}{b \times c}$; 7. Form $\frac{a \times b}{c \times d}$.

SECTION VII.—Interest, Annuities, and Stocks.

Article 1. Interest; 2. Interest in Banks; 3. Simple Interest—Mental Methods; 4. Simple Interest—General Methods; 5. Months, Method of Aliquotation; 6. Days, Method of Multiples; 7. Days, Third, Tenth, and Tenth Rule; 8. Days, Method of Prediction; 9. Common Methods; 10. Compound Interest; 11. Compound Interest and Method of Approximation; 12. Tables; 13. General Formula for Compound Interest; 14. Compound Amounts for a large number of years; 15. Annuities; 16. Discount for Time; 17. Cash Discounts, Commission, Brokerage; 18. Discount Questions; 19. Stocks and Shares; 20. The National Debt; 21. The Bank of England; 22. The Stock Exchange; 23. The Calculation of Stocks.

SECTION VIII.—Accounts and Balances.

Article 1. Invoices and Bills; 2. Book-keeping; 3. Equation of Payments; 4. Averaging and Balancing of Accounts; 5. Payments on Account.

SECTION IX.—Exchange and Exchange Operations.

Articles 1. Moneys and Bullion; 2. Weights and Measures; 3. Modern Coinages; 4. Exchanges; 5. Foreign Exchanges; 6. Bills of Exchange; 7. Bills of Lading; 8. Quotations in Newspapers; 9. Methods of Payment; 10. Exchange Operations; 11. Direct Remittances; 12. Direct Drafts; 13. Exchanges and Multiples; 14. Comparison of Direct Rates; 15. Indirect Exchanges; 16. Compound Arbitrations; 17. Banking and Exchanges; 18. Banking Operations; 19. Bullion Operations; 20. Assaying. English Assays (1) Gold Assays in Carats, (2) Gold Assays in Milliemes, (3) Silver Assays in Dwts., (4) Silver Assays in Milliemes; 21. Continental Assays; 22. Reduction of Reports—English to Decimal; Arbitrations of Bullion.

SECTION X.—On 'Change at Home and Abroad.

Great Britain; France; Germany; Austria; Russia; Spain; Portugal; Switzerland; Belgium; Holland; Italy; Greece; Denmark; Norway; Sweden; Turkey; Egypt; Canada; United States; India; Hong-Kong, Canton, Feechow, Amoy; China (Shanghai, etc.); Japan; South America, The Argentine Republic, Brazil, Chili; Venezuela, Columbia States, and Ecuador; Paraguay; Peru and Bolivia; Uruguay, The British Colonies, Gibraltar, Malta, The West Indies, British Guiana, Ceylon, Burmah, Penang, Singapore, Cape of Good Hope and Natal, Mauritius, Guinea (West Africa), Australia.

PRESS OPINIONS

Journal of Education.—"A carefully-written manual on a subject of growing importance for middle-class schools. . . . Most of the generally approved methods of abbreviating calculations in business are lucidly expounded and others suggested. . . . A book which deserves success."

Schoolmaster.—"So exhaustive are the contents that there seems little left for future writers to say on the subjects dealt with. . . . As a work of reference and a guide to commercial arithmetic in its widest sense we know of nothing which is its equal. All who aspire to become proficient in the counting-house should get the book. However much they believe they know about commercial affairs, Mr. Jackson will undoubtedly be able to add no mean amount to their general knowledge. The work has our hearty recommendation."

Educational News.—"No book on arithmetic, applied to practical commercial transactions, at once so thoroughgoing, rational, compendious, full, informing, and withal so interesting, has hitherto come under our observation."

Guardian.—"In this book it will be found, with respect to many subjects at least, that they have been dealt with from a really practical as well as a theoretical point of view. More particularly with respect to banking operations, foreign exchanges, share dealing, etc., is the teaching of right sort."

Athenæum.—"Will be found serviceable by the class of readers for whom it is intended, as it gives a considerable amount of valuable information (not to be found in the generality of text-books) on subjects relating to commerce, home and foreign."

School Guardian.—"No book of greater practical us could be put into the hands of youths intended for a commercial career."

School Board Chronicle.—"The book will prove invaluable not only to the advanced student preparing for a commercial or financial career, but to the young man who has already entered upon such a career."

It also buys and sells other gold coins (Napoleons, Russian Imperials, United States Eagles, German Reichsmarks) at about these prices:—

French coins		76/2½	per oz.	(buying)	76/7	per oz.	(selling).
German	„	76/3	„	„	76/7	„	„
Russian	„	77/7½	„	„	77/11	„	„
U. S.	„	76/3½	„	„	76/7	„	„

The Bank delivers gold at its provincial branches at 9*s.* per mille (4*s.* per mille for delivery and 6*d.* per cent. for advice of the money).

The Crown alone issues silver and copper coins—it authorises the Bank to select and send to the Mint deteriorated pieces.

Bar silver is usually quoted per oz. standard.

Coins are usually quoted per oz. weight.

Cake silver per oz. fine.

Bills and Exchanges.

Bills between London and the Continent are generally at 3 months' date.

Those from India or China on London at 4 or 6 months' date.

Bills drawn from London usually specify the time—if the time is not stated on any bill *Usance* is reckoned —this varies with the place:—

France, Genoa, Malta, 30 days' date. Spain and Portugal, 2 months' date. Germany and Holland, 1 month's date. Italy, 3 months' date. New York, 60 days' sight. South America, 90 days' sight.

Continental bills are by no means so frequently at usance as formerly.

Occasionally bills are marked double or half-usance.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

INTRODUCTION TO COMMERCIAL GERMAN

BY

F. COVERLEY SMITH, B.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER IN THE HIGH SCHOOL, NOTTINGHAM, FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF MAGDALENE COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS.

The Alphabet; Double Consonants; Spelling; Pronunciation; Vowels; Modified Vowels; Diphthongs; Consonants.

LESSONS.—1-3. Parts of Speech; 4-7. Verbs; 8-15. Declension of Nouns; 16-18. Declension of Adjectives; 19-22. Auxiliary Verb; 23, 24. The Conditional; 25. Recapitulatory—Compound Tenses of a Verb (Faufen); 26, 27. The Auxiliary Verbs of Mood; 28. Comparison of Adjectives; 29. Impersonal Verbs; 30. Conjugation of Reflexive Verbs; 31, 32. Numerals—(1) Cardinal Numbers, (2) Ordinal Numbers; 33-37. Pronouns; 38. Conjugation of the Simple Forms of a Strong Verb; 39-44. Strong Verbs; 45. Anomalous Verbs, Miscellaneous Exercises on Strong Verbs; 46. Compound Verbs; 47-50. Inseparable Verbs; 51-55. Separable Verbs; 56. Prefixes, Separable or Inseparable; 57, 58. Adverbs; 59-63. Prepositions; 64. Conjunctions; 65-71. Miscellaneous Exercises; 72. Miscellaneous Sentences; 73, 74. Directions for Writing a Business Letter; 75. Modes of Beginning a Letter; 76-79. Extracts from Letters.

Specimens of Letters; For Translation into German; Letters for Translation into German—Observations. APPENDIX I. Synoptic Table of Endings of German Declensions; II. Rules for the Gender of Substantives; III. Conjugation of Auxiliary Verb; IV. List of Principal Strong Verbs; V. Reported Speech. German-English Vocabulary; English-German Vocabulary.

Lyceum.—"One of the most useful and practical of the many German grammars which have been provided for the use of our schoolboys. . . . It is a book which we can heartily commend."

Lesson LXXIV

DIRECTIONS FOR WRITING A BUSINESS LETTER

(From Schiebe-Odermann)

A. Der kaufmänniſche Brief beſteht (consists) aus der Überſchrift, aus dem Inhalte, aus dem Schluſſe und der Unterſchrift. Die Überſchrift enthält die Angabe des Ortes und des Datums der Abfaſſung (composing) des Briefes, ſo wie des Namens und des Wohnorts desjenigen, an den der Brief gerichtet iſt. Dem Gebrauche gemäß werden der Ort des Schreibenden und die Adreſſe des Handelhauſes, an welches der Brief gerichtet iſt, mit engliſcher Schrift (characters) geſchrieben.

Der Inhalt begreift (comprises) das, was zu ſchreiben iſt. Sind mehrere Briefe zu beantworten (if there are . . .), ſo geſchieht dies Ihren Daten nach (this is done in order of date); man beſchränkt ſich jedoch (confining oneself, however) auf das, was wirklich einer Antwort oder Erwähnung (mention) bedarf. Hat man keinen Brief zu antworten, ſo muß man ſich auf denjenigen berufen (refer), der dem zu ſchreibenden vorangegangen iſt (which preceded the one to be written), und auf den wichtigſten Teil ſeines Inhalts aufmerkſam machen.

B. Der Schluß des Briefes enthält je nach den Umſtänden einige verbindliche Worte (words of compliment) an denjenigen, an welchen man ihn richtet: einen Wunſch, der auf Herſtellung (the establishing) eines lebhaften Verkehrs gerichtet iſt; die Bitte, Aufträge zu erteilen, oder über die Dienſte des Schreibers bei jeder Gelegenheit zu verfügen; wohl (maybe) auch die Bitte, einen dem Schreiben beigelegten (enclosed) Brief an jemanden übergeben zu laſſen oder zu befördern. Dann kommt das Schlußcompliment (complimentary conclusion). Dasſelbe iſt von Kaufleuten zu Kaufleuten in der Regel (as a rule) ganz einfach (simple), z. B. Achtungsvoll ergeben—Achtungsvoll und ergebenſt—Mit Achtung und Ergebenheit—Ich empfehle mich Ihnen ergebenſt (mit Achtung und Ergebenheit)—Ich zeichne mit Achtung und Ergebenheit, u.s.w.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

Commercial Spanish

BY

LEON DELBOS

INSTRUCTOR IN FRENCH H.M.S. "BRITANNIA"

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

LESSON 1. Alphabet; Pronunciation; Diphthongs; The Tonic Accent. The Written Accents—On the Manner of addressing People; Vs, Vd, Vm, Vmd, V.V., Vs, Vds. Vmds. Punctuation—Reading Exercise with Literal and Interlinear Translation. 2. Verbs, Haber and Tener; The Objective Case. 3. Verbs, Ser and Estar. 4. The Noun and Article—Gender of Nouns; Case; Plural of Nouns; Compound Words; The Article; "Some" or "Any"; The Possessive Case. 5. Prepositions—Use of Para and Por. 6. Adjectives. 7. Distinction between Ser and Estar. 8. Recapitulatory Exercise. 9. Augmentatives and Diminutives. 10. Remarks on some Adjectives. 11. Degrees of Comparison. 12. Numeral Adjectives. 13. Personal Pronouns. 14. Possessive Pronouns. 15. Demonstrative Pronouns. 16. Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns—Remarks. 17. The Participle. 18. Regular Verbs—Idioms. 19. Recapitulatory Exercise. 20. Passive Verbs. 21. Reflexive Verbs. 22. Impersonal Verbs. 23. Adverbs. 24. Notes on the Verb. 25. Recapitulatory Exercise composed of Commercial Expressions. 26. Conjunctions and Subjunctive Mood of Regular Verbs. 27. The Imperfect of the Subjunctive. 28. Relative and Interrogative Pronouns. 29. Irregular Verbs. 30. Interjections. 31. On Construction. 32. Recapitulatory Exercise composed of Sentences extracted from Standard Spanish Authors. 33. Advertisements, etc., from Spanish Newspapers. 34. Commercial Correspondence; Beginnings of Letters; Endings of Letters.

APPENDIX I. Alphabetical Table of the Chief Irregularities occurring in Spanish Verbs; II. List of some Abbreviations used in Writing. English-Spanish Vocabulary; Spanish-English Vocabulary.

Army and Navy Gazette.—"Close examination of this volume has shown us that it is of simple and practical character, well directed to the teaching of Spanish as the language is used in business circles. The steps are gradual, and the student will find his progress rapid."

2. *Hemos recibido oportunamente su carta del 5 de enero . . .*	We have received in good time your letter of Jan. 5th . . .
3. *Es en nuestro poder su carta del 25 del mes pasado en la que . . .*	We are in possession of your letter of the 25th ult., in which . . .
4. *Tenemos el honor de advertir á Vd. . . .*	We have the honour to inform you . . .
5. *Nos hará V. un gran servicio, si le es posible darnos informes sobre la casa . . .*	You will do us great service if you can give us some information about the firm . . .
6. *Confirmando á V. nuestra última, tenemos el honor . . .*	In confirmation of our last, we have the honour . . .
7. *Hemos recibido la favorecida de Vd. del 17 del corriente . . .*	We have received your favour of the 17th inst. . . .
8. *A mi llegada en Madrid he recibido la carta que se ha servido á V. dirigirnos el 17 del corriente.*	On my arrival in Madrid I received the letter which you were so good as to send us on the 17th inst. . . .
9. *En contestacion á su estimada del 20 del mes ultimo . . .*	In answer to your favour of the 20th ult. . . .

N.B.—The tendency of the present day is to avoid complicated and over-polite formulæ. It may be said that the conciseness of the English commercial style is daily more appreciated by Spanish business men.

Endings of Letters

1. *Con este motivo tengo el honor . . .*	I have the honour to subscribe myself . . .
2. *Quedan de Vds. afectísimos seguros servidores;* generally written, *Quedan de Vds. Afos S.S.*	Equivalent to, Your obedient servants.

A more respectful and now not very commonly used ending is the following:—

3. *Permítanos V. le ofrezcamos la consideracion mas perfecta de sus atentos servidores.*	Literally, Permit us to offer you the most perfect consideration of your attentive servants. Equivalent to, Your most obedient servants.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

Commercial Law

BY

J. E. C. MUNRO, L.L.M.
LATE PROFESSOR OF LAW, OWENS COLLEGE, MANCHESTER

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

PART I.—MERCANTILE PERSONS AND MERCANTILE PROPERTY.

PART—II. CONTRACTS.

CHAPTER 1. The Formation of Contracts; 2. Capacity of Parties to Contract; 3. The Form of and Consideration for Contracts; 4. The Legality of the Agreement; 5. Possibility of Performance; 6. Effects of Mistake, Misrepresentation, or Fraud; 7. The Assignment of Contracts; 8. Performance, Breach, and Discharge of Contracts.

PART III.—THE LEADING COMMERCIAL CONTRACTS.

CHAPTER. 1. Partnership; 2. Principal and Agent; 3. The Sale of Goods; 4. Insurance; 5. Guarantees; 6. Charter Parties and Bills of Lading; 7. Bills, Notes, Cheques, and I.O.U.s.

PART IV.—BANKRUPTCY.

PART V.—THE APPLICATION OF LAW.

APPENDIX.—Glossary; Proposal for Life Insurance; Form of Life Policy; Form of Marine Policy; Questions.

INDEX.

Educational News.—"The luminous lucidity of his style, the clear logicality of his arrangement, and the completeness of his survey, within the limits assigned to him, show that he is master of his subject, and mark his book as a successful endeavour to make commercial education a living reality."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

shipowner for stowage. In some cases the charterer stows the cargo at the shipowner's risk and expense. Mats or other articles used to protect the cargo from the bottom and sides of the vessel are called "dunnage" (clause *j*).

§ 212. Consignment of Vessel.—The parties usually agree on some firm or person who is to act as agent for both the owners of the vessel and of the cargo in the ports to which the vessel proceeds. Sometimes the vessel is consigned to the charterers' agent, and the amount of commission to be paid such agent ought to be fixed by the charter-party (clause *k*).

§ 213. Brokerage.—On the signing of a charter-party, a commission is usually paid to the brokers who negotiate the charter-party. The amount is fixed by the charter-party (clause *l*).

§ 214. Perils Excepted.—The shipowner is liable, as we have seen, for any damage arising to the goods on the voyage. A charter-party usually excepts damage arising from "restraints of princes and rulers, the dangers and accidents of the seas, fire, pirates, and enemies," etc., and often makes provision for the case of war (clause *o*). The perils usually excepted will be discussed later on (§ 226).

§ 215. Provision in Case of War.—If war breaks out between the country to which a vessel belongs and a foreign state, the vessel is liable to capture. Hence if there is a probability of war, provision is often made for cancelling the charter-party (clause *p*).

§ 216. Additional Clauses.—Clauses are often inserted providing for arbitration in case of any dispute between the parties (clause *m*), for the payment of a fixed sum in case the charterers withdraw from the contract, and for cancelling the contract where misrepresentations as to the size or state of the vessel have been made by the owners.

Bills of Lading

§ 217. Definition.—A bill of lading is a receipt for goods shipped in a vessel signed by the person who

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Crown 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.

Manual of Book-keeping

BY

J. THORNTON

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

PART I. LAWS AND PRINCIPLES.

LESSON 1. The Principle of Exchanges; 2. The Principle of "Dr." and "Cr." Accounts; 3. The Principle of the Classification of Accounts; 4. The Principle of Ledger Entries; 5. The Principle of "Proving"; 6. The Principle of the Chronological or Preparatory record; 7. The Principle of the transfer from Preparatory to Final record; 8. The Principle of Balancing and "Closing" the Ledger.

PART II. APPLICATION.

LESSON 9. Rules and Tools; 10. What Capital consists of; Exercises; 11. Capital in Cash; Exercises; Appendix—Bank of England; 12. Capital in Bills; Exercises; Appendix—The Foreign Exchanges; 13. Capital in Debts; Exercises; 14. Capital in Goods; Exercises; 15. Fixed Capital; Exercises; 16. Profit and Loss; Exercsies; 17. Capitalist's Accounts; Exercises; 18. Company Bookkeeping; Appendix—The Double Account System, Parliamentary Companies, Capital Account, Revenue Account, Radical Distinctions, Examples; Exercises; 19. Errors; Exercises; 20. Non-Capitalist Bookkeeping; Exercises.

INDEX. ANSWERS TO EXERCISES.

Nature.—"Is the clearest exposition of the principles and practice of book-keeping that we have yet seen, and the most original in design."

Guardian.—"Most complete and lucid treatise on a subject which is but too often imperfectly understood."

Manchester City News.—"The completest manual on the subject of book-keeping that we have seen."

Aberdeen Free Press.—"The work is fitted to take its place as a standard manual, and may be expected to come into general use as such."

Manchester Courier.—"We have seldom met with a more instructive or profound treatise on advanced book-keeping than this manual by Mr. Thornton."

Dundee Advertiser.—"The manual is interded for advanced students, to whom we can confidently recommend it."

Educational Review.—"An unusual feature in books on this subject is the author's extreme lucidity of style."

Bookman.—"This will probably soon take its place as the standard text-book on the subject. The theory has never been so intelligently explained nor the practice so clearly illustrated."

Banker's Magazine.—"We heartily commend Mr. Thornton's work."

For Specimen Page see page 625.

Globe 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

MARINE INSURANCE

BY

WILLIAM GOW, M.A. (GLASG.)

PH.D. (HEID.); UNDERWRITER, THE MARINE INSURANCE CO., LTD., LIVERPOOL BRANCH; FORMERLY SECRETARY, UNION MARINE INSURANCE CO., LTD.; PAST CHAIRMAN, LIVERPOOL SALVAGE ASSOCIATION (MARINE)

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

Literature. Index of Cases. Historical Introduction.

CHAPTER 1. Elementary Notions—Slip, Covering Note, Policy, Stamp Act; 2. The Policy: Part I.—Policy Forms, Common English Policy, The Heading, The Assured, Lost or Not Lost, At and From; 3. The Policy: Part I. continued—Common English Policy continued, General Description of Subject Matter Insured, Duration of Risk on Goods and Ship, including Touch and Stay and Deviation Clause; 4. The Policy: Part I. continued—Common English Policy continued, Valuation; 5. Insurable Interest, Subjects of Insurance, Multiple Insurance; 6. The Policy: Part II. continued—Sue and Labour Clause, Waiver Clause, Force and Effect of Policy, Consideration, Attestation; 8. Principles of Interpretation of the Policy; 9. Total Loss of Ship and of Cargo; 10. The Loss of Freight; 11. The Memorandum, F.P.A. Clause; 12. Particular Charges, Suing and Labour Expenses; 14. Insurances on Time, Time Policies; 15. Liabilities; 16. Warranties and Representations; 17. General Average.

APPENDICES—A. Specimen Slip; B. Early Policies; Ca. Covering Note on Ship; Cb. Covering Note on Cargo and Freight; D. Quotation Form; E. Tender or Abandonment; F. Full Protection Policy; G. Roles of Practice of Association of Average Adjusters, 1899; H. York-Antwerp Rules; I. Institute Voyage Clauses, 1899; K. Institute Time Clauses, 1899; L. 1. Liverpool Slip Warranties, 2. Time Warranties usual in 1899; M. Clauses in Ordinary Use in Policies on Interest other than Hull; N. Clauses in Occasional Use in Policies on Interest of all Kinds.

INDEX.

Commerce.—"The technical matters are dealt with carefully, and with as far as possible an absence of technical language, all unnecessary verbiage being excluded."

Now Ready, Third Edition. 272 pages. Demy 8vo.
Price 2s. 6d.

MODERN BUSINESS METHODS

BEING A GUIDE TO THE OPERATIONS INCIDENTAL TO THE TRADE OF THE UNITED KINGDOM, WITH THE CUSTOMARY DOCUMENTS AND CORRESPONDENCE

A REFERENCE BOOK FOR BUSINESS MEN AND
A TEXT-BOOK FOR COMMERCIAL STUDENTS

The Home Trade

BY

FREDK. HOOPER

SECRETARY OF THE BRADFORD CHAMBER OF COMMERCE

AND

JAMES GRAHAM

INSPECTOR FOR COMMERCIAL SUBJECTS AND MODERN LANGUAGES TO THE WEST RIDING COUNTY COUNCIL

THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

649

PRESS OPINIONS

Commerce.—"An interesting volume. . . . To those engaged in purely commercial pursuits we can favourably recommend this volume for study. Particularly interesting and instructive are the chapters on mediums of exchange, banks and banking, and bills of exchange. The less ambitious duties of invoices, forwarding of goods, remitting money through the post office, etc., are all of a satisfactory character, and should be of value to the beginner in a business house."

Daily Mail.—"This handbook is the first of a series designed to initiate youngsters into the practical details of a merchant's office. . . . It is designed either for use in a commercial school or for private work. It is admirable for either purpose. Everything is put very simply and very plainly, from the neatest style of addressing an envelope to the mysteries and pitfalls of a bill of exchange. For a boy of, say, fifteen years, who is not above acquiring the rudiments of the commercial craft he will have to practise, we can think of no more valuable introduction to his business career."

Polytechnic Magazine.—"It is without question the best book of its kind yet brought out, both in its spirit and in the method adopted, and I only wish that every young man engaged in clerical work—and a good many who, even while not earning their living by clerical work, are yet called upon to undertake it in however small a way—could have a copy placed in his hands, and could be made to master it from the first page to the last."

Chamber of Commerce Journal.—"The ground covered is too great to admit of detailed notice, but from a careful perusal of the various chapters, most office work—especially that of merchants' offices—appears to be thoroughly explained in simple language. In fact, ability to pass an examination on every part of the manual would be beyond the capacity of a good many seniors. . . . Students can, with a little application, almost dispense with other assistance than the book itself."

Daily Telegraph.—"It is a reference book for business men, a text-book for students, and a guide to the beginner in an office or counting house concerned with home trade. A thorough acquaintance with the whole course should prove useful to the youth entering upon a business career."

The Manchester Evening Student.—"This book is an admirable treatise on the Home Trade Section of the subject with which it deals, and promises well for the succeeding volume on Foreign Trade. The book cannot fail to afford much useful information as well to those who are already in business houses as to those about to commence a business career."

Publishers' Circular.—"This is a guide to the commercial methods of the United Kingdom. . . . The value of manuals such as these can hardly be overlooked."

The Bazaar.—"This volume is admirably adapted for commercial schools or private study. . . . It is as simple as it well can be, and to a boy of fifteen or sixteen years of age invaluable, for he can learn in a month or two from its pages as much as he could pick up in several years from hard, and perhaps bitter experience on the treadmill of life."

Newcastle Leader.—"Probably no better beginning could be suggested than that outlined in this useful little book on Modern Business Methods."

Education.—"This book . . . is a compendium of knowledge on a vast mass of matters relat ng to the office. . . . The matter is well arranged and clearly set forth. . The book is full of useful information."

Now Ready. 272 pages. Demy 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

MODERN BUSINESS METHODS

BEING A GUIDE TO THE OPERATIONS INCIDENTAL TO THE TRADE OF THE UNITED KINGDOM, WITH THE CUSTOMARY DOCUMENTS AND CORRESPONDENCE

A REFERENCE BOOK FOR BUSINESS MEN AND
A TEXT-BOOK FOR COMMERCIAL STUDENTS

Import and Export Trade

BY

FREDK. HOOPER

SECRETARY OF THE BRADFORD CHAMBER OF COMMERCE

AND

JAMES GRAHAM

INSPECTOR FOR COMMERCIAL SUBJECTS AND MODERN LANGUAGES
TO THE WEST RIDING COUNTY COUNCIL

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
651

PRESS OPINIONS

Daily Mail.—"Home Trade has already been dealt with by these authors, and now they have issued through Messrs. Macmillan another admirable handbook on 'Modern Business Methods,' dealing with import and export trade, and setting forth clearly and explicitly a mass of valuable instruction on such points as how to price goods for the foreign markets, how to order, forward, ship, insure, and invoice them, and how to make arrangements regarding foreign exchange. It is, in short, an invaluable book for all commercial men, whether young or old."

Yorkshire Post.—"A manual which will help any intelligent student to deal with foreign enquiries and orders. It is much to be hoped that the work they have so carefully compiled will receive the widest possible attention from the men of business to whose interest it appeals."

Commerce.—"The manual aims, in fact, at being a guide to the whole of the operations connected with the export and import of every class of goods. So we find in its pages all the essential points of difference between the various kinds of invoice, for instance, used in foreign trade, with remarks anent the most convenient trade routes, hints on the law of charter-parties, and many another piece of information. Irrespective of its utility to the heads of firms, there is no doubt that in producing a work of the nature of this one, the authors have gone a very long way towards assisting the junior clerk to gain a thorough insight into the mysteries of his profession."

Manchester Guardian.—"It is a useful introduction to the methods and requirements of the shipping trade for aspirants to clerkships in mercantile offices. . . . Altogether it is perhaps the most up-to-date manual for the instruction of merchants' clerks we have yet seen."

Textile Mercury.—"We have the greatest pleasure in recommending it to teachers and students of a commercial course of education; to both it should prove invaluable."

THE TEACHER'S COMPANION TO MODERN BUSINESS METHODS—THE HOME TRADE. Price 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

THE BEGINNER'S GUIDE TO OFFICE WORK. Price 1*s.*

BOOK OF *FACSIMILE* MODERN BUSINESS FORMS—THE HOME TRADE. Price 6*d.*

COMMERCIAL EDUCATION IN THE COUNTIES—WHAT IT IS: AND HOW IT MAY BE PROVIDED

In Preparation

FACSIMILE MODERN BUSINESS FORMS—IMPORT AND EXPORT TRADE

TEACHER'S COMPANION AND MODERN BUSINESS METHODS—IMPORT AND EXPORT TRADE

MODERN BUSINESS CORRESPONDENCE

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

HINTS ON THE CONDUCT OF BUSINESS

PUBLIC AND PRIVATE

BY

SIR COURTENAY BOYLE, K.C.B.

SECRETARY TO THE BOARD OF TRADE

SOMETIME PRIVATE SECRETARY TO THE LORD LIEUTENANT OF IRELAND

"The active man riseth not so much by his strength
as the expert by his stirrups."

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. Training; II. The Opening of Letters, Closing of Letters; III. Keeping and Registering Letters; IV., V. and VI. Notes; VII. Labour-saving Appliances; VIII. Registry and Record of Official Papers; IX. Semi-Official Letters, Memoranda, and "Aides Memoire"; X. and XI. Official Letters and Despatches; XII. Division of Responsibility, The Employment of Agents, The Use of Experts; XIII. Compilation of Reports, Reading of Reports; XIV. Interviews; XV. Deputations, Councils and Conferences; XVI. Adroitness and Cunning.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Please name the Book required

MACMILLAN'S

HISTORY READERS

ADOPTED BY THE

London, Bradford, Bristol, Cardiff, Edinburgh, Edmonton, Halifax, Huddersfield, Leeds, Manchester, Newcastle-on-Tyne, Northampton, Norwich, Nottingham, Portsmouth, Southampton, Reading, Swansea, Swindon, Tottenham, West Ham, and other School Boards

BOOK I.—SIMPLE STORIES FROM ENGLISH HISTORY 9*d.*

BOOK II.—SIMPLE STORIES FROM ENGLISH HISTORY 10*d.*

BOOK III.—STORIES AND TALES FROM EARLY HISTORY 1*s.*

BOOK IV.—STORIES AND BIOGRAPHIES, 1066 to 1485 1*s.* 4*d.*

BOOK V.—THE TUDOR PERIOD, 1485 to 1603 - - 1*s.* 6*d.*

BOOK VI.—THE TUDOR PERIOD, 1603 to 1714 - - 1*s.* 8*d.*

BOOK VII.—THE HANOVERIAN PERIOD, 1714 to 1893 1*s.* 9*d.*

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

654

ship lit up the sky, and he could see men clinging to bits of masts or planks, and boats full of men trying to get away from some sinking ship.

CASABIANCA.

11. On the *Orient* they kept a great deal of powder, and suddenly Casabianca heard the dreadful cry, "The ship is on fire."

And after him a familiar lass
Did shine like glittering gold.

"THEN FOUR-AND-TWENTY BOWMEN BOLD
CAME LEAPING O'ER THE LEA."

17. "This is not a fit match," quoth Robin Hood,
"That you do seem to make here;
For since we are come unto the church,

II.—THE ROMANS

8. Who the Romans were

1. Now we must leave these stories, and go back again for a moment to the Aryans who lived in the far-away plain. All the while that the Celts had been wandering towards the west, and settling in Britain, the Aryans still kept on growing in numbers; so that every now and then fresh bodies of them had left to seek their fortunes elsewhere.

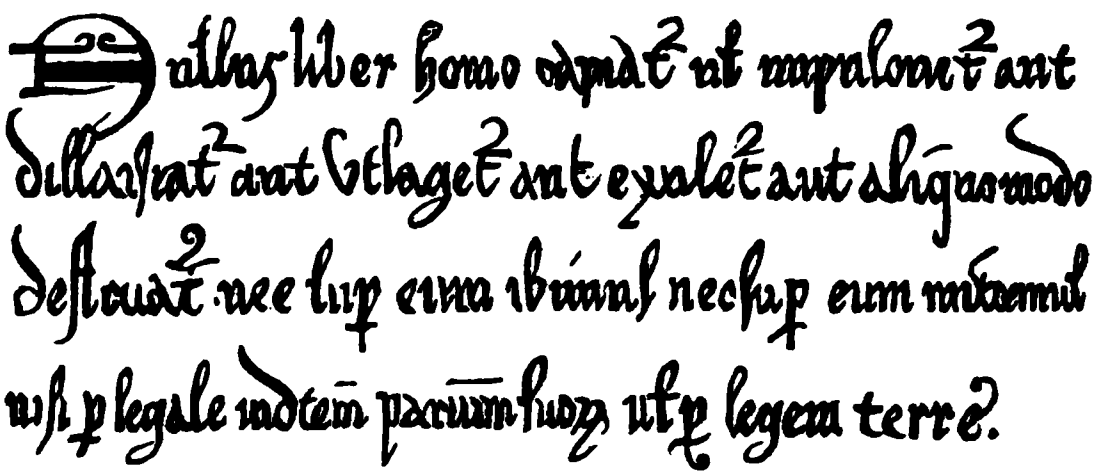
2. Those who started next after the Celts, instead of going always westward, turned more to the left hand, that is, to the south; and at last made their home in the country which we call Italy.

3. These people came to be known as Latins; and the curious thing about them is, that while the Celts, in their country near the ocean, and in the island of Britain, seemed to fall back into a state of half-savage life, the Latins, on the other hand, kept on improving.

4. They built a splendid city, called Rome, which very soon became the "Mistress of the World." This means that the men who lived in the city were so brave and clever, that they were able to conquer nearly every other nation.

no doubt it is. But if you try to understand something about it, you will find it very interesting—in fact one of the most interesting things that there are in the world. Let us think again what it all means.

4. King John was ruling very badly. In the first place he had sold the whole of England to the Pope, so that it could no longer be called a free country. Then people's lives were not safe,



CLAUSE FROM MAGNA CHARTA.

any more than their property was. The King would shut them up in prison, or seize all their lands and goods whenever he chose to do so, and they had no means of getting redress.

5. Besides this, he was always wanting money, and taxed everybody heavily. It was not as in Richard's reign, when the King had neglected the country and left it to his advisers to administer.

6. Then the Government had been carefully carried on. But now John actively interfered,

out walking near her palace at Greenwich, with some of her attendants, when they reached a part of the

SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

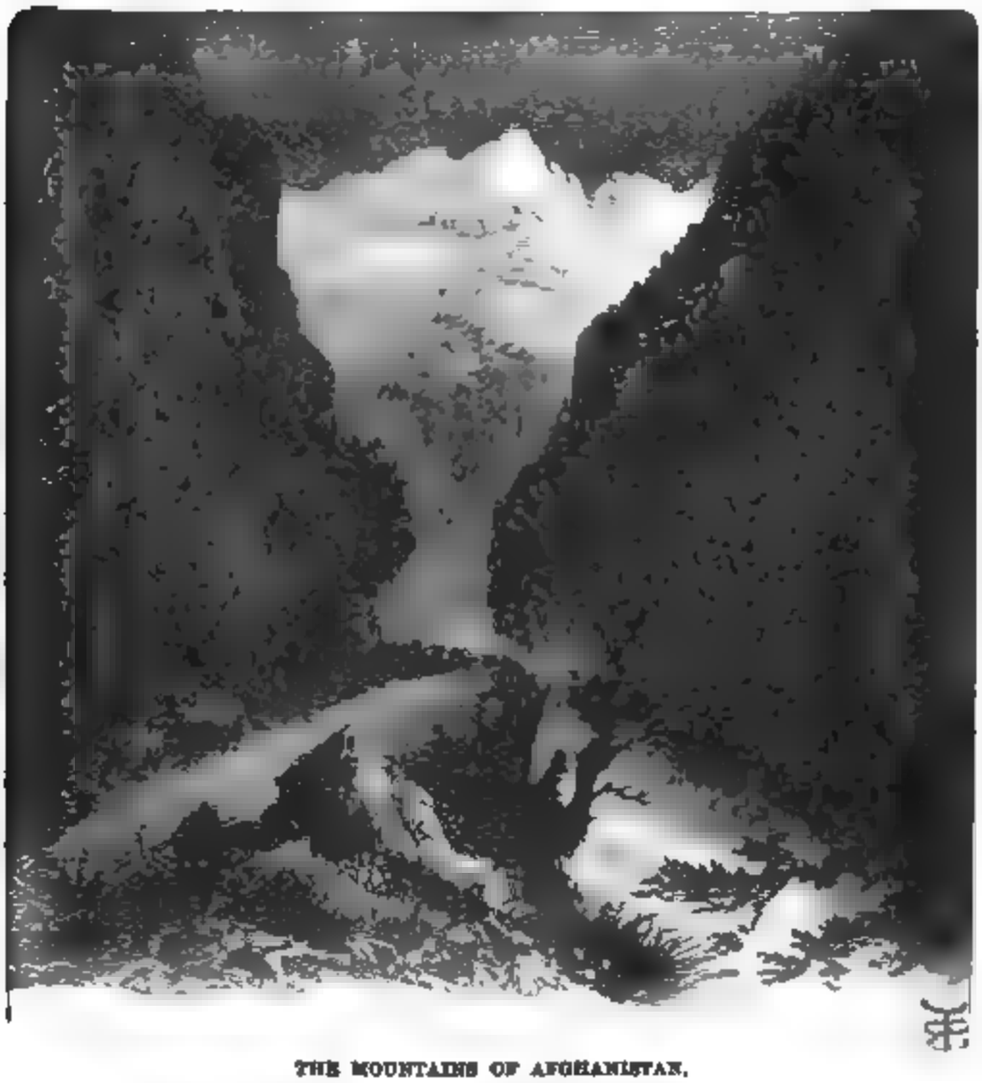
road which was wet and miry. The Queen stepped back for fear of soiling her beautiful shoes, and Raleigh, who was near, instantly took off a costly velvet cloak

he promised to govern according to law, and to pardon those who submitted to him in forty days.

7. The Declaration was received with delight, and on the 25th May Charles landed at Dover. Four days later he entered London, amidst universal rejoicing, except on the part of the army. But it was impossible even for them to withstand the wishes of the whole nation, who by this time were thoroughly tired of Puritan restrictions. In this way the great Rebellion came to an end.

EMBARKATION OF CHARLES II.

5. The army was in this dreadful state when it arrived at the entrance to the Coord Cabul defile. It is five miles in length, and bounded on either side with steep overhanging mountains. It is so narrow



THE MOUNTAINS OF AFGHANISTAN.

the sun never penetrates its gloomy jaws; there is barely room for a rugged road or horse-track between the torrent and the precipices. The stream dashes down the whole way with inconceivable impetuosity, and requires to be crossed eight-and-twenty times in the

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

MACMILLAN'S
NEW HISTORY READERS
ON THE CONCENTRIC PLAN

BOOK I.—JUNIOR. 1*s.* 6*d.*

BOOK II.—INTERMEDIATE. 1*s.* 6*d.*

BOOK III.—SENIOR. 1*s.* 9*d.*

SUMMARIES TO BOOKS I., II., AND III. 3*d.* each.

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
662

The other events in the reign of Charles II. must be left for another book. Here we can only

THE MONUMENT.

say that, after leading a gay life, for he was known as the Merry Monarch, he died a member of the Church of Rome in 1685.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Now Ready. *Globe* 8vo, 3s. 6d.; *or in Three Parts*, 2s. *each.*

PART I., 449-1307; PART II., 1307-1689; PART III., 1689-1895

A FIRST SKETCH

OF

ENGLISH HISTORY

BY

E. J. MATHEW, M.A. LL.B.

FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF HISTORY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF NEW ZEALAND

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

PRESS OPINIONS

Schoolmaster—"A useful series of handbooks. . . . Students preparing for examination will find it a valuable ally."

Head Teacher—"A history which we can heartily recommend. . . . Specially suitable as a class book for Higher Grade Schools."

Pupil Teacher—"The book is cleverly written, well arranged, and clearly printed. The synopsis at the end of each reign are the best we have seen. . . . Decidedly a cleverly written and useful text-book."

Educational News—"A sample of good, honest, and thoughtful work. . . . Composed with competent judgment and tact, clear vision, and distinct knowledge."

his own tenants; while in 1198 the successful opposition of St. Hugh of Lincoln proved that the clergy regarded the military service of their lands as being limited to England. The whole position, moreover, was entirely altered when John, in 1204, lost his foreign territory. In 1213 John nevertheless determined to attack Philip Augustus, and called on the barons to follow him. They refused, and he renewed his demand. The northern barons declared that their tenure did not exist beyond the serving in England, the first instance known of lay opposition. John marched against the northerners, who all along took the lead in this stand against the king, but his effort was useless. The justiciar attempted to conciliate the south; and at St. Albans it was promised that there should be better government. Stephen Langton, at a council at St. Paul's, produced an original charter of Henry the First, and demanded its confirmation. Just at that juncture FitzPeter died, a great blow for John, though at the time he did not realize it. Peter de Roche, the Bishop of Winchester, was then appointed in FitzPeter's stead.

42. John was weak in two ways. He failed to revive the alliance between the crown and the church, in spite of the reconciliation with the papacy; so that Stephen Langton, who refused to follow the guidance of Innocent III., became the great leader of the opposition to the king. Secondly, he forced the barons to rely upon the people. As John had treated the barons who opposed him, so he had let his friends among them treat the people. It was impossible to long delay the end. A charter to the churches was granted in 1214, but it was too late to be of much use. In the following year the barons formulated their demands, and John held out until London opened to them. Then, in June, 1215, he signed *Magna Carta.*

Magna Carta.

43. Six of its clauses are of great constitutional importance—numbers 12, 14, 15, 39, 40, and 61. In No. 12 it is declared that no scutage or aid was to be imposed but with the consent of the council, except for the king's ransom, the knighting of his son, or the marriage of his daughter; and

effect that no Papist should ever again hold the crown of England. The conditions were put before William and Mary, and the crown was offered to them, "which," William said, "we thankfully accept." It should be noticed that in neither of the great charters secured by the nation under the Stuarts (the Petition of Right and the Bill of Rights) is any claim made on behalf of the people for liberties and privileges other than they had enjoyed from time immemorial. Nor was a claim even in *Magna Carta* (1215) for anything new. What these documents all insisted upon was the abolition of the additions to the prerogative of which the nation had reason to complain. The legal prerogatives of the crown were by all of them left untouched. The nation required no more than its customary rights.

SUMMARY.

(1) THE TORY REVIVAL CONTINUED (1685). James kept on Charles's Tory ministers and declared he would maintain the constitution in Church and State. **May**, *Tory Parliament* met, gave James a large revenue for life, and released Danby. *Unsuccessful Whig risings* under *Argyll* in Scotland and *Monmouth* in the west of England. **July 6**, *battle of Sedgemoor*. Chief-Justice Jefferies carried out the *Bloody Assize*. James at the height of his power.

(2) THE PROJECTED CATHOLIC RESTORATION (1685-1688). James dismissed Parliament for refusing to repeal the Test Act, and turned Halifax out of office. **1686**, James got a judicial decision (*Hales's Case*) that he could, through his *dispensing* and *suspending powers*, override the laws, and appointed many Catholics to posts in Church and State, set up a new *Ecclesiastical Commission*, and collected a *Camp at Hounslow* to frighten London. **1687**, a papal nuncio received. The fellows of *Magdalen College, Oxford*, deprived for resisting a Romanist president. **1688, April**, James issued a *Declaration of Indulgence*. Archbishop Sancroft and six bishops protest. **June 10**, birth of James, Prince of Wales. **June 30**, *acquittal* of the *Seven Bishops*, and an invitation sent to William of Orange to protect the liberties of England. **Sept. 30**, William III. issued a declaration that he would come to England and secure a free Parliament. **Nov. 5**, William landed at Torbay. General defection from James. **Dec. 19**, William reached London. **Dec. 23**, James escaped to France. **1689, Jan. 22**, a **Convention** assembled, declared the throne vacant, drew up the **Declaration of Right** and *Act of Settlement*. **Feb. 13**, William and Mary offered and accepted the throne.

for himself. He had had no objection to the constitutional theory that the Foreign Secretary must be under the control of the Crown and Prime Minister. What he did object to was that he should be the Foreign Secretary so controlled. Now that he was Prime Minister the objection was removed, and for the last six years of the Prince Consort's life, he and Palmerston worked well and cordially together.

The last years of the Prince Consort.

11. The power of the Prince lay in the faculty which he possessed for impressing all those with whom he came in contact. Of his absolute sincerity of purpose there could be no doubt in the mind of whatsoever man happened to approach him. This, and the singular purity of his life, were the two strong bases upon which his character rested. From many points of view, however, he was not genuinely in touch with the average English character; and although those who knew him best liked him best, there was much in him which the average Englishman could not understand. The Queen had readily yielded herself to his remarkable qualities, and every one who had any personal dealings with him experienced a similar feeling. Sir Robert Peel has recorded the impression that was made upon him, and Lord John Russell and Lord Aberdeen were equally moved by his gravity and his sincerity. The effect that the Prince was thus able to make upon successive prime ministers was obviously visible to many politicians who were not within the personal sphere of the Prince's influence. Among men of this kind it was complained that there was a "power behind the throne," and it did not need much to make this cry degenerate into an open assertion that the Prince's influence was exercised in a manner hostile to England. It was impossible, so the tongues of the malevolent ran, for a prince to be closely allied to foreign states and princes, and not to use his influence on their behalf. In January 1854 these scandals came to a head, and ended in a scene in the House of Commons, when all those who had held the office of Prime Minister since the Queen's marriage spoke in the highest terms of his constitutional actions, and

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

With Coloured Maps. Pott 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

Historical Course for Schools

HISTORY OF ENGLAND

BY

EDITH THOMPSON

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. Britain before the English Conquest; 2. The English in Britain; 3. Conversion of the English to Christianity; 4. The Rise of Wessex; 5. From Æthelstan to the Danish Kings; 6. The Danish Kings; 7. From Edward to the Norman Conquest; 8. The Old-English and Normans; 9. William I.; 10. William II.; 11. Henry I.; 12. Stephen; 13. Henry II.; 14. Richard I.; 15. John; 16. Henry III.; 17. Edward I.; 18. Edward II.; 19. Edward III.; 20. Richard II.; 21. Henry IV.; 22. Henry V.; 23. Henry VI.; 24. Edward IV.; 25. Edward V.; 26. Richard III.; 27. Henry VII.; 28. Henry VIII.; 29. Edward VI.; 30. Mary; 31. Elizabeth; 32. James I.; 33. Charles I.; 34. The Commonwealth; 35. Charles II.; 36. James II.; 37. William and Mary: William III.; 38. Anne; 39. George I.; 40. George II.; 41. George III.; 42. George IV.; 43. William IV.; 44. Victoria. Index.

LIST OF MAPS—The British Dominions, 1894; Britain about A.D. 597; The English Empire in the 10th and 11th Centuries; Dominions of the House of Anjou; France after the Treaty of Bretigny, 1360.

Athenæum—"This manual is the best sketch of English History for the use of young people we have yet met with."

Saturday Review—"This book, small as it is, bears traces in every detail of genuine and careful work. Its technical accuracy and precision is one of its best features. . . . The style of the book is throughout simple and good, and its arrangement is for the most part clear and judicious. . . . In its great accuracy and detail, the book stands far ahead of the general run of school manuals. Its arrangement, too, is clear and its style simple and straightforward."

Pall Mall Gazette—"Freedom from prejudice, simplicity of style, and accuracy of statement are the characteristics of this little volume. It is a trustworthy text-book and likely to be generally serviceable in schools."

Standard.—"We have reason to hold a very high opinion of this admirable history, as from testing it here and there it seems to us to give the learners more distinct and more trustworthy views in its narrative of events, in which distinct and trustworthy views are much wanted, in school histories. Its lessons are well divided, and its style at once compact and attractive."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Globe 8vo. Price 3s.

First Edition 1887; reprinted 1888, 1890, 1891 (2), 1892 (2), 1893, 1894, 1895, 1896, 1897, 1899

HISTORY OF ENGLAND
FOR BEGINNERS

BY

ARABELLA B. BUCKLEY
(MRS. FISHER)
AUTHOR OF "THE FAIRY LAND OF SCIENCE," "A SHORT HISTORY OF NATURAL SCIENCE," ETC.

WITH COLOURED MAPS AND CHRONOLOGICAL AND GENEALOGICAL TABLES

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
669

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

"In the small space allowed me in this little book I have tried to set before young readers a connected history of the rise and development of England. While giving as far as possible the chief facts required by students, I have been especially anxious to present a vivid picture of the life, the difficulties, and the achievements of our ancestors; showing how our laws, our constitution, our trade, and our colonies have arisen. If this short sketch opens the way to the study of more comprehensive histories, leading those now growing up into citizens of a widespread empire to take a lively interest in the past, present, and future of our nation, it will have done its work."

PRESS OPINIONS

Saturday Review—"The excellence of a sound method faithfully adhered to is strikingly illustrated by every chapter. . . . The orderly precision and right proportion of this little book deserve warm recognition. Many so-called histories of thrice its bulk do not possess a tenth of its educational utility. The dynastic tables, maps, and other illustrative aids—together with the very useful synopsis of contents—are capital features in the author's scheme."

Athenæum—"Mrs. Fisher is the author of various little works calculated to interest and entertain the beginner in science, and the clearness and accuracy of a scientific training have served her in good stead in another field. . . . Her object has been 'to present a vivid picture of the life, the difficulties, and the achievements of our ancestors; showing how our laws, our constitution, and our trade have arisen.' In this aim the author has succeeded. She writes pleasantly, in a simple and unadorned style, without affectation or mannerism. . . . Her statements often show much minute knowledge compressed into a few words, and she not unfrequently adds interesting particulars not usually found in text-books, as when she illustrates Henry VII.'s promotion of trade by telling us that he established an English Consul at Pisa. Her maps are excellent, clear in colour and lettering, and besides the usual maps of England and France she has added others of India, the American Colonies, and Australasia."

Westminster Review—"The best feature about Mrs. Fisher's little history is that the descriptions of the state of the nation at different periods, socially and politically, are more simple and intelligible to children than those in any other book, of the kind which we have seen. The style, too, is exceedingly pleasant, and the tables of contents, which form a chronological summary, are admirably put together."

Literary World—"It is constructed throughout with a proper regard for the floods of light which writers like Stubbs, and Green, and Freeman have thrown upon our history; and the beginner who uses it will be laying in sound knowledge. . . . Will convey to the young reader an excellent idea of the development of the English people. . . . Altogether we doubt whether it would be possible to find a more satisfactory manual to put into the hands of a beginner."

British Weekly—"In little more than 350 pages she has sketched the rise and development of England, and has striven to present 'a vivid picture of the life, the difficulties, and the achievements of our ancestors; showing how our laws, our constitution, our trade, and our colonies have arisen.' The work could scarcely be better done in the space. Those who have read Miss Buckley's scientific works know her exceptional skill as a teacher. That skill is equally conspicuous here."

School Guardian—"One of the best school histories that we have met with, and it is certain to become popular with young students. It is not, as are too many text-books on this subject, a collection of cut-and-dried isolated statements of fact, but a continuous and intelligible whole."

Now Ready. Series I.-IX. Globe 8vo. 5s. each.

Cameos from English History

BY THE AUTHOR OF

THE HEIR OF REDCLYFFE

SERIES I. TO IX.

CONTENTS

FIRST SERIES.—FROM ROLLO TO EDWARD II.

INTRODUCTION.—CAMEO I. Rolf Ganger (900-932).—II. William Longsword and Richard the Fearless (932-996).—III. Youth of the Conqueror (1026-1066).—IV. Earl Godwin (1012-1052).—V. The Two Harolds (1060-1066).—VI. The Norman Invasion (1066).—VII. The Battle of Hastings (1066.)—VIII. The Camp of Refuge (1067-1072).—IX. The last Saxon Bishop (1008-1095).—X. The Conqueror (1066-1087).—XI. The Conqueror's Children (1050-1087).—XII. The Crown and the Mitre (1087-1107).—XIII. The First Crusade (1095-1100).—XIV. The Etheling Family (1010-1159).—XV. The Counts of Anjou (888-1142).—XVI. Visitors of Henry I. (1120-1134).—XVII. The Battle of the Standard (1135-1138).—XVIII. The Snows of Oxford (1138-1154).—XIX.—Youth of Becket (1154-1162).—XX. The Constitutions of Clarendon (1163-1172).—XXI. Death of Becket (1166-1172).—XXII. The Conquest of Ireland (1172).—XXIII. The Rebellious Eaglets (1149-1189).—XXIV. The Third Crusade (1189-1193).—XXV. Arthur of Brittany (1187-1206).—XXVI. The Interdict (1207-1214).—XXVII. Magna Charta (1214-1217).—XXVIII. The Fief of Rome (1217-1254).—XXIX. The Longespees in the Egyptian Crusades (1219-1254).—XXX. Simon de Montfort (1232-1266).—XXXI. The Last of the Crusaders (1267-1291).—XXXII. The Cymry (B.C. 66—A.D. 1269).—XXXIII. The Last and First Prince of Wales (1194-1284).—XXXIV. The English Justinian (1272-1292).—XXXV. The Hammer of the Scots (1292-1305).—XXXVI. The Evil Toll (1294-1305).—XXXVII. Robert the Bruce (1305-1308).—XXXVIII. The Victim of Blacklow Hill (1307-1313).—XXXIX. Bannockburn (1307-1313).—XL. The Knights of the Temple (1292-1316).—XLI. The Barons' Wars (1310-1327).—XLII. Good King Robert's Testament (1314-1329).

SECOND SERIES.—THE WARS IN FRANCE.

CAMEO I. The King and the Brewer of Ghent (1330-1345).—II. The Wars in Brittany (1341-1351).—III. The Most Noble Order of the Garter (1329-1346).—IV. The Siege of Calais (1345-1348).—V. The Battle of Poitiers (1348-1365).—VI. The Eagle of Brittany (1350-1366).—VII. The Castilian Brothers (1350-1369).—VIII. The Decline of the English Power (1368-1374).—IX. Sparks of New Light (1370-1376).—X. The Good Parliament (1376-1377).—XI. Death of Du Guesclin (1377-1380).—XII. King Richard and the Commons (1380-1384).—XIII. The Schism of the West (1378-1392).—XIV. The Plantagenets in Spain (1379-1404).—XV. The Wonderful Parliament and the Merciless Parliament (1368-1387).—XVI. Chevy Chase (1371-1388).—XVII. Thomas of Gloucester (1389-1399).—XVIII. Irish Wars (1270-1399).—XIX. Henry

of Lancaster (1399-1400).—XX. Homildon Hill (1390-1402).—XXI. Owain Glyndwyr (1399-1409).—XXII. The Lollards (1401-1417).—XXIII. Prince Hal (1409-1414).—XXIV. Orleans and Burgundy (1400-1414).—XXV. The Siege of Harfleur (1414).—XXVI. The Field of Agincourt (1415).—XXVII. The Council of Constance (1414-1417).—XXVIII. The Siege of Rouen (1417-1419).—XXIX. The Bridge of Montereau (1419).—XXX. The Treachery of Champtoceaux (1420).—XXXI. The Avenger of France (1420).—XXXII. The Last Campaign (1421-1422).—XXXIII. Dame Jake (1417-1436).—XXXIV. The Parliament of Rats (1424-1426).—XXXV. The Battle of the Herrings (1424-1429).—XXXVI. The Mission of the Maiden (1429-1431).—XXXVII. The Congress of Arras (1429-1435).

THIRD SERIES.—THE WARS OF THE ROSES.

CAMEO I. The Noblest of the Stewarts (1423-1437).—II. The Council of Basle (1431-1448).—III. The Reign of the Ecorcheurs (1435-1440).—IV. The Innocent King (1435-1442).—V. Gloucester and Beaufort (1442-1447).—VI. The Loss of Normandy (1445-1450).—VII. Jack Cade (1450-1451).—VIII. The Red and White Roses (1451-1453).—IX. The Stewart and the Black Douglas (1437-1457).—X. Bishop Reginald Pecock (1443-1464).—XI. The Battle of Castillon (1450-1459).—XII. York and Lancaster (1453-1460).—XIII. How Henry born at Windsor Lost All (1460-1465).—XIV. The Yorkist Weddings (1464-1471).—XV. The King-Maker (1467-1471).—XVI. The Bridge of Pecquigny (1472-1477).—XVII. Clarence and Gloucester (1471-1483).—XVIII. Bell the Cat (1466-1482).—XIX. The Princes in the Tower (1483).—XX. The Last Plantagenet (1483-1485).—XXI. Lambert Simnel (1485-1487).—XXII. Sauchie Burn (1486-1491).—XXIII. The Two Annes (1483-1492).—XXIV. "King Richard IV." (1491-1499).—XXV. Alexander VI. and Savonarola (1484-1499).—XXVI. The Partition of Naples (1493-1502).—XXVII. Chivalry in Italy (1502-1505).—XXVIII. The Spanish and Scottish Marriages (1496-1510).—XXIX. The Dean of St. Paul's and his Friends (1496-1519).—XXX. Julius II. (1506-1513).—XXXI. Flodden Edge (1512-1514).—XXXII. The Battle of the Spurs (1513-1517).—XXXIII. The Pen of Wittenberg (1483-1517).—XXXIV. The Concordat of Bologna (1515-1518).—XXXV. The Choice of the Emperor (1516-1521).—XXXVI. The Diet of Wurms (1520-1523).

FOURTH SERIES.—REFORMATION TIMES.

CAMEO I. The Traitor Constable (1520-1527).—II. The Right Triumphant Cardinal (1526-1530).—III. The Cardinal's Fall (1527-1529). IV. The Confession of Augsburg (1523-1532).—V. Royal Supremacy (1529-1534).—VI. The Beginning of Calvinism (1534-1536).—VII. Four Deaths of Queens (1536-1539).—VIII. The Dissolution of the Monasteries (1536-1541).—IX. Solway Moss (1526-1542).—X. The Treaty of Crespy (1538-1546).—XI. The Castle of St. Andrews (1543-1549).—XII. The First Sitting at Trent (1545-1549).—XIII. The Two Seymours (1547-1548).—XIV. King Edward's First Prayer Book (1547-1549).—XV. The Second Meeting of the Council of Trent (1549-1553).—XVI. King Edward's Second Prayer Book (1550-1552).—XVII. The Twelfth Day Queen (1552-1553).—XVIII. Wyatt's Rebellion (1553-1554).—XIX. Our First Explorers (1496-1554).—XX. The Reconciliation with Rome (1554-1555).—XXI. The Influence of Calvinism on the Reformation (1535-1556).—XXII. The Southwark Commission (1555).—XXIII. The Abdication of Charles V. (1555-1557).—XXIV. The

Persecution (1555-1558).—XXV. Reformation and Counter-Reformation in Ireland (1539-1558).—XXVI. Loss of Calais (1556-1559).—XXVII. The Remodelling of the English Church (1558-1560).—XXVIII. The Fall of the Scottish Church (1549-1560).—XXIX. The Guisard Persecution (1559-1561).—XXX. The O'Neil (1558-1567).—XXXI. The Conference of Poissy (1559-1562).—XXXII. The Two Island Queens (1560-1565).—XXXIII. The Conclusion of the Council of Trent (1562-1565).—INDEX.

FIFTH SERIES.—ENGLAND AND SPAIN.

CAMEO I. The Compact of Bayonne (1565-1566).—II. Kirk of Field (1567).—III. Les Gueux (1564-1567).—IV. The Little Lame Peace (1566-1568).—V. Lochleven Castle (1567-1568).—VI. The Casket Letters (1568-1569).—VII. The Mission of Alva (1567-1568).—VIII. Jarnac and Moncontour (1568-1570).—IX. The Rising of the North (1569-1571).—X. The Ridolfi Plot (1571-1572).—XI. The Revolt of the Netherlands (1568-1572).—XII. The St. Bartholomew (1572).—XIII. The Effects of St. Bartholomew's Day (1572-1573).—XIV. The King of France and Poland (1573-1575).—XV. The Times of Kenilworth (1573-1576).—XVI. Siege of Leyden (1574-1576).—XVII. The Three Parties in France (1575-1578).—XVIII. Don Juan of Austria (1576-1579).—XIX. Great Sailors (1571-1581).—XX. The Raid of Ruthven (1579-1583).—XXI. Elizabeth's Last Suitor (1579-1585).—XXII. Webs and Snares (1583-1584).—XXIII. Babington's Plot (1585-1586).—XXIV. The Crimson of Fotheringhay (1586-1587).—XXV. The Four Henries (1586-1588)—XXVI. Leicester in Holland (1584-1586)—XXVII. The Spanish Armada (1587-1588).—XXVIII. Martin Marprelate (1583-1593).—XXIX. The Nemesis of the S. Bartholomew (1588-1589).—XXX. The Huguenot King (1589-1591).—XXXI. The Abjuration of Henri IV. (1590-1592).—XXXII. The Witches' Storm (1589-1594).—XXXIII. Pacification of France (1592-1599).—XXXIV. The Mariners of England (1589-1596).—XXXV. Death of Philip II. (1595-1598).—XXXVI. The Edict of Nantes (1598-1601).—XXXVII. Tyrone's Rebellion (1594-1602). XXXVIII.— The Last Tudor Tragedy.—INDEX.

SIXTH SERIES.—FORTY YEARS OF STEWART RULE (1603-1643).

CAMEO I. The Scot (1603-1604).—II. The Queen's Old Courtier (1603-1604).—III. The Hampton Court Conference (1603-1606).—IV. The Gunpowder Plot (1604-1607).—V. The Religious Revival in France (1605-1610).—VI. Puritan Ascendancy (1604-1612).—VII. Death of Prince Henry (1612-1614).—VIII. The Addled Parliament and the Last States-General (1613-1617).—IX. The Arminian Persecution (1603-1619).—X. The Articles of Perth (1615-1618).—XI. The Ulster Settlement (1603-1620).—XII. The Snow King and the Queen of Hearts (1613-1620).—XIII. The Spanish Courtship (1620-1623).—XIV. The Ruin of the Palatinate (1621-1624).—XV. The French Alliance (1624-1626).—XVI. Charles's Second Parliament (1626-1627).—XVII. The Siege of Rochelle and the Petition of Right (1625-1629).—XVIII. Wallenstein (1625-1630).—XIX. The Snow King (1630-1632).—XX. The Day of Dupes (1630-1633).—XXI. The Duke of Friedland (1632-1634).—XXII. The Third Parliament Dissolved (1629-1637).—XXIII. Thorough (1632-1637).—XXIV. The Reign of Richelieu (1634-1638).—XXV. The Solemn League and Covenant (1633-1638).—XXVI. The Smoulderings of the Thirty Years' War (1634-1649).—XXVII. The Short Parliament

(1639-1640).—XXVIII. Opening of the Long Parliament (1640-1641).—XXIX. Trial of Strafford (1641).—XXX. The Irish Rebellion (1641-1642).—XXXI.—Privilege of Parliament (1641-1642).—INDEX.

SEVENTH SERIES.—THE REBELLION AND RESTORATION (1642-1678).

CAMEO I. The Setting up of the Standard (1642-1643).—II. The Last Tragedy of Richelieu (1639-1642).—III. The Court at Oxford (1643).—IV. The Covenant in England (1643-1645).—V. Naseby and Bristol (1645).—VI. The Great Marquis (1644-1646).—VII. Army and Parliament (1645-1647).—VIII. The Peace of Munster (1648-1649).—IX. The Isle of Wight (1647-1648).—X. The Regicide (1643-1646).—XI. The First Fronde (1648-1649).—XII. Irish Ravages (1646-1652).—XIII. King of Scots (1649-1651).—XIV. The Cavaliers' Wreck (1651-1653).—XV. The Second Fronde (1650-1653).—XVI. Van Tromp's Broom (1649-1654).—XVII. The Protectorate Abroad (1652-1657).—XVIII. The Protectorate at Home (1653-1658).—XIX. The Peace of the Pyrenees (1656-1661).—XX. Restoration and Retribution (1660-1662).—XXI. The Augustan Age of France (1661-1664).—XXII. The Act of Uniformity (1661-1665).—XXIII. War, Pestilence, and Fire (1664-1667).—XXIV. The Cabal (1667-1670).—XXV. The Secret Treaty of Dover (1668-1672).—XXVI. The Dutch War (1672).—XXVII. The Peace of Nimeguen (1675-1678).—INDEX.

EIGHTH SERIES.—THE END OF THE STEWARTS (1662-1748).

CAMEO I. The Pentland Rising (1662-1678).—II. The Popish Plot (1678-1680).—III. The Killing Time (1679-1685).—IV. Ireland at the Restoration (1660-1683).—V. French Intrigues (1678-1681).—VI. Whig and Tory (1680-1682).—VII. Outside England (1683-1685).—VIII. The Rye-House Plot (1683-1685).—IX. Monmouth's Rebellion (1685-1686).—X. The Revocation of the Edict of Nantes (1679-1688).—XI. Passive Resistance (1685-1688).—XII. The Seven Bishops (1688).—XIII. Flight of James II. (1688-1689).—XIV. Derry and the Boyne (1689-1698).—XV. Queen Mary II. (1690-1694).—XVI. The Act of Settlement (1695-1701).—XVII. The South Sea Bubble (1695-1701).—XVIII. The Camisards (1702-1705).—XIX. Philip V. and Charles III. (1705-1712). XX. The Setting Sun of France (1694-1712).—XXI. Sacheverell Riot (1710-1714).—XXII. The Peace of Utrecht (1710-1713).—XXIII. The Ends of Two Reigns (1713-1715).—XXIV. Two New Reigns (1714-1715).—XXV. The Fifteen (1715-1716).—XXVI. Bubbles—French and English (1718-1722).—XXVII. Peter and Charles (1718-1724).—XXVIII. The Quadruple Alliance (1716-1720).—XXIX. Jacobite Schemes (1717-1725).—XXX. End of the Regency (1720-1726).—XXXI. The French Church under Fleury (1716-1724).—XXXII. Philosophy in Seedtime (1700-1727).—XXXIII. The Pragmatic Sanction (1722-1727).—XXXIV. The War of the Polish Election (1730-1736.—XXXV. The Queen and the Minister (1727-1739).—XXXVI. The Georgian Colony (1724-1744).—XXXVII. What came of Jenkyns' Ears (1738-1741).—XXXVIII. Pro Rege Mariâ Theresiâ (1740-1743).—XXXIX. The Battle of Dettingen (1743).—XL. The Battle of Fontenoy (1745).—XLI. Preston Pans (1745).—XLII. The March to Derby (1745).—XLIII. Culloden (1746).—XLIV. The Wanderer (1746).—XLV. The Bitter End (1746-1748).—INDEX.

NINTH SERIES.—THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. With Maps. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

FRENCH HISTORY

FOR SCHOOLS

BY

KATHARINE STEPHEN

VICE-PRINCIPAL OF NEWNHAM COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

WITH COLOURED MAPS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved.

675

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

In republishing this book, written many years ago for children, I have tried to make it suitable for somewhat older readers than those to whom it was at first addressed. It is still intended for young people who have no previous knowledge of the subject, but it is supposed that they will be of an age when proper names, dates, and tables of events are looked upon as helps, not hindrances, to the matter in hand.

CONTENTS

Chapter 1. Ancient Gaul ; 2. Cæsar in Gaul (B.C. 58-51) ; 3. Gaul a Roman Province (B.C. 70-250 A.D.) ; 4. Conquest of Gaul by the Franks (300 A.D.) ; 5. The Merovingian Kings (481-687) ; 6. The Mayors of the Palace (687-741) ; 7. The Carolingians (741-768) ; 8. Charlemagne (771-814) ; 9. Descendants of Charlemagne (814-843) ; 10. The Last Carolingian Kings (843-987) ; 11. Hugh Capet—Robert (987-1031) ; 12. Henry I. (1031-1060) ; 13. Philip I. (1060-1108) ; 14. Louis VI. (1108-1137) ; 15. Louis VII. (1137-1180) ; 16, 17. Philip II. (1180-1223) ; 18. Louis VIII. (1223-1226) ; 19. Louis IX. (1226-1270) ; 20. Philip III. (1270-1286) ; 21. Philip IV. (1286-1314) ; 22. Louis X. (1314-1316) ; 23. Philip V. (1316-1322) ; 24. Charles IV. (1322-1328) ; 25. Philip VI. (1328-1350) ; 26. John (1350-1364) ; 27. Charles V. (1364-1380) ; 28, 29. Charles VI. (1380-1422) ; 30. Charles VII. (1422-1461) ; 31. Louis XI. (1461-1483) ; 32. Charles VIII. (1483-1498) ; 33. Louis XII. (1498-1515) ; 34, 35. Francis I. (1515-1547) ; 36. Henry II. (1547-1559) ; 37. Francis II. (1559-1560) ; 38. Charles IX. (1560-1574) ; 39. Henry III. (1574-1589) ; 40, 41. Henry IV. (1589-1610) ; 42. Louis XIII. (1610-1643) ; 43, 44, 45. Louis XIV. (1643-1715) ; 46. Louis XV. (1715-1774) ; 47. Louis XVI. (1774-1792) ; 48. The Revolution (1789-1792) ; 49. The Revolution (1792-1795) ; 50. Directory and Consulate (1795-1800) ; 51. The Emperor Napoleon (1804-1815). Conclusion.

Appendices.—Dates of English and French Kings—Wives of the French Kings—Summary of Principal Events.

LIST OF MAPS.

I. Gallia ; II. The Empire of the Franks in 507 ; III. The Empire of Charlemagne ; IV. France in the Eleventh Century ; V. France in the Thirteenth Century ; VI. France in 1328-1461 ; VII. France (1589-1610) ; VIII. France (1643-1715) ; IX. Europe (1811).

A USEFUL BOOK OF REFERENCE

New Edition. Revised. Extra Crown 8vo. Price 8s. 6d. net

A HANDBOOK

OF

EUROPEAN HISTORY

476—1871

CHRONOLOGICALLY ARRANGED

BY

ARTHUR HASSALL, M.A.

STUDENT, TUTOR, AND FORMERLY CENSOR OF CHRIST CHURCH, OXFORD

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

677

CONTENTS

PART I.

Outlines of European History—
I.—Genealogies.
II.—Notes.

PART II.

Summaries, Genealogies, and Lists of Sovereigns.

PRESS OPINIONS

English Historical Review.—"It will be a useful book of reference, embodying much more information than the well-known epitome of Ploetz."

American Historical Review.—"It is in all respects the best book of its kind and on its period in the English language."

Westminster Review.—"Ought to prove most useful to students. The dates and events are given in the shortest possible form, but the leading facts in the history of the principal States of Europe are clearly indicated."

Cambridge Review.—"A most welcome work. . . . Now that some knowledge of European History is to be a *sine qua non* for the Historical Tripos, this book should command a large sale in Cambridge, for it has, we believe, no parallel in English."

University Extension Journal.—"Mr. Hassall has acquitted himself of a difficult task with extraordinary success. . . . So those who are entering upon the study of any period of European History—and indeed to maturer students—this volume is likely to prove an invaluable ally."

Journal of Education.—"Shows evidences of great care and wide reading, and is, we think, likely to be useful to students and teachers."

Times.—"As everything in such a case must depend on the accuracy and historical acumen of the compiler, students and teachers may well be congratulated on obtaining the assistance of a trained historian like Mr. Hassall."

Speaker.—"Mr. Hassall has done a useful piece of work with care and judgment, and we have no doubt that many a bewildered student will learn to use his volume and to bless his name."

Pall Mall Gazette.—"We welcome the 'Handbook of European History' compiled by Arthur Hassall, M.A. Such a book has long been wanted by writers and readers to whom ready access to dates of important events is a necessity, and Mr. Hassall's book promises to fill the void most adequately. . . . The idea of the book is excellent, and it will be widely appreciated."

Manchester Guardian.—"Such a work is, if well executed, of the highest value as a book of general reference, no less than as a help to students and teachers of history. We are glad to say that, as far as we have been able to test it, Mr. Hassall's compilation appears both accurate and comprehensive."

GERMANY.	EASTERN, SOUTHERN, & NORTHERN EUROPE.
1763. Peace of Hubertsburg between Prussia and Austria (Feb. 10) :— (1) The restoration of the *status quo*—Austria restoring Glatz, and Frederick evacuating Saxony. (2) By a secret article Frederick agreed to support the election of the Archduke Joseph as King of the Romans.	**1763.** Peace of Paris between Spain and England (Feb. 10) :— (1) Spain recovered the Philippines and exchanged Florida for Havana. (2) Spain recovered Louisiana from France. (3) England gained the right of cutting logwood in Honduras. Peace is made between Spain and Portugal (Feb. 10). Death of Augustus III of Poland (Oct. 3).
1764. Death of Harrach, President of the Austrian Council of War (1738–1764). A defensive alliance is made between Prussia and Russia (April 11) to guarantee the existing constitutions of Poland and Sweden, to control the election to the Polish throne, and to protect the Polish Dissidents. The Archduke Joseph is elected King of the Romans, the Prussian opposition being withdrawn.	**1764.** Stanislaus Poniatowski, the nephew of the Czartoryski, and the protégé of Russia, was elected King of Poland (Sept. 7).
1765. Death of the Emperor Francis (August 18).	**1765.** Death of Don Philip of Parma. Du Tillot governs Parma during the minority of Ferdinand, and carries out reforms. The Archduke Leopold begins his government of Tuscany.
JOSEPH II, 1765–1790. Married (1) Isabella of Parma. (2) Maria Josepha, daughter of the Elector of Bavaria, the Emperor Charles VII.	
1766. Prussia, with Russia, interferes in Poland on behalf of the Dissidents.	**1766.** D'Aranda succeeds Squillacci, who is dismissed by Charles III. Christian VII, whose wife was a sister of George III, succeeds Frederick V on the Danish throne. William V of Holland begins to rule. Dismissal of Squillacci, owing to riots in Spain.

ENGLAND.	FRANCE.
1763. By the Peace of Paris with France and Spain, England secured (1) St. Vincent, Tobago, Dominica, Grenada, Senegal, Minorca, and the Grenadines, (2) Canada, (3) Florida. Bute is succeeded by Grenville (April), whose Cabinet included Halifax, Egremont, Shelburne, Sandwich, and Gower. Wilkes is attacked and becomes notorious. The Bedford section join the Government (Sept.), and Shelburne retires.	**1763.** Peace of Paris (Feb. 10) between England and France:— (1) France loses Canada, Nova Scotia, and Cape Breton, and the Mississippi becomes the boundary between the English and the French. (2) France retained certain fishing rights off Newfoundland and in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. (3) France regains Martinique, Guadaloupe and St. Lucia—the English kept Grenada, the Grenadines, Tobago, Dominica, and St. Vincent. (4) Goree was restored to France, and Senegal given to the English. (5) French settlements in India were restored, but no French fortifications permitted. (6) France gave up Minorca in exchange for Belleisle. (7) France and England to retire from the German war. A royal Declaration establishes the freedom of the corn trade in France (May 25). Choiseul-Praslin is Minister of Foreign Affairs from 1763 to 1766.
1764. Expulsion of Wilkes from the House of Commons (Jan. 19) for having written a seditious libel.	**1764.** Death of Madame de Pompadour. Suppression of the Jesuits in France (Nov. 26).
1765. The Stamp Act is passed (Mar. 10). Burke enters Parliament. Discussions on a Regency Bill alienate the King from his Ministers, and the Rockingham Ministry succeeds that of Grenville (July).	**1765.** Death of the Dauphin (Dec.). His son (Louis XVI) becomes heir to the throne.
1766. The Stamp Act is repealed (Feb. 21), and general warrants are declared illegal. A Declaratory Act is passed, declaring England's right to tax America. Fall of the Rockingham Ministry (July). The Pitt-Grafton Ministry succeeds it. An English force occupies the Falkland Islands.	**1766.** Choiseul again became Minister of Foreign Affairs, remaining also Minister of War; and Choiseul-Praslin takes over the Marine. Lorraine falls to the French Crown on the death of Stanislaus Leszczynski. Louis XV attacks the *Parlement* of Paris, and declares that the sovereign power resides in himself (March). An Order of Council orders the observance of the Gallican maxims of 1682, and repeals the Order of 1731 for silence.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

A HISTORY OF ROME
FOR BEGINNERS

FROM THE FOUNDATION OF THE CITY TO THE DEATH OF AUGUSTUS

BY

EVELYN SHIRLEY SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

LATE FELLOW OF EMMANUEL COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE
AUTHOR OF A TRANSLATION OF POLYBUS; A HISTORY OF ROME, ETC.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS, MAPS, AND CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PREFACE

THIS book is not a mere abbreviation of my larger history. It has been written for the most part entirely afresh, and is intended to put the main events of Roman history, both in regard to political development and imperial extension, as simply and briefly as seemed possible. Military events, as such, are given with a minimum of detail, and the effects of campaigns have been dwelt upon rather than their nature and circumstances. Whether I have succeeded in hitting the mean between a Primer and an advanced History I must leave to the judgment of my readers: but that has been my aim. The book, such as it is, owes a great deal to the kind criticisms and suggestions of my friend and former colleague at Eton, Mr. C. H. EVERARD, formerly Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, whose patience in reading the proofs I am glad to acknowledge with gratitude.

Crown 8vo. Price 8s. 6d. With Maps and Plans

A HISTORY OF ROME TO THE BATTLE OF ACTIUM

By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

PRESS OPINIONS

Times—"In his eight hundred pages, well-arranged with a running analysis and a good index, and with a list of authorities given at the end of every chapter, Mr. Shuckburgh has accumulated an enormous mass of facts, and has stated them clearly, without *parti pris*, and, so far as we can judge from a very cursory inspection, accurately in the main. . . . We cannot doubt that so careful a volume as this is destined for a long time to come to be the accepted general history of Rome in the higher forms of schools."

Athenæum—"The style of the book is vigorous and interesting. The story seldom flags. . . . We must praise Mr. Shuckburgh for his careful dealing with geography, shown in many conscientious attempts to identify towns or battle-sites by the aid of the latest researches of foreign students. We must give him especial credit for the way in which he brings out the tactical and strategical meaning of many battles, which, when read in many histories, merely produce the effect of 'confused noise and garments rolled in blood.' We have already praised the vigour and spirit of his warlike narrative."

Saturday Review—"As a book for boys—the best boys in a good school—this *History of Rome* is admirable in the thoroughness and thoughtfulness with which it expounds the conquering mission of the Senate and people of Rome. The other, and hardly a less merit, is the lucidness and attractiveness of the style."

Daily News—Mr. Shuckburgh belongs to the modern school of writers who see something in history besides battles and sieges, and court ceremonial and intrigue. . . . The social progress of the Romans, their arts and letters, come in for a share of attention in the course of Mr. Shuckburgh's clear and skilfully condensed narrative. The references to the source of Roman history in the ancient writers at the end of the chapters should prove particularly serviceable to those for whom more particularly the work is intended."

Daily Chronicle—"He brings to his arduous task an adequate equipment of classical knowledge, comparative study, and facility in narrative composition. . . . The marginal headings are exceedingly useful; the sketch-maps and plans are practically indispensable; and the lists of provinces and colonies, and the figures of the census at successive dates, placed at the head of various chapters, are important artificial helps to the clear and full grasping of the expansion of the Roman power."

Manchester Guardian—"It supplies us with a full, accurate, vigorous, and, on the whole, carefully-balanced narrative of the history of Rome down to the point where Mr. Bury takes it up. Rome's conquest of the Mediterranean world forms its main thread, but the transformation of her constitution and society are allotted proportionate space, down to the time of the Gracchi, in separate chapters. Notes on special points, and references to authorities, are given with discretion, and two special features which deserve commendation have been introduced into the book,—lists of colonies and provinces, with the dates of their foundation and the acquisition, and numbers of the census printed at the head of the chapters, and a very full marginal analysis in italics. . . . A good index is provided, and there are twenty-four maps and plans in the text."

Crown 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.

THE HISTORY

OF THE

ROMAN REPUBLIC

ABRIDGED FROM THE HISTORY BY
PROFESSOR MOMMSEN

BY

C. BRYANS
ASSISTANT-MASTER IN DULWICH COLLEGE

AND

F. J. R. HENDY
ASSISTANT-MASTER IN FETTES COLLEGE

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

PREFACE

PROBABLY few whose duty it is to teach Roman history in schools will deny that some such work as the present has too long been needed. It is for men thus engaged to judge whether this book meets their need. It would be alike impertinent and superfluous to dilate on the merits of Professor Mommsen's history: those merits have won recognition from all qualified judges, and have long established his position as the

prince of Roman historians. Unfortunately the size of his history is beyond the compass of ordinary schoolboys; nay, possibly, others besides schoolboys have shrunk from attempting so formidable a task. Our abridgment of his history must of necessity give but a feeble and inadequate idea of the original; but something will have been accomplished if we have given some conception, however faint, of that original, and have induced fresh inquirers to read for themselves those pages so bright with wisdom and imagination. There has been no attempt to hold the balance between Professor Mommsen and his rival Ihne, nor to answer the criticisms of Professor Freeman. Such efforts, even if we had the ability to make them, would be manifestly out of place in such a work as this. Occasionally, indeed, conflicting views have been indicated in a note; and the authorities have been studied, but our text contains the views of Professor Mommsen. Whatever merits may belong to this work should be ascribed to another; we must be held responsible for its defects. Our object has been to present the salient points clearly, and as far as possible, to escape dulness, the Nemesis of the abridger. Consequently we have tried to avoid writing down to a boy's level, a process invariably resented by the boy himself. Inverted commas indicate that the passage is directly taken from the original. The requirements of space have necessitated the omission of a special chapter on Literature, Art, Religion, Economy, etc.; nor have we thought it wise to insert a few maps or illustrations of coins, works of art, etc. An atlas is really indispensable, and one is, we believe, shortly to be published specially designed to illustrate this period. We have to express our great indebtedness to Professor Dickson for allowing us to make free use of his translation, the merits of which it would be difficult to overpraise. Our gratitude is also due to Mr. Fowler, of Lincoln College, Oxford, and to Mr. Matheson, of New College, Oxford. The former kindly revised the proof sheets of the chapter on Authorities, and gave valuable suggestions. The latter was good enough to revise all the proof sheets of the history, in the preparation of which we often found much assistance from his very useful "Outline of Roman History." We have also to thank Mr. H. E. Goldschmidt, of Fettes College, Edinburgh, for a careful revision of a large portion of the proofs.

While our history was in the press the third volume of Professor Mommsen's "Römisches Staatsrecht" appeared. Where possible, we have added references to it in our lists of authorities.

CONTENTS

BOOK FIRST—The Period Anterior to the Abolition of the Monarchy, Ch. I.-V.; BOOK SECOND—From the Abolition of the Monarchy in Rome to the Union of Italy, Ch. VI.-XI.; BOOK THIRD—From the Union of Italy to the Subjugation of Carthage and the Greek States, Ch. XII.-XVIII.; BOOK FOURTH—The Revolution, Ch. XIX.-XXVII. BOOK FIFTH—The Establishment of the Military Monarchy, Ch. XXVIII.-XXXVIII.

of the river Enipeus, which intersects the plain stretching southward from Larissa. Pompeius pitched his camp on the right bank, along the slope of Cynoscephalae. His entire army was assembled, and he had now eleven legions numbering 47,000 men and 7000 horse, while Caesar was still expecting two legions from Aetolia and Thessaly, and two which were arriving by way of Illyria from Italy; his eight legions did not number more than twenty-two thousand men and his cavalry but one thousand troopers. All military reasons urged Pompeius to fight soon, and the impatience of the emigrants had doubtless more weight than these reasons. The senators considered their triumph secure. Already there was strife about filling up Caesar's pontificate, and houses were hired in the Forum for the next elections. Great indignation was excited when Pompeius hesitated to cross the rivulet which separated the camps. He was only delaying the battle, they alleged, in order to perpetuate his part of Agamemnon and to rule the longer over so many noble lords. The general yielded, and prepared to attack. The battle-field was almost the same on which, a hundred and fifty years ago, the Romans had laid the foundation of their Eastern dominion. The right of the Pompeians rested on the Enipeus, Caesar's left upon the broken ground in front of the river. The other wings were both out in the plain, and each was covered by cavalry and light troops. The plan of Pompeius was to scatter with his cavalry the weak band of horsemen opposite to him, and then to take Caesar's right wing in the rear. But Caesar, foreseeing the rout of his cavalry, had stationed behind his right flank about two thousand of his best legionaries. As the enemy's cavalry galloped round the line, driving Caesar's horsemen before them, they were met and thrown into confusion by this unexpected infantry attack, and galloped from the field of battle.* This unexpected repulse of the cavalry raised the courage of the

* It was in this attack that the well-known direction of Caesar to his troops to strike at the faces of the enemy's horsemen was given. The infantry, acting in an irregular way against cavalry, were not to throw their pila, but to use them as spears, and, to be more effective, were to thrust at the faces of the troopers. It was probably the rough wit of the camp which suggested the idea that the Pompeian cavalry fled for fear of scars on their faces.

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 8s. 6d.

A History of Greece

TO THE DEATH OF

ALEXANDER THE GREAT

BY

J. B. BURY, M.A.

HON. LITT.D. DURHAM; HON. LL.D. EDINBURGH; CORRESPONDING MEMBER OF THE IMPERIAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES, ST. PETERSBURG; FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE; AND REGIUS PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF DUBLIN

WITH MAPS AND PLANS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

686

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

In determining the form and character of this book, I have been prompted by two convictions. One is that while, in writing a history based on the original authorities and from one's own personal point of view, it is natural and certainly easier to allow it to range into several volumes, its compression into a single volume often produces a more useful book. In the case of a new history of Greece, it seemed worth while to undertake the more laborious task. The other opinion which I venture to hold is this. So far as history is concerned, those books which are capable of enlisting the interest of mature readers seem to me to be best also for informing younger students. Therefore, while my aim is to help education, this book has in view a wider circle than those merely who are going through a course of school or university discipline.

It was a necessary consequence of the limitations of space which I imposed upon myself, that literature and art, philosophy and religion, should be touched upon only when they directly illustrate, or come into some specially intimate connexion with, the political history. It will be found that I have sometimes interpreted this rule liberally; but it is a rule which could be the more readily adopted as so many excellent works dealing with art, literature, and philosophy are now easily accessible. The interspersion, in a short political history, of a few unconnected chapters dealing, as they must deal, inadequately with art and literature seems useless and inartistic.

CONTENTS

Introductory.—Greece and the Aegean.

Chapter 1. The Beginnings of Greece and the Heroic Age; 2. The Expansion of Greece; 3. Growth of Sparta; 4. The Union of Attica and the Foundation of the Athenian Democracy; 5. Growth of Athens; 6. The Advance of Persia to the Aegean; 7. The Perils of Greece. The Persian and Punic Invasions; 8. The Foundation of the Athenian Empire; 9. The Athenian Empire under the Guidance of Pericles; 10. The War of Athens with the Peloponnesians (431-421 B.C.); 11. The Decline and Downfall of the Athenian Empire; 12. The Spartan Supremacy and the Persian War; 13. The Revival of Athens and her Second League; 14. The Hegemony of Thebes; 15. The Syracusan Empire and the Struggle with Carthage; 16. Rise of Macedonia; 17. The Conquest of Persia; 18. The Conquest of the Far East.

Chronological Table; Notes and References; Index.

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

and a usurper had arisen, pretending to be the dead Smerdis, to whom he bore a remarkable likeness. Cambyses went in haste to crush the false Smerdis. But, as he passed through Syria, he "found death by his own hand," as is related in a great writing on the rock of Behistun. The next heir to the Persian throne was a certain Hystaspes, who was satrap of Parthia and had a son named Darius. But Hystaspes made no attempt to secure his right, and the false Smerdis established himself so firmly that, as Darius wrote afterwards in that famous inscription of the rock, "No Persian nor Mede dared to oppose him." But Darius had different thoughts from his father; and conspiring with six nobles he killed the usurper and became king himself. In the first years of his reign his force and ability were proved in the task of quelling rebellions which broke out in almost all parts of the wide realm which Cyrus had put together. Elam, Babylonia, Media, Armenia revolted; a new false Smerdis arose; Babylon had to be twice besieged. Having established his power firmly and crushed all resistance, Darius recorded for future ages the hardly won successes of his first years, in an inscription on the lofty rock of Behistun on the upper course of the river Choaspes. The writing is in the Persian, the Susic, and the Babylonian languages.

Accession of Darius (Dârajavahuš), 521 B.C.

(Babylon taken, (1) Feb. 520 B.C., (2) 519 B.C.)

Inscription of Bagistan.

By wedding Atossa, the daughter of Cyrus and widow of her brother Cambyses, Darius linked himself closely to the family of his predecessors. He proceeded to reorganise the administration of his dominion. He extended the system of satrapies or governments, and the whole realm was divided into twenty such satrapies. West of the Halys, the old kingdom of Lydia consisted of three provinces, but subject to two satraps: the Ionian and the Lydian under one governor who resided at Sardis; the Phrygian which included the Greek cities of the Propontis under a governor whose seat was at Dascylion. These satraps did not interfere in the local affairs of the Greek cities, which were ruled by despots; and the despots might do much as they pleased, so long as they paid tribute duly and furnished military contingents when required. The despots liked the Persian rule which secured their power, and this explains the noteworthy fact that the Greeks of Asia Minor made no attempt to shake off the Persian yoke during the troubles which ushered in the reign of Darius. It is possible too that their condition under the rule of Cambyses was better than under Darius; for Darius is said to have instituted a fixed yearly tribute instead of irregular contributions. Commerce, however, was furthered by this king's monetary reforms, and by his improvement of the road-system in Persia. He adopted the bimetallic coinage which Croesus had introduced in Lydia; and the chief piece of gold money was always known in Greece by his

Atossa.

Western satrapies: 1. (a) Ionian, (b) Lydian, 2. Phrygian.

Tyrants under Persian rule.

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Please state the Numbers required

Now Ready. Numbers 1 *to* 20. *Price* 3*d. each*

MACMILLAN'S

Official Drawing Books

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

Standard I. (1) Easy Patterns and Familiar Objects on Squared Paper; (2) Easy Patterns and Familiar Objects on Plain Paper.—*Standard II.:* (3) Simple Patterns—Ruler and Freehand Exercises combined; (4) Familiar Objects—Ruler and Freehand Exercises combined.—*Standard III.:* (5) Simple Patterns—Ruler and Freehand Exercises combined; Familiar Objects—Ruler and Freehand Exercises combined; (7) Freehand—Radiation—Curves.—*Standard IV.:* (8) Freehand and Easy Patterns; (9) Scales and Drawing to Scale; (10) Simple Light and Shade—Objects and Ornament.—*Standard V.:* (11) Freehand Drawing; (12) Geometrical Drawing; (13) Model Drawing; (14) Simple Light and Shade—Animals and Figures.—*Standard VI.:* (15) Freehand Drawing; (16) Model Drawing; (17) *Geometrical Drawing with Sections; (18) *Plans and Elevations; (19) Light and Shade—Figures and Animals.—*Standard VII. and P.-T.s.:* (20) Flowers.

* Not required from girls.

Now Ready. 4to. Price 7s. 6d.

Geometrical Drawing

FOR ARMY AND NAVY CANDIDATES AND PUBLIC SCHOOL CLASSES

BY

EDMUND C. PLANT, C.B.

INSTRUCTOR IN GEOMETRICAL AND MECHANICAL DRAWING, MILITARY SIDE, AND NAVAL CLASS, CLIFTON COLLEGE

Volume I.

PRACTICAL PLANE GEOMETRY

With an Appendix on the Construction of Scales

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

PREFACE

THE great value of a course of instruction in Geometrical Drawing in all schools, is now fully recognized in this country. It has a double educational value: first on account of the facilities it offers for acquiring a practical knowledge of geometrical constructions, and second on account of the training it gives in habits of neatness and exactness: points of the highest importance, which are too frequently overlooked in early training.

The want of a text-book which systematically classifies the many hundreds of geometrical problems that require solution, and at the same time presents in its diagrams examples of finished mechanical draftmanship, has long been felt. From the very high average of marks obtained in the various public examinations, which has resulted from the teaching of this subject under the

system of grouping of problems herein set forth, I am induced to offer this work, in the hope that it may be found of value, both to teachers in instructing large sets or classes, and also to individual students. It is also hoped that it will enable the latter to make rapid progress when the assistance of a teacher cannot readily be obtained. An additional reason for presenting this work at this particular time is that under the new conditions for admission to Woolwich and Sandhurst a certain amount of Solid and Descriptive Geometry has to be prepared, full instructions on which are given in Volume II. of this work.

In order that the student may have before him a standard of draftmanship which he may readily reach, the diagrams of this work are from photographs of drawings made by the author and his assistants.

EDMD. C. PLANT.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION.

GEOMETRICAL PROBLEMS IN GROUPS—

A. Elementary problems, including the construction of angles by protractor scale and scale of chords.
B. The construction of simple rectilinear figures of three or four sides.
C. To inscribe circles and semicircles in simple rectilinear figures.
D. To inscribe any regular polygon in a circle.
E. To describe any regular polygon about a circle.
F. To construct any regular polygon when the length of one of its sides or of a diagonal is given.
G. To inscribe x equal circles or semicircles in a circle; also to describe x equal circles about a circle.
H. To inscribe x equal circles or semicircles in a regular polygon. Also to describe x equal circles about a regular polygon.
I. To inscribe a circle in all the figures capable of containing it.
J. To inscribe a square in all the figures capable of containing it.
K. To inscribe an equilateral triangle in all the figures capable of containing it.
L. The construction of angles without the use of a protractor scale or scale of chords.
M. Proportional lines and their application.
N. The construction of irregular polygons and their reduction to squares of equal area.
O. The construction of segments and sectors of circles capable of containing given angles, with their application.
P. To divide circles and rectilinear figures into equal or proportional areas.
Q. The construction of triangles from given conditions.
R. Straight lines tangenital to given circles, and circles tangenital to given straight lines.
S. Circles tangenital to given circles; also to given lines and circles in combination.
T. To draw a figure similar to a given figure x times its area.
U. To draw any rectilinear figure of a given area.
V. To draw a triangle or parallelogram of a given altitude or base and having its area equal to that of a given figure.
W. To draw a figure equal in area to the sum or difference of the areas of two or more given figures.
X. The construction of the ellipse and its tangents.
Y. The construction of various geometrical curves.
Z. Geometrical designs.

APPENDIX—

The construction of scales.

A Specimen Copy of Part I. will be presented on application

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Part I., 2s. 6d.; Part II., 4s. 6d.

PRACTICAL
Plane and Solid Geometry

WITH AN

INTRODUCTION TO GRAPHIC STATICS

BY

J. HARRISON, M.INST. M.E., ETC.

WHITWORTH SCHOLAR

INSTRUCTOR IN MECHANICS AND DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY, ROYAL COLLEGE OF SCIENCE, LONDON

AND

G. A. BAXANDALL

ASSISTANT INSTRUCTOR, ROYAL COLLEGE OF SCIENCE, LONDON

PART I.—ELEMENTARY

ADAPTED TO THE ELEMENTARY STAGE OF THE SOUTH KENSINGTON SYLLABUS

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

PART II.—ADVANCED

ADAPTED TO THE ADVANCED STAGE OF THE SOUTH KENSINGTON SYLLABUS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

692

Teachers of Descriptive Geometry are acquainted with the difficulty which beginners experience in fully comprehending the significance of the various devices by which the forms and positions of objects are represented. The first care of a teacher is to ensure that the student shall acquire the faculty of readily forming a correct idea of the relations which exist between the planes of projection, the lines and figures drawn on paper, and the shapes and positions of the corresponding objects in space. This consideration has been the main factor in determining the arrangement of the subject-matter of this work and its method of treatment.

OPINIONS OF PART I.

Practical Engineer.—"The book altogether is one which we have pleasure and confidence in recommending both to students and teachers alike. As a preparatory text-book for the elementary stage of the South Kensington Syllabus it is undoubtedly the best that has yet been published."

Nature.—"This is a work which is very carefully compiled, and from which a student can extract for himself a great deal of information without outside assistance."

Manchester Guardian.—"The explanations seem clear, and instructions are given for the construction of cardboard models, which should be very helpful to the beginner."

Scotsman.—"It gives a well-ordered and serviceable account of its subject, which will prove especially useful to those who have to go through the examinations of the Science and Art Department."

OF PART II.

Oxford Magazine.—"We recommend the book most highly."

Educational News.—"This very complete treatise has the stamp of thoroughness throughout. Every branch of the subject is treated in a most interesting fashion. The all-important fact that this subject is of no use to the practical man is never lost sight of, and the author's experience in the College of Science enable them to set down with some authority what they have found to be the shortest and clearest methods of working. . . . The paper and type, as well as the style of setting out the problems, are all that can be desired."

Industries and Iron.—"A very useful work."

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book from their Lending Library for Teachers

Now Ready. Second Edition. Revised and Enlarged.
Royal 4to. Price 4s. 6d.

BLACK-BOARD DRAWING

BY

M. SWANNELL

CONTENTS

OBJECTS FROM THE CIRCLE
THE OVAL AND ELLIPSE
OBJECTS DERIVED FROM THE OVAL
SPIRAL FIGURES
COMMON OBJECTS
FISH
LEAVES—TREES
FLOWERS
INSECTS AND SPIDERS
BIRDS
LEGS AND ARMS
ANIMALS
SHADED OBJECTS
MODEL DRAWING
THE HUMAN FIGURE
ILLUSTRATIONS FOR NUMBER LESSONS
ILLUSTRATIONS FOR GEOGRAPHY LESSONS
ILLUSTRATIONS FOR HISTORY LESSONS
ILLUSTRATIONS FOR STORIES

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
694

PRESS OPINIONS

Educational Times.—"Unquestionably the weak or timid hand will be greatly assisted by these progressive aids."

Speaker.—"The plates which illustrate the lessons are carefully graduated, and the way in which the black-board may be turned to ingenious account in almost every department of work in infant schools is admirably shown. The hints to teachers are both pithy and suggestive, and it is easy to see that a great deal of pains has been taken to make this unconventional school-book not less attractive than practical."

Schoolmaster.—"A wonderfully useful handbook that ought to be as much a part of every working teacher's equipment as is his duster and chalk. The feature of the book is the twenty-seven large plates of stiff black paper, on which are delineated in white a multitude of suggestive designs for black-board illustrations. The author's notes and explanations are also very helpful. Every teacher who sees this book will straightway want to possess it."

Guardian.—"Not only in elementary schools, but in those of a higher grade, an ability to draw on the black-board what may be easily recognised by the scholars is a desirable, and often indispensable, accomplishment for a teacher. Those who have no friend or instructor to teach them will find *Black-board Drawing* (Macmillan's), by M. Swannell, an excellent guide, though it is chiefly intended to help them to teach children. The circle is insisted on as an important foundation, ovals and spirals coming later. On the twenty-seven plates are shown not only designs, to which children may be led on from Froebel's 'gifts,' but how the black-board may be made a useful adjunct to the object-lesson, especially if the children do the drawing. The shading in particular is excellent."

Academy.—"In this book will be found copious and clear directions which cannot fail to be understood by the most stupid of parents. By a conscientious use of it, and the excellent illustrations which it contains, together with a small black-board and a piece of chalk, a child with the slightest turn for drawing can be conducted through circles to pictures of clocks, bicycles, fish, fowl, and finally St. Paul's Cathedral."

Glasgow Herald.—"Its distinctive excellence is that the lessons are well graded, and that the instructions accompanying each are clearly drawn up."

Scotsman.—"The lessons are designed to teach young children to draw for themselves on the black-board and to illustrate geography and arithmetic. The examples of drawings actually made by children are most interesting testimony to the utility and attractiveness of the exercise which the book regulates so well, and the album is well worthy of the attention of teachers of children."

The Publishers will be pleased to lend Copies of this book from their Lending Library for Teachers.

Now Ready. 4to. *Price* 4s. 6d.

A GRADUATED COURSE

OF

DRAWING FOR INFANTS

BY

C. H. FOWLER

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

THE REV. S. W. SHARPE, M.A., lately H.M. Chief Inspector of Schools, writes as follows:

"I have great pleasure in recommending Miss Fowler's *Course of Drawing* for adoption or for suggestion in Infants' Schools. I have been much impressed with the variety of design and the originality of combination worked by infants in my presence. A course which cultivates inventiveness side by side with precision must be far more valuable than one which begins and ends with the mere reproduction of a copy. The work itself shows that ingenuity and accurate execution may be developed *pari passu* by a well-planned system."

A COURSE OF KINDERGARTEN DRAWING FOR INFANTS AND STANDARD I.

DIRECTIONS.—This course should be worked out first on *slates*, and shaded with slate pencils. When a fair amount of proficiency is acquired the drawing may be done on *paper* ruled ¼" sq., the children in Standard I. on ½" sq., the latter giving greater freedom of movement owing to the length of line. *Shading* on paper to be done in coloured crayons; water colours may be used on large squares.

FIRST SERIES—(ON SLATES ONLY, FOR BABIES' CLASS)

Suitable for Children between the ages of Three and Five

PERPENDICULAR AND HORIZONTAL LINES

Slates.—8" × 6" ruled ½" square.

Pencils.—Sticks only, with sharpened points. Short pieces must never be used. Great attention must be paid to holding the pencil in proper position, *i.e.* at right angles to the line drawn. Encourage free movement of fingers, and guard against holding the pencil too near the point.

Shading.—This must not be commenced until the children are able to draw good lines.

All shading to be done in *straight lines*, running parallel to the perpendicular lines in square.

SECOND SERIES

PERPENDICULAR, HORIZONTAL, AND TRUE SLANTING LINES

For Children between the ages of Five and Six

Slates.—Small slates may still be used ruled ½" square.

Original designs may be started after working through this series. When commencing designs at this early stage it is advisable to give the children a centre and allow them to add to it.

THIRD SERIES—INTRODUCING HALF SLANTING LINES

Suitable for Children between the ages of Six and Seven

Slates.—Ruled ¼".

Paper.—Ruled ¼" squares, shading to be done with coloured crayons. After giving a few copies original designs may be started.

FOURTH SERIES—INTRODUCING CURVES

Suitable for Standard I.

After working through the course of curves, introduce gradually copies containing curved lines.

Original designs.—It will be found a good plan for the children to draw a design on slates, and then to copy it on paper; finally they may design on paper only.

Natural forms.—After working through the course up to this point, natural forms may be attemped, first on paper ruled with squares, and finally on plain paper.

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book from their Lending Library for Teachers

In Three Parts. Royal 4to. Price 1s. 6d. *each*

THE FIRST ELEMENTS OF SCIENCE

ARRANGED AS

OBSERVATION LESSONS

AND CORRELATED WITH

DRAWING

WRITTEN BY

GEORGE RICKS, B.Sc., LONDON

INSPECTOR OF SCHOOLS, SCHOOL BOARD FOR LONDON

ILLUSTRATED BY

ALFRED WILKINSON, ART MASTER

SUPERINTENDENT OF DRAWING, SCHOOL BOARD FOR LONDON

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

698

EXTRACTS FROM PREFACE

We may roughly classify objects for Object Lessons in order of suitability and fitness.

(1.) Such objects as can be provided readily and cheaply, in sufficient quantity to be distributed to all the members of the class, which can be handled and experimented upon if necessary, and which lend themselves to good Drawing or Modelling Lessons—such as leaves, flowers, fruits, plants, parts of animals, and common objects.

(2.) Such objects as can constantly be seen outside the school-room, but which cannot conveniently be brought iuside—such as the most common domestic animals, fish used for food, spiders, bees, butterflies, atmospheric phenomena, etc.

(3.) Such as can be illustrated only by the lantern or by pictures.

The illustrations are primarily intended for the use of the teacher. Enlargements should be drawn on the blackboard. If the teacher can sketch them rapidly from memory during the lesson so much the better; if not, they should be carefully copied before the lesson is given.

The course to be followed by the children is to draw from the teacher's copy, and thus get a general idea as to how the form should be expressed on paper. They should then draw from the objects themselves; and, lastly, they should sketch the forms from memory. The earlier attempts of the children at sketching will not commend themselves to the eye of the teacher; they will probably be crude and inaccurate and altogether inartistic. This, however, is no cause for discouragement. If the sketches show that reasonable effort has been made to observe accurately, their purpose has been served: for, in Observation Lessons, Drawing, as we have already stated, is introduced not so much for its own sake as for the help it affords in forming the habit of close and accurate observation.

Hints are given here and there as to what may possibly form good subjects for sketching; they must be taken merely as hints; the teacher must, after all, suit the work to the abilities and capacities of the children under his care.

CONTENTS OF PART I.

Lessons I. and II. Leaves. I.—Lesson III. Cork. I.—Lesson IV. Leaves. II.—Lesson V. Cork. II.—Lesson VI. Leaves. III.—Lesson VII. The Potato.—Lessons VIII. and IX. Leaves. IV.—Lesson X. Cotton and Wool. A comparison.—Lesson XI. Acorn and Hazel-Nut.—Lesson XII. Horse-Chestnut and Walnut.—Lesson XIII. Orange and Lemon. A comparison.—Lesson XIV. Garden-Beet and Onion.—Lesson XV. Starch.—Lesson XVI. The Cocoa-Nut.—Lesson XVII. Garden-Spider's Web.—Lesson XVIII. Common Salt.—Lesson XIX. Eggs.—Lesson XX. Milk (Butter and Cheese).—Lesson XXI. Carrot,

Turnip, Radish. A comparison.—Lesson XXII. Clay.—Lesson XXIII. Sugar.—Lessons XXIV.-XXVI. The Cat.—Lesson XXVII. Lime.—Lesson XXVIII. The Dog.—Lesson XXIX. Soda.—Lesson XXX. Alum.—Lesson XXXI. The Tulip.—Lesson XXXII. Olive-Oil.—Lesson XXXIII. Linseed-Oil.

CONTENTS OF PART II.

INTRODUCTION.—Lesson I. The Daffodil.—Lesson II. Water Vapour.—Lesson III. Ice.—Lesson IV. The Buttercup.—Lessons V. and VI. Tea and Coffee.—Lesson VII. The Primrose.—Lesson VIII. Bark Fibres.—Lesson IX. Carbonic Acid Gas.—Lesson X. The Poppy.—Lesson XI. An insect.—Lesson XII. Camphor.—Lesson XIII. The Frog.—Lessons XIV.-XVI. From Egg to Frog.—Lesson XVII. The Toad.—Lesson XVIII. The Great Water Newt.—Lesson XIX. Solvents and Solutions.—Lessons XX. and XXI. Life History of an Insect, Illustrated by the Silk-worm.—Lesson XXII. Shrimps (Cooked).—Lesson XXIII. The Arum.—Lessons XXIV. and XXV. Leather.—Lesson XXVI. Spiders.—Lesson XXVII. Spiders' Webs and their Uses.—Lesson XXVIII. Corn Grains.—Lesson XXIX. Corn Growth.—Lesson XXX. Coal-Gas.—Lesson XXXI. Corn-Ears.—Lesson XXXII. The Herring (the Dead Fish).—Lesson XXXIII. The Herring (Alive).—Lesson XXXIV. The Common Mushroom.—Lesson XXXV. Glass.—Lesson XXXVI. Paraffin-Oil.

CONTENTS OF PART III.

INTRODUCTION.—Lesson I. Leaf Buds. A Lesson for the Spring.—Lessons II. and III. A Flat Fish. The Plaice.—Lesson IV. The Honey-suckle.—Lesson V. and VI. India-rubber.—Lesson VII. The Apple.—Lessons VIII. and IX. Gutta-Percha.—Lesson X. Dandelion.—Lessons XI. and XII. About Common Metals.—Lesson XIII. The Ivy Plant. A Winter Lesson.—Lesson XIV. Gold and Silver.—Lesson XV. Iron.—Lesson XVI. The Scarlet-Runner. Growth.—Lesson XVII. Copper.—Lesson XVIII. Lead.—Lessons XIX. and XX. Beaks of Birds.—Lesson XXI. Tin and Zinc.—Lessons XXII. and XXIII. The Legs and Feet of Birds.—Lesson XXIV. Mercury or Quicksilver.—Lesson XXV. Tongues and their Uses.—Lessons XXVI. and XXVII. Matches.—Lesson XXVIII. The Sheep.—Lesson XXIX. and XXX. Effect of Heat on Bodies.—Lesson XXXI. Butterflies and Moths.—Lesson XXXII. Water.—Lesson XXXIII. The Bee.—Lesson XXXIV. Air. A Gas.

Educational Times.—"This is a very careful and artistic, and, at the same time, a very simple and graphic, series of picture lessons, calculated, as the title sets forth, to combine first instruction in natural science with the training of observation and the practice of freehand drawing. The illustrations are drawn in white outline on a black ground, and they are quite large and clear enough for blackboard and class work. The text is concise, and will help the teacher to make useful and interesting lessons."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Please name the book required

Books I.—IV., 4d. each; Books V. and VI., 5d. each

MACMILLAN'S
Brush Work Copy Books

DESIGNED AND ARRANGED BY

A. R. CARTWRIGHT AND F. C. PROCTOR

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

BOOK 1. Simple brush forms, the straight line and the curve; 2. Simple brush forms, simple semi-natural forms; 3. Combinations of previous elements, the spiral, simple leaf and flower forms; 4. Conventional designs, natural plant forms; 5. The same, more difficult forms; 6. Free brush drawing, balance, outlining.

This series of Copy Books is intended to provide suitable training in the drawing of masses, in spacing, and in balance, no less than to exercise that useful accuracy of line which is an essential in all freehand work.

Each element can and should be done with one stroke of the brush, and (with the exception of a few of the more advanced copies) there is no necessity for outlining and "filling in." This feature is especially valuable in causing children to thoroughly observe and retain with the eye the form to be reproduced, without that halting and "harking back" to the copy which bring about patchy and otherwise unsatisfactory work.

The examples are carefully graduated and the various elements are gradually combined into symmetrical or balanced figures. This graduation makes the series suited to the use of the average pupil (as tested in the authors' experience) while the later examples in every book are sufficiently difficult to try the mettle of the most able.

The rudiments of design are gradually taught throughout the series, and every right-hand page in the Copy Books may be used for original designs by the class (either collectively or individually) or for further practice of the copies.

In schools where brush work is being adopted for the first time, the use of Books I. and II. throughout is recommended for the first year, more advanced books being introduced according to the progress made.

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book from their Lending Library for Teachers

Demy 8vo, 282 pages. Price 5s.

A COMPLETE
Perspective Course

SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR SELF-TUITION

INCLUDING PROJECTION OF SHADOWS AND REFLECTIONS PRACTICAL HINTS FOR SKETCHING, AND METHODS FOR CORRECTING PHOTOGRAPHIC DISTORTION

BY

J. HUMPHREY SPANTON

GOLD MEDALLIST OF THE ROYAL ACADEMY
INSTRUCTOR IN DRAWING TO THE NAVAL CADETS

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PREFACE

THE Author, in introducing this work to the public, feels that, notwithstanding the many books on the subject already existing, there is still room for one that comprises the whole course of Perspective treated in a comprehensive manner, with the allied subjects of Projection of Shadows and Reflections.

The Art of Perspective is one in which the Author has had many years' experience, both as a teacher as well as in its practical application; he consquently feels that he is not unqualified to deal with this subject in all its branches.

The design of the work is to provide information on Perspective to every class; to those who require the rudiments of the subject, as well as to those who desire a complete course of instruction. There are many students desirous of obtaining sufficient knowlege of Perspective to enable them to sketch correctly, and to test the accuracy of their drawing, but at the same time with a strong aversion to plodding through a series of dry problems to obtain this information. To meet the requirements of this class of students, the whole subject has been explained in the form of an introduction in simple language, with illustrations from familiar objects—the elementary portion in Chapter II.; and the more advanced part of the subject in Chapter IX. If these chapters are carefully studied, they will impart sufficient knowledge of the principles of the subject to enable them to utilise the laws of perspective.

Those, on the other hand, who require a thorough course, will find it in Chapters II.-XI.

Another portion of the work is devoted to the practical application of perspective, and this the Author hopes will be found useful to Artists as well as to Students.

The book contains all the necessary information for the Science and Art Examinations, the Oxford and Cambridge Local Examinations, and those of the College of Preceptors.

PRESS OPINIONS

Educational Review.—"This is an excellent book on the theory and practice of perspective, and will be found very useful to teachers and students of drawing, industrial, scientific, or artistic. The work covers a wide area of instruction, comprehending as it does linear perspective, the projection of shadows and reflections, aerial perspective, and photographic perspective, besides various useful hints not generally found in books on this subject. The method of arrangement and sequence of the chapters will be helpful to those who have not much spare time for study; every statement of theory or fact is set down with commendable clearness and brevity. The chapter on 'Aerial Perspective,' and that entitled 'Perspective Hints to Artists,' will be welcome aids to amateurs in drawing or sketching from nature. At the end of each chapter are questions, the answering of which will be good exercise, and accurately test the knowledge acquired by the student. The illustrations, where the subject permits, are more artistic than are the ordinary diagrams in works on this subject—a concession to the æsthetic sense for which one should be truly thankful."

Glasgow Herald.—"The author shows great judgment in detecting and meeting the difficulties that puzzle a student who approaches the subject for the first time."

English Mechanic.—"To those who desire to learn how to draw in perspective the work may be recommended, as the subject is treated as clearly and successfully as it possibly can be in a book."

Scotsman.—"There is also an interesting chapter on the perspective of photographs and the methods of correcting the distortion produced by lenses of various types"

TEACHERS' OPINIONS

THE HEADMASTER OF THE SHEFFIELD SCHOOL OF ART.—"I consider that, at the price, it is the best book in the market on the subject, as it combines the good qualities of a considerable number."

THE HEADMASTER OF THE PLYMOUTH SCHOOL OF ART.—"Mr. Spanton's new *Perspective* is by far the most comprehensive book I have seen on the subject; it is admirable in design and in arrangement, and, considering its contents, is very low in price. It is well adapted for science and art students, architects and artists, easy of comprehension, illustrated with clear woodcuts, and accompanied by concise definitions."

THE LECTURER ON PERSPECTIVE TO THE GLASGOW SCHOOL OF ART.—"I feel bound to express my admiration for the scientific thoroughness with which the subject has been gone into. The innovation in the matter of illustration which has been made is such as to render the study much more attractive, and to largely increase, I hope, the number of students of this most important subject."

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book from their Lending Library for Teachers

Now Ready. Demy 4to. Price 7s. 6d.

MANUAL TRAINING

WOODWORK

A Handbook for Teachers

BY

GEORGE RICKS, B.Sc. LOND.

INSPECTOR OF SCHOOLS, SCHOOL BOARD FOR LONDON; EXAMINER IN MANUAL TRAINING, WOODWORK, TO THE CITY AND GUILDS OF LONDON INSTITUTE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

704

PREFACE

It is now many years since I called attention to the importance of training the manual and visual faculties of children, in connection with the mental, in our public elementary schools; and, to point the way, I arranged, in 1887, a series of occupations specially designed for the purpose, under the title of "Hand and Eye Training." One of these occupations was working in wood with carpenter's tools; but the scheme—the first published in this country, so far as I know—viewed in the light of ten years' practice, now appears crude, and wanting in gradation. I have watched this particular occupation, and noted its progress from the beginning, not only in London but in many of the large provincial towns, and the following pages embody the results of my riper experience. The book has been written specially for Teachers. I am indebted to my colleague, Mr. J. Vaughan, for many of the Drawings.

GEORGE RICKS

INTRODUCTION

In the preparation of any scheme of manual training we must carefully consider the special *aims* which we have in view, and the *means* by and through which we may hope to achieve our purpose.

Manual Training in Woodwork, as a general educational agent, owes its origin to the Swedish Slöjd, and nearly all the various schemes which have been brought into use in this country during the last decade have their foundations laid in the Swedish system. Herr Salomon, the great exponent of Slöjd, claims that the *aim* in the Swedish scheme is three-fold: 1. *Mental.*—To quicken the intelligence, and to stimulate the perceptive faculties in such a manner as to call forth the child's powers of accurate observation, and careful comparison. 2. *Moral.*—To encourage and strengthen habits of diligence, perseverance, love of order, neatness, self-reliance, and a respect for honest labour. 3. *Manual.*—To develop activity of body, dexterity of hand, and accuracy of eye. The *means* to satisfy these *aims* are cutting-tools, with wood as the medium. Definite courses of tool-exercises[1] are laid down, and

[1] Usually called *models*.

the essential principles upon which the schemes are based, and on which they are to be worked, are clearly enunciated. The more important of these principles may be thus summarized :—They should be sufficiently many and varied to develop an all-round general dexterity; they should be in harmony with the pupil's strength, and physical endurance; they should be simple enough for the pupil to execute without *direct* help from the teacher; and, while being sufficiently difficult to ensure thought and cultivate patience, they should not be so difficult as to discourage. They should be of such a nature as to admit of neatness and exact finish, and they should tend to develop the sense of form and beauty. And, lastly, the series ought to progress without a break from the easy to the more difficult, from the simple to the more complex; and the gradation of the exercises must be of such a nature that the pupil is able to produce any one from the skill he has acquired in working the preceding.

It will be manifest from this short *résumé*, that the principles which claim to underlie Slöjd must, to a large extent, form the fundamental basis of any good system of Manual Training in Woodwork; or, indeed, in any other material.

We must be careful, however, not to confound, as is often the case, the series of exercises with the Slöjd system. The exercises are but the *expression* of the system, and other exercises may serve equally well for this expression. Herr Salomon has been specially careful not to lay claim to infallibility for the Slöjd exercises. All he demands is, that whatever series of exercises is adopted, it shall be constructed in accordance with Slöjd principles.

Following the example of Herr Salomon, we must, first of all, set forth clearly the aims and principles which are to constitute our guides in the preparation of a scheme of Manual Training in Wood. Secondly, we must set forth a graduated scheme of exercises in accordance with our principles.

Our aims, then, must be wholly educational. We must arouse interest, and quicken intelligence. We must develop and strengthen habits of attention, industry, and perseverance. We must train the eye to accurate observation, and the hand to dexterity in execution.

Our principles may be enunciated as follow :

(*a*) Drawing must be the fundamental basis, and an integral part of the whole scheme. Working-drawings, constructed to scale,

must be made of every proposed piece of work. All work must be executed to exact measurement; and every piece of wood must be correctly lined out before being cut.

(*b*) The material selected must be such as will facilitate neat and accurate workmanship; and, together with the tools, must be suited to the physical powers of the pupil. Good work cannot be done with unsuitable or poor tools and materials.

(*c*) The pupil must acquire an intelligent knowledge of the various woods in which he works, of the tools with which he works, and of the general principles which underlie every process.

(*d*) The exercises must be such as will excite interest; they must be carefully graduated, proceeding by easy steps from the simple to the complex; they must be sufficiently difficult to ensure care and thought, but not so difficult as to discourage; and one exercise must be completed to the satisfaction of the teacher before another is attempted, otherwise a careless habit is acquired. Failure should be followed by another exercise of the same kind.

The teacher will note that, in the above enumeration, the use of working-drawings to scale plays a more prominent part than in the Slöjd. The fact is some of the Slöjd exercises do not freely lend themselves to manipulation from simple working drawings, and models are used to supersede them. In the scheme which follows, exercises are substituted which afford opportunity for good drawing lessons. In the second place, he will note that an intelligent knowledge of tools, materials, and processes, holds a more conspicuous place than in the Slöjd.

Separate chapters are devoted to Drawing as the basis of Manual Training in wood, and to facts concerning materials and tools on which Object Lessons, to be given during the course, can be based.

Pupil Teacher.—"The author has gone to the fundamental principles, and has worked step by step through an extensive scheme; the part of the book dealing with drawing should be read by all teachers of wood-work. The chapters dealing with tools, timber, the requirements to fit up a class, and the appendix on cardboard stamp this as a standard work. The exceptionally well-executed diagrams make the instructions very easy for even the private student to follow. This is decidedly the best book we have seen on the subject."

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book
from their Lending Library for Teachers

Now Ready. Super Royal 4to. Price 7s. 6d.

GIRLS' PHYSICAL TRAINING

BEING

A SERIES OF HEALTHY AND ARTISTIC MOVEMENTS TO MUSIC

BY

ALICE R. JAMES

PRINCIPAL OF THE NORTH HACKNEY HIGH SCHOOL, REGISTERED KINDERGARTEN, AND TRAINING COLLEGE FOR KINDERGARTEN TEACHERS, STAMFORD HILL, N.
LATE PHYSICAL EXERCISE MISTRESS AT NOTTING HILL, BLACKHEATH, SOUTH HAMPSTEAD, MAIDA VALE AND SUTTON SCHOOLS OF THE GIRLS' PUBLIC DAY SCHOOL COMPANY

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
1908

CONTENTS

Preface, by A. Symons Eccles, M.B., etc., Author of *The Practical of Massage, The Advantages of Oxidation*, etc. Introduction, Explanatory, Exercises with Dumb-Bells, Exercises with Balls, Exercises with Plumes, Leg Exercises, Ring Exercises, Exercises with Cymbals, Marches.

EXTRACT FROM INTRODUCTION

In publishing the following exercises I hope to place in the hands of every teacher who may use them the means of giving the children under her care healthy and pleasant daily drill, and thereby developing not only the bodily organisms, but indirectly, though no less surely, the intellectual and moral life. "Life without health," says Longfellow, "is a burden, with health is a joy and gladness;" and again another writer, "The body must be healthy in order to obey the soul," and this is proved most forcibly by the fact that the mind cannot during this life exercise its powers or express itself except by means of the bodily organs; and in proportion as these organs are made by health the faithful and helpful servants of the soul and brain, do they minister to the healthy growth of the highest life of man, enabling him to accomplish his life's work, through the means of which he finds his highest happiness and truest good.

It is in the realisation of this interdependence of body, mind, and soul training, and the intelligent use of activity in all these directions that the newer education consists, as opposed to the suppression by neglect of one and the exaltation and simulation of another. If we will only learn from Nature we shall say with Browning—

> "All good things
> Are ours, nor soul helps flesh more now than flesh helps soul!"

No good work in education can be done except in so far as we put ourselves completely in accordance with the divine arrangement. The body the servant of the mind—subject to it—but inasmuch as it *serves*, demanding and deserving the greatest consideration and care from the one it serves.

All will admit that regular and suitable exercise is as essential to perfect health as is nutritious food, fresh air and cleanliness; and it is not only expedient but the bounden duty of every head mistress and master to make the school years of those entrusted to their care the healthiest as well as the happiest period possible. Children under fourteen should not be confined longer than an hour at a time, nor more than four hours a day, and all the serious mental work should be got through in that time. I believe in this statement I should be supported not merely by a majority of our medical men, but *unanimously*. For vigorous growth, absolute freedom is essential; and if the blood is pure and rich the brain will be the first organ to derive benefits, and the four hours carefully planned and used will bring forth more valuable fruit than the orthodox five hours of school with the two or three hours for home lessons.

MACMILLAN &
NEW YORK: THE M

Price 6d.; Annual Subscription, including postage, 8s.

THE SCHOOL WORLD

A MONTHLY MAGAZINE OF EDUCATIONAL WORK AND PROGRESS

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

THE SCHOOL WORLD is a monthly illustrated Periodical designed to interest and assist all who are engaged in educational work. Its essential object is to afford a **practical aid in teaching**, and all other matters are strictly subordinated to this end.

Among the subscribers to THE SCHOOL WORLD are professors, lecturers, and demonstrators in University Colleges, Training Colleges, and Technical Institutes; schoolmasters and schoolmistresses in the great Public Schools, Grammar Schools, High Schools, Private Schools, Higher Grade Schools, and Public Elementary Schools; as well as private tutors and others employed in educational pursuits.

The Magazine has found its way into every English-speaking country in the world, and is everywhere accepted as the medium for the expression of the views of leading British educationists upon the aims and methods of teaching.

Some reasons why THE SCHOOL WORLD merits the attention of the teaching profession are:

1. The subjects dealt with in its pages form an important part of the work of every school.

2. Its articles are written by experienced teachers and are, therefore, practicable as well as practical.
3. Difficulties of organisation and administration are discussed by writers who have overcome them.
4. Helpful suggestions are given in notes on lessons, and test-papers are provided as a convenient and time-saving means of periodically examining the work of forms.
5. All important changes affecting the work and position of teachers are recorded.
6. Every contribution is of direct interest and service to all who are engaged in educational work.

As examples of articles which have already appeared, on various sides of educational work, the following may be mentioned:—

I. EDUCATIONAL PRINCIPLES AND PROBLEMS.

Pioneers in Education. I. *Richard Mulcaster;* II. *John Dury;* III. *John Locke;* IV. *Rousseau;* V. *Kant;* VI. *Herbar.* By Prof. FOSTER WATSON, M.A.

Chapters in School Hygiene. I. *Diet;* II. *Dormitories;* III. *Class Rooms, Lecture Rooms, and Studies;* IV. *Work and Sleep;* V. *School Punishments;* VI. *Exercise, Games, and Leisure.* By Dr. C. E. SHELLEY, M.A.

I. Syllabus and Time Tables. II. Spelling: Procedure and Process. By P. A. BARNETT, M.A.

The Parent and the Secondary School. A Practical Contribution to the Problem. By Dr. J. J. FINDLAY, M.A.

Use of the Voice in Teaching. By PATRICK KIRWAN.

I. The Ideal Head Master. II. The Ideal Assistant Master. By Rev. Canon FOWLER, M.A.

Leisure Hour Pursuits in Boarding Schools. By FREDERICK ANDREWS, B.A.

Syllabus and Examinations in the Theory of Teaching. By Prof. JAMES WELTON, M.A.

I. The Curriculum for Boys compared with that for Girls. II. Home Work in Girls' Day Schools. By SARA BURSTALL, B.A.

I. Re-classification. II. Form Masters and Specialists. By F. E. KITCHENER, M.A.

Commercial Education in the Secondary School. By Rev. W. H. K. KEELING, M.A.

Secondary School Libraries. By JOHN J. OGLE.

Physical Observations of Brain Conditions of Boys and Girls in Schools. By Dr. FRANCIS WARNER, L.R.C.P.

Geography as a Means of Education. By GEO. G. CHISHOLM, M.A., B.Sc.

Winter Games for Girls. By JANE FRANCIS DOVE.

Difficulties of a Day-School Headmaster. By E. SHARWOOD SMITH, M.A.

Some Modern Experiments in Education. By A. T. SIMMONS, B.Sc., A.R.C.Sc.

Marks and Marking. By HAROLD W. ATKINSON, M.A.

II. COURSES OF WORK AND TEACHERS' NOTES.

CLASSICS.

Aids to Classical Study. By W. H. D. ROUSE, M.A.

Set Books. *Vergil's Aeneid, Book II.; Caesar's Gallic War, Books IV., V.* By J. H. HAYDON, M.A.

The Tale of Troy, with Special Reference to Vergil. Notes for a Lantern Lecture. By Prof. W. C. F. ANDERSON, M.A.

The Buried Treasures of the Acropolis. By R. S. HAYDON, M.A.

Pre-Classical Culture in Greece.

Dr. Leaf's "Iliad."

MATHEMATICS.

I. The Teaching of Algebra. Three articles providing a detailed discussion of the important laws of Algebraic signs, a syllabus of the subjects which should be included in an elementary course, and some remarks upon method. **II. Noughts and Crosses. III. Practical Solid Geometry. IV. A Teacher's Library of Mathematics.** By Prof. G. B. MATHEWS, M.A., F.R.S.

The Teaching of Proportion for Use in Geometry. Two articles of prime importance to mathematical masters, showing best how to deal with the subjects of Euclid's Fifth Book. By Prof. M. J. M. HILL, M.A., F.R.S.

The Teaching of Geometry. A description of geometrical principles which may with advantage be taught as an introduction to the study of Euclid. By Prof. G. M. MINCHIN, M.A., D.Sc., F.R.S.

The Teaching of Euclid's "Elements." By F. W. RUSSELL, M.A.

Short Cuts in Mathematics. FRANK CASTLE, M.I.M.E.

FRENCH AND GERMAN.

The Position and Teaching of German. Three articles giving notes showing how the study of the German language may be simplified, with a suggested scheme of work. By E. L. MILNER-BARRY, M.A.

The Early Teaching of French. A description, in six articles, of the methods of teaching advocated by the pioneers of the "reform movement." By Prof. WALTER RIPPMANN, M.A.

Tel Maitre, tel Valet. Original French Play in one act. By Mrs. J. G. FRAZER (Lilly Grove).

Set Books. *Merrimée's "Colomba"* and *About's "L'Homme à l'Oreille Cassée."* By Prof. WALTER RIPPMANN, M.A.

International Correspondence as an Aid to Language Teaching. By NEVILLE W. ROSS, B.A. (Cantab.), B. ès L. (Paris).

GEOGRAPHY.

The System of the Winds. A connected account of the winds, showing how they are related to one another, and can be reduced to a simple system. By Prof. W. M. DAVIS.

The Floor of the Ocean. By Sir JOHN MURRAY, K.C.B., F.R.S.

I. Current Geographical Topics. Frequent papers on countries or districts which are at the time engaging public attention. **II. Practical Work in Physical Geography.** Experiments and Observations suitable for the new schedule of the Cambridge Junior Local Examination. By Dr. A. J. HERBERTSON, F.R.G.S.

A Teacher's Library of Geography. By Dr. HUGH ROBERT MILL.

The Making of Relief Maps. By J. STEPHEN.

HISTORY.

Chapters in History. A survey of important historical periods, containing many suggestions on method, much information not contained in text-books, and notes of service to teachers. By A. JOHNSON EVANS, M.A.

Teachers' Notes on English History. A Synopsis of points which must be impressed upon pupils preparing for public examinations in history. By C. S. FEARENSIDE, M.A., and L. J. MCNAIR, B.A.

A Teacher's Library of English History. By A. JOHNSON EVANS, M.A., and C. S. FEARENSIDE, M.A.

The Salleze Method of Teaching History. By ETHEL M. REILY.

How to Use the Raw Material of History. By F. BEATTY.

The Beginnings of English Colonisation. Notes for Lantern Lectures. By C. S. FEARENSIDE, M.A., and A. JOHNSON EVANS, M.A.

ENGLISH.

The Teaching of English in Public Schools. By Rev. G. C. BELL, M.A., Dr. JAMES GOW, M.A., E. W. HOWSON, M.A., C. J. BATTERSBY, M.A., and AMY LUMBY.

English Composition. Useful suggestions as to how the difficulties of teaching this subject may be surmounted by teachers. By J. C. NESFIELD, M.A.

Set Books. I. *As You Like It;* II. *Richard II.* By J. A. NICKLIN, B.A.

Essay Writing. Practical notes containing the results of much experience in teaching English composition. By C. J. BATTERSBY, M.A.

English Analysis. A series of notes, with numerous examples, designed to simplify the teaching of this subject. By E. W. HURST, B.A.

The Problem of Teaching to Read. By A. SONNENSCHEIN.

On the Teaching of English Reading. An account of a novel method which has been followed with success. By NELLIE DALE.

The Teaching of English Literature, with a suggested scheme of work. By W. H WEEDON.

SCIENCE.

Experimental Chemistry. A course of work based on the Junior Local Examinations of Oxford and Cambridge Universities. By Prof. J. B. COLEMAN, A.R.C.Sc., F.I.C.

I. Experimental Natural History. II. The Teaching of Botany in Schools By Prof. L. C. MIALL, F.R.S.

Experimental Botany. By E. EVANS.

Object Lessons in Botany. By Miss C. VON WYSS.

Hints on the Rearing of Caterpillars. By W. F. KIRBY, F.L.S., F.E.S.

Climate and Weather Observations in Schools. By H. N. DICKSON, B.Sc., F.R.S.E.

Leisure Hour Pursuits: Photography. By H. E. HADLEY, B.Sc., A.R.C.Sc.

Elementary Experimental Science. A course of practical work suitable as an introduction to science. By Prof. R. A. GREGORY and A. T. SIMMONS, B.Sc., A.R.C.Sc.

I. **The Starry Heavens.** Notes for Lantern Lecture. II. A series of illustrated articles on **Observational Astronomy.** By Prof. R. A. GREGORY, F.R.A.S.

The Quantitative Shibboleth, with notes on typical observations in chemistry. By HAROLD PICTON, B.Sc.

The Law relating to the Teacher's Tenure of Office. By T. A. ORGAN, Barrister-at-Law.

MISCELLANEOUS.

Bi-Manual Training in Schools. By H. BLOOMFIELD BARR, F.R.I.B.A.

Manual Instruction in Woodwork. By A. GODFREY DAY, A.M.I.M.E.

How to make Lantern Slides. By H. E. HADLEY, B.Sc., A.R.C.Sc.

Drawing in Secondary Schools. By A. W. FENTON LANGMAN, A.R.C.A.

Clay-Modelling in Schools. By T. L. HUMBERSTONE, B.Sc., A.R.C.Sc.

Metal Work in Schools. By H. K. FREW, B.Sc.

Music in Secondary Schools. By A. H. PEPPIN, B.A.

Methods of Manifolding by Copying Machines.

III. EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS.

Commercial Education in Birmingham, France, Germany, London, the United States, Italy, Yorkshire, etc.

Progress in the Coordination of Education.

Irish Secondary Education.

Education of the Pupil Teacher.

The Board of Education.

Secondary Education in Scotland.

German Higher Schools.

Mixed Classes in Schools and Universities.

Methods of Teaching Modern Languages.

Some New Physical Apparatus.

New Science Laboratories.

Nature Study in Schools.

Salaries of Elementary School Teachers.

Present Position of Science in Secondary Education.

Women and Latin.

Educational Museums.

Grammar and Higher Grade Schools.

A Century's Progress in Science.

The Higher Education Bill for Scotland.

The Teaching of the Deaf.

Educational Topics at the British Association.

State Aid for Modern Language Teaching.

Education at the Paris Exhibition.

IV. TEST PAPERS.

To provide teachers with questions upon the most popular subjects of the various public examinations, test-papers are published every month, and can be obtained separately at a small cost for distribution to pupils. The examinations for which monthly test-papers have already appeared are:—London Matriculation; Oxford Senior, Junior, and Preliminary Locals; Cambridge Senior, Junior, and Preliminary Locals, and College of Preceptors.

Numerous letters from teachers testifying to the value of these papers have been received, and it is intended to extend the system to other examinations. Arrangements are being made for papers covering the chief subjects of the following examinations, to appear a month or so before the particular examination to which they refer:—Examinations of the Central Welsh Board; Leaving Certificate Examination of the Scotch Education Department; Oxford and Cambridge Joint Board Examination.

V. PRIZE COMPETITIONS.

To obtain information on points of interest to teachers, a number of competitions, with book prizes, have been held. Some of the subjects of these competitions were *The Twelve Most Popular Books in School Libraries*, *The Most Popular School Subjects*, *The Greatest Teachers of the Century*, *The Ten Noblest Men in British History*, *The Most Popular Books of the Year*, *Answers to History Questions*, *Answers to Geography Questions*, *English Essays*, *etc.*

VI. OTHER FEATURES.

Among other features of THE SCHOOL WORLD are selections from current literature; short notices by teachers of recent school books; notable passages from sermons preached in public schools; articles on school equipment; public school examination papers; notes on topics of interest to teachers; records of important resolutions adopted by the chief educational organisations; and concise accounts of all events and publications affecting educational work and progress.

Much interest has been shown in the *Chess Column*, and an *Inter-School Tourney* has been arranged.

The high standard and variety of the articles which have already appeared will be sustained in future numbers and many new features will be added. To every teacher who desires to be in touch with the best opinions upon educational methods, and to keep abreast with the times, THE SCHOOL WORLD is indispensable.

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

Thirty Years of Teaching

BY

L. C. MIALL, F.R.S.
PROFESSOR OF BIOLOGY IN THE YORKSHIRE COLLEGE

REPRINTED, WITH ADDITIONS, FROM THE JOURNAL OF EDUCATION

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

Personal Explanations; The Necessity of being Interesting; Maxims for Lecturers; Plenty of Concrete Illustrations; Concrete Illustrations of English History; Rewards and Punishments; Helplessness and Handiness; Finding Out and being Told; Plain Speech; School Hours; How to make Room for all the Subjects which are to be Taught in School; The Teaching of Subjects and the Teaching of Scholars; Lecturing and Teaching; Reading Aloud; School Lessons in Drawing; Geography and Map Drawing; Arithmetical Precision; Classical Grammar and Literature; School Museums; Examiners and Candidates; Pedagogy and Psychology; The Training of a Great Naturalist; The Edgeworths and Practical Education; Nature Study; Remarks on Two Passages in Bain's "Education as a Science"; Froebel and Pestalozzi.

717

In Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

ON TEACHING:

ITS ENDS AND MEANS

BY

HENRY CALDERWOOD, LL.D., F.R.S.E.

LATE PROFESSOR OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF EDINBURGH AND CHAIRMAN OF THE EDINBURGH SCHOOL BOARD

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PREFACE TO THIRD EDITION

THIS little book was originally designed mainly for professional teachers. Having had, however, repeated references made to it by parents concerned for the education of their children, I have attempted in the present edition to include the more important aspects of Home Training, specially as these are related to school work. I trust the chapter here added may extend the usefulness of the book by rendering some aid to parents, and at the same time drawing closer the bonds of friendship between teachers and parents.

H. C.

PRESS OPINIONS

Westminster Review.—"Dr. Calderwood's little book contains a good deal of excellent advice to parents and teachers. We are glad to see parents as well as teachers included in the scope of a manual like this."

Educational Times.—"The value of such a work as Dr. Calderwood's must certainly depend upon the practical nature of its lessons and remarks. We think that his volume is decidedly better, in this respect, than most others of the same kind. . . . We may observe that Dr. Calderwood's essay appears in a concise and handy form, and that the type and paper leave nothing to be desired."

Schoolmaster.—"The book is designed for those who aspire to 'teach' in the highest sense of the word. For those who realise or need to realise the great end of all school instruction, this book will be found most attractive in its genial and sensible deliverances on the subject of education. . . . Of the ends and means (the noblest and the best) in connection with the training of a child they will find it full to the overflow."

School Board Chronicle.—"It is inspired by a long experience in professional teaching, and still more by a high tone of thought and feeling in relation to education and a deep interest in the higher and nobler results of the work."

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 4s. 6d. *net*

Teachers' Professional Library
EDITED BY NICHOLAS MURRAY BUTLER

THE TEACHING OF ELEMENTARY MATHEMATICS

BY
DAVID EUGENE SMITH
PRINCIPAL OF THE STATE NORMAL SCHOOL AT BROCKPORT, NEW YORK

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

EXTRACT FROM EDITOR'S INTRODUCTION

IN the present book, the purpose of which is to present in simple and succinct form to teachers the results of mathematical scholarship, to be absorbed by them and applied in their class-room teaching, the author has wisely combined the genetic and the analytic methods. He shows how the elementary mathematics has developed in history, how it has been used in education, and what its inner nature really is. It may safely be asserted that the elementary mathematics will take on a new reality for those who study this book and apply its teachings.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. Historical Reasons for Teaching Arithmetic; II. Why Arithmetic is Taught at Present; III. How Arithmetic has Developed; IV. How Arithmetic has been Taught; V. The Present Teaching of Arithmetic; VI. The Growth of Algebra; VII. Algebra, What and why Taught; VIII. Typical Parts of Algebra; IX. The Growth of Geometry; X. What is Geometry? General Suggestions for Teaching; XI. The Bases of Geometry; XII. Typical Parts of Geometry; XIII. The Teacher's Book-shelf; Index.

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

LEAVES FROM THE NOTE-BOOKS

OF

FRANCES M. BUSS

BEING SELECTIONS FROM HER WEEKLY ADDRESSES TO THE GIRLS OF THE NORTH LONDON COLLEGIATE SCHOOL

EDITED BY

GRACE TOPLIS, L.C.P.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK : THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

Introduction. 1. Before Holidays; 2. Candour; 3. Cheerfulness; 4. Courtesy; 5. Domestic Love and Household Duties; 6. The End of Term; 7. Family Love; 8. Holidays and Holiday Work; 9. Honesty; 10. Idleness and Weariness; 11. Language; 12. Law; 13. The Love of Approbation; 14. Perseverance; 15. Public Spirit; 16. Self-Control; 17. Self-Reliance; 18. Stumbling Blocks; 19. Truthfulness; 20. Useful and Useless Expenditure; 21. Youth and Beauty.

720

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

What would you have? Your gentleness shall force
More than your force move us to gentleness.

"The indifference of women to politeness is making men rude and unwilling to offer civilities to women in public. They meet rudeness so often in return for their little acts of attention that they must think the days of courtesy are passing away. In past days women exercised a gentle sway over violence and selfishness by imposing the law of chivalry on men, who found their reward in a gracious recognition of their little services and self-denials.'

Should English girls take "the front seats in the synagogues" and "the uppermost rooms at feasts" without a word of grace and thankfulness? It is surely as sad a sight as can be beheld, for it argues a great deal that is unseen—vanity, selfishness, loss of lofty feeling, and inability for self-sacrifice.

Every woman should acknowledge with

Globe 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

THE TRAINING OF GIRLS FOR WORK

AN EXPRESSION OF OPINIONS

BY

EDITH A. BARNETT

AUTHOR OF

"DR. AND MRS. GOLD: AN EPISODE IN THE LIFE OF A CAUSE," ETC

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

722

THE writer of this book, "by way of apology," gives a lively account of the way in which it came into existence. She had been asked again and again, both by friends and by strangers, to write for them a book about girls. She had many objections to offer, but the result of their arguments was that a short paper by her was printed in *The Parents' Review*. "That," says Miss Barnett, "was the thin end of the wedge; this is the thick, whereby all my reiterated resolutions are broken up." Her subject is the training of girls for work, and she has chapters or essays on the girl's health, on girls' schools, on a girl's character, on household work, on professional work, on professional wages, and on the girls' money. There are also chapters on marriage, and the girls' mothers. The writer has so long been engaged in professional life that her experience lends weight to her judgments, and no one will like them less because of the vivid and entertaining way in which they are expressed.

PRESS OPINIONS

Times.—"Entirely without pretence, and dealing only with subjects she understands, Miss Barnett has a healthy scorn of shams and conventionalities, and withal a firm grasp on the realities of life and the responsibilities of conduct, which lends a fine ethical fervour to her blunt and outspoken exhortations."

Glasgow Herald.—"No better or more attractive book could be put into the hands of girls who are undecided about their future, or of mothers who want to know how best to provide for the welfare of their daughters."

Daily News.—"Miss Barnett has much to say that is worth careful consideration with regard to both the physical and mental aspects of women's training."

Daily Chronicle.—"We have formed an opinion of her while reading, from the first to the last, these clear and earnest pages; and we may at once say that whatever she has written and whatever she has done, it would be difficult for that opinion to be a higher one."

Queen.—"There are very few girls, or mothers of girls, who would not find help in the perplexing problems that face them from the study of this thoroughly sane and wholesome work."

Speaker.—"Miss Barnett modestly terms it on the title-page an 'expression of opinions.' We prefer to describe it as a wise and vivacious statement of clean-cut convictions gathered by one who asks, on the final page, 'What are we all but children spelling out hard lessons; and some are a little nearer than the rest to the end of the book of this present life?'"

Morning Post.—"She has written a book remarkable for its sound sense, excellent advice, and practical utility."

Macmillan's Manuals for Teachers

EDITED BY

OSCAR BROWNING, M.A.

PRINCIPAL OF THE CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY DAY TRAINING COLLEGE

AND

S. S. F. FLETCHER, B.A., PH.D.

MASTER OF METHOD IN THE CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY DAY TRAINING COLLEGE

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

THE LOGICAL BASES OF EDUCATION. By JAMES WELTON, M.A., Professor of Education and Master of Method at the Yorkshire College, Victoria University. Globe 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* [*Ready*

ETHICS FOR TEACHERS. By DR. STANTON COIT. [*In preparation*

PSYCHOLOGY FOR TEACHERS. By JOHN ADAMS, Free Church College, Glasgow, and Professor JAMES WELTON, M.A., Yorkshire College, Leeds [*In the Press*

HISTORY OF EDUCATION. By OSCAR BROWNING, M.A., and S. S. F. FLETCHER, B.A., Ph.D. [*In preparation*

PRINCIPLES OF CLASS TEACHING. By J. FINDLAY, M.A., Headmaster of the Cardiff Intermediate School for Boys [*In preparation*

SCHOOL MANAGEMENT. By GEORGE COLLAR, B.A., B.Sc., Principal of the Stockwell Pupil Teacher School, and C. W. CROOK, B.A. 3*s.* 6*d.* [*Ready*

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book from their Lending Library for Teachers

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

SCHOOL MANAGEMENT

AND

METHODS OF INSTRUCTION

WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO

ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS

BY

GEORGE COLLAR, B.A., B.Sc.

PRINCIPAL OF THE STOCKWELL PUPIL-TEACHER SCHOOL

AND

CHARLES W. CROOK, B.A., B.Sc.

HEADMASTER OF THE HIGHER GRADE SCHOOL, WOOD GREEN, N.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

725

PREFACE

In times past it was considered that the chief, and indeed almost the only, qualification necessary in a teacher was a knowledge of the subject to be taught. A knowledge of child nature and of the principles of the working of the mind was not considered at all essential. The tendency of the present day is to go to the other extreme, and regard a knowledge of psychology as being the only qualification that a teacher should bring to his work. The correct view seems to be that the ideal teacher should not only be well versed in the subjects he is required to teach and in the principles of psychology, but should also have studied the relation of subject matter to mind. He should have considered carefully the effects that the subject is calculated to have in the development of the pupil's mind, and how the subject may best be divided up and presented so as to produce those effects. In the hope of assisting their fellow-teachers in their work on these lines, the authors have undertaken the present book, which they trust will be found in agreement with the latest developments in psychology, although its technicalities have been avoided as far as possible. They must not be understood, however, to depreciate in any way the value of a knowledge of this important subject. Every earnest teacher should give close attention to the study of it, and should strenuously endeavour to apply its teaching, and, in addition to this, he should endeavour to gain an intimate acquaintance with the lives and work of the great teachers of the past. Such wider reading will, we are sure, result in an increased interest and enthusiasm in the more commonplace duties with which this book is more directly concerned.

It has been considered advisable to limit the treatment of school organization to that of elementary schools, but it is hoped that the treatment of the different subjects of instruction will be found useful to teachers in schools of every grade.

G. C.
C. W. C.

CONTENTS

Chapter 1. School and Home; 2. School Buildings and Equipments; 3. Organization; 4. Discipline; 5. General Principles of Instruction; 6. Notes of Lessons; 7. Reading; 8. Spelling; 9. The Teaching of Languages, including Grammar, Composition, and Literature—The Teaching of English, Composition, Literature, Modern Languages; 10. History; 11. Geography; 12. The Mathematical Group of Studies—Arithmetic, Mental Arithmetic, Algebra, Geometry; 13. Elementary Science and Object Lessons; 14. Practical or Manual Subjects—Writing, Drawing; 15. School Music; 16. Physical Exercises.

Appendix.—Breathing Exercises in connection with Reading and Singing.

The Publishers will be pleased to lend copies of this book from their Lending Library for Teachers

Now Ready. *Globe* 8vo. *Price* 3s. 6d.

THE LOGICAL BASES OF EDUCATION

BY

J. WELTON, M.A.

PROFESSOR OF EDUCATION IN THE YORKSHIRE COLLEGE, VICTORIA UNIVERSITY
AUTHOR OF "A MANUAL OF LOGIC," ETC.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

PRESS OPINIONS

JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.—"Prof. Welton writes in a clear and pleasant style, and the examples and illustrations which he uses to make his views fully intelligible, are excellently chosen. One sees very soon that he is a master of his subject. . . . Likely to be very useful to students. . . . We heartily recommend this book to our readers' attention."

SCHOOL GUARDIAN.—"We have much pleasure in recommending it. . . . The style is remarkably clear and lucid, and the illustrations are bright and even sometimes amusing, so that it is quite readable. . . . We leave the treatise in the hope that it may meet with the wide acceptance which it merits."

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.—"Mr. Welton has written distinctively well on logic, but we are inclined to think that he has never produced anything better than this succinct and lucid exposition of the application of logical method of educational purposes. . . . The volume appears in a series of "Manuals for Teachers"; it will be an admirable series if the rest of the volumes come anywhere near the excellence of this one."

EDUCATIONAL NEWS.—"It will be welcomed by all students of education. It will be found a mine of thought and suggestion. . . . It will be of unbounded service to all teachers and students who aspire to what may be called the 'logical attitude.'"

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER I.—General Nature of Knowledge.

1. Education and Knowledge. 2. Knowledge and Truth. 3. Knowledge and Superstition. 4. Knowledge and Belief. 5. Savage Philosophy. 6. Explanation of the World as a Sum of Things. 7. Explanation of the World by Laws—Fc tors of Change—Necessity and Universality of Law—Atoms and Energy. 8. Explanation of the World as System. 9. Nature of Reality and of Knowledge—The Test of Truth. 10. The World as Mental Construction.

CHAPTER II.—Postulates of Knowledge.

1. The Factors of Knowledge. 2. Postulates of Knowledge. 3. The Postulates at the Stage of Sense-perception—Identity—Contradiction—Excluded Middle—Sufficient Reason. 4. The Postulates at the Stage of Law—Causation—"Every Event has a Cause"—"Same Cause, same Effect"—"Same Effect, same Cause"—"Cause and Effect equal in Energy"—Causation and Sequence in Time. 5. The Postulates at the Stage of System—Final Causes.

CHAPTER III.—Knowledge and Language.

1. Ideas and Knowledge. 2. Ideas and Reality. 3. Ideas and Images—Thought and Imagination. 4. Development of Ideas. 5. Ideas and Language. 6. Language and Communication of Knowledge. 7. Verbal Language—Writing. 8. Language and Learning. 9. Spoken and Written Language. 10. Meaning and Context—Specific and General Meanings of Words. 11. Ambiguities of Language—Ambiguities in Individual Words—Ambiguities in Construction.

CHAPTER IV.—Knowledge and Logic.

1. Nature of Logic. 2. Nature of Judgment. 3. Judgments and Logic. 4. Abstract Nature of Thought. 5. Form and Matter. 3. Logic is Abstract and Formal. 7. Function of Logic. 8. Value of Logic.

CHAPTER V.—Nature of Judgment.

1. Judgment and Proposition. 2. Judgment and Truth. 3. Judgment and Experience. 4. Judgment is an Act of both Analysis and Synthesis. 5. Subject and Predicate. 6. Copula. 7. Relative Prominence of Analysis and Synthesis in Judgments. 8. Summary.

CHAPTER VI.—Types of Judgment.

1. Main Types of Judgment. 2. Development of Judgment—Impersonal Judgments—Demonstrative Judgments—Judgments of Particular Relation—Historical Singular Judgments—Enumerative Judgments—Search for the Universal Judgment—The Generic Judgment—The

Hypothetical Judgment—Reciprocal Universal Judgments—The Disjunctive Judgment. 3. Negation. 4. Quality and Quantity in Categorical Judgments. 5. Quality and Quantity in Hypothetical and Disjunctive Judgments.

CHAPTER VII.—Formal Relations of Propositions.

1. The Four-fold Scheme of Propositions. 2. Distribution of Terms. 3. Conversion. 4. Modes of Opposition—Subalternation—Contradiction—Contrariety—Sub-contrariety—Summary of Opposition.

CHAPTER VIII.—The Method of Knowledge.

1. Truth and Evidence. 2. Nature of Method. 3. Development of Doctrine of Method—Aristotle—Mediæval Logic—Bacon—Newton—Mill—Modern Logic. 4. Method and Thought. 5. Method and Facts. 6. Inferential Character of Method. 7, Characteristics of Methodical Thought—Purpose—Definite Starting-point. 8. Fallacies incidental to Method—*Petitio Principii*—*Ignoratio Elenchi*. 9. Essence of Methodical Process. 10. Nature of Inference—Inference and System—Inference and Previous Knowledge—Inference and Universals. 11. Deductive and Inductive Inference. 12. Analysis and Synthesis. 13. Analytic and Synthetic Methods.

CHAPTER IX.—Deductive Inference.

1. Kinds of Deductive Inference.

Syllogism.

2. Nature of Syllogism — Distributed Middle Term — Conclusion warranted by Premises—Validity of Syllogism—Minor Rules of Syllogism. 3. Forms of Syllogism. 4. Hypothetical Syllogisms.

Construction.

5. Nature of Construction. 6. Types of Construction—Arithmetical Constructions—Geometrical Constructions. 7. Inductive Aspect of Construction.

CHAPTER X.—Outline of Inductive Method.

1. Meaning of "Induction." 2. General Method of Induction. 3. Direct and Indirect Testing of Hypotheses.

CHAPTER XI.—Observation.

1. Importance of Observation. 2. Liability of Observation to Error. 3. Dependence of Observation on Previous Knowledge. 4. Observation and Inference—Selection—Recognition—Distinction between "Observation" and "Inference." 5. Observation and Prejudice. 6. Observation and Scientific Instruments. 7. Experiment.

CHAPTER XII.—Testimony.

1. Necessity of Testimony. 2. Reception of Testimony. 3. Tests of Testimony—Good Faith—Accuracy. 4. Anonymous Testimony. 5. Corroboration of Testimony—Tradition—Independent Corroboration. 6. Inference from Absence of Testimony,

CHAPTER XIII.—Hypotheses.

1. Nature of Hypotheses. 2. Origin of Hypotheses. 3, Hypotheses and Facts—Danger of Bias. 4. Testing of Hypotheses. 5. Descriptive and Working Hypotheses. 6. Permissible Hypotheses. 7. Crucial Instances.

CHAPTER XIV.—Direct Development of Hypotheses.

1. Accidental Coincidences and Necessary Connexions. 2. Empirical Generalization and Enumerative Induction. 3. Analogy. 4. Nature of Direct Methods in Induction. 5. Method of Agreement. 6. Method of Exclusions. 7. Method of Difference. 8. Method of Concomitant Variations. 9. Method of Residues. 10. Example of Use of Methods: Colour of Animals.

CHAPTER XV.—Indirect Verification of Hypotheses.

I. Relation of Indirect to Direct Methods. 2. Initial Use of Indirect Method—Circumstantial Evidence. 3. The Indirect Method in History. 4. The Indirect Method in Geology and Biology. 5. Establishment of the Theory of Gravitation—Empirical Laws of Falling Bodies—Empirical Laws of Planetary Motion—Gravitation Applied to Moon—Gravitation Extended to Planetary Motion—Gravitation Extended to all Particles of Matter.

CHAPTER XVI.—Definition, Classification, and Explanation.

1, Aim of Methods of Knowledge. 2. Development of Definition. 3. Nature of Definition. 4. Definition and other Modes of Stating Meaning. 5. Limits of Definition—Meaning of Proper Names. 6. Rules of Definition. 7. Nature of Classification. 8. Rules of Classification. 9. Classification and Definition—Classification and Partition. 10. Disjunctive Classification. 11. Subsumptive Classification. 12. Provisional Character of Classification and Definition. 13. Classification and Explanation. 14. Limits of Explanation. 15. Logical Explanation and Familiarization.

CHAPTER XVII.—Logic and Education.

1. General Relation of Logic to Education. 2. Education Relative to Society. 3. Method and Self-Activity—Method not Mechanical. 4. Educational Method Relative to Current Conception of Knowledge—Heuristic Methods. 5. Method of Science and Method of Education. 6. Maxims of Method.

EXERCISES IN INFERENCE.

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. With Illustrations. Price 4s. 6d. net

THE STUDY OF CHILDREN

AND

THEIR SCHOOL TRAINING

BY

FRANCIS WARNER, M.D. (LOND.)

F.R.C.P., F.R.C.S. (ENG.)

PHYSICIAN TO AND LECTURER AT THE LONDON HOSPITAL; PHYSICIAN TO THE ROYAL ALBERT ORPHANAGE; FORMERLY PHYSICIAN TO THE EAST LONDON HOSPITAL FOR CHILDREN; HONORARY MEMBER OF THE HUNGARIAN SOCIETY OF PUBLIC HEALTH AT BUDAPEST

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1911

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1. Introductory; 2. The Body of the Child: its Construction and Growth; 3. The Brain: its Development and Evolution; 4. Observing the Child: what to look at and what to look for; 5. Principles of the Methods of observing and describing Children; 6. Points for Observation, indicating Faults in Body or Brain-Action, or a Status below the Normal; 7. Examination of Mental Ability and the Faults that may be observed; 8. Some General Conditions in Children Described; 9. Types of Childhood; and Groups of Children below the Normal; 10. Adolescence; 11. The Care of Children and their Training; 12. Hygiene and Health Management during School-life; 13. Propositions concerning Childhood.

INDEX.

PRESS OPINIONS

Times.—"An exceedingly valuable record of the results of extensive observation. . . . There are very few parents or teachers, however observant, who will not be enabled, by a careful use of Dr. Warner's methods, to understand and to train children better than they did before."

Daily Chronicle.—"A no less interesting than useful volume."

British Medical Journal.—"The book cannot fail to be most suggestive to teachers who wish to bring their methods into line with modern scientific views of childhood. Many aspects of the subject will be of interest to the medical observer also."

Literature.—"The teacher, and parent too, must learn that physical phenomena, and especially the phenomena of movement, are both cause and effect of 'mental' phenomena, and that a defect on one side must be treated, not merely on that side only, but by simultaneous stimulation of the mental and physical activities. For these purposes Dr. Warner's Manual is exceedingly useful."

Daily Mail.—"Fulfils an important mission. . . . His statistical tables, based on an examination of 100,000 children, are eminently instructive."

Manchester Guardian.—"At the present time when the question of improving the education of the dull and mentally feeble children in our Board Schools is occupying a good deal of attention, his book comes opportunely, and should be carefully studied by all those engaged in directing education and other forms of social work."

Scotsman.—"A scientific study on the lines laid down in this suggestive and well-written volume could not but prove of advantage to all classes of teachers."

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. With Illustrations. Price, 4s. 6d. net

THE NERVOUS SYSTEM OF THE CHILD

ITS GROWTH AND HEALTH IN EDUCATION

BY

FRANCIS WARNER, M.D. (LOND.)

F.R.C.P., F.R.C.S. (ENG.)

PHYSICIAN TO AND LECTURER AT THE LONDON HOSPITAL; PHYSICIAN TO THE ROYAL ALBERT ORPHANAGE; FORMERLY PHYSICIAN TO THE EAST LONDON HOSPITAL FOR CHILDREN; HONORARY MEMBER OF THE HUNGARIAN SOCIETY OF PUBLIC HEALTH AT BUDAPEST;

AUTHOR OF "THE STUDY OF CHILDREN AND THEIR SCHOOL TRAINING," ETC.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. Introductory; II. The Brain and Body in Infancy and Early Childhood; III. The Child at School; IV. Observation, Description, and Classification of Children in School; V. Evolution of the Child and his Brain Power; VI. Physical Care of the Child—Hygiene and Feeding; VII. The Training and Teaching of Young Children; VIII. Advancing School Method and Teaching; IX. The Nerve Centres in Infancy, School Life, and Adolescence—their Health and Training; X. Mental Hygiene and Voluntary Mental Power; Index.

Spectator.—"He points out what a large and increasing share in education the medical profession are taking, especially in the training of dull or backward children. An observant teacher, by noticing such abnormal nerve-signs as indicate mental deficiency, can by various little exercises, apparently physical, stimulate the slow faculties."

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

THE
Meaning of Education

AND OTHER
ESSAYS AND ADDRESSES

BY

NICHOLAS MURRAY BUTLER

PROFESSOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND EDUCATION IN COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

The Meaning of Education; What Knowledge is of Most Worth? Is there a New Education? Democracy and Education; The American College and the American University; The Function of the Secondary School; The Reform of Secondary Education in the United States.

PRESS OPINIONS

Cambridge Review.—"The lectures are unpretentious, readable, and interesting as suggesting some of the methods in which the people of America are approaching the subjects of national education, which sooner or later the people of this country will be perforce compelled to consider."

Glasgow Herald.—"Well-informed and stimulating addresses."

Speaker.—"The book contains much, chiefly in the way of suggestion, which English teachers will find well worthy of study."

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 5s. net

THE

Development of the Child

BY

NATHAN OPPENHEIM

ATTENDING PHYSICIAN TO THE CHILDREN'S DEPARTMENT
OF MT. SINAI HOSPITAL DISPENSARY

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. Introductory; II. and III. Facts in the Comparative Development of the Child; IV. Comparative Importance of Heredity and Environment; V. The Place of the Primary School in the Development of the Child; VI. The Place of Religion in the Development of the Child; VII. The Value of the Child as a Witness in Suits at Law; VIII. The Development of the Child-Criminal; IX. The Child's Development as a Factor in producing the Genius or the Defective; X. Institutional Life in the Development of the Child; XI. The Profession of Maternity.

735

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 5s.

Social Phases of Education

IN THE

SCHOOL AND THE HOME

BY

SAMUEL T. DUTTON

SUPERINTENDENT OF SCHOOLS, BROOKLINE, MASS.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

736

PREFACE

THERE was a time when education was regarded as a matter belonging exclusively to the school. Its problems were not seriously studied except by teachers. To-day there is no subject that excites greater public interest. Fathers and mothers are anxious to understand the aims and methods of the school; they are also interested to know how other educational forces in the community may be utilised in such a manner as to insure the best growth and development of their children.

The chapters of this volume are selected from lectures given during the past two years at Harvard, Chicago, and Boston Universities, and from papers read before the American Social Science and the National Educational Associations. The point of view is in all cases social rather than scholastic, and the ideas emphasised are as worthy of consideration by parents as by teachers. No apology is offered for putting these papers into permanent form, although the venture would not have been made except at the urgent request of educational friends whose judgment is respected. It is only as questions are stated from different points of view, and as large masses of experience are accumulated, that there is hope of avoiding mistakes and of making educational practice conform to the dictates of science and common sense.

CONTENTS

The Social Aspects of the Home and the School; The Modern School, and what it owes to Froebel and Herbart; The School and the Child; Phases of the Course of Study; Educational Progress; The Relation of Education to Vocation; The Relation of the Church to the School; Education as a Cure for Crime; The Correlation of Educational Forces in the Community; The Brookline Education Society and its Work.

PRESS OPINIONS

Speaker.—"Readers of the book will feel sincerely grateful to the colleagues and friends who induced Mr. Dutton to publish it. . . . A volume of singular charm. . . . Mr. Dutton's achievement is one of great and permanent value. The parson or the teacher who can rise from the perusal of it without feeling that he has gained in breadth of view and grasp of principle is probably a pitiful creature."

School World.—"It provides a new atmosphere, as it were, for the British schoolmaster and schoolmistress; familiar problems are presented in new ways, and the American experiences described will go a long way towards expanding the all too prevalent narrowness among the teachers of our schools."

Scotsman.—"While specially applicable to the educational establishment of the United States, they are so sensible and suggestive as to be well worthy of consideration by educationists elsewhere, and will interest any thoughtful teacher who reads them."

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

EDUCATIONAL AIMS AND EDUCATIONAL VALUES

BY

PAUL H. HANUS

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF THE HISTORY AND ART OF TEACHING,
HARVARD UNIVERSITY

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
738

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

THIS book is written for laymen who are interested in Education, as well as for professional students and teachers. It consists of a series of essays on contemporary educational problems. In the first five chapters the attempt is made to formulate the aims of elementary and secondary education, and to describe the scope and methods of an education that meets the demands of modern life, both in its provisions for the development of the individual and in its training for social service. The remaining chapters deal with the professional training of the college-bred teacher, and with the services of John Amos Comenius who, in the seventeenth century advocated nineteenth-century educational reforms.

Though written at different times, and delivered as lectures or addresses to various audiences of teachers and laymen, and subsequently printed as independent articles, these chapters really constitute—and this is especially true of the first five chapters—a progressive attempt to accomplish a single, somewhat comprehensive, purpose; namely, to disentangle from the contemporary educational confusion, in both theory and practice, *our educational aims*, and to examine these aims in the light of present and future needs.

The reader will therefore find that there are occasional repetitions; but he will also find, I think, that these repetitions are essential to the full discussion of the particular point then under consideration; they are not repetitions pure and simple.

CONTENTS

I. Educational Aims and Educational Values; II. A Recent Tendency in Secondary Education Examined; III. Attempted Improvements in the Course of Study; IV. What should the Modern Secondary School aim to Accomplish; V. Secondary Education as a Unifying Force in American Life; VI. The Preparation of the High School Teacher of Mathematics; VII. The Study of Education at Harvard University; VIII. The Permanent Influence of John Amos Comenius.

Now Ready. Second Edition. 8vo. Price 3s.

HANDBOOK OF

British, Continental, and Canadian Universities

WITH SPECIAL MENTION OF THE COURSES OPEN TO WOMEN. COMPILED FOR THE GRADUATE CLUB OF BRYN MAWR COLLEGE

BY

ISABEL MADDISON

B.SC. (LOND.), PH.D. (BRYN MAWR)

SECOND EDITION

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

740

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

THE many graduates of Bryn Mawr College who have continued their studies abroad, have strongly felt the need of a handbook defining the position of the different foreign universities in regard to the admission of women to their courses, and giving particulars of the lectures, degrees, entrance requirements, etc., of foreign universities and colleges. Accordingly, in 1896, the Graduate Club of Bryn Mawr College published a Handbook of Courses open to the Women in British, Continental and Canadian Universities containing all the information on the subject which it was possible, in a necessarily limited space of time, to collect. The funds necessary for the purpose were secured through the interest and assistance of the President of Bryn Mawr College.

In 1899 it was decided to publish a new edition of the Handbook, and as it was found that practically all European universities and colleges were open to women and that the majority of the facts collected were as valuable to men students as to women students, the title was slightly modified. The information given in the Handbook has been obtained from the authorities of the different universities and collected from the calendars and other official publications. The facts gathered from these different sources have been put together in a condensed form, and it is hoped that the alphabetical arrangement adopted will be found convenient for reference.

The attention of women students is called to the work of the Council to accredit Women for Advanced Work in Foreign Universities, a committee of the Association of Collegiate Alumnæ.

The editor wishes to express her gratitude to all those whose kindness in supplying information made the compilation of the book possible, and to acknowledge her indebtedness to the "Minerva Jahrbuch der Gelehrten Welt." It is intended to issue a new edition of the Handbook yearly, and the Editor will be grateful for corrections of the errors almost unavoidable in a book of this kind and for suggestions which may tend to make the next issue more serviceable.

PRESS OPINIONS

Guardian.—"May well be useful to many beside those to whom it is more particularly addressed."

Journal of Education.—"A very carefully compiled guide, giving in a brie compass all the information that an intending woman student can need."

Now Ready. Crown 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

THE PHYSICAL NATURE OF THE CHILD

AND

HOW TO STUDY IT

BY

STUART H. ROWE, PH.D.

SUPERVISING PRINCIPAL OF THE LOVELL DISTRICT, NEW HAVEN, CONN.
FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF PEDAGOGY AND DIRECTOR OF PRACTICE
IN THE STATE NORMAL SCHOOL AT MANKATO, MINNESOTA

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
742

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

For parents whose time admits of a study of their children from the physical side, this book is intended to furnish the important data for such an investigation. It would seem that they would be among the first to interest themselves in such studies, though experience would hardly justify that opinion.

The term "practical" is always relative. Great care has been taken to include no tests which are not practical, that is, well worth while.

The subjects treated with the tests suggested represent in part a course in child-study given by the author in the State Normal School at Mankato, Minnesota. This book was originally an attempt to supply a text-book which would make it possible to devote more of the time of that course to experimentation. Since then a change in position has led the author to see more clearly the advantage of some such guide for teachers in a city system. A slight acquaintance with rural schools would lead one to the opinion that here first of all the suggestions of this book are needed.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 1. Introduction; 2. Sight; 3. Hearing; 4. (1) Touch, (2) Taste, (3) Smell, (4) Muscular Sense, (5) Temperature Sense; 5. Motor Ability; 6. Enunciation; 7. Nervousness; 8. Fatigue; 9. Disease; 10. Habits of Posture; 11. Habits of Movement; 12. Growth and Adolescence; 13. School Conditions affecting the Child's Physical Nature; 14. Home Conditions affecting the Child's Physical Nature.

Bibliography.

Index.

Guardian.—"This is a book written by one who has had experience of teaching and, having himself been obliged to face and conquer many difficulties, is anxious to help his less experienced colleagues. It is a book, therefore, of an eminently practical character, and as such, will prove of great value to the class for whose benefit it was primarily designed. . . . We venture to congratulate Dr. Rowe on what is, we believe, a novel undertaking, though his best reward will be the gratitude of the teachers who read and digest his work."

Now Ready. Extra Crown 8vo. Price 4s. 6d.

A Primer of Psychology

BY

EDWARD BRADFORD TITCHENER

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. Psychology, what it is and what it does; II. The Method of Psychology; III. Sensation; IV. Affection and Feeling; V. Attention; VI. Perception; VII. Idea and the Association of Ideas; VIII. Emotion; IX. The Simpler Forms of Action; X. Memory and Imagination; XI. Thought and Self-consciousness; XII. Sentiment; XIII. The Complex Forms of Action; XIV. Abnormal Psychology; XV. The Province and the Relations of Psychology. Appendix: Apparatus and Materials. Index of Names and Subjects.

PRESS OPINIONS

University Correspondent—"The whole book is admirably conceived and executed. The style is lucidity itself. . . . We know of no better first book in psychology than this *Primer*."

Cambridge Review—"The book, of its kind, is good: the name of its author should almost be enough to guarantee this. . . . Should prove adequate to that class of readers for whom it is designed."

Science (U.S.A.)—"Can scarcely fail to interest the novice as well as instruct him. The fundamental concepts are defined with unusual clearness, and every difficult point, as soon as it comes up, is carefully explained, often with the help of illustrations taken from literature or the physical sciences."

Scotsman—"It is, on the whole, a handbook marked by so unusual skill in exposition as to be well worthy of the attention of all who are interested in its subject."

Glasgow Herald—"The book is remarkably well arranged for teaching purposes."

Nature—"Prof. Tichener's *Primer* is a brief and brightly-written account of the main facts of psychology as seen by a disciple of Wundt, and is better adapted than any work which has yet come into the present reviewer's hands to serve as a first book for the beginners for whom it is designed. Two most excellent features of the little book, from this point of view, are the price list of psycholgical apparatus, and the often singularly ingenious problems and exercises appended to the various chapters for home or class use."

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

RELIGIOUS TEACHING

IN

SECONDARY SCHOOLS

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS AND PARENTS

FOR LESSONS ON

THE OLD AND NEW TESTAMENTS
EARLY CHURCH HISTORY
CHRISTIAN EVIDENCES
ETC.

SECOND EDITION, WITH NEW CHAPTER ON CHRISTIAN ETHIC

BY

REV. GEORGE C. BELL, M.A.
MASTER OF MARLBOROUGH COLLEGE

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved

745

CONTENTS

1. The Difficulties of Religious Teaching in Secondary Schools; 2. The Range and Subjects of such Teaching; 3. Suggestions about Methods—(*a*) Lessons on the Old Testament, (*b*) The Inter-Testamental Period, (*c*) The New Testament, (*d*) Early Church History; 4. The Inspiration of the Old Testament; 5. The Composite Character of the Books of the Old Testament, especially the Hexateuch; 6. Christian Evidences—Introductory, (*a*) The Ressurrection of Jesus Christ, (*b*) Miracles, (*c*) The Character and Teaching of Jesus Christ, (*d*) The Epistles of St. Paul, (*e*) Christianity and Evolution, (*f*) Evolution in History, (*g*) Christianity and Christendom, (*h*) The cumulative value of these Evidences, (*i*) The Difficulties of Constructive Unbelief; 7. Christian Ethic.

PRESS OPINIONS

GLASGOW HERALD.—"This is the best manual of the sort we know. Mr. Bell, who is Master of Marlborough College, seems to us to have grasped with great intelligence the true method of teaching religion to senior boys and girls. . . . His counsels as to the way in which the Old Testament should be handled are specially wise and suggestive. One very good feature of the book is that it avoids the platitudinous prosing so common in most works of the sort. . . . It ought to be in the hands of all who are teaching senior boys and girls, and ministers will find it very useful in conducting Bible classes. It is so free from denominational bias that its counsels will be helpful to teachers in all the orthodox Churches, and young people who are taken through the curriculum it prescribes ought to have a very intelligent grasp of the principles of Christianity."

CHRISTIAN WORLD.—"Mr. Bell desires a connective teaching of the Old and New Testament, on a principle of judicious selection, bringing out the preparation for the Gospel, the preaching of the Gospel, the results of Jesus' life, death, and revelation in the growth of the Church and in Christian ethics, in place of the prevalent concentration on an isolated period, which is buried beneath a mass of trifling details. His lucid and compact outlines of such connective teaching, his suggested courses of graduated instruction in the accepted results of the Higher Criticism, his dealing with such knotty problems as miracles, and so on, will help the enthusiastic but perplexed religious teacher over many a stile. The hints are the outcome of the ripe experience of one who has beaten out his views on the anvil of practice."

Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

GOD'S GARDEN

SUNDAY TALKS WITH BOYS

BY THE

REV. W. J. FOXELL, M.A., B.MUS. (LOND.)

MINOR CANON OF CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL; DIOCESAN INSPECTOR OF SCHOOLS FOR THE ARCHDEACONRY OF CANTERBURY

WITH AN INTRODUCTION

BY THE

REV. F. W. FARRAR, D.D., F.R.S.

DEAN OF CANTERBURY

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

PRESS OPINIONS

Speaker—"There is nothing mawkish, but much that is stimulating, in the volume entitled 'God's Garden: Sunday Talks with Boys.' Dean Farrar has written a brief introduction to his friend Mr. Foxell's bright and manly addresses, and in the course of it he says that sermons to boys ought to be short, simple, concrete, definite, real, as well as the outcome of genuine feeling. These addresses fulfil such an aim, and deal with obvious problems of faith and conduct in a strain of vigorous simplicity, and with an evident knowledge of the needs, the moods, the difficulties of boy-life. It is the kind of book which instils lessons of courage, trust, patience, and forbearance; and does so quite as much by example as by precept."

Educational Review—"As a scripture prize for boys between the ages of ten and fourteen it is particularly suitable. . . . The average school boy is not given to reading sermons, but if he could be induced to open the book he would soon find himself interested almost against his will."

Liverpool Post—"Contains twenty-five brief, clear, forceful addresses from which our youths, 'the trustees of posterity,' can hardly fail to gain some strength, courage, and wisdom."

Expository Times—"The Dean of Canterbury writes so hearty and withal so discerning an introduction to this volume of boys' sermons, that one is tempted to quote it and be done. One sentence we will quote: 'In the following pages the boys will find a forcible simplicity, a manly forthrightness, a knowledge of their needs, a fresh and vivacious manner of bringing spiritual and moral truths before them, which cannot but be of definite use to them.' That testimony is true."

Now Ready. Globe 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

IN A PLAIN PATH

ADDRESSES TO BOYS

BY THE

REV. W. J. FOXELL, M.A., B.MUS. (LOND.)

MINOR CANON OF CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL; DIOCESAN INSPECTOR OF SCHOOLS FOR THE ARCHDEACONRY OF CANTERBURY

"*Teach me Thy way, O Lord, and lead me in a plain path, because of mine enemies.*"—Ps. xxvii. 11.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS

1. A Common Soldier; 2. Reverence; 3. Ideals; 4. Discontent; 5. The True Gentleman; 6. Friendship; 7. Duty to Parents; 8. Books; 9. Progress through Failure; 10. Idle Words; 11. God the Judge; 12. A Noble Revenge; 13. Habits—Good and Bad; 14. A Bold Reply; 15. Fools and their Folly; 16. The Noblest Victory; 17. The Use of Time; 18. Without Fear; 19. Known by their Fruits; 20. None like That; 21. Idleness; 22. Paid in your own Coin; 23. The Beasts that Perish; 24. In Time of Sickness.

PRESS OPINIONS

Speaker.—"Canon Foxell, of Canterbury, has just published a volume of straightforward, manly addresses to boys, primarily intended for those who wish to walk 'In a Plain Path.' He handles with admirable vigour, and real discernment of a boy's difficulties, such high themes as the use of time, noble revenge, the true gentleman, the noblest victory, and progress through failure. There is nothing childish in the method of treatment, and yet we feel sure that a man who spoke to a congregation of lads in this fashion would not talk over the heads of the youngest, and yet find his way to the hearts of those who are just passing from the restraints of school to the responsibilities of life."

British Weekly.—"Those whose position involves their addressing schoolboys could not do better than study Mr. Foxell's method, and if possible adopt it. Parents might with advantage introduce the volume to their children."

Christian World.—"Alike in choice of subject and method of treatment, they are admirable examples of what such addresses ought to be."

New Illustrated Editions. Now Ready

In four volumes. Crown 8vo. Cloth, 3s. 6d. each

[Macmillan's Three-and-Sixpenny Library]

Prize Editions. In four volumes. Coloured cloth binding, 2s. 6d. each

In cloth extra, gilt edges, 3s. 6d. each

CURIOSITIES

OF

NATURAL HISTORY

BY

FRANCIS T. BUCKLAND, M.A.

LATE STUDENT OF CHRIST CHURCH, OXFORD

AND FORMERLY H.M. INSPECTOR OF SALMON FISHERIES, ETC.

FIRST SERIES—Rats, Serpents, Fishes, Frogs, Newts, Monkeys, etc.

SECOND SERIES—Fossils, Bears, Wolves, Cats, Eagles, Hedgehogs, Eels, Herrings, Whales

THIRD SERIES—Wild Ducks, Fishing, Lions, Tigers, Foxes, Porpoises

FOURTH SERIES—Giants, Mummies, Mermaids, Wonderful People, Salmon, etc.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

749

SOME PRESS OPINIONS OF THE NEW EDITIONS

Pall Mall Gazette.—"Once again Messrs. Macmillan have reprinted—for the twentieth time, no less—the four delightful volumes that go to make Frank Buckland's *Curiosities of Natural History*. The popularity of the series is ever green, and this reissue, light in the hand, cheap to the pocket, well-printed and excellently illustrated as before, leaves nothing to be desired."

Saturday Review.—"There is about Buckland's writing the charm of simplicity combined with the knowledge which was the result of tireless study and observation of all things in nature, animate or inanimate. The present issue will assure the continued popularity for which Buckland's original publisher hoped in 1860 when he produced the fifth edition of the first series."

Standard.—"The range of subjects which the book comprises is astonishing—from a disquisition upon the teeth of the ancient Britons and a study in the habits of rats to the effects of valerian upon tigers and the animal worship of the average Englishman. Mr. Buckland was always entertaining upon such matters as these, and no man need spend a dull hour who has these volumes within his reach."

The Daily Mail.—"We are delighted to turn again to the scholarly simplicity of Frank Buckland, and we are not without hope that that acute observer may become once more an example to the popular naturalist."

St. James's Gazette.—"Since Frank Buckland published the first of the delightful volumes known by the name of *Curiosities of Natural History*, there has been a continuous demand for the charming mixture of learning, humour, and observation which characterises these works. The four series are now published by Messrs. Macmillan in four volumes, and since they deserve a place on the bookshelf of every schoolboy no less than on that of his parent, their reappearance is most welcome."

The Daily Express.—"Messrs. Macmillan and Co. have re-issued in handsome form the late Frank Buckland's *Curiosities of Natural History*. These four volumes literally teem with information, anecdote, and acute observation. The whole animal world took 'Frank' Buckland into its confidence, and he was never so happy as when going about with a hedgehog in one pocket, a snake in another, and a young black bear shambling along in the rear."

The Observer.—"This new edition, in four volumes, of the late Mr. Frank Buckland's most readable *Curiosities of Natural History* will be appreciated both by old friends and new. The volumes are excellently printed and well bound. Even the unscientific reader may find much that is entertaining in Mr. Buckland's humorous disquisition on many curious creatures."

Manchester Guardian.—"Nothing can be more appetising than a book that roams from 'a hunt in a horsepond' to an anecdotal history of rats, from bird-catching in Epping Forest to the ways of caged lions, or from the biography of a pet monkey to the trade secrets of giants and fire-eaters. Yet perhaps the quality which lends perennial charm to these volumes is the sense they give of Frank Buckland's own vigorous, unconventional, and manly character."

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

began the nightingale's song. I was amazed and astonished at what I heard. The notes he produced were exactly like those of the nightingale, particularly the high and sweet note, "Water bubble," or "Wheet, wheet," followed by the deep-sounding "cur-r-r-r"—the challenge of the male bird to his rivals. The *male* nightingales come over at least a week before the females, and if they are caught *before* the arrival of the females, they will live and do well under proper treatment—but it is not everybody who is going to make them live. After the arrival of the female, not one in a thousand will live. Dr. M'Lean of Colchester, my friend Mr. Coulson tells me, had a nightingale in a cage *twenty-three years*. This was an old bird when he caught it.

I no longer disbelieve the old story of a man being specially retained by the proprietors of Vauxhall or Spring Gardens in days gone by, to sit in a bush and sing like a nightingale. I believe, moreover, that both Sir Roger de Coverley and Mr. *Spectator* were grossly humbugged, especially the latter, for we read that on the 20th of May, 1712, these two worthies took an evening stroll, and Mr. *Spectator* tells us:—

"We were now arrived at Spring Garden, which is exquisitely pleasant at this time of the year. When I considered the fragrancy of the walks and bowers, with the *choirs of birds* that sung upon the trees, and the

[SPECIMEN PAGE]

this point, a gentleman who has been much engaged in engineering works in Holland, informs me that the canals and ditches in some of the Dutch towns smell most offensively till the water becomes green, and then the smell disappears: the same thing that happens in the Serpentine happens in Holland. I have lately seen a blue book containing drawings of the little beasts and the vegetable matter from the Serpentine. These little animalculæ are generally looked upon as being the cause of all the foulness of the Serpentine, but the saddle is put on the wrong horse. If these little creatures and plants did not come into existence, the miasma from the decaying matter would be insupportable. The Serpentine is capable of being improved in many ways, into which it would be foreign to the subject now to enter.

Frogs are seldom found in ponds where ducks are kept. The ducks devour the tadpoles, and have no objection to young frogs, even if they have got over the tadpole state. Mr. Quekett tells me, that in the neighbourhood of Willesden there are no wells, and each householder has a pond: these are kept free from newts and frogs by the keeping a jack in them, who eats up every frog and newt that makes its appearance. I once saw a little boy fishing in the Serpentine with very primitive tackle. All of a sudden there came a tug at his line, nearly pulling the rod out of his hands. He gave a jerk upwards in answer to the unexpected bite, and out came a lively black eel about two pounds in weight. The boy was so frightened at the writhing eel that he put down his rod and ran away, leaving the eel on the grass.

Night lines are forbidden in the Serpentine. We have all seen the pretty little model sailing-boats scudding

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Fcap. 8*vo.* 4*s.* 6*d.* *With Maps*

[First Edition 1865. Second 1865; reprinted 1866, 1868, 1869, 1871, 1872, 1874, 1875, 1876, 1877, 1878, 1879, 1880, 1881, 1883, 1884, 1885, 1887, 1888, 1889, 1890, 1892, 1894, 1896, 1897, 1899.]

A CLASS BOOK

OF

Old Testament History

BY

REV. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D.

CONTENTS: Book I. From the Creation to the Dispersion of Mankind.—Book II. The Patriarchal Age.—Book III. From the Settlement of the Israelites in Egypt to the Giving of the Law.—Book IV. The Mosaic Worship and Polity.—Book V. From the Departure from Sinai to the Death of Moses.—Book VI. Joshua and the Conquest of Western Palestine.—Book VII. Period of the Judges.—Book VIII. From the Time of Samuel to the Accession of David.—Book IX. The Reigns of David and Solomon.—Book X. Kingdoms of Judah and Israel: Part I. Period of Mutual Hostility; Part II. Period of Mutual Alliance and Hostility to Syria; Part III. Renewal of Hostilities, Decline of both Kingdoms before the Power of the Assyrian Empire.—Book XI. From the Captivity to the Close of the Canon.

British Quarterly Review—"The real value of this book is much greater than might be supposed from its unpretending title and appearance. It is, in fact, a careful and elaborate though brief compendium of all that modern research has done for the illustration of the Old Testament. We know of no work which contains so much important information in so small a compass. It will serve as a most useful help to parents or Sunday school teachers."

Educational Times—"A work which for fulness and accuracy of information may be confidently recommended to teachers as one of the best text-books of Scripture History which can be put into a pupil's hands. Four clearly drawn maps add much to the value of the book. A very complete index at the end has been so arranged as to form a concise dictionary of the persons and places mentioned in the course of the narrative."

Guardian—"Dr. Maclear has put together a well-arranged summary of the Scriptural story, with notes, chiefly geographical, derived from Stanley, Robinson, and other modern authors, to elucidate the sacred text. This class-book is not critical, nor does it enter upon the questions raised by the Colenso school in its free handling of the Scriptural narrative. For purposes of education, it is far better without them."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Pott 8vo. 1s. *With a Map of the Holy Land*

[First Edition 1866; reprinted 1866, 1868, 1870 (2), 1871, 1872, 1873 (2), 1874, 1875, 1876, 1877 (2), 1878, 1879, 1880, 1881, 1882, 1883, 1884, 1885 (2), 1886, 1887, 1888, 1890, 1891, 1892, 1893, 1895, 1896, 1897, 1899, 1900.]

A SHILLING BOOK

OF

Old Testament History

FOR NATIONAL AND ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS

BY

REV. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS: Book I. From the Creation to the Dispersion of Mankind.—Book II. The Patriarchal Age.—Book III. From the Settlement of the Israelites in Egypt to the Giving of the Law.—Book IV. From the Departure from Sinai to the Death of Moses.—Book V. Joshua and the Conquest of Western Palestine.—Book VI. Period of the Judges.—Book VII. From the Time of Samuel to the Accession of David.—Book VIII. The Reigns of David and Solomon.—Book IX. Kingdoms of Judah and Israel: Part I. Period of Mutual Hostility; Part II. Period of Mutual Alliance and Hostility to Syria; Part III. Renewal of Mutual Hostilities, Decline of both Kingdoms.—Book X. From the Captivity to the Close of the Canon.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Fcap. 8*vo.* 5*s.* 6*d.* *With Maps*

[First Edition 1866. Second 1867; reprinted 1869, 1871, 1873, 1875, 1877, 1879, 1880, 1882, 1885, 1888, 1890, 1894, 1897.]

A CLASS BOOK

OF

New Testament History

BY

REV. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D.

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS: Book I. *The Connexion between the Old and New Testaments*—Part I. The Jews under the Persians and the Kings of Egypt; Part II. The Jews under the Kings of Syria; Part III. Rise of the Asmonean Dynasty; Part IV. Decline of the Asmonean Dynasty, Interference of the Romans, and Rise of the Herodian Family; Part V. Retrospect and Reflections.

Book II. *The Gospel History*—Part I. The Birth and Childhood of Christ; Part II. From the Beginning of the Ministry of the Baptist to the First Passover; Part III. From the First Passover to Election of the Apostles; Part IV. From the Election of the Apostles to the Death of John the Baptist; Part V. From the Death of John the Baptist to the Visit of the Saviour to Jerusalem at the Feast of Tabernacles; Part VI. From the Feast of Tabernacles to the Triumphal Entry into Jerusalem; Part VII. From the Arrival at Bethany to the Ascension.

Book III. *The Apostolic History*—Part I. The Church of Jerusalem; Part II. The Church of Palestine; Part III. The Church of the Gentiles: Section I. First Missionary Tour of St. Paul and Barnabas; Section II. St. Paul's Second Missionary Journey; Section III. St. Paul's Third Missionary Journey and Imprisonment at Cæsarea; Section IV. St. Paul's Imprisonment at Rome.

Athenæum—"Dr. Maclear has produced in this handy little volume, a singularly clear and orderly arrangement of the sacred story. . . . His work is solidly and completely done."

Spectator—"It seems carefully prepared, and is properly furnished with maps, chronological table, and a good index."

British Quarterly Review—"Mr. Maclear's manuals are so well known, and are so admirable in their scholarly accuracy and simplicity, that it is unnecessary to do more than announce them. . . . For school and family use it is excellent."

A Specimen Copy will be presented on application

Pott 8vo. 1s. *With a Map to Illustrate the Apostolic History*

[First Edition 1867; reprinted 1868, 1871, 1873, 1874, 1875, 1876, 1878, 1880, 1881, 1883, 1885, 1886, 1888, 1889, 1891, 1892, 1894, 1896, 1898, 1900.]

A SHILLING BOOK

OF

New Testament History

FOR NATIONAL AND ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS

BY

REV. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

CONTENTS: Book I. *The Connexion between the Old and New Testaments*—Part I. The Jews under the Persians and the Kings of Egypt; Part II. The Jews under the Kings of Syria; Part III. Rise of the Asmonean Dynasty; Part IV. Decline of the Asmonean Dynasty, Interference of the Romans, and Rise of the Herodian Family.

Book II. *The Gospel History*—Part I. The Birth and Childhood of Christ; Part II. From the Beginning of the Ministry of the Baptist to the First Passover; Part III. From the First Passover to the Election of the Apostles; Part IV. From the Election of the Apostles to the Death of John the Baptist; Part V. From the Death of John the Baptist to the Visit of the Saviour to Jerusalem at the Feast of Tabernacles; Part VI. From the Feast of Tabernacles to the Triumphal Entry into Jerusalem; Part VII. From the Arrival at Bethany to the Ascension.

Book III. *The Apostolic History*—Part I. The Church of Jerusalem; Part II. Church of Palestine; Part III. The Church of the Gentiles.

Applications for Specimen Copies will be considered

Pott 8vo. 2s. 6d.

[First Edition 1868; reprinted 1870, 1871, 1872, 1873, 1875 (2), 1876, 1877. Second 1877; reprinted 1878, 1880, 1881, 1883, 1886, 1887, 1892, 1894, 1896, 1898.]

AN ELEMENTARY INTRODUCTION

TO THE

BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER

BY

REV. F. PROCTER

AND

REV. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D.

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

757

Pott 8vo. Price 1s. 6d. Abridged Edition, 6d.

A CLASS BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND

BY

REV. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D.

"The present work forms a sequel to the author's *Class-Book of Old and New Testament History*. Like them it is furnished with notes and references to larger works, and it is hoped that it may be found, especially in the higher forms of our public schools, to supply a suitable manual of instruction in the chief doctrines of our Church, and a useful help in the preparation for candidates for Confirmation." —*Preface to the First Edition.*

"A third edition of the *Class-Book of the Catechism* having been called for, I have taken the opportunity of revising the whole, and adding a few notes on words not sufficiently explained."—*Extract from Preface to the Third Edition.*

An Introduction to the Creeds. By the Rev. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D. Pott 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Greek-English Lexicon to the New Testament. By W. J. HICKIE, M.A. Pott 8vo. 3*s.*

Essentials of New Testament Greek. By J. H. HUDDILSTON. Pott 8vo. 3*s.*

Greek Testament. Edited by Bishop WESTCOTT and DR. HORT. School Edition of Text. Pott 8vo, cloth 4*s.* 6*d.*; roan, red edges, 5*s.* 6*d.*; morocco, gilt edges, 6*s.* 6*d.* India Paper Edition. 7*s.* 6*d.* net. Library Edition. 8vo. 10*s.* net.

The Gospel According to St. Matthew. The Greek Text. With Notes by the Rev. A. SLOMAN, M.A., Head Master of Birkenhead School. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

School Readings in the Greek Testament. Being the Outline of the Life of our Lord, as given by St. Mark, with additions from the Text of the other Evangelists. Arranged and Edited, with Notes and Vocabulary, by the Rev. A. CALVERT M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Gospel According to St. Luke. The Greek Text. With Notes by the Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Acts of the Apostles. The Greek Text. With Notes by T. E. PAGE, M.A., Assistant Master at the Charterhouse. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Acts of the Apostles. The Authorized Version. With Notes by T. E. PAGE, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Macmillan's Half-Crown Prize Library

In Ornamental Bindings. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d. each
Also in Full Gilt, Gilt Edges. 3s. 6d. each

SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR SCHOOL PRIZES

By Rev. J. C. Atkinson.

WALKS, TALKS, TRAVELS AND EXPLOITS OF TWO SCHOOL BOYS. With Illustrations.
PLAY HOURS AND HALF-HOLIDAYS. Illustrated.
SCENES IN FAIRYLAND. Illustrated.
THE LAST OF THE GIANT KILLERS. Illustrated.

By Jane Austen.

PRIDE AND PREJUDICE. Illustrated.
SENSE AND SENSIBILITY. Illustrated.

By L. N. Badenoch.

ROMANCE OF THE INSECT WORLD. Illustrated.

By Rev. R. H. Barham.

THE INGOLDSBY LEGENDS. Illustrated.

By Frank Buckland

CURIOSITIES OF NATURAL HISTORY. 4 Vols.

By Sir W. Butler.

LIFE OF GORDON. With Portrait.

By Julian Corbett.

LIFE OF DRAKE. With Portrait.
FOR GOD AND GOLD. Illustrated.

By Mrs. Craik.

OLIVE. Illustrated by G. BOWERS.

By Sir Edward Creasy.

THE FIFTEEN DECISIVE BATTLES OF THE WORLD.

By Daniel Defoe.

ROBINSON CRUSOE. Illustrated.

By Charles Dickens.

OLIVER TWIST. Illustrated.
CHRISTMAS BOOKS. Illustrated.
THE OLD CURIOSITY SHOP. Illustrated.

Macmillan's Half-Crown Prize Library

In Ornamental Bindings. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d. each
Also in Full Gilt, Gilt Edges. 3s. 6d. each

By Maria Edgeworth.

POPULAR TALES. Illustrated.
LAZY LAWRENCE AND OTHER STORIES. Illustrated.

By Violet G. Finny.

REVOLT OF THE YOUNG MacCORMACKS. Illustrated.

By W. Warde Fowler.

TALES OF THE BIRDS. Illustrated.

By Mrs. Hugh Fraser.

THE BROWN AMBASSADOR.

By J. Gilmore.

STORM WARRIORS. Illustrated.

By George Hooper.

LIFE OF WELLINGTON. With Portrait.

By Thomas Hughes.

LIFE OF LIVINGSTONE. With Portrait.
TOM BROWN'S SCHOOL DAYS. Illustrated.

By A. and E. Keary.

HEROES OF ASGARD. Illustrated by HUARD.

By Wardlaw Kennedy.

BEASTS: THUMB-NAIL STUDIES IN PETS. Illustrated.

By Charles Kingsley.

WESTWARD HO! Illustrated by C. E. BROCK.
HEREWARD THE WAKE.
THE HEROES. Illustrated.
THE WATER BABIES. Illustrated.
MADAM HOW AND LADY WHY. Illustrated.
GLAUCUS. Illustrated.
AT LAST. Illustrated.

By Henry Kingsley.

TALES OF OLD TRAVEL. Illustrated.

By J. K. Laughton.

LIFE OF NELSON. With Portrait.

Macmillan's Half-Crown Prize Library

In Ornamental Bindings. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d. each
Also in Full Gilt, Gilt Edges. 3s. 6d. each

By S. Lover.

HANDY ANDY. Illustrated.

By Capt. Marryat.

POOR JACK. Illustrated.
MASTERMAN READY. Illustrated.
NEWTON FORSTER. Illustrated.
JACOB FAITHFUL. Illustrated.
PIRATE AND THREE CUTTERS. Illustrated.
SNARLEYYOW. Illustrated.

By Mrs. Molesworth.

CARROTS. Illustrated by WALTER CRANE.
THE TAPESTRY ROOM. Illustrated.
A CHRISTMAS CHILD. Illustrated.
THE CUCKOO CLOCK. Illustrated.
GRANDMOTHER DEAR. Illustrated. US. Illustrated.
THE ADVENTURES OF HERR BABY. Illustrated.

By J. Morier.

HAJJI BABA OF ISPAHAN. Illustrated.

By H. E. Norton.

A BOOK OF COURTESY. Illustrated.

By Mrs. Oliphant.

AGNES HOPETOUN. Illustrated.

By Major Gambier Parry.

THE STORY OF DICK. Illustrated.

By Eleanor C. Price.

IN THE LION'S MOUTH. Illustrated.

By Charlotte M. Yonge.

THE LITTLE DUKE. Illustrated.
THE LANCES OF LYNWOOD. Illustrated.
THE PRINCE AND THE PAGE. Illustrated.
THE ARMOURER'S PRENTICES. Illustrated.
P'S AND Q'S, AND LITTLE LUCY'S WONDERFUL GLOBE. Illustrated.

Further volumes will be added from time to time

LIST OF
BOOKS SUITABLE FOR PRIZES

For Prices in Leather Bindings see page 772

ANTIQUITIES

Pompeii, Its Life and Art. By A. MAU. Translated by F. W. KELSEY. Illustrated. 8vo. 25*s.* net.

Atlas of Classical Antiquities. By TH. SCHREIBER. Edited by Prof. W. C. F. ANDERSON. 4to. 21*s.* net.

The City State of the Greeks and Romans. A Survey Introductory to the Study of Ancient History. By W. WARDE FOWLER, M.A. Cr. 8vo. 5*s.*

A Handbook of Greek Sculpture. By E. A. GARDNER, M.A. Ex. Crown 8vo. 10*s.*; or in 2 parts, 5*s.* each.

A Companion to School Classics. By JAMES GOW, M.A., Litt.D. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Rambles and Studies in Greece. By Rev. J. P. MAHAFFY, D.D. With Illustrations. New Edition. With a Map. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Social Life in Greece from Homer to Menander. By Rev. J. P. MAHAFFY, D.D. 3rd Edition. Crown 8vo. 9*s.*

A Survey of Greek Civilization. By Rev. J. P. MAHAFFY. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

The Mycenaean Age. By D. C. TSOUNTAS and Prof. J. I. MANATT. Fcap. 4to. 24*s.*

Mythology and Monuments of Ancient Athens. By Miss JANE HARRISON and Mrs. VERRALL. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 16*s.*

A History of Greek Art. By F. B. TARBELL. Extra crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Ruins and Excavations of Ancient Rome. By R. LANCIANI. Cr. 8vo. 16*s.*

The Destruction of Ancient Rome. By R. LANCIANI. Ex. cr. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

ART

A Popular Handbook to the National Gallery. Including Notes collected from the Works of Mr. Ruskin. By E. T. COOK. 5th Edition, 1897. Crown 8vo. Half morocco. 14*s.*

A Popular Handbook to the Tate Gallery. By E. T. COOK. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

Sketching from Nature. A Handbook for Students and Amateurs. By TRISTRAM J. ELLIS. Illustrated by H. STACY MARKS, R.A., and the Author. 3rd Ed. Cr. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Thoughts about Art. By P. G. HAMERTON. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

Life in Ancient Egypt. Described by ADOLF ERMAN, translated by H. M. TIRARD. Illustrated. Super royal 8vo. 21*s.* net.

Studies in the Art Anatomy of Animals. By E. E. S. THOMPSON. Royal 4to. 30*s.* net.

Some Hints on Learning to Draw. Containing Examples from Leighton, Watts, Poynter, etc. By G. W. C. HUTCHINSON. Super roy. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

ASTRONOMY

Popular Astronomy. By Sir G. B. AIRY. Illustrated. 7th Edition. Revised by Prof. H. H. TURNER, M.A. Foolscap 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Popular Astronomy. By Prof. SIMON NEWCOMB. With 112 Engravings and Maps of the Stars. 2nd Edition. 8vo. 18*s.*

Pioneers of Science. By Prof. OLIVER LODGE, F.R.S. Extra crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Contains lives of Copernicus, Tycho Brahé, Kepler, Galileo, Descartes, Newton, Roemer, Bradley, Lagrange, Laplace, Herschel, and Bessel.

For Prices in Leather Bindings see page 772

BIOGRAPHY

The Life and Times of Saint Bernard, Abbot of Clairvaux, A.D. 1091-1153. By J. COTTER MORISON, M.A. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Seekers after God. The Lives of Seneca, Epictetus, and Marcus Aurelius. By FREDERIC W. FARRAR, D.D., F.R.S. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

St. Anselm. By R. W. CHURCH. Globe 8vo. 5*s.*

Francis of Assisi. By Mrs. OLIPHANT. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Alfred the Great. By THOMAS HUGHES. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Cromwell. By GUIZOT. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Oliver Cromwell. By JOHN MORLEY. 8vo. 10*s.* net.

Mary, Queen of Scots. By MIGNET. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Charles Kingsley: His Letters and Memories of his Life. Edited by his WIFE. With a Portrait. Library Edition. Two vols. Crown 8vo. 12*s.*

Cheap Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Boswell's Life of Johnson. Edited, with an Introduction, by MOWBRAY MORRIS. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Essays in Historical Chemistry. By T. E. THORPE. Cr. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.* net. Contains lives of R. Boyle, J. Priestley, C. W. Scheele, H. Cavendish, A. L. Lavoisier, M. Faraday, T. Graham, F. Wöhler, J. B. A. Dumas, H. Kopp, and D. I. Mendeleeff.

Rise and Development of Organic Chemistry. By C. SCHORLEMMER. Edited by Prof. SMITHELLS. Crown 8vo. 5*s.* net.

A Life of Professor Clerk Maxwell. By Prof. L. CAMPBELL, M.A., and W. GARNETT, M.A. 2nd Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Gordon. By Sir W. BUTLER. Prize Edition. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Drake. By JULIAN CORBETT. Prize Edition. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Livingstone. By THOMAS HUGHES. Prize Edition. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Nelson. By J. K. LAUGHTON. Prize Edition. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Wellington. By G. HOOPER. Prize Edition. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

BOTANY

The Student's Flora of the British Islands. By Sir J. D. HOOKER, F.R.S. Globe 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

On British Wild Flowers considered in Relation to Insects. By LORD AVEBURY. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Flowers, Fruits, and Leaves. By LORD AVEBURY. With Illustrations. Cr. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

COLLECTED WORKS
ESSAYS
MISCELLANEOUS WORKS

English Prose Selections. With Critical Introductions by various writers, and General Introductions to each period. Edited by Sir HENRY CRAIK, K.C.B., LL.D. In 5 vols. Crown 8vo. Vol. I.—14th to 16th century. 7*s.* 6*d.* Vol. II.—16th century to Restoration. 7*s.* 6*d.* Vol. III.—17th century. 7*s.* 6*d.* Vol. IV.—18th century. 7*s.* 6*d.* Vol. V.—19th century. 8*s.* 6*d.*

Oliver Goldsmith: The Miscellaneous Works of. With Biographical Introduction. Edited by Prof. MASSON. Globe 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Bacon's Essays and Colours of Good and Evil. With Notes and Glossarial Index by W. ALDIS WRIGHT, M.A. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

The Essays of Elia. By CHARLES LAMB. Edited by Canon AINGER. Globe 8vo. 5*s.*

The Choice of Books. By FREDERIC HARRISON. Globe 8vo. 5*s.*

The Pleasures of Life. By LORD AVEBURY. Globe 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Use of Life. By LORD AVEBURY, Globe 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Aspects of the Greek Genius. By Professor S. H. BUTCHER, Litt.D. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* net.

Greek Studies. By WALTER PATER M.A. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

For Prices in Leather Bindings see page 772

Essays in Criticism. By MATTHEW ARNOLD. Globe 8vo. 5*s.*

Essays in Criticism. Second Series. By MATTHEW ARNOLD. Gl. 8vo. 5*s.*

Miscellanies. By JOHN MORLEY. Three vols. Globe 8vo. 5*s.* each.

DIVINITY

The Bible in the Church: A Popular Account of the Collection and Reception of the Holy Scriptures in the Christian Churches. By B. F. WESTCOTT, D.D. Pott 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Side Lights upon Bible History. By Mrs. SYDNEY BUXTON. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

Stories from the Bible. By A. J. CHURCH. Two Series. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* each.

The Nations around Israel. By ANNIE KEARY. With Illus. Cr. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

An Introduction to the Study of the Gospels. By B. F. WESTCOTT, D.D. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

A General Survey of the History of the Canon of the New Testament during the First Four Centuries. By B. F. WESTCOTT, D.D. Cr. 8vo 10*s.* 6*d.*

Essays in the History of Religious Thought in the West. By B. F. WESTCOTT. D.D. Globe 8vo. 5*s.*

The Canon of the Old Testament. By Bishop RYLE, D.D. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

History of the Christian Church during the First Six Centuries. By S. CHEETHAM. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

The English Church from its Foundation to the Norman Conquest. By Rev. W. HUNT. Cr. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

The English Church in the 14th and 15th Centuries. By Rev. W. W. CAPES. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Outlines of Church History. By R. SOHM. Translated by MAY SINCLAIR. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

An Elementary Introduction to the Book of Common Prayer. By Rev. F. PROCTER, and Rev. Canon MACLEAR. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

God's Garden. By Rev. W. J. FOXELL, M.A. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Epistle to the Galatians. A Revised Text, with Introduction, Notes, and Dissertations. By Bishop LIGHTFOOT. 10th Edition. 8vo. 12*s.*

The Epistle to the Philippians. A Revised Text, with Introduction, Notes, and Dissertations. By Bishop LIGHTFOOT. 8vo. 12*s.*

The Epistle to the Colossians and to Philemon. A Revised Text, with Introductions, etc. By Bishop LIGHTFOOT. 9th Edition. 8vo. 12*s.*

Truth in Tale. Addresses chiefly to Children. By W. BOYD CARPENTER, D.D., Bishop of Ripon. 2nd Edition. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Ecce Homo! By Sir J. R. SEELEY. Globe 8vo. 5*s.*

Bible Teachings in Nature. By the Rev. HUGH MACMILLAN, D.D., LL.D. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

The Gate Beautiful: and other Bible Teachings for the Young. By the Rev. HUGH MACMILLAN, D.D. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Boy-Life: Its Trial, Its Strength, Its Fulness. By ARCHBISHOP BENSON. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

In a Plain Path. By Rev. W. J. FOXELL, M.A. Globe 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

GEOLOGY

Class Book of Geology. By Sir ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S. Illustrated. New and Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

The Scenery of Scotland. Viewed in connection with its Physical Geology. By Sir ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S. Ex. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* net.

The Scenery of Switzerland. By LORD AVEBURY. Cr. 8vo. 6*s.*

HISTORY

History of Rome. By DR. MOMMSEN. Abridged. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

A History of Rome to the Battle of Actium. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

The Second Punic War. Being chapters of the History of Rome by the late THOMAS ARNOLD, D.D. Edited by W. T. ARNOLD, M.A. With Maps. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

The Holy Roman Empire. By JAMES BRYCE, M.P. Arnold Prize Essay, 1863. 4th Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.* Library Edition. 8vo. 14*s.*

For Prices in Leather Bindings see page 772

A History of Greece. By J. B. BURY. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

Forty-one Years in India. By Earl ROBERTS. Ex. crown 8vo. 10*s.* net.

A History of the Indian Mutiny. By T. RICE HOLMES. Ex. crown 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Reminiscences of the Great Mutiny. By WM. FORBES MITCHELL. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Cawnpore. By Sir GEO. OTTO TREVELYAN. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

The Relief of Chitral. By G. J. and F. E. YOUNGHUSBAND. Ill. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.* net.

History of the English People. By J. R. GREEN. 8 vols. Gl. 8vo. 5*s.* each.

A Short History of the English People. By J. R. GREEN. With Maps and Tables. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

A Short History of the English People. Illustrated Edition. Edited by Mrs. J. R. GREEN and Miss KATE NORGATE. Three vols. 8vo. 40*s.* net.

The Making of England. By J. R. GREEN. With Maps. 2 vols. Globe 8vo. 10*s.*

The Conquest of England. By J. R. GREEN. With Maps and Portrait. 2 vols. Globe 8vo. 10*s.*

Town Life in the Fifteenth Century. By Mrs. J. R. GREEN. 2 vols. 8vo. 32*s.*

England under the Angevin Kings. By KATE NORGATE. 2 vols. With Maps and Plans. 8vo. 32*s.*

Handbook of European History. By A. HASSALL. Extra crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.* net.

The History of Greece from its Commencement to the Close of the Independence of the Greek Nation. By ADOLF HOLM. Translated. 4 vols. Vols. I.-III., 6*s.* net each. Vol. IV., 7*s.* 6*d.* net.

The Meaning of History: and other Historical Pieces. By F. HARRISON. Extra crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.* net.

A History of the University of Oxford from the earliest Times to the year 1530. By Sir H. C. MAXWELL LYTE, M.A., F.S.A. Medium 8vo. 16*s.*

A History of Eton College. 1440-1875. By Sir H. C. MAXWELL LYTE, M.A. With Illustrations. Medium 8vo. 21*s.* net.

Ave Roma Immortalis. By F. M. CRAWFORD. 2 Vols. Ex. crown 8vo. 21*s.* net.

Rulers of the South. By F. M. CRAWFORD. 2 Vols. Ex. crown 8vo. 21*s.* net.

The Makers of Florence: Dante, Giotto, Savonarola, and their City. By Mrs. OLIPHANT. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

The Makers of Venice: Doges, Conquerors, Painters, and Men of Letters. By Mrs. OLIPHANT. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

The Makers of Modern Rome. By Mrs. OLIPHANT. Illust. Cr. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Royal Edinburgh: Her Saints, Kings, and Scholars. By Mrs. OLIPHANT. With Illustrations by Sir GEORGE REID, R.S.A. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Jerusalem, The Holy City, its History and Hope. By Mrs. OLIPHANT. With Illustrations. Cr. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

The Oregon Trail. By FRANCIS PARKMAN. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.* net.

Montcalm and Wolfe. By FRANCIS PARKMAN. 2 Vols. Cr. 8vo. 17*s.* net.

Historical Essays. By E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. First Series. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.* Third Series. 8vo. 12*s.* Fourth Series. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Historical Essays. By the late Bishop LIGHTFOOT. Globe 8vo. 5*s.*

Lectures and Essays. By Sir J. R. SEELEY. Globe 8vo. 5*s.*

History of Federal Government in Greece and Italy. By E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. With a General Introduction. New Edition. Edited by J. B. BURY, M.A. Extra crown 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Sketches of Travel in Normandy and Maine. By E. A. FREEMAN. Cr. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

The Expansion of England. Two courses of Lectures. By Sir J. R. SEELEY, M.A. Globe 8vo. 5*s.*

A Book of Golden Deeds of all Times and all Lands. Gathered and narrated. By C. M. YONGE. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

The Beginning of the Middle Ages By R. W. CHURCH. Globe 8vo. 5*s.*

For Prices in Leather Bindings see page 772

The Chronicles of Froissart. Translated by Lord BERNERS. Edited by G. C. MACAULAY, M.A. Cr. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

A Book of Worthies. Gathered from the Old Histories and now Written anew. By C. M. YONGE. Pott 8vo. *2s. 6d.* net.

ILLUSTRATED BOOKS

THE NEW CRANFORD SERIES

Illustrated. Crown 8vo. Extra Gilt.

3s. 6d. each.

Cranford. By Mrs. GASKELL. With Preface by ANNE T. RITCHIE, and 100 Illustrations by HUGH THOMSON.

The Vicar of Wakefield. By OLIVER GOLDSMITH. With Preface by AUSTIN DOBSON, and 182 Illustrations by HUGH THOMSON.

Sheridan's Rivals and The School for Scandal. With Illustrations by E. J. SULLIVAN.

The Alhambra. By WASHINGTON IRVING. With Illustrations by JOSEPH PENNELL.

Days with Sir Roger de Coverley. Reprinted from the *Spectator*. With Illustrations by HUGH THOMSON.

Coaching Days and Coaching Ways. By W. OUTRAM TRISTRAM. With 214 Illustrations by HUGH THOMSON and HERBERT RAILTON.

Our Village. By MARY RUSSELL MITFORD, with Preface by ANNIE THACKERAY RITCHIE, and 100 Illustrations by HUGH THOMSON.

Humorous Poems of Thomas Hood, with Preface by Canon AINGER, and 130 Illustrations by C. E. BROCK.

Rip Van Winkle and the Legend of Sleepy Hollow. By WASHINGTON IRVING. With Preface by GEORGE H. BOUGHTON, A.R.A., and 50 Illustrations.

Old Christmas. From the Sketch-Book of WASHINGTON IRVING. Illustrated by R. CALDECOTT.

Bracebridge Hall. From the Sketch-Book of WASHINGTON IRVING. Illustrated by R. CALDECOTT.

Grimm's Household Stories. Illustrated by WALTER CRANE.

Coridon's Song and Other Verses. With Preface by AUSTIN DOBSON, and 70 Illustrations by HUGH THOMSON.

Gulliver's Travels. With Preface by Sir HENRY CRAIK, K.C.B., and 100 Illustrations by CHARLES E. BROCK.

Æsop's Fables. With Introduction by JOSEPH JACOBS. With 300 Illustrations by RICHARD HEIGHWAY.

Reynard the Fox. Edited by JOSEPH JACOBS. Illus. by FRANK CALDERON.

THE LIFE-BOAT

Storm Warriors; or, Life-Boat Work on the Goodwin Sands. By Rev. JOHN GILMORE, M.A. Cr. 8vo. Prize Edition, *2s. 6d.* Cloth Gilt. *3s. 6d.*

History of the Life-Boat and its Work. By RICHARD LEWIS, Secretary of the Royal National Life-Boat Institution. Illustrated. 2nd Ed. Crown 8vo. *5s.*

HISTORY OF LITERATURE

Growth and Influence of Classical Greek Poetry. By Sir R. C. JEBB, Litt.D., M.P. Crown 8vo. *7s.* net.

Latin Poetry. By Prof. R. Y. TYRRELL. Crown 8vo. *7s.* net.

A History of Classical Greek Literature. By the Rev. J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A., D.D. Four parts. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.* each.

A Companion to the Iliad for English Readers. By WALTER LEAF, Litt.D. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

A History of English Poetry. By W. J. COURTHOPE, M.A. Vols. I. and II. 8vo. *10s.* net each.

Epic and Romance. By W. P. KER. 8vo. *10s.* net.

English Literature. By S. A. BROOKE. Globe 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Short History of English Literature. By G. SAINTSBURY. Cr. 8vo. *8s. 6d.*

English Literature from the Beginning to the Norman Conquest. By S. A. BROOKE. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

A History of Elizabethan Literature (1560-1665). By GEORGE SAINTSBURY. Cr. 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

For Prices in Leather Bindings see page 772

A History of Eighteenth Century Literature (1660-1780). By E. GOSSE. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

A History of Nineteenth Century Literature (1780-1895). By GEORGE SAINTSBURY. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

MATHEMATICS

A Short Account of the History of Mathematics. By W. W. ROUSE BALL. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. *10s.* net.

Mathematical Recreations and Problems of Past and Present Times. By W. W. ROUSE BALL. 3rd Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s.* net.

MUSIC

The Great Tone Poets. By F. CROWEST. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Music-Study in Germany. From the Home Correspondence of AMY FAY. With a Preface by Sir GEORGE GROVE. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

The History of Music. By J. F. ROWBOTHAM. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

NATURAL HISTORY

Curiosities of Natural History. By F. BUCKLAND. 4 Vols. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* each. Cloth Gilt. *3s. 6d.* each.

The Beauties of Nature. By LORD AVEBURY Cr. 8vo. *6s.*

Short Studies in Nature Knowledge. By WILLIAM GEE. With Illustrations. Globe 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

A Year with the Birds. By W. WARDE FOWLER. Illus. Cr. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Summer Studies of Birds and Books. By W. WARDE FOWLER, M.A. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Glaucus; or, the Wonders of the Sea-Shore. By CHAS. KINGSLEY. With coloured Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.* Presentation Edition. Extra cloth. *7s. 6d.* Prize Edition. *2s. 6d.* Cloth Gilt. *3s. 6d.*

Madam How and Lady Why; or First Lessons in Earth Lore for Children. By CHARLES KINGSLEY. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.* Prize Ed. *2s. 6d.*

Romance of the Insect World. By L. N. BADENOCH. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* Cloth Gilt. *3s. 6d.*

The Malay Archipelago; The Land of the Orang Utang and the Bird of Paradise. By ALFRED RUSSELL WALLACE. Ex. cr. 8vo. *6s.*

Wanderings in South America, the North-West of the United States, and the Antilles. By CHARLES WATERTON. Edited by Rev. J. G. WOOD. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Forty Years in a Moorland Parish. By CANON ATKINSON, D.C.L. Ex. Crown 8vo. *5s.* net. Illustrated Edition, *12s.* net.

Natural History and Antiquities of Selborne. By GILBERT WHITE. Edited by FRANK BUCKLAND. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

The Population of an Old Pear-Tree; or Stories of Insect Life. From VAN BRUYSSEL. Edited by C. M. YONGE. With Illustrations. Globe 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Wild Beasts and their Ways. By Sir SAMUEL BAKER. Extra crown 8vo. *12s. 6d.*

The Natural History of Aquatic Insects. By L. C. MIALL, F.R.S. Cr. 8vo. *6s.*

Round the Year. Short Nature-Studies. By L. C. MIALL. Crown 8vo. *5s.*

The Structure and Life of Birds. By F. W. HEADLEY. Extra crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

The Cambridge Natural History. Edit. by S. F. HARMER and A. E. SHIPLEY. 8vo. Vol. II. WORMS, ROTIFERS, AND POLYZOA. *17s.* net. Vol. III. MOLLUSCS AND BRACHIOPODS. *17s.* net. Vol. V. PERIPATUS, MYRIAPODS, INSECTS. Part I. *17s.* net. Vol. VI. INSECTS. Part II. *17s.* net. Vol. VIII. AMPHIBIA AND REPTILES. *17s.* net. Vol. IX. BIRDS. *17s.* net.

Journal of Sir Joseph Banks. Edited by Sir J. D. HOOKER, F.R.S. 8vo. *17s.* net.

Introduction to the Study of Sea-Weeds. By G. MURRAY. Illust. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Riverside Letters. By G. D. LESLIE, R.A. Ex. Cr. 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Natural History of Australia. By F. G. AFLALO. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

For Prices in Leather Bindings see page 772

Letters to Marco. Being Letters written to H. S. MARKS. By G. D. LESLIE, R.A. Extra crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Citizen Bird. Scenes from Bird Life in Plain English. By M. O. WRIGHT and E. COUES. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Wild Neighbours. By E. INGERSOLL. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

An Elementary Course of Physics. Edited by Rev. J. C. P. ALDOUS. Ex. crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

POETRY

Arnold.—COMPLETE POETICAL WORKS Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

— SELECTED POEMS. Pott 8vo. *2s. 6d.* net.

Brown.—Collected Poems. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Burns.—POETICAL WORKS. Edited by A. SMITH. 2 Vols. Fcap. 8vo. *10s.*—Complete Works. Edited by A. SMITH. Globe 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Byron.—POETRY. Chosen and arranged by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Pott 8vo. *2s. 6d.* net.

Chaucer.—COMPLETE WORKS. Edited by A. W. POLLARD, H. F. HEATH, M. H. LIDDELL, and W. S. M'CORMICK. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

— THE CANTERBURY TALES. Ed. by A. W. POLLARD. 2 vols. Globe 8vo. *10s.*

Clough.—POEMS. With a Memoir. 5th Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

— SELECTIONS FROM THE POEMS. Pott 8vo. *2s. 6d.* net.

Coleridge.—COMPLETE POETICAL WORKS. Edited by J. DYKES CAMPBELL. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Cowper.—POETICAL WORKS. Edited by Rev. W. BENHAM, B.D. Globe 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Dryden.—POETICAL WORKS. Edited by W. D. CHRISTIE, M.A. Globe 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Goldsmith.—MISCELLANEOUS WORKS. Edited by Professor MASSON. Globe 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Hood.—POEMS. Edited by Canon AINGER. 2 vols. Globe 8vo. *10s.*

Keats.—POETICAL WORKS. Edited by F. T. PALGRAVE. Pott 8vo. *2s. 6d.* net.

Kingsley.—POEMS. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.* Pocket Ed. *1s. 6d.*

Lowell.—COMPLETE POETICAL WORKS. With Introduction by THOS. HUGHES. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Milton.—POETICAL WORKS. Edited by DAVID MASSON, M.A., LL.D. In Three Vols. Vol. I.—The Minor Poems. Vol. II.—Paradise Lost. Vol. III.—Paradise Regained and Samson Agonistes. Globe 8vo. *15s.*

— POETICAL WORKS. With Introductions by DAVID MASSON, M.A., LL.D. Globe 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Pope.—POETICAL WORKS. Edited by A. W. WARD, M.A. Gl. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Rossetti (Christina).—POEMS. Globe 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Rossetti (Christina).—NEW POEMS. Globe 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Scott.—POETICAL WORKS. Ed. by Prof. F. T. PALGRAVE. Gl. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Shakespeare.—COMPLETE WORKS. Edited by W. G. CLARK and W. A. WRIGHT. Globe 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

— THE VICTORIA EDITION. In 3 vols. Comedies. Histories. Tragedies. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.* each.

Shelley.—COMPLETE POETICAL WORKS. Edited by Prof. DOWDEN. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

— POEMS FROM SHELLEY. Selected and arranged by STOPFORD A. BROOKE. *2s. 6d.* net.

Spenser.—COMPLETE WORKS. Edited by R. MORRIS. With Memoir by J. W. HALES, M.A. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Tennyson.—COMPLETE WORKS. New and Enlarged Edition. With a Portrait. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

— POETICAL WORKS. Pocket Edition. Pott 8vo. *7s. 6d.* net.

— POETICAL WORKS. Cr. 8vo. *3s. 6d.* and *4s. 6d.*

— Poetical Works. People's Edition. Twelve Vols. In a Box. *14s.* net.

— MINIATURE EDITION. 16mo. The Dramatic Works. Five Vols. In a Box. *12s. 6d.*

Wordsworth.—COMPLETE WORKS. 12 Vols. Globe 8vo. *5s.* each.

— COMPLETE POETICAL WORKS. With Introduction by JOHN MORLEY. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

For Prices in Leather Bindings see page 772

Wordsworth.—POEMS OF WORDSWORTH. Selected and Chosen by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

Longer English Poems. Edited by J. W. HALES, M.A. 2nd Edition. Globe 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

The English Poets. Selections, with critical introductions by various writers, with a general introduction by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Edited by THOMAS HUMPHRY WARD, M.A. Crown 8vo. Vol. I.—Chaucer to Donne. 7*s.* 6*d.* Vol. II.—Ben Jonson to Dryden. 7*s.* 6*d.* Vol. III.—Addison to Blake. 7*s.* 6*d.* Vol. IV.—Wordsworth to Tennyson. 8*s.* 6*d.*

The Golden Treasury of the best Songs and Lyrical Poems in the English Language. Selected and arranged with Notes by Prof. F. T. PALGRAVE. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

— Second Series. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net. The two Series, in Box, 5*s.* net.

Golden Treasury Poets. — Arnold, Byron, Cowper, Keats, Longfellow, Shelley, Southey, Wordsworth. 8 vols., in Box, 21*s.* net.

PROSE FICTION

The April Baby's Book of Tunes. By author of "Elizabeth and her German Garden." 4to. 6*s.*

Paladin and Saracen. Stories from Ariosto by H. C. HOLLWAY-CALTHROP. Illustrated by Mrs. ARTHUR LEMON. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Walks, Talks, Travels, and Exploits of Two Schoolboys. By Rev. J. C. ATKINSON. With Illustrations. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Playhours and Half-Holidays; or, Further Experiences of Two Schoolboys. By Rev. J. C. ATKINSON. Prize Ed. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Scenes in Fairyland. By Rev. J. C. ATKINSON. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Last of the Giant-Killers. By Rev. J. C. ATKINSON. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Cast Up by the Sea. By Sir SAMUEL BAKER. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Master Skylark. By J. BENNETT. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

By ROLF BOLDREWOOD. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* each.

Robbery under Arms.
The Miner's Right.
The Squatter's Dream.
A Colonial Reformer.
A Sydney-Side Saxon.
Nevermore.
A Modern Buccaneer.
The Crooked Stick.
The Sealskin Cloak.
My Run Home.
Old Melbourne Memories.
Plain Living.

The Pilgrim's Progress from this World to that which is to come. By JOHN BUNYAN. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland. By LEWIS CARROLL. Illustrations by JOHN TENNIEL. Cr. 8vo. 6*s.* net.—People's Edition. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

Through the Looking-Glass, and what Alice found there. By LEWIS CARROLL. Illustrations by JOHN TENNIEL. Cr. 8vo. 6*s.* net. People's Edition. Cr. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

Olive. By Mrs. CRAIK. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Book of Penny Toys. By M. DEARMER. 4to. 6*s.*

A Noah's Ark Geography. By M. DEARMER. Globe 4to. 6s.

By CHARLES DICKENS. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* each.

The Pickwick Papers.
Oliver Twist. Prize Edition, 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Nicholas Nickleby.
Martin Chuzzlewit.
Old Curiosity Shop, The. Prize Edition, 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Barnaby Rudge.
Dombey and Son.
Christmas Books. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Sketches by Boz.
David Copperfield.
Bleak House.
American Notes and Pictures from Italy. **Little Dorrit.**

Popular Tales. By Miss EDGEWORTH. Prize Edition. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

For Prices in Leather Bindings see page 772

Lazy Lawrence, and other Stories. By Miss EDGEWORTH. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Revolt of the Young MacCormacks. By V. G. FINNY. Cr. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Story of a Red Deer. By Hon. J. W. FORTESCUE. Pott 4to. 4*s.* 6*d.*

The Drummer's Coat. By Hon. J. W. FORTESCUE. Pott 4to. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Stories from Lowly Life of Mice, Dogs, and other Animals. By C. M. DUPPA. Fcap. 4to. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Undine. By F. DE LA M. FOUQUÉ. Illustrated by R. M. M. PITMAN. Extra Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

The Brown Ambassador. By Mrs. FRASER. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

For Peggy's Sake. By Mrs. Hohler. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

The Bravest of them All. By Mrs. HOHLER. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

By THOMAS HUGHES. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* each.

Tom Brown's School Days. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Tom Brown at Oxford.

The Scouring of the White Horse.

Heroes of Asgard. By A. and E. KEARY. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Beasts: Thumb-Nail Studies in Pets. By W. KENNEDY. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

By CHARLES KINGSLEY. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* each. Medium 8vo. 1*s.* each.

Westward Ho! **Hereward the Wake.**
Hypatia. **Yeast.**
Two Years Ago. **Alton Locke.**

— *Pocket Edition* of CHAS. KINGSLEY'S WORKS. Pott 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* each vol.

Hypatia. 1 vol. **Poems.** 1 vol.
Alton Locke. 1 vol.
Westward Ho! 2 vols.
Two Years Ago. 2 vols.
Hereward the Wake. 1 vol.
Yeast. 1 vol.
Water Babies. 1 vol.
Heroes. 1 vol.

Complete in Box. Cloth Elegant. 21*s.*

Westward Ho! Illustrated by C. E. BROCK. 2 vols. Ex. Cr. 8vo. 21*s.* Peacock Edition. Cr. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* Illustrated Edition. Cr. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Prize Edition. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Hereward the Wake. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Heroes. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Water Babies. Cr. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Glaucus. Crown 8vo. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt, 3*s.* 6*d.*

By RUDYARD KIPLING.

The Jungle Book. Illus Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

The Second Jungle Book. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Soldier Tales. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Captains Courageous. Cr. 8vo. 6*s.*

Stalky and Co. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Tales from Shakspeare. By CHARLES and MARY LAMB. Edited by Rev. ALFRED AINGER, M.A. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

Handy Andy. By S. LOVER. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

By Captain MARRYAT.

Poor Jack. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Newton Forster. Prize Edition, 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Masterman Ready. Prize Edition, 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3s. 6*d.*

Jacob Faithful. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Pirate and Three Cutters. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Snarleyyow. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Adventures of Francois: Foundling, Thief, Juggler, and Fencing Master during the French Revolution. By S. W. MITCHELL. Cr. 8vo. 6*s.*

By Mrs. MOLESWORTH.

Carrots. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Tapestry Room. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

A Christmas Child. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Cuckoo Clock. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Grandmother Dear. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Us. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

For Prices in Leather Bindings see page 772

By Mrs. HOULDSWORTH.

Adventures of Herr Baby. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The House that Grew. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Hajji Baba of Ispahan. By J. Morier. Prize Ed. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Agnes Hopetoun. By Mrs. OLIPHANT. Prize Ed. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Tim. A Story of School Life. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Story of Dick. By Major G. PARRY. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Tale of the Little Twin Dragons. By S. R. PRAEGER. 4to. 6*s.*

In the Lion's Mouth, the Story of Two English Children in France, 1789-93. By E. C. PRICE. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Lances of Lynwood. By C. M. YONGE. With Illustrations by J. B. Cr. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* Prize Ed. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Prince and the Page: a Story of the Last Crusade. By C. M. YONGE. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6d.

The Little Duke. By C. M. YONGE. Cr. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* Prize Edition, 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

P's and Q's; or, The Question of Putting Upon: and Little Lucy's Wonderful Globe. By C. M. YONGE. With Illustrations. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Armourer's 'Prentices. By C. M. YONGE. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth Gilt. 3*s.* 6*d.*

TRANSLATIONS

The Odyssey of Homer. Done into English Prose by S. H. BUTCHER, M.A., and A. LANG, M.A. With a Plate. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.* net.

The Iliad of Homer. Done into English Prose by ANDREW LANG, M.A.; WALTER LEAF, Litt.D.; and ERNEST MYERS, M.A. Crown 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Cicero on Old Age and Friendship. Translated by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

The Republic of Plato. Translated into English by JOHN LLEWELYN DAVIES, M.A., and DAVID JAMES VAUGHAN, M.A. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

The Trial and Death of Socrates. Being the Euthyphron, Apology, Crito, and Phædo of Plato. Translated by F. J. CHURCH. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

The Phaedrus, Lysis, and Protagoras of Plato. A new and literal translation. By J. WRIGHT, M.A. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

Theocritus, Bion, and Moschus. Rendered into English Prose, with Introductory Essay, by A. LANG, M.A. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

VOYAGES AND TRAVELS

The Albert N'Yanza, Great Basin of the Nile, and Explorations of the Nile Sources. By Sir SAMUEL BAKER. With Maps, Illustrations, and Portraits. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

The Nile Tributaries of Abyssinia, and the Sword Hunters of the Hamran Arabs. By Sir SAMUEL BAKER. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Ismailia. A Narrative of the Expedition to Central Africa for the Suppression of the Slave Trade. By Sir SAMUEL BAKER. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Autobiography of a Seaman. Thomas, Tenth Earl of Dundonald. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

A Hunter's Wanderings in Africa. By F. C. SELOUS. Illustrated. 8vo. 18*s.*

True Tales for my Grandsons. By Sir S. BAKER. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Souvenirs of So. 3 Continents. By A. FORBES, LL.D. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Barracks, Bivouacs, and Battles. By A. FORBES, LL.D. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Camps, Quarters, and Casual Places. By A. FORBES, LL.D. Ex. Cr. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

At Last. A Christmas in the West Indies. By CHARLES KINGSLEY. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Tales of Old Travel. By HENRY KINGSLEY. Prize Edition. 2*s.* 6*d.*

For Prices in Leather Bindings see page 772

Wanderings in Unknown Austria. By R. L. HODGSON. Fcap. 4to. *7s. 6d.*

Travels in West Africa. By MARY KINGSLEY. Abridged Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

West African Studies. By MARY KINGSLEY. 8vo. *21s.* net. Abridged Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

A Ride through Western Asia. By CLIVE BIGHAM. 8vo. *8s. 6d.* net.

A Year in China. By CLIVE BIGHAM. 8vo. *8s. 6d.* net.

The Attaché at Peking. By A. B. FREEMAN-MITFORD, C.B. Cr. 8vo. *6s.*

China. The Long Lived Empire. By E. R. SCIDMORE. Ex. crown 8vo. *8s. 6d.* net.

Letters from the Sudan. By E. F. KNIGHT. 8vo. *8s. 6d.* net.

The Campaign in Tirah. By Col. H. D. HUTCHINSON. 8vo. *8s. 6d.* net.

Beast and Man in India. By J. L. KIPLING. Illust. Ex. cr. 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Voyage of the "Vega" round Asia and Europe. By BARON A. E. VON NORDENSKIÖLD. Translated by ALEX. LESLIE. Popular Edition. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Highways and Byways in Devon and Cornwall. By A. H. NORWAY. Extra Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Highways and Byways in North Wales. By A. G. BRADLEY. Ex. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Highways and Byways in Donegal and Antrim. By S. GWYNN. Ex. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Highways and Byways in Yorkshire. By A. H. NORWAY. Ex. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Highways and Byways in Normandy. By P. DEARMER. Ex. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Highways and Byways in East Anglia. By W. A. DUTT. Ex. cr. 8vo. *6s.*

Among English Hedgerows. By C. JOHNSON. Ex. crown 8vo. *8s. 6d.* net.

Along French Byways. By C. JOHNSON. Crown 8vo. *8s. 6d.* net.

Spanish Highways and Byways. By K. L. BATES. Cr. 8vo. *8s. 6d.* net.

Gray Days and Gold in England and Scotland. By W. WINTER. Cr. 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

In the Valley of the Rhone. By C. W. WOOD. Illustrated. 8vo. *10s.* net.

The Romance of Spain. By C. W. WOOD. Illustrated. 8vo. *10s.* net.

THE PUBLISHERS do not issue Books in Leather Bindings, but by special request give the following as approximate to the additional amounts charged by booksellers for the various sizes in the different styles of binding quoted, including stamping of the School Arms, *e g.* :—

Baker's "Cast Up by the Sea," price 6s. in cloth, would be about 10s. in half calf, 12s. in tree calf, and 14s. in morocco with gilt edges.

SIZES.	Extra with Half Calf. S.	D.	Tree Calf. S.	D.	Morocco Gilt Edge. S.	D.
Pott 8vo, - - / Foolscap 8vo, - / -	3	6	5	0	6	6
Globe 8vo, - - / Crown 8vo, - - / -	4	0	6	0	8	0
Extra Crown 8vo, - / Demy 8vo, - - / -	4	6	7	0	8	6
Royal 8vo, - - / Imperial 8vo, - / Super Royal 8vo, - / -	6	0	9	0	11	0
Quarto, - - - -	9	0	19	9	21	0

Prize Books arranged according to Price

Book at £2 Net.

Green's History. Illustrated. 3 Vols.

Books at £1 : 12s.

Green's Town Life in the 15th Century. 2 vols.
Norgate's England under Angevin Kings. 2 v.

Book at £1 : 10s. Net.

Thompson's Art Anatomy of Animals.

Book at £1 : 5s. Net.

Mau's Pompeii : Its Life and Art.

Book at £1 : 4s.

Tsountas's Mycenaean Age.

Books at £1 : 1s. Net.

Crawford's Ave Roma Immortalis. 2 vols.
,, Rulers of the South. 2 vols.
Erman's Life in Ancient Egypt. Tr. by Tirard.
Kingsley's West African Studies.
Lyte's History of Eton College.
Schreiber's Atlas of Classical Antiquities.

Book at £1 : 1s.

Kingsley's Westward Ho! 2 vols.

Book at 18s.

Selous's A Hunter's Wanderings in Africa.

Books at 17s. Net.

Banks's Journal. Edited by Hooker.
Cambridge Natural History. Vols. II. III. V. VI. VIII. IX.
Parkman's Montcalm and Wolfe. 2 vols.

Books at 16s.

Harrison's Mythology of Athens, etc.
Lanciani's Ruins of Ancient Rome.
Lyte's History of Oxford.

Book at 15s.

Milton's Poems. Edited by D. Masson. 3 vols.

Book at 14s. Net.

Tennyson's Poetical Works. 12 vols. in Box.

Book at 14s.

Cook's Handbook to the National Gallery.

Books at 12s. 6d.

Baker's Wild Beasts and their Ways.
Freeman's Historical Essays. Fourth Series.
,, Federal Government. Ed. by Bury.
Holmes' History of the Indian Mutiny.
Homer's Iliad. Tr. Lang, Leaf, and Myers.
Tennyson's Dramatic Works. 5 vols. in Box.

Books at 12s.

Freeman's Historical Essays. Third Series.
Kingsley. Letters and Memories of his Life.
Lightfoot's Galatians.
,, Philippians.
,, Colossians.

Books at 10s. 6d.

Cheetham's History of the Christian Church.
Freeman's Historical Essays. 1st Series.
Hooker's Student's Flora of the British Islands.
Mahaffy's Greek World under Roman Sway.
Oliphant's Jerusalem.
,, Makers of Florence.
,, Makers of Venice.
Oliphant's Royal Edinburgh.
,, Makers of Modern Rome.
Pater's Greek Studies.
Shakespeare. Victoria Edition. 3 vols.
Westcott's New Testament Canon.
,, Introduction to Study of Gospels.
Winter's Gray Days and Gold.

Books at 10s. Net.

Ball's History of Mathematics.
Courthope's History of English Poetry. Vols. I. and II.
Cromwell. By John Morley.
Geikie's Scenery of Scotland.
Ker's Epic and Romance.
Roberts' Forty-one Years in India.
Wood's Valley of the Rhone.
,, Romance of Spain.

Books at 10s.

Burns's Poems. Memoirs by Alex. Smith. 2 vols.
Chaucer's Canterbury Tales. Ed. by Pollard. 2 vols.
Green's Making of England. 2 vols.
,, Conquest of England. 2 vols.
Hood's Poems. 2 vols.

Book at 9s.

Mahaffy's Social Life in Greece.

Books at 8s. 6d. Net.

Bates' Spanish Highways.
Bigham's Ride through Western Asia.
,, A Year in China.
Harrison's The Meaning of History.
Hassall's European History.
Hutchinson's Campaign in Tirah.
Johnson's Along French Byways.
,, Among English Hedgerows.
Knight's Letters from the Sudan.
Parkman's Oregon Trail.
Scidmore's China.
Thorpe's Essays in Historical Chemistry.

Books at 8s. 6d.

Bury's History of Greece.
English Poets. Selections. By Ward. Vol. IV.
Freeman's Sketches of Travel.
Green's Short History of the English People.
Hamerton's Thoughts about Art.
Hutchinson's Hints on Learning to Draw.
Lanciani's Destruction of Ancient Rome.
Saintsbury's Short History of English Literature.
Shuckburgh's History of Rome.

For Prices in Leather Bindings see page 772